Marco Brito-Arias

Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides

Third Edition

Springer

Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides

Marco Brito-Arias

Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides

Third Edition

Springer

Marco Brito-Arias
Unidad Profesional Interdisciplinaria de
Biotecnología
Instituto Politécnico Nacional (UPIBI-IPN)
Ciudad de México, Mexico

ISBN 978-3-030-97853-2 ISBN 978-3-030-97854-9 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

To Carmina BR, Marshall and Sami

Preface to the Third Edition

The third edition responds to the need for providing students and professionals involved in the glycoside chemistry discipline with updated information regarding emerging and consolidated methods for preparing O-, N- and C- glycosides in order to ensure a collection of synthetic tools useful for their research. This new edition incorporates information regarding green chemistry for using biomass to produce furfural derivatives, iminosugars, thiosaccharides, more mechanistic evidence to understand and to drive glycosyl reactivity and stereoselectivity, the use of chiral auxiliaries, and additional protecting and deprotecting reaction conditions. In O-glycoside chapter, you will find more evidence about stereocontrolled glycosylations, promoter systems, latent-active strategies, the development of glycosyl donors such as alkynyl, fluoride, phosphate donors and their potential. Also, a description on photoactivated, electrochemical glycosylation reactions, as well as automated glycation progress for the synthesis of complex oligosaccharides is outlined.

The chapters regarding N- and C- glycosides including glycoside mimetics and glycoconjugates are devoted to review methods for preparing either conserved or modified nucleotides currently used as antivirals, antitumoural or glycemic control drugs, using silyl, enzymatic, electrophilic and nucleophilic glycosyl donors or following oligonucleotide approach, the later for preparing third generation antisense drugs used for treating numerous degenerative diseases. The chapter referring glycoconjugates contains recent approaches for preparing glycopeptide and glycoprotein analogues by using native chemical ligation strategies, and also novel glycosphin-

golipid and gangliosides are described used as vaccine adjuvants. Finally, recent information was incorporated in the study of glycosidases focusing on structural features and transition state details introducing photoswitchable substrates in order to provide better understanding at their catalytic site level and for improved enzymatic detection.

Ciudad de México, Mexico Marco Brito-Arias

Acknowledgements The author would like to thank COFAA-IPN and SIP-IPN for their financial support.

Preface to the Second Edition

The second edition is designed to serve as a textbook on the field of glycoside chemistry having as a main goal to provide updated information about the methods considered classical or of primary significance as well as novel variations or new methods for achieving glycosylation processes. This applies to glycosyl donors, promoter or activators and protecting groups currently reported as more efficient or with significance for preparing active substances of glycosidic nature with important implications in pharmaceutical, food, environmental and biotechnological related disciplines. The second edition provides fresh information on chemical shifts, and coupling constant data for the complete assignments of glucopyranoses and pyranosyl disaccharides, as well as the main fragmentation pattern observed in mass spectrometry. I hope the present new edition will expand its usefulness to those professionals involved in glycoside chemistry area and will provide support in the design of a suitable methodology in a novel or more efficient way. Finally, the author will be grateful in receiving any comment intended to improve the quality of the material included.

Preface to the First Edition

There is no doubt that glycoside chemistry continues to be a dynamic and exciting field related to organic chemistry. Within sugar chemistry, glycosides are of special interest not only because of the challenges represented by their synthesis and structural characterization, but also due their important biochemical relevance, and hence their applications in a number of essential disciplines, such as pharmaceuticals, food and biotechnology.

Important biomolecules such as DNA and RNA, or cofactors such as ATP and NAD are some of the natural glycosidic structures playing key roles at a biochemical level. Also, a considerable number and variety of natural and synthetic glycosides are being extensively used as antibiotics, antiviral and antineoplastic agents.

There are also a significant number of chromophoric glycosides being used in molecular biology as substrates for detection of enzymatic activity of gene markers.

Solid-phase oligosaccharide synthesis despite the great progress recently reported by different groups continues to be a challenging task considering the diversity and complexity of glycosides, especially those present in cellular membranes. However, based on the satisfactory evolution of this approach, there is confidence that many complex molecules will be prepared in just in the same way that solid-phase chemistry currently used to prepare oligopeptides and oligonucleotides.

The aim of this book is to prepare methods and strategies for the formation of glycosides, illustrated by the synthesis of important biologically active glycosides, and also to present an overview of the basic tools needed for the characterization of glycosides through NMR spectroscopy, X-ray diffraction and mass spectrometry.

From the overwhelming number of excellent articles related to glycoside chemistry, it hasn't been easy task to select those that are biologically important, and perhaps most importantly serve as didactic models for understanding more about the process of glycoside bond formation.

The text should also serve as a helpful guide to those professionals interested in sugar chemistry, especially regarding the design of synthetic routes, by evaluating suitable protecting and leaving groups, and the best reaction conditions needed for the preparation of glycosides.

Contents

Chapter 1
Glycosides, Synthesis and Characterization

1.1 Introduction

Monosaccharides are generally defined as aldoses and ketoses connected to a poly hydroxylated skeleton [1]. In an aqueous solution, the monosacharides are subject to internal nucleophilic addition to form cyclic hemiacetal structures. When the addition occurs between –OH at C(4) or –OH at C(5) with the carbonyl group, a five or a six member ring is formed known as a furanose or a pyranose respectively. It is also known that an equilibrium exists between the open and the cyclic form, being displaced to the later by more than 90%. Therefore, in aqueous solution, it is more accurate to consider that most of the sugars are present as cyclic molecules and behave chemically as hemiacetals.

The Haworth structure is a useful way to represent sugars. However, as it is known that for any 6 membered rings a non planar conformation is assumed. The conformation exclusively preferred is called chair and the two possible conformations are $^{4}C_{1}$ and $_{4}C^{1}$. The first conformation is used for the D enantiomeric form and the second for the L form (Scheme 1.1).

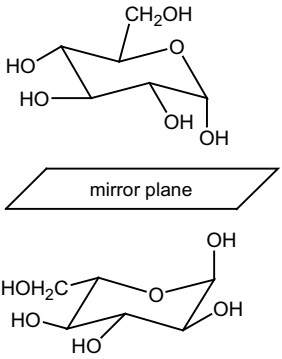
On a chair conformation type $^{4}C_{1}$, an α anomeric hydroxyl group is positioned in the axial orientation while a β hydroxyl lies equatorial (Scheme 1.2).

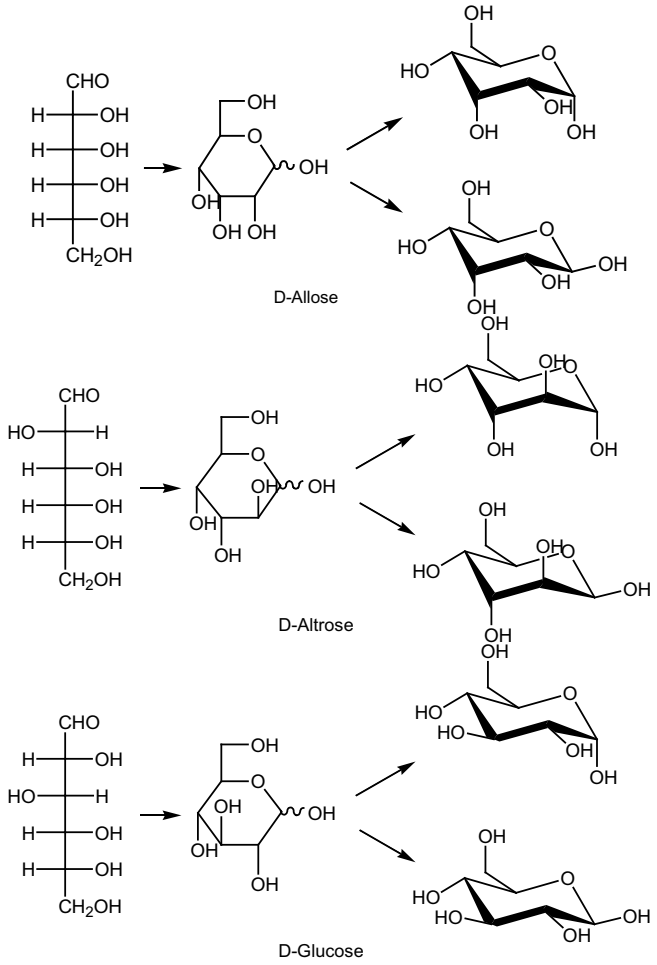
As a result of this reversible ring formation process, a diastereomer mixture of anomers α and β is produced as indicated in Table 1.1 for some of the most common monosaccharides [1, 2].

The pioneering work in 1890 by Fischer [3] allowed him to determine the relative configuration and the synthesis of the most known aldohexoses. Based on the assumption that in D-glyceraldehyde, the hydroxyl group was placed to the right, he was able to propose correctly the structure of tetroses, pentoses and aldohexoses (Scheme 1.3). The relative configuration of D-glyceraldehyde was later confirmed by X-ray diffraction by Bijvoet in 1951. Consequently, all the resulting biologically active distereoisomeric aldoses derived from D-glyceraldehyde conserve always the secondary alcohol next to the primary one to the right side in the Fischer projection.

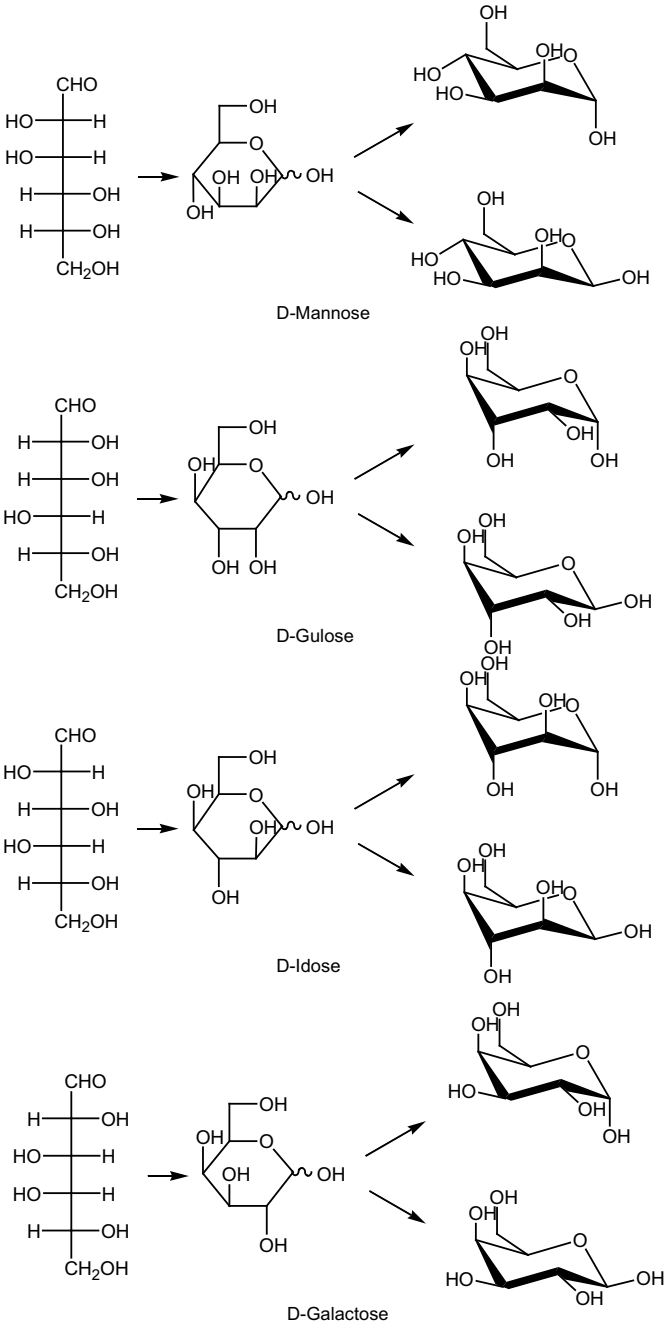
M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_1

Scheme 1.1
α-D-glucopyranose-$^4C_1$ and
α-L-glucopyranose-$^1C_4$

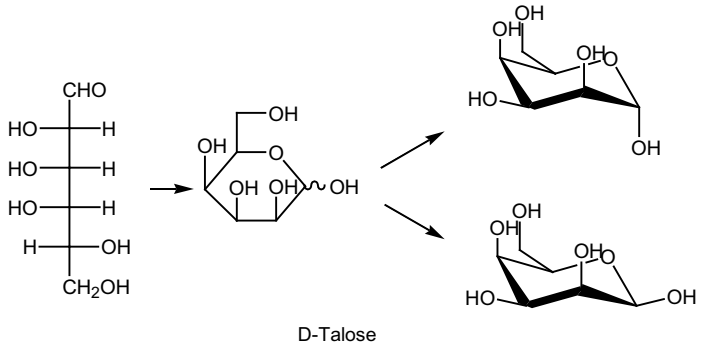




Scheme 1.2 Fischer projections, Haworth structures, and $^4C_1$ chair conformation of D-aldohexoses



Scheme 1.2 (continued)



Scheme 1.2 (continued)

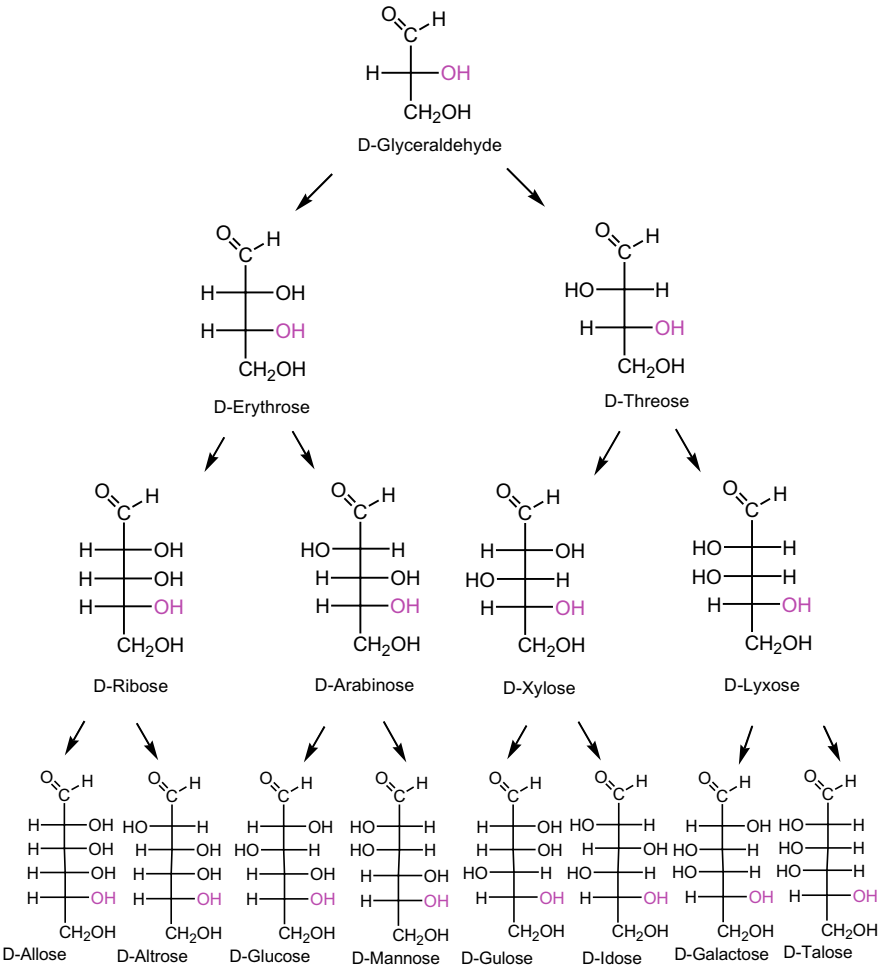
Table 1.1 Distribution of α β of some D-monosaccharides in solution at 31 °C

Carbohydrate	% Pyranose		% Furanose	
	α	β	α	β
Glucose	38	62	0.1	<0.2
Galactose	30	64	3	4
Mannose	65.5	34.5	0.6	0.3
Rhamnose	65.5	34.5	0.6	0.3
Fructose	2.5	65.0	6.5	25
Ribose	21.5	58.5	6.4	13.5
Xylose	36.5	63.0	0.3	0.3

Ketoses with three to six carbons are naturally produced from 1,3-Dihydroxyacetone, according to the tree shown in Scheme 1.4.

1.2 Reactions of Monosaccharides

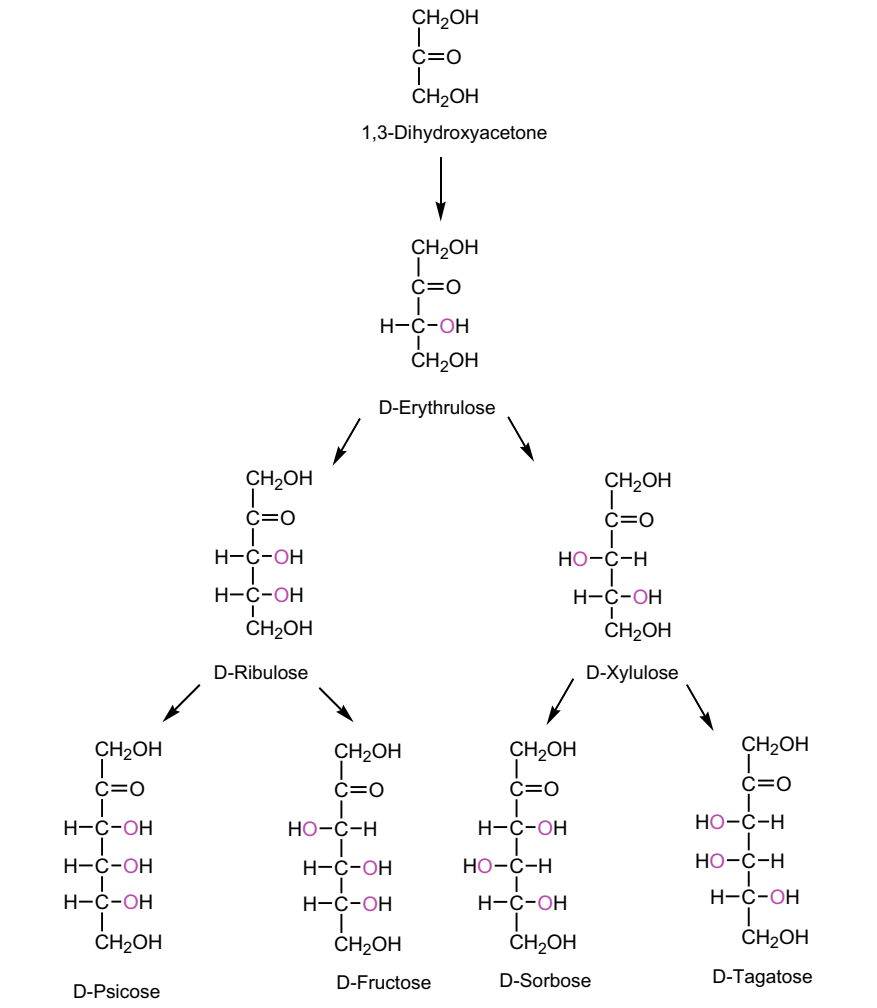
Carbohydrates own their reactivity to the hemiacetalic centre and to the hydroxyl groups, being the primarily more reactive than the secondary. Aldoses and ketoses are susceptible to nucleophilic addition and the later is less reactive due steric hindrance. The cyclic forms are adopted when the hydroxyl group positioned at C-5 verifies an intramolecular nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group producing an anomeric mixture of pyranosides (Scheme 1.5).



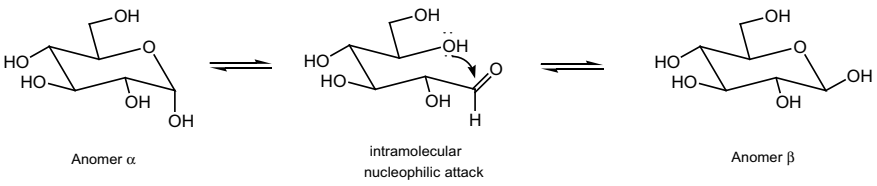
Scheme 1.3 The Fischer projections of D-aldoses

1.3 Chemical Modifications

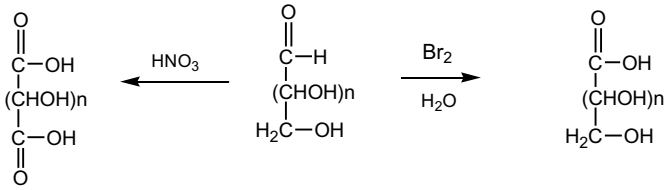
The classical reactions on monosaccharide were used initially for identification or sugars or to distinguish between aldoses and ketoses. They have been also very useful for preparing key intermediates in the construction of glycosides. Some of the common reactions used to identify monosaccharide are:



Scheme 1.4 Fischer projections of the 2-ketoses

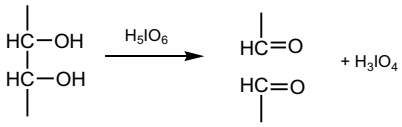


Scheme 1.5 The pyranose ring formation



Scheme 1.6 Oxidative aldose transformation into mono- and dicarboxylic acids

Scheme 1.7 Oxidative cleavage of diol by periodic acid



1.3.1 Oxidations

The oxidation of non protected aldoses may undergo carboxylic acids formation depending on the reaction conditions. Thus, with aqueous bromine the monocarboxylic acid (aldonic acid) is formed, whereas with nitric acid the dicarboxylic acid is favored (aldaric acid) (Scheme 1.6).

1.3.2 Periodate Oxidation

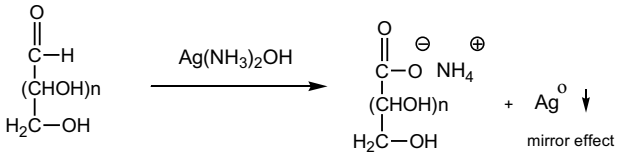
Periodic acid is an strong oxidating agent and is capable of breaking 1,2-cis diols to generate after cleavage of the C–C bond carbonyl fragments (Scheme 1.7).

1.3.3 Tollens Reaction

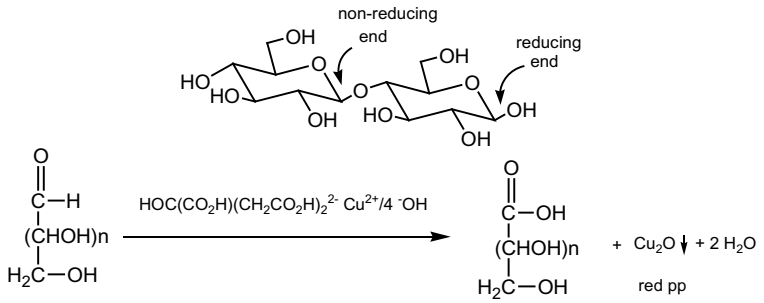
This classical reaction has been very useful for aldose identification and consist in the oxidation of the aldehyde function with a moderate oxidative agent (a silver ammonium salt) to afford the glucuronide ammonium salt and metallic silver which produce the silver mirror effect (Scheme 1.8).

1.3.4 Benedict and Fehling Test

The test consist in the use of a cooper citrate (Bennedict reagent) or cooper tartrate complex (Fehling reagent), which upon treatment with the sugar under study produce



Scheme 1.8 Tollens reaction



Scheme 1.9 Benedic and Fehling test

the glucuronide ion along with cooper (I) oxide which is detected as brick-red precipitate (Scheme 1.9).

Based on the Tollens, Bennedict or Fehling test, the sugars are classified into reducing when positive or non-reducing sugars if negative. Reducing sugars are hemiacetals in equilibrium with small amounts of the open forms. Under basic conditions, the aldoses and ketoses gives positive the Tollens and or Benedict/Fehling test as result of an equilibrium aldose-ketose via enediol intermediates.

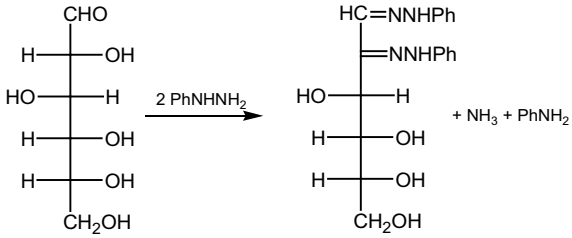
1.3.5 Nucleophilic Addition

Aldose and ketone may react with a variety of nucleophiles, giving as results addition/elimination products such as osazones and oximes, or addition products such as reduced derivatives when reacted with hydrides.

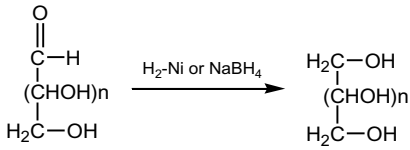
The reaction that allowed E. Fischer to determine the structure of the common aldoses was the osazone formation and consisted in the reaction between hydrazine with aldoses (Scheme 1.10) to yield crystalline derivatives that can be identified through their melting points values.

The carbonyl group can be reduced by hydrogenation or hidryde addition to produce the corresponding alditols (Scheme 1.11). These reduced sugars are present in various fruits such as cherries, piers, apples, etc., and are used as sugar substitute for diabetics.

Scheme 1.10 Osazone formation



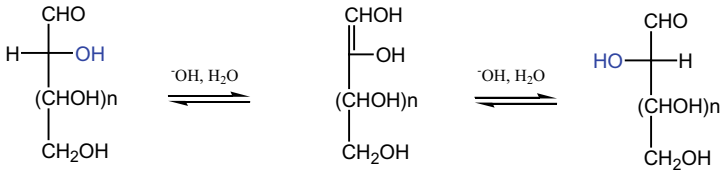
Scheme 1.11 Carbonyl reduction for the preparation of sorbitols



1.3.6 Enediol Rearrangement

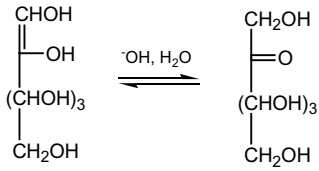
This transformation occurs at basic medium and allows the conversion of epimers, defined as isomeric forms that differs in the position of the hydroxyl group at C-2. In this way it is possible to transform through the enediol intermediate glucose to mannose and viceversa (Scheme 1.12).

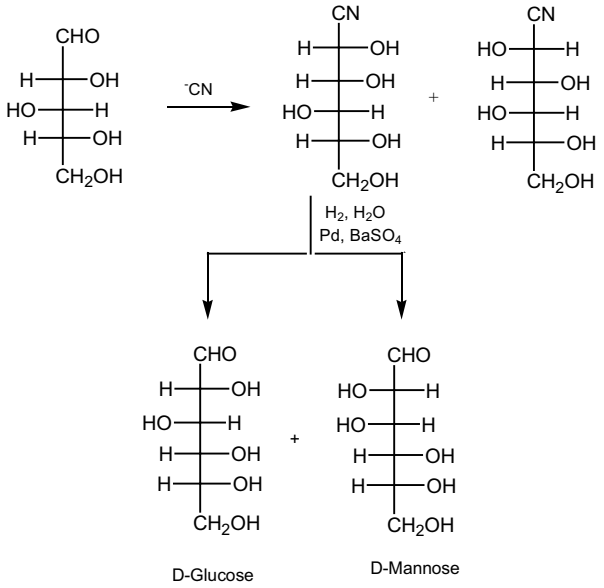
Another important isomerization process through the enediol rearrangement is the interconversion of glucose and fructose. Thus, the enolization proceeds by migration of proton at position 2, to carbon at 1 (Scheme 1.13).



Scheme 1.12 The enediol rearrangement

Scheme 1.13 The enediol rearrangement





Scheme 1.14 The Kiliani-Fischer synthesis

1.3.7 Kiliani-Fischer Synthesis

This sequence was used to increase the number of carbons in a sugar. The reaction involves cyanohydrin formation by nucleofilic addition of cyanide to the aldehyde. The diastereoisomeric mixture of cyanohydrins obtained were partially reduced to produce the epimeric forms (Scheme 1.14).

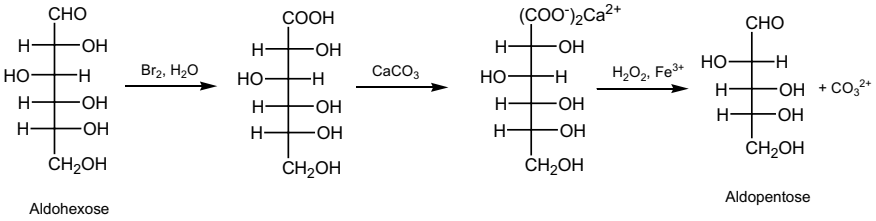
1.3.8 The Ruff Degradation

The process of reducing the monosaccharide skeleton in one carbon is known as Ruff degradation and consist in the oxidation of the aldehyde to the carboxylic acid through the use of calcium salt and subsequent peroxide treatment in the presence of ferric salts to produce the aldose reduced in one carbon (Scheme 1.15).

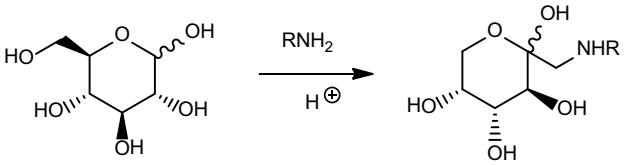
The Amadori Rearrangement

This reaction occurs between an unprotected aldoses such as D-glucose and suitable amines, producing 1-amino-1-deoxy ketoses as a mixture of anomers. When the amino group comes from an aminoacid the reaction is known as the Maillard reaction, which is an important modifications in food science (Scheme 1.16) [4].

The Amadori rearrangement is usually identified if the saccharide is glucose, however when fructose is the monosaccharide the reaction is known as Heyns and



Scheme 1.15 Ruff degradation



Scheme 1.16 The Amadori rearrangement

both processes involves an initial imine formation, followed by an enamine formation which tautomerize to the keto form. In degenerative processes mainly diabetes mellitus and autoimmune disease is associated with the formation of α-ceto aldehydes considered oxidation products implicated in the formation of advanced glycation end products (AGES). Such Amadori adducts have been identified in hemoglobin through the attachment with lysine residues (Scheme 1.17) [5].

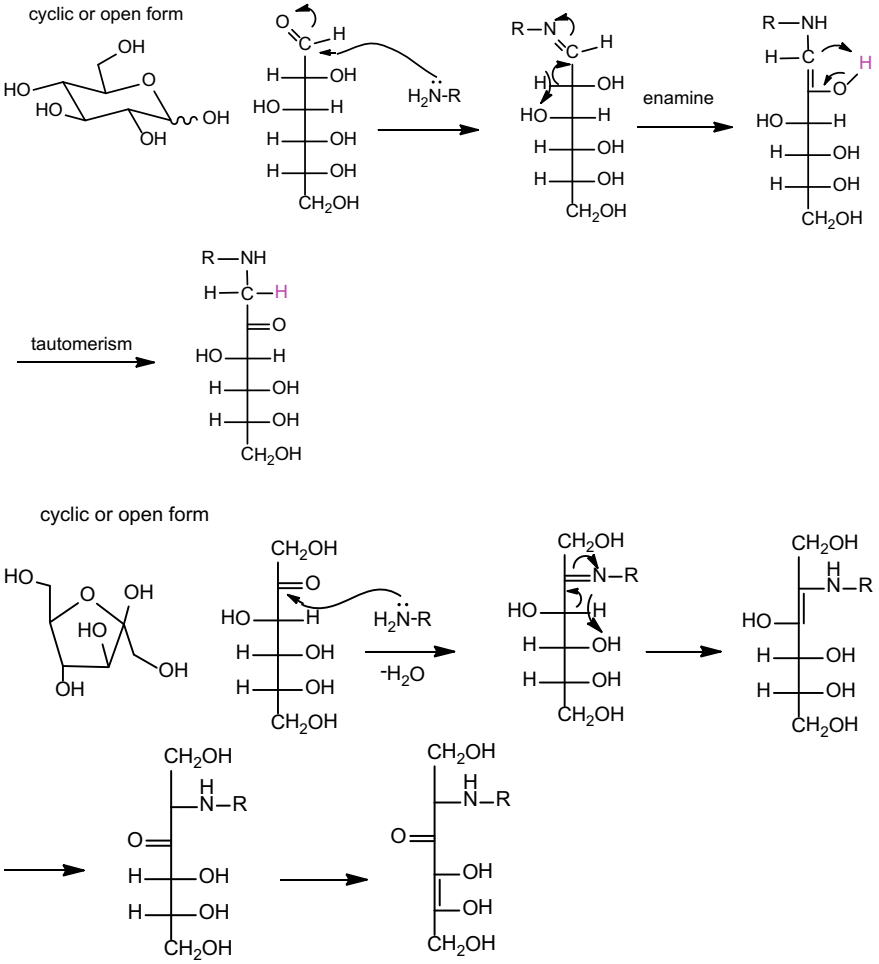
Glucuronic acid is another monosaccharide with importance in phase II of metabolism implicated in the detoxification of drugs that has been described to generate Amadori adducts under non-enzymatic conditions when combined with lysine containing pentapeptides (Scheme 1.18) [6].

Based on the Amadori rearrangement series of D-manno-configured C-glycosyl type glycoconjugates yields D-glycero-D-galacto aldoheptose and building block azido heptulose were prepared for the preparation of C-glycosyl type neoglyconjugates (Scheme 1.19) [7].

1.3.9 Conversion to Furfural Derivatives

Pentoses subjected to high acid concentrations can be transformed to furfural in quantitative yields. The sequence involves a tautomeric keto-enol equilibrium, dehydration and intramolecular nucleophilic addition of the primarily alcohol to the aldehyde to generate furfural (Scheme 1.20).

The main pentose source used for preparing furfural is xylose which under acidic medium is subjected series of dehydrations, enolization and intramolecular cyclization as shown in Scheme 1.21. Some of the conditions reported for preparing furfural

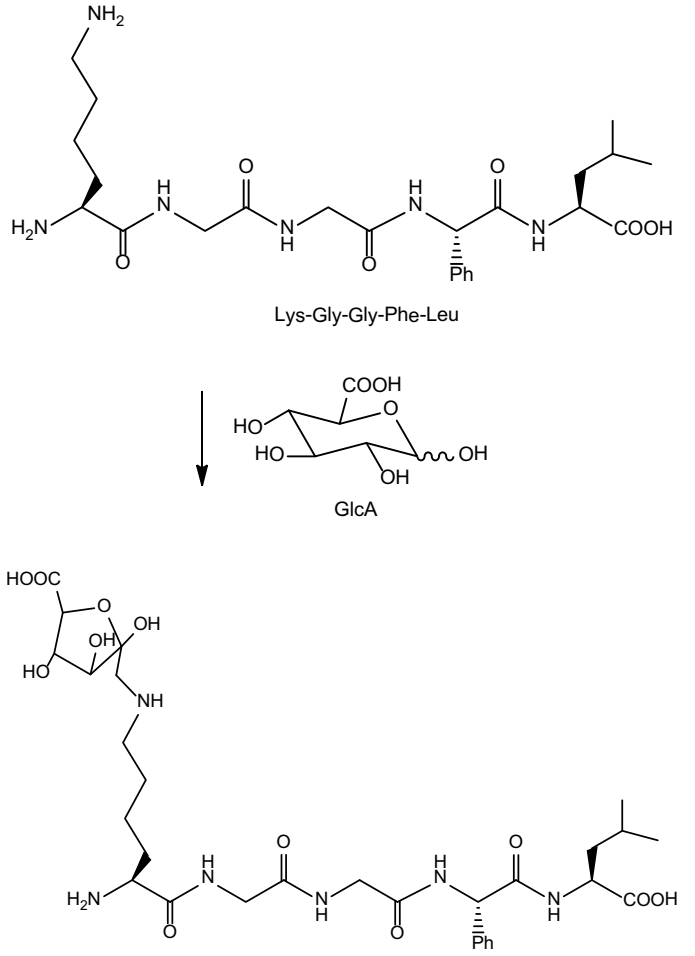


Scheme 1.17 The Amadori and Heys reaction mechanism

are described in Table 1.2.

Preparation of 5-hydroxymethylfurfural (HMF)

This valuable derivative is subjected to intensive studies since it can be used in the preparation of pharmaceuticals, liquid fuels, plastics and other fine chemicals. The common sugar source is fructose and glucose, although starch, cellulose and sucrose has been examined as a natural source for the preparation of HMF (Table 1.3) [14, 15]. The mechanism involves enol formation after the first dehydration, and two further dehydrations to furnish the furane ring (Scheme 1.22).

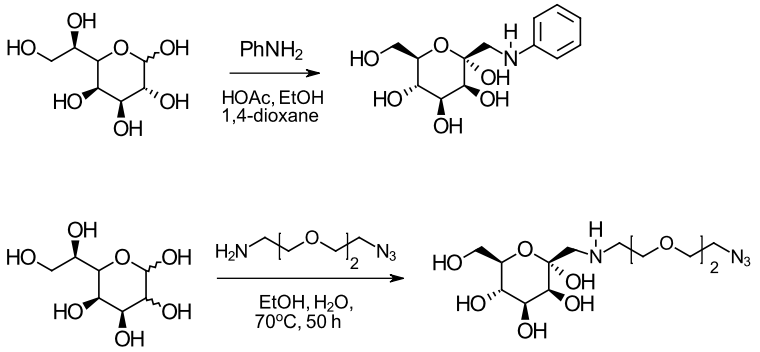


Scheme 1.18 Amadori adducts under non-enzymatic conditions with lysine containing pentapeptides with glucuronic acid

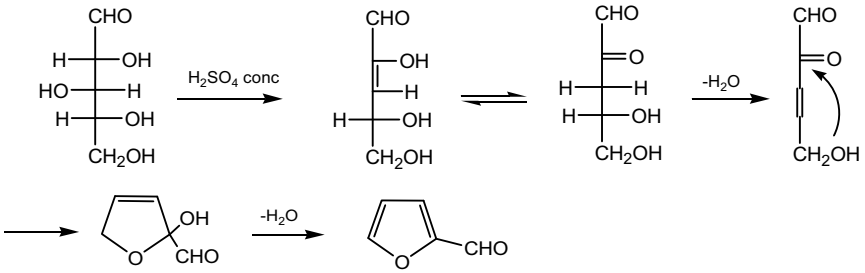
More recently, alternative processes for the generation of furfural and 5-hydroxymethylfurfural (HMF) from biomass notably from xylose [30, 31], glucose/fructose [32–34], cellulose [35–37], and starch [38] have been developed.

1.4 Biosynthesis of Sugars

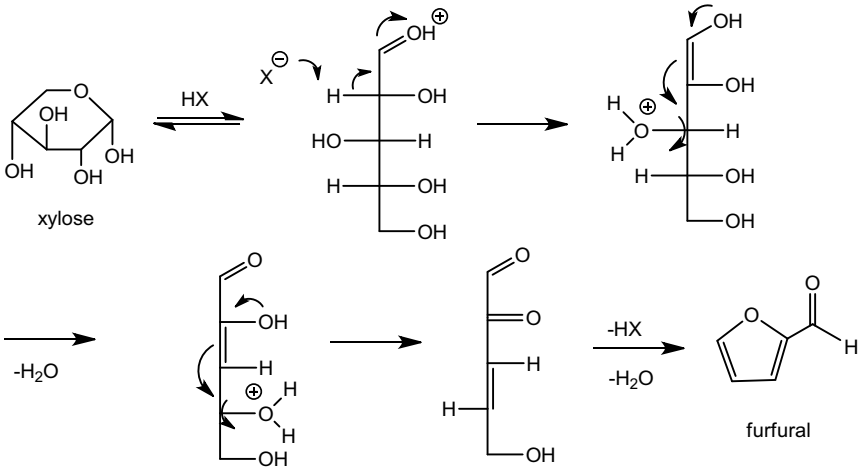
The synthesis of carbohydrates in plants occurs through a mechanism of carbon dioxide fixation, and was understood through the use of long-lived radioactive isotope of carbon ^{14}C. After considerable investigations it was founded that the initial CO_2



Scheme 1.19 Amadori products used for the preparation of neoglycoconjugates from D-glycero-D-galacto aldoheptose as starting monosaccharide



Scheme 1.20 Conversion of pentoses to furfural



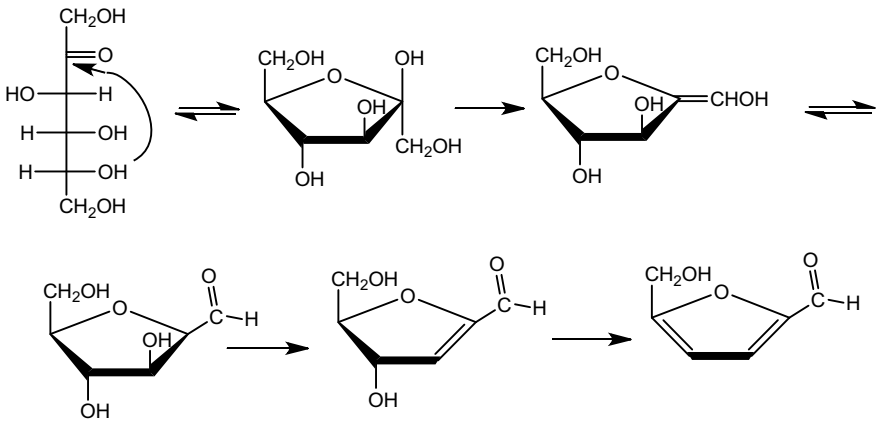
Scheme 1.21 Conversion of xylose to furfural

Table 1.2 Reaction conditions for the prparation of furfural

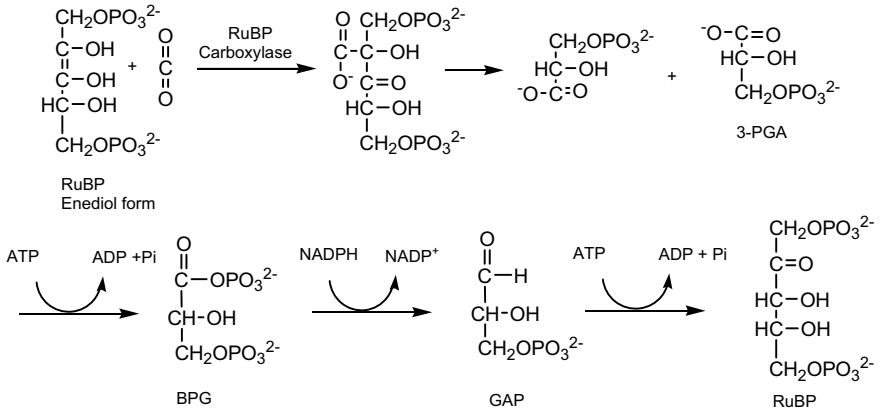
Sugar source	Catalyst	References
Xylose	Solid acid/ZrO_2–Al_2O_3	[8]
Xylose	Atmospheric pressure by dilute sulfuric	[9]
Xylose	Halides in dilute aqueous acidic	[10]
Xylose	Vanadyl pyrophosphate	[11]
Xylose	Formic acid	[12]
Pentosan	Acid hydrolysis	[13]

Table 1.3 Reaction conditions for the preparation of hydroxymethylfurfural

Sugar source	Catalyst	References
Starch-rich Acorn biomass	Chromium halides	[16]
Rice straw	Single-phase and biphasic systems	[17]
High fructose	Ionic liquids	[18]
Fructose	Inorganic salt in alcohol	[19]
Fructose and sucrose	Protic ionic liquids	[20]
Fructose or glucose	Imidazolium Ionic liquids with and without a catalyst	[21]
Alditols and ketohexoses	Polymer-mediated cyclodehydration	[22]
Fructose	Acidic resin-catalysed	[23]
Glucose	Co-catalysts and solvents	[24]
Fructose	Phosphorous pentoxide in ionic liquid	[25]
Cellulose	Zinc chloride, MW	[26]
Sucrose	Ammonium halides	[27]
Fructose	Mesoporous SBA-15-SO_3H in ionic liquid BmimCl	[28]
Glucose	$SnCl_4$-tetrabutyl ammonium bromide	[29]



Scheme 1.22 Conversion of fructose to furfural



Scheme 1.23 Carbohydrate synthesis from CO_2 fixation

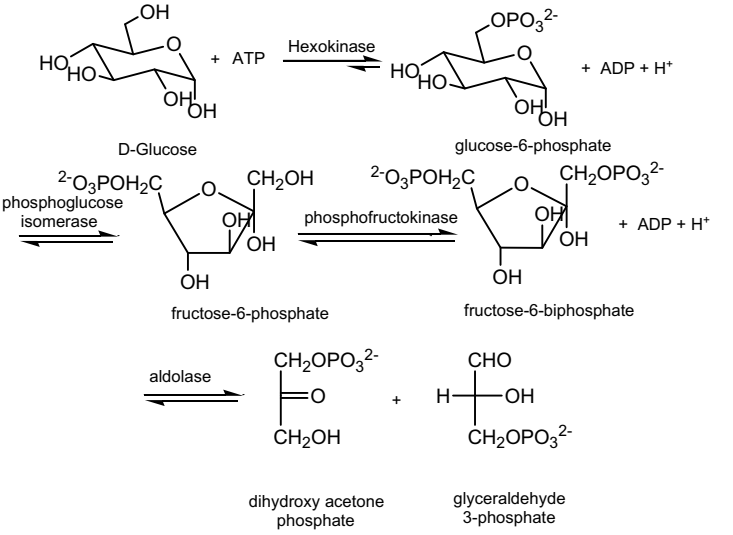
acceptor was the five-carbon compound ribulose 1,5-bis-phosphate (RuBP) which after incorporation of carbon dioxide produce a six-carbon molecule. The resulting molecule is fragmented into two molecules of 3-phosphoglycerate (PGA) that is one of the intermediates of glycolysis. This transformations takes place in the chloroplast by a large multisubunit enzyme, ribulose bisphosphate carboxylase "Rubisco". The following reaction sequence is cyclic and constitute what is known as the Calvin cycle which consist after formation of PGA in reduction to glyceraldehydes 3-phosphate (GAP), and regeneration of RuBP. The overall process requires 6 CO_2 molecules fixed, 12 molecules of GAP produced which rearrange to regenerate 6 molecules of the five-carbon CO_2 acceptor RuBP (Scheme 1.23).

1.4.1 Sugars as Energy Sources

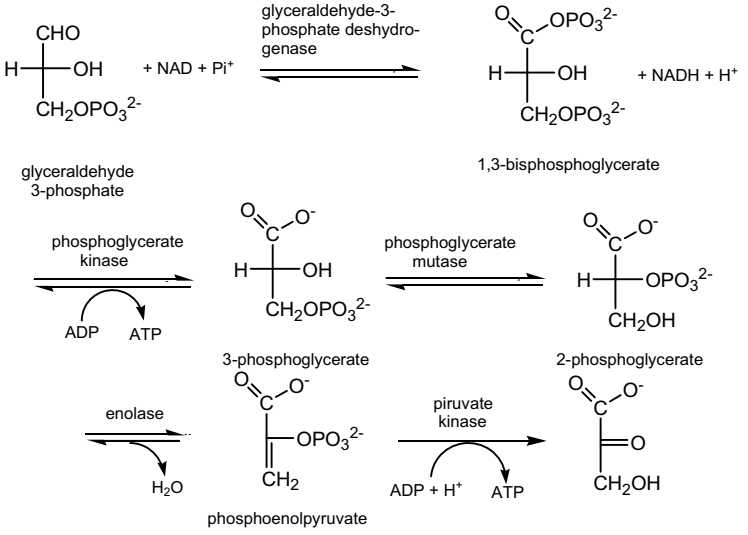
Metabolically the main monosaccharide useful for the production of energy is glucose. During the glycolysis process glucose is enzymatically transformed and degraded to piruvate and is a preamble which is further introduced into the Krebs cycle.

Carbohydrates are responsible of several biological events mainly related with the storage and production of energy, as metabolic intermediates and signal molecules. They are also constitutive structural units of essential biomolecules such as polysaccharides (starch, glucogen, cellulose), glycoproteins, glycolipids, and nucleotides. The process by which glucose is used as energy source, to produce ATP and pyruvate is known as glycolysis and consist in serie of events represented in Scheme 1.24.

The second cycle of glycolysis is divided in four steps.



The second cycle of glycolysis is divided in four steps



Scheme 1.24 The glycolysis pathway

1.5 Synthesis of Carbohydrates

The chemical synthesis of carbohydrates can be accomplished by chemical, enzymatic or the combined approach (chemoenzymatic). Their preparation by either of the mentioned methods has received considerable attention especially because they

can be used as starting materials for the synthesis of biologically active carbohydrate derivatives known as mimetics or the synthesis of complex molecules such as oligosaccharides or glycopeptides.

1.5.1 Chemical Synthesis

Access to potentially useful sugar or congeners can be obtained from natural sugars such as arabinose and mannose [39]. Thus, convenient routes have been implemented for the preparation of KDN from D-mannose [40], 3-deoxy-D-manno-2-octulosonic acid (KDO) from 2,3:4,5-di-O-isopropylidene-D-arabinose [41], D-*glycero*-D-galacto-heptose from D-arabinose [42], and KDN from D-mannose [43] (Scheme 1.25).

Different approximations for the preparation of monosaccharides from other sources have been reported. One method consist in the asymmetric synthesis of D-galactose via an iterative *syn*-glycolate aldol strategy. The general method is shown in Scheme 1.26 [44].

A promising and simple concept based on a two-step reaction sequence for preparing monosaccharides via the enantioselective organocatalytic direct aldol reaction of α-oxyaldehydes is recently described. The summarized sequence is illustrated in Scheme 1.27 [45].

An interesting strategy for preparing KDO and 2-deoxy-KDO from 2,3-O-isopropylidene-D-glyceraldehyde was reported, based on a hetero Diels–Alder reaction, followed by pyranoside ring formation. Diol formation and double inversion at C-4 and C-5 produced the target molecules (Scheme 1.28) [46].

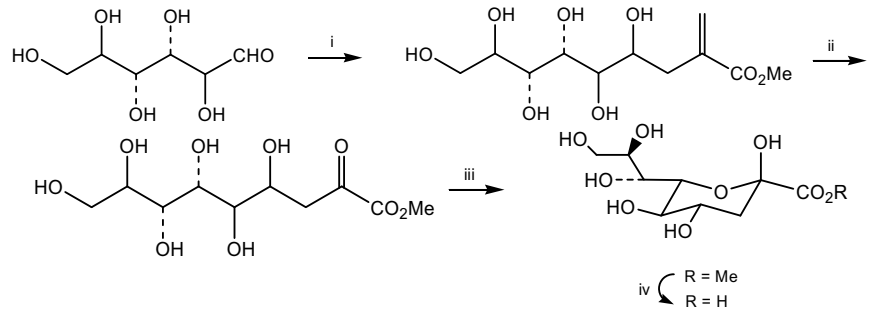
C-methylheptoses were suitable prepared from nonracemic butenolide as starting material. Asymmetric conjugate addition provided protected lactone which by methylation afforded α-methyl lactone. Each of them under DIBALH treatment, produced C-methylheptoses (Scheme 1.29) [47].

Naturally occurring sugar amino acids are another class of interesting modified carbohydrates found as structural components in nucleoside antibiotics. Most of them consist of N- and O-acyl derivatives of neuraminic acids, while other presents a sipo-hydantoin furanosides (Scheme 1.30) [48].

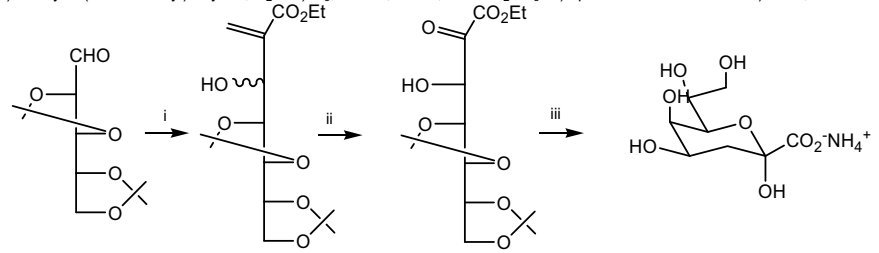
Some of these sugars amino acids have been synthesized via azide furanosides [49, 50], as it was the case for β-sugar amino acids shown in Scheme 1.31 [48].

1.5.2 C-Glycosyl Amino Acids

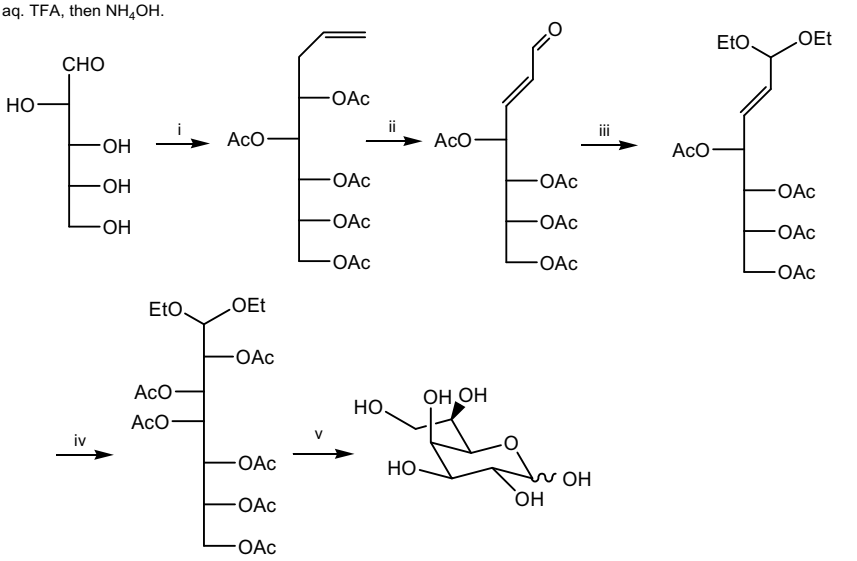
It has been mentioned that natural glycopeptides are classified into *O*-glycopeptides when the sugar residue establish an *O*-glycosyl linkage with *L*-Serine or *L*-Threonine and *N*-glycopeptides if the linkage is with Asparagine. There has been an increasing interest for preparing unnatural *C*-glyco amino acids as a potential building block in



i) methyl 2-(bromomethyl)acrylate, H_2O. ii) O_3, MeOH, -78°C, then Na_2SO_3. iii) spontaneous ciclization. iv) KOH, MeOH.

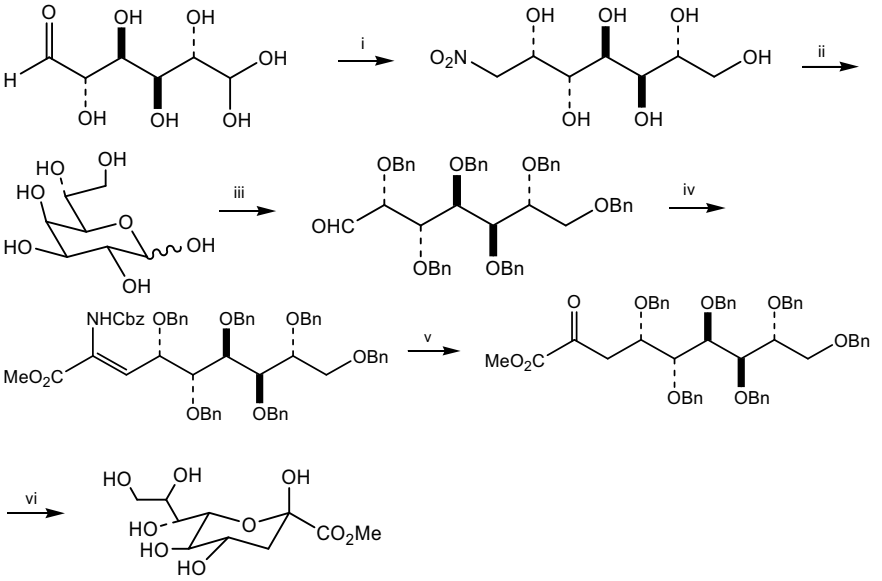


i) ethyl α-(bromomethyl)acrylate,10%formic acid, aq. MeCN. ii) O_3, MeOH, -78°C, then Me_2S, MeOH, -78°C to r.t.. iii) aq. TFA, then NH_4OH.



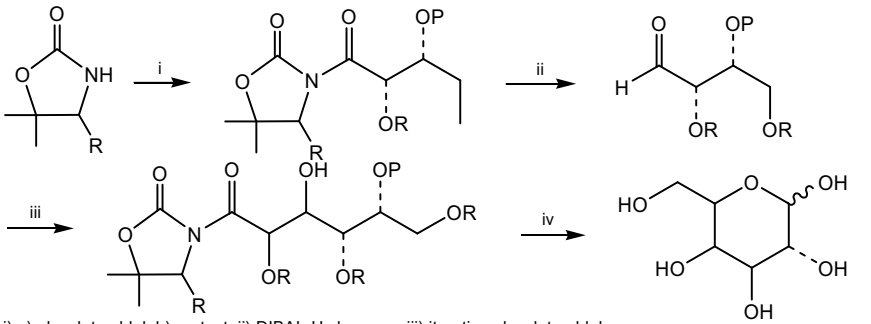
i) allyl bromide, ultrasonication, then Ac_2O, Py, DMAP. ii) OsO_4, KIO_4, then TBAF. iii) H_3O^+, $(HC(OEt)_3$. iv) OsO_4, NMO, then Ac_2O, Py, DMAP. v) NaOMe, MeOH, then H_3O^+.

Scheme 1.25 Chemical synthesis of sugar congeners from natural sugars



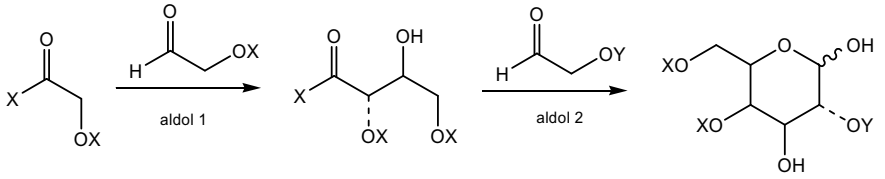
i) $MeNO_2$, DBU. ii) Nef oxidation iii) EtSH, HCl, then NaH, BnBr, DMF, then MeI, Na_2CO_3. iv) $(Et)_2P(O)CH(NHCBz)CO_2Me$, NaH, CH_2Cl_2. v) H_2, Pd-C. vi) H_2, $Pd(OH)_2$, then Dowex H^+, MeOH.

Scheme 1.25 (continued)

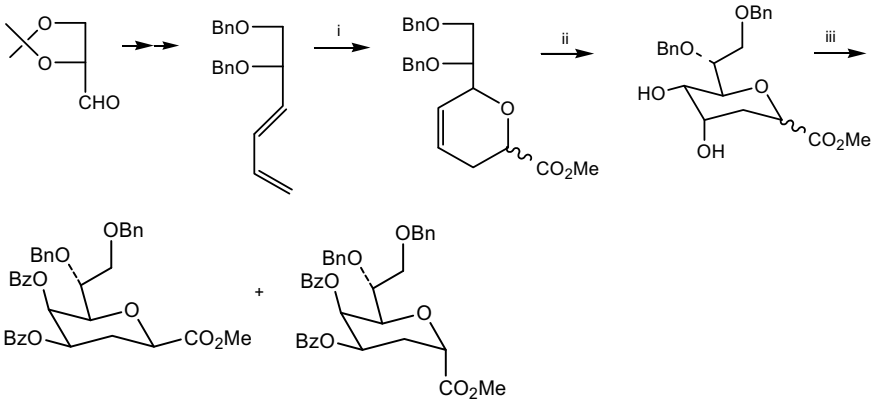


i) a) glycolate aldol. b) protect. ii) DIBAL-H cleavage. iii) iterative glycolate aldol. iv) cleavage and deprotection.

Scheme 1.26 Assymetric synthesis of D-galactose

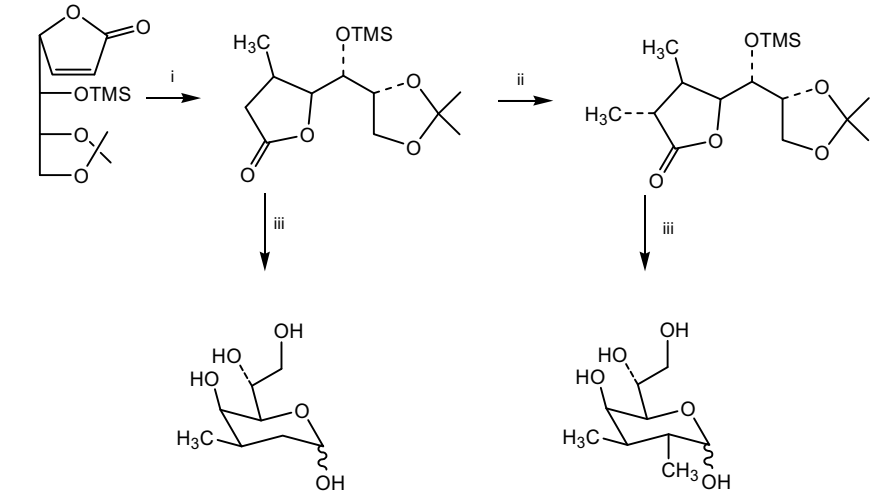


Scheme 1.27 Two-step carbohydrate synthesis



i) $HCOCO_2Bu$, 130°C, then MeOH, TsOH. ii) OsO_4, NMO. iii) Tf_2O, Py, then $PhCO_2NBu_4$.

Scheme 1.28 Synthesis of protected KDO and 2-deoxy-KDO



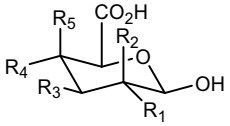
i) Me_2CuLi, CH_2Cl_2. ii) LiHDMS, THF, then MeI. DIBAlH, CH_2Cl_2, then 3N HCl, THF.

Scheme 1.29 Synthesis of-methylheptoses

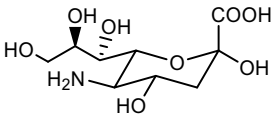
the assembling of modified glycopeptides that may serve in preparing therapeutically useful mimetics, with higher resistance to hydrolytic enzymes and also displaying superior properties that the natural ones.

A recent review describes methods for the preparation of C-glyosyl glycines, alanines, serines, asparagines tyrosines, and tryptophans [51].

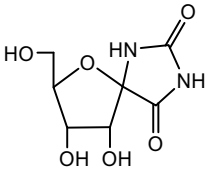
For instance the synthesis of ribofuranosyl glycine was described under Strecker conditions, starting from 2-(2,3,5-tri-*O*-benzyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-1,3-diphenylimidazolidine which was after hydrolysis tosylated and reacted with cyanide and peroxide to give the α-hydroxy amide as racemic mixture. The anomers were



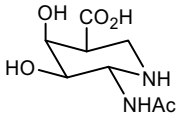
	R^1	R^2	R^3	R^4	R^5
glucosaminuronic acid	NH_2	H	OH	OH	H
galactosaminuronic acid	NH_2	H	OH	H	OH
monnosaminuronic acid	H	NH_2	OH	OH	H
4-amino-4-deoxy-glucuronic acid	OH	H	OH	NH_2	H



Neuraminic acid

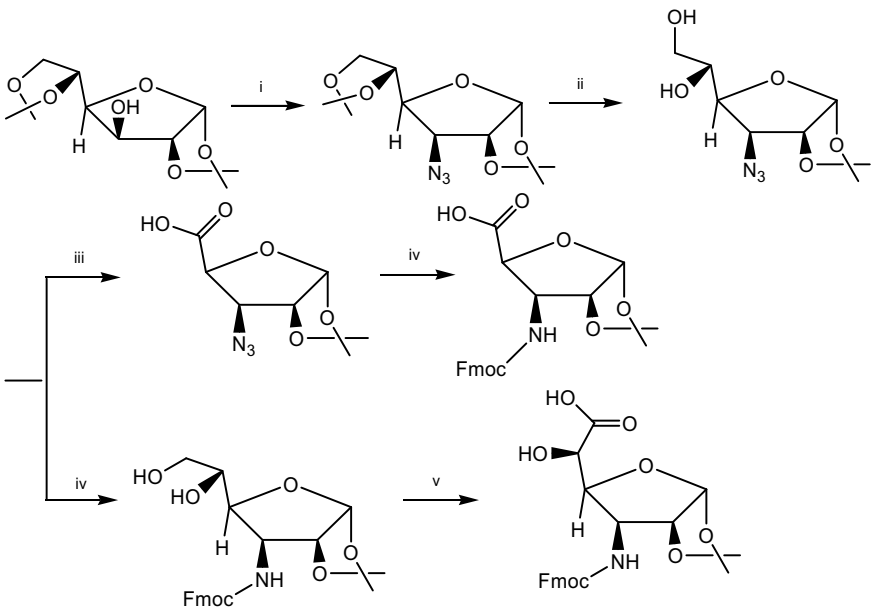


Hydantocidin



Siastatin B

Scheme 1.30 Naturally occurring sugar amino acids



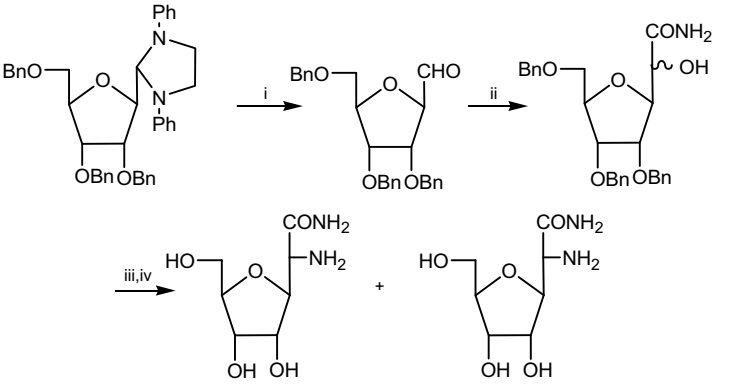
i) a) Tf_2O, Py. b) NaN_3, Bu_4NCl (cat.), 69%. ii) 77% AcOH, quant. iii) a) $NaIO_4$. b) $KMnO_4$, 50% AcOH, 90%. iv) H_2, Pd/C, FmocCl, $NaHCO_3$. v) NaOCl, TEMPO (cat.), KBr, $NaHCO_3$, Bu_4NCl, 62%.

Scheme 1.31 Synthesis of protected sugar amino acids

separated as *O*-mesyl derivatives which were transformed to the azide and further reduced to the corresponding ribofuranosyl glycines (Scheme 1.32) [52].

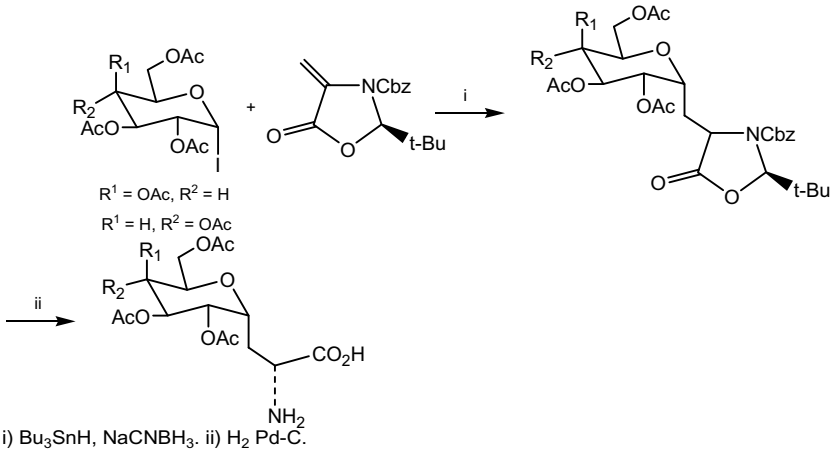
A method reported for the preparation of *C*-glycosyl alanines involves the use of (R)-methyleneoxazolidinone which was linked to the peracetylated iodosugars under promoted radical additions. The α-linked *C*-glycoside was subjected to hydrogenolysis to give α-D-galactosyl D-alanine and the α-D-glucosyl isomer (Scheme 1.33) [53].

C-analogues of glycosyl serines have been prepared by a number of methods and among them Strecker, Wittig, and Sharpless asymmetric aminohydroxylation reactions [54]. One of them describes their synthesis via coupling of anomeric pyridyl



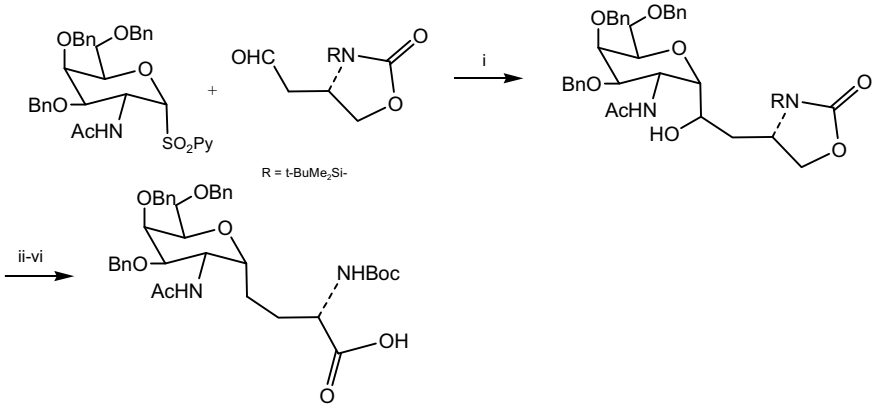
i) TsOH. ii) a) NaCN, K_2CO_3, H_2O. b) H_2O_2. 91%. iii) a) MsCl. b) LiN_3. iv) a) aq. HCl. b) H_2, Pd/C.

Scheme 1.32 Synthesis of anomeric ribofuranosyl glycines



i) Bu_3SnH, $NaCNBH_3$. ii) H_2 Pd-C.

Scheme 1.33 Synthesis of α-D-galactosyl D-alanine and the α-D-glucosyl isomers



i) SmI_2. 82% ii) deoxygenation. iii) TBA. iv) Boc_2O. Cs_2CO_3, MeOH. vi) Jones.

Scheme 1.34 Synthesis of C-glycosyl serine analog

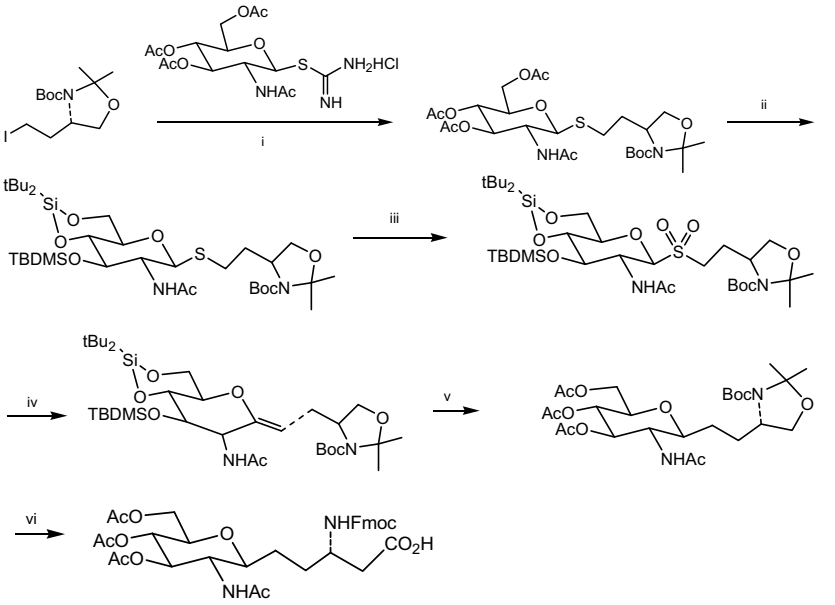
sulfone with an electrophiles center under samarium catalysis. The resulting C-glycosylation proceed with α-selectivity (3.3:1). Final deprotection produced the C-glycosyl serine analog in good yield (Scheme 1.34) [55].

More recently, the stereoselective synthesis of a *C*-glycoside analogue N-fmoc-serine β-N-acetylglucosaminide was described employing the Ramberg-Bäcklung (RB) rearrangement. This procedure involves the coupling reaction between isothiourea and protected iodide to produce thioglycoside in good yield. Oxidation to the sulfone was followed by the RB conditions KOH/Al_2O_3 in $tBuOH/(CBrF_2)_2$ at 50 °C affording the exoglycal derivative. Final steps which involves hydrogenolysis, deprotection and oxidation provided the desired C-glycosyl analog (Scheme 1.35) [56].

Alternatively C-glycosyl aminoacids can be prepared by coupling reaction between α-Gal iodide with oxazinone under basic medium to afford the C-glycoside heterocycle which was finally deprotected to provide the C-linked D-gluco- and D-galactopyranosyl L-serines in 70% yield (Scheme 1.36) [57].

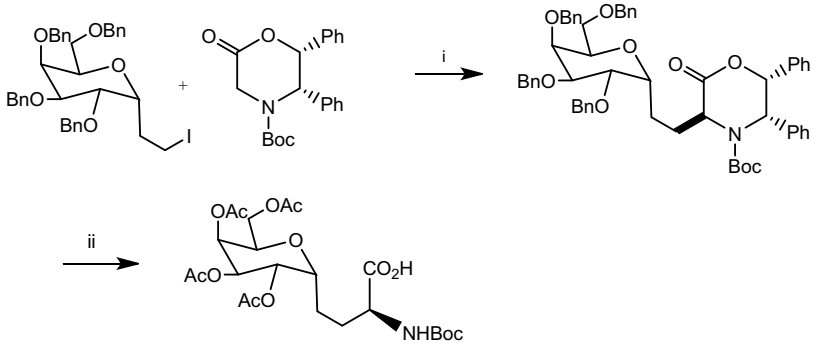
Also the successful cross-metathesis/cyclization strategy has been implemented for preparing C-glycosyl amino acids, by using gluco-heptenitol with partner, allyl glycine in the presence of Grubbs catalyst (Scheme 1.37) [58].

A protocol based on α-amination of C-glycosylalkyl aldehydes leading to axially and equatorially linked C-glycosyl α-amino acids (glycines, alanines, and CH_2-serine isosteres) with either S or R was introduced via hidrazino alcohol intermediates which were submited to hydrogenolysis and Jones oxidation to provide the desires Cglycosyl aminoacids (Scheme 1.38) [59].



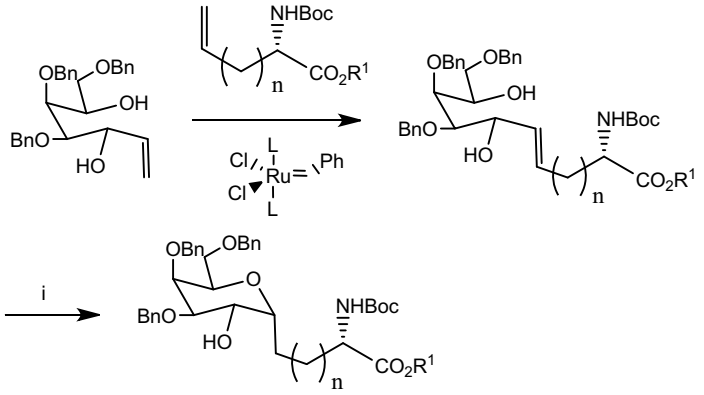
i) K_2CO_3, $Na_2S_2O_5$/acetone-H_2O, 98%. ii) a) Et_3N/MeOH-H_2O. b) $tBu_2Si(OTf)_2$, 2,6-lutidine/DMF, 88%. iii) mCPBA, Na_2HPO_4/CH_2Cl_2, 77%. iv) KOH/Al_2O_3, $CBrF_2CBrF_2$/tBuOH, 50ºC, 38%.
v) a) H_2, $Pd(OH)_2$/EtOAc, 78%. b) TBAF/THF. c) Ac_2O/Py, 68% (two steps). vi) a) TFA/$CHCl_3$.
b) FmocCl/*i*PrNEt/CH_2Cl_2-MeOH, 69% (two steps). c) Jones oxidation/acetone, 77%.

Scheme 1.35 Synthesis of C-glycoside serine analogue by Ramberg-Bäcklung rearrangement

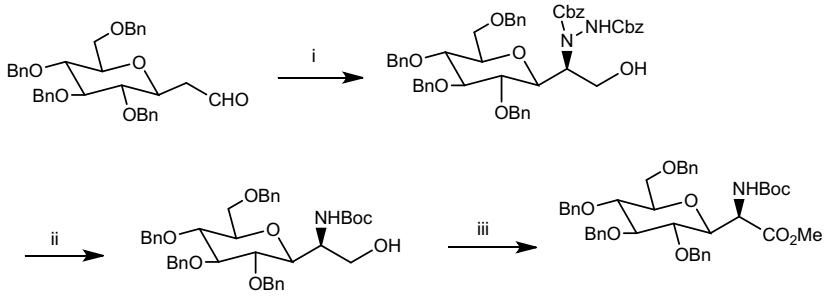


i) LiHMDS, THF, HMPA. ii) a) Li, NH_3 b) CH_2N_2. c) Ac_2O, Py

Scheme 1.36 Synthesis of C-glycosyl aminoacids via oxazinone intermediate



Scheme 1.37 Synthesis of C-glycosyl aminoacids via cross-metathesis/cyclization strategy



i) L-proline, DBAD, CH_3CN, 0°C. ii) $NaBH_4$, CH_3CN, 0°C. ii) a) H_2, Ni-Raney MeOH-HOAc, rt. b) Boc_2O-$NaHCO_3$, dioxane, rt. iii) Jones, acetone 0°C. CH_2N_2, Et_2O, 0°C

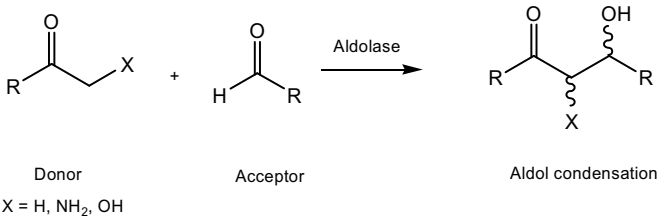
Scheme 1.38 Synthesis of C-glycosyl aminoacids from C-glycosylalkyl aldehydes

1.5.3 Enzymatic Synthesis

The enzymatic synthesis of monosaccharides and carbohydrates mimetics by enzyme catalysts is performed mainly by a group of lyases known as aldolases. This enzymes effects the conversion of hexoses from their three-carbon components via an aldol condensation [60]. There are over 30 aldolases identified and isolated, being classified in two types depending on the mechanism involved. Aldolase type 1 and type 2 which is Zn-dependent. The general reaction that they catalyze is the stereospecific addition of a ketone donor to an aldehyde acceptor (Scheme 1.39).

The aldolases used for synthetic purposes are classified in five groups depending on the ketone donor and the products formed.

Dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) aldolase



Scheme 1.39 General scheme of enzymatic-mediated aldol condensation

Pyruvate aldolase
2-Deoxyribose 5-phosphate aldolase
Glycine aldolase
Other aldolases.

Examples of each of them are indicated in figure:

Aldolases have been also very useful for the preparation of a variety of common and uncommon monosaccharides. Fructose-1,6-diphosphate (FDP) aldolase effects the conversion of dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) and glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate (G3P) to D-fructose-1,6-diphosphate (FDP). Table 1.4 summarize the natural substrates, de donors and the products obtained through this reaction. Broken lines indicates the bond formed or broken [61].

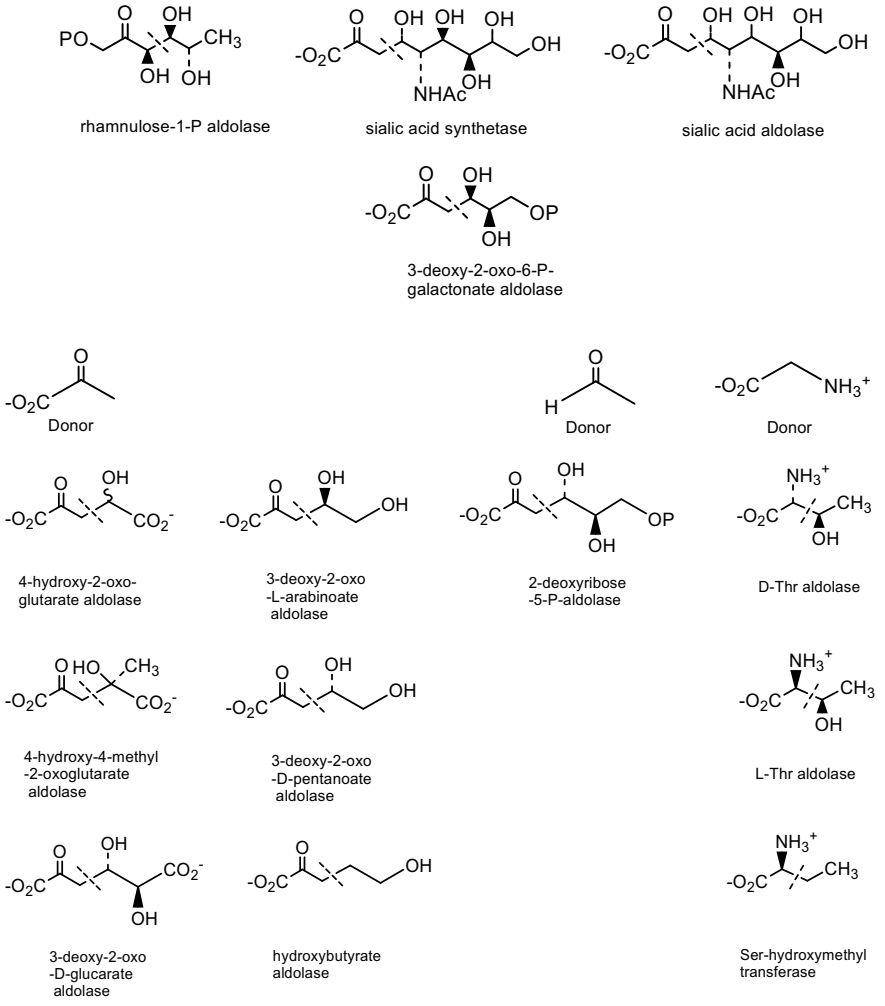
DHAP-aldolases catalyze the reversible asymmetrical aldol condensation of DHAP to L-lactaldehyde or to D-glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P). There are four types of DHAP aldolase which are classified on the basis of the condensation product formed. D-fructose 1,6-diphosphate (D-FDP) aldolase, which condense DHP with G3P. D-Tagatose 1,6-diphosphate (TDP) which utilize the same substrates, Fuculose 1-phosphate, catalyzing the condensation reaction between DHAP and L-lactaldehyde to produce L-fucolose 1-phosphate, and L-rhamnulose 1-phosphate aldolase which recognize the same substrates to produce l-rhamnulose 1-phosphate (Scheme 1.40) [61].

Likewise, DHAP-dependend aldolases are involved in the incorporation of dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) on pentose and hexose phosphate introducing consequently three carbons and two quiral centers (Scheme 1.41) [62].

Another enzymatic aldol type reaction takes place on N-acetylneuraminic acid also known as sialic acid which after a reversible aldol reaction of N-acetyl-D-mannosamine and pyruvate produce N-acetyl-5-amino-3,5-dideoxy-D-glycero-D-galacto-2-nonulosonic acid (NeuAc) (Scheme 1.42) [63].

Ketoses can be transformed to Aldoses through the use of isomerases [64]. In this way glucose derivatives can be obtained from fructose as shown in Scheme 1.43 [65].

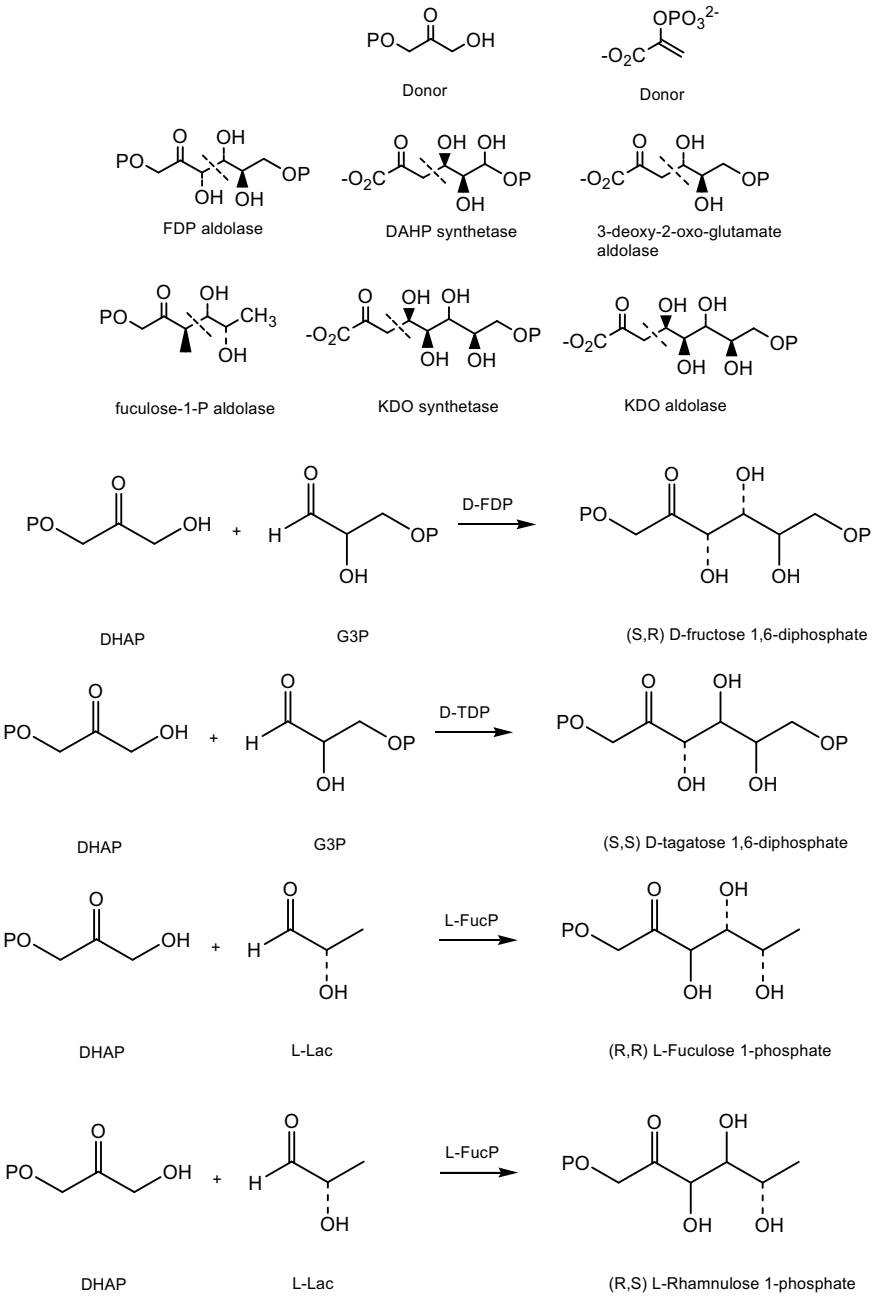
Table 1.4 Natural substrates for aldolases



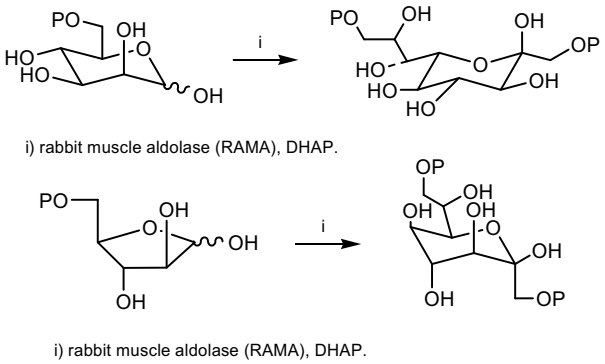
1.5.4 Chemoenzymatic Synthesis

The chemoenzymatic approach is a combination of the chemical and the enzymatic methodologies and intends to explode the versatility and availability of the chemical reagents with the high stereo- and regioselectivity of the enzymes when they act as catalyst.

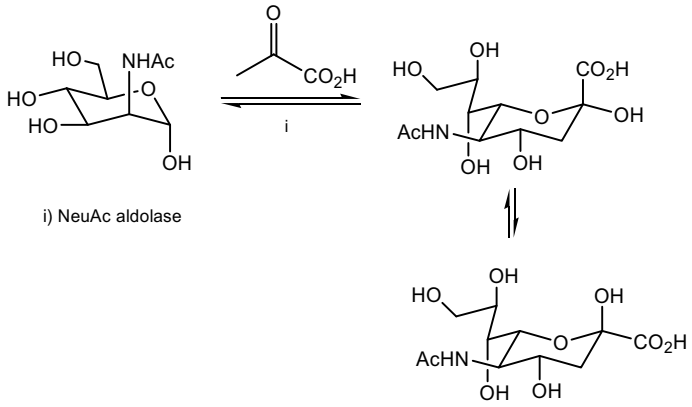
For instance the enzymatic synthesis of dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) is too expensive on large scale, and therefore the combined approach becomes the best choice. The reported procedure consist in the phosphorylation of dihydroxyacetone dimmer with $(PhO)_2POCl$ followed by hydrolysis of the dimmer to generate



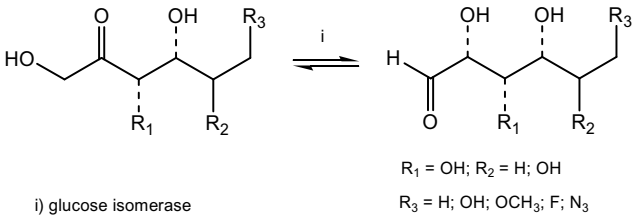
Scheme 1.40 DHAP-dependent aldolases



Scheme 1.41 Enzymatic preparation pentose and hexose phosphate

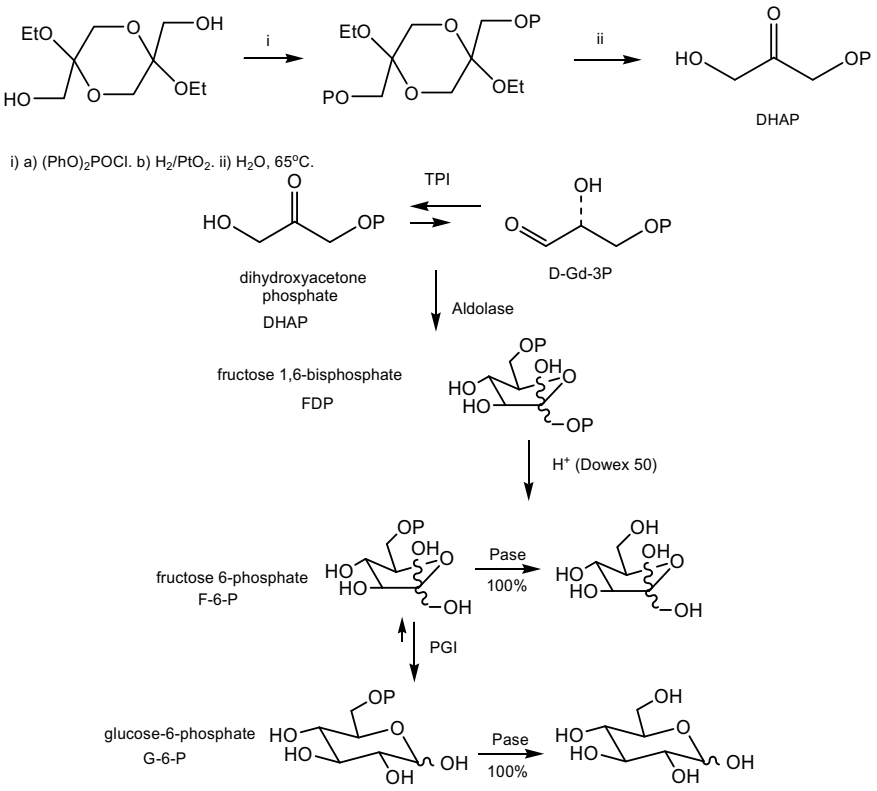


Scheme 1.42 Enzymatic preparation of sialic acid analogs



Scheme 1.43 Enzymatic isomerization of fructose to glucose derivatives

dihydroxyacetone phosphate in 61% yield [66]. The chemically prepared DHAP is then used as an important material for the synthesis of natural monosaccharides and carbohydrates mimetics (Scheme 1.44).



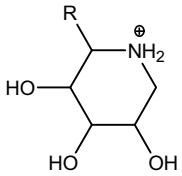
Scheme 1.44 Chemoenzymatic preparation of glucose

1.6 Synthesis of Carbohydrates Mimetics

1.6.1 Iminosugars

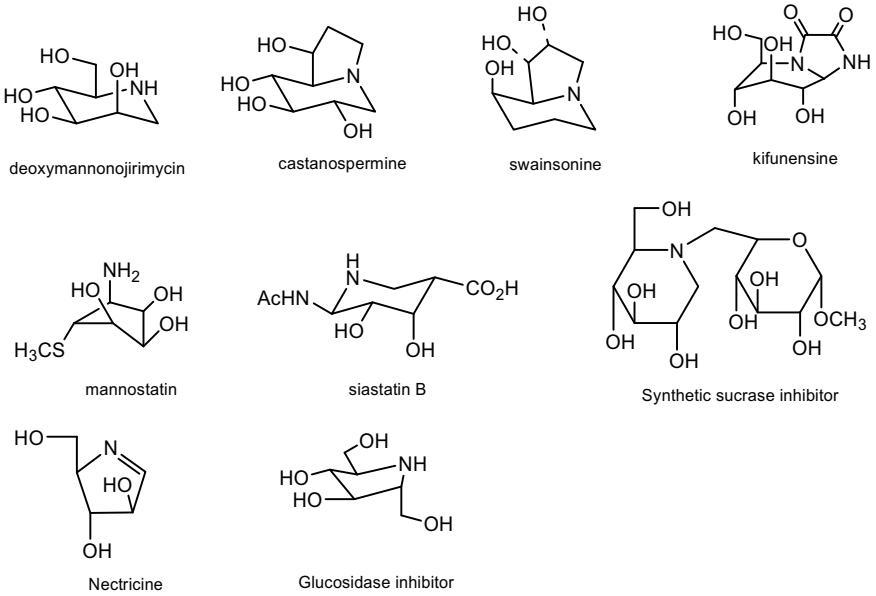
This class of isosteric sugars also recognized as azasugars have been the subject of intense study because their significant activity as α-glycosidase inhibitor, which is a promising strategy in the treatment against diabetes mellitus type II and other glycosidase associated disorders. It is believed that the mechanism for glycosidase inhibition and to some extend for glycosyltransferases involves the binding of the aza sugars to the active site by charge-charge and hydrogen bond interactions [67]. A significant variety and diversity of either naturally occurring or synthetic aza sugars with glycosidase and glycosyltransferase inhibition activity have been reported [68–71]. The common feature of these derivatives is the replacement by chemical or enzymatic methods of the cyclic oxygen by a nitrogen atom. The representative example is known as deoxynojirimycin (Scheme 1.45) which has shown strong inhibition against a variety of α-glycosidases.

Scheme 1.45 Iminosugar deoxynojirimycin

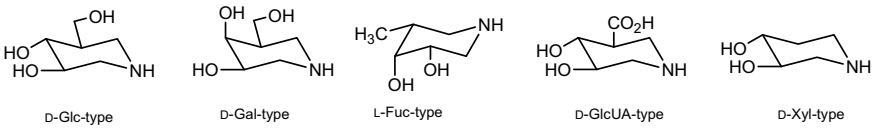


Representative examples of natural and synthetic aminoglucosidos implicated in inflammation, metastasis and blocking infection processes are depicted in Scheme 1.46.

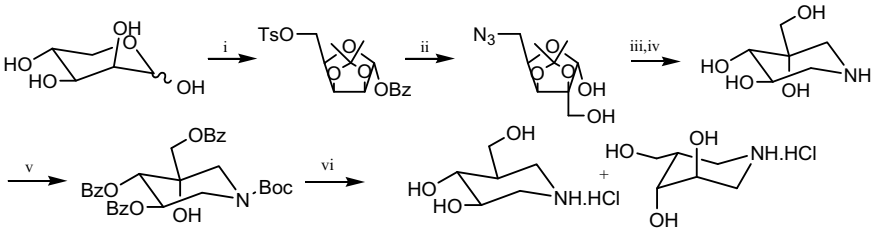
Series of 1-N-iminosugars including D-glucose-type, D-galactose-type, L-fucose-type, D-glucuronic acid-type, and D-xylose-type were synthesized and evaluated as glycosidase inhibitors (Scheme 1.47).



Scheme 1.46 Representative aminosaccharides



Scheme 1.47 Series of 1-N-iminosugars



i) a) Me_2CO, H_2SO_4. b) TsCl/Py, 0oC to r.t. c) BzCl/Py. ii) NaN_3/DMSO, 100°C.
iii) a) NaOMe/MeOH. b) K_2CO_3/HCHO-MeOH. iv) a) H_2 $Pd(OH)_2$/MeOH. b) 1N HCl.
v) a) Boc_2O/Et_3N/MeOH. b) BzCl/Py. vi) a) MeOCOCOCl/DMAP/CH_3CN. b) Bu_3SnH VAZO/CH_3Ph. c) SiO_2-iPrOH/H_2O/NH_2OH.

Scheme 1.48 Synthesis of 1-N iminosugars

A general procedure for the preparation of 1-N-iminosugars consisted in the azido substitution of a 5-tosyl-1-*O*-benzoate, followed by aldol reaction, Perlman hydrogenation and cyclization (Scheme 1.48) [72].

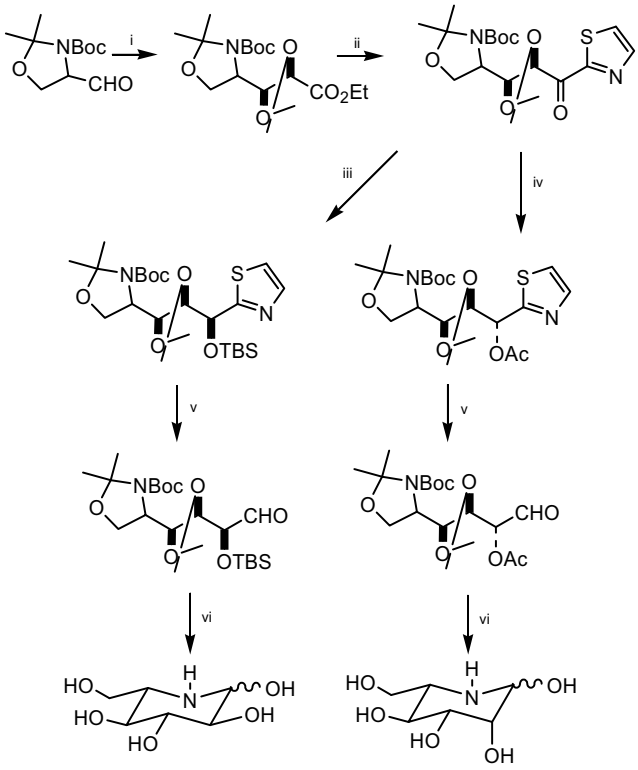
Another chemical approach described for the preparation of iminosugars consisted in the use of protected L-serinal which was subjected to Wittig elongation, diol formation and 2-lithiothiazole treatment, to produce a common thiazole derivative. This intermediate under the appropriate conditions will give access to L-(−)-nojirimycin or L-(−)-mannonojirimycin (Scheme 1.49) [73].

Chemoenzymatic preparation of glycosidase inhibitors Deoxynojirimycin and Deoxymannojirimycin was described by using RAMA-aldolase for the aldol condensation and hydrogenolysis for azide reduction and ring formation (Scheme 1.50) [74].

Significant achievements have been made for the synthesis of aza sugars based on aldolase reactions particulary fructose-1,6-diphosphate [42], 2-deoxyribose-5-phosphate [75], fuculose-1-phosphate [76], sialic acid aldolase, and Pd/C-mediated reductive amination (Scheme 1.51).

As mentioned, some fused iminosugar possess high significance as alpha glucosidase I inhibitors, such as swainsonine, nagstain, celgosivir as well as iminosugar C-glycosides. The synthesis of new iminosugars β-C-heterocyclic glycosides having coumarin, quinolinonyl and naphthoquinonyl groups were prepared following a one-pot synthetic pathway starting from D-ribose tosylate with amines, and suitable heterocyclic molecule, affording iminosugar β-C-heterocyclicl glycoside in 75% (Scheme 1.52) [77].

Other iminosugars described are 6-Amino-2,6-dideoxy-α-Kdo from d-Mannose in 11 steps [78], 1-C-perfluoroalkyl iminosugars [79], L-idonojirimycin derivatives [80], iminosugar alkaloid calystegine B2 from methyl α-d-xylopyranoside [81], 1,6-di-deoxy-d-galacto and 1,6-di-deoxy-l-altro nojirimycin derivatives [82] (Scheme 1.53).



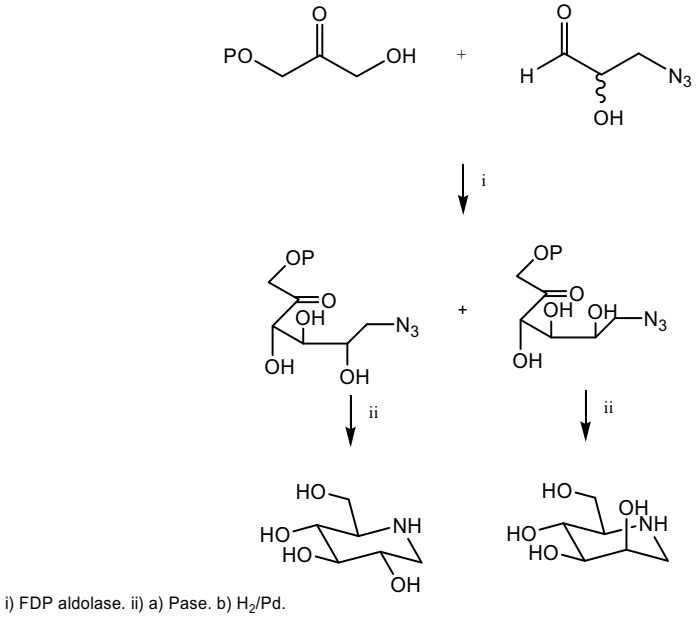
i) a) Ph_3PCHCO_2Et, b) OsO_4, NMO, c) DMP, TsOH. ii) 2-lithiothiazole, Et_2O iii) a) $NaBH_4$. b) TBSCl, imidazole iv) a) Red-Al, toluene, b) Ac_2O, Py, DMAP. v) a) MeI, MeCN. b) $NaBH_4$ c) $HgCl_2$, MeCN, H_2O. vi) TFA, H_2O.

Scheme 1.49 Chemical synthesis of L-(−)-nojirimycin and L-(−)mannonojirimycin

1.6.2 Aminosugars

Aminosugars are another class of naturally and non-naturally sugars which might be considered distinct to the previous in that the nitrogen is exocyclic. Their significance is clearly seen in a family of aminoglycoside antibiotics such as neomycin, kanamycin which are widely used against both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. Although there is no unified protocol for the synthesis of aminosugars, they have been roughly classified in (a) non-azido (Scheme 1.54) and (b) azido approaches (Scheme 1.55) [83].

(a) The non-azido methodologies usually involves the introduction of an amino group at C-2, and glycals are usually the starting materials.
(b) The azido approach is a more common procedure for amino introduction on sugars due its relative stability, good solubility in organic media, and easy conversion to amines through catalytic hydrogenolysis. Some of the methods



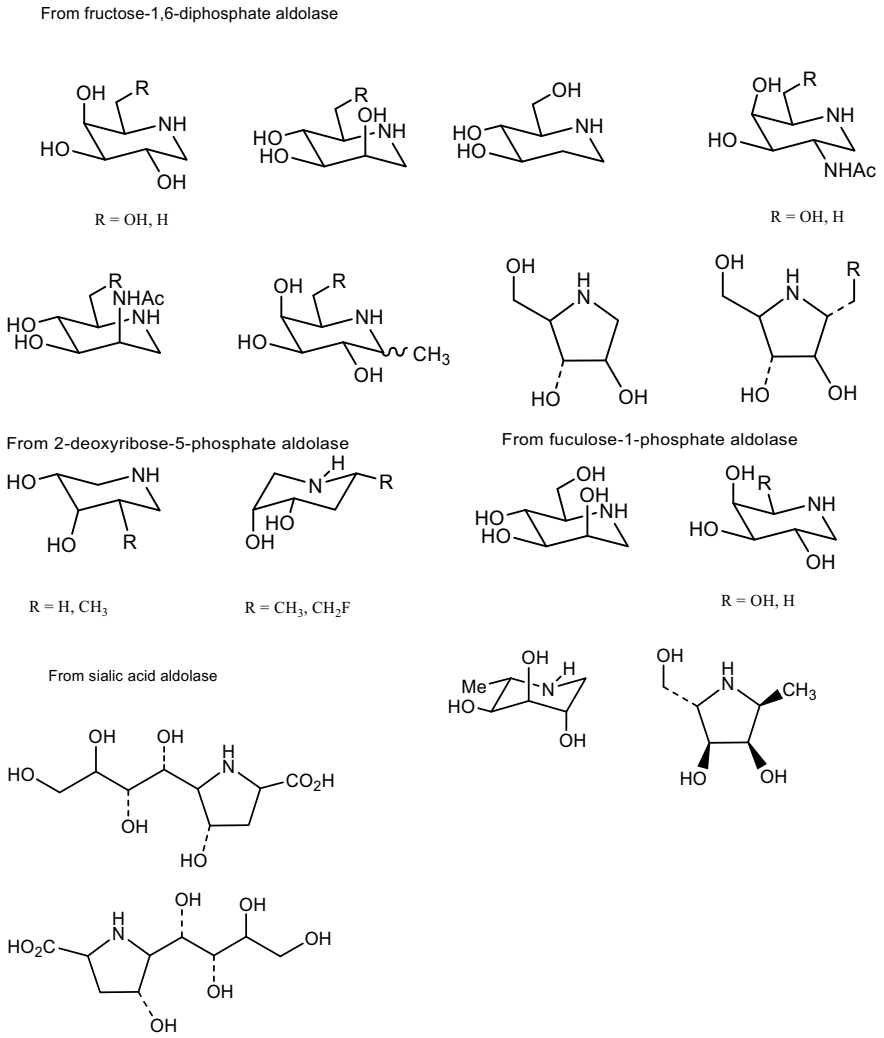
Scheme 1.50 Chemoenzymatic synthesis of iminosugar

reported involves the use of glycals, or protected saccharides containing free primary or secondary alcohols (Scheme 1.55).

Epimerization of hydroxyl groups can be achieved by following an oxidation-reduction sequence in which a secondary alcohol is converted into a keto group, followed by stereoselective hydride reduction and nucleophilic substitution. It has been observed that epimerization by following the Mitsunobu protocol has not been probed satisfactory due steric hindrance of the secondary hydroxyl groups on the pyranose ring [83].

Glycoside bond formation on aminosugars is relevant because many wide spread natural or semisynthetic are potent and broad spectrum aminoglycosides antibiotics also displaying potential antiviral activity (Scheme 1.56) [93, 94].

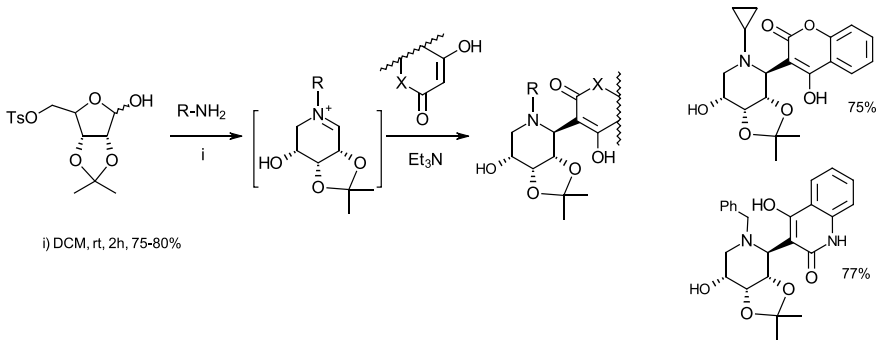
Azithromycin reached preponderance because his positive effects against Covid SARS-2 at the early stage and has been indicated along with macrocyclc lactone disaccharide ivermectin and pain killer ibuprofen as combined treatment for attenuation of the disease [95]a. The key reaction for the glycosydic linkage of the aminosugars present in azithromycin are showed in (Scheme 1.57) [95]b.



Scheme 1.51 Aza sugars prepared by aldolase reactions

1.6.3 Thiopyranoside Monosaccharides

Thiosugars are another class of interesting carbohydrate mimetics. The synthesis of these derivatives can be achieved by using aldolases RAMA for the aldol condensation reaction. The following reaction sequence was used successfully for the preparation of deoxygluco, manno, galacto and altropyranosides (Scheme 1.58) [96]. Another strategy for the synthesis of thiosugars involves the replacement of one of



Scheme 1.52 Synthesis of iminosugars β-C-heterocyclic glycosides

the oxygen atoms at the anomeric carbon of the glycoside by a sulfur atom leading to two distinctly different thiosugars, namely a 5-thio and 1-thioglycosides [97].

The synthesis of S-linked oligosaccharides have been described and the approaches differs basically depending weather the sulfur atom is attached at the glycosyl acceptor moiety or at the anomeric position of the glycosyl donor. As an example of the first approach the synthesis of S-linked oligoxylans was reported through coupling reaction between benzoyl trichloroacetimidate with thiol glycosyl acceptor, producing protected thio disaccharide which was converted to thio disaccharide trichloroacetimidates donor being condensed to benzoyl disaccharide acceptor affording protected thio tetrasacharide which was finally deprotected under basic conditions to provide the target S-linked tetraxylan (Scheme 1.59) [98].

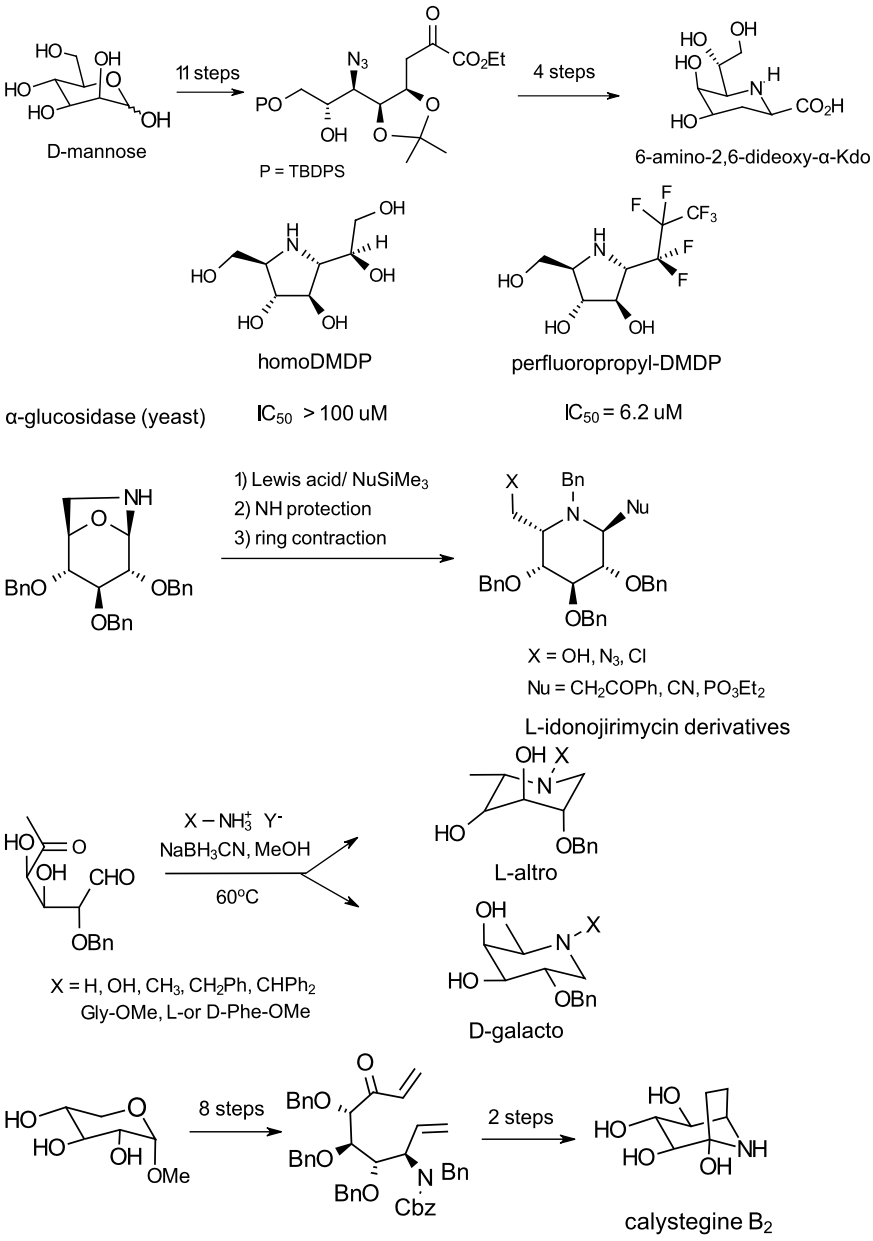
The preparation of α-S-linked maltooligomers was reported following a photoinitiated thiol-ene coupling reactions of 2-acetoxy-glucals and 4- thioglucose derivatives providing S-linked tetra and pentasaccharides. Based on the concept that radical addition of thiols to alkenes was feasible under radiation conditions, 2-acetoxyglucal was condensed to α-S-linked disaccharide in the presence of 2,2-dimethoxy-2-phenylacetophenone.

(DPAP) providing α-S-linked trisaccharide which was selectively S-deacetylated to yield Phenyl-O-acetyl-tetrathio-β-D-maltotrioside (Scheme 1.60) [99].

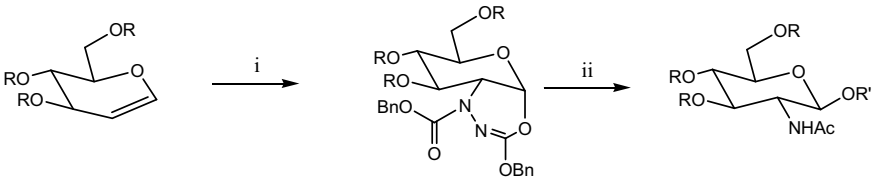
Another approach introduced for preparing S-linked oligosaccharides consist in the coupling reaction of protected *tert* butyldimethylsilyl thio phenyl donor with disulfide acceptor via umpolung S-glycosylation β-S-linked disaccharide in 47% yield. The resulting S-linked disaccharide was coupled in the presence of lithium 4,4′-di-tert-butylbiphenyl (LiDBB) with asymmetric disulfide acceptor to produce protected trisaccharide thioglycoside (Scheme 1.61) [100].

The synthesis of S-linked saccharides has been also explored with unprotected glycosyl donors and acceptors. This is the case of reaction between glucopyranosyl fluoride and 6-SH methyl glucopyranoside, obtaining the highest yield using $(CaOH)_2$ in aqueous media at room temperature (Scheme 1.62) [101].

The pioneering enzymatic approach for the generation of thiol linkage between saccharides has been also implemented although with glycosidase mutants using

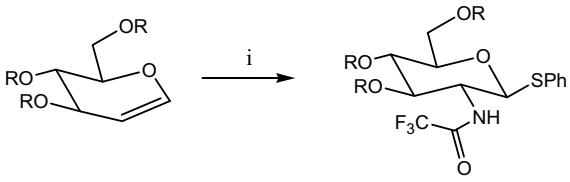


Scheme 1.53 Grafical representation of 6-Amino-2,6-dideoxy-α-Kdo, 1-C-perfluoroalkyl iminosugars, L-idonojirimycin derivatives, 1,6-di-deoxy-d-galacto and 1,6-di-deoxy-l-altro nojirimycin derivatives, and alkaloid calystegine B2



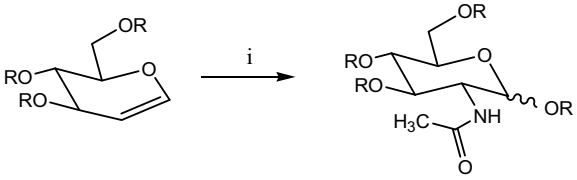
i) $BnO_2C{-}N{=}N{-}CO_2Bn$, hv. ii) a) R'OH, Lewis acid b) Raney Ni. 3) Ac_2O, Py

ref. [84]



i) (saltmen)Mn(N)$(CF_3CO)_2O$. ii) PhSH/BF_3-OEt_2

ref. [85]

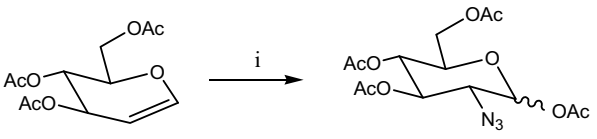


i) a) thianthrene -5-oxide, $AcNHSiMe_3$, Tf_2O, Et_2NPh. b) Amberlyst -15, HOR.

ref. [86]

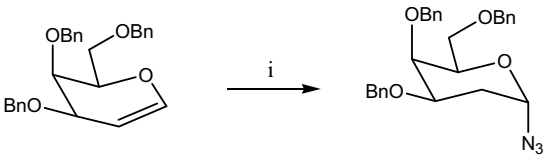
Scheme 1.54 Non-azido methods for the preparation of aminosacharides [84–86]

dinitrophenyl or fluoride donors. Thus, S-linkage selectivity could be drive to the α- or β-anomers depending on the type of engineered glycosidase employed, specifically β-glycosidase from *Agrobacterium sp.* Abg E171A and β-mannosidase from *Cellulomonas fimi* Man2A E429A, using 2,4-dinitrophenyl β-d-glycopyranoside (DNP-Glc) as donor, and p-nitro-phenyl 4-deoxy-4-thio-β-d-glucopyranoside as acceptor β-glycosidase [102]. For the S-linked having the α-stereoselectivity the α-glycosidase mutants used were α-xylosidase from *E. coli* (YicI), and α-glucosidase from *Sulfolobus solfataricus* (MalA), while α-D-xylopyranosyl fluoride was used as donor, and p-nitro-phenyl 4-deoxy-4-thio-β-d-glucopyranoside as acceptor (Scheme 1.63) [103].



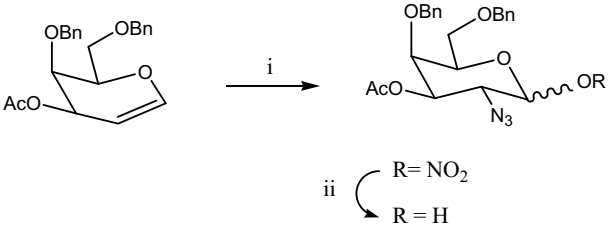
i) ClN_3, CH_2Cl_2 $(PhCO_2)_2$

ref [87]



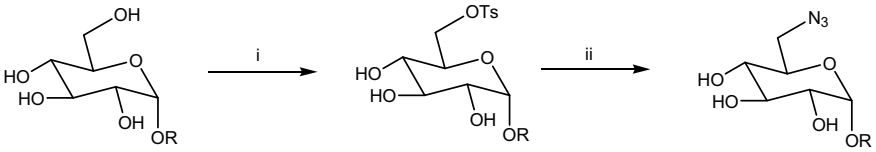
i) Me_3SiN_3, Me_3SiONO_2

ref [88]



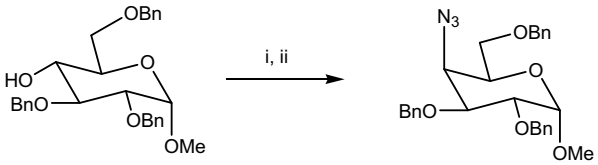
i) CAN, NaN_3, CH_3CN, -15°C, 45%. PhSH, DIEA, 91%.

ref [89]



i) TsCl, Py, r.t. ii) NaN_3, DMF

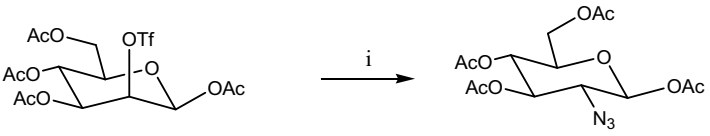
ref. [1]



i) Tf_2O, Py/ CH_2Cl_2. ii) NaN_3, DMF

ref [90]

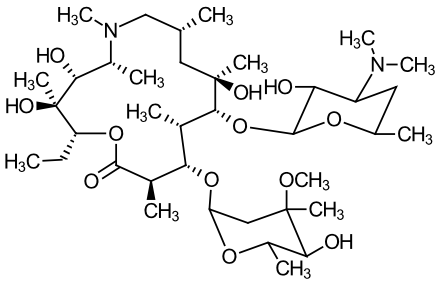
Scheme 1.55 Azido methods for the preparation of aminosacharides [1, 87–92]



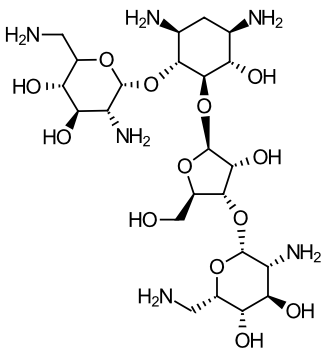
i) NaN_3, DMF

ref [91,92]

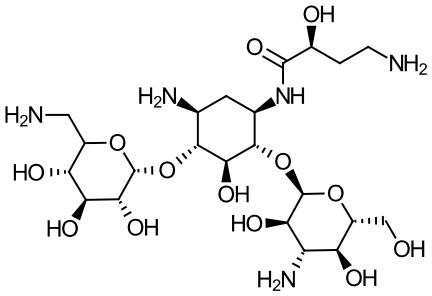
Scheme 1.55 (continued)



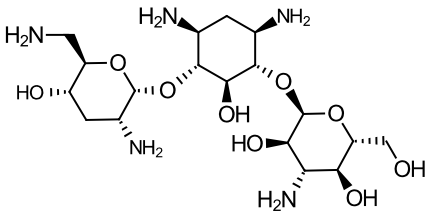
Azithromycin



Neomycin B



Amikacin

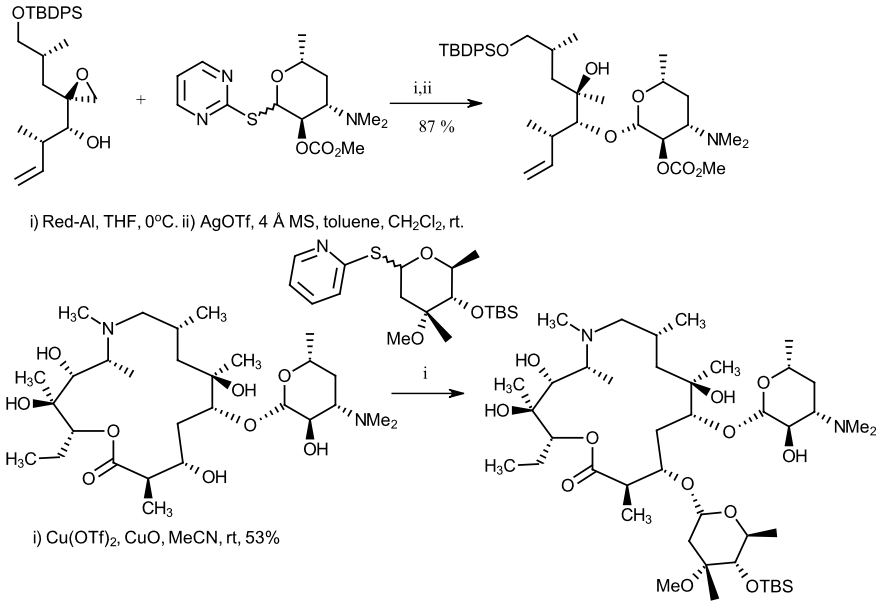


Tobramycin

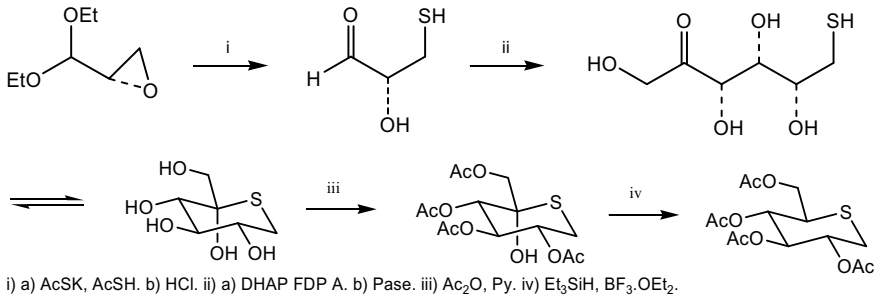
Scheme 1.56 Representative aminoglycosides with antibiotic and antiviral activity

1.6.4 Carbapyranoside-Saccharides

More recently this type of sugar mimics have received increasing attention since some of them present α-glucosidase activity and therefore considered for therapies for non-insuline dependent diabetes mellitus. Also they have been found to be active as agricultural antibiotics, and because of their recognition by glycosidases and glycosyltransferases as substrates and stability against enzymatic degradation,



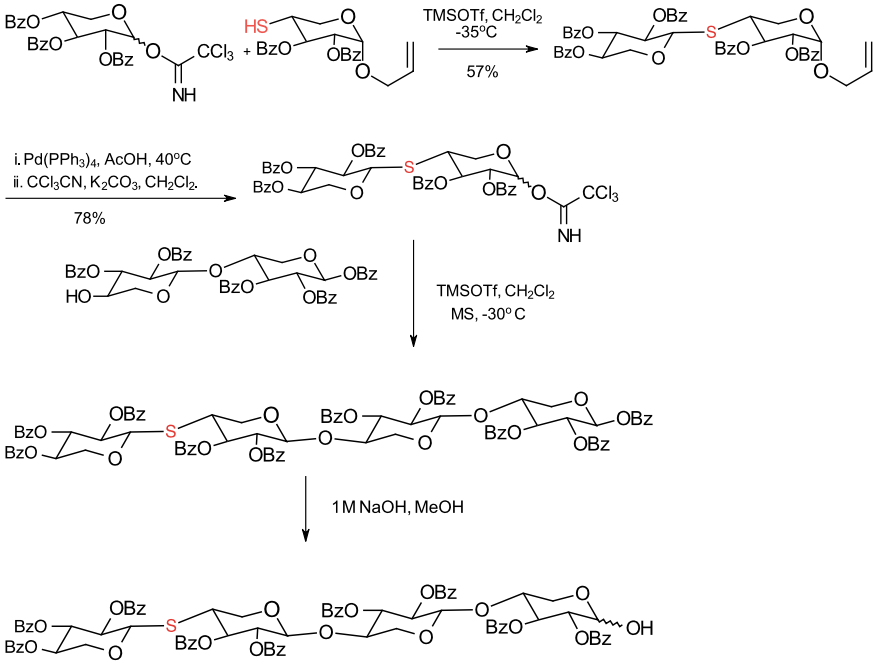
Scheme 1.57 Glycoside bond formation in azithromycin synthesis



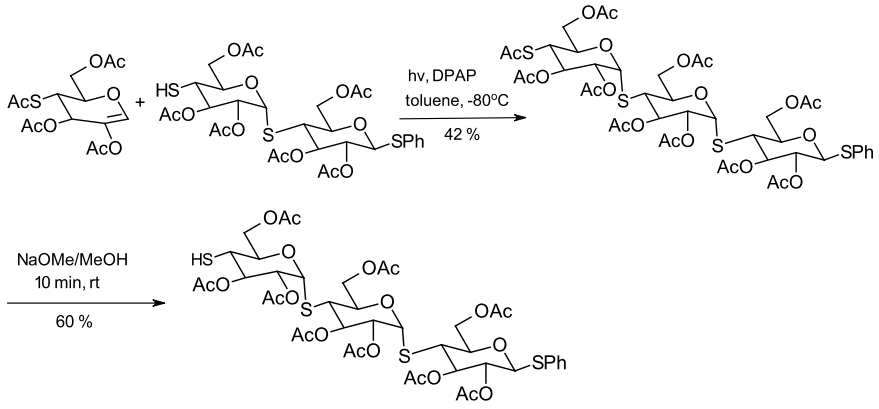
Scheme 1.58 Synthesis of thiomonosaccharides

they have been used also to study oligosaccharide-chain biosynthesis [104, 105]. The pseudotetrasaccharide Acarbose (Scheme 1.64) has been the first α-glucosidase inhibitor to be explored in humans as an antidiabetic agent along with the amino sugar 1-desoxynojirimycin Miglitol.

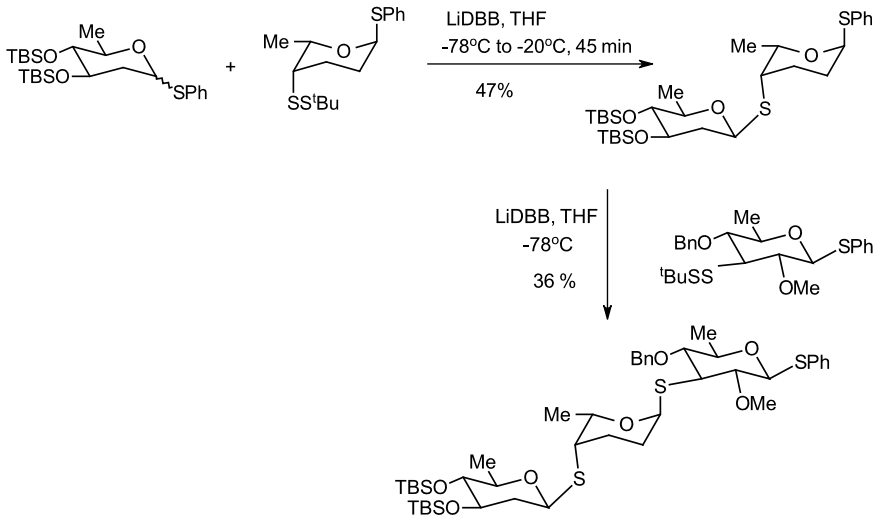
It has been described the chemical synthesis of carbamaltose, carbacellobiose and related carbadisaccharides of biological interest according to the pathway indicated in Scheme 1.65 [106].



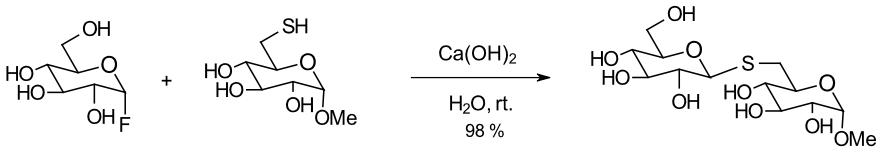
Scheme 1.59 Synthesis of S-linked tetraxylan



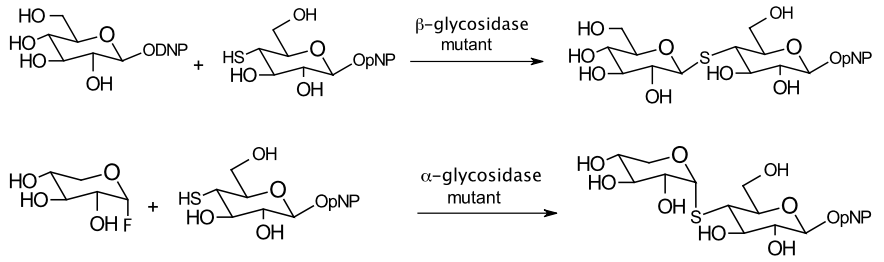
Scheme 1.60 The thiol-ene coupling reaction for the preparation of phenyl-O-acetyl-tetrathio-β-D-maltotrioside



Scheme 1.61 Synthesis of S-linked trisaccharide derhodinosylurdamycin A analogue



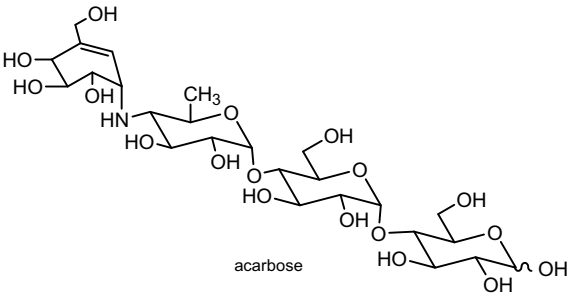
Scheme 1.62 Synthesis of S-linked saccharides using unprotected glycosyl donor and thio acceptor under basic-aqueous conditions



Scheme 1.63 Enzymatic synthesis of α-linked and β-linked thioglycosides

Pseudo-N-acetyllactosaminides were found to be acceptors substrates for human-milk α-(1 → 3/4)-fucosyltransferase. A small scale reaction of the mentioned pseudodisaccharides with GDF-fucose resulted in conversion to pseudotrisaccharides (Scheme 1.66) [104].

Scheme 1.64
Pseudotetrasaccharide
Acarbose



1.7 Glycoside Reactivity

The reactivity for the anomeric carbon C(1) is the typical for acetals and therefore the nucleophilic addition may occur. On the other hand, the other hydroxyl groups behave typically for alcohols. For coupling reaction with sugars the anomeric carbon is involved to produce a glycosidic bond, and usually must be activated with a good leaving group in order to form a new linkage (Scheme 1.67).

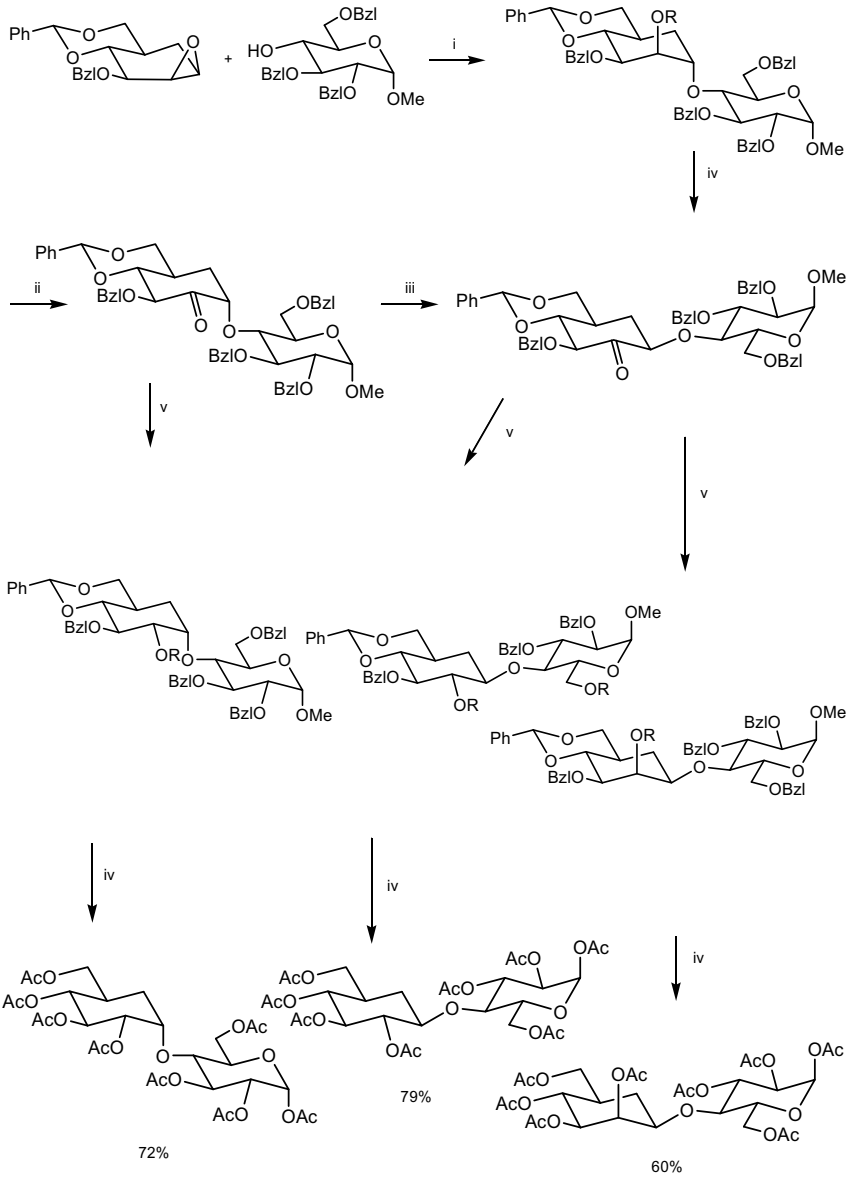
A glycoside is formed when the anomeric carbon of a sugar is connected through an heteroatom (except with *C*-glycosides) with an aliphatic or aromatic fragment known as aglycon.

The glycosidic bond is formed when a nucleophile (alcohol, amine, thiol or carbanion) substitutes the hydroxyl group at the anomeric position, which has been previously substituted by a good leaving group. Therefore, when the nucleophiles are an alcohol, amine or carbanion, *O*-, *N*-, or *C*-glycosides are generated as result, as can be observed in Scheme 1.68.

Molecular dynamic analysis was carried out on the glycosylation reaction between gluclosyl α-trichloroacetimidate with isopropyl alcohol show the transition state intermediate and the free energy of starting, transition state and product of S_N1 and S_N2 reaction paths (Scheme 1.69) [107].

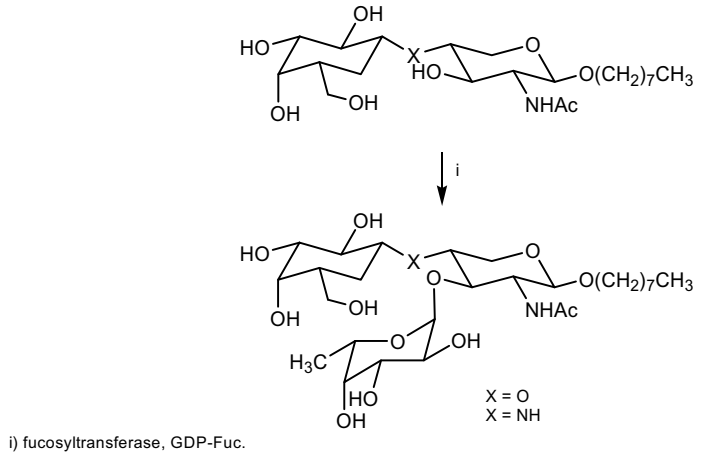
The consensus that glycosyl reactivity and stereoselectivity is attributed to glycosyl donor, glycosyl acceptors and reaction conditions including the use of catalyst, stimulate different groups for trying to establish the contribution of the parameters. Some general facts that appear critical for glycosyl donors are that an equilibrium between the covalent and ionic forms can be established depending on the solvent polarity and other conditions involved (Scheme 1.70) [108].

Another aspect that brings great attention besides stereoselectivity deals with the regioselectivity concept where the glycosidic linkage prefers one position between different available in the acceptor part. In an attempt to determine the influence of variables such as temperature, solvents and time reaction an influence a block diagram was establish to predict a tendency. The block diagram in Scheme 1.71 represents those conditions considered permanent, the environmental and the variables influencing the glycosidic reactivity with some examples provided [109].



i) DMF, NaH, 15-crown-5 ether, 50°C, 60% ii) DMSO, Ac_2O, r.t., 72% iii) DBU, PhCH3, 70°C, 56%. iv) a) $FeCl_3$, Ac_2O, -20°C b) H_2, Pd/C, EtOH. c) Ac_2O, Py. v) $NaBH_4$, CH_2Cl_2/MeOH, O°C.

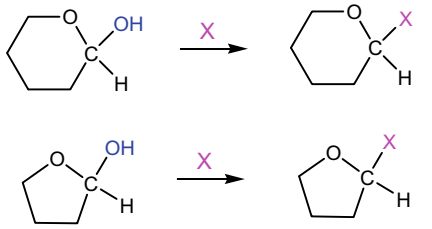
Scheme 1.65 Synthesis of carbapyranoside-disaccharides



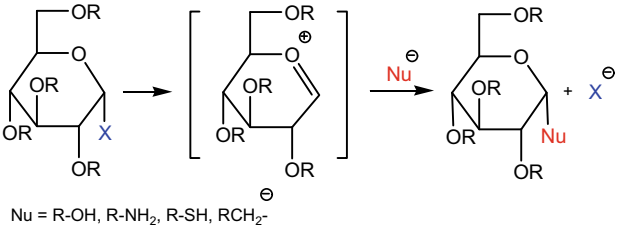
i) fucosyltransferase, GDP-Fuc.

Scheme 1.66 Chemoenzymatic synthesis of pseudotrisaccharides

Scheme 1.67 Anomeric carbon and activation to a good leaving group

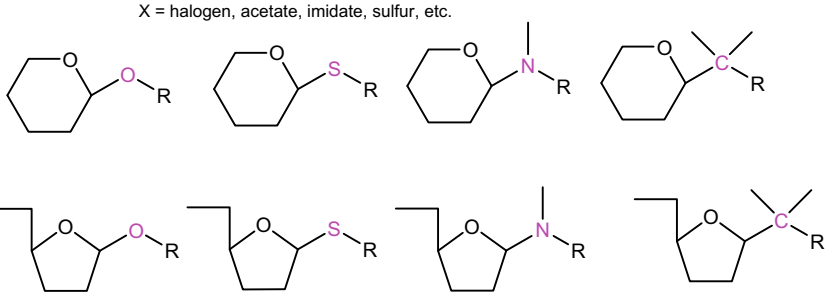


X = Halogen, sulfonyl, imidate, sulfur, acetate, etc.

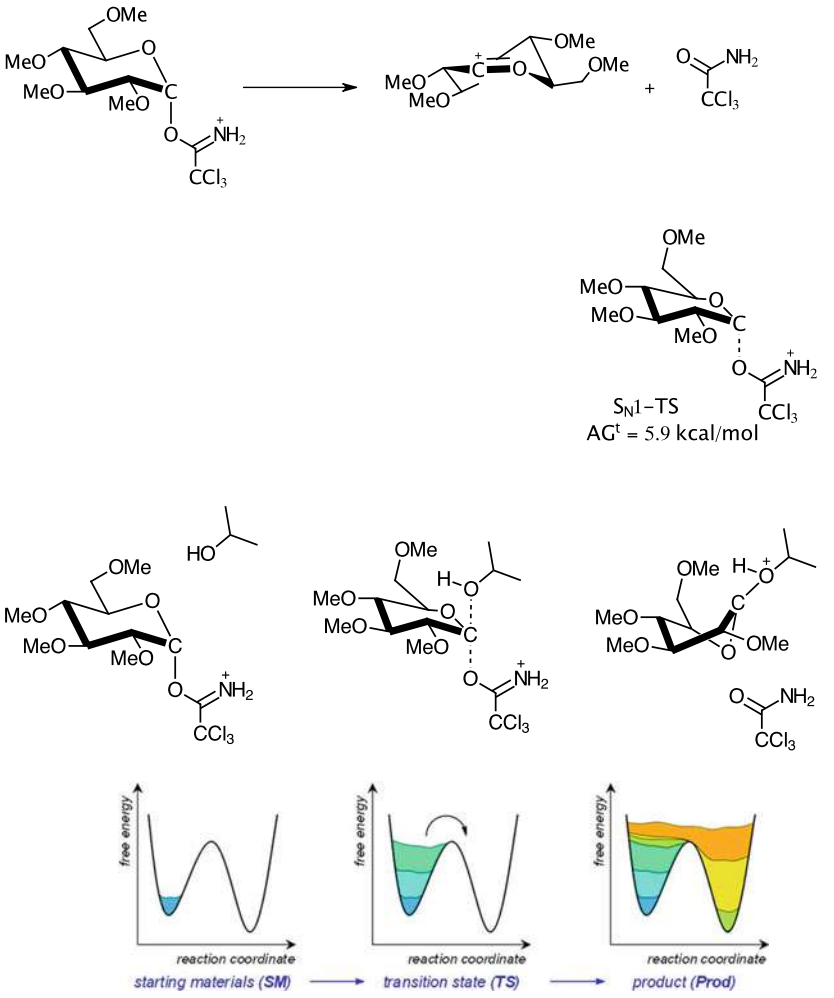


Nu = R-OH, R-NH_2, R-SH, RCH_2-

X = halogen, acetate, imidate, sulfur, etc.



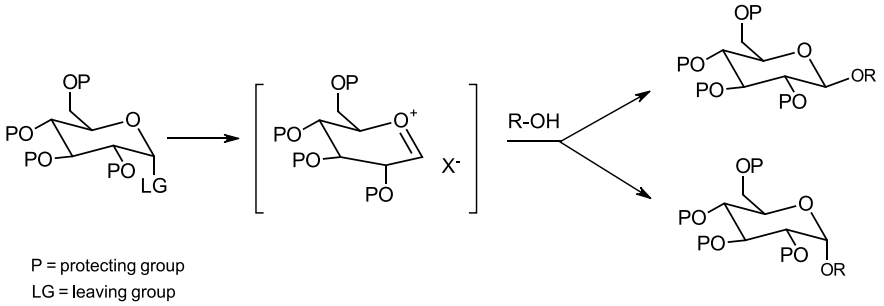
Scheme 1.68 Nucleophile displacement on the anomeric carbon and general types of glycosides



Scheme 1.69 Proposed structures assumed during the glycosylation reaction following a S_N2 reaction path

In order to establish the degree of influence a graphic was build showing the tendencies on stereoselectivity ratios depending on the donor C-2 participation, temperature, solvent choose, and acceptor nucleophilicity (Scheme 1.72) [109].

Some selected reaction are represented to give us an example of how the reaction conditions including solvents may produce variations in the α and β stereo selectivity. For instance the use of bromine on thioglycoside donors directs the stereoselectivity mainly to the α-anomer, the same as when tetrabutylammonium iodide (TBAI) is used on β-2-O-benzyl-3,4,6-tri-O-benzoyl thioglycoside in the presence of Ph_2SO/Tf_2O used as catalyst. The third case represents an interesting example



Scheme 1.70 General representation showing an equilibrium between the covalent and ionic forms

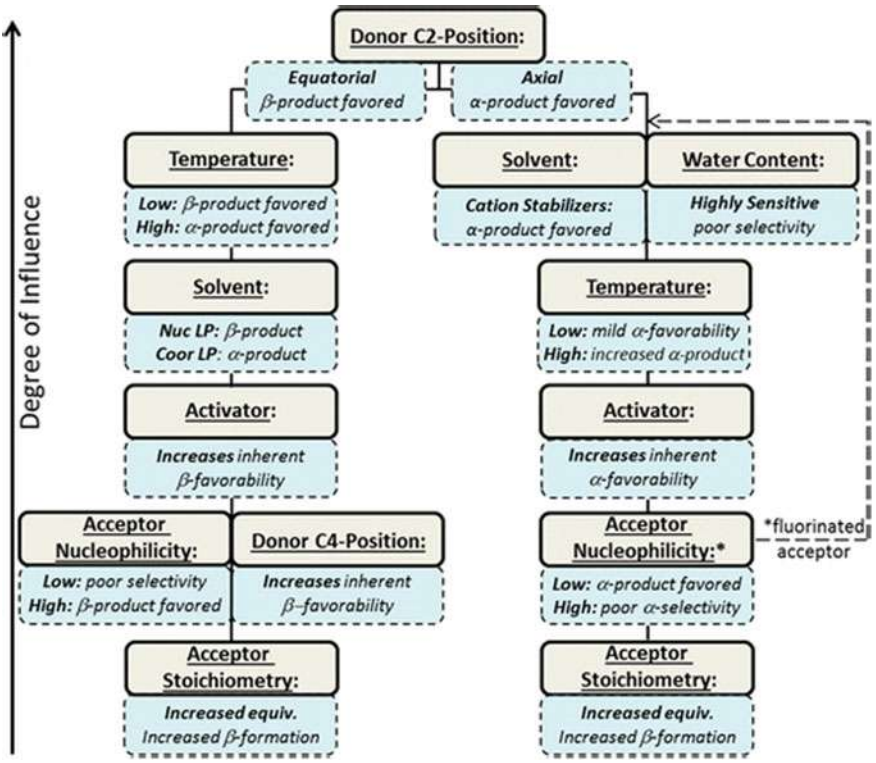
Permanent	Environmental		Influence
Leaving Group: trichloroacetimidate thioether, phosphate	**Temperature:** -50 → 70 °C	**Activator:** TfOH, MsOH, FSO_3H, $(Tf)_2NH$	**Stabilities:** Conformers Intermediates Product(s)
Acceptor: MeOH, EtOH, *i*PrOH, *t*BuOH, di/trifluoroethanol	**Concentration:** 4.8 → 20 mM	**Solvent:** DCM, ACN Toluene, MTBE	**Activation:** Leaving Group Types of Intermediates Reaction Pathways
Donor: C2/C4: Glucose Galactose, Mannose	**Residence Time:** 45 → 270 sec	**Water:** Anhydrous → 0.25 equiv.	**Mechanism:** S_N1- vs S_N2-like Nucleophilicity Reaction Rates
	Acceptor Equiv. 0.8 → 10		

Scheme 1.71 A block diagram representing permanent, environmental and influence affecting the glycosidic reactivity

of how the conditions may alter the stereo selectivity as it can be seen in the reaction of thiophenyl glycoside donor and protected mannosyl acceptor, which under dimethyl(methylthio) sulfonium triflate (DMST) produce the α-anomer while in the presence of dimethyl disulfide and triflic anhydride mainly the β-anomer. The last example shows how dimethyl formamide (DMF) may drive the α-glycoside stereoselectivity affecting the oxocarbenium cation of thioglycoside activated by TMSOTf and NIS (Scheme 1.73) [110].

The introduction of robust neighbouring group for leading the stereo selectivity to 1,2-trans, 1,2-cis as well as the β-2,6-dideoxy glycosidic linkages was proposed through the use of 2,2-dimethyl-2-(ortho-nitrophenyl)acetyl (DMNPA) as a bulky group which effects a near group and long group participations (NGP vs. LGP) (Scheme 1.74) [111].

Chiral auxiliaries attached at the C-2 position also make an input on the glycoside stereo control as it is demonstrated in the following examples using different promoters. Among the chiral auxiliaries in particular for achieving

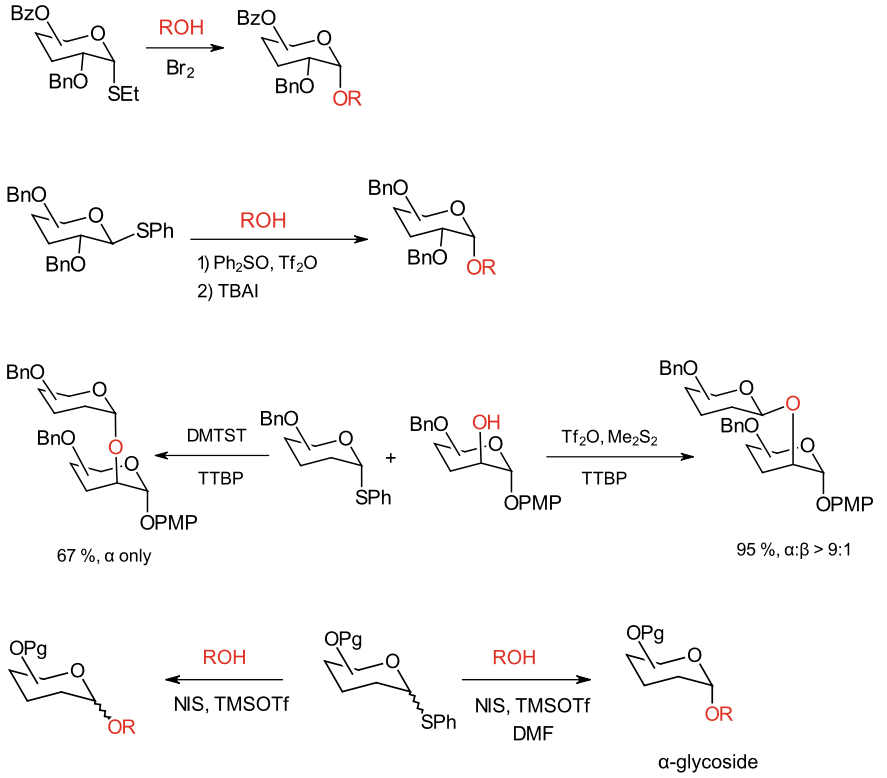


Scheme 1.72 Graphic of influence degree affecting the stereoselectivity

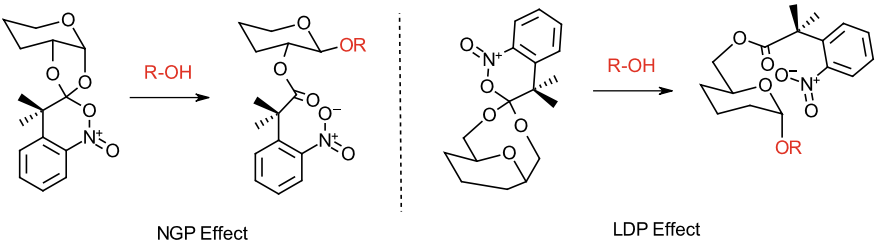
1,2-cis stereo selectivity are (1S)-phenyl-2-(phenylsulfanyl)ethyl group, (S)-(phenylthiomethyl)benzyl ether, bicyclic thioglycosides, and other functionalities (Scheme 1.75) [112].

1.8 The Leaving Groups

As mentioned above, the anomeric hydroxyl group can be replaced under suitable conditions with a good leaving group. Initially, the use of halogens such as fluorine, chlorine and bromine was the strategy of choice, and particulary the later since it presents the best balance between reactivity and stability and this is why it has been extensively used for preparing glycosides. However, halides are in most cases labile and undergo decomposition. Consequently, a number of other leaving groups have been designed for glycoside chemistry, and among them, imidates, sulfur, sulfonates, silyl groups, phoshates, and acetates are equally important alternatives. The use of iodide has been restricted due to its low reactivity and fluoride although limitedly has been more used for preparation of some α-glycosides [113, 114]. It has been found



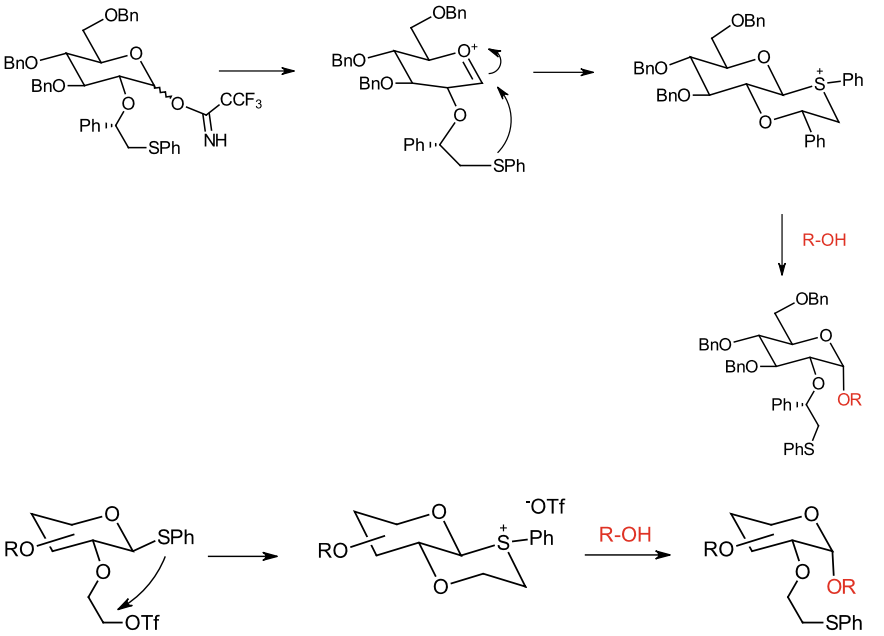
Scheme 1.73 Some reaction representing how the reaction conditions affects the α and β stereo selectivity



Scheme 1.74 Introduction of DMNPA as a bulky group for 1,2-trans, 1,2-cis stereo selectivity

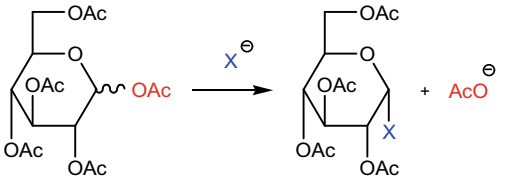
that in the absence of selective conditions, a leaving group can be found as a mixture of anomers, as in the case of the acetates. However, some others such as bromide and imidate can be introduced preferentially at the α-position (Scheme 1.76).

A well accepted hypothesis that explains the α-stereoselective preference assumed by the leaving group (halogens and imidate) is based on the anomeric effect,

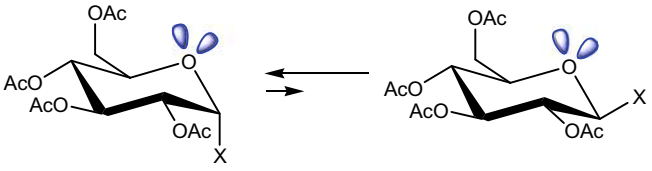


Scheme 1.75 Chiral auxiliaries attached at the C-2 position for cis 1,2-stereoselectivity

Scheme 1.76
Stereoselectivity of halides at the anomeric position



consisting in the electronic effect produced by the ring oxygen which gives rise to a repulsive effect between one of the oxygen lone pairs and the leaving group, forcing the later to assume such position [115] (Scheme 1.77).



Scheme 1.77 Anomeric effect on halogens

1.9 Glycosyl Donors

This term is used to define a glycosidic moiety that contains a leaving group at the anomeric position. When a glycosyl donor is reacted in the presence of a catalyst (also known as promoter) with a free alcohol called glycosyl acceptor, it will produce an *O*-glycosidic linkage. The first glycosyl donors developed and used specifically for glycoside formation were the glycoyl halides. As mentioned above, glycosyl bromide and chloride are the most widely used halides, and are the glycosyl donors used for the preparation of *O*-glycosides according to the methods reported by Michael, Koenigs-Knorr and Helferich (see *O*-glycoside formation), however iodide and fluorine glycosyl donor are gaining increased attention in the synthesis of O-glycosides.

1.9.1 Glycosyl Halides

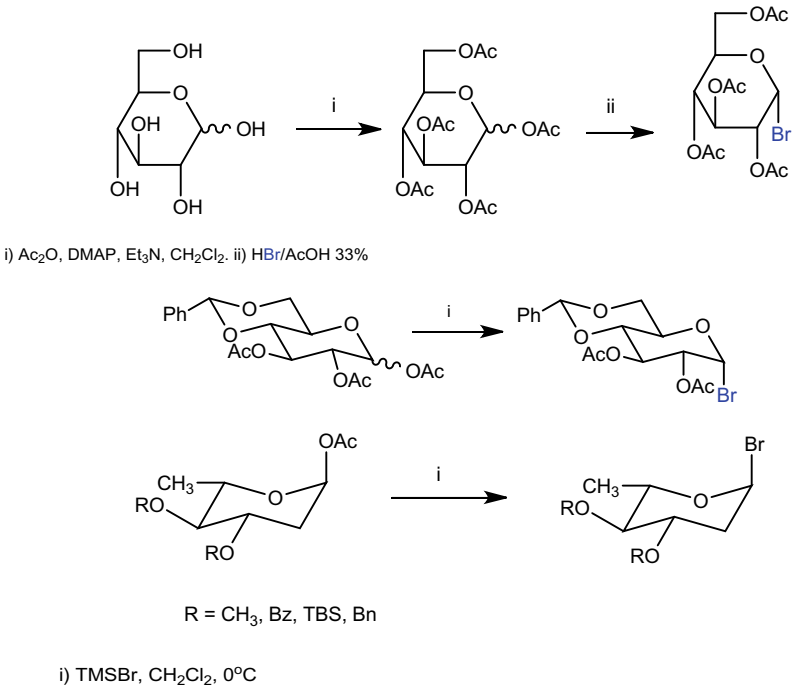
2,3,4,6-Tetraacetyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide also known as acetobromoglucose was initially one of the most extensively used sugar intermediates for preparing glycosides derived from glucose [116]. The preparation involves in the initial peracetylation of glucose with acetic anhydride in the presence of a catalyst, commonly pyridine, triethylamine and dimethylaminopyridine, or sodium acetate and zinc chloride, in dichloromethane as solvent.

The resulting 1,2,3,4,6-Pentaacetyl-α,β-D-glucopyranoside (as mixture of anomers) is treated with a 33% solution of HBr-acetic acid in dichlorometane at 5 °C during 12 h. The final product is obtained after crystallization from isopropyl ether to yield acetobromoglucose as a white solid. For sugar containing acid sensitive groups such as benzylidine, bromotrimethylsilane (TMS-Br) is used as alternative conditions (Scheme 1.78) [117, 118].

The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of acetobromoglucose shows signals for each of the ring protons, as well as for the primarily alcohol and acetates. The well defined spectrum allows the net identification of each proton, starting from the anomeric proton at δ 6.60 shiftet dowfield due the presence of the halogen, with coupling constant of 4 Hz indicating an equatorial-axial interaccion with H-2. Diaxial interactions are evident as triplets for H-3 and H-4, and axial-equatorial as double of double for H-2 (Scheme 1.79).

In the case of chlorine this can be suitable prepared by treatment of peracetylated saccharide with thionyl chloride in tin (IV) chloride at room tempertaure or boron chloride at 0 °C (Scheme 1.80) [119, 120].

Other conditions reported with sugars bearing sensitive groups such as azide group employs trimethylsilyl chloride, fosgene in DMF, or titanium (IV) chloride (Scheme 1.81) [117, 120, 121].



Scheme 1.78 Standard conditions for preparation of acetobromoglucose

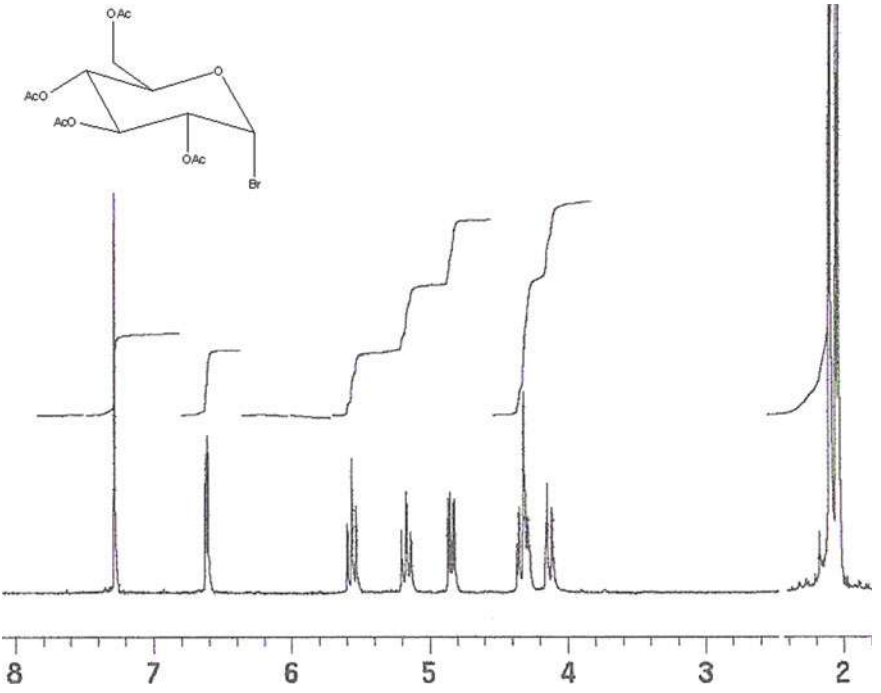
Another possibility used in the synthesis of branched sugars transform peracetylated nitro azide disaccharides with tetraethyl ammonium chcloride at room temperature (Scheme 1.82) [122].

Iodine glycosyl donors once considered unstable glycosyl donors are having increasing participation as glycosyl donors, as it can be observed in studies for either armed or disarmed approaches. The common methods for prepapring glyosyl iodides consist in the reaction peracetylated saccharide with hydrogen iodide in acetic acid, iodo trimethylsilane (TMSI) in toluene, and hexamethyldisilane (HMDS) with molecular iodine (Scheme 1.83) [125–127].

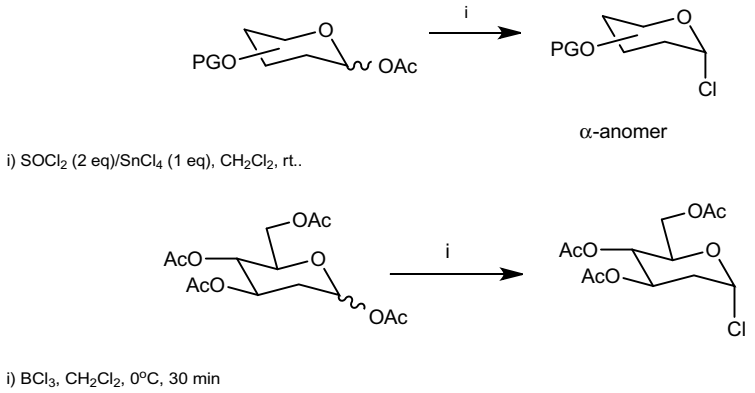
Likewise interconversion of glycosyl bromide to iodide can be accomplished by treatment with sodium iodide in acetone (Scheme 1.84).

Also protected pivaloate glucuronide α-iodide donors can be suitably prepared by using hexamethyldisilane–I2 mixture which generates Me3SiI in situ in high yield (Scheme 1.85) [128].

On the other hand protected per-O-TBS-β-D-galactofuranose was submitted to iodination under TMSI to furnish the corresponding galactofuranosyl iodide with 1,2-trans selectivity, and user further as glycosyl donor in the preparation of S- and C-galactofuranosides (Scheme 1.86) [129].

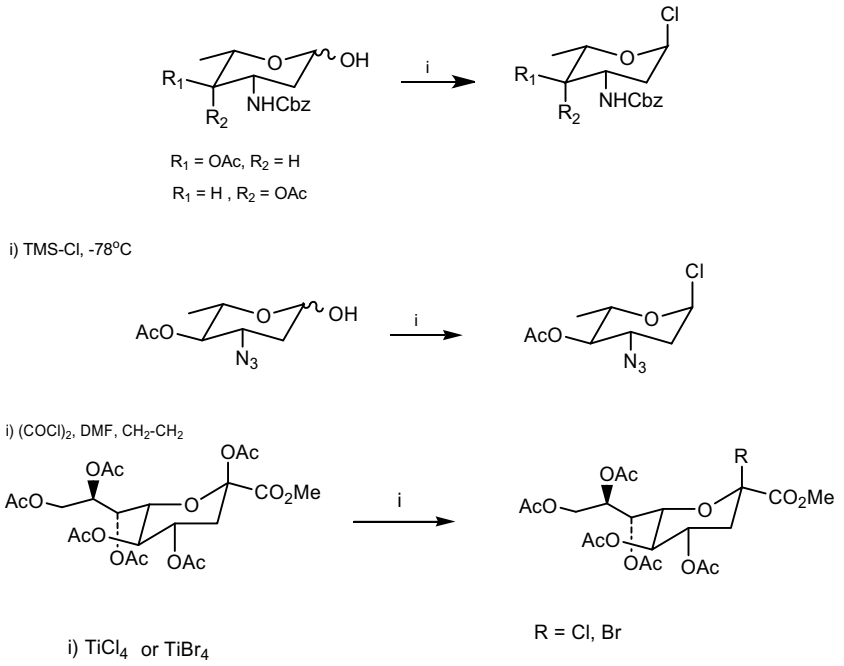


Scheme 1.79 ^{1}H NMR of acetobromo glucose



Scheme 1.80 Synthesis of α-glycosyl chloride from peracetylated sugars

Glycosyl fluorides are used as glycosyl donors in the synthesis of various glycosides, and also are useful substrates for glycoside hydrolases and glycosyltransferases [130]. They are considered thermally and chemically stable in relation to other

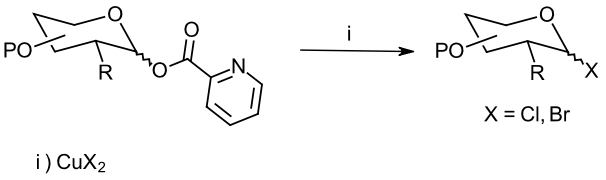


Scheme 1.81 Preparation of sensitive glycosyl chlorides

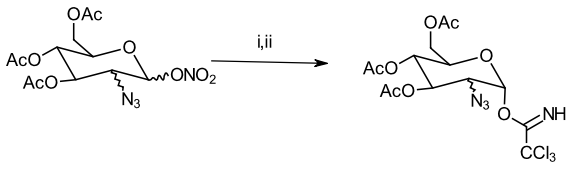
glycosyl halides and also allows purification prior to the moisture-sensitive glycosylation reactions. Typical protocols for preparing glycosyl fluorides involves the conversion of glycosyl chlorides or bromides with fluorine salts such as AgF, $AgBF_4$ or ZnF_2 [131]. Another approach involves the use of diethylaminosulfurtrifluoride (DAST), however DAST-promoted fluorination of thioglycoside requires higher reaction temperatures, suggesting that the electrophilicity of the DAST-derived reactive species is rather low [132]. Additionally other fluorinated reagents such as Xtalfluor [131] and HF-pyridine [133] has been has proposed useful alternatives for the preparation of glycosyl fluorides as glycosyl donors (Scheme 1.87).

Unprotected 1-glycosyl thiols are relevant because they are useful for preparing S-linked oligosaccharides and glycoconjugates, and therefore access to 1-glycosyl thiols from unprotected sugars is demanded. One approach recently described uses unprotected sugars or aminoacetals converted to 1-glycosyl thiols with nucleophiles disulfides in the presence of N-sulfenylsuccinimide and Cu(I) salts as catalyst as shown in Scheme 1.88 [134].

Another approach for preparing 1-glycosyl thiols from unprotected sugars was described as one pot reaction combining unprotected sugar with sodium thiosulfate using a formamidine-type as dehydrating agent providing unprotected glycosyl thiosulfates (Glycosyl Bunte Salts). The resulting glycosyl thiosulfates were tested as precursors for preparation of 1-thio sugar, glycosyl disulfide, 1,6-anhydro sugar,

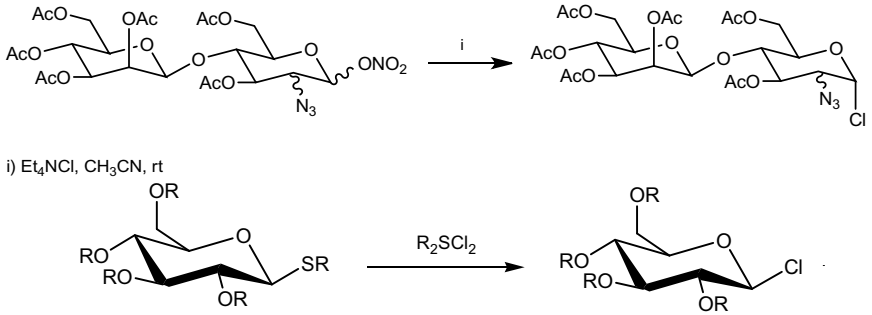


Ref[123]



i) μwave, 120°C, 20 min 20 % aq. acetone
ii) DBU, Cl_3CCN, CH_2Cl_2 α only, 66 %

Ref[124]

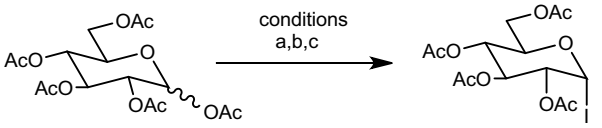


Scheme 1.82 Preparation of glycosyl chloride from nitro and sulfur glycosyl donors [123, 124]

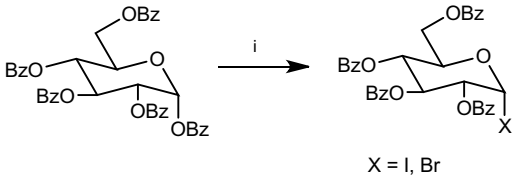
and O-glycoside. A variation of this method employing unprotected sugar with sodium thiosulfate, and 2-chloro-1,3-dimethylimidazolinium chloride (DMC) was introduced, yielding unprotected glycosyl thiosulfates (Scheme 1.89). The resulting glycosyl thiosulfates were evaluated as precursor for preparation of 1-thio sugar, glycosyl disulfide, 1,6-anhydro sugar, and O-glycosides [135].

Glycosy Donor Interconversion

Besides their extensive use in the preparation of glycosides, glycosyl bromide can also be useful for conversion to other suitable glycosyl donors (Scheme 1.90), such as glycals [136], othoesthers [137], ad thiols [138]. Also, the glycosyl halides can be transformed to glycosyl imidate through the anomeric hydroxyl formation [139], or to amines via a reaction with azide salt and hydrogenolysis [105].

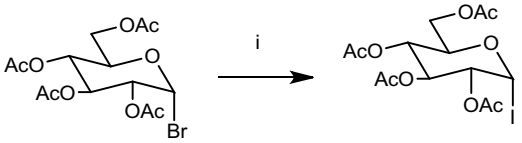


conditions a) HI/AcOH.
conditions b) TMSI, toluene
conditions c) HMDS, I_2.



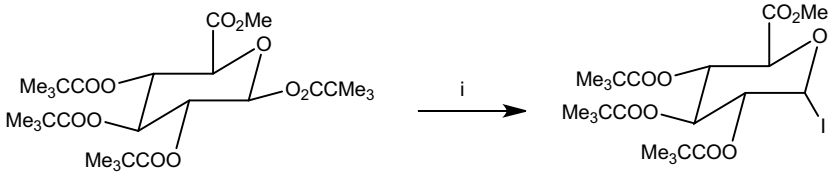
i) Me_3SiX ZnX_2 (cat), CH_2Cl_2, rt..

Scheme 1.83 Preparation of glycosyl iodides from peracetylated sugars



i) NaI, acetone, 76%

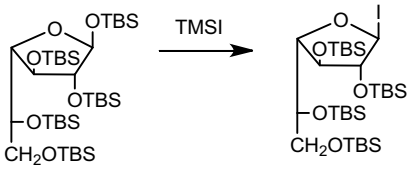
Scheme 1.84 Preparation of glycosyl iodides from acetobromopyranosides



i) HMDS-I_2 or Me_3SiI 90%.

Scheme 1.85 Preparation of α-glucuronopyranoside iodides from pivaloate glucuronide

Glycosyl acetates are also important glycosyl donors and can be used directly under the fusion strategy for the preparation of *O*- and *N*-glycosides. The fusion method consists in the reaction between the glycosyl acetate as glycosyl donor with the glycosyl acceptor in the presence of a Lewis acid as a promoter to generate the corresponding glycoside. Likewise, acetates can also be suitable precursors for the



i) Me_3SiX ZnX_2 (cat), CH_2Cl_2, rt..

Scheme 1.86 Preparation of furanosyl and iodide as a glycosyl donors

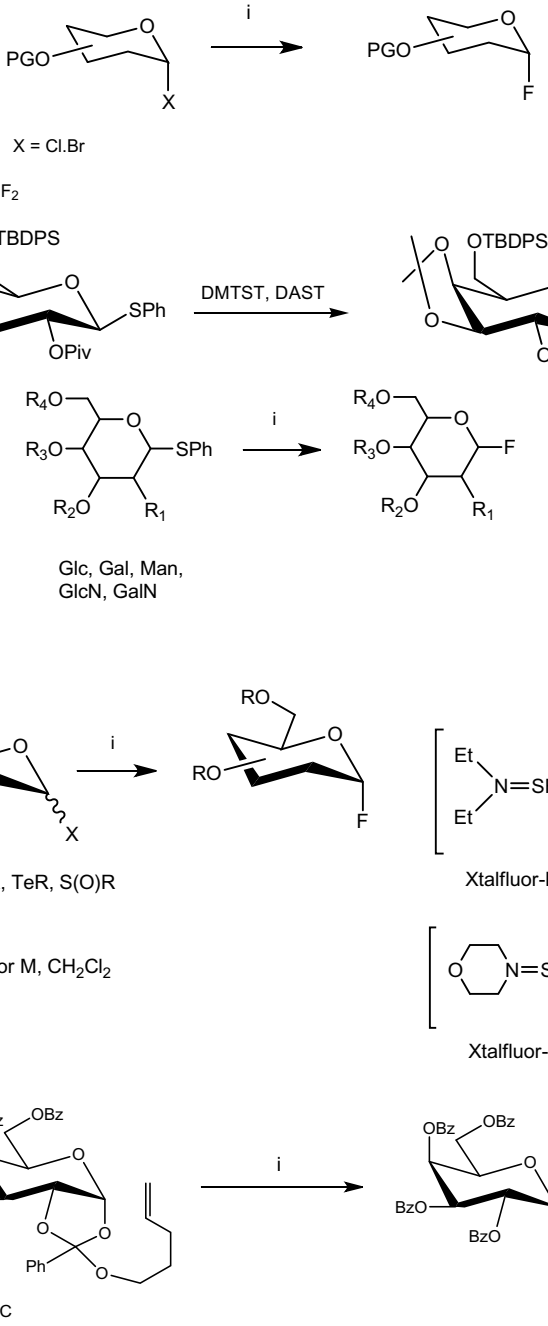
preparation of glycosyl donors such halides, thiols [140]. and to imidates, the later by a two step process. The first step involves the removal of the anomeric acetate with base, among them hydrazine, benzylamine, ammonia and piperidine which are the most preferred.

The resulting hydroxyl group is obtained as a mixture of anomers, and is subsequently used for the preparation of the glycosyl imidate (see Imidate Method). Another use of glycosyl acetates, is the transformation into anomeric amines, through the introduction of the azide group with trimethylsilyl azide under a Lewis acid catalyst, and further hydrogenolysis [89]. This reaction is useful for the preparation of some glycopeptides. Likewise 2-thiophenyl glycosides of Neu5Ac are suitably obtained by treatment of 2-O-acetyl, 2-chloro, or 2-chloro Neu5Ac glycosyl donors with PhSH in the presence of NIS/TfOH as promoter system (Scheme 1.91). Other activated agents for preparing S-alkyl and S-aryl glycosyl donors are methyl trifluoromethanesulfonate (MeOTf), dimethyl(methylthio)sulfonium trifluoromethanesulfonate (DMTST), iodo dicollidine perchlorate (IDCP), and phenyl selenyl trifluoromethanesulfonate (PhSeOTf) [141].

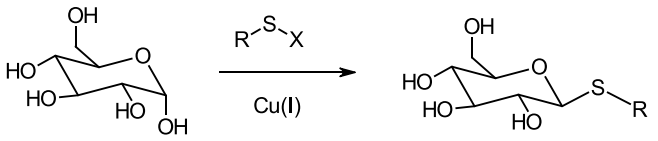
Thioglycosyl donors (e.g., -Sme, -SEt, -STol) may also be obtained from per-O-acetylated glycopyranosyl iodides with 1.2 molar equiv of the respective thiols with complete anomeric selectivity and in very good yield [126].

Thioglycosides are stable glycosyl donors widely used for the preparation of glycosides. The usual conditions for achieving this goal are the glycosyl acceptor and N-iodosuccinimide (NIS), or NIS-TfOH as promoter. Thioglycosides are also important starting material for the preparation of other glycosyl donors such as acetates, fluorine [140], chlorine [148], sulfoxides [149], anomeric alcohols, and alkynylphenyl benzoate donors (Scheme 1.92).

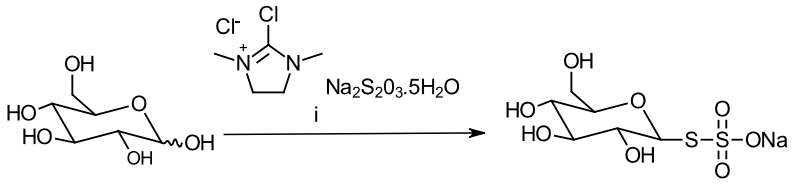
Glycals are becoming potentially useful glycosyl donors, and an increasing number of simple and complex glycosides have been reported. For this purpose the glycal is usually transformed to the oxirane. and immediately coupled with the glycosyl acceptor in the presence of a Lewis acid (see The Glycal Method). Moreover, glycals are also suitable intermediates for the preparation of a variety of glycosyl donors (Scheme 1.93) such as phosphates and thiophosphates [152], deoxysugars [153], Diels–Alder adducts [155], allyl glycosyl donors [156], and imidates [157].



Scheme 1.87 Methods for preparing glycosyl fluorides



Scheme 1.88 Preparation of 1-glycosyl thiols from unprotected sugars



i) NEt_3, D_2O/MeCN , 0°C, 1.5 h.

Scheme 1.89 One-Step synthesis of unprotected glycosyl thiosulfates

1.10 Protecting Groups

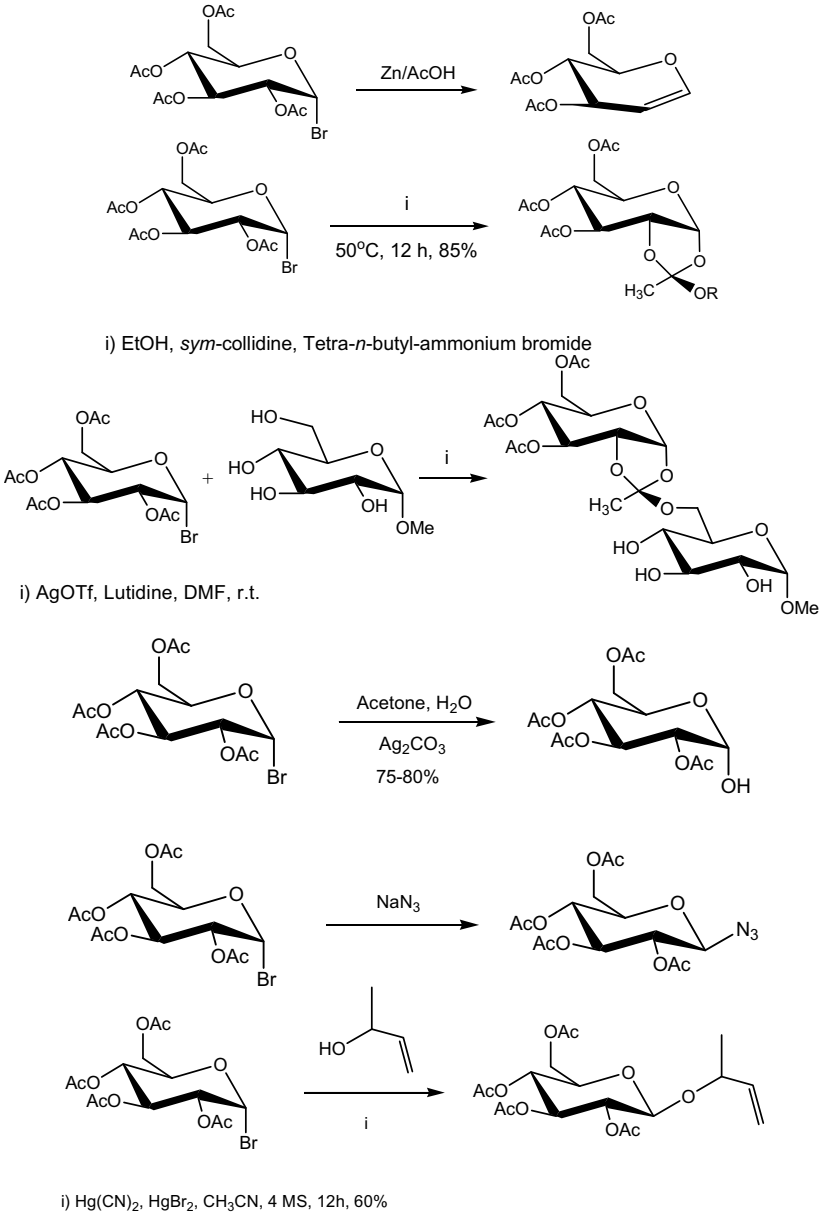
An important additional requirement for achieving glycosidic coupling reactions, besides the fact that a good leaving group should be present, is the appropriate use of protecting groups. Their function is to shield those groups (particularly heteroatoms) that are wanted to keep unaltered during the coupling reaction and then release them under mild conditions that do not affect the glycosidic bond (Scheme 1.94).

A significant number of protecting groups [157] have been used and combined for pursuing the synthesis of complex natural products including glycosides.

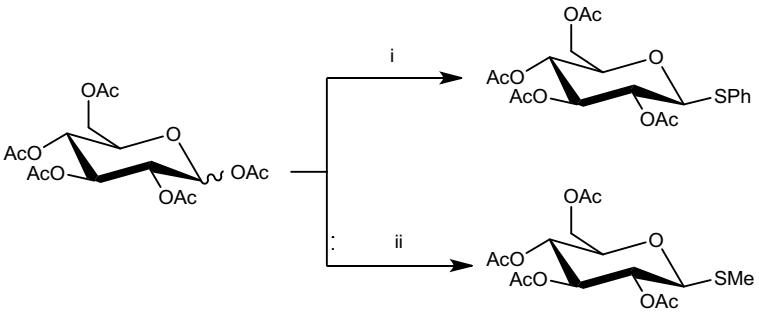
Due to its acetal character, the glycosidic bond is hydrolyzed under acidic conditions, and is significantly more resistant to base, hydride reduction or hydrogenolysis.

The use of ethers such as methyl ether (–O–CH_3), methoxymethyl ether (–O–CH_2OCH_3, MOM), 2-methoxyethoxymethyl ether (–O–$CH_2OCH_2CH_2OCH_3$, MEM), and tetrahydropyranyl ether (–O-2-c–C_5H_9O, THP) have been widely used for protection of alcohols. However, in glycoside synthesis attention has to be paid since deprotection is carry out under acidic conditions, which might be hazardous for the glycosidic bond. Silyl derivatives are also another important choice for protection of hydroxyl group [141]. Some of the most accepted silyl derivatives for carbohydrate hydroxyl protection are *tert*-butyl dimethylsilyl (TBDMS), triisopropylsilyl (TIPS), *tert*-butyl diphenylsilyl (TBDPS), and triethylsilyl (TES) ethers. Quantitative cleavage is usually achieved upon treatment with tetrabutylammonium fluoride (TBAF) or HF/pyridine.

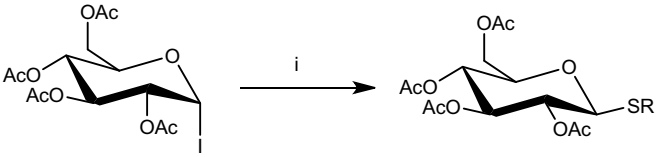
The most suitable protecting groups for the preparation of glycosides are the affordable acetates, benzoates and benzyl protecting groups since they can be removed under basic and for the later neutral conditions, being the best conditions for preserving the glycosidic bond. The standard conditions for either installing and removing the most common protecting group described are:



Scheme 1.90 Some glycosyl donors obtained from acetobromoglucose

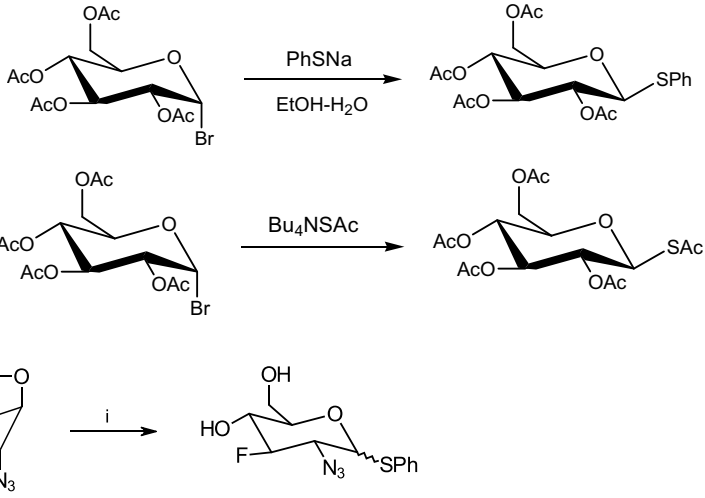


i) PhSH (1.1 eq.), $SnCl_4$ (0.7 eq.), CH_2Cl_2, 0°C, 4h, 82%. ii) MeSH (excess), $SnCl_4$ (0.7 eq.), CH_2Cl_2, -20°C, 3h, 85%.



R = Me, Et, Tol

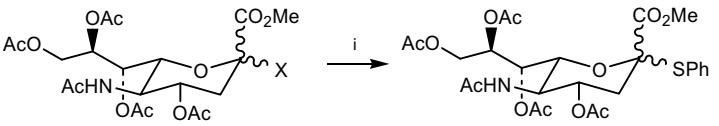
i) RSH 1.2 eq or MeSSMe for R = Me.



i) PhSTMS, ZnI_2, DCE

Scheme 1.91 Miscelaneous approaches for the preparation of glycosyl donors [121], [142–147]

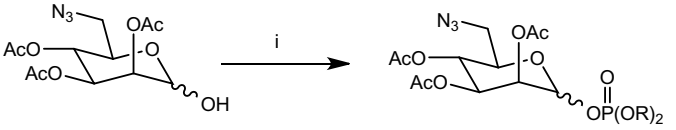
Ref [144]



X = OAc, Cl, F.

i) PhSH, NIS/TfOH.

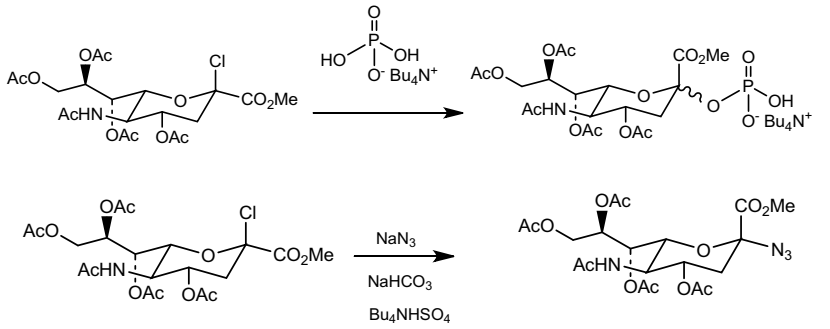
Ref.[145]



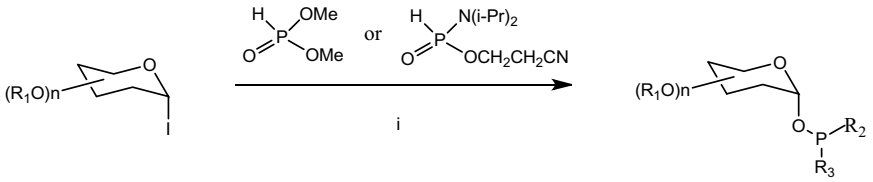
R = allyl, Bn, Ph

i) $(allylO)_2POCl$, DMAP, DCM, rt

Ref[146]

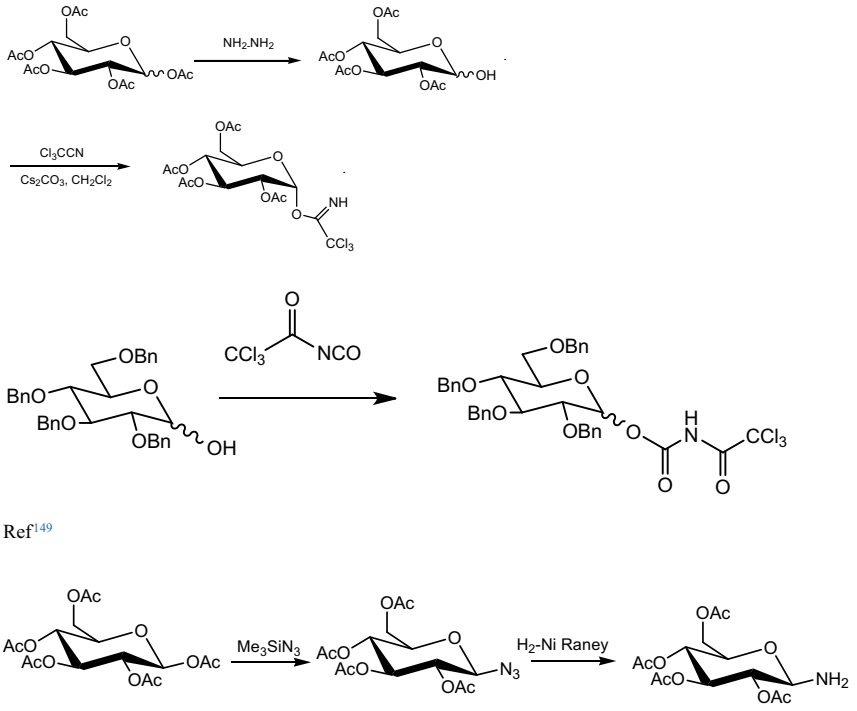


Ref[147]



Ref[148]

Scheme 1.91 (continued)



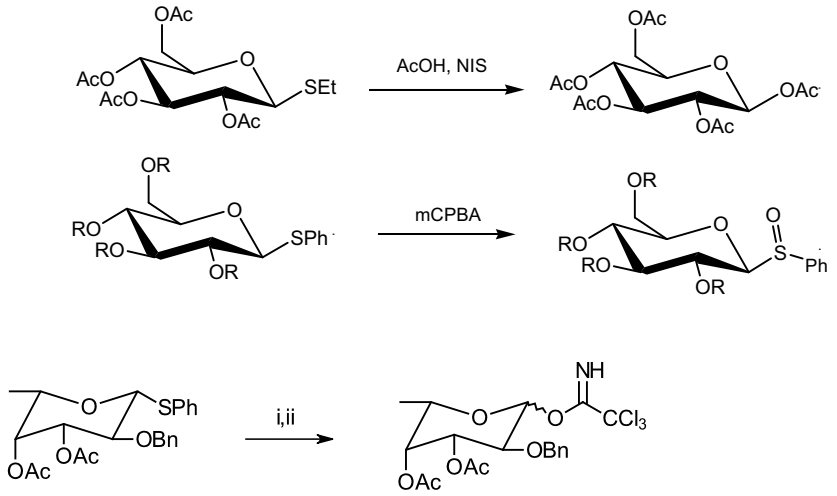
Ref[149]

Scheme 1.91 (continued)

Acetate (Ac-): The standard procedure involves the use of acetic anhydride in the presence of pyridine or triethylamine as acid scavenger, and 4-(dimethylamino) pyridine (DMAP) that improves the rate of reaction. The cleavage of acetates proceeds smoothly with NaOMe solution also known as Zemplen conditions. Acetates are stable at pH from 1 to 8 and can be cleaved with lithium aluminium hydride (Scheme 1.95) [126].

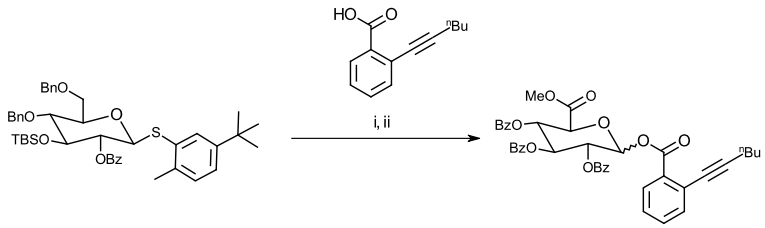
Benzoyl (Bz-): This protecting group is more stable to hydrolysis than acetates and may resist a pH up to 10. The conditions for protection of alcohols are shown in Scheme 1.96 and involves the use of benzoyl chloride in pyridine or triethylamine [158]. It is stable to hydrogenolysis and borohydrides but not to lithium aluminium hydride. The cleavage is usually achieved in 1% NaOMe–MeOH solution.

Pivaloyl (Pv-): This protecting group, which is also known as Trimethylacetyl chloride, is used for protection of primary and secondary alcohols in yield. An example of the use of this group is the protection of the hydroxyl group at position 2 of fucose derivative [159]. The standard conditions for protection are pivaloyl chloride in pyridine or DMAP and the cleavage is performed with Bu_4N^+–OH at 20 °C (Scheme 1.97).



i) NBS, acetona, H_2O, rt, 1 h
ii) CCl_3CCN, DBU, CH_2Cl_2, rt, 16 h

Ref[152]



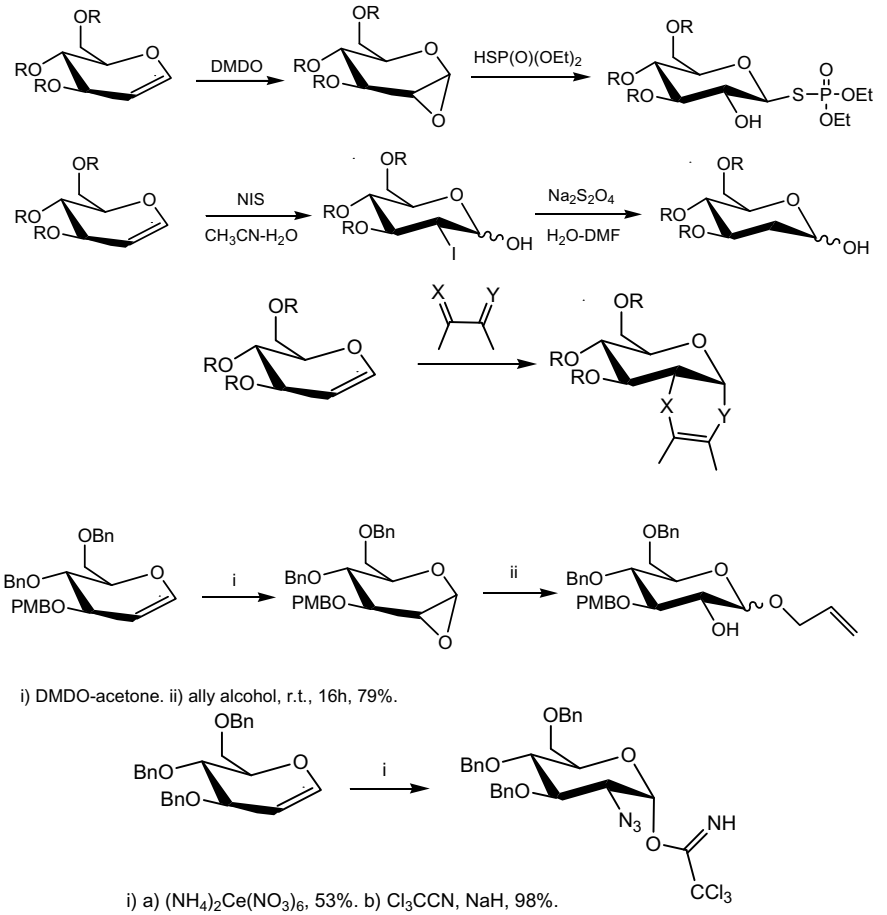
i) NIS, DTBP, AgOTf, CH_3CN, H_2O, rt.
ii) EDI, DMAP, CH_2Cl_2, *ortho*-hexynylbenzoic acid, rt, 88%.

Ref[153]

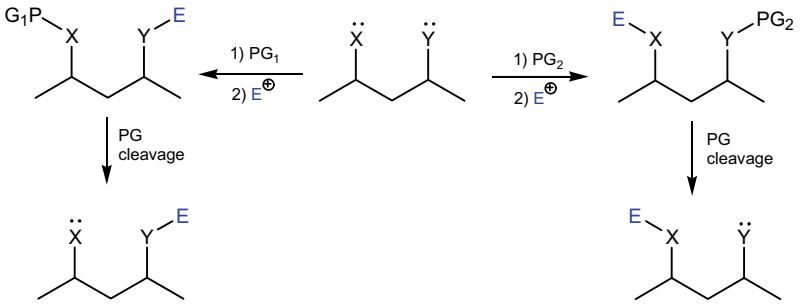
Scheme 1.92 Modifications of thio glycosyl donors [150, 151]

Trityl (Tr-): This bulky protecting group is selective for primary alcohols (Scheme 1.98). The protecting reaction proceeds in pyridine or DMAP-DMF [160]. The cleavage can be performed under neutral conditions with 1% iodide in methanol, or weakly acidic in formic acid-ether solution.

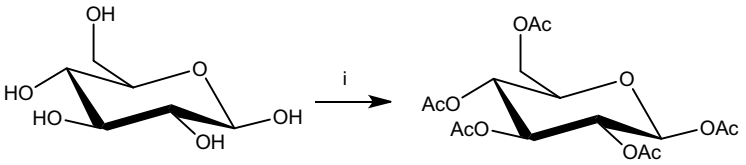
Benzyl (Bn-): This protecting group when attached with alcohol generates an ether (Scheme 1.99). However, unlike common ethers, this can be cleaved under neutral condition by hydrogenolysis. The usual conditions for attachment are NaH, THF, and benzyl bromide or chloride [161]. The conditions for removing this group are hydrogen, Pd/C 10% or $Pd(OH)_2$/C 10% in ethanol or ethyl acetate.



Scheme 1.93 Preparation of glycosyl donors and precursors from glycals

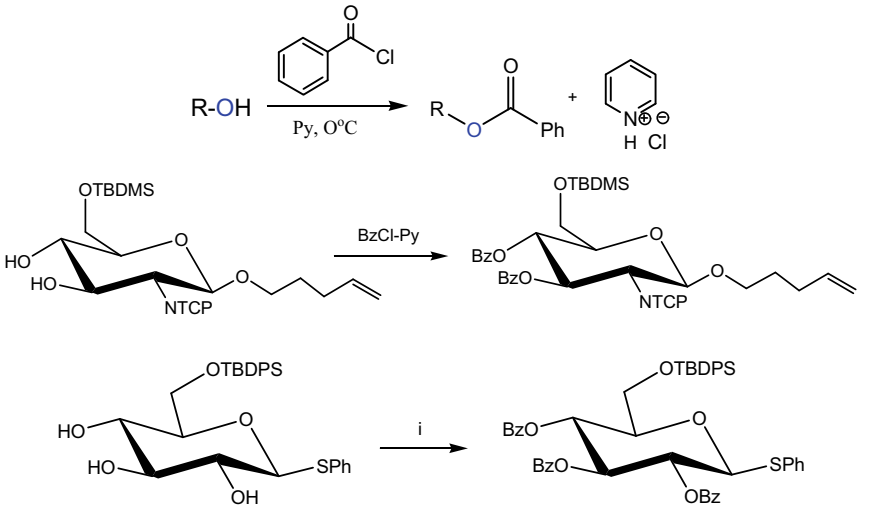


Scheme 1.94 Schematic representation of protecting group applicability



conditions A: Ac_2O, CH_2Cl_2, Et_3N, DMAP, r.t.
B: Ac_2O, CH_2Cl_2, AcONa
C: Ac_2O, I_2 cat.*

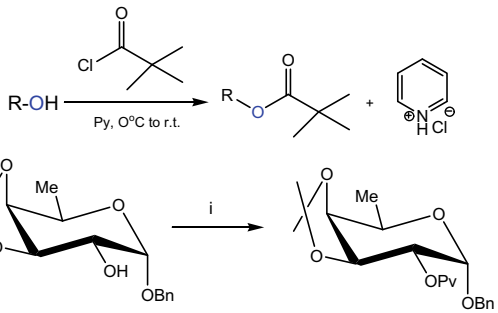
Scheme 1.95 Standard protocol for the preparation of peracetylated sugars



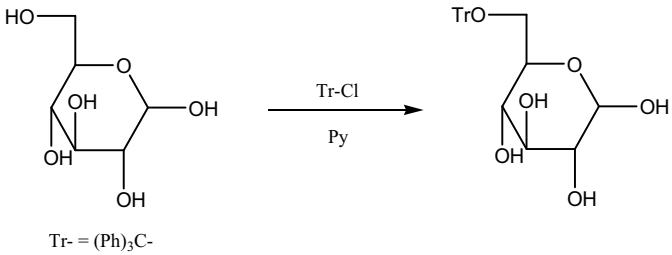
i) PhCOCl (4.0 eq.), Et_3N (8.0 eq.), 4-DMAP (0.2 eq), THF, 50°C, 15h, 92%.

Scheme 1.96 General procedure for the benzoylation of sugars

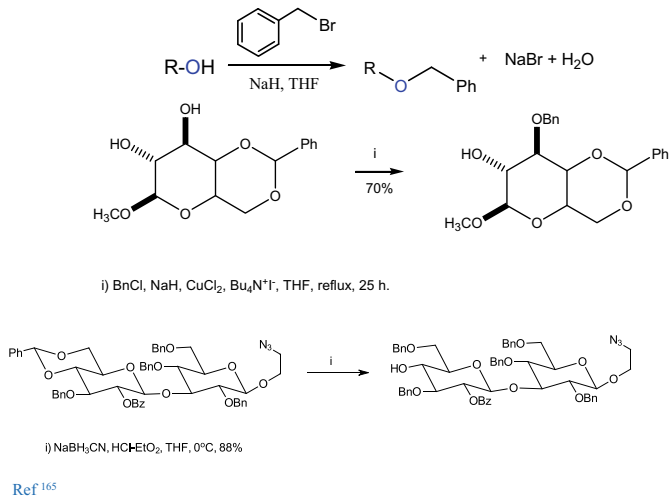
Scheme 1.97 Conditions and reagents for protection of alcohols with pivaloyl group



i) PvCl, Py, DMAP, 70°C, 80%



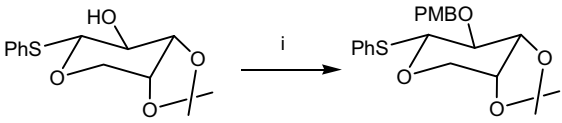
Scheme 1.98 Protection of primary alcohol with trityl protecting group

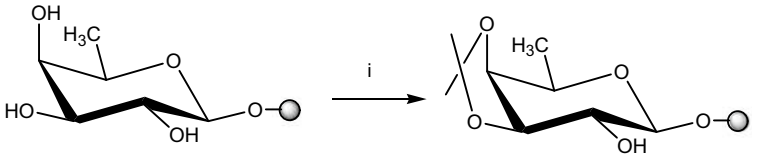


Scheme 1.99 General conditions for benzylation of carbohydrates [162]

***p*-Methoxybenzyl (PMB-)**: This benzyl derivative is installed by reacting the free alcohol with PMB-Cl under NaH, DMF conditions at 0 °C [163]. An example of its applications can be seen in the protection at the second position of acetonide thioglycoside shown in Scheme 1.100. Deprotection is carried out under neutral conditions with 2,3-dichhloro,5,6-dicyano-1,4-benzoquinone (DDQ), in CH_2Cl_2–H_2O (20:1), 1 h, at 25 °C, in a 91% deprotection yield.

Scheme 1.100 General conditions for benzylation of carbohydrates with PMB





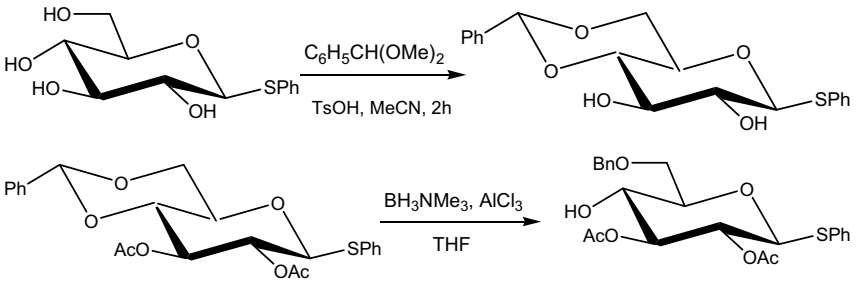
Scheme 1.101 Acetonide formation for protection of diols

Acetonide ($(CH_3)_2C(O)_2$-): This protecting group is useful for protection of *cis* diols (Scheme 1.101) and the conditions are acetone, 2,2-dimethoxypropane, and *p*-toluenesulfonic acid or camphorsulfonic acid as catalyst [164]. Acetonides are usually stable at a pH between 4 and 12, and the regeneration of the diol can be achieved by treatment with aqueous acid.

Benzylidene ($PhCH(O)_2$-): This classical protecting group is usually selected for protection of position 6 and 4, allowing the remaining positions to be modified. The benzylidene is attached under mild conditions and are useful for either –OH (4) in axial or equatorial positions (Scheme 1.102). Deprotection can be effected under different conditions, such as acid conditions, hydrogenolysis, and hydrides such as BH_3NMe_3, $AlCl_3$, THF, 60 °C, 1 h [165].

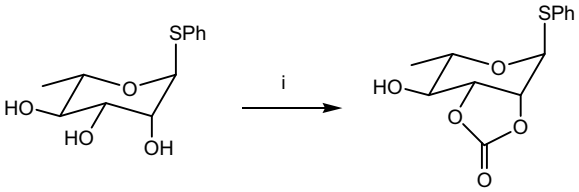
Carbonate ($O{=}C(O)_2$-): This group is suitable for protection of *cis* diols, and it has been used in the synthesis of complex oligosaccharides and also in solid-phase oligosaccharide synthesis. The reagents and conditions used for protection are phosgene in pyridine at 0 °C during 1 h (Scheme 1.103), and the yield reported is around 70% [166].

Boronate ($PhB(O)_2$-): This group has been proposed in solid-phase oligosaccharide synthesis [167] for simultaneous protection of 4,6–OH groups (Scheme 1.104). Deprotection is achieved with IRA-743 resin [168].

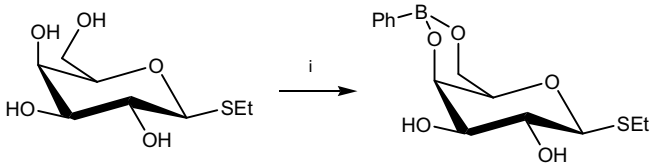


Scheme 1.102 Protection of 4 and 6 hydroxyl groups with benzylidene group and partial removal

Scheme 1.103 Standard conditions for protection of diols with carbonate protecting group



i) $(Cl_2)C=O$, Py, 0°C, 1h, 69%.

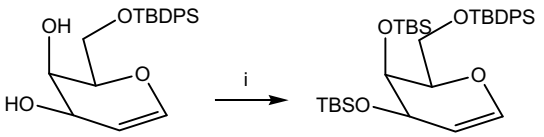


i) $PhB(OH)_2$.

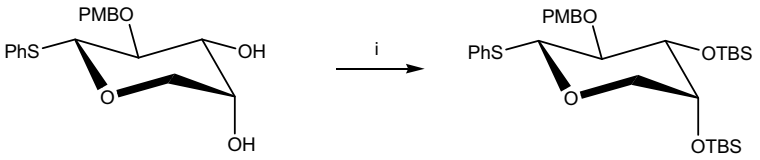
Scheme 1.104 Protection of 4,6–OH groups with boronate

***Tert*-butyldimethylsilyl (TBS-)**: More recently introduced for protection of primary and secondary alcohols with reported yield protection around 90% (Scheme 1.105). The standard conditions are *tert*-butyldimethylsilyltriflate in pyridine [169], and deprotection is usually achieved with butyl ammonium fluoride (Bu_4NF) in THF.

***Tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl (TBDPS-)**: This protecting group is specific for primary alcohols and the yields reported are quantitatives (Scheme 1.106). This bulky silylated group has been used for the assembly of oligosaccharide libraries and has been

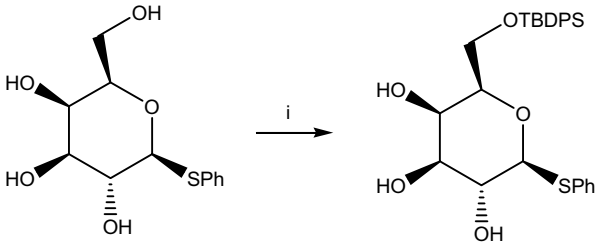


i) TBSOTf, Py.



i) TBSOTf (4.0 eq.), Et_3N (10.0 eq.), CH_2Cl_2, 0°C, 2h, 97%.

Scheme 1.105 Protection of secondary alcohols with TBS protecting group



i) *t*-$BuPh_2SiCl$, imidazole, DMF, 100%.

Scheme 1.106 Protection of primary alcohols with TBDPS protecting group

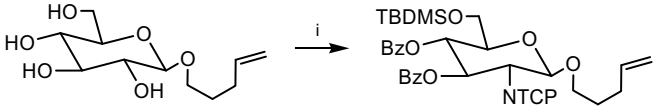
compatible with the use of other highly selective groups [170]. The standard protection conditions are TBDPS-Cl, imidazole, DMF or THF. Deprotection is achieved with hydrogen fluoride-pyridine or TBAF, cat. AcOH, THF, and a yield of 87%.

1.11 Selective Protections (Scheme 1.107)

See Scheme 1.107.

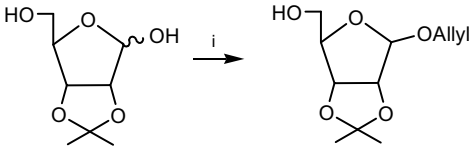
1.12 Selective Deprotections (Scheme 1.108)

See Scheme 1.108 and Table 1.5.



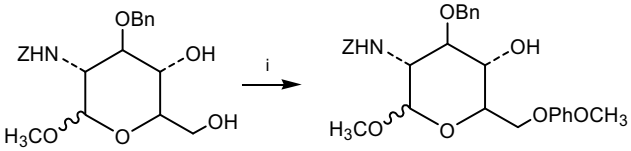
Ref. [158]

i) TBDMSCl/Py. ii) BzCl/Py.



i) CH_2=$CHCH_2OCO_2Et$, $Pd_2(dba)_3$, THF, 65°C, 4h, 70%.

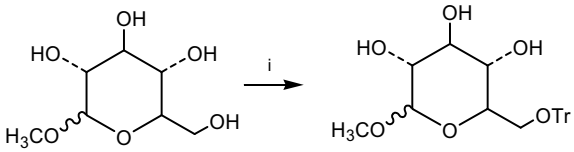
Ref. [171]



Z = benzyloxycarbonyl

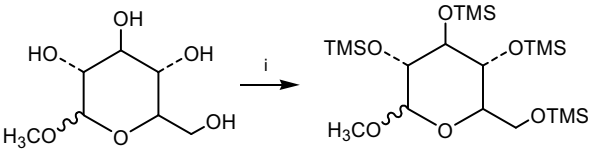
i) 4-$CH_3OC_6H_5OH$, THF, DEAD, Ph_3P, 80°C, 82%.

Ref. [163]



i) Ph_3CCl, DMAP, DMF, 25°C, 12h, 88%.

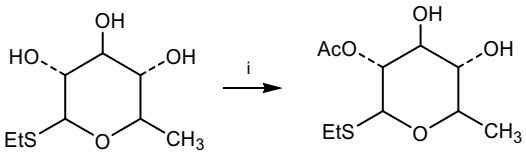
Ref. [172]



i) Me_3SiCl, Et_3N, THF, 25°C, 8h, 90%.

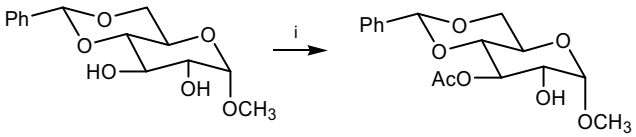
Ref. [173]

Scheme 1.107 Miscellaneous selective protections [158, 163, 165, 169, 171–201]



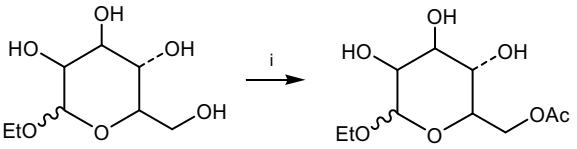
i) $MeC(OCH_3)_3$, TsOH, DMF, 96%.

Ref. [174]



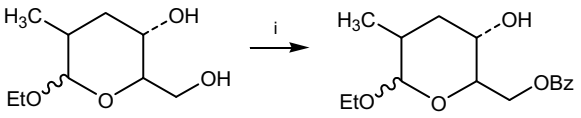
i) Lipase AK, vinyl acetate, 92%

Ref. [175]



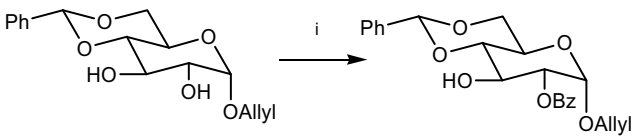
i) Pancreatin, vinyl acetate, THF, TEA 95%.

Ref. [176]



i) Ph_3P, DIAD, $PhCO_2H$, THF, 84%.

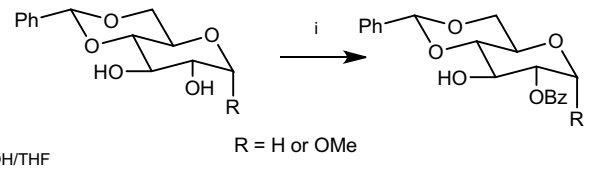
Ref. [177]



i) BzOBt, 92%

Ref. [178]

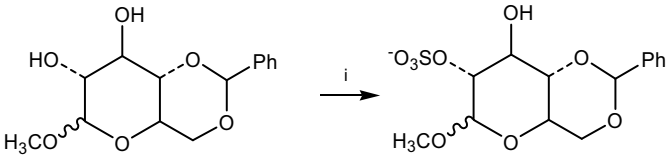
Scheme 1.107 (continued)



R = H or OMe

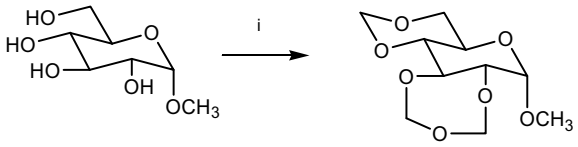
i) PPh_3, DEAD, BzOH/THF

Ref [179]



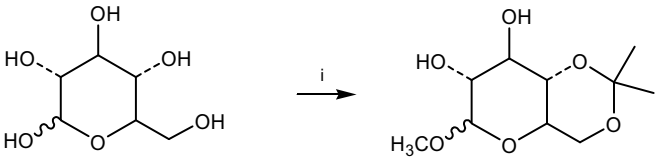
i) Pyr SO_3, Pyr, 69%

Ref. [180]



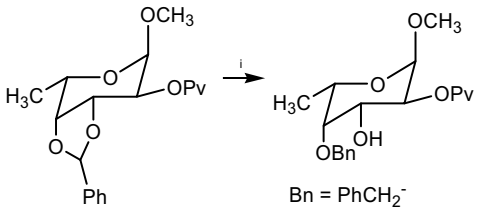
i) DMSO, $POCl_3$, 85%.

Ref. [181]



i) $CH_2=C(CH_3)OCH_3$, DMF, TsOH. 0°C, 95%

Ref. [182]

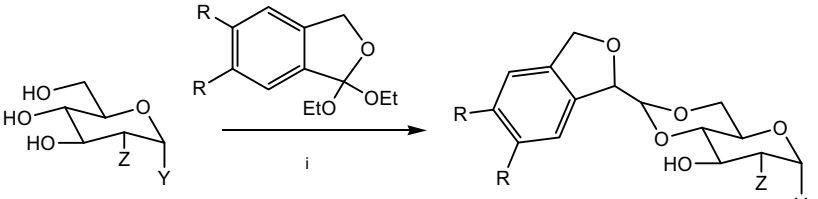


Bn = $PhCH_2^-$

i) NBS, CCl_4, 75%.

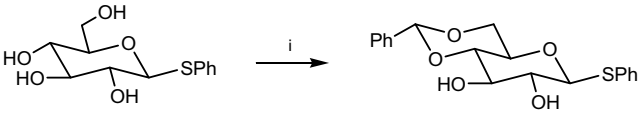
Ref. [183]

Scheme 1.107 (continued)



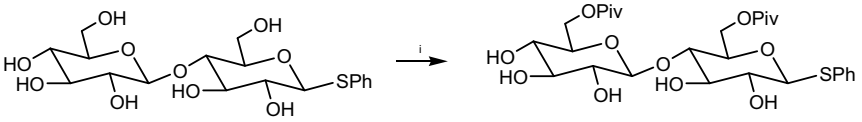
i) PPTS, ACN. 90%

Ref. [184]



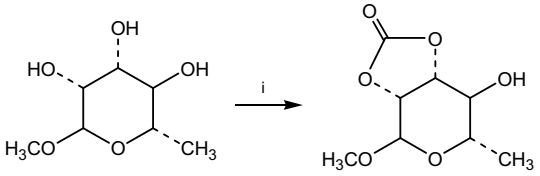
i) $C_6H_5CH(OMe)_2$, TsOH, MeCN, 2h.

Ref. [165]



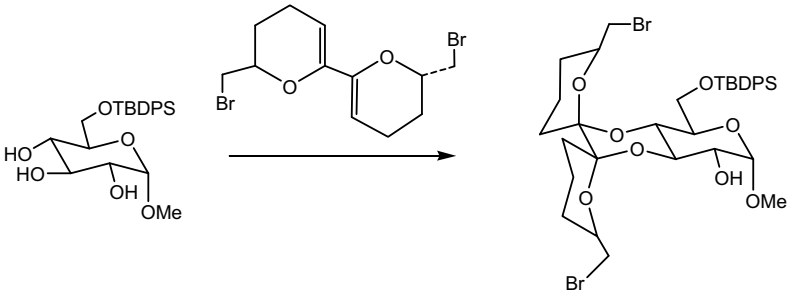
i) Pivaloyl chloride, Py, 91%.

Ref. [185]



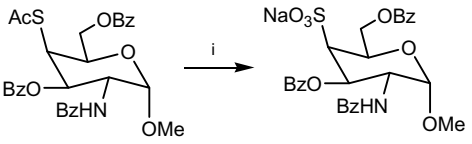
i) Cl_3CCOCl, Py, rt, 80%

Ref. [186]



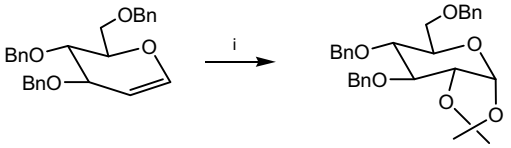
Scheme 1.107 (continued)

Ref. [187]

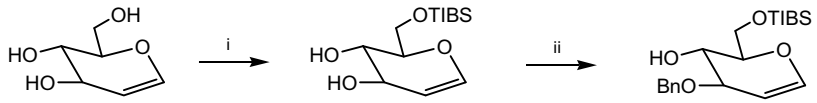


i) aq. H_2O_2 (33%), AcOH, NaOAc, 80°C, 8h.

Ref. [188]

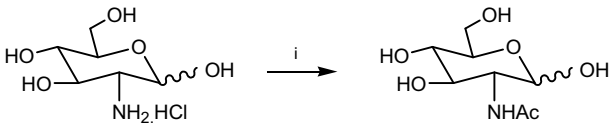


i) DMDO, $ZnCl_2$, acetone.



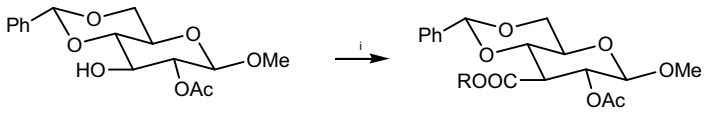
i) TIBS-Cl, Imidazole. ii) Bu_2SnO, BnBr, TBAI, 67%

Ref. [189]



i) a) 1eq. NaOMe/MeOH. b) 1.2 eq. Ac_2O, 12h, 91%.

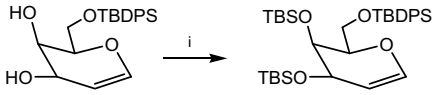
Ref [190]



i) TMEDA, $ClCO_2R$, CH_2Cl_2, 0°C.

Scheme 1.107 (continued)

Ref. [191]

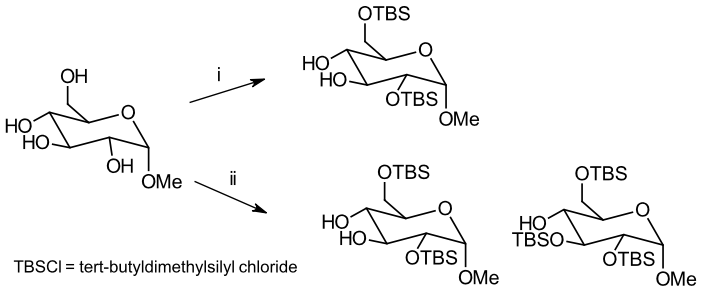


TBDPS = tert-butyldiphenylsilyl

TBS = tert-butyl dimethylsilyl

i) TBSOTf, Py.

Ref. [169]

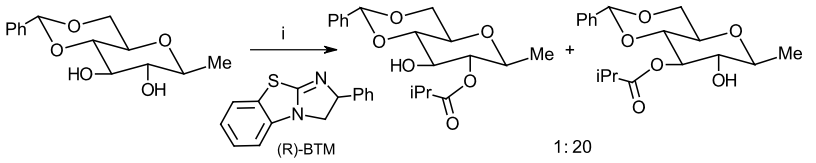


TBSCl = tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride

i) 2.2 eq TBSCl, DMF-Imidazole 24 h.

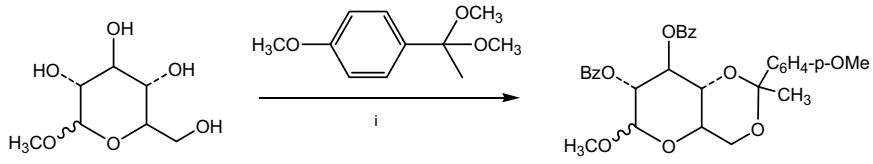
ii) 2.2 eq TBSCl, Et_3N, DMAP

Ref. [192]



i) 10 mol %(R)-BTM, $(iPrCO)_2O$ (2.5 equiv), iPr_2NEt, rt.

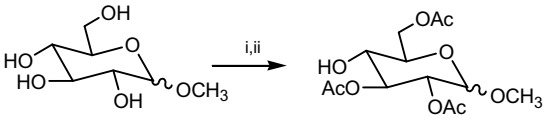
Ref. [193]



i) pyridinium p-toluensulfonate, 82-100%.

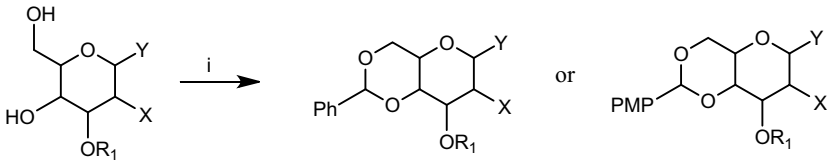
Scheme 1.107 (continued)

Ref. [194]



i) $(Bn_3Sn)_2O$, PhMe. ii) AcCl, r.t.

Ref. [195]

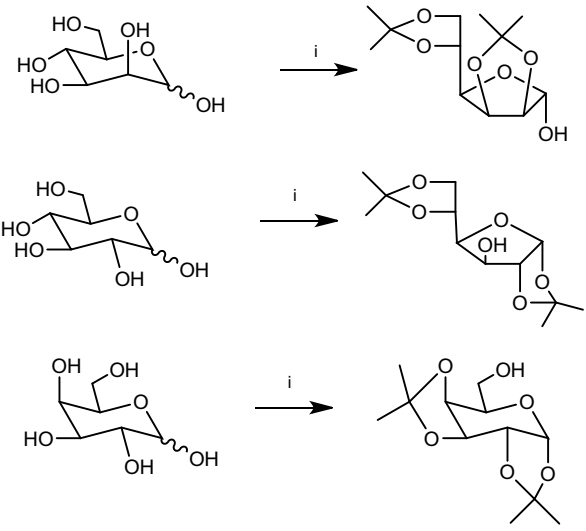


1. For monosaccharides
$FeCl_3$ (cat), $PhCH(OMe)_2$
or $PMPCH(OMe)_2$, CH_3CN

2. For disaccharides
$FeCl_3$ (1.2 equiv), CH_3CN, $PhCH(OMe)_2$
4A MS

R_1 = H/Ac/Bz/Bn; X= OH/OAc/OBz/OBn/Nphth
Y= SR_2/OR_2

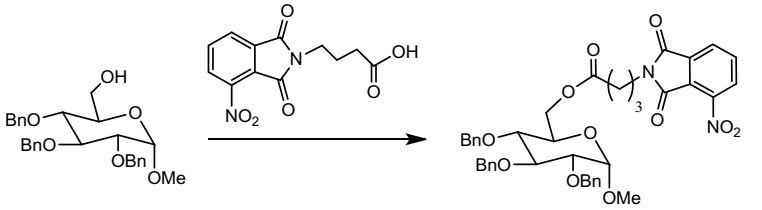
Ref [196]



i) tetrabutylammonium tribromide (TBATB), dry acetone, rt.

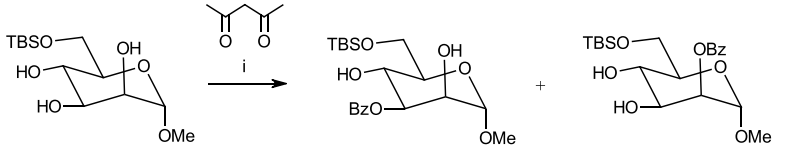
Scheme 1.107 (continued)

Ref [197]



i) DCC, DMAP, CH_2Cl_2.

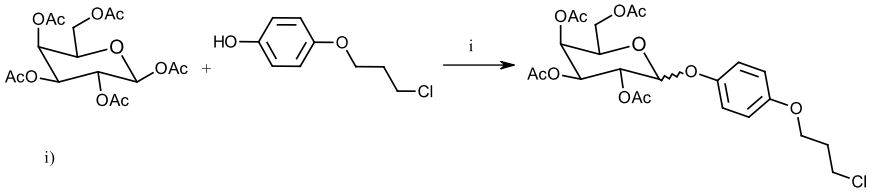
Ref [198]



i) $FeCl_3$, BzCl, DIPEA, CH_3CN, rt

80%

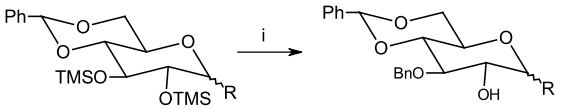
Ref [199]



i)

i) $BF_3.Et_2O$ (2.5 equiv), Et_3N (0.5 equiv), CH_2Cl_2, 20°C, 17-22 h

Ref [200]



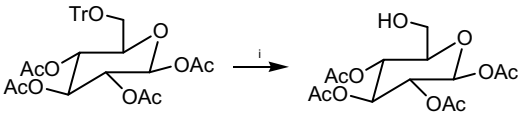
R = α-OAll 87%

R = β-STol 86%

i) PhCHO, Et_3SiH, cat. TMSOTf, -78°C

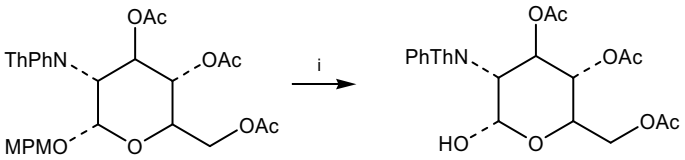
Ref [201]

Scheme 1.107 (continued)



i) 1% I_2, MeOH.

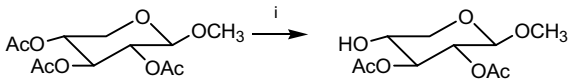
Ref. [202]



PhTh = phthalimido.
MPM = p-Methoxybenzyl ether p-$MeOC_6H_4CH_2OR$

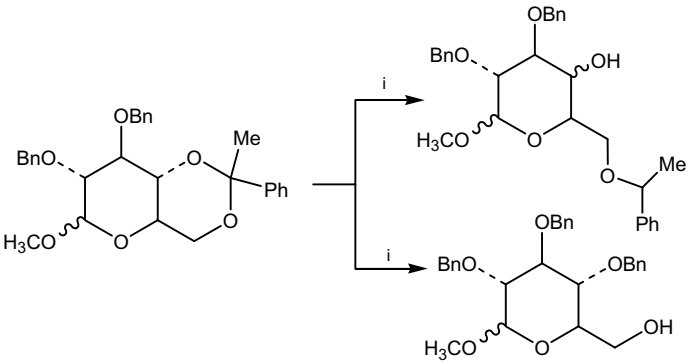
i) CAN or NBS, CH_2Cl_2, H_2O.

Ref. [203]



i) Lipase PS, n-pentyl-OH, 93%

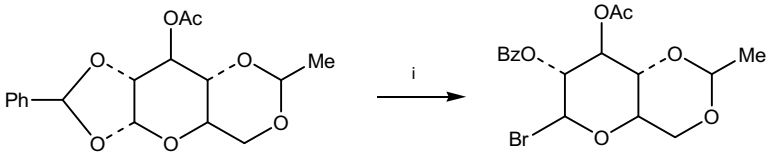
Ref. [204]



i) $LiAlH_4$, $AlCl_3$, Et_2O, CH_2Cl_2, heat

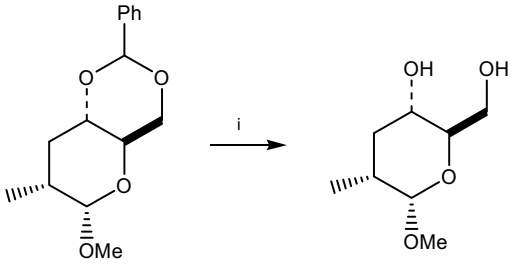
Ref. [205]

Scheme 1.108 Miscellaneous selective deprotections [158, 169, 177, 194, 202–231]



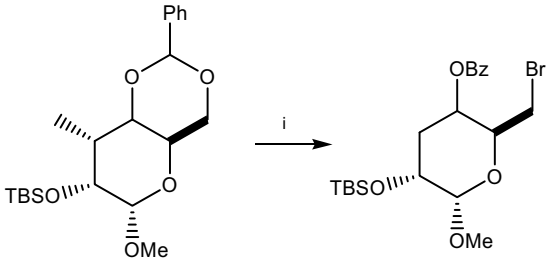
i) $BrCCl_3$, CCl_4, hv, 30 min. 100%

Ref. [206]



i) H_2, $Pd(OH)_2$, EtOH, 92%

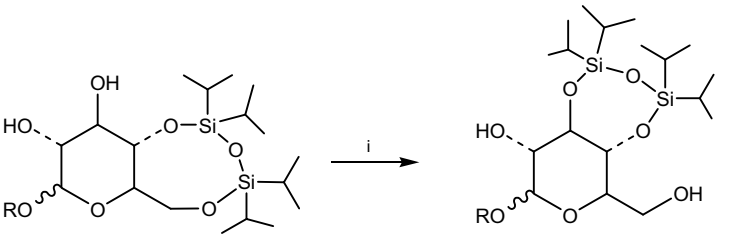
Ref. [177]



i) NBS, $BaCO_3$, CCl_4, Δ

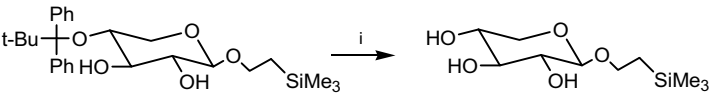
Ref. [207]

Scheme 1.108 (continued)



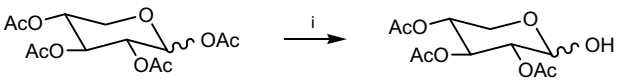
i) DMF, H+, 82%

Ref. [208]

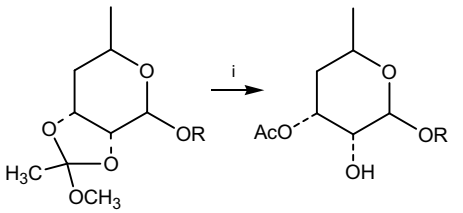


i) $Bu_4NF.3\ H_2O$, AcOH, THF.

Ref. [209]

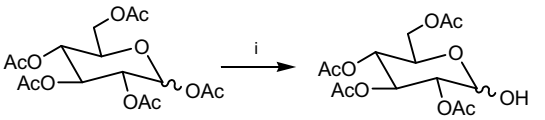


i) CF_3COOH, CH_2Cl_2..



i) AcOH, 100%.

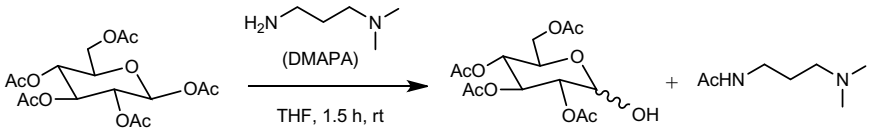
Ref. [210]



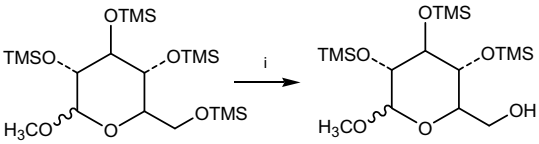
i) a) $BnNH_2$, THF. b) HCl.

Ref. [169]

Scheme 1.108 (continued)

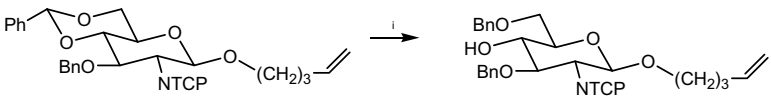


Ref. [211]



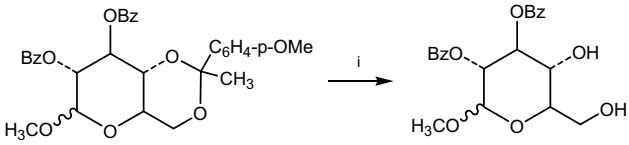
i) K_2CO_3, MeOH, 0°C, 45 min, 100%

Ref. [212]



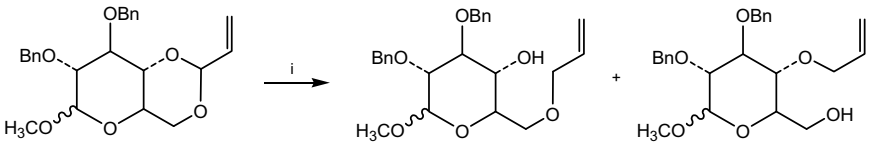
i) a) $NaBH_3CN$. b) HCl, THF, Et_2O

Ref. [158]



i) a) $SnCl_4$, CH_2Cl_2, -78°C. b) Bu_4NOH, 90%.

Ref. [194]

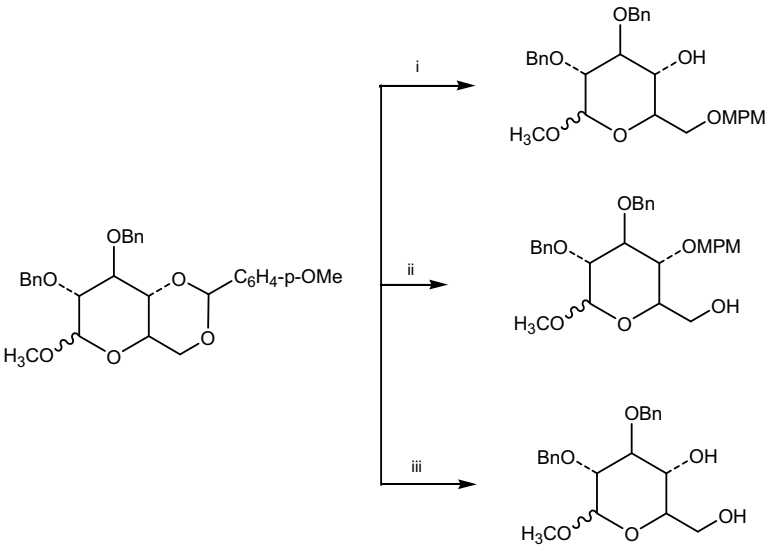


79%

i) a) $NaBH_3CN$. b) HCl, THF.

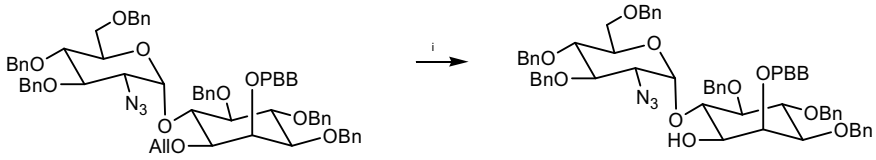
Ref. [213]

Scheme 1.108 (continued)



i) $NaBH_3CN$. b) TFA, DMF. ii) a) $NaBH_3CN$. b) TMSCl, CH_3CN. iii) CAN, CH_3CN-H_2O (9:1), 95%.

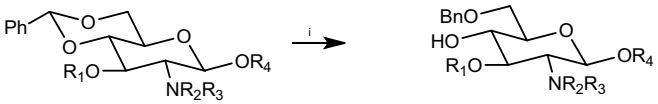
Ref. [214]



PBB = p-bromobenzyl

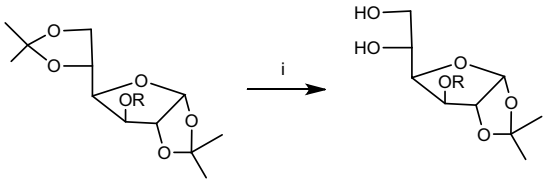
i) $Pd(OAc)_2$, (o-biphenyl)$P(^tBu)_2$, PhN(H)Me, NaO^tBu, 80°C. ii) $SnCl_4$, 84%.

Ref. [215]



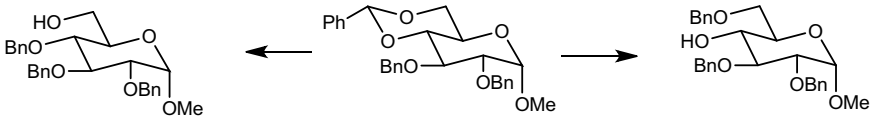
Ref. [216]

Scheme 1.108 (continued)



i) MeOH, Solid acid, H_2O, rt

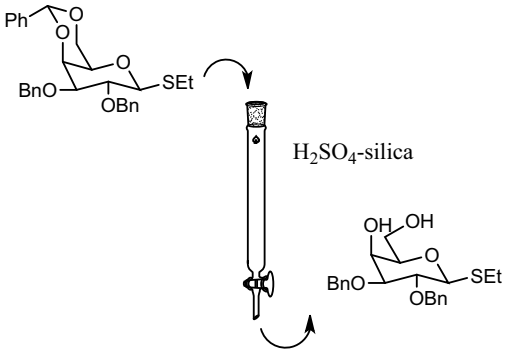
Ref. [217]



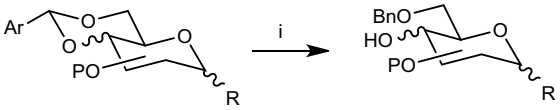
$LiAlH_4$, $AlCl_3$, CH_2Cl_2, Et_2O or
$BH_3.SMe_2$, $AlCl_3$, THF or
BH_3-THF, rt*

$BH_3.NMe_3$, $AlCl_3$, THF or
$BH_3.NMe_3$, $BF_3.OEt_2$, THF or
$BH_3.SMe_2$, $AlCl_3$, THF or
TfOH, EtSiH, -78°C*

Ref. [218, 219]



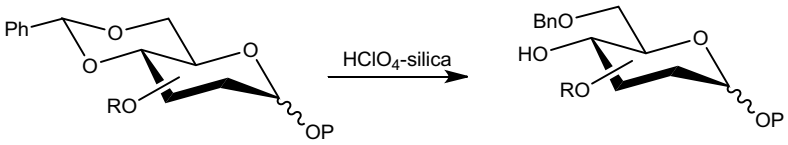
Ref. [220]



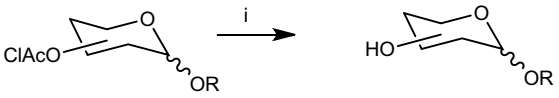
Scheme 1.108 (continued)

$NaBH_3CN$, I_2, CH_3CN, rt

Ref [221]



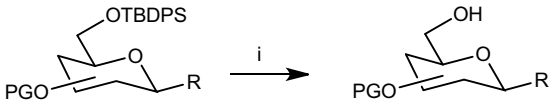
Ref [222]



TBAF = tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride

i) TBAF, THF, rt.

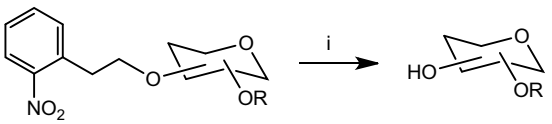
Ref [223]



PG = Ac, Bz, Piv, Lev, Ms, Bn, All etc
R = OMe, OPh, OPMP, OPNP, STol, SPh, SEt etc

i) $TfOH\text{-}SiO_2$, MeCN

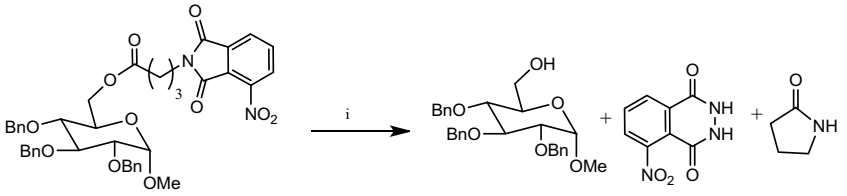
Ref [224]



i) Zn, NH_4Cl, MeOH

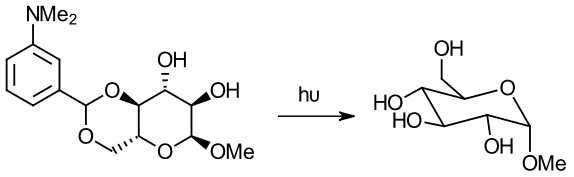
Ref [225]

Scheme 1.108 (continued)

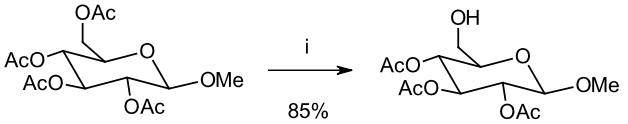


i) H_2NNH_2-HOAc, DMF, 50°C.

Ref [226]

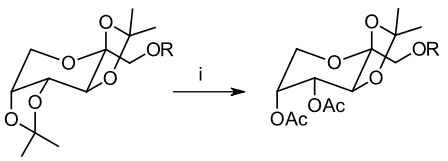


Ref [227]



i) Cp_2ZrCl_2, DIBAL-H, THF, -20°C

Ref [228]

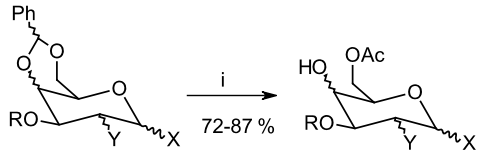


R = OAc 71%
R = OTs 73%

i) Ac_2O, TFA

Ref [229]

Scheme 1.108 (continued)

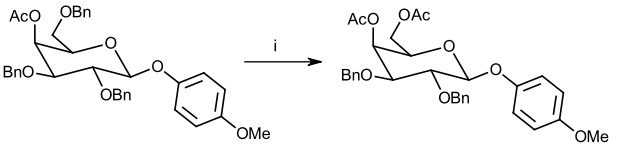


R = H/Bn/Bz

X = β-SPh/ β-STol/ α-OMe/ β-OMP/ β-OAll

Y = OH/OBn/OBz/OMe/ NPth

Ref [230]



i) Ac_2O, $HClO_4$-SiO_2

Ref [231]

Scheme 1.108 (continued)

Table 1.5 Summary of common protecting and cleavage conditions

Protecting group	Protection conditions	Cleavage conditions
Acetyl (Ac-)	Ac_2O, Et_3N, DMAP, CH_2Cl_2	NaOMe–MeOH
Benzoyl (Bz-)	Bz–Cl, Py	NaOMe–MeOH
Pivaloyl (Pv-)	Pv–Cl, Py, DMAP	Bu_4NOH
Trityl (Tr-)	Tr–Cl, DMAP, DMF	1% I_2–MeOH
Benzyl (Bn-)	Bn–Br, NaH, THF	H_2–$Pd(OH)_2$–EtOH
p-Methoxybenzyl (PMB-)	PMB–Cl, NaH, THF	DDQ, CH_2Cl_2–H_2O
Acetonide ($(CH_3)_2C(O)_2$-)	$(CH_3)_2CO$, 2,2-DMP, *p*-TSOH	AcOH–H_2O
Benzylidene ($PhCH(O)_2$-)	$PhCH(OCH_3)_2$, *p*-TsOH, CH_3CN	AcOH–H_2O, or H_2–$Pd(OH)_2$
Tert-butyldimethylsilyl (TBS-)	TBS–OTf-Py	Bu4NF–THF
Tert-butyldiphenylsilyl (TBDPS-)	TBDPS–Cl-imidazole, DMF	HF–Py

References

1. Robyt JF (1998) Essentials of carbohydrate chemistry. Springer, NY
2. Khadem HS (1988) Carbohydrate chemistry. Academic Press, NY
3. Fischer F (1890) Synthesen in der Zuckergruppe. Ber Dt Chem Ges 23, 2114–2141
4. Wrodnigg TM, Kartusch C, Illaszewicz C (2008) The Amadori rearrangement as key reaction for the synthesis of neoglycoconjugates. Carbohyd Res 343:2057–2066
5. Brito-Arias M (2019) The chemistry of oxidative stress and glycoxidation as risk factors for developing degenerative disease. Ann Rev Res 4(5):132–145
6. Horvat Š, Roščic M (2010) Glycosylation of lysine-containing pentapeptides by glucuronic acid: new insights into the Maillard reaction. Carbohydr Res 345:377–384
7. Prasch H, Hojnik C, Lindhorst TK, Didak B, Landemarre L (2019) Wrodnigg TM new lectin ligands: testing of Amadori rearrangement products with a series of mannoside-specific lectins. Carbohyd Res 475:65–68
8. Shi X, Wu Y, Li P, Yi H, Yang M, Wang G (2011) Catalytic conversion of xylose to furfural over the solid acid image/ZrO_2–Al_2O_3/SBA-15 catalysts. Carbohyd Res 346:480–487
9. Rong C, Ding X, Zhu Y, Li Y Wang L, Qu Y, Ma X, Wang Z (2012) Production of furfural from xylose at atmospheric pressure by dilute sulfuric acid and inorganic salts. Carbohyd Res 350:77–80
10. Marcotullio G, de Jong W (2011) Furfural formation from d-xylose: the use of different halides in dilute aqueous acidic solutions allows for exceptionally high yields. Carbohyd Res 436:1291–1293
11. Sádaba I, Lima S, Valente AA, López Granados M (2011) Catalytic dehydration of xylose to furfural: vanadyl pyrophosphate as source of active soluble species. Carbohyd Res 346:2785–2791
12. Yang W, Li P, Bo D, Chang H (2012) The optimization of formic acid hydrolysis of xylose in furfural production. Carbohyd Res 357:53–61
13. Riansa-ngawong W, Prasertsan P (2011) Optimization of furfural production from hemicellulose extracted from delignified palm pressed fiber using a two-stage process. Carbohyd Res 346:103–110
14. Fusaro MB, Chagnault V, Postel D (2015) Reactivity of d-fructose and d-xylose in acidic media in homogeneous phases. Carbohyd Res 409:9–19
15. Rasmussen H, Sørensen HR, Meyer AS (2014) Formation of degradation compounds from lignocellulosic biomass in the biorefinery: sugar reaction mechanisms. Carbohyd Res 385:45–57
16. Lee J-W, Ha M-G, Yi Y-B, Chung C-H (2011) Chromium halides mediated production of hydroxymethylfurfural from starch-rich acorn biomass in an acidic ionic liquid. Carbohyd Res 346:177–182
17. Amiri H, Karimi K, Roodpeyma S (2010) Production of furans from rice straw by single-phase and biphasic systems. Carbohyd Res 345:2133–2138
18. Li C, Zhao ZK, Wang A, Zheng M, Zhang T (2010) Production of 5-hydroxymethylfurfural in ionic liquids under high fructose concentration conditions. Carbohyd Res 345:1846–1850
19. Liu J, Tang Y, Wu K, Bi C, Cui Q (2012) Conversion of fructose into 5-hydroxymethylfurfural (HMF) and its derivatives promoted by inorganic salt in alcohol. Carbohyd Res 350:20–24
20. Tong X, Ma Y, Li Y (2010) An efficient catalytic dehydration of fructose and sucrose to 5-hydroxymethylfurfural with protic ionic liquids. Carbohyd Res 345:1698–1701
21. Cao Q, Guo X, Yao S, Guan J, Wang X, Mu X, Zhang D (2011) Conversion of hexose into 5-hydroxymethylfurfural in imidazolium ionic liquids with and without a catalyst. Carbohyd Res 346:956–959
22. Onorato A, Pavlik C, Invernale MA, Berghorn ID, Sotzing GA, Morton MD, Smith MB (2011) Polymer-mediated cyclodehydration of alditols and ketohexoses. Carbohyd Res 346:1662–1670
23. Zhu H, Cao Q, Li C, Mu X (2011) Acidic resin-catalysed conversion of fructose into furan derivatives in low boiling point solvents. Carbohyd Res 346:2016–2018

24. Yuan Z, Xu C, Cheng S, Leitch M (2011) Catalytic conversion of glucose to 5-hydroxymethyl furfural using inexpensive co-catalysts and solvents. Carbohyd Res 346:2019–2023
25. Ray D, Mittal N, Chung W-J (2011) Phosphorous pentoxide mediated synthesis of 5-HMF in ionic liquid at low temperature. Carbohyd Res 346:2145–2148
26. Yang L, Li G, Yang F, Zhang S-M, Fan H-X, Lv X-N (2011) Direct conversion of cellulose to 1-(furan-2-yl)-2-hydroxyethanone in zinc chloride solution under microwave irradiation. Carbohyd Res 346:2304–2307
27. Wang C, Fu L, Tong X, Yang Q, Zhang W (2011) Efficient and selective conversion of sucrose to 5-hydroxymethylfurfural promoted by ammonium halides under mild conditions. Carbohyd Res 346:182–185
28. Guo X, Cao Q, Jiang Y, Guan J, Wang X, Mu X (2012) Selective dehydration of fructose to 5-hydroxymethylfurfural catalyzed by mesoporous SBA-15-SO_3H in ionic liquid BmimCl. Carbohyd Res 351:35–41
29. Tian G, Tong X, Cheng Y, Xue S (2013) Tin-catalyzed efficient conversion of carbohydrates for the production of 5-hydroxymethylfurfural in the presence of quaternary ammonium salts. Carbohyd Res 370:33–37
30. Jiang S, Verrier C, Ahmar M, Lai J, Ma C, Muller E, Queneau Y, Pera-Titus M, Jérôme F, De Oliveira Vigier K (2018) Unveiling the role of choline chloride in furfural synthesis from highly concentrated feeds of xylose. Green Chem 20:5104–5110
31. Wang A, Balsara NP, Bell AT (2018) Continuous pervaporation-assisted furfural production catalyzed by $CrCl_3$. Green Chem 20:2903–2912
32. Asakawa M, Shrotri A, Kobayashi H and Fukuoka A (2019) Solvent basicity controlled deformylation for the formation of furfural from glucose and fructose. Green Chem 21:6146–6153
33. Nishimura Y, Suda M, Kuroha M, Kobayashi H, Nakajima K, Fukuoka A (2019) Synthesis of 5-hydroxymethylfurfural from highly concentrated aqueous fructose solutions using activated carbon. Carbohyd Res 486:107826
34. Sajid M, Zhao X and Liu D (2018) Production of 2,5-furandicarboxylic acid (FDCA) from 5-hydroxymethylfurfural (HMF): recent progress focusing on the chemical-catalytic routes. Green Chem 20:5427–5453
35. Li H, Wang C, Xu Y, Yu Z, Saravanamurugan S, Wu Z, Yang S, Luque R (2020) Heterogeneous (de)chlorination-enabled control of reactivity in the liquid-phase synthesis of furanic biofuel from cellulosic feedstock. Green Chem 22:637–645
36. Tang Z, Su J (2019) Direct conversion of cellulose to 5-hydroxymethylfurfural (HMF) using an efficient and inexpensive boehmite catalyst. Carbohyd Res 481:52–59
37. Zhou S, Chen G, Feng X, Wang M, Song T, Liu D, Lu F, Qi H (2018) In situ MnO_x/N-doped carbon aerogels from cellulose as monolithic and highly efficient catalysts for the upgrading of bioderived aldehydes. Green Chem 20:3593–3603
38. Peng Y, Li X, Gao T, Li T, Yang W (2019) Preparation of 5-methylfurfural from starch in one step by iodide mediated metal-free hydrogenolysis. Green Chem 21:4169–4177
39. Casiraghi G, Zanardi F, Rassu G, Spanu P (1995) Stereoselective approaches to bioactive carbohydrates and alkaloids—with a focus on recent syntheses drawing from the chiral pool. Chem Rev 95:1677–1716
40. Chan T-H, Li C-J (1992) A concise chemical synthesis of (+) 3-deoxy-Dglycero-D-galacto-nonulsonic acid (KDN). J Chem Soc Chem Commun 747–748
41. Gao J, Härtner R, Gordon DM, Whitesides GM, Org J (1994) Synthesis of KDO using indiummediated allylation of 2,3,4,5-di-isopropylidine-D-arabinose in aqueous media. J Org Chem 59:3714–3715
42. Prenner RH, Binder WH, Schmid W (1994) Indium-assisted allylationin carbihydrate chemistry Liebigs. Ann Chem 73–78
43. Sato K-I, Miyata T, Tanai I, Yonezawa Y (1994) Convenient syntheses of 3-Deoxy-D–manno-2-octulosonic acid (KDO) and 3-Deoxy-D–glycero–D–galacto-2-nonulosonic. Acid (KDN) derivatives from D-Mannose. Chem Lett 129–132

44. Davies SG, Nicholson RL, Smith AD (2002) The asymmetric synthesis of D-galactose via an iterative syn-glycolate aldol strategy. Synlett 1637–1640
45. Northrup AB, Mangion IK, Hettche F, MacMillan DWC (2004) Enantioselective organocatalytic direct aldol reactions of a-oxyaldehydes: step one in a two-step synthesis of carbohydrates. Angew Chem Int Ed 43:2152–2154
46. Lubineau A, Augé J, Lubin N (1993) New strategy in the synthesis of 3-deoxy-D-manno-2-octulosonic acid (KDO), 2-deoxy-KDO and thioglycoside of KDO. Tetrahedron 49:4639–4650
47. Casiraghi G, Pinna L, Rassu G, Spanu P, Ulheri F (1993) Total synthesis of 2,3-dideoxy-C-methylheptose derivatives. Tetrahedron Asymmetry 4:681–686
48. Gruner SAW, Locardi E, Lohof E, Kessler H (2002) Carbohydrate-based mimetics in drug design: sugar amino acids and carbohydrate scaffolds. Chem Rev 102:491–514
49. Watterson MP, Pickering L, Smith MD, Hudson SJ, Marsh PR, Mordaunt JE, Watkin DJ, Newman CJ, Fleet GWJ (1999) 3-azidotetrahydrofuran-2-carboxylates: a family of five-ring templated b-aminoacid foldamers? Tetrahedron Asymmetry 10:1855–1859
50. Hungerford NL, Fleet GWJ (2000) Tetrahydrofuran Amino Acids: b- and g-Azidotetrahydrofuran carboxylic acid monomers derived from D-glucoheptonolactone as building blocks for b- and g-oligopeptides. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:3680–3685
51. Dondoni A, Marra A (2000) Methods for anomeric carbon-linked and fused sugar amino acid synthesis: the gateway to artificial glycopeptides. Chem Rev 100:4395–4422
52. Robins MJ, Parker JMR (1983) Chiral transformations of D-ribose to 2-('бета'-D-ribofuranosyl)-L and D-glycine and an anhydroallose hemiacetal used in C-nucleoside synthesis. Can J Chem 61:312–316
53. Axon JR, Beckwith ALJ (1995) Diastereoselective radical addition to methyleneoxazolidinones: an enantioselective route to α-amino acids. J Chem Soc Chem Commun 5:549–550
54. Li G, Angert HH, Sharpless KB (1996) N-halocarbamate salts lead to more efficient catalytic asymmetric aminohydroxylation. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 35:2813–2819
55. Jarreton O, Skrydstrup T, Espinosa J-F, Jiménez-Barbero J, Beau J-M (1999) Samarium diiodide promoted C-glycosylation: an application to the stereospecific synthesis of alpha-1,2-C-mannobioside and its derivatives. Chem Eur J 5:430–441
56. Ohnishi Y, Ichikawa Y (2002) Stereoselective synthesis of a C-glycoside analogue of N-Fmoc-serine β-N-acetylglucosaminide by ramberg–bäcklund rearrangement. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 12:997–999
57. Nolen EG, Watts MM, Fowler DJ (2002) Synthesis of C-linked glycopyranosyl serines via a chiral glycine enolate equivalent. Org Lett 4:3963–3965
58. Nolen EG, Kurish AJ, Potter JM, Donahue LA, Orlando MD (2005) Stereoselective synthesis of r-C-glucosyl serine and alanine via a cross-metathesis/cyclization strategy. Org Lett 7:3383–3386
59. Nuzzi A, Massi A, Dondoni A (2008) General synthesis of C-glycosyl amino acids via proline-catalyzed direct electrophilic α-amination of C-glycosylalkyl aldehydes. Org Lett 10:4485–4488
60. Meyerhof O, Lohmann K (1934) Gleichgewichtsreaktion zwischen hexosediphosphorsäure und dioxyacetonephosphorsäure. Biochem Z 271:89–110
61. Gijsen HM, Qiao L, Fitz W, Wong C-H (1996) Recent advances in the chemoenzymatic synthesis of carbohydrates and carbohydrate mimetics. Chem Rev 96:443–473
62. Bednarski MD, Waldmann HJ, Whitesides GM (1986) Aldolase-catalyzed synthesis of. complex C8 and C9. Monosaccharides. Tetrahedron Lett 27:5807
63. Wong C-H, Halcomb RL, Ichikawa Y, Kajimoto T, Ichikawa, Y., Kajimoto, T (1995) Enzymes in organic synthesis—application to the problems of carbohydrate recognition. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 34:521–546
64. Boguslawski GJ (1983) Enzymes in synthetic organic chemistry. J Appl Biochem 5:186–196
65. Durrwachter JR, Wong CH (1988) Fructose-1,6-diphosphate aldolase catalyzed stereoselective synthesis of C-alkyl and N-containing sugars: thermodynamically controlled C–C bond formations. J Org Chem 53:4175–4181

66. Jung S-H, Jeong JH, Miller P, Wong C-H (1994) An efficient multigram scale preparation ofdihydroxyacetone phosphate. J Org Chem 59:7182–7184
67. Look GC, Fotsch CH, Wong C-H (1993) Enzyme-catalyzed organic synthesis: practical routes to azasugars and their analogs for use as glycoprocessing inhibitors. Acc Chem Res 26:182–190
68. Aoyagi T, Yamamoto T, Kojiri K, Morishima H, Nagai M, Hamada M, Takechi T, Umezawa H (1989) Mannostatins A and B: new inhibitors of alpha-D-mannosidase, produced by Streptoverticillium verticillus var. quintum ME3-AG3: taxonomy, production, isolation, physico-chemical properties and biological activities. J Antibiot 42:883–889
69. Saul R, Moylneux RJ, Elbein AD (1984) Studies on the mechanism of castanospermine inhibition of alpha- and beta-glucosidases. Arch Biochem Biophys 230:668–675
70. Kayakiri H, Nakamura K, Takase S, Setoi H, Uchida I, Terano H, Hashimoto M, Tada T, Koda S (1991) Structure and synthesis of nectrisine, a new immunomodulator isolated from a fungus. Chem Pharm Bull 39:2807–2812
71. Baguley BC, Römmele G, Gruner J, Wehrli W (1979) Papulacandin B: an inhibitor of glucan synthesis in yeast spheroplasts. Eur J Biochem 97:345–351
72. Ichikawa Y, Igarashi Y, Ichikawa M, Suhara Y (1998) 1-N-Iminosugars: Potent and selective inhibitors of β-glycosidases. J Am Chem Soc 120:3007–3018
73. Dondoni A, Merino P, Perrone D (1993) Totally chemical synthesis of azasugars via thiazole intermediates. Stereodivergent routes to (−)-nojirimycin, (−)-mannojirimycin and their 3-deoxy derivatives from serine. Tetrahedron 49:2939–2956
74. Ziegler T, Straub A, Effenberger F (1988) Enzyme-catalyzed Synthesis of 1-Deoxymannojirimycin, 1-Deoxynojirimycin, and 1,4-Dideoxy-1,4-imino-D-arabinitol. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 27:716–717
75. Augé C, Gautheron C (1991) Enzymic methods in preparative carbohydrate chemistry. Adv Carbohydr Chem 49:175–237
76. Wang Y-F, Dumas DP, Wong C-H (1993) Chemo-enzymatic synthesis of five-membered aza sugars asinhibitors of fucosidase and fucosyltransferase: an issue of stereochemistry discrimination attransition state. Tetrahedron Lett 34:403–406
77. Prasad SS, Reddy NR (2018) Baskaran S one-pot synthesis of structurally diverse iminosugar-based hybrid molecules. J Org Chem 83:9604–9618
78. Gamboa Marin OJ, Hussain N, Ravicoularamin G, Ameur N, Gormand P, Sauvageau J, Gauthier C (2020) Total synthesis of 6-amino-2,6-dideoxy-α-KDO from d-mannose. Org Lett 22(15):5783–5788
79. Massicot F, Plantier-Royon R, Vasse J-L, Behr J-B (2018) Synthesis and glycosidase inhibition potency of all-trans substituted 1-C-perfluoroalkyl iminosugars. Carbohyd Res 464;2–7
80. Auberger N, Onfroy B, Fontelle N, Foucart Q, Blériot Y (2019) Lewis acid-catalysed nucleophilic opening of a bicyclic hemiaminal followed by ring contraction: access to functionalized L-idonojirimycin derivatives. Carbohyd Res 472:65–71
81. Underlin EN, Jensen H (2019) Synthesis of nortropane alkaloid calystegine B2 from methyl α-d-xylopyranoside. Carbohyd Res 472:122–126
82. Cuffaro D, Landi M, D'Andrea F, Guazzelli L (2019) Preparation of 1,6-di-deoxy-d-galacto and 1,6-di-deoxy-l-altro nojirimycin derivatives by aminocyclization of a 1,5-dicarbonyl derivative. Carbohyd Res 482:107744
83. Rai R, McAlexander I, Chang C-WT (2005) Synthetic Glycodiversification. From aminosugars to aminoglycoside antibiotics. A review. Org Prep Proced Int (OPPI) 37:337–375
84. LeBlanc Y, Fitzsimmons BJ, Springer JP, Rokach J (1989) J Am Chem Soc 111:2995
85. Dubois J, Tomooka CS, Carreira EM (1997) J Am Chem Soc 119:3179
86. Jand L, Gin YD (2002) C2-amidoglycosylation. Scope and mechanism of nitrogen transfer. J Am Chem Soc 124:9789–9797
87. Bovin NV, Zurabyan SE, Khorlii AY (1981) Carbohydr Res 98:25
88. Reddy G, Madhusudanan KP, Yashwant D (2004) Trimethylsilylnitrate-trimethylsilylazide: a novel reagent system for the synthesis of 2-deoxy glycosyl azides from glycals: application in the synthesis of 2-deoxy-beta-nglycopeptides vankar. J Org Chem 69:2630

89. Györgydeák Z, Szilágyi L, Paulsen H (1993) Synthesis, structure and reactions of glycosylazides. J Carbohydr Chem 12(2):139–163
90. Elchert B, Li J, Wang J, Hui Y, Rai R, Ptak R, Ward P, Takemoto JY, Bensaci MC-W, Chang C-W (2004) Application of the synthetic aminosugars for glycodiversification: synthesis and antimicrobial studies of pyranmycin. J Org Chem 69:1513–1523
91. Pavliak V, Kovbk P (1991) A short synthesis of 1,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-2-azido-2-deoxy-beta-D glucopyranose and the corresponding alpha-glucosyl chloride from D-mannose. Carbohydr Res 210:333–337
92. Dasgupta F, Garegg PJ (1988) Synthesis facile preparation of 3,4-Di-O-acetyl-1,6-anhydro-2-azido-2-deoxy-ß-D-glucopyranose and some derivatives thereof: useful precursors for oligosaccharide. Synthesis 626–628
93. Ahmed MZ, Zia Q, Haque A, Alqahtani AS, Almarfadi OM, Banawas S, Alqahtani MS, Ameta KL, Haque S (2021) Aminoglycosides as potential inhibitors of SARS-CoV-2 main protease: an in silico drug repurposing study on FDA-approved antiviral and anti-infection agents. J Infect Publ Health 14(5):611–619
94. Krause KM, Serio AW, Kane TR, Connolly LE (2016) Aminoglycosides: an overview. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 6(6):1–18
95. (a) Gyselinck I, Janssens W, Verhamme P, Vos R (2021) Rationale for azithromycin in COVID-19: an overview of existing evidence. BMJ Open Resp Res 8:e000806, 1–10. (b) Kim HC, Kang SH (2009) Total synthesis of azithromycin. Angew Chem Int Ed 48(10):1827–1829
96. Chou W-C, Chen L, Fang J-M, Wong C-H (1994) A new route to deoxythio sugars based on aldolases. J Am Chem Soc 116:6191–6194
97. Stick RV, Stubbs KA (2005) From glycoside hydrolases to thioglycoligases: the synthesis of thioglycosides. Tetrahedron Asymmetry 16:321–335
98. Bonora B, Boos I, Clausen MH (2017) Convergent strategy for the synthesis of S-linked oligoxylans. Carbohyd Res 443–444:53–57
99. Lázár L, Borbás A, Somsák L (2018) Synthesis of thiomaltooligosaccharides by a thio-click approach. Carbohyd Res 470:8–12
100. Acharya PP, Baryal KN, Reno CE, Zhu J (2017) Synthesis of S-linked trisaccharide glycal of derhodinosylurdamycin A: discovery of alkyl thiocyanate as an efficient electrophile for stereoselective sulfenylation of 2-deoxy glycosyl lithium. Carbohyd Res 448:103–109
101. Zhang GL, Gadi MR, Cui X, Liu D, Zhang J, Saikam V, Gibbons C, Wang PG, Li L (2021) Protecting-group-free S-glycosylation towards thioglycosides and thioglycopeptides in water. Green Chem 23:2907–2912
102. Jahn M, Marles J, Warren RAJ, Withers SG (2003) Thioglycoligases: mutant glycosidases for thioglycoside synthesis. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 42(3):352–354
103. Kim Y-W, Lovering AL, Chen H, Kantner T, McIntosh LP, Strynadka NCJ, Withers SG (2006) Expanding the thioglycoligase strategy to the synthesis of α-linked thioglycosides allows structural investigation of the parent enzyme/substrate complex. J Am Chem Soc 128:2202–2203
104. Ogawa S, Matsunaga, Li H, Palcic MM (1999) Synthesis of ether- and imino-linked octyl N-acetyl-5a′-carba-β-lactosaminides and -isolactosaminides: acceptor substrates for α-(1[→]3/4)-fucosyltransferase, and enzymatic synthesis of 5a′-carbatrisaccharides. Eur J Org Chem 631–642
105. (a) Heingtmann TD, Vassela AT (1999) Recent Insights into inhibition, structure, and mechanism of configuration-retaining glycosidases. Angew Chem Int Ed 38:750–770. (b) Bianchi A, Russo A, Bernanrdi A (2005) Neo-glycoconjugates: stereoselective synthesis of α-glycosyl amides via Staudinger ligation reactions. Tetrahedron Asymmetry 16:381–386
106. Ogawa S, Ohmura M, Hisamatsu S (2001) Synthesis of building blocks for carba-oligosaccharides: 5a′-carbamaltoseand 5a′-carbacellobiose, and 5a-carba-beta-D-mannopyranosyl-(l -> 4)-D-glucopyrano. Synthesis 312–316
107. Fu Y, Bernasconi L, Liu P (2021) Ab initio molecular dynamics simulations of the SN1/SN2 mechanistic continuum in glycosylation reactions. J Am Chem Soc 143(3):1577–1589

108. (a) van der Vorm S, van Hengst JMA, Bakker M, Overkleeft HS, van der Marel GA, Codée JDC (2018) Mapping the relationship between glycosyl acceptor reactivity and glycosylation stereoselectivity. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 57(27):8240–8244. (b) Zhuo M-H, Wilbur DJ, Kwan EE, Bennett CS (2019) Matching glycosyl donor reactivity to sulfonate leaving group ability permits SN2 glycosylations. J Am Chem Soc 141(42):16743–16754
109. Chatterjee S, Moon S, Hentschel F, Gilmore K, Seeberger PH (2018) An empirical understanding of the glycosylation reaction. J Am Chem Soc 140(38):11942–11953
110. Yao H, Vu MD, Liu X-W (2019) Recent advances in reagent-controlled stereoselective/stereospecific glycosylation. Carbohyd Res 473:72–81
111. Liu H, Hansen T, Zhou S-Y, Wen G-E, Liu X-X, Zhang Q-J, Codee JDC, Schmidt R, Sun J-S (2019) Dual-participation protecting group solves the anomeric stereocontrol problems in glycosylation reactions. Org Lett 21(21):8713–8717
112. Khanam A, Tiwari A, Mandal PK (2020) Chiral auxiliaries: usefulness in stereoselective glycosylation reactions and their synthetic applications. Carbohyd Res 495:108045
113. van Well RM, Kartha KP, Field RA (2005) Iodine promoted glycosylation with glycosyl iodides: α-glycoside synthesis. J Carbohydr Chem 24:463–474
114. Shimizu M, Togo H, Yokohama M (1998) Chemistry of glycosyl fluorides. Synthesis 799–822
115. Juaristi E, Cuevas G (1995) The anomeric effect. CRC, Boca Raton
116. Koenigs W, Knorr E (1901) Formation of glycosides from acetylated glycosyl halides. Chem Ber 34:957–981
117. Oberthur M, Leimkuhler C, Kahne D (2004) A practical method for the stereoselective generation of β-2-deoxy glycosyl phosphates. Org Lett 6:2873–2876
118. Kaneko M, Herzon SB (2014) Scope and limitations of 2-deoxy- and 2,6-dideoxyglycosyl bromides as donors for the synthesis of β-2-deoxy- and β-2,6-dideoxyglycosides. Organ Lett 16:2776–2779
119. Wang Q, Fu J, Zhang J (2008) A facile preparation of peracylated α-aldopyranosyl chlorides with thionyl chloride and tin tetrachloride. Carbohyd Res 343:2713–2844
120. Thomas M. Beale TM, Patrick J. Moon PJ, and Mark S. Taylor MS (2014) Organoboron-catalyzed regio- and stereoselective formation of β-2-deoxyglycosidic linkages. Org Lett 16:3604–3607
121. Paulsen H, Tietz H (1984) Synthons of oligosaccharides. Part XLIX. Synthesis of a trisaccharide from N-acetylneuraminic acid and N-acetyllactosamine. Carbohydr Res 125:47–64
122. Kumar HVR, Naruchi K, Miyoshi R, Hinou H, Nishimura S-I (2013) A new approach for the synthesis of hyperbranched N-glycan core structures from locust bean gum. Org Lett 15:6278–6281
123. Wen P, Simmons CJ, Ma Z-X, Blaszczyk SA, Balzer PG, Ye W, Duan X, Wang H-Y, Yin D, Stevens CM, Tang W (2020) Synthesis of glycosyl chlorides and bromides by chelation assisted activation of picolinic esters under mild neutral conditions. Org Lett 22(4):1495–1498
124. Keith DJ, Townsend SD (2017) Direct, microwave-assisted substitution of anomeric nitrate-esters. Carbohyd Res 442:20–24
125. Meloncelli PJ, Martin AD, Lowary TL (2009) Glycosyl iodides. History and recent advances. Carbohyd Res 344:1110–1122
126. Mukhopadhyay B, Kartha KPR, Russell DA, Field RA (2004) Streamlined synthesis of per-O-acetylated sugars, glycosyl iodides, or thioglycosides from unprotected reducing sugars. J Org Chem 69:7758–7760
127. Bickley J, Cottrell JA, Ferguson JR, Field RA, Harding JR, Hughes DL, Kartha KPR, Law JL, Scheinmann F, Stachulski AV (2003) Preparation, X-ray structure and reactivity of a stable glycosyl iodide. Chem Comm 1266–1267
128. Perrie JA, Harding JH, King C, Sinnott D, Stachulski AV (2003) Glycosidation with a disarmed glycosyl iodide: promotion and scope. Org Lett 5:4545–4548
129. (a) Baldoni L, Marino C (2012) Synthesis of S- and C-galactofuranosides via a galactofuranosyl iodide. Isolable 1-galactofuranosylthiol derivative as a new glycosyl donor. Carbohyd Res 361:70–78. (b) Murakami T, Sato Y, Shibakami M (2008) Stereoselective glycosylations using benzoylated glucosyl halides with inexpensive promoters. Carbohyd Res 343:1283–1394

130. Williams SJ, Withers SG (2000) Glycosyl fluorides in enzymatic reactions. Carbohydr Res 327:27–46
131. Tsegay S, Williams RJ, Williams SJ (2012) Synthesis of glycosyl fluorides from thio-, seleno-, and telluroglycosides and glycosyl sulfoxides using aminodifluorosulfinium tetrafluoroborates. Carbohyd Res 357:16–22
132. Suzuki K, Ito Y, Kanie O (2012) An improved method for the synthesis of protected glycosyl fluorides from thioglycosides using N,N-diethylaminosulfur trifluoride (DAST). Carbohyd Res 359:81–91
133. López JC, Ventura J, Uriel C, Gómez AM, Fraser-Reid B (2009) Reaction of 1,2-orthoesters with HF−pyridine: a method for the preparation of partly unprotected glycosyl fluorides and their use in saccharide synthesis. Org Lett 11:4128–4131
134. Qiao M, Zhang L, Jiao R, Zhang S, Li B, Zhang X (2021) Chemical and enzymatic synthesis of S-linked sugars and glycoconjugates. Tetrahedron 81:131920
135. Meguro Y, Noguchi M, Li G, Shoda S-I (2018) Glycosyl bunte salts: a class of intermediates for sugar chemistry. Org Lett 20:76−79
136. (a) Roth W, Pigman W (1963) In: Whistler RL, Wolfrom, ML (eds) Methods in carbohydrate chemistry, vol 2. Academic Press, New York, pp 405–408. (b) Shull BK, Wu Z, Koreeda M (1996) A convenient, highly efficient one-pot preparation of peracetylated glycals from reducing sugars. J Carbohydr Chem 15:955–964. Fürstner A, Weidmann H (1988) A simple and efficient new glycal synthesis. J Carbohydr Chem 7:773–783
137. Lemieux RU, Morgan AR (1965) The preparation and configurations of tri-o-acetyl-α-d-glucopyranose 1,2-(orthoesters). Can J Chem 43:2198–2204. Wang W, Kong F (1998) New synthetic methodology for regio- and stereoselective synthesis of oligosaccharides via sugar ortho ester intermediates. J Org Chem 63:5744–5745
138. Blanc-Muessen M, Defaye J, Driguez H (1978) Syntheses stereoselectives de 1-thioglycosides. Carbohydr Res 67:305–328
139. McCloskey C, Coleman GH (1955) β-d-glucose-2,3,4,6-tetraacetate. Org Synth 3:434
140. Nicolaou KC, Li J, Zenke G (2000) Total synthesis and biological evaluation of glycolipids plakosides A, B and their analogs. Helv Chim Acta 83:1977–2006
141. Boons GJ, Demchenko AV (2000) Recent advances in O-sialylation. Chem Rev 100:4539–4566
142. Hamala V, Červenková Šťastná L, Kurfiřt M, Cuřínová P, Dračínský M (2021) Karban J Synthesis of multiply fluorinated N-acetyl-D-glucosamine and D-galactosamine analogs via the corresponding deoxyfluorinated glucosazide and galactosazide phenyl thioglycosides. Beilstein J Org Chem 17:1086–1095
143. Maeda H, Ito K, Ishida H, Kiso M, Hasegawa A (1995) Synthetic studies on sialoglycoconjugates 72: synthesis of sulfo-, phosphono- and sialyl-lewis × analogs containing the 1-deoxy- and 1,2-dideoxy-hexopyranoses in place of N-acetylglucosamine residue. J Carbohyd Chem 14:387–406
144. Tianlei Li T, Abdellatif Tikad A, Weidong Pan W, Stéphane P, Vincent SP (2014) β-stereoselective phosphorylations applied to the synthesis of ADP- and polyprenyl-β-mannopyranosides. Org Lett 16:5628–5631
145. Orlova AV, Shpirt AM, Kulikova NY, Kononov LO (2010) N,N-diacetylsialyl chloride—a novel readily accessible sialyl donor in reactions with neutral and charged nucleophiles in the absence of a promoter. Carbohyd Res 345:721–730
146. Matsumura F, Oka N, Wada T (2008) Stereoselective synthesis of α-glycosyl phosphites and phosphoramidites via O-selective glycosylation of H-phosphonate derivatives. Org Lett 10:5297–5300
147. Shirahata T, Matsuo JM, Teruya S, Hirata N, Kurimoto T, Akimoto N, Sunazuka T, Kaji E, Ōmura S (2010) Improved catalytic and stereoselective glycosylation with glycosyl N-trichloroacetylcarbamate: application to various 1-hydroxy sugars. Carbohyd Res 345:715–860
148. Sugiyama S, Diakur JM (2000) A convenient preparation of glycosyl chlorides from aryl/alkyl thioglycosides. Org Lett 2:2713–2715

149. Kahne D, Walker S, Cheng Y, Van Engen D (1989) Glycosylation of unreactive substrates. J Am Chem Soc 111:6881–6882
150. Tolon Murguía BI, Iglesias Morales YM, Mesa Hernandez M, Perez Y, Labrada Regalado C, Garrido Arteaga R, Paquet F, Lopez Lopez MA (2021) An efficient synthetic route to O-(2-O-benzyl-3,4-di-O-acetyl-α/β-l-fucopyranosyl)-trichloroacetimidate. Carbohyd Res 499:108221
151. Wang Z, Hua Q, Yang Y (2019) Gold(I)-promoted synthesis of a β-(1,3)-glucan hexadecasaccharide via the highly convergent strategy. Carbohyd Res 482:107735
152. Plante OJ, Seeberg P (1998) Anomeric phosphorodithioates as novel glycosylating agents. J Org Chem 63:9150–9151
153. Constantino V, Imperatore C, Fattoruso E, Magnoni A (2000) A mild and easy one-pot procedure for the synthesis of 2-deoxysugars from glycals. Tetrahedron Lett 41:9177–9180
154. Dios A, Geer A, Marzabadi CH, Franck WR (1998) Novel heterocycloaddition reaction of glycals. J Org Chem 63:6673–6679
155. Bosse F, Marcaurelle LA, Seeberger PH (2002) Linear synthesis of the tumor-associated carbohydrate antigens Globo-H, SSEA-3, and Gb3. J Org Chem 67:6659–6670
156. Schmidt RR (1986) Neue Methoden zur Glycosid- und Saccharidsynthese—Gibt es Alternativen zur Koenigs-Knorr-Methode? Angew Chem Int Engl 25:213–236
157. Guts PGM, Greene TW (1991) Protecting groups in organic synthesis. Wiley, New York
158. Olsson L, Jia ZJ, Fraser-Reid B (1998) Tetrachlorophthalimido- and Pent-4-enoyl-protected glucosamines as precursors for preparation of 2-azido-2-deoxyglucopyranosyl building blocks. J Org Chem 63:3790–3792. Nicolaou KC, Winssinger N, Pastor J, De Roose F (1997) A general and highly efficient solid phase synthesis of oligosaccharides. Total synthesis of a heptasaccharide phytoalexin elicitor (HPE). J Am Chem Soc 119:449–450
159. Larson DP, Heathcock CH (1997) Total synthesis of tricolorin A. J Org Chem 62:8406–8418
160. Liu L, Liu H (1989) Synthesis of cytidine diphosphate-d-quinovose. Tetrahedron Lett 30:35–38
161. Classon B, Garegg PJ, Oscarson S, Tiden AK (1991) Synthesis of an artificial antigen that corresponds to a disaccharide repeating unit of the capsular polysaccharide of Haemophilus influenzae type d. A facile synthesis of methyl 2-acetamido-2-deoxy-b-D-mannopyranoside. Carbohydr Res 216:187–196
162. Shao L, Zhang H, Li Y, Gu G, Cai F, Guo Z, Gao J (2018) Chemical synthesis of the repeating unit of type II Group B streptococcus capsular polysaccharide. J Org Chem 83(11):5920–5930
163. Nicolaou KC, Ohshima T, van Delft FL, Vourloumis D, Xu JY, Pfefferkorn JS, Kim S (1998) Total synthesis of eleutherobin and eleuthosides A and B. J Am Chem Soc 120:8674–8680
164. Kitagawa I, Ohashi K, Baek NI, Sakagami M, Yoshikawa M (1997) Shibuya H Indonesian medicinal plants. XIX. (1) Chemical structures of four additional resin-glycosides, mammosides A, B, H1, and H2, from the tuber of Merremia mammosa (Convolvulaceae). Chem Pharm Bull 45:786–794
165. Ellervik V, Magnusson G (1998) A novel donor for stereoselective α-sialylation; efficient synthesis of an α (2–8)-linked bis-sialic acid unit. J Org Chem 63:9314–9322
166. Crich D, Li H (2002) Synthesis of the salmonella type E1 core trisaccharide as a probe for the generality of 1-benzenesulfinyl piperidine/triflic anhydride combination for glycosidic bond formation from thioglycosides. J Org Chem 67:4640–4646
167. Frechét JM (1980) In: Hodge P, Sherrington DC (eds) Polymer-supported reactions in organic synthesis. Wiley, pp 407–434
168. Cross GG, Whitfield DM (1999) Simplifying oligosaccharide synthesis—boronate diesters as cleavable protecting groups. Synlett 487–488
169. Koviak JL, Chapell MD, Halcomb RL (2001) Design and synthesis of conformationally constrained glycosylated amino acids. J Org Chem 66:2318–2326
170. Wong CH, Ye XS, Zhang Z (1998) Assembly of oligosaccharide libraries with a designed building block and an efficient orthogonal protection−deprotection strategy. J Am Chem Soc 120:7137–7138

171. Lakhmiri R, Lhoste P, Sinou D (1989) Allyl ethyl carbonate/palladium (0), a new system for the one step conversion of alcohols into allyl ethers under neutral conditions. Tetrahedron Lett 30:4669–4672
172. Chaudhary SK, Hernández O (1979) A simplified procedure for the preparation of triphenylmethylethers Tetrahedron Lett. 20:95–98
173. Hart TW, Metcalfe DA, Scheinmann F (1979) Total synthesis of (±)-prostagladin D1: use of triethylsilyl protecting groups. J Chem Soc Chem Commun 156–159
174. Oikawa M, Wada A, Okazaki F, Kusumoto S (1996) Acidic, selective monoacylation of vic-diols. J Org Chem 61:4469–4471
175. Matsuo I, Isomura M, Walton R, Ajisaka K (1996) A new strategy for the synthesis of the core trisaccharide of asparagine-linked sugar chains. Tetrahedron Lett 37:8795-8798
176. Theil F, Schick H (1991) An improved procedure for the regioselective acetylation of monosaccharide derivatives by pancreatin-catalyzed transesterification in organic solvents. Synthesis, pp 533–535
177. Smith III AB, Hale KJ (1989) An enantioselective synthesis of the C(10) to C(23) backbone of the potent immunosuppressant FK506. Tetrahedron Lett 30:1037–1040
178. Yamada H, Harada T, Takahashi T (1994) Synthesis of an elicitor-active hexaglucoside analog by a one-pot, two-step glycosidation procedure. J Am Chem Soc 116:7919–7920
179. Wang G, Ella-Menye J-R, St. Martin M, Yang H, Williams K (2008) Regioselective esterification of vicinal diols on monosaccharide derivatives via mitsunobu reactions. Organ Lett 10:4203–4206
180. Leau L, Goren N (1984) Carbohydr Res C8:131
181. Guiso M, Procaccio C, Fizzano MR, Piccioni F (1997) Tetrahedron Lett 38:4291
182. Cai J, Davison BE, Ganellin CR, Thaisrivongs S (1995) New 3,4-O-isopropylidene derivatives of d- and l-glucopyranosides. Tetrahedron Lett 36:6535–6536
183. Binkley RW, Goewey GS, Johnston JC (1984) Regioselective ring opening of selected benzylidene acetals. A photochemically initiated reaction for partial deprotection of carbohydrates. J Org Chem 49:992–996
184. Arasappan A, Fuchs PL (1995) Regiospecific 4,6-functionalization of pyranosides via dimethylboron bromide-mediated cleavage of phthalide orthoesters. J Am Chem Soc 117:177–183
185. Jiang L, Chan TH (1998) Regioselective acylation of hexopyranosides with pivaloyl chloride. J Org Chem 63:6035–6038
186. Tatsuta K, Akimoto K, Annaka M, Ohno Y, Kinoshita M (1985) Enantiodivergent total syntheses of nanaomycins and their enantiomers, Kalafungins. Bull Chem Soc Jpn 58:1699–1706
187. Ley SV, Mio S (1996) Dispiroketals in synthesis (part 21)1: use of chiral 2,2′-bis(halomethyl)dihydropyrans as new protecting and resolving agents for 1,2-diols. Synlett 789–790.
188. Fernandez-Bolaños JG, García S, Fernandez-Bolaños J, Diánez MJ, Estrada MD, López-Castro A, Pérez Garrido S (2003) Synthesis of 4-C-sulfoaminosugar derivatives: isomerization of 4-C-sulfogalactosamine to its gluco epimer. Tetrahedron Assymetry 14:3761–3768
189. Lohman JGS, Seeberger PH (2003) One-pot conversion of glycals to cis-1,2-isopropylidene-α-glycosides. J Org Chem 68:7541–7543
190. Liang H, Grindley TB (2004) An efficient synthesis of derivatives of 2-acetamido-4-amino-2,4,6-trideoxy-D-galactopyranose. J Carbohydr Chem 23:71–82
191. Adinolfi M, Borone G, Guariniello L, Iadonisi A (2000) An easy and efficient approach for the installation of alkoxycarbonyl protecting groups on carbohydrate hydroxyls. Tetrahedron Lett 41:9305–9309
192. Govindarajan M (2020) Protecting group migrations in carbohydrate chemistry. Carbohyd Res 497:108151
193. Xiao G, Cintron-Rosado GA, Glazier DA, Xi B-m, Liu C, Liu P, Tang W (2017) Catalytic site-selective acylation of carbohydrates directed by cation–n interaction. J Am Chem Soc 139(12):4346–4349

194. Forsén S, Lindberg B, Silvander BG (1965) Trichloroethylidene derivatives of D-glucose. Acta Chem Scand 19:359–369
195. Koch K, Chambers RJ (1993) An improved synthesis of 4-deoxy-4-fluoro-d-galactopyranosyl derivatives. Carbohydr Res 241:295–299
196. Basu N, Maity SK, Roy S, Singha S, Ghosh R (2011) $FeCl_3$ mediated arylidenation of carbohydrates. Carbohyd Res 346:534–539
197. Khan AT, Khan MM, Adhikary AA (2011), Tetrabutylammonium tribromide (TBATB): a mild and efficient catalyst for O-isopropylidenation of carbohydrates. Carbohyde Res 346:673–677
198. Ko K-S, Park G, Yu Y, Pohl NL (2008) Protecting-group-based colorimetric monitoring of fluorous-phase and solid-phase synthesis of oligoglucosamines. Org Lett 10:5381–5384
199. Lv J, Luo T, Zhang Y, Pei Z, and Dong H (2018) Regio/site-selective benzoylation of carbohydrates by catalytic amounts of $FeCl_3$. ACS Omega 3(12):17717–17723
200. Stepanova EV, Abronina PI, Zinin AI, Chizhov AO, Kononov O (2019) Janus glycosides of next generation: synthesis of 4-(3-chloropropoxy)phenyl and 4-(3-azidopropoxy)phenyl glycosides. Carbohyd Res 471:95–104
201. Huo Z, Ding D, Zhang Y, Lei N, Gu G, Gao J, Guo Z, Cai F (2018) Carbohydrate O-benzylation through trialkylsilane-mediated reductive etherification. J Carbohyd Chem 37(6):327–346
202. Wahlstrom JL, Ronald RC (1998) Detritylation of ethers using iodine−alcohol reagents: an acid-catalyzed reaction. J Org Chem 63:6021–6022
203. Classon B, Garegg PJ, Samuelson B (1984) The p-methoxybenzyl group as protective group of the anomeric centre. Selective conversions of hydroxy groups into bromo groups in *p*-methoxybenzyl 2-deoxy-2-phthalimido-beta-D-glucopyranoside. Acta Chem Scan Ser B 38b:419–422
204. López R, Montero E, Sanchez F, Cañada J, Fernandez-Mayoralas A (1994) Regioselective acetylations of Alkyl.beta.-D-xylopyranosides by use of lipase PS in organic solvents and application to the chemoenzymic synthesis of oligosaccharides. J Org Chem 59:7027–7032
205. Miethchen R, Holz J, Prade H, Liptak A (1992) Amphiphilic and mesogenic carbohydrates—II. Sysnthesis and characterisation of mono-o-(n-alkyl)-d-glucose derivates. Tetrahedron 48:3061–3068
206. Collins PM, Manro A, Opara-Mottah EC, Ali MH (1988) Free radical brominative ring opening of 1,2-O-benzylidene pyranoses: a route to glycosylating agents. J Chem Soc Chem Commun 272–274
207. Hanessian S, Plessas NR (1969) Reaction of O-benzylidene sugars with N-bromosuccinimide. II. Scope and synthetic utility in the methyl 4,6-0-benzylidenehexopyranoside series. J Org Chem 34:1035–1044
208. Van Boeckel CAA, van Boom JH (1985) Synthesis of phosphatidyl-α-glucosyl glycerol containing a dioleoyl phosphatidyl moiety. Application of the tetraisopropyldisiloxane-1,3-diyl (tips) protecting group in sugar chemistry. Part III. Tetrahedron 41:4545–4555
209. Wilstermann M, Magnusson G (1997) Synthesis of XylβCer, Galβ1−4XylβCer, NeuAcα2−3Galβ1−4XylβCer and the corresponding lactone and lactam trisaccharides. J Org Chem 62:7961–7971
210. Hanessian S, Roy R (1985) Chemistry of spectinomycin: its total synthesis, stereocontrolled rearrangement, and analogs. Can J Chem 63:163–172
211. Andersen SM, Heuckendorff M, Jensen HH (2015) 3-(Dimethylamino)-1-propylamine: a cheap and versatile reagent for removal of byproducts in carbohydrate chemistry. Org Lett 20:944–947
212. Hurst DT, McIness AG (1965) The alcoholysis of trialkylalkoxysilanes: part ii. the preparation and chemistry of methyl 2,3,4-tri-o-tri-methylsilyl-α-d-glucopyranoside. Can J Chem 43:2004–2011
213. Garegg PJ (1992) Saccharides of biological importance: challenges and opportunities for organic synthesis. Acc Chem Res 25:575–580
214. Johansson R, Samuelson B (1984) Regioselective reductive ring-opening of 4-methoxybenzylidene acetals of hexopyranosides. Access to a novel protecting-group strategy. Part 1. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:2371–2374

215. Liu X, Seeberger PH (2004) A Suzuki–Miyaura coupling mediated deprotection as key to the synthesis of a fully lipidated malarial GPI disaccharide. Chem Commun 1708–1709
216. Zinin AI, Malysheva NN, Shpirt AM, Torgov VI, Kononov LO (2207) Use of methanesulfonic acid in the reductive ring-opening of O-benzylidene acetals. Carbohyd Res 342:627–630
217. Bhaskar PM, Mathiselvam M, Loganathan D (2008) Zeolite catalyzed selective deprotection of di- and tri-O-isopropylidene sugar acetals. Carbohyd Res 343:1801–1807
218. Johnsson R, Cukalevski R, Dragén F, Ivanisevic D Johansson I, Petersson L, Wettergren EE, Yam KB, Yang B, Ellervik U (2008) Reductive openings of benzylidene acetals. Kinetic studies of borane and alane activation by Lewis acids. Carbohyd Res 343:2997–3000
219. Vohra Y, Vasan M, Venot A, Boons G-J (2008) One-pot synthesis of oligosaccharides by combining reductive openings of benzylidene acetals and glycosylations. Org Lett 10:3247–3250
220. Roy B, Verma P, Mukhopadhyay B (2009) H_2SO_4-silica-promoted 'on-column' removal of benzylidene, isopropylidene, trityl and tert-butyldimethylsilyl groups. Carbohyd Res 344:145–148
221. Rao KV, Patil PR, Atmakuri S, Kartha KPR (2010) Iodine–sodium cyanoborohydride-mediated reductive ring opening of 4,6-O-benzylidene acetals of hexopyranosides. Carbohyd Res 345:2709–2713
222. Dara S, Saikam V, Yadav M, Singh PP, Vishwakarma RA (2014) $HClO_4$–silica-catalysed regioselective opening of benzylidene acetals and its application towards regioselective HO-4 glycosylation of benzylidene acetals in one-pot. Carbohyd Res 391:93–96
223. Gu G, Fang M, Du Y (2011) Efficient and selective removal of chloroacetyl group promoted with tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride (TBAF). Carbohyd Res 346:2801–2804
224. Yan S, Ding N, Zhang W, Wang P, Li Y, Li M (2012) An efficient and recyclable catalyst for the cleavage of tert-butyldiphenylsilyl ethers. Carbohyd Res 354:6–20
225. Daragics K, Fügedi P (2010) 2-nitrophenyl)acetyl: a new, selectively removable hydroxyl protecting group. Org Lett 12:2076–2079
226. Ko K-S, Park G, Yu Y, Pohl NL (2008) Protecting-group-based colorimetric monitoring of fluorous-phase and solid-phase Synthesis of Oligoglucosamines. Org Lett 10:5381–5384
227. Ding X. Devalankar DA, Wang P (2016) Structurally simple benzylidene-type photolabile diol protecting groups. Org Lett 18(20):5396–5399
228. Gavel M, Courant T, Joosten AYP, Lecourt T (2019) Regio- and chemoselective deprotection of primary acetates by zirconium hydrides. Org Lett 21(7):1948–1952
229. Zhang P, Ling C-C (2017) A mild acetolysis procedure for the regioselective removal of isopropylidene in di-O-isopropylidene-protected pyranoside systems. Carbohyd Res 445:7–13
230. Mukherjee M, Basu N, Nandi S, Ghosh R (2019) A metal free mild and green approach for tandem opening of 4,6-O-benzylidene acetals to their corresponding 6-O-acetyl derivatives: application in the synthesis of a trisaccharide using one-pot glycosylation reactions. Carbohyd Res 476:36–43
231. Kundu M, Misra AK (2019) Selective acetolysis of primary benzyl groups in carbohydrate derivatives under the mild reaction condition. Carbohyd Res 486:107830

Chapter 2
O-Glycoside Formation

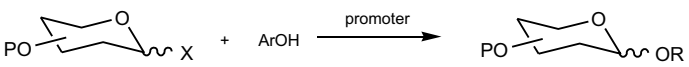
2.1 General Methods

When a monosaccharide (or sugar fragment of any size) is condensed with either an aliphatic or aromatic alcohol, or another sugar moiety through an oxygen, a glycoside bond is formed. General examples of *O*-glycosides are shown in Scheme 2.1.

The most common coupling reaction methodologies used for preparing the vast majority of *O*-glycosides known thus far are [1]:

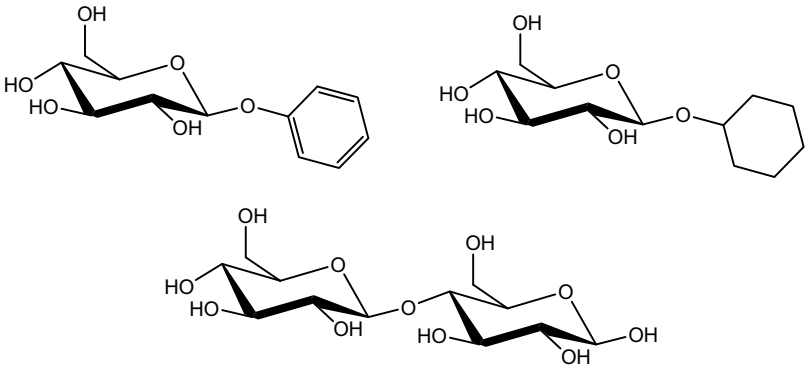
The Michael reaction
The Fischer reaction
The Koenigs-Knorr reaction
The Helferich reaction
The Fusion method.
The Imidate reaction.
The Glycal reaction
The Sulfur reaction
The armed-disarmed approach.
Unprotected anomeric carbon.
Unprotected glycosylations.
The Miscellaneous leaving groups
The Solid phase approach.

2.1.1 The Michael Reaction



P = protecting group
X = Br, Cl

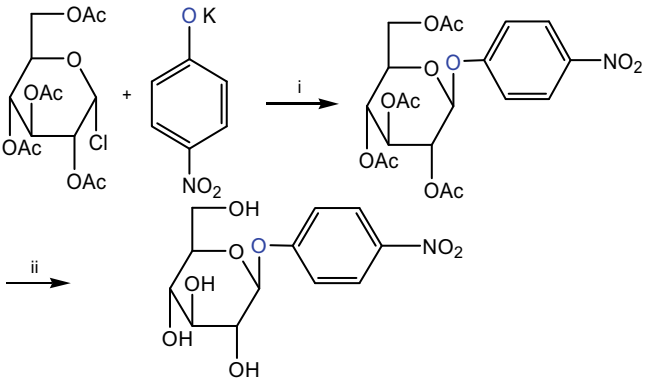
M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_2



Scheme 2.1 Examples of *O*-glycosides

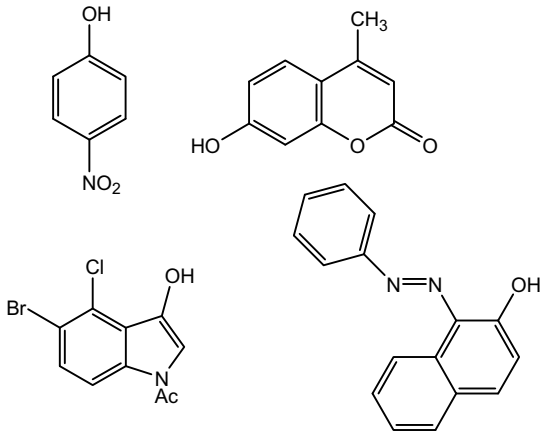
Promoter	Conditions
NaH	THF
K_2CO_3, NaOH	Acetone

This pioneering methodology for *O*-glycosylation consists of the condensation reaction between 2,3,4,6-Tetraacetyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl chloride and potassium phenoxide to generate the acetylated derivate that undergoes basic hydrolysis to give phenyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (Scheme 2.2). Since its original methodology, some modifications have been introduced especially for aromatic glycosides.



Scheme 2.2 Synthesis of paranitrophenyl-β-D-glucopyranosyl tetraacetate

Scheme 2.3 *O*-glycoside chromophores used for enzymatic detection



Some of the main features associated with this methodology are:

Preserves the pyranose or furanose ring.

Drives the addition of the aromatic aglycon to the anomeric position.

Uses protecting groups which are easily removed in basic medium.

Produces exclusively the β-*O*-glycoside as a result of neighboring group participation.

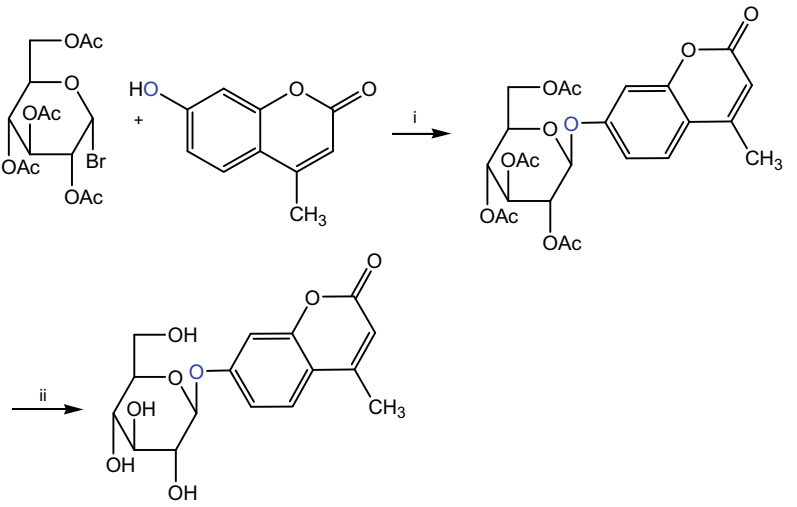
This reaction has been employed for the preparation of *O*-glycosides that are used as substrates for detection and measurement of enzymatic activity of most of the known glycosidases.

Using this methodology, several chromophores have been attached to most of the common monosaccharides. After *O*-glycoside cleavage by the enzyme, the release of the chromophore will indicate the sites and eventually will quantify the enzymatic activity. Some of the chromophores currently used for these purposes are represented in Scheme 2.3.

The highly fluorescent O-glycoside substrate 7-hydroxy-4-methylcoumarin-β-D-glucopyranose is prepared by condensation between acetobromoglucose with 4-methylumbelliferone in the presence of potassium carbonate in acetone. The intermediate is deacetylated under basic conditions to afford umbelliferyl β-D-glucopyranoside (Scheme 2.4).

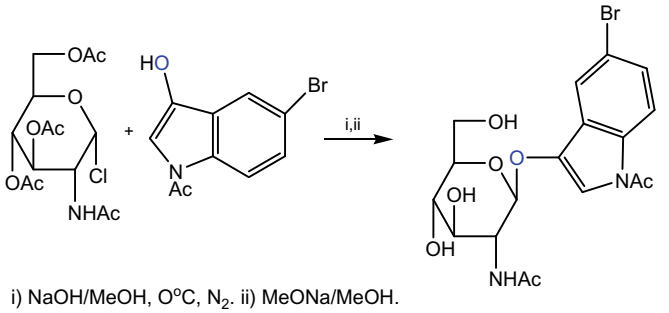
Anderson and Leaback [2] were able to prepare 5-Bromo indoxyl-β-D- N-acetylglucopyranoside, an hystochemical substrate for enzymatic detection of quitinase by condensing 3,4,6-triacetyl-β-D N-acetylglucopyranoside chloride with 5-bromo-hydroxy-N acetyl indole at 0 °C under nitrogen atmosphere (Scheme 2.5).

An alternative method for preparing the indoxyl glycosides was described more recently consisting in the coupling reaction between fucosyl bromide donorwith indoxylic acid allyl ester under basic mediumproviding the O-glycosides in 84% yield as β-anomer. This protocol was extended in the synthesis of sialic acid indoxyl glycosides (Scheme 2.6) [3].



i) K_2CO_3/acetone. ii) MeONa/MeOH.

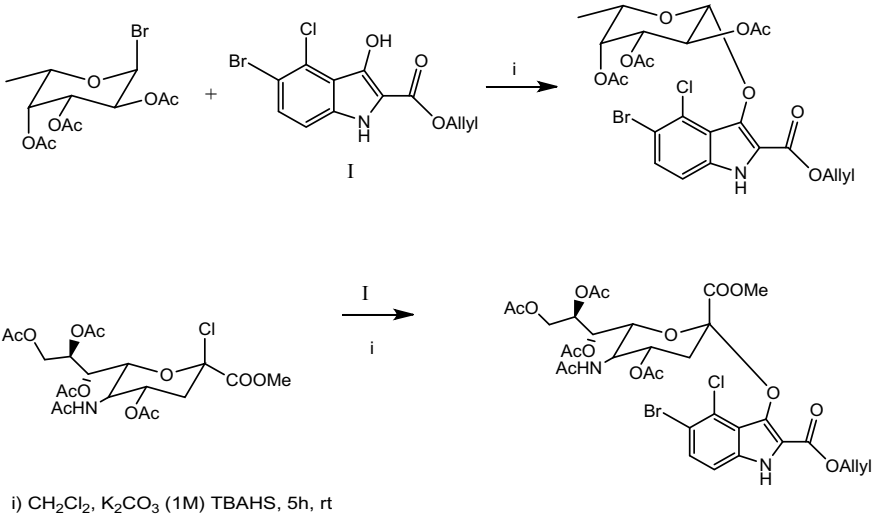
Scheme 2.4 Michael approach for preparation umbellyferyl-*O*-glycoside



i) NaOH/MeOH, O°C, N_2. ii) MeONa/MeOH.

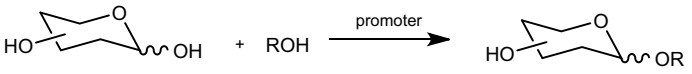
Scheme 2.5 Synthesis of indole *O*-glycoside derivative

The preparation of the azoic O-glycosides complexed with single wall nanotubes was accomplished in two step fashion, the first involving the condensation reaction between acetobromo galactose with Sudan II dye to give protected glycoside Sudan II-β-D-galactopyranoside, which was deacetylated to yield Sudan II *O*-galactoside, and the second part involving the conjugation with single wall nanotube acyl chloride derivatives (Scheme 2.7) [4].



Scheme 2.6 Alternative method for preparing the indoxyl glycosides

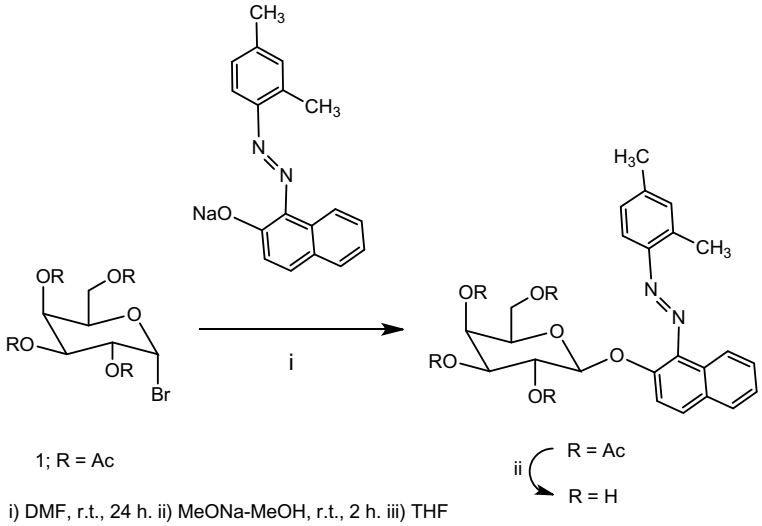
2.1.2 The Fischer Reaction

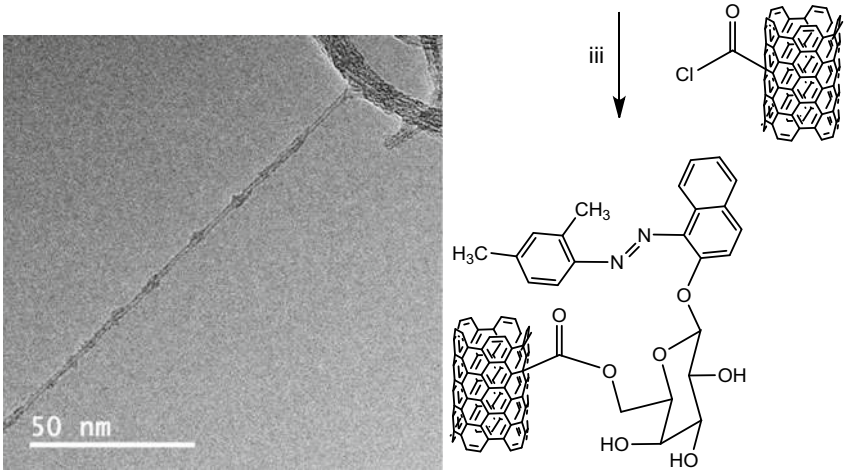


Promoter	Conditions
HCl gas	CH_2Cl_2, r.t
pTsOH	CH_2Cl_2, r.t
	Methanol Ref. [5]

This straightforward strategy is used specially for the preparation of simple *O*-glycosides and the advantage of this methodology is that it does not require the use of protecting groups and simply by combining the free sugar with an alcohol under acidic condition we furnish the corresponding *O*-glycoside. However, contrary to the previous method, this procedure is not stereo selective and therefore it provides a mixture of anomers. Also it has been found satisfactory only for small aliphatic alcohols (Scheme 2.8).

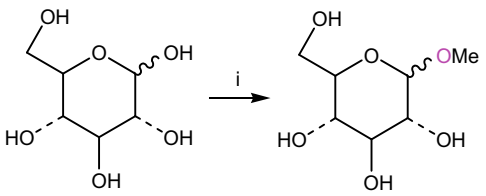
The addition of a controlled stream of dry HCl during a period of around 10 min at room temperature generally are the conditions of choice. However, the use of Lewis acid, ion exchange resin and more recently triflic acid have been also reported providing good yields [6].



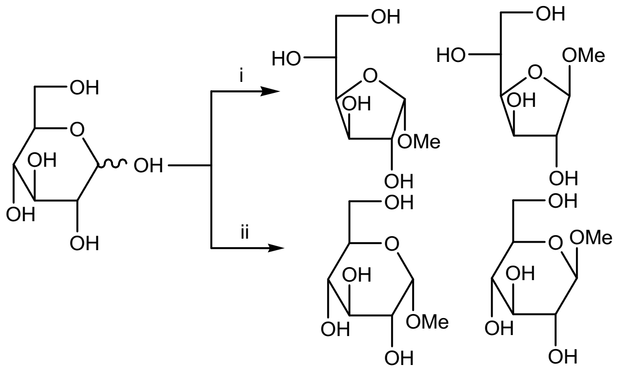


Scheme 2.7 Sudan II-galactoside glycoside complexed with single wall nanotube, and electron microscopy of single wall nanotube treated with azoic *O*-glycoside

Scheme 2.8 The Fischer *O*-glycoside reaction



i) MeOH-HCl(g).



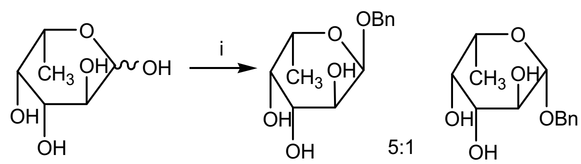
Scheme 2.9 The Fischer *O*-glycoside isomers

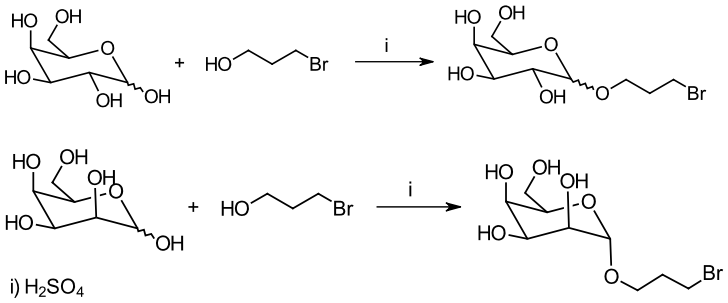
It is worth mentioning that besides the main product, a mixture of isomers have been detected, suggesting that a rather complex mechanism is involved. It is also seen that the amount of these isomers depends importantly on the condition reactions employed (Scheme 2.9).

The Fischer methodology has been applied successfully for the synthesis of benzyl *O*-glycosides. L-Fucose was converted into benzyl fucopyranoside [7] by treatment with benzyl alcohol under saturation with HCl at 0 °C, to furnish the α and β anomers (ratio 5:1) in 80% yield (Scheme 2.10).

A combinatorial methodology for preparing bromoalkylglycosides combining propyl, hexyl, octyl and decyl spacers from the corresponding bromoalcohols with unprotected D-glucose, D-galactose, D-mannose and N-Acetyl-glucosamine under either sulphuric acid or TMSOTf conditions were assayed. The best results were observed using mannose and glucose with bromopropanol under catalytic amount of sulphuric acid, having 86 and 65% yield and α/β ratio 1:0, 2:1 respectively (Scheme 2.11) [8].

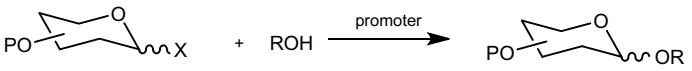
Scheme 2.10 Fischer conditions for preparation of Benzyl L-fucose





Scheme 2.11 Preparation of bromoalkylglycosides under Fischer conditions

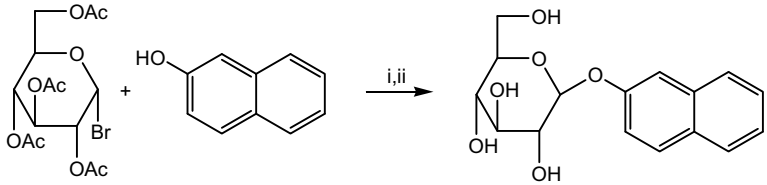
2.1.3 The Koenigs-Knorr Reaction



X = Br, Cl

promoter	Conditions
Ag_2CO_3	PhH, drierite (drying agent), I_2
Ag_2O	s-collidine (acid scavender) CH_2Cl_2, 23 °C, borinic ester, Ref. [9]
$AgNO_3$	HgO (acid scavender)
$AgClO_4$	Ag_2ClO_3 (acid scavender), THF or toluene, r.t
AgOTf	CH_2Cl_2, r.t
Silver silicate	CH_2Cl_2, 4 Å MS, –60 °C Ref. [10]

This reaction reported in 1901 is still one of the most useful reactions for preparing a wide variety of *O*-glycosides [11]. It is useful for coupling reactions with either alkyl or aromatic alcohols as well as for coupling between sugars. The method-

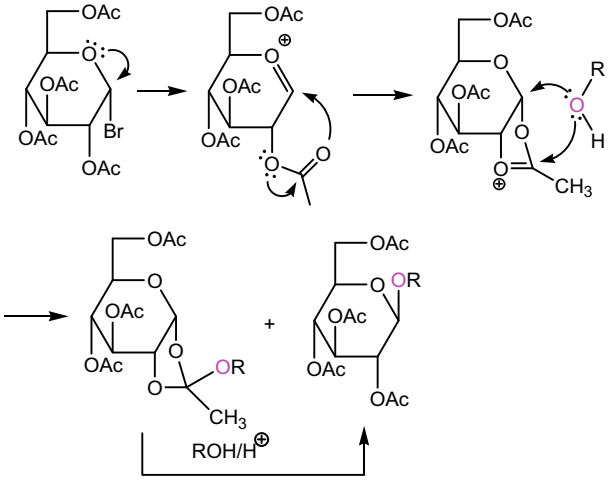


i) Ag_2O or Ag_2CO_3/PhH, drierite, I_2. ii) MeONa/MeOH.

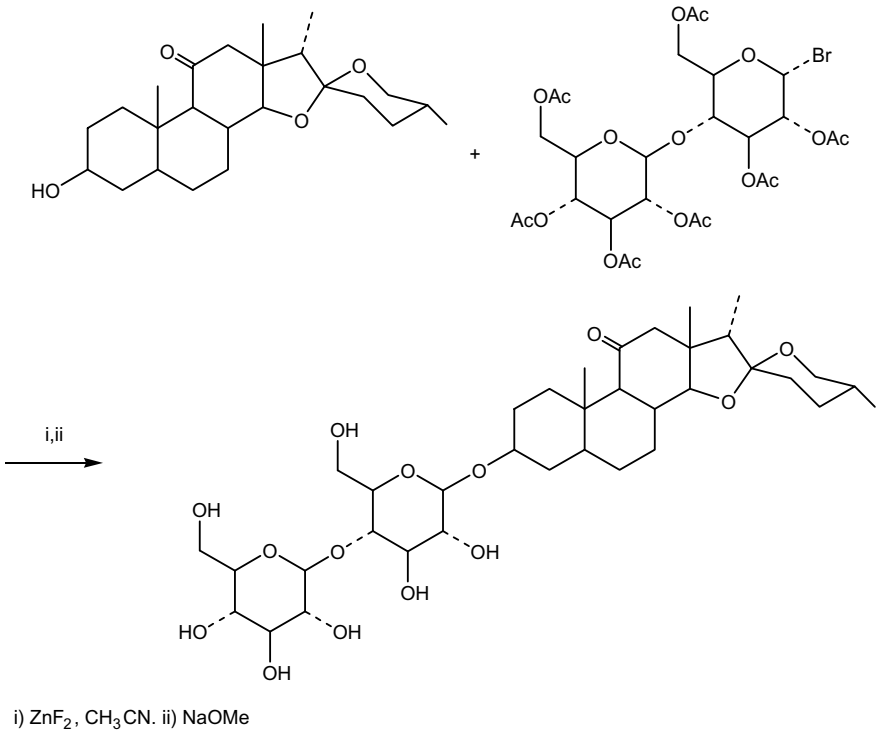
Scheme 2.12 The Koenigs-Knorr reaction

ology requires silver salts as catalyst and among them the oxide, carbonate, nitrate and triflate silver salts are the most commonly employed (Scheme 2.12). Also a drying agent such as calcium sulfate (drierite), calcium chloride, or molecular sieves is recommended. Improved yields are obtained with iodide, vigorous stirring and protection against light during the course of the reaction.

The stereochemistry observed is 1,2 trans type in most of the cases reported, as a consequence of neighboring group participation. When the protecting group is acetate at C (2), there is an intra molecular nucleophilic displacement of the leaving group, generating an orthoester [12]. This intermediate is responsible for the incorporation of the alcohol on the β-position (Scheme 2.13). Only until recently a method for preparing 1,2-cis glycosides has been developed involving the use of (1S)-phenyl-2-(phenylsulfanyl)ethyl moiety at C-2 of a glycosyl donor to give a quasi-stable anomeric sulfonium ion. The sulfonium ion is formed as a trans-decalin ring system. Displacement of the sulfonium ion by a hydroxyl leads to the stereoselective formation of α-glycosides [13].



Scheme 2.13 Proposed mechanism for the Koenigs-Knorr glycosidic reaction



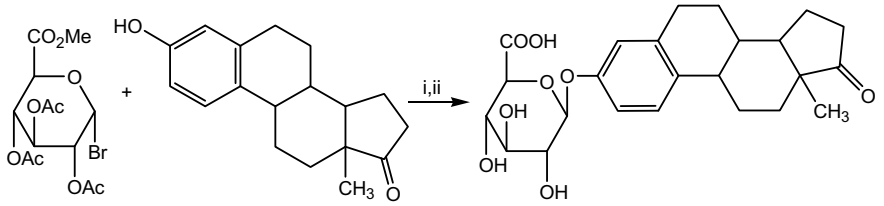
Scheme 2.14 Synthesis of steroidal glycoside

This versatile methodology can be applied for preparation of alky, aryl, and oligosaccharide *O*-glycosides. A steroidal glycoside cholesterol absorption inhibitor was prepared by condensation between acetobromocellobiose and (3β,5α, 25R)-3-hydroxyspirostan-11-one with anhydrous ZnF_2 as catalyst in acetonitrile to provide the steroidal glycoside in 93% yield (Scheme 2.14) [14].

The steroidal glycoside Estrone-β-D-glucuronide was prepared by condensation between Methyl tri-*O*-glucopyranosylbromide uronate with estrone, employing cadmium instead of silver carbonate (Scheme 2.15) [15]. For recent developments for the synthesis of *O*-glucuronides [16].

The syntheses of various disaccharides have been reported under Koenigs-Knorr conditions. Gentobiose octaacetate was prepared through condensation of acetobromoglucose with 1,2,3,4-Tetra-*O*-acetyl-*O*-Trityl-β-D-glucopyranose in nitromethane using silver perchlorate as catalyst (Scheme 2.16) [17].

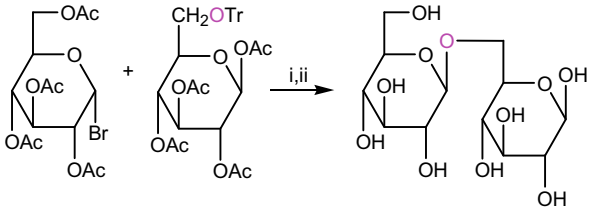
Bächli and Percival [18] reported the synthesis of laminaribiose by reacting 1,2,5,6-Diisopropylidenglucose with acetobromoglucose in the presence of silver carbonate, iodine and drierite to produce an acetonide intermediate which upon treatment with oxalic acid and sodium methoxide furnished the 1,3-disaccharide (Scheme 2.17).



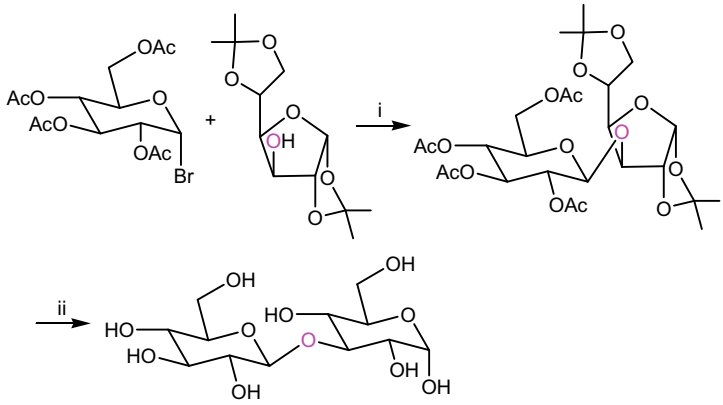
i) Cd_2CO_3. ii) MeONa/MeOH

Scheme 2.15 Synthesis of a steroidal *O*-glycoside

Scheme 2.16 Synthesis of gentobiose



i) $AgClO_4$, CH_3NO_2. ii) MeONa/MeOH

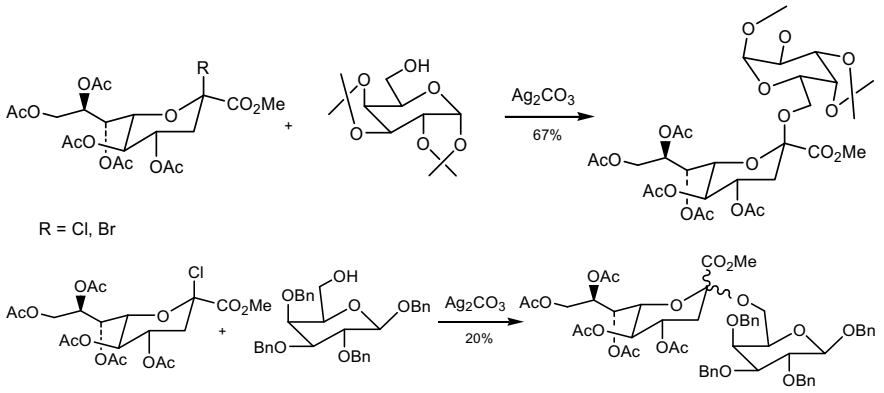


i) Ag_2CO_3, drierite, I_2. ii) a)MeONa/MeOH. b) oxalic acid 0.001 N, 100°C.

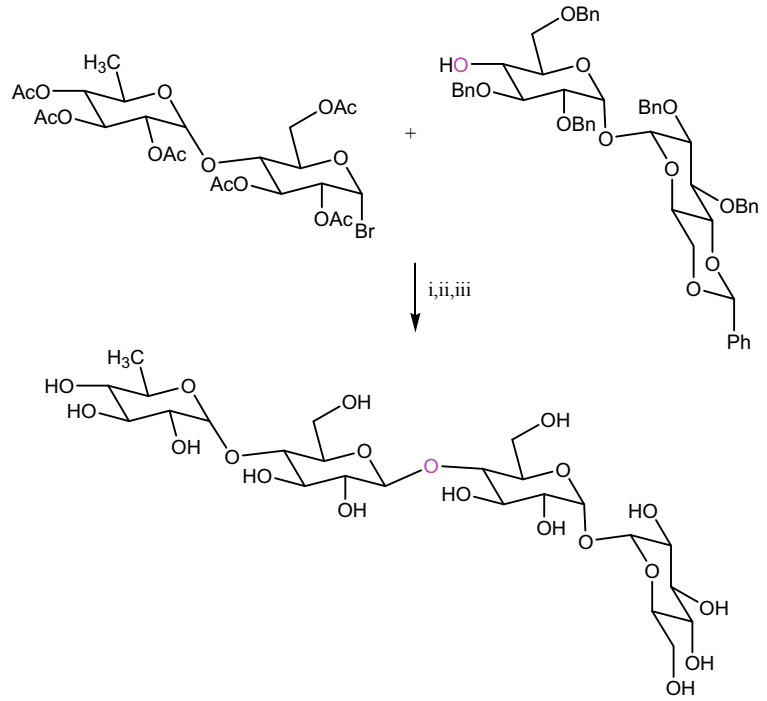
Scheme 2.17 Synthesis of laminaribiose

The synthesis of various disaccharides containing N-acetylneuraminic acid (Neu5Ac) was achieved by using acetochloro and acetobromo neuraminic acids as glycosyl donors with active glycosyl acceptors under Ag_2CO_3-promoted reactions conditions (Scheme 2.18) [19, 20].

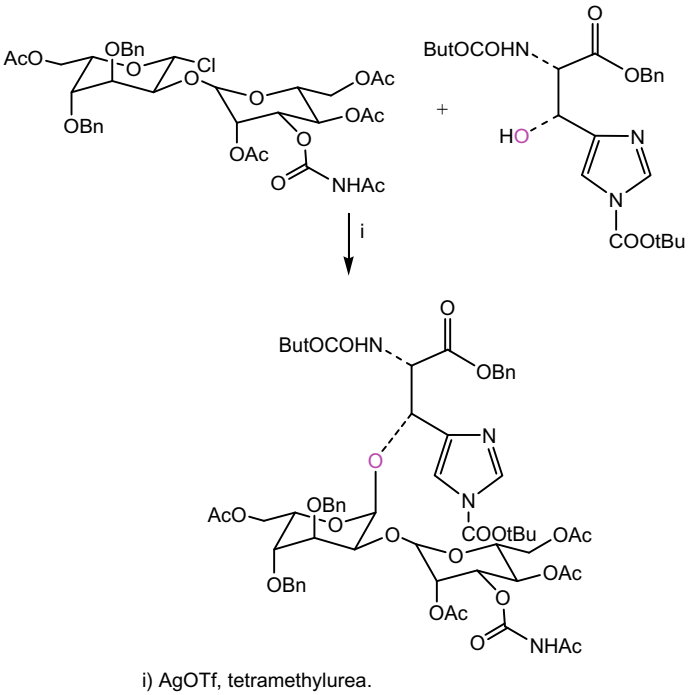
These conditions are also suitable for preparing short oligosaccharides such as the one presented in Scheme 2.19. The donor sugar acetobromogentobiose is coupled to the acceptor intermediate using silver triflate as glycosidation catalyst [21].



Scheme 2.18 Silver carbonate promoted synthesis of Neu5Ac(2 → 6) disaccharides



Scheme 2.19 Synthesis of tetrasaccharide



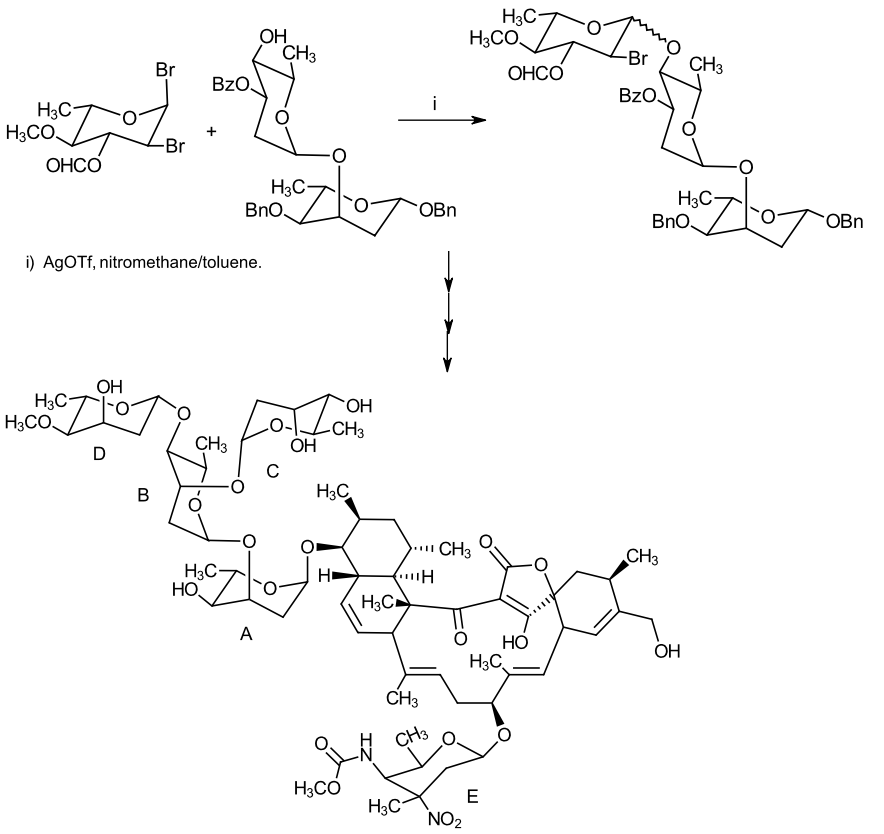
Scheme 2.20 Glycosylation reaction for preparation of Bleomycin precursor

Total synthesis of Bleomycin group antibiotic has been achieved by Katano and Hecht [22]. Thus, glycoside coupling reaction of protected disaccharide glycosyl donor with histidine derivative using silver triflate as glycoside promoter provided Bleomycin key intermediate in 21% (Scheme 2.20).

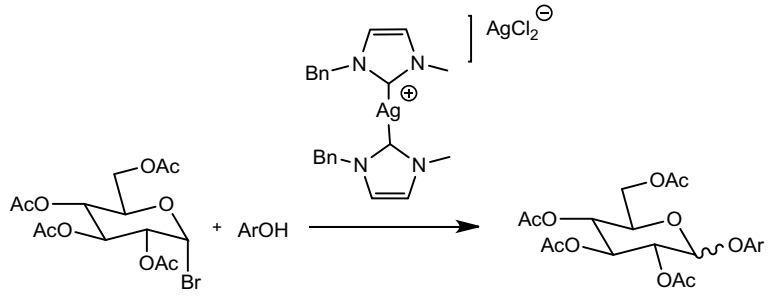
The A-B-D trisaccharide precursor fragment of antibiotic Kijanimicin was achieved under Koenigs-Knorr conditions, using glycosyl bromide donor, with protected dideoxy-α-L-arabino β-L-ribo-hexopyranoside disaccharide acceptor under silver triflate conditions (Scheme 2.21) [23].

O-glycosidation reactions promoted via silver N-heterocyclic carbene complexes formed in situ in ionic liquids have been implemented. Good to excellent yields were obtained using Ag–NHC complexes derived from imidazolium halide salts to promote the glycosidation reaction (Scheme 2.22) [24].

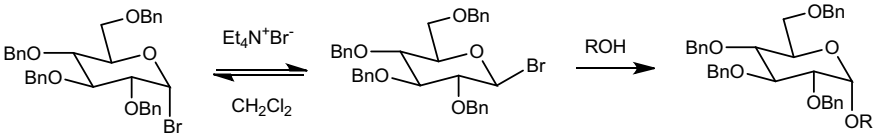
On the other hand it has been found that 1,2-cis glycosides can be synthesized from α-glycosyl bromide with aliphatic alcohols in the presence of tetraethylammonium bromide, under mild conditions reporting high yields. The α-stereoselectivity can be explained by an equillibriumbetween the glycosyl bromited promoted by the tetraethylammonium bromide and the nucleophilic attack on the oxonium ion generated during the interconversion (Scheme 2.23) [25].



Scheme 2.21 Synthesis of the A-B-D- trisaccharide precursor of antibiotic Kijanimicin

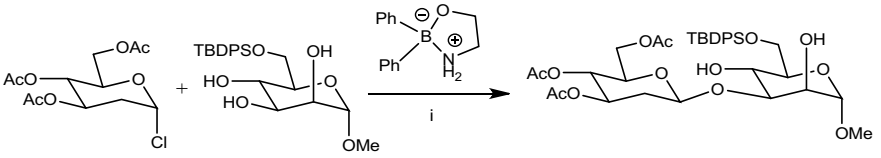


Scheme 2.22 O-glycosidation reactions promoted via silver N-heterocyclic carbene complexes



R = Me, iPr, t-Bu-

Scheme 2.23 Preparation of α-glycosyl bromide with aliphatic alcohols in the presence of tetraethylammonium bromide

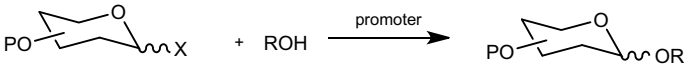


i) Ag_2O, CH_2Cl_2

Scheme 2.24 Glycosylation reaction in the presence of silver oxide and borinic acid derived catalyst

Deoxicetochloroglucose has been also used as glycosyl donors under silver oxide conditions providing disaccharides in high yields. Moreover the use of borinic acid derived catalyst enhance the regioselective and β-selective reactions with acceptors having unprotected cis-1,2- and 1,3-diol groups (Scheme 2.24) [26].

2.1.4 The Helferich Reaction

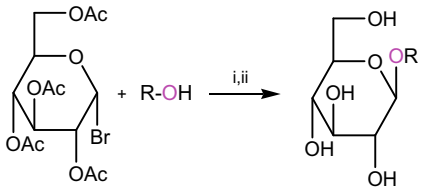


X = Br, Cl

Promoter	Conditions
$Hg(CN)_2$	CH_3CN
$HgBr_2$	CH_3CN

(continued)

Scheme 2.25 The Helferich general reaction



i) $HgCN_2$, CH_3CN. ii) MeONa/MeOH.

(continued)

Promoter	Conditions
HgI_2	CH_3CN
ZnI_2	MS, CH_2Cl_2

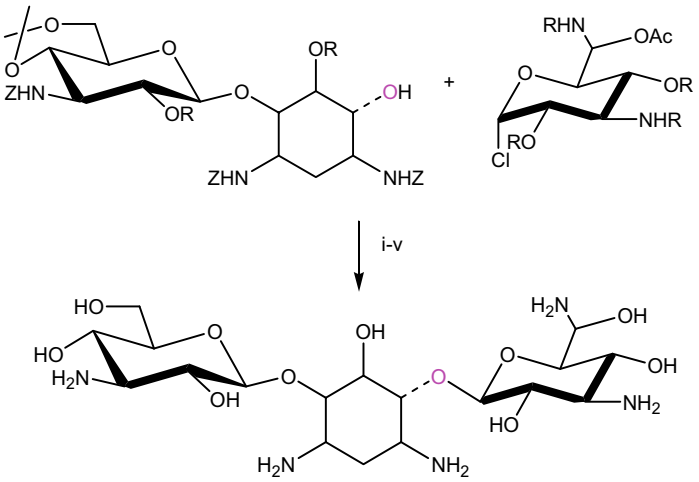
This methodology is considered a modification of the previous one, and the main change being the use of mercury and zinc salts instead of silver. Also more polar solvents are used such as acetonitrile or nitromethane (Scheme 2.25). The yields reported for this reaction are up to 70%, or higher, however a mixture of anomers is often observed.

By following this strategy, Umezawa et al. [27], had prepared kanamacin A by condensing 6-*O*-[2-*O*-benzyl-3-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)-3-deoxi-4,6-*O*-isopropylidene-α-D-glucopyranosyl]-N,N'-di(benzoyloxycarbonyl)-2-deoxyestreptamine, as glycosyl acceptor with 2,3,4-tri-*O*-benzyl-6-(N-benzylacetamido)-6-deoxi-α-D-glycopyranosyl chloride, as glycosyl donor. The catalyst employed was mercury (II) cyanide (scheme 2.26).

The antitumoral *O*-glycoside Epirubicine was prepared under Helferich conditions [28] using the acetonide form of Adriamicinone and 2,3,6-trideoxi-3-trifluoroacetamido-4-O-trifluoroacetyl-α-L-arabinohexopyranosyl chloride, and a mixture of mercury (II) oxide and bromide as shown in Scheme 2.27.

Other coupling reactions between sugars under Helferich conditions have been as well described [29]. For example the case of trisaccharide Rafinose prepared by condensation between Tetra-*O*-benzyl-α-D-galactopyranosyl chloride as donor and 2,3,4,1′,3′,4′,6′-hepta-*O*-acetyl sucrose as acceptor (Scheme 2.28).

Helferich conditions have been used for preparing disaccharides containing Neu5Ac(2 → 6)Gal and Glc in good yields, although with low stereocontrol (α:β 3:4)(Scheme 2.29).

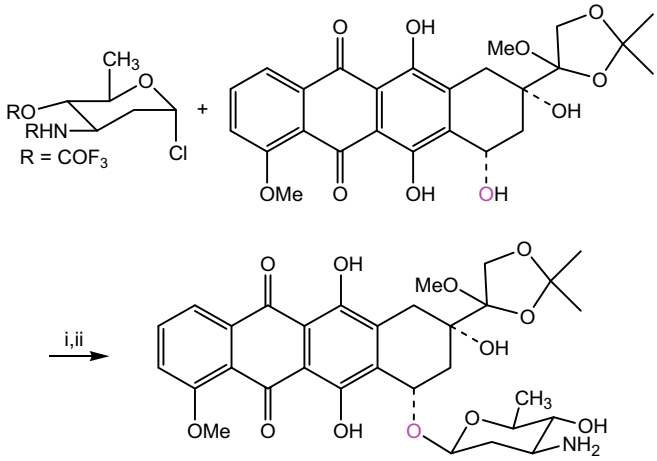


Z = $PhCH_2COO$-

R = $PhCH_2$-

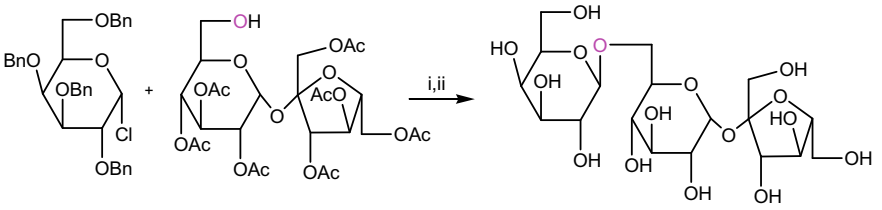
i) $Hg(II)CN_2$, $CaSO_4$/dioxane, PhH. ii) MeONa/MeOH. iii) AcOH. iv) H_2, Pd-C.

Scheme 2.26 Synthesis of a kanamacin A derivative



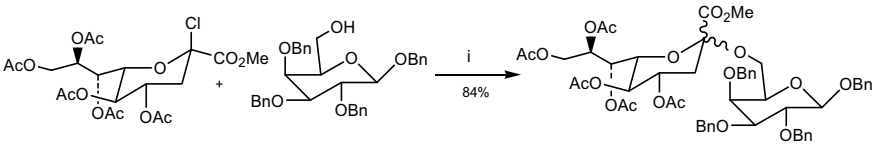
i) HgO-$HgBr_2$. ii) NaOH

Scheme 2.27 Synthesis of epirubicin



i) $Hg(II)CN_2$, $CaSO_4$, PhH. ii) MeONa/MeOH. iii) H_2, Pd-C.

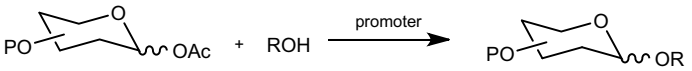
Scheme 2.28 Synthesis of rafinose derivative



i) $Hg(CN)_2/HgBr_2$ (3:1)

Scheme 2.29 Helferich conditions for the preparation of sialic disaccharide

2.1.5 Acetate Donors

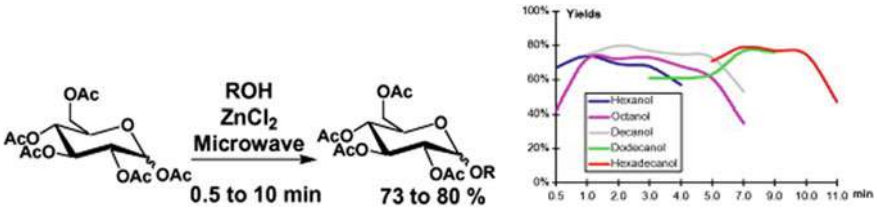


Promoter	Conditions
$ZnCl_2$	Heat, or MW
$ZnCl_2$	120 °C
$SnCl_4$	5–10 °C
TsOH	120 °C

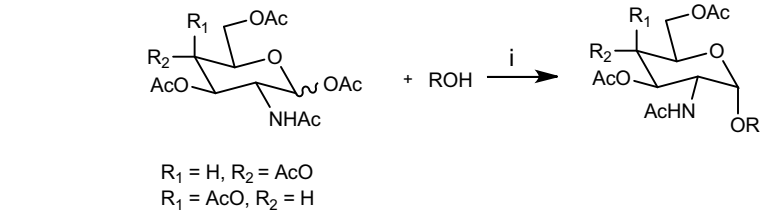
This method has been used for preparing long chain and aromatic glycosides under different acid promoters such as $ZnCl_2$, $SnCl_4$, $FeCl_3$, TsOH or zeolite. Particularly the use of $ZnCl_2$ as promoter has been successfully utilized to attach long chain alcohol to peracetate saccharides with moderate heating or microwave conditions to produce amphipatic glycosides in moderate to good yields as mainly the 1,2-*trans*-glycosides or as a mixture of anomers (Scheme 2.30) [30, 31].

A one-step procedure for the prepapration of α-*O*- glycosamine pentaacetylated glycosides with yields up to 70% and high α-stereoselectivity was achieved by condensation between commercially available D-glycosamine pentaacetates and fluorogenic coumarins, substitutted phenols, and protected serine acceptors under ferric chloride conditions (Scheme 2.31) [32].

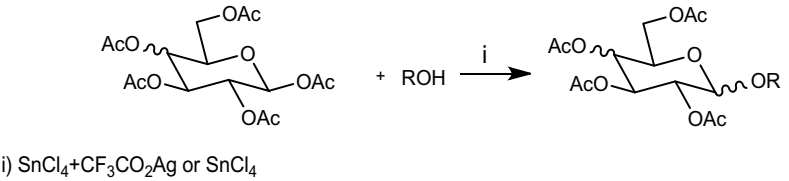
Another simple method for O-glycosidation under $SnCl_4$ or silver triflate an $SnCl_4$ is described reporting high yields as a mixture of anomers depending on the as bulkiness, presence of electron-withdrawing groups or polyethoxy motifs (Scheme 2.32) [33].



Scheme 2.30 Preparation of long chain and aromatic glycosides under different acid promoters



Scheme 2.31 Prepapration of α-*O*- glycosamine pentaacetylated glycosides

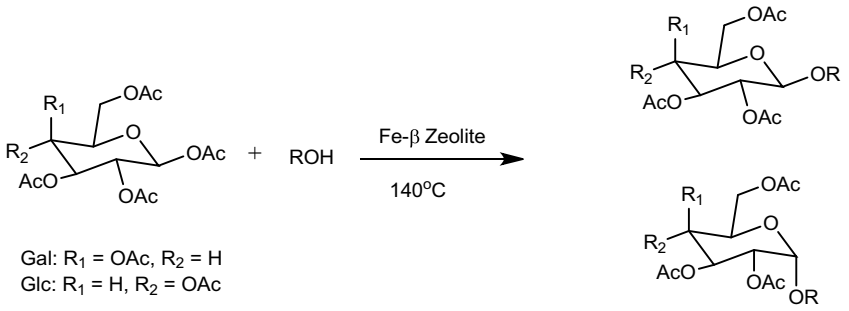


Scheme 2.32 O-glycosidation protocol under $SnCl_4$ or silver triflate an $SnCl_4$ conditions

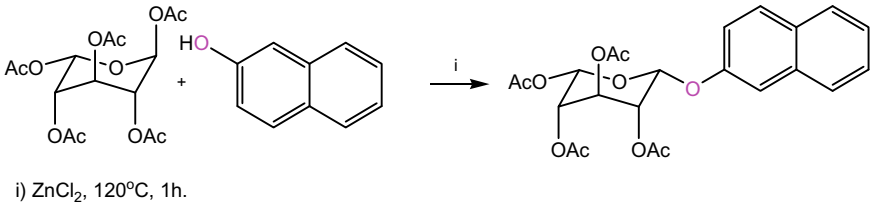
The application of zeolites as heterogeneous catalysts for the preparations of alkyl glycosides is an alternative method due the acid strength and larger pore openings and channel intersections. Thus, the Fe-β zeolite gave the maximum yield of 63% of cetyl galactopyranoside as a mixture of anomers (Scheme 2.33) [34].

This methodology has been also useful to synthesize 1-naphthyl 2,3,4,6-tetra-*O*-acetyl-α,β-L-idopyranoside by mixing 1,2,3,4,6-penta-*O*-acety1-α-L-idopyranose, 1-naphthol, zinc chloride and heating up to 120 °C during 1 h (Scheme 2.34) [35].

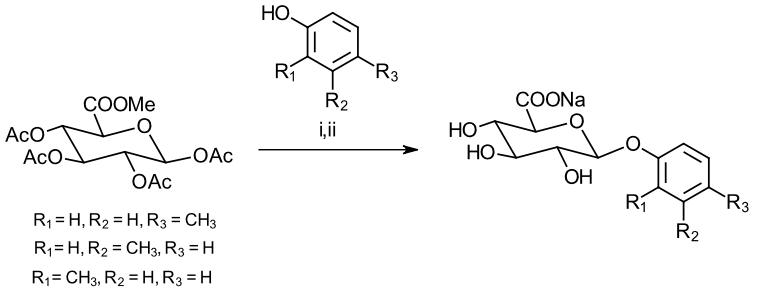
The synthesis of cresyl-glucuronides has been described by using the acetate approach, under trimethylsilyl triflate conditions. Further deacetylation under basic condition furnished the cresyl-glucuronides as β-anomer in their sodium salt form with moderate yield (27–40%) (Scheme 2.35) [36].



Scheme 2.33 Heterogeneous catalysts for the preparations of alkyl glycosides

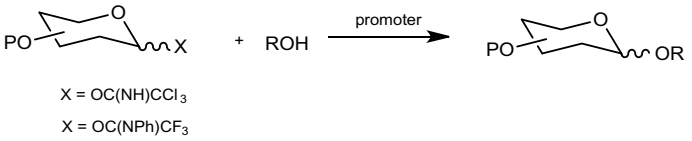


Scheme 2.34 Preparation of naphtyl *O*-glycosides with peracetylated sugars with naphtols under $ZnCl_2$ catalyst



Scheme 2.35 Synthesis of cresyl-glucuronides under Lewis acid conditions

2.1.6 The Imidate Reaction



Imidate	Promoter	Conditions
$OC(NH)CCl_3$	AgOTf	CH_2Cl_2, 0 °C → r.t
$OC(NH)CCl_3$	TMSOTf	CH_2Cl_2 or MeCN 0 °C
$OC(NH)CCl_3$	BF_3–OEt_2	CH_2Cl_2 or MeCN, -20 °C
$OC(NH)CCl_3$	NaH	CH_2Cl_2
$OC(NH)CCl_3$	$PhBF_2$	CH_2Cl_2, − 78 °C Ref. [37]
$OC(NH)CCl_3$	Chiral Brønsted acid catalyst	Toluene Ref. [38]

(continued)

(continued)

Imidate	Promoter	Conditions
$OC(NH)CCl_3$	2 mol % $Pd(PhCN)_2Cl_2$, 4 mol % AgOTf	CH_2Cl_2, − 78 °C Ref. [39]
$OC(NPh)CF_3$	TBSOTf	4 Å MS, toluene, − 40 °C

This protocol is attributed to Schmidt and coworkers [40] who introduced trichloroacetimidate as a good leaving group for preparation of *O*-glycosides. A significant number of simple and complex *O*-glycosides involving the imidate coupling reaction have been described. This strategy involves the use of trichloroacetonitrile that in the presence of a base is incorporated on the anomeric hydroxyl group to generate trichloroacetimidate (Scheme 2.36). It should be noted that the resulting imidate derivative is air sensitive and should be used in coupling reactions immediately following preparation. Imidate formation might be spectroscopically detected by ^{1}H NMR through a signal appearing down field at 6.2 ppm [41].

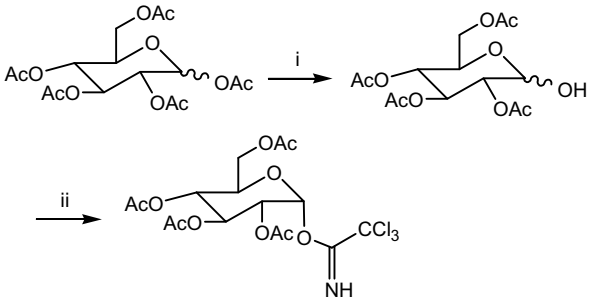
Once the imidate if formed, it can be subjected to nucleophilic attack to provide the corresponding S–, N–, C–, or O-glycoside, depending on the chosen nucleophile. The use of a catalyst such as $BF_3.OEt_2$, TMSOTf or AgOTf is necessary to carry out the reaction to completion (Scheme 2.37). Although the unquestionable applicability of this approach, an undesirable side reaction has been encountered with glycosyl trichloroacetimidates in the presence of Lewis acid catalysis via the Chapman rearrangement [40].

Hasegawa et al. [42] has prepared the ganglioside shown in Scheme 2.38 using 2,3,4,6-tetrabenzylglucopyranosyl-α-acetimidate with the liphophilic alcohol, to generate a ganglioside.

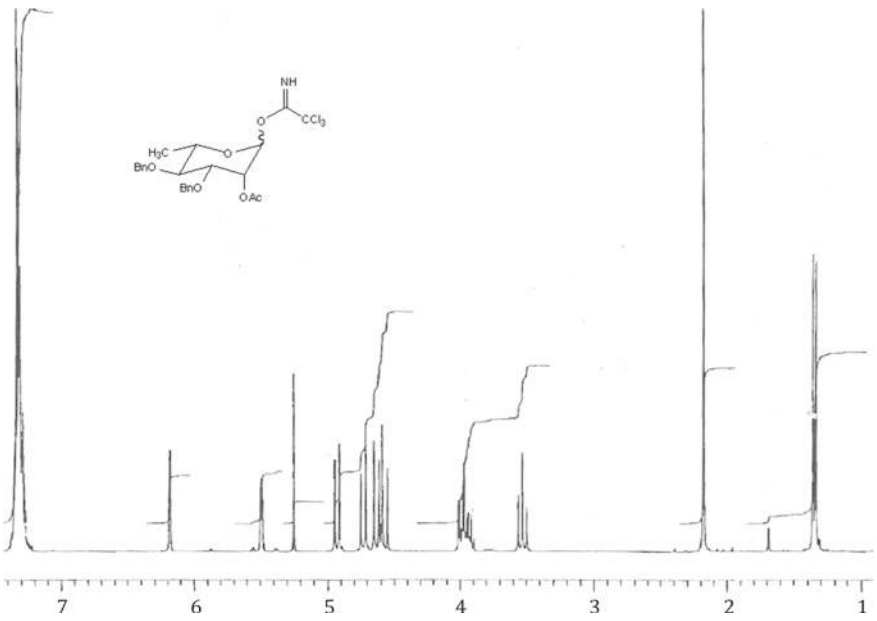
The total synthesis of calicheamicin α and dynemicin A has been described by Danishefsky's group [43], and involves glycosilation of calicheamicinone congener with the complex glycosyl imidate using $BF_3.OEt_2$ as Lewis acid catalyst (Scheme 2.39).

Naturally ocurring herbicides known as tricolorin A, F and G were isolated from the plant *Ipomea tricolor* and since then synthesized involving glycoside coupling reactions. The first total synthesis of tricolorin A was performed by Larson and Heathcock [44], involving three coupling reactions steps with imidate intermediates used as glycosyl donors (Scheme 2.40). The lactonization key step for the preparation of the synthesized tricolorins has been achieved either under macrolactonization conditions reported by Yamaguchi [45, 46] and also under ring clousure methathesis conditions [41].

Another hetero-trisaccharide resin glycoside of jalapinolic acid known as tricolorin F has been synthesized involving coupling reactions with imidates as glycosyl donors. In this way disaccharide and trisaccharide were prepared sequentially. The resulting tricoloric acid C derivative was deprotected and subjected to lactonization under Yamaguchi conditions to produce protected macrolactone. Final removal of acetonide and benzyl protecting groups provided Tricolorin F (Scheme 2.41) [46].



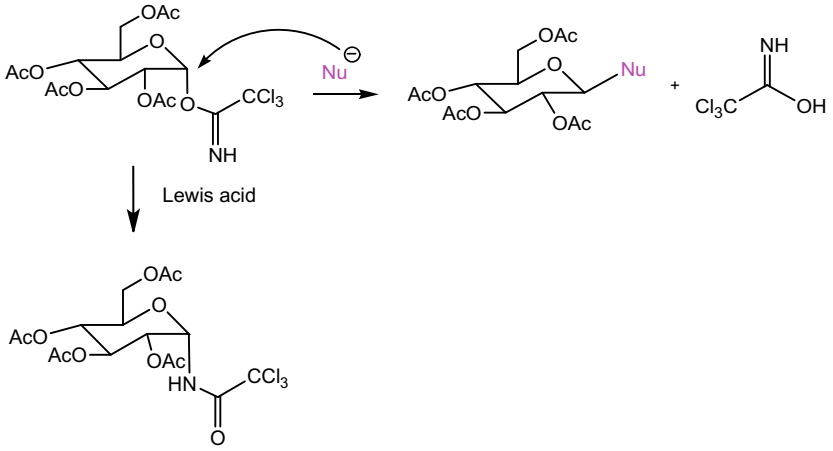
i) Bn-NH_2, HCl, THF. or NH_2NH_2 ii) Cl_3CN, $CsCO_3/CH_2Cl_2$, r.t.



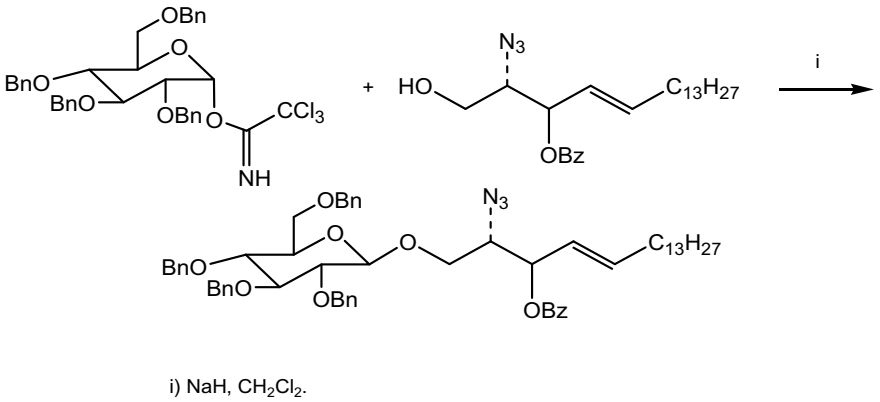
Scheme 2.36 Preparation of glycosyl imidate and ^{1}H NMR of imidate ramnosyl derivative

A convergent approach for obtaining a tumoral antigen fragment of Lewis X has been developed by Boons et al. [47]. Condensation of the imidate glycosyl donor and the trisaccharide glycosyl acceptor provided the hexasaccharide, which was further allowed to react with trichloroacetimidate to generate a hexasaccharide glycosyl donor. The final coupling reaction with the disaccharide using $BF_3.OEt_2$, furnished the tumoral fragment Lewis X (Scheme 2.42).

Selectins (E,P and L) are mammalian C-type lectins involved in the recognition process between blood cells or cancer cells and vascular endothelium. L-selectins plays a key role in the initial cell-adhesive phenomena during the inflammatory process, whereas E-selectins binds strongly to sialyl Lewis a and x [48, 49]. It has been found that the tetrasaccharide sialyl Lewis x is the recognition molecule and



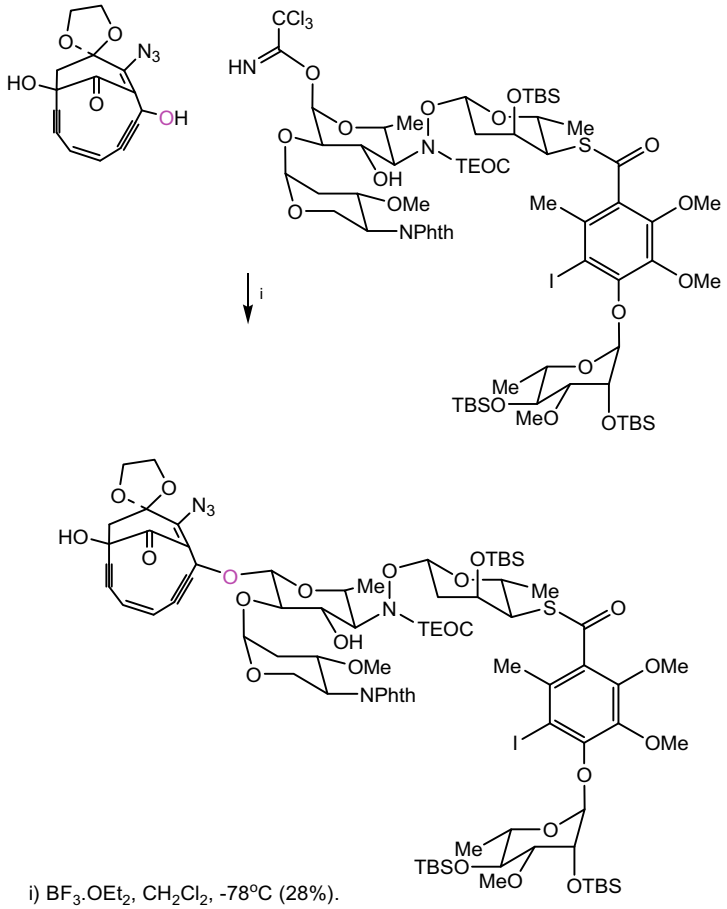
Scheme 2.37 Nucleophilic displacement of imidate leaving group



Scheme 2.38 Coupling reaction for the preparation of ganglioside

the preparation of sialyl Lewis x confirmed the hypothesis that sulfation increase the affinity for L-selectins [50]. The chemical synthesis of 3e- and 6e-monosulfated and 3e,6e-disulfated Lewis x pentasacharides has been prepared according to the Scheme 2.43.

Likewise, thioaryl donors can also be suitably converted to acetimidates for performing glycoside coupling reactions. This is the case of arabinosyl thio derivative which is deprotected under NBS-pyridine conditions affording the lactol in 80% yield as a mixture of anomers (2:1). Treatment with NaH, followed by addition of Cl_3CCN provided the desired trichloroacetimidate intermediate. This strategy

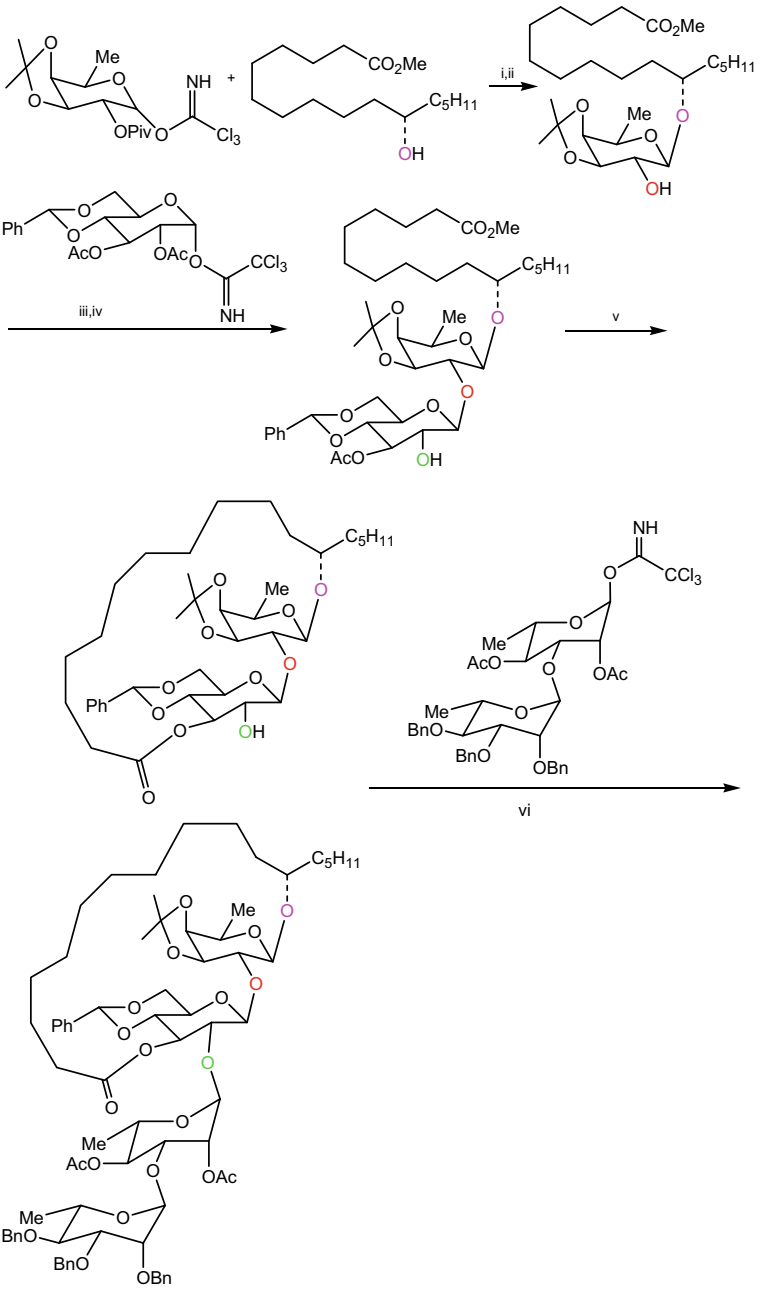


Scheme 2.39 Glycosylation of calicheamicinone congener

has been succesfully applied in the syntheses of cytotoxic marine natural products Eleutherobin (Scheme 2.44) [51].

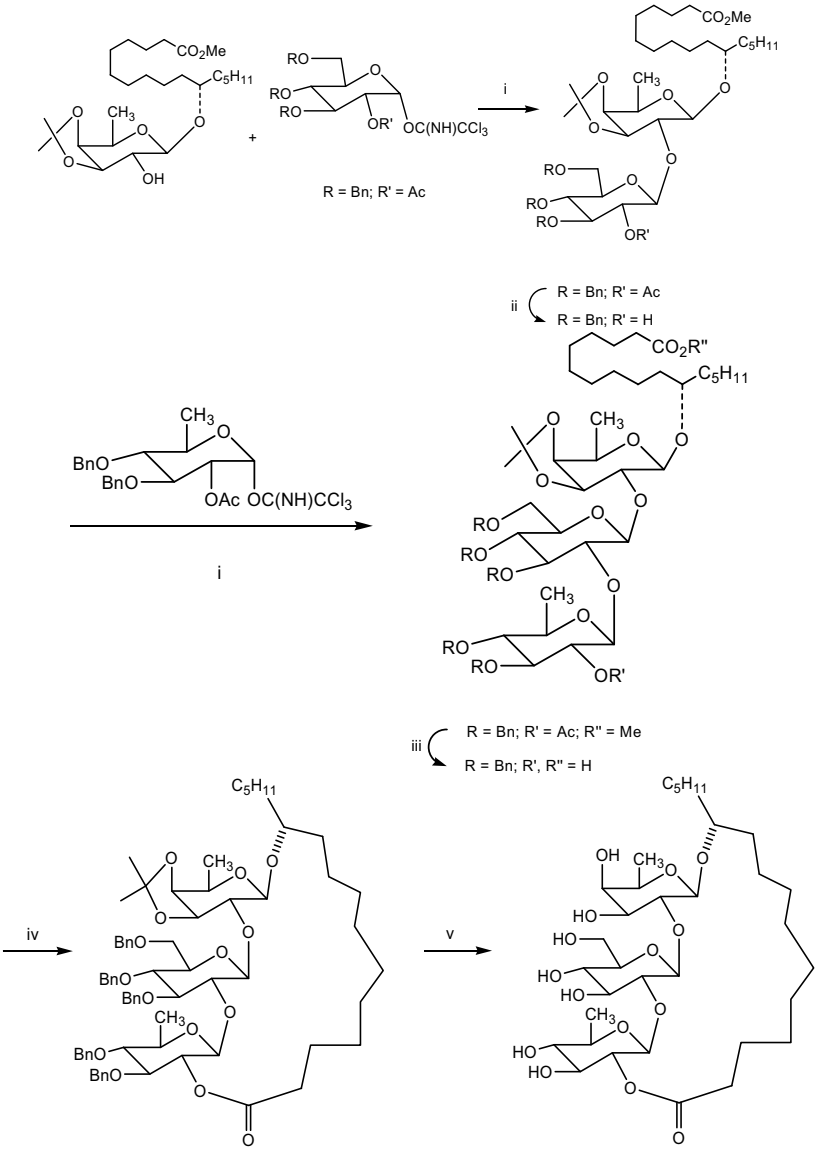
Fluorogenic aglycones such as 4-methylumbelliferyl have been attached to peracetylated imidates providing the alpha anomer only when TMSOTf was used as promoter at − 20 °C (Scheme 2.45). The resulting glycoside was further used for preparing a 4-MU α-T-anitgen [52].

In order to understand the α-stereoselectivity the authors proposed that the imidates in the presence of TMSOTf generates an oxocarbenium triflate ion pair which in turn will accept the nucleophilic attack favouring an alpha glycoside formation due the extra stability arising from through-space electrostatic interaction between the axially disposed C-4 acetyl function and ring oxygen atom of the corresponding α-glycosyl oxonium ion (Scheme 2.46).



i) AgOTf, CH_2Cl_2. ii) MeONa/MeOH. iii) AgOTf, CH_2Cl_2. iv) a)MeONa/MeOH. b) 1 eq. Ac_2O, DMAP, CH_2Cl_2, Et_3N.
v) a) LiOH, THF, H_2O. b) 2,4,6-trichlorobenzoyl chloride, Et_3N, MAP, benzene. vi) AgOTf, CH_2Cl_2.

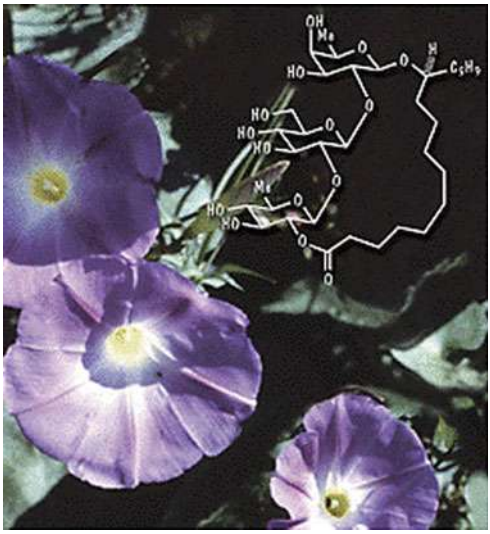
Scheme 2.40 Synthesis of tricolorin A precursor



i) $BF_3.Et_2O$, CH_2Cl_2, -20°C, 1 h; (ii) NaOMe, MeOH, 6h, rt. iii) KOH, MeOH-H_2O, 4 h, reflux. iv) 2,4,6-trichlorobenzoyl chloride, Et_3N, DMAP, PhH. v) 10% HCl-MeOH, $Pd(OH)_2$-C 10%, MeOH.

Scheme 2.41 Synthesis of tricolorin F

Scheme 2.41 (continued)



Another aproach leading to the preparation of aminoacid glycosides with enhanced α-stereoselectivity was described involving trichloroacetimidate donors with non-participating protecting groups with protected aminoacids using the heterogeneous catalyst, $HClO_4$–SiO_2, reporting high yields (Scheme 2.47) [53].

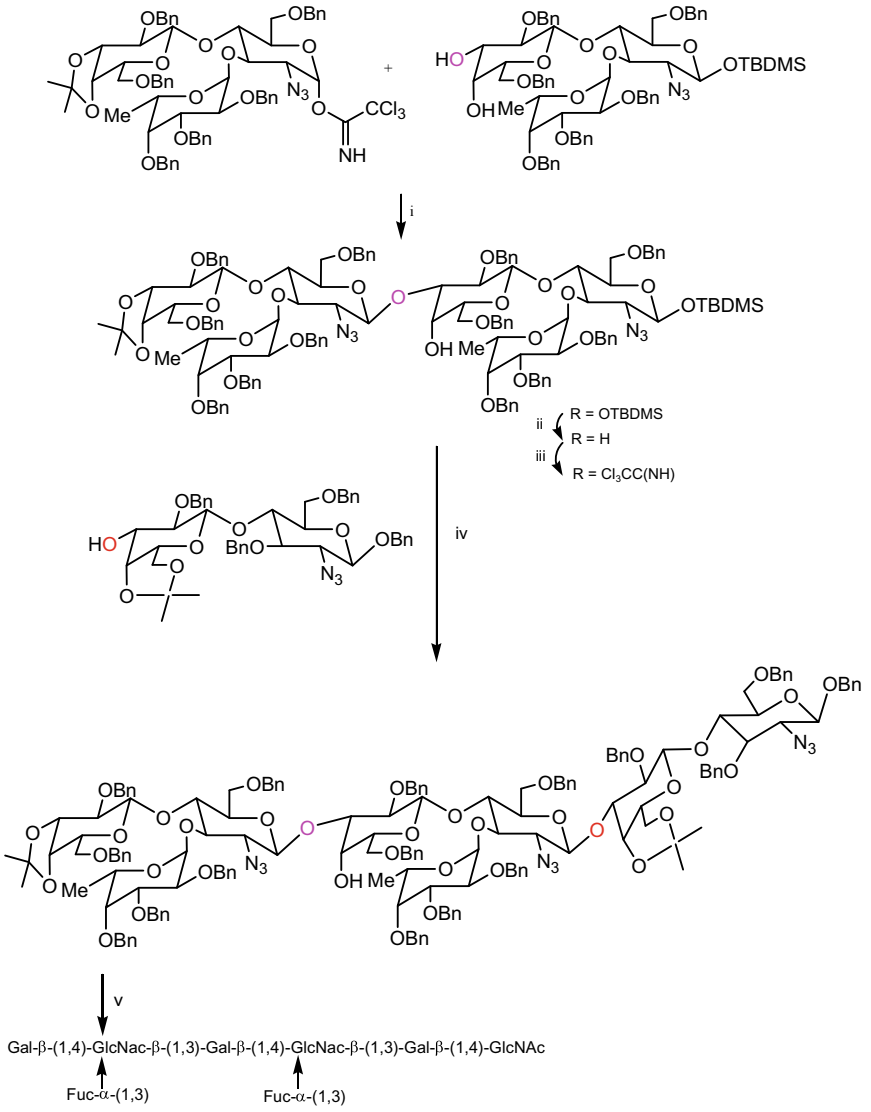
An additional utility of trichloroacetimidates as leaving group is its ability to be transformed to ureas with α-stereoselectivity via nickel-catalyzed [1, 3]-rearrangement and subsequent treatment with secondary amines under the conditions described in Scheme 2.48 [54].

Another approach involving imidates was assayed with trifluoroacetimidate as leaving group and a disaccharide acceptor, using CH_2Cl_2 as solvent and TBSOTf as the promoter. Under these conditions different α:β ratios were observed, however by lowering the temperature from − 20 °C to − 40 °C and improved α:β ratio was obtained while keeping the good yields (Scheme 2.49) [55].

Likewise, fructofuranosides having N-phenyl trifluoroacetimidate as leaving group afforded α-O-glycosides for different aglycons such as admantanol, protected sugars, phenols and flavonids, when TMSOTf is used as promoter at low temperature (Scheme 2.50) [56].

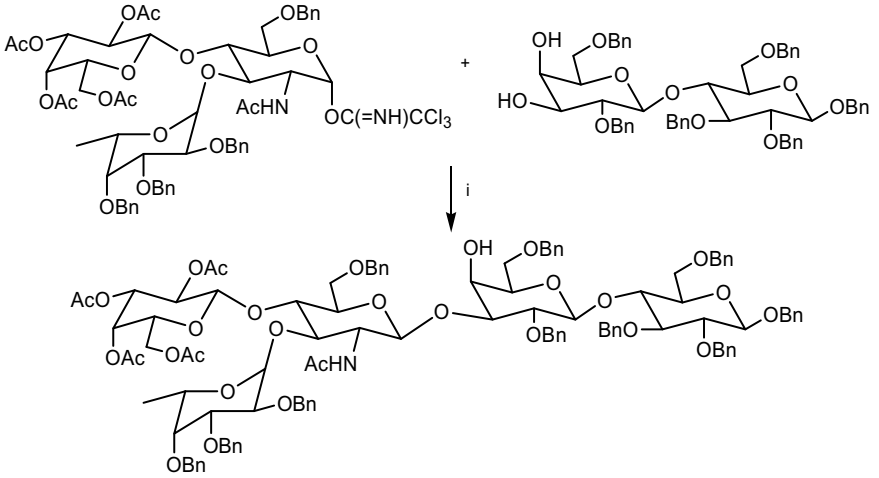
The introduction of additives or modulators to perform glycosidic linkage have been proposed, specially when α-glycosidic linkage is prefered. The compounds used for this purpose are N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF), N,N-dimethylacetamide (DMA), N-formylpiperidine (NFP), N-formylmorpholine (NFM), tetramethylurea (TMU), 1-benzenesulfinyl piperidine (BSP), Triphenylphosphine oxide (TPPO), with imidate donors and acceptors having different hydroxyl group available (Scheme 2.51) [57].

A practical protocol for removing the imidate leaving group being released from the glycoside donor once the glycoside reaction has been accomplished was



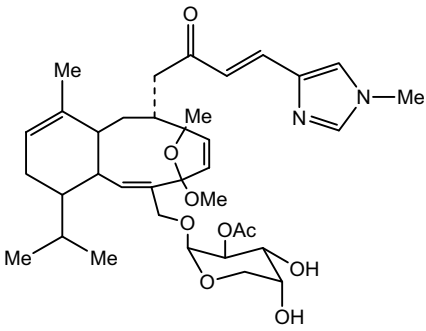
i) $BF_3.OEt_2$, CH_2Cl_2. ii) TBAF, AcOH. iii) Cl_3CCN, DBU. iv) $BF_3.OEt_2$, CH_2Cl_2.
v) a) AcOH. b) H_2, Pd-C.

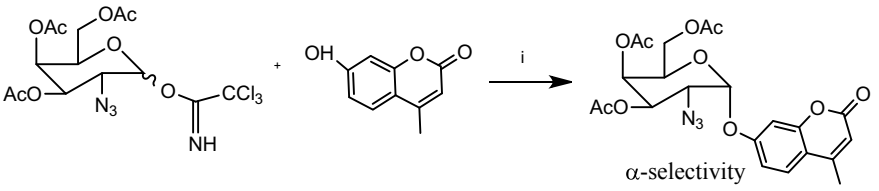
Scheme 2.42 Covergent synthesis of Lewis X fragment



Scheme 2.43 Coupling reaction for the preparation of Lewis x pentasaccharide intermediate

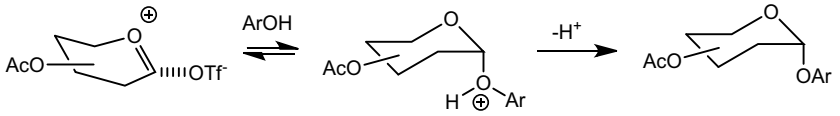
Scheme 2.44 Citotoxic marine glycoside eleutherobin



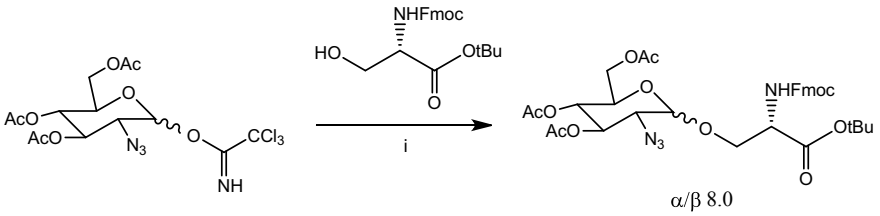


i) 1 mol equiv TMSOTf, CH_2Cl_2, -20°C, 70 % α-anomer only

Scheme 2.45 Synthesis of α-4-methylumbelliferyl glycosides

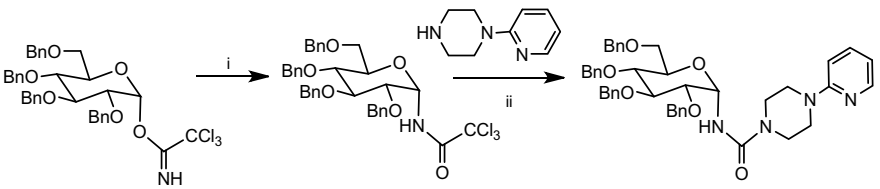


Scheme 2.46 Proposed oxocarbenium triflate ion intermediates leading to α-stereoselectivity



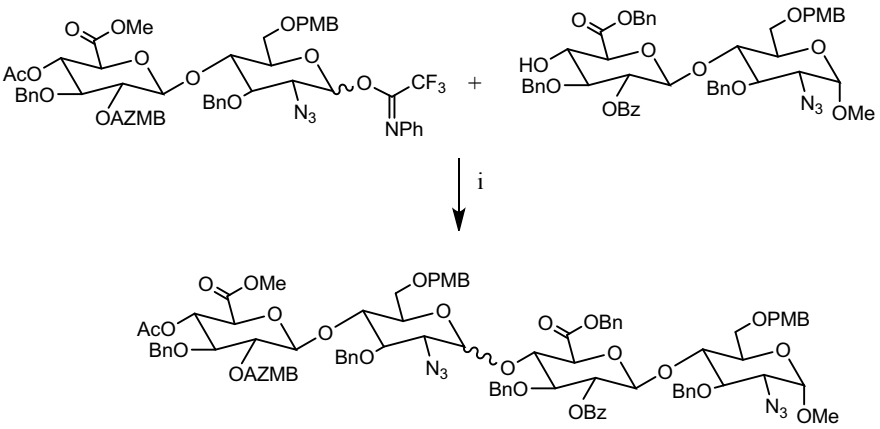
i) $HClO_4$-SiO_2, CH_2Cl_2-dioxane, 0°C

Scheme 2.47 Preparation of α-aminoacid glycosides from imidates



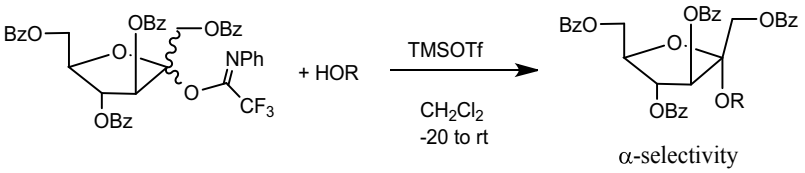
i) $Ni(dppe)Cl_2$, AgOTf, CH_2Cl_2, 25°C. ii) Cs_2CO_3, DMF

Scheme 2.48 Preparation of glycosyl ureas from imidates

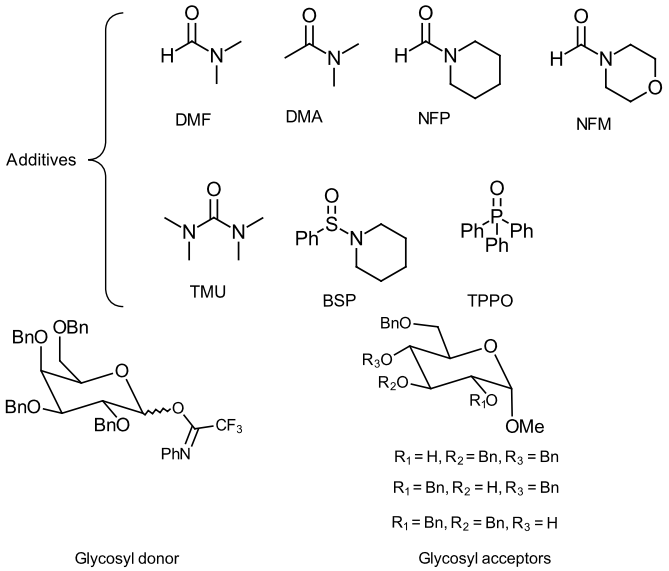


i) TBSOTf,4 Å MS, toluene, -40 °C, 71%

Scheme 2.49 Synthesis of tetrasaccharides from phenyl trifluoroacetimidate as glycosyl donor



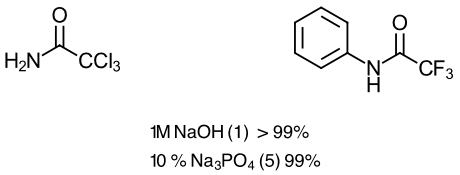
Scheme 2.50 Preparation of fructofuranosyl glycosides from N-phenyl trifluoroacetimidate as leaving group



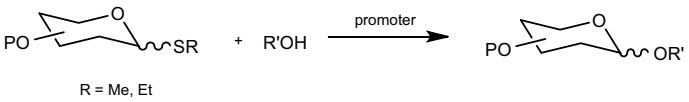
Scheme 2.51 Common additives or modulators used with glycosyl donors imidates and acceptors with different hydroxyl groups available

described. The conditions needed for the removal of resulting amides are 1 M NaOH, (1 time) and 10% aq. Na_3PO_4 (5 times) for extracting trichloroacetamide and Nphenyl-trifluoroacetamide, and for N-(p-cyanophenyl)trifluoroacetamide and N-(p-nitrophenyl)trifluoroacetamide 10% aq. Na_2CO_3 (3 times) (Scheme 2.52) [58].

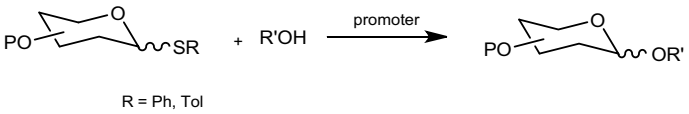
Scheme 2.52 Efficient conditions for the removal of imidate leaving groups



2.1.7 The Sulfur Reaction

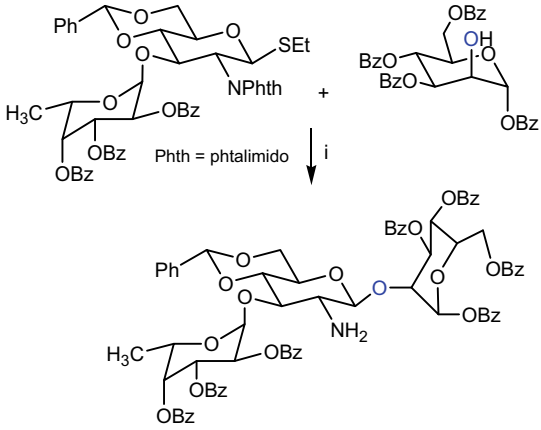


Promoter	Conditions
NIS-TfOH	0 °C → r.t
$HgCl_2$	CH_2Cl_2 or MeCN 0 °C
$CuBr_2$-Bu_4NBr-AgOTf	CH_2Cl_2 or MeCN, − 20 °C
MeOTf	Et_2O, r.t
MeSOTf	Et_2O, r.t
AgOTf-Br_2	CH_2Cl_2
DMTST	MeCN, − 15 °C
NBS-TfOH	EtCN, − 78 °C



Promoter	Conditions
NIS/TfOH	MeCN
NBS	CH_2Cl_2, r.t
BSP	CH_2Cl_2, MS, r.t
DMTST	CH_2Cl_2
MeOTf	CH_2Cl_2
MeSOTf	CH_2Cl_2
(a) Ph_2SO, Tf_2O (b) TBAI	CH_2Cl_2, MS, − 78 °C Ref. [59]
NIS, AgOTf	CH_2Cl_2, MS, − 45 °C Ref. [60]

Thioglycosides are useful glycosyl donors widely used in the preparation of *O*-glycosides. An example of their applicability for the preparation of saccharide synthesis is represented in Scheme 2.53. Thus, the synthesis of trisaccharide intermediate was obtained by combining the thioglycoside donor with a monosaccharide



i) $CF_3SO_3CH_3$, Et_2O, MS, rt. ii) a) NH_2-$NH_2.H_2O$, EtOH reflux. b) Ac_2O, Py

Scheme 2.53 Thioglicoside coupling reaction for preparation of a trisaccharide intermediate

acceptor in the presence of methyltriflate, to provide the target trisaccharide in 72% yield [61].

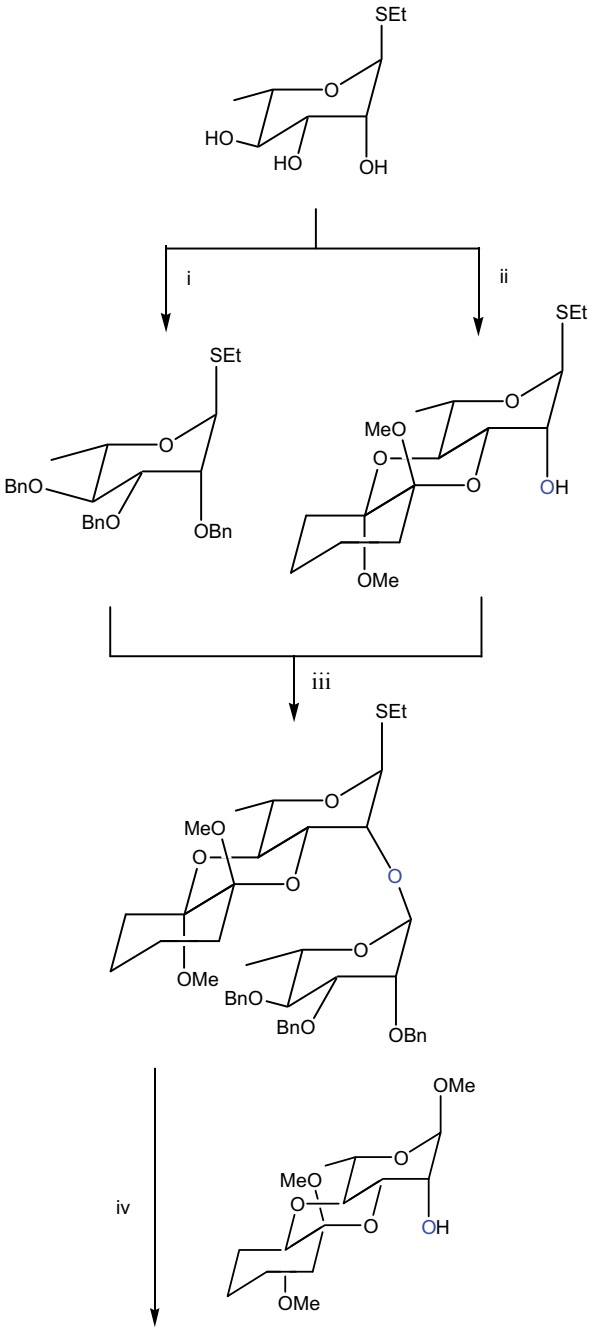
A convergent synthesis of the trisaccharide unit belonging to an antigen polysaccharide from streptococcus has been performed by Ley and Priepke [62]. In this approach ramnosylalkylsulfur was used as the glycosyl donor, and cyclohexane-1,2-diacetal as the protecting group (Scheme 2.54).

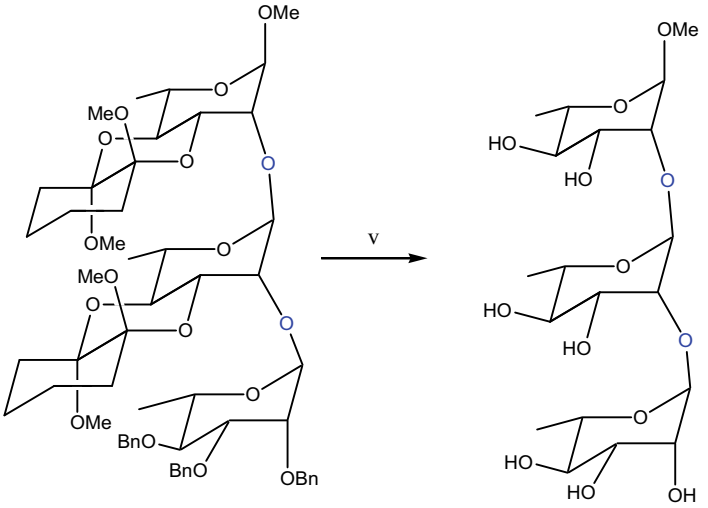
Thioalkyl donor are also useful derivatives for the preparation of biologically important natural sugars known as Sialic acids [23]. An efficient procedure for introducing thioalkyl groups as leaving groups involves the conversion of acetate into thiomethyl by treatment with methylthiotrimethylsilane in the presence of TMS-triflate. *O*-glycosilation reaction proceeds between the thioglycosylsialic donor with a glycosyl acceptor (bearing an -OH group available), using a catalyst such as N-iodosuccinimide-TfOH as promotor (Scheme 2.55) [63].

The synthesis of aryl 2-deoxy-D-glycopyranosides from 2-deoxy-1-thioglycosides and differently substituted phenols and naphthols under N-iodosuccinimide/triflic acid conditions is reported. The analysis of the reaction mixtures was followed by HPLC technique showing that the α-anomers is the major product (Scheme 2.56) [64].

2-Thiophenyl glycosides were used as glycosyl donor for preparing complex oligosaccharides containing sialyl moieties. A remarkable convergent approach was described for preparing a sialyl octasaccharide consisting in the initial glycosidic reaction between 2-thiophenyl Neu5Ac donor with trisaccharide intermediate to produce the expected tetrasaccharide in 45% having an α(2 → 6)-linkage. The resulting tetrasaccharide was coupled with dimeric sialyl donor to yield hexasaccharide in 42%. Acetal hydrolysis was followed by coupling reaction with Neu5Acα(2 → 3)GalSMe donor to give the octasaccharide in 85% yield (Scheme 2.57) [65].

Scheme 2.54 Synthesis of an antigen polisaccharide fragment

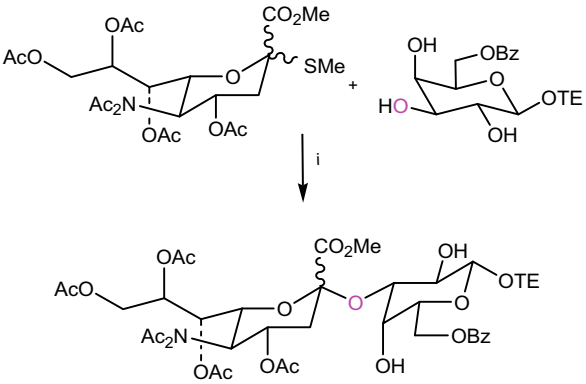




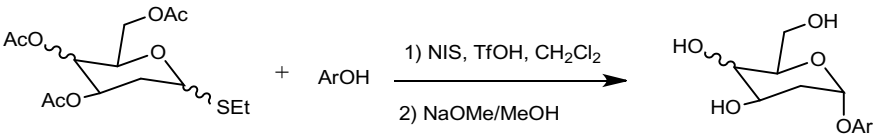
i) BnBr, NaH, DMF. ii) 1,1,2,2-tetramethoxycyclohexane. iii) IDCP, 4 Å MS.
iv) NIS. v) AcOH-H_2O. vi) H_2, Pd/C, EtOH.

Scheme 2.54 (continued)

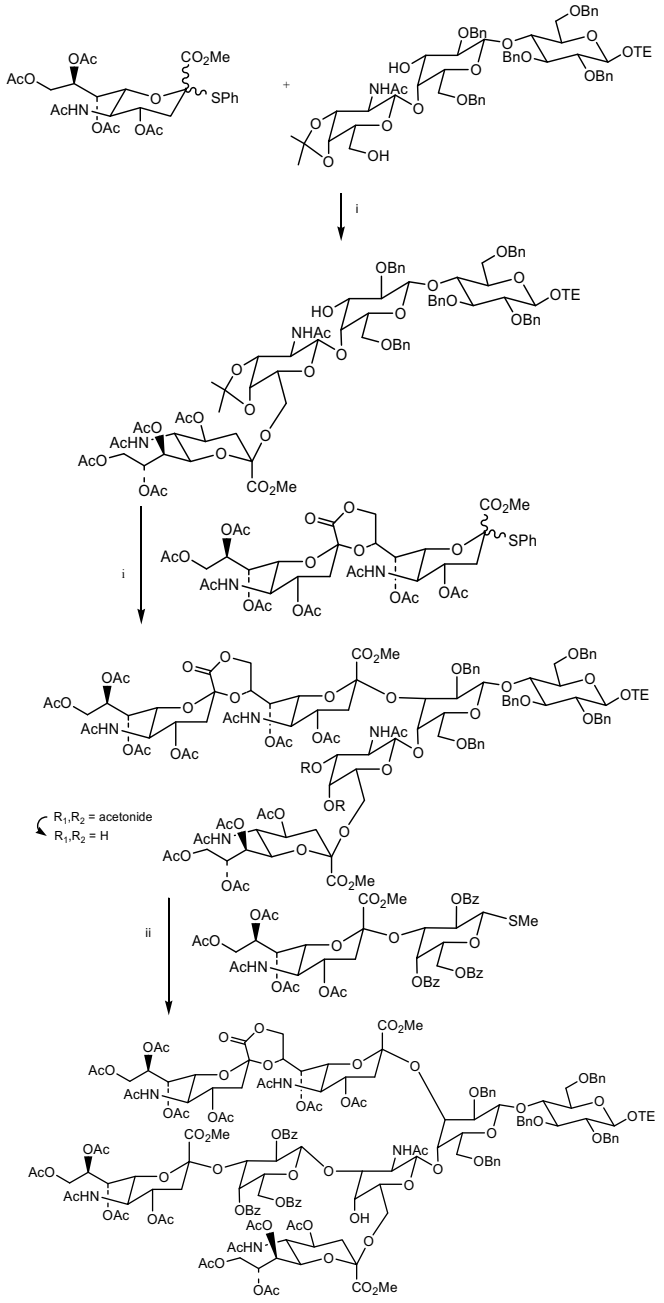
Scheme 2.55 Thioalkyl donor for the preparation of sialic acids



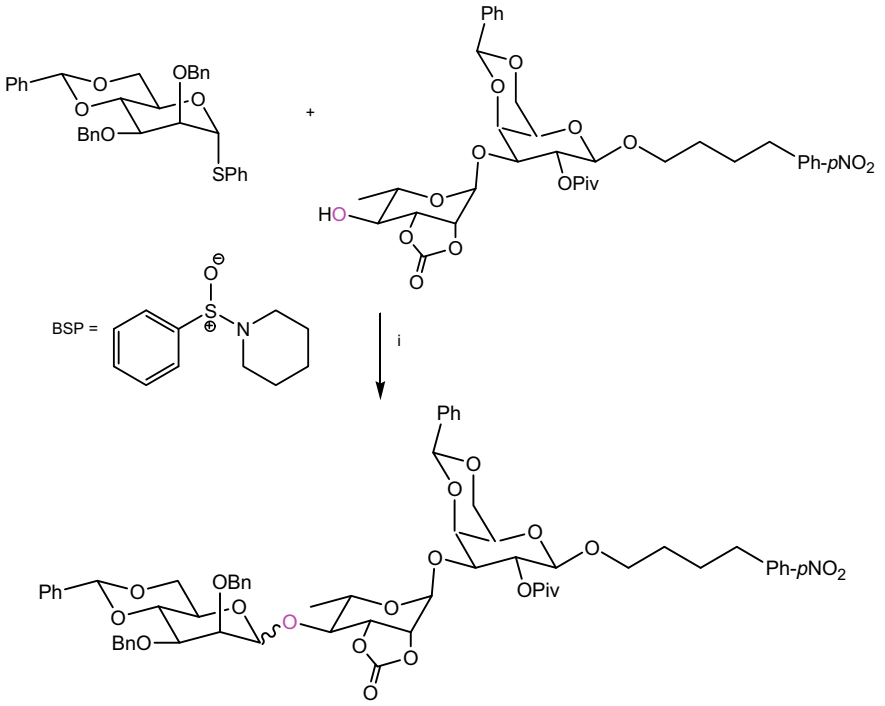
i) NIS/TfOH, MeCN, -40°C.



Scheme 2.56 Synthesis of aryl 2-deoxy-D-glycopyranosides from 2-deoxy-1-thioglycosides



Scheme 2.57 Convergent synthesis of sialyl oligosaccharide



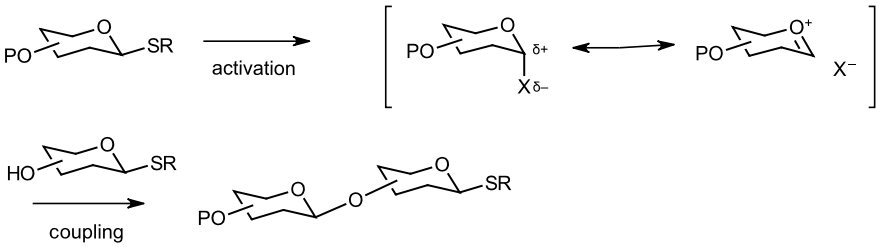
i) a) BSP, m.s., CH_2Cl_2, r.t. b) Tf_2O, -60°C to 0°C 1h.

Scheme 2.58 Preparation of salmonella type E_1 core trisaccharide under BSP-Tf_2O conditions

Crich and Li [66] introduced the use of 1-(Benezenesulfinyl)piperidine/triflic anhydride as promoter conditions for preparing *O*-glycosides from thioglycoside donors. These conditions were applied for preparing Salmonella type E1 core trisaccharide (Scheme 2.58). This method has been adopted as alternative approach known as "iterative or pre-activation" glycosylation which consit in threatment of the thioglycoside with 1-benzenesulfinyl piperidine (BSP) or morpholine analog (BSM) and triflic anhydride at low temperature, and the resulting "glycosyl triflate" intermediate treated with a thioglycosides acceptor having a free alcohol suitable for attachment [67].

This method has been extended as an alternative approach known as "iterative or pre-activation" glycosylation which consit in the treatment of the thioglycoside with 1-benzenesulfinyl piperidine (BSP) or morpholine analog (BSM) and triflic anhydride at low temperature, and the resulting "glycosyl triflate" intermediate treated with a thioglycosides acceptor having a free alcohol suitable for coupling reaction (Scheme 2.59) [67, 68].

Highly fluorinated thiols have been developed and used as donors in the preparation of disaccharides. The reactivity of these novel fluorinated thiols were examined

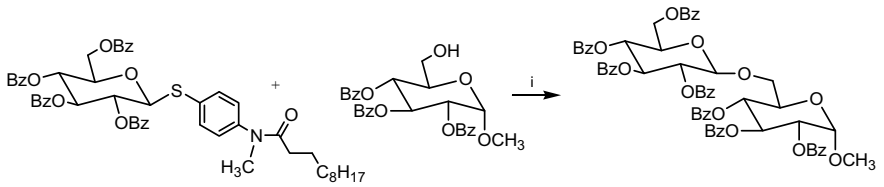


Scheme 2.59 The iterative or pre-activation protocol

using different acceptors. Thus, disaccharide formation under glycosidic conditions provided the disaccharides in high yields (Scheme 2.60) [69].

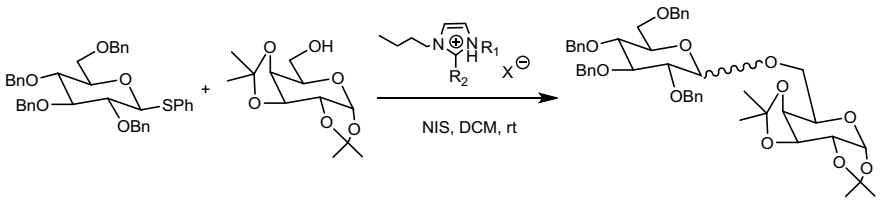
Thioglycosides have been used as donor models for glycosylations with imidazolium-based ionic liquids promoters under N-iodosuccinimide conditions. Thus it was observed that tetra-O-benzyl-1-thio-β-D-glucopyranoside as donor and 1,2:3,4-di-O-isopropylidene-α-Dgalactopyranose as glycoside acceptor gave the disaccharide in almost 1:1 α/β ratio in 84% yield. This methodology claims to have the ability of recycling the ionic liquid promoter which make it attractive as a cost effective protocol (Scheme 2.61) [70].

An study using protected thio gluco and galactoside bearing and acetate group at 6-position was conducted to determine the influence of solvent in the stereoselectivity of the glycosylation reaction with small and reactive acceptors has been carried out,



i) NIS (2 eq.), AgOTf (0.2 eq.), CH_2Cl_2.

Scheme 2.60 Highly fluorinated thiols glycosyl donor for glycosidation

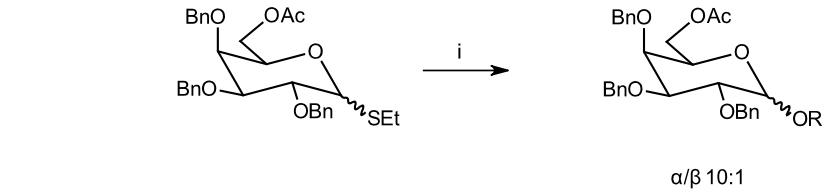


Scheme 2.61 Glycosylations with imidazolium-based ionic liquids promoters under N-iodosuccinimide

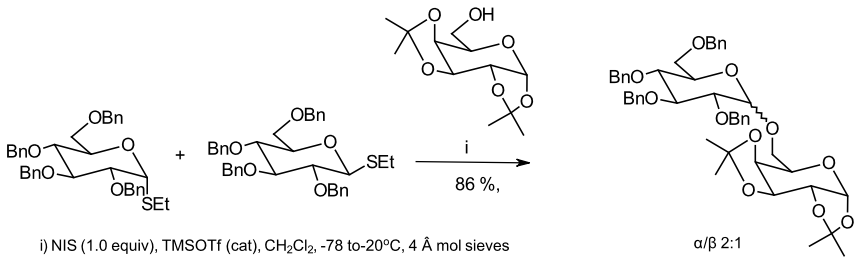
observing a high α-stereoselectivity when using NIS/TfOH as activator and ethyl ether as the solvent at -60 °C. Other solvent did not improve the α/β ratio, although yield where also high (Scheme 2.62) [71].

To understand the influence of the anomeric configuration upon thioglycoside donors a one-pot synthesis was designed using a competitive glycosylation between the α-thioglycosides and β-thioglycosides with diisopropyl acceptor to obtain the desired disaccharide. Based on the resulted the yield ranged from 61 to 86%, the α/β was β only or 2:1 and 3:1, with substantial donor recovery (Scheme2.63) [72].

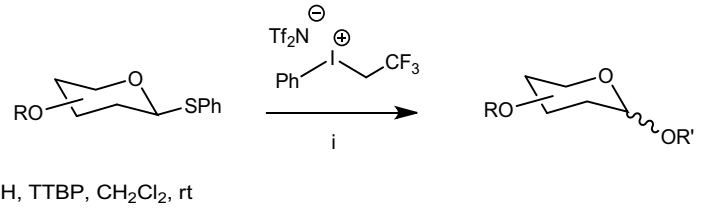
Fully substituted and deoxy thioglycoside donorswere converted to cholesterol and disacharide O-glycosides by reaction with an air- and water-stable iodonium salt phenyl(trifluoroethyl)-iodonium triflimide as an activator for glycosylation reporting 68–97% yield as a mixture of isomers (Scheme 2.64) [73].



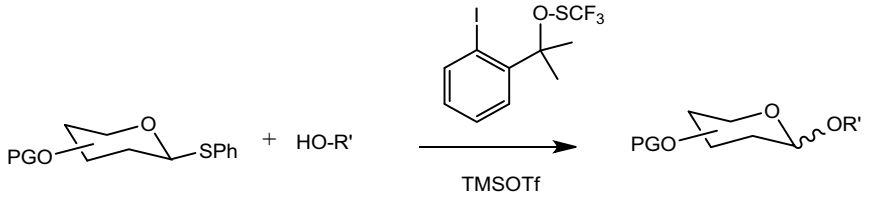
Scheme 2.62 α-Stereoselectivity under NIS/TfOH activation



Scheme 2.63 A competitive glycosylation between the α-thioglycosides and β-thioglycosides with diisopropyl acceptor



Scheme 2.64 O-glycoside formation with an air- and water-stable iodonium salt



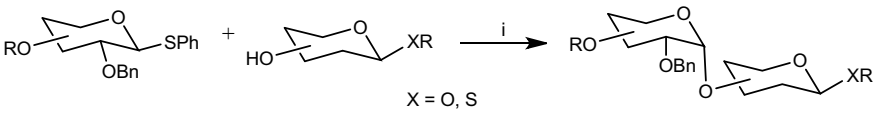
Scheme 2.65 O-glycosylation under thioperoxide-TMSOTf conditions

Thioperoxide in combination with trimethylsilyl trifluoromethanesulfonate (TMSOTf) were designed as thioglycosides activators as it can be seen in the O-glycoside synthesis of disaccharidesreporting high yields and β stereoselectivity or as a mixture of anomers (Scheme 2.65) [74].

Another report for preparing 1,2-cis-R-glycosides from thioglycosyl donors without directing groups involved activating conditions of Ph_2SO/Tf_2O at low temperature. It was observed that the use of tetrabutylammonium iodide (TBAI) and N-Methylmaleimide leds to a increase of yield accompanied by high 1,2-cis stereoselectivity (Scheme 2.66) [75].

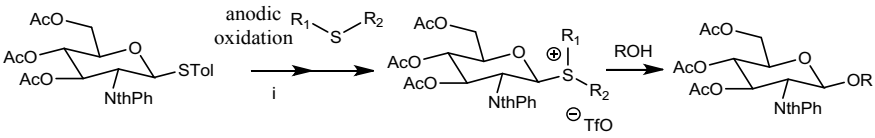
Toluylglycoside was chosen as a glycosyl donor for preparing glycosyl sulfonium ions, via electrochemically generated glycosyl triflate, which in turn served for prpeparing β-disaccharidesfrom moderate to good yields depending on the temperature at which glycosylation was performed (Scheme 2.67) [76].

An additional strategy described to prepare glycosyl donors having equatorial leaving groups which favour S_N2 or S_N2-like reactions, and eventually leading to the formation of 1,2-*cis* glycosides has been proposed. Thus, the synthesis of *o*-ethynylphenyl β-D-1-thioglucosides and condensed with alkyl alcohols in the presence of gold(I)-catalyst, producing mainly α-glycosides (Scheme 2.68) [77].



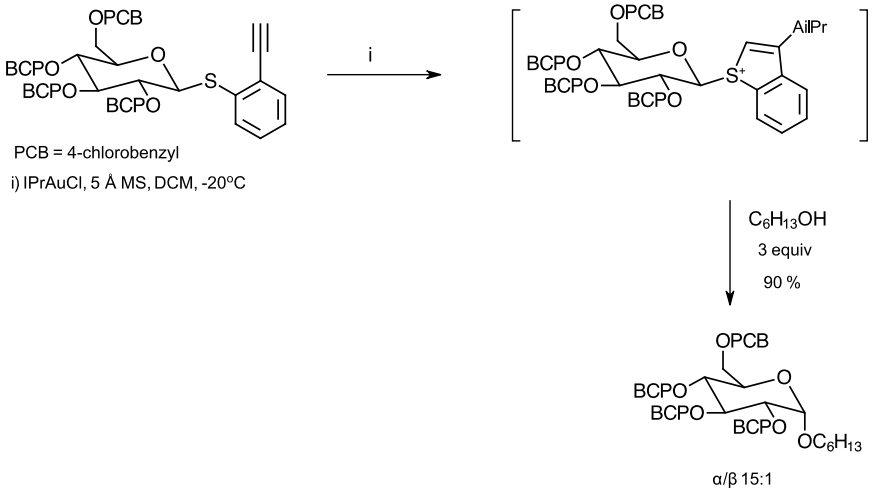
i) Ph_2SO, Tf_2O, N-methylmaleimide ii) BuN^+I^-

Scheme 2.66 1,2-Cis glycosylation under Ph_2SO/Tf_2O conditions



i) Bu_4NOTf, CH_2Cl_2, -78%°C

Scheme 2.67 O-glycosylation method via electrochemically generated glycosyl triflate

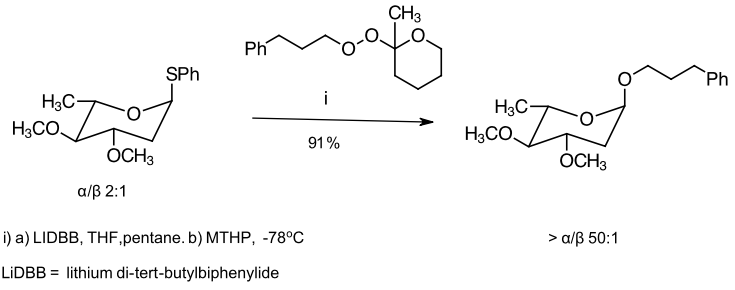


Scheme 2.68 Stereo controlled glycosylation using *o*-ethynylphenyl –thioglucosides donors with gold(I)-catalyst as promoter

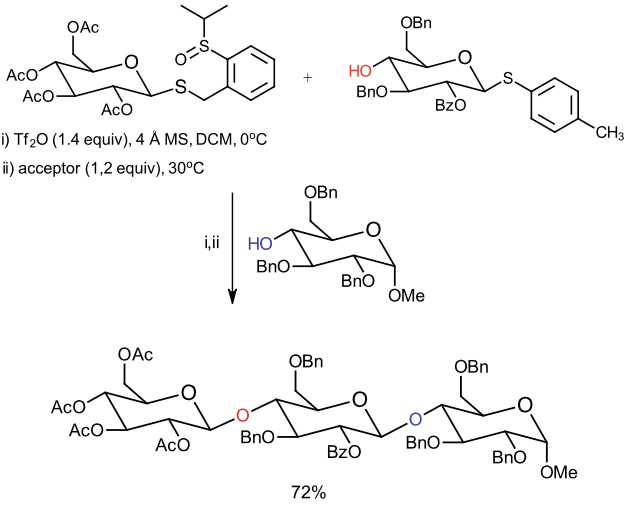
In the absence of a group at the second position in particular 2-deoxyglycosides the stereo selectivity is considered challenging. However, the coupling reaction between 3,4-di-O-methyl-1-thio-L-olivopyranoside with monoperoxy acetal (MTHP) provides the α-glycoside in 81% yield and > 50:1 α:β selectivity (Scheme 2.69) [78].

The construction of multiple glycosidic bonds using 2 thioglycoside donors with one equivalent of promoter was established. This concept was developed by using S-2-[(propan-2-yl)sulfinyl]benzyl (SPSB) as glycosyl donor with thiophenyl glycosyl acceptor in the presence of triflic anhydride as promoter (Scheme 2.70) [79].

Pentavalent-bismuth mediated glycosylation using propanethiol as additive was described as alternative glycosylation protocol. The glycosyl donors used were

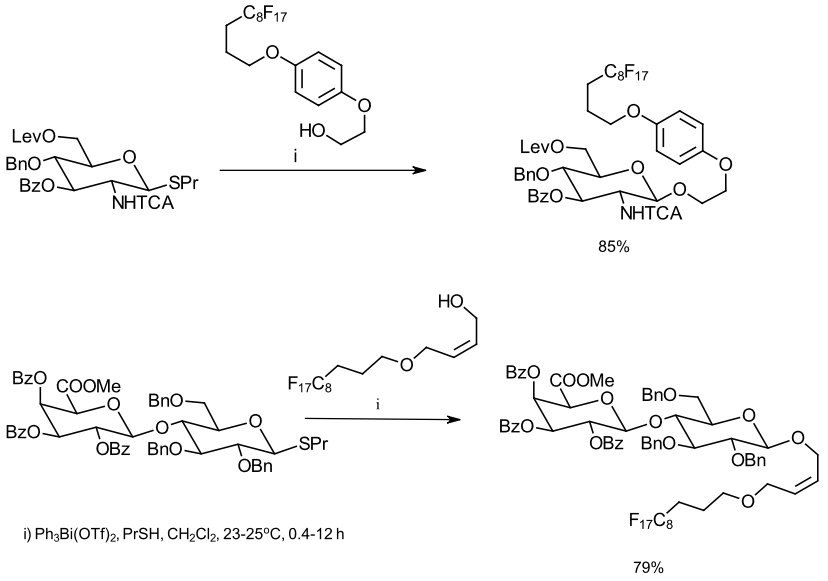


Scheme 2.69 Glycosylation of 1-thio-L-olivopyranoside with monoperoxy acetal (MTHP) providing α-glycoside



Scheme 2.70 One-pot relay glycosylation with glycosyl sulfinyl benzyl donors

different galacto, uronic acid and sialic acid thioglycosides, having S-phenyl (SPh), S-thiazolinyl (STaz), S-benzoxazolyl (SBox) and A-adanmantyl (SAda) at the anomeric position, with different long chain alkene, benzyl, and hydroquinone alcohols as acceptors, obtaining yields between 66 and 89% (Scheme 2.71) [80].



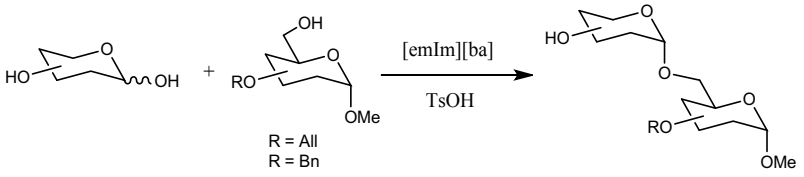
Scheme 2.71 Pentavalent-bismuth mediated glycosylation using propanethiol as additive

2.1.8 *Unprotected Glycosylations*

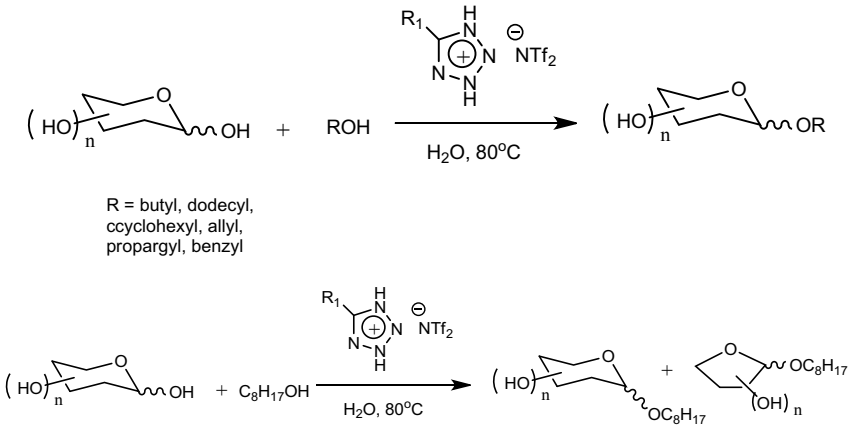
Attempts for preparing straight glycosylations using unprotected sugars with a variety of aglycons such as alifatic, aromatic and other sugrars have been implemented in the presence of different promoters. For instance simple benzyl glycosides and disaccharides of glucose, mannose and N-acetylgalactosamine were obtained in 1-ethyl-3-methylimidazolium benzoate with Amberlite IR-120 (H +) resin or p-toluenesulfonic acid as promoters in modest yields (Scheme 2.72) [81].

Brønsted acid ionic liquids (BAILs) have been designed as promoters for glycosylations of unprotected sugars due their ability to adjust solubility properties by different cation/anion combinations. Under these conditions the yields reported range from 19 to 67 depending on the alcohol assayed, providing mainly the α-anomer. It has been observed that the reaction between different aldose monosaccharides with octanol produces a mixture of pyranoside and furanoside ring as a mixture of anomers (Scheme 2.73) [82].

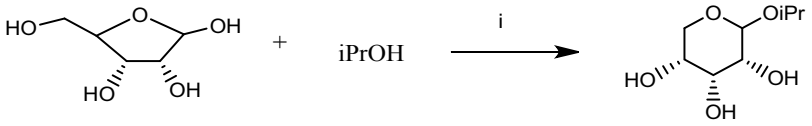
Glycosylation of unprotected ribose with a variety of alcohols, have been carried out by following a variation of the Apple reaction which substitute a hydroxyl group by a bromine in situ, under triphenylphosphine and tetrabromomethane conditions. An improvement in the reaction was observed when lithium perchlorate was used in



Scheme 2.72 Unprotected glycosylation in the presence of acidified liquid ion solvents



Scheme 2.73 Unprotected glycosylation in the presence brønsted acid ionic liquids (BAILs)



i) 10 mol % PPh_3, 10 mol % CBr_4, $LiClO_4$

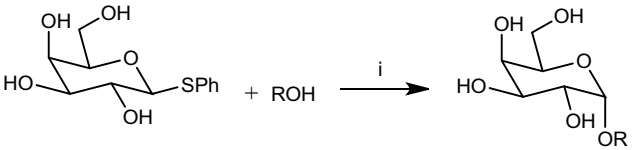
Scheme 2.74 Unprotected glycosylation via the apple reaction

arabinose, xylose, and lyxose providing good yields although the glycosides where obtained in the pyranoid form with different α/β ratio (Scheme 2.74) [83].

Previously this group was able to prepare isopropyl glycosides by direct glycosylation reaction of unprotected riboside wiith isopropanol in the presence of mandelic acid and titanium tert-butoxide [84]. On the other hand, Meng et al. [85] reported the 1,2-cis-alkyl glycosidation protocol with unprotected phenyl 1-thioglycosyl donors with a variety of alcohol acceptors under the activation of N-iodosuccinimide–trimethylsilyl triflate (although other Lewis acids such as TfOH or $BF_3.OEt_2$ provides good yields). The desired product was obtained in 75–76% yields and with high α stereoselectivity (Scheme 2.75).

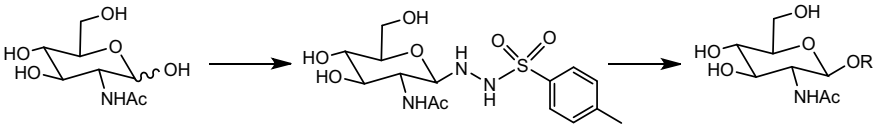
Antother protecting group free glycosidations was proposed by using p-toluenesulfonylhydrazide as leaving group followed by coupling reaction with alcohols in the presence of NBS in DMF at room temperature, provinding the O-glycoside in good yields (70–87) mainly as a β-isomer (Scheme 2.76) [86].

Gold (III) activation of unprotected glycosyl donors bearing 2-butynyl as leaving group has been used in combination with primarly alcohols and protected saccharides as acceptors, providing the corresponding O-glycosides as a mixture of anomers in moderate yields (Scheme 2.77) [87].

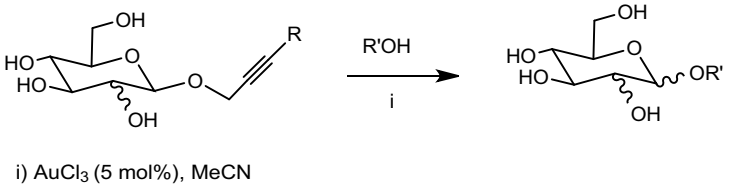


i) NIS/NBS, TMSOTf, -30°C

Scheme 2.75 Unprotected glycosylation with unprotected phenyl 1-thioglycosyl donors



Scheme 2.76 Unprotected glycosylation by using p-toluenesulfonylhydrazide as donor

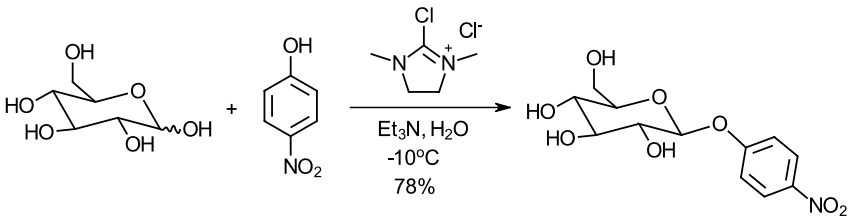


Scheme 2.77 Unprotected glycosylation from 2-butynyl glycosyl donors in the rpesence of gold (III) activation

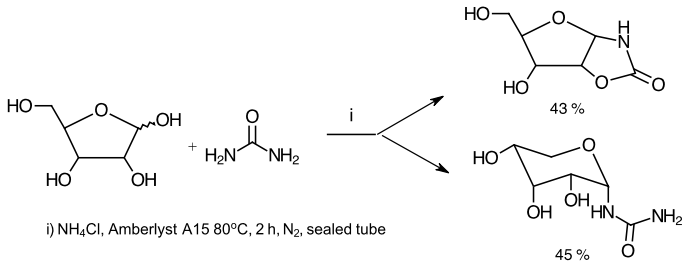
Reducing sugars may be directly converted into the corresponding *p*-nitrophenyl (pNP) glycosides using 2-chloro-1,3-dimethylimidazolinium chloride (DMC), with *p*-nitrophenol, and a suitable base in aqueous solution. The reaction is stereoselective for sugars with either hydroxyl or acetamido group at position 2, yielding the 1,2-trans pNP glycosides (Scheme 2.78) [88].

Glycosyl ureas can be prepared straightforwardly by melting ribose, urea, under acid catalysed with ammonium chloride and Amberlyst A15 or heated in the oil bath at the appropriate temperature. Typically, 19–20 h at 90 °C (Scheme 2.79). The HPLC profile showed the product ratios of glycosyl ureas obtained as follows: β-D-ribofuranosyl urea (3%), β-D-ribopyranosyl urea (43%), α-D-ribofuranosyl urea (9%), and α-D-ribopyranosyl urea (45%) [89].

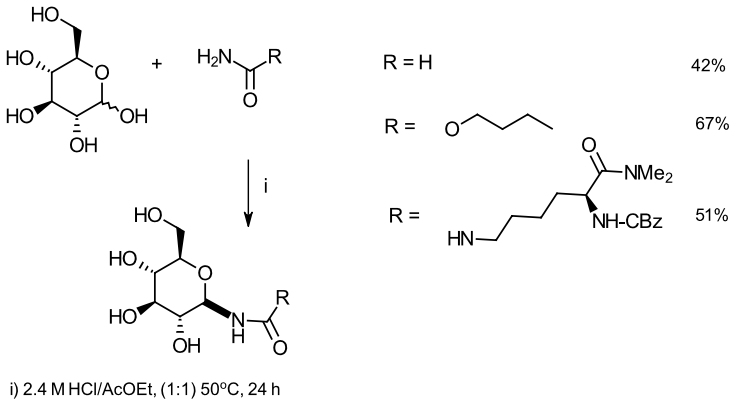
The synthesis of N-glycoside urea, formamide and carbamate was accomplished following Fischer conditions using unprotected D-glucose condensed with the amino



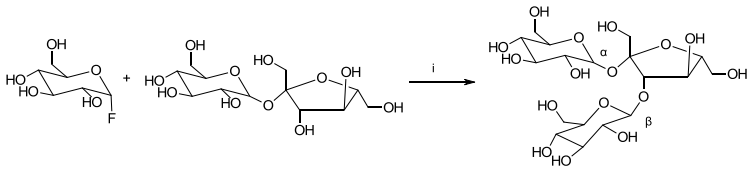
Scheme 2.78 Synthesis of *p*-Nitrophenyl glycosides from unprotected reducing sugars



Scheme 2.79 Major products observed from the melting reaction of D-ribose and urea



Scheme 2.80 Synthesis of N-glycoside urea, formamide and carbamate from unprotected glucose



Scheme 2.81 Aqueous glycosylation of unprotected sucrose employing glycosyl fluorides

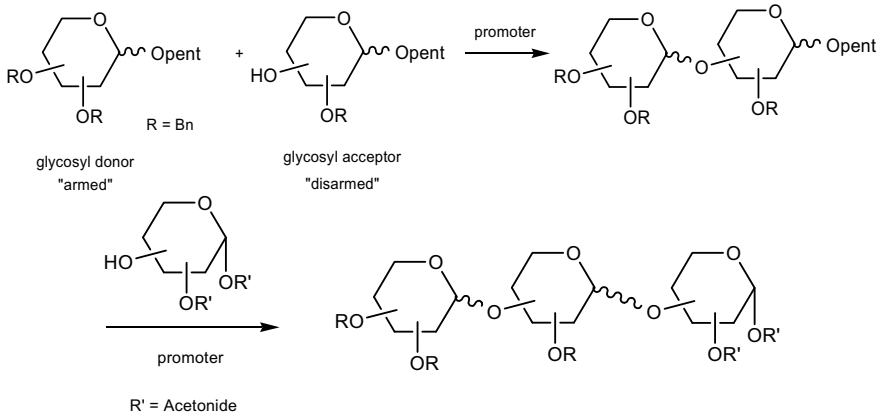
aglycon in a mixture of aqueous HCl and ethyl acetate, obtaining the urea and formamide as β-isomer while the later as a mixture of anomers (Scheme 2.80) [90].

Unprotected α-D-glucosyl fluoride has been used for preparing sucrose derivatives under aqueous conditions in the presence of calcium ion and trimethylamine. The optimized conditions found that an excess of Ca^{+2} leads to improved yields with high stereo and regioselectivity (Scheme 2.81) [91].

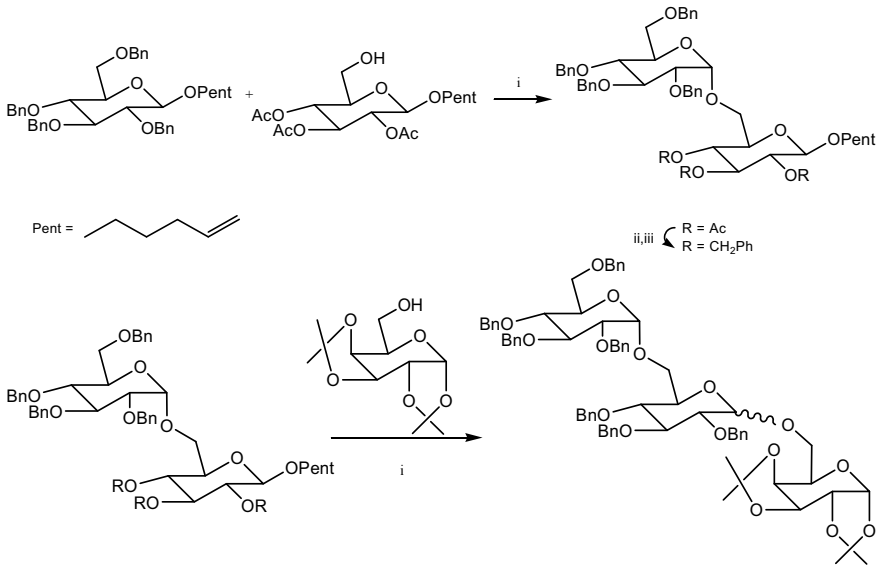
2.1.9 The Armed-Disarmed Method

This versatile approach has been attributed to Mootoo and Fraiser-Reid [92], and considers the use of a glycosyl donor in the classical sense coined with the term "armed saccharide" (because the reducing end is armed for further coupling reaction), and an acceptor in this case "disarmed saccharide" which contains both a free alcohol and a leaving group sufficiently resistant for the ongoing coupling reaction. The resulting disaccharide now becomes and armed disaccharide which in turn is reacted with another glycosyl acceptor or disarmed sugar to produce the oligosaccharide chain elongation (Scheme 2.82).

This method was first implemented in the preparation of 1–6 linked trisaccharide shown in Scheme 2.83. As it can be observed the disarmed sugar intermediates



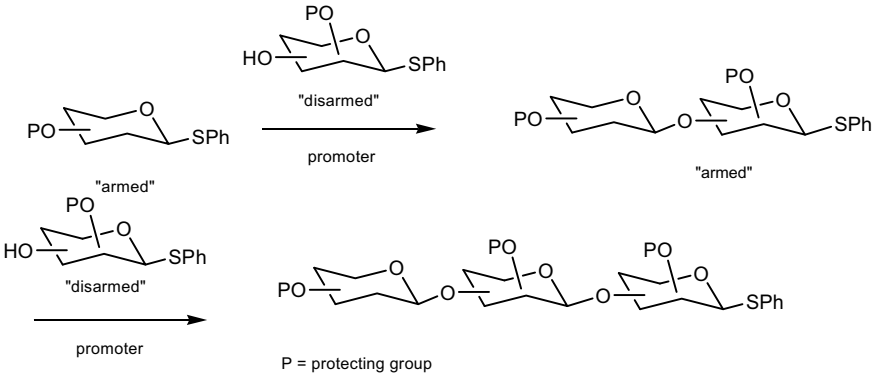
Scheme 2.82 General scheme for the armed-disarmed approach



Scheme 2.83 The armed-disarmed approach

function as glycosyl acceptor bearing the hydroxyl group at position 6 available for establishing a glycosidic linkage with the armed unit.

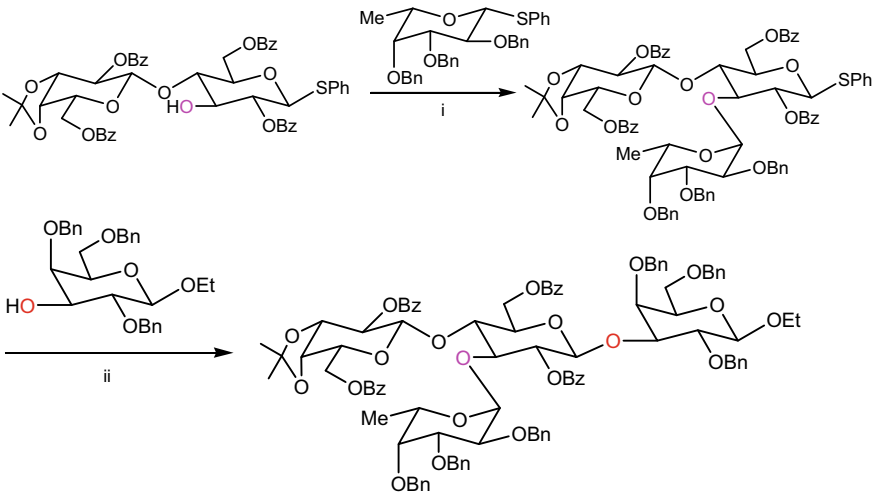
Despite the usefulness of pentenyl as protecting group, clear preference in the use of thioglycoside donors as armed and disarmed donors is often observed (Scheme 2.84) [93].



Scheme 2.84 The general scheme of the armed-disarmed approach with thioglycosyl sugars

This concept was applied successfully in the stereocontrolled synthesis of Le^x oligosaccharide derivatives by using two glycosylation steps as described by Yoshida el al. [94]. The first coupling between "armed" thiophenyl fucopyranosyl derivative with "disarmed" thiophenyl lactose derivative under NIS-TfOH conditions provided trisacccharide which was subjected without purification to second condensation with different acceptors, one of which is indicated in Scheme 2.85.

The construction of α-linked mannoside disaccharide was achieved under the armed-disarmed approach by using armed thiogalactoside donor activated by BSP/Tf_2O and condensed with disarmed thiomannoazide intermediate bearing a

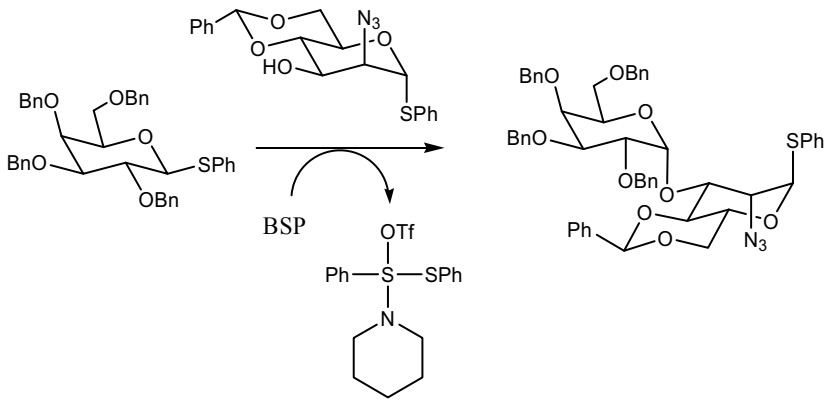


Scheme 2.85 Preparation of Lewis X tetrasaccharide using armed-disarmed coupling method

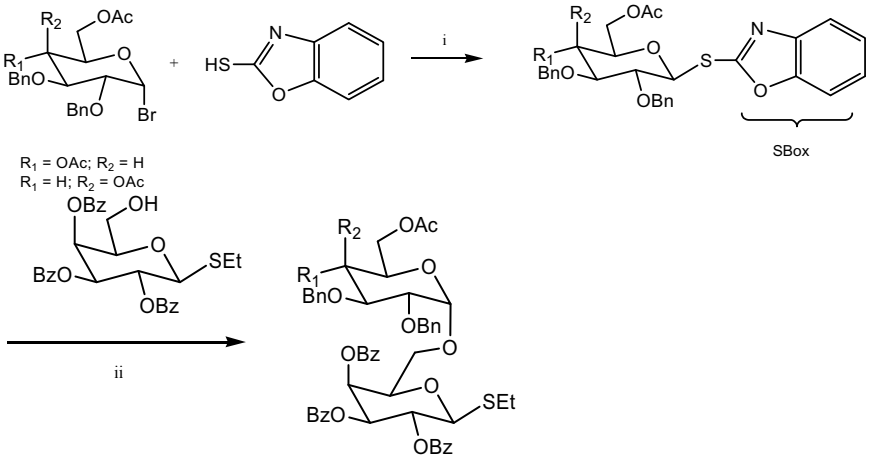
free hydroxyl group. Addition of triethyl phosphate prior to the aqueous work up led to the generation of the expected α-linked disaccharide in 74% (Scheme 2.86) [93].

Recently S-benzoxazol thio glycoside (SBox) was synthesized and introduced as alternative glycosyl donor for preparing disaccharides under the armed-disarmed approach. Thus, the SBox glycosyl donor was used as armed donor and condensed with disarmed thioglycoside to provide the target disaccharide (Scheme 2.87) [95].

Another glycosylation protocol for thioglycoside glycosyl donors utilize 1,3-diiodo-5,5-dimethylhydantoin (DIDMH) instead of N-iodosuccinimide (NIS) as a

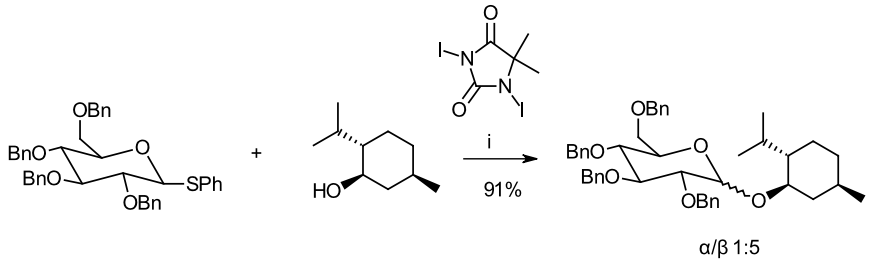


Scheme 2.86 Synthesis of α-linked mannosyl disaccharide following an armed-disarmed strategy



i) K_2CO_3, acetone, 90%. AgOTf, CH_2Cl_2.

Scheme 2.87 Armed-disarmed synthesis using S-benzoxazol (SBox) as disarmed glycosyl donor

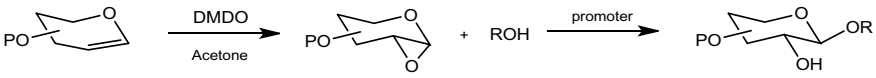


i) DIDMH (0.50 equiv), TMSOTf (0.1 equiv), CH_2Cl_2, 78°C, molecular sieves 3 Å,

Scheme 2.88 DIDMH as new promoter system for thioglycoside glycosyl donors

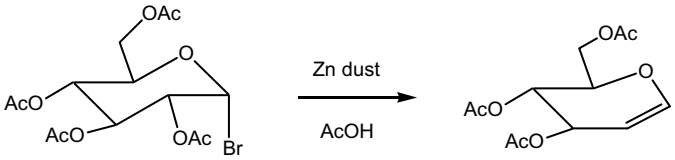
promoter system in the presence of triflic acid. The results showed stereoselectivity α/β 1:5 with high yields (Scheme 2.88) [96].

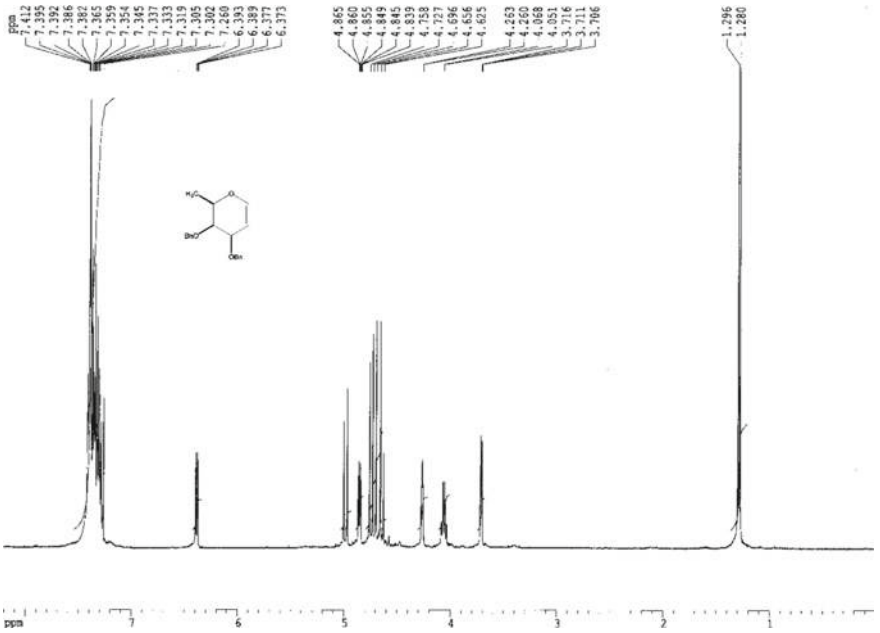
2.1.10 The Glycal Reaction



Promoter	Conditions
$ZnCl_2$	THF

The glycals are unsaturated sugars with a double bond located between C1 and C2. These useful intermediates were discovered by Fischer and Zach in 1913 [97] and their utility in the preparation of building blocks for oligosaccharide synthesis is increasingly important. Different routes for the preparation of triacetyl glucals have been examined by Fraser-Reid et al. [98], involving the Ferrier rearrangement. Moreover, a suitable one-pot preparation of glucals has been more recently described, starting from reducing sugars by Shull et al. [99] The general procedure for preparing these valuable intermediates is based on the reductive removal of a halogen and neighboring acetate group through the use of zinc in acetic acid (Scheme 2.89). The completion of this reaction can be followed by ^{1}H NMR, where the presence of a signal around 6.3 ppm as double of double with $J_{1,2} = 6.2$ Hz, $J_{1,3} = 0.3$ Hz is expected for H-1, and a multiple shifted upfield for H-2.





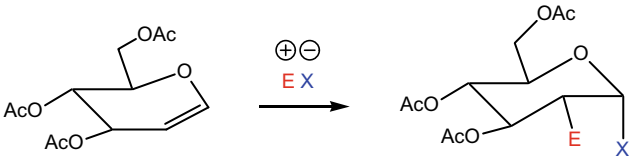
Scheme 2.89 The Fischer-Sachs glucal and ^{1}H NMR of benzylfucopyranosyl glycal

More recently the use of alternative catalysts such as titanium complex, Li/NH_3, Sodium, Cr (II) and vitamin B-12 as catalysts has been described as improved method, for preparing especially acid sensitive glycals.

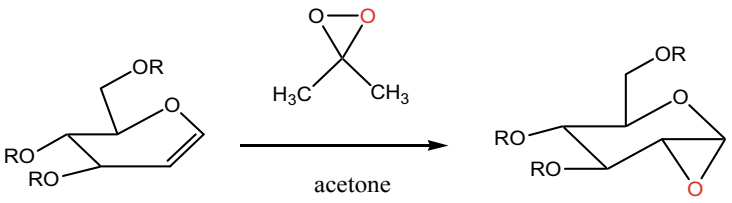
As for any double bond, these unsaturated sugars may undergo electrophilic addition, which takes place at the C2 position leaving a positive charge at C1, which instantly reacts with the conjugate base. This reaction is particularly useful for the preparation of 2-deoxypyranosides (Scheme 2.90).

A more extended application for glycoside bond formation has been developed recently. Such strategies consist of the convertion of glycals into Brigl's epoxide, and then further treatment with nucleophiles to effect ring opening. The oxidation of the double bond has been successfully achieved with dimethyl dioxirane (DMDO) in acetone (Scheme 2.91).

The standard procedure for generation of DMDO was developed by Murray and Jeyaraman [100], and optimized by Adam et al. [101]. Such procedure involves the use of potassium monoperoxysulfate as oxidative acetone agent, and the



Scheme 2.90 Electrophilic addition



Scheme 2.91 The Brigl epoxide formation

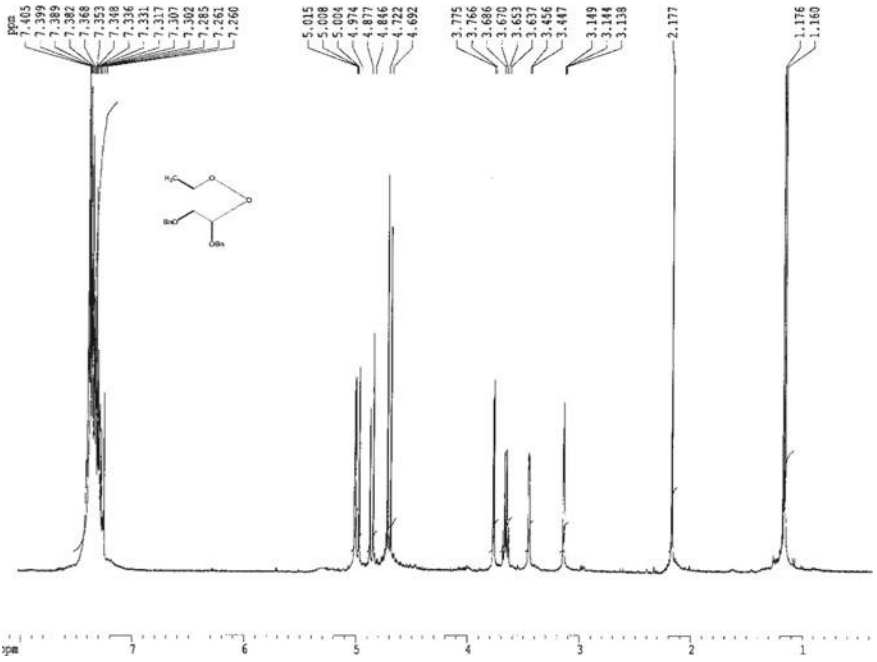
reaction conditions requires temperatures below 15 °C an efficient stirring. The DMDO/acetone solution generated, must be immediately distilled under moderate vacuum. The concentrations of DMDO are in the order of 0.09–0.11 M (5%), and it is used as acetone solution. The transformation of the glycal to the epoxide can be verified by ^{1}HNMR, where it is observed the disappearance of the signal at 6.3 ppm for H-1 double bond, and it is expected the presence of a signal at 5.0, as double for H-1 and at 3.1 as double of double for H-2 (Scheme 2.92).

The stereo selectivity of epoxide formation is protecting group dependent, observing in the case of acetate protecting group a mixture of epoxide anomers, and preferentially the α-anomers if the protecting groups are benzyl, or methyl groups (α:β ratio 20:1). As expected, the epoxide ring opening by nucleophiles occurs with inversion of configuration, providing β-glycosides exclusively (Scheme 2.93).

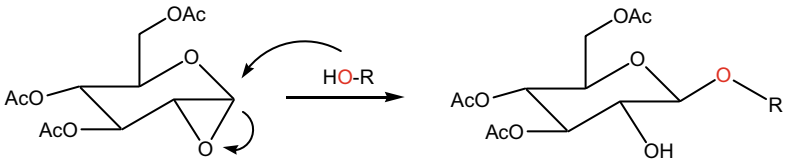
Likewise, alternative epoxide conditions from glycals has been assayed besides DMDO treatment. Among them, cyclization of a bromohydrin [102], *m*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid–potassium fluoride complex oxidation of the glycal [103], and potassium tertbutoxide oxidation of fluoride glycosyl donor [104] has been described (Scheme 2.94).

The potential of 1,2-anhydro sugars as glycosyl donor for the preparation of β-linked saccharides was established by Halcomb and Danishefsky [105] and such strategy consist in the treatment of the glucal having available a hydroxyl group at position 6, with the sugar epoxide under Lewis acid conditions ($ZnCl_2$) at low temperature. The resulting glucal disaccharide generated as a single coupling product was further converted to the epoxide which eventually lead to the next coupling reaction with another glucal acceptor (Scheme 2.95).

The tetrasaccharide Cap Domain of the antigenic lipophosphoglycan of *Leishmania donovani* has been prepared under the glycal approach by Upreti and Vishwakarma [106]. Thus, the preparation of the hexa-*O*-benzyl-lactal under stardard



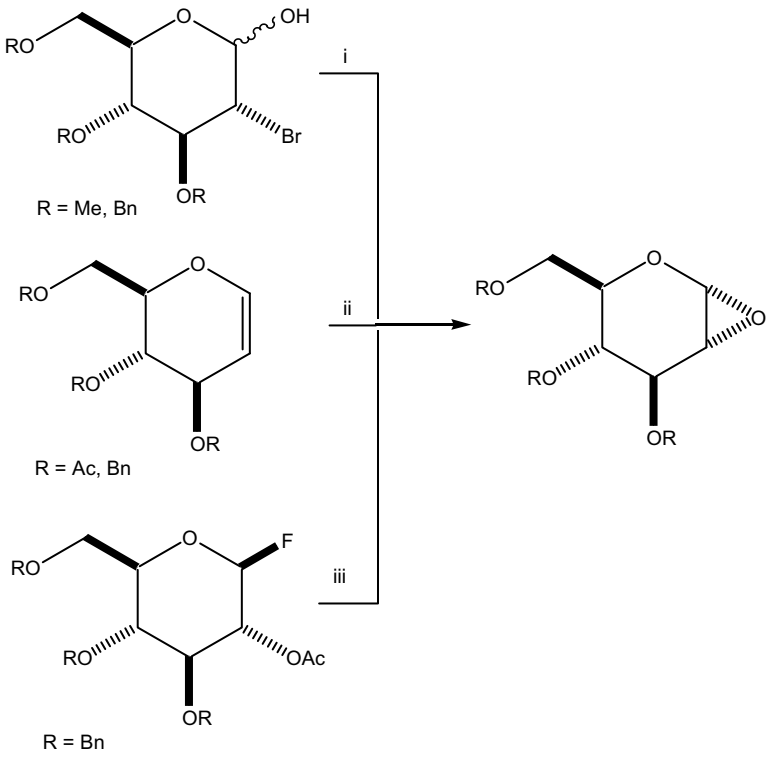
Scheme 2.92 ^{1}H NMR spectra of 1,2-anhydro-3,4-di-*O*-benzyl-α-D-fucopyranose (and traces of acetone)



Scheme 2.93 Ring opening for β-glycoside formation

procedures was followed by oxirane formation with dimethyl dioxirane to generate the corresponding oxirane. Methanolysis ring opening and gluco → manno conversion generated the disaccharide intermediate. This was coupled to the mannobiose donor to produce the tetrasaccharide, which after deprotecction lead to the tetrasaccharide Cap domain (Scheme 2.96).

Brigl's epoxide has been exploited successfully for the preparation of glycosylated peptides such as collagen type II derived glycosides carrying β-Gal and αGlc-1,2-βGal side chains [107]. Galactosyl glycal is reacted with DMDO-acetone solution and the resulting epoxide reacted with hydroxylysine and $ZnCl_2$ as promoter (Scheme 2.97). General procedures for preparation of glycosidic bond of glycopeptides can be reviewed in the comprehensive study reported by Kunz [108].



i) KH or, KHMDS, 18-crown-6, -70°C. ii) MCPBA-KF, CH_2Cl_2, r.t. iii) t-BuOK, THF.

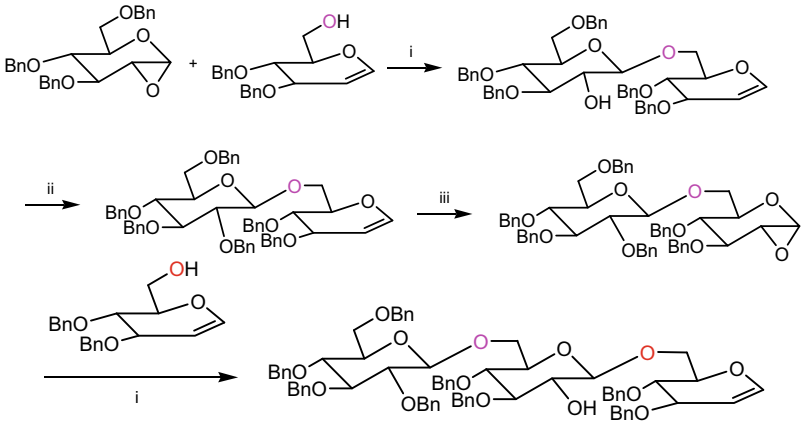
Scheme 2.94 Alternative glycal-epoxidations

A Gold (I)-catalyzed glycosidation approach was developed by reaction of anhydro glycals with protected sugar acceptors or cholesterol, using as promoter $Ph_3PAuNTf_2$ producing the glycosylation product as a mixture of anomers in moderate to good yields (Scheme 2.98) [109].

Glycals can lead to 2-deoxi O-glycosides by treatment of protected D-glucal and D-galactal with the alcohol in the presence of trimethylsilyl iodide and triphenylphosphine to produce the O-glycoside favoring the α-selectivity (Scheme 2.99) [110].

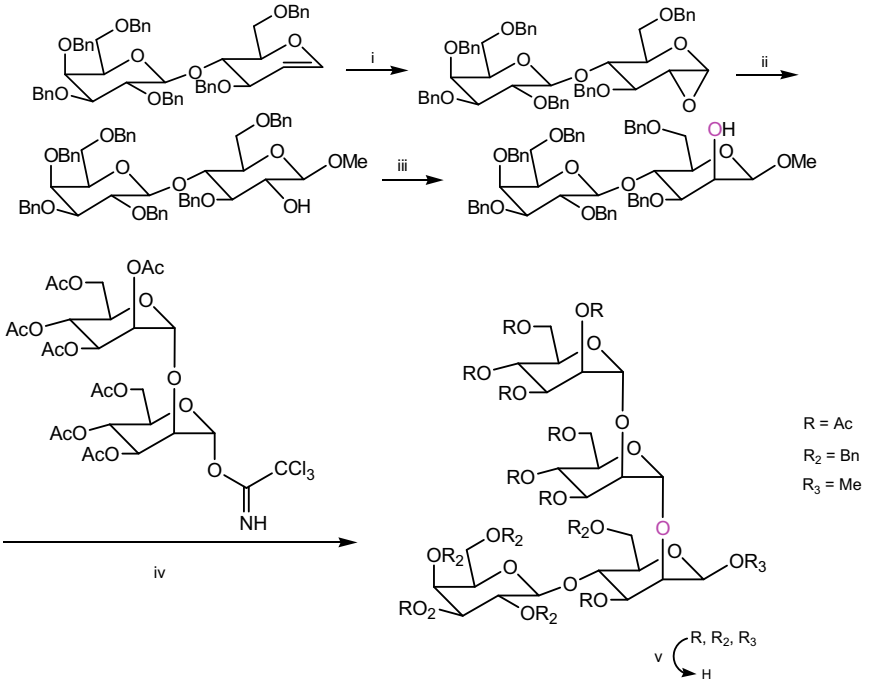
Likewise the preparation of of unsaturated O- and S-glycosides can be accomplished properly by glycosidic reaction of glycal triacetate with alcohol or thiol under erbium triflate-catalysis, observing that in dry CH_3NO_2 during 2 h the higher yields of the Ferrier product (90%) mainly as the α-isomer (Scheme 2.100) [111].

This methodology has been extended for the preparation of E-selectin ligand tetrasaccharide sialyl Lewis^x (SLe^x), which is located at the terminus of glycolipids present on the surface of neutrophils. The chemoenzymatic sequence consisted in the reaction of the 6-acetylated glucal with β-galactosidase transferase to produce



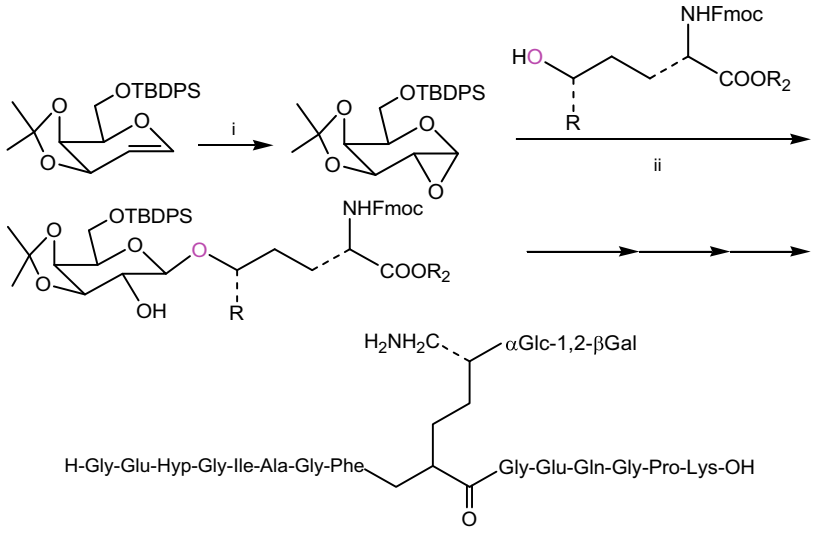
i) $ZnCl_2$/THF, -78°C to r.t. ii) NaH, BnBr. iii) DMDO-acetone.

Scheme 2.95 Epoxide glycal as glycosil donors

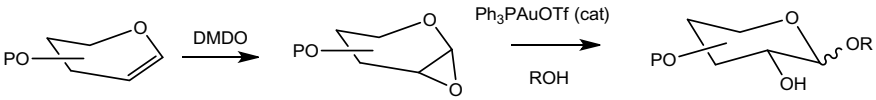


i) DMDO, CH_2Cl_2, 0°C, 2h. ii) MeOH, rt, 4h. iii) a)$(COCl)_2$, DMSO, CH_2Cl_2, -78°C.b) $NaBH_4$, rt, 4h.
iv) TMSOTf, CH_2Cl_2, -30°C, 45 min. v)a) $Pd(OH)_2$, H_2, 4h. b) NaOMe, MeOH. c) Ac_2O/AcOH/H_2SO_4.

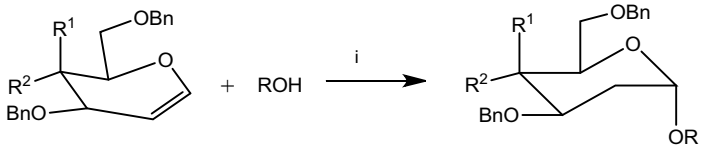
Scheme 2.96 Synthesis of a tetrasacharide using an epoxide disaccacharide as glycosyl donor



Scheme 2.97 Amino acids glycosidation



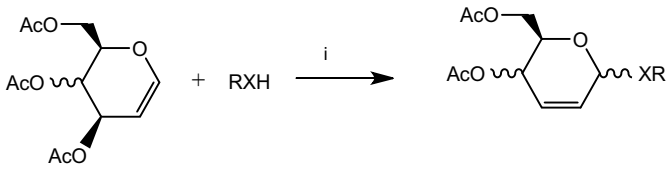
Scheme 2.98 O-glycosylation from anhydro glycals promoted by gold complex



Scheme 2.99 Preparation of 2-deoxi O-glycosides from glycals promoted by TMSI-PPh_3

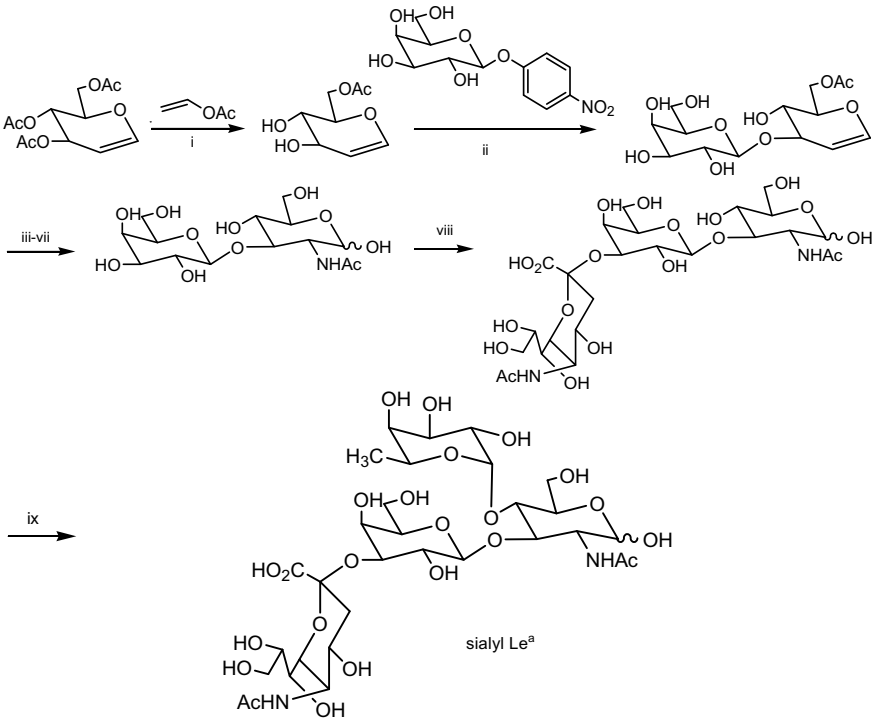
disaccharide which was subjected to further transformations according to the pathway presented in Scheme 2.54 (Scheme 2.101) [112].

A regio- and 1,2-cis-stereoselective S_N1-type glycosylation consisting in the coupling reaction between 3,4,6-tri-O-benzyl-1,2-anhydroglucose as the glycosyl



R = alkyl, aryl; X = O, S
i) $Er(OTf)_3$, dry CH_3NO_2, 2h

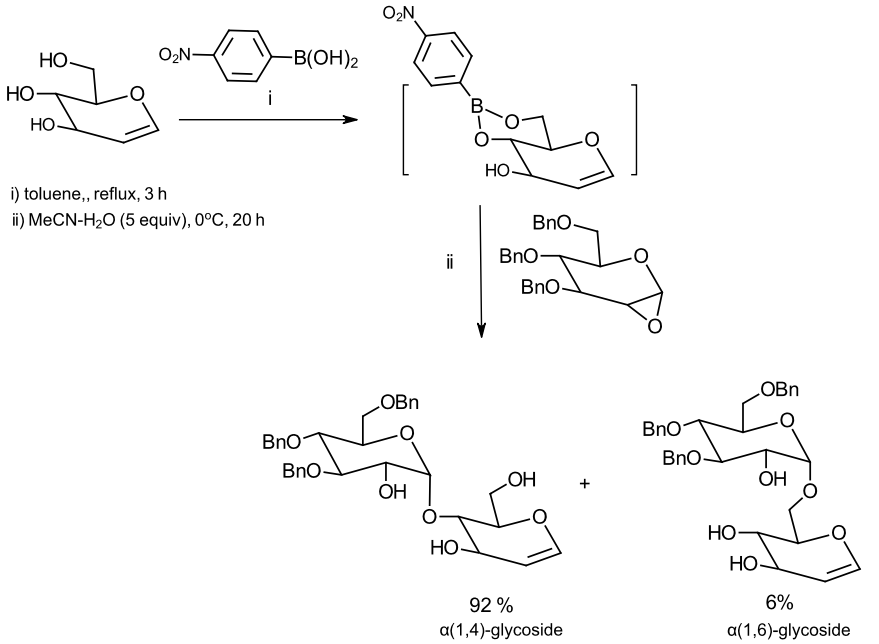
Scheme 2.100 Preparation of of unsaturated O- and S-glycosides under erbium triflate-catalysis



i) subtilisin, DMF. ii) β-galactosidase. iii) Ac_2O. iv) NaN_3, CAN. v) H_2 cat. vi) Ac_2O.
vii) saponification. viii) α2-3SiaT, CMP-NeuAc. ix) α1-3/4 FucT, GDP-Fuc.

Scheme 2.101 Chemoenzymatic synthesis of tetrasaccharide sialyl Le^a

donor and unprotected glycosyl acceptor under *p*-nitrophenylboronic acid catalysis was described. The reaction afforded α(1,4)-disaccharide over the α(1,6)-disaccharide, observing a notable increase in yield up to 92% when *p*-nitrophenylboronic acid is in the presence of 5 equivalents of water (Scheme 2.102) [113].



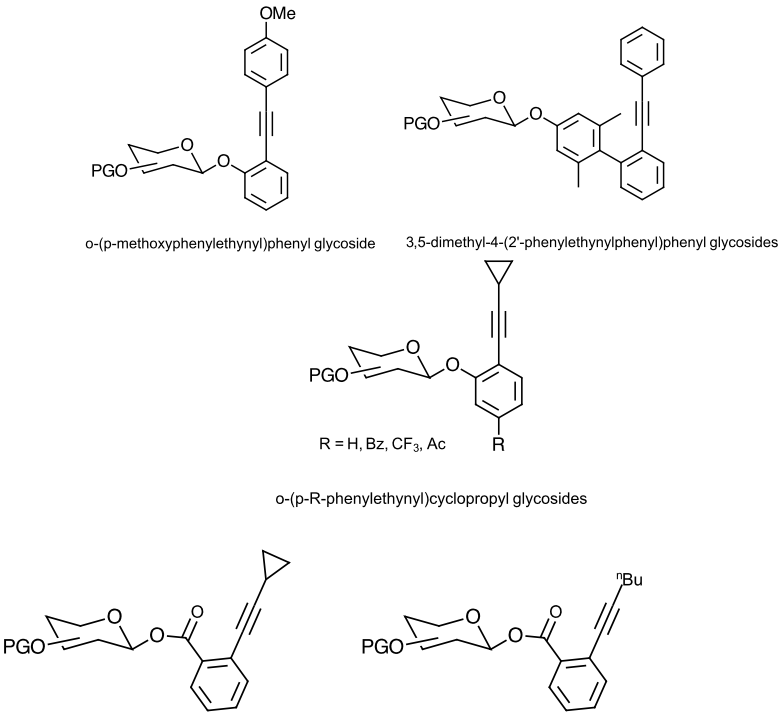
Scheme 2.102 Regio- and stereoselective α(1,4)- and α(1,6)-disaccharide formation under *p*-nitrophenylboronic acid catalysis

2.1.11 Phenyl Alkynyl Donors

A relatively new generation of glycosyl donors named phenyl alkynyl donors because they have as a common feature the presence of a triple bond attached to a phenyl group, and are subdivided in ester and phenol depending on the functionality linked to the anomeric position, emerge as strong alternatives for preparing simple and complex O- and N-glycosides (see also N-glycosides section). Some of the phenyl alkynyl glycoside donors described are shown in Scheme 2.103.

The synthesis of disaccharides, cholesterol, and 1-adamantanol O-glycosides were effectively prepared through the alkynyl phenyl glycosyl donor approach, in combination with suitable acceptors. The best conditions found were the combination of NIS/TMSOTf providing the mentioned O-glycosides with β-stereoselectivity in almost quantitative yield (Scheme 2.104a). Moreover, on this approach it was possible to synthesize a trisaccharide using the latent-active strategy consisting in the employment of trisaccharide latent donor, being further converted to the o-(p-methoxyphenylethynyl)phenyl donor under the Sonogashira conditions (Scheme 2.104b) [114].

An alternative method for preparing O- and N-glycosides relies in the use of 3,5-dimethyl-4-(2′-phenylethynylphenyl)phenyl (EPP) glycosyl donor with hindered



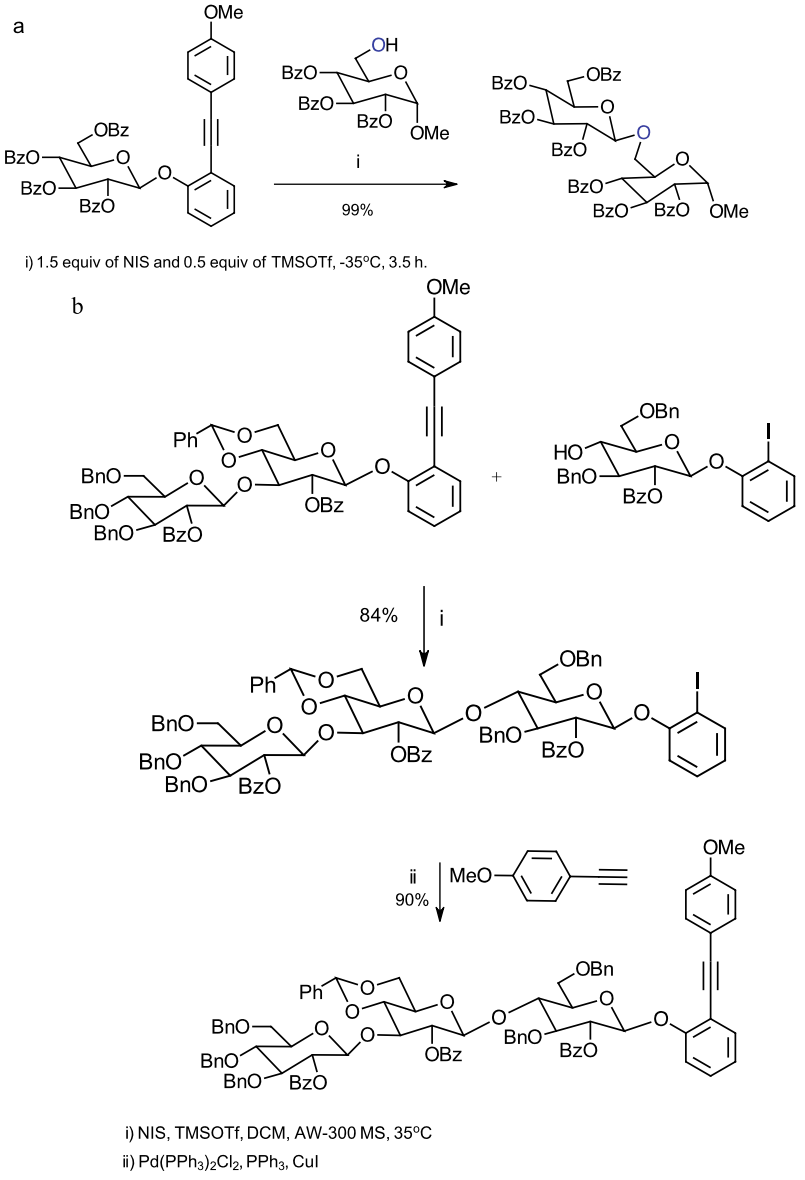
Scheme 2.103 The common phenyl alkynyl donors

acceptor under NIS/TMSOTf promoter conditions yielding an array of glycosides in good yields preferentially with β-stereoselectivity (Scheme 2.105) [115].

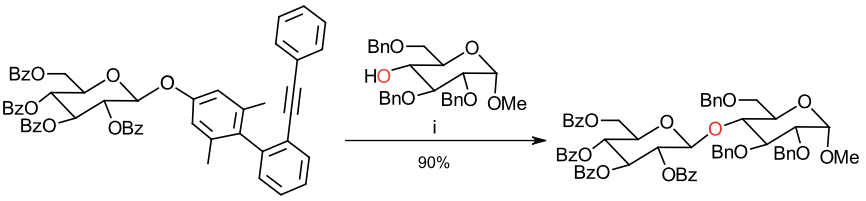
On the other hand, orthohexynylbenzoate donors consolidates as suitable alternatives for preparing *O*- and *N*-glycosides (see also N-glycosides section) although the promoter used for the benzoate leaving group variant is triphenylphosphine Gold(I) trifluoromethanesulfonate (PPh_3AuOTf).

An example about the operability of this method is described in the synthesis of 3-Deoxy-D-manno-oct-2-ulsonic acid (Kdo), a key component located at the surface of bacteria, being attached with cholesterol, aliphatic, and adamantyl alcohols, to generate the corresponding O-glycosides, following the optimized conditions described in Scheme 2.106) [116].

An orthogonal one-pot reaction strategy was proposed for preparing oligosaccharides adopting the *ortho*-alkynylbenzoates donor-PPh_3AuOTf activation protocol. The sequential and selective activation of different leaving groups was applied sequentially, being in first place a glycosyl imidate donor, followed by alkynylbenzoates acceptor (OH at C-3), next, an acceptor holding an pentenyl group at the anomeric position (disarmed n-Pen) was used for the second coupling reaction. The last step leading to the preparation of phytoalexin motif hexasaccharide



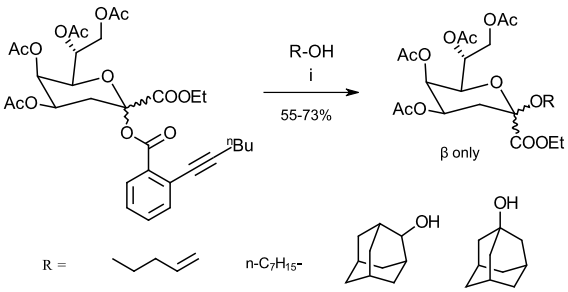
Scheme 2.104 **a** Synthesis of β-1 → 6 O-disaccharide and **b** trisaccharide glycoside donorthrough the latent-active strategy



i) NIS (1.5 eq), TMSOTf (0.3 eq), CH_2Cl_2, 0°C-rt.

Scheme 2.105 O-glycosylation method using 3,5-dimethyl-4-(2′-phenylethynylphenyl)phenyl (EPP) glycosyl donor

Scheme 2.106 Synthesis of Kdo glycosides by using orthohexynylbenzoate donors and PPh_3AuOTf as catalyst

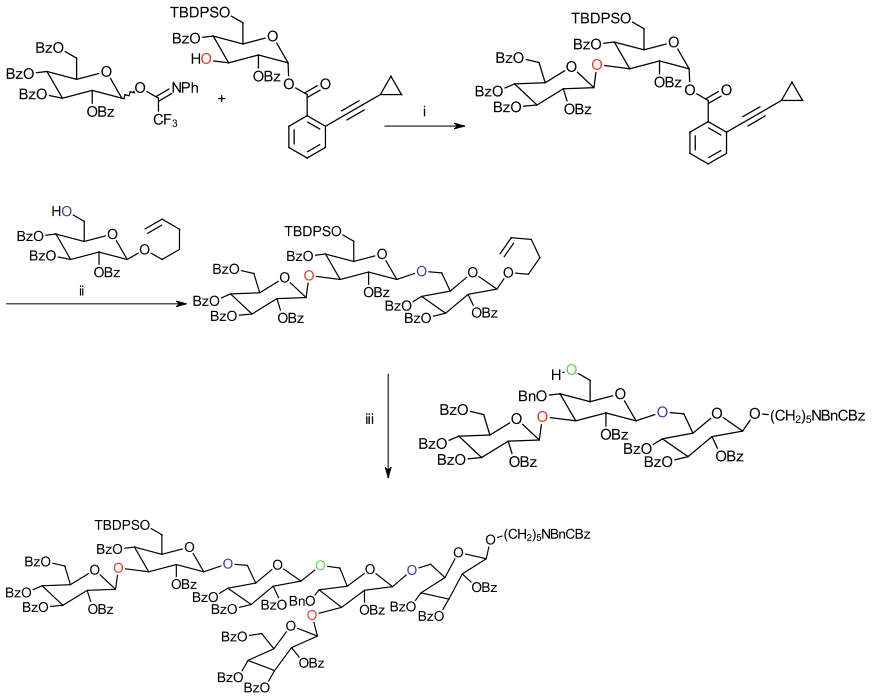


i) PPh_3AuOTf (0.4 eq), 4 Å MS, CH_2Cl_2, -40°C

was conducted between the resulting pentenyl trisaccharide donor with trisaccharide acceptor to yield the target oligosaccharide in 67% yield (Scheme 2.107) [117].

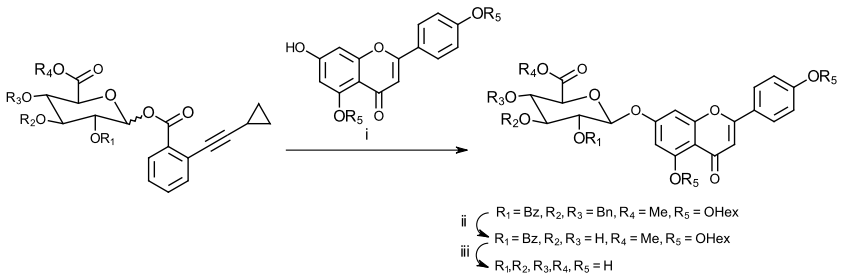
Natural products Scutellarin and Apigenin 7-O-β-D-glucuronides having attributed benefits on cerebrovascular, neuroprotection, thrombosis, and other alterations, were synthesized employing glucuronyl o-alkynylbenzote donor with flavonoid acceptor in the presence of two equivalents of $Ph_3PAuNTf_2$ catalyst in good yields (Scheme 2.108) [118].

The synthesis of a β-(1,3)-glucan hexadecasaccharide was completed by following a convergent strategy in which *ortho*hexynylbenzoate glycosyl donor was condensed with disarmed thioglycoside acceptor, using PPh_3AuOTf (0.2 eq.) catalyst as glycosylation promoter. The resulting protected disaccharide thioglycoside was used as common starting material to generate the *ortho*hexynylbenzoate glycosyl donor and also to prepare the disarmed disaccharide thioglycoside which under glod(I) catalyst produce tetrasaccharide thioglycoside in good yield. The process was repeated until the target β-(1,3)-glucan hexadecasaccharide was completed (Scheme 2.109) [119].



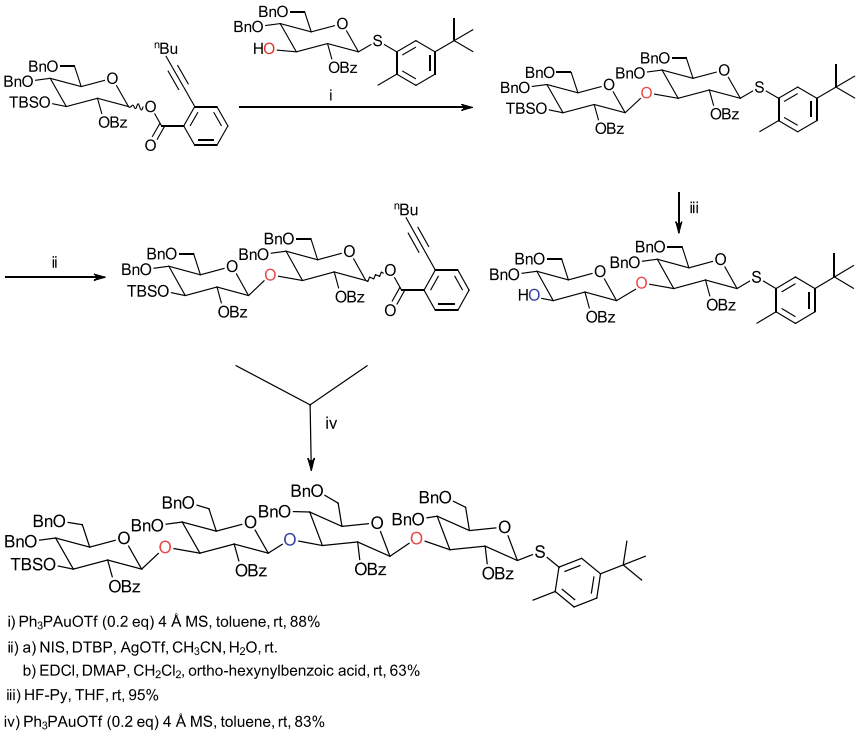
i) TMSOTf, 0°C, 2h. ii) PPh_3AuOTf, 3h, rt. iii) NIS/TMSOTf, 0°C, 3h.

Scheme 2.107 Sequential one-pot reaction for preparing oligosaccharides involving the *ortho*-alkynylbenzoates donor-PPh_3AuOTf activation protocol



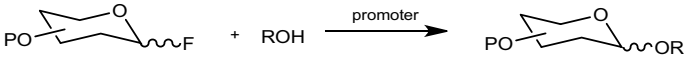
i) PPh_3AuNTf (0.3 eq), AW-300 MS, DCM, 40°C, 82%
ii) Pd/C, H_2, rt, 78%
iii) 10% LiOH, THF, -7$_5$C, 72%

Scheme 2.108 Synthesis of natural products Scutellarin and Apigenin 7-O-β-D-glucuronides under glycosyl alkynylbenzote donor approach



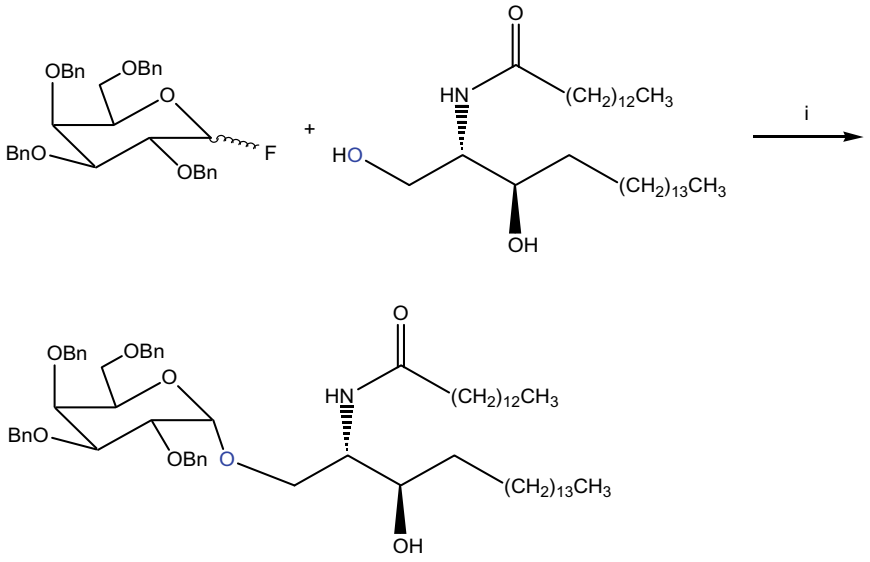
Scheme 2.109 Convergent strategy for the synthesis of a β-(1,3)-glucan hexadecasaccharide involving *ortho*hexynylbenzoate glycosyl donor

2.1.12 *Fluorine Reaction*



Promoter	Conditions
$SnCl_2$-$AgClO_4$	Et_2O, -15 → r.t
Cp_2HfCl_2-AgOTf	CH_2Cl_2, -25 °C
$SnCl_2$-AgOTf	CH_2Cl_2, 0 °C

Fluorine is considered a poor leaving group, and its use for glycoside bond formation has been more restricted than chlorine and bromine, although display higher thermal and chemical stability. Nonetheless several *O*-glycoside syntheses involving glycosyl donors with fluorine as leaving group has been described, especially for the preparation of α-*O*-glycosides with high stereoselectivity [120].



i) $SnCl_2$, $AgClO_4$/THF. ii) H_2, Pd-$BaSO_4$/THF.

Scheme 2.110 Fluorine monosaccharide as glycosyl donor

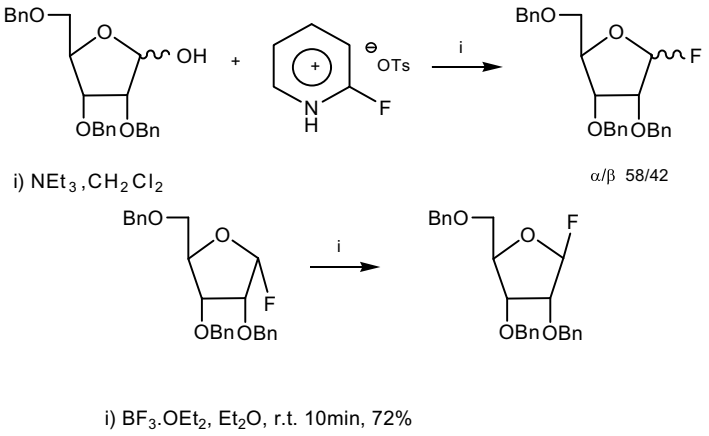
Based in the use of fluorine glycosyl donors, the synthesis of the marine algae α-agelaspines, was carried out through the condensation of perbenzylated galactopyranosyl fluorine as anomeric mixture with the long chain alcohol in the presence of a mixture of $SnCl_2$–$AgClO_4$ as catalyst (Scheme 2.110) [121].

A general procedure for the preparation of ribofuranosyl fluorides and their use as glycosyl donors for *O*-glycosylation with α-stereocontrol was developed by Mukaiyama et al. [122], and consist in the conversion of 2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-D-ribofuranoside that react under mild conditions with 2-fluoro-1-methylpyridinium tosylate at room temperature to give an anomeric mixture (α:β 58:42) in 84% yield. These two fluorines could be either separate or interconverted by treating the α-anomer with boron trifluoride etherate in ether at room temperature (Scheme 2.111).

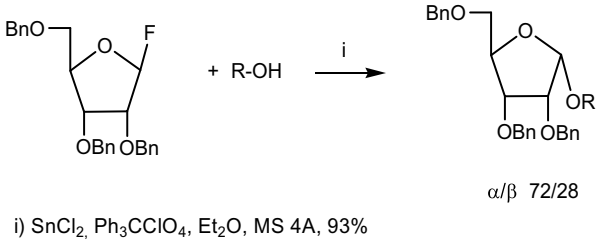
It has been observed that the glycosylation reaction between the glycosyl fluorine with different alcohols under Lewis acid conditions provides mainly α-riboglucosides in high yield as it is shown in Scheme 2.112.

Sulfated Le^x and Le^a-type oligosaccharide selectin ligands were synthetically prepared as described below. Thus, glycosyl donor and acceptor were condensed under Mukaiyama conditions ($AgClO_4$–$SnCl_2$) to form the β-glycoside in 90% yield. The sulphated tetrasaccharide was formed by reaction of tetrasaccharide acceptor with $SO_3.NM_3$ complex in anhydrous pyridine (Scheme 2.113) [123].

Another strategy for preparing O-glycosides using glycoyl fluorides as donors has been implemented under the concept of fluoride migration catalysis. The approach



Scheme 2.111 The Mukaiyama protocol for preparation of ribofuranosyl fluoride

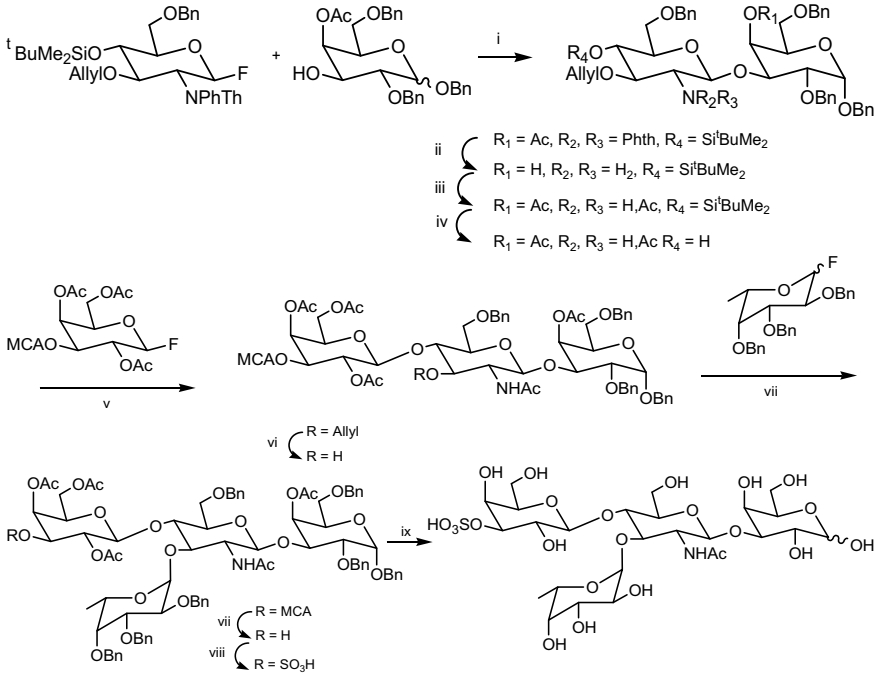


Scheme 2.112 N-glycosylation reaction using ribofuranosyl fluorine

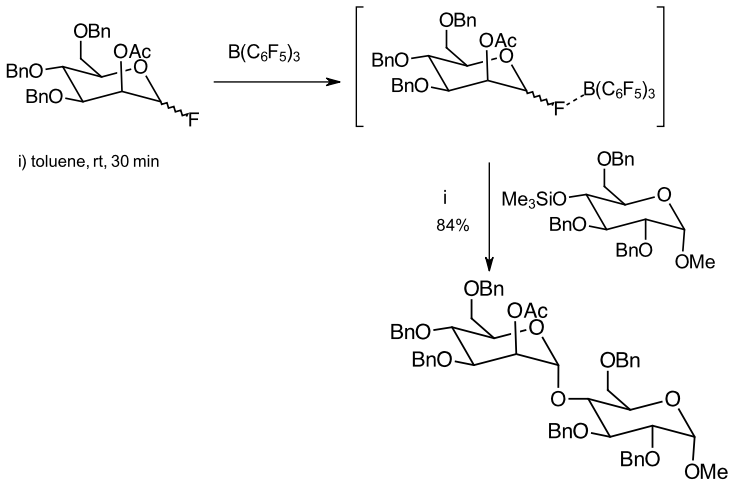
implies the use of glycosyl fluorine donor, activated with tris (pentafluorophenyl) borane ($B(C_6F_5)_3$) and then coupled to a variety of silyl ether glycosyl acceptors, providing disaccharides with high stereoselectivily in good yields (Scheme 2.114) [124].

Lipophosphonoxins (LPPO) are defined as naturally occurring N-nucleosides containing 6′-N-alkyl-5′-β-O-aminoribosyl glycyluridine frame with outstanding antimicrobial activity. The ribosyl 5th position shows a highly functionalized side chain characterized by the presence of aliphatic long chain, amino groups and as a common feature the presence of a second ribosyl moiety. This particularity is observed in caprazamycin, liposidomycin and muraymycin antibiotics (Scheme 2.115) isolated from Actinomycete strain *Streptomyces* sp. displaying a wide bactericidal activity including to and multi-drug-resistant strains [125].

The attachment of 5′-β-O-aminoribosyl moiety present as a common feature to the uridine fragment has been achieved by using three different donors: the trichloroacetimidate, sulfoxide and ribosyl fluoride donor with protected uridine acceptor under Lewis acid conditions, obtaining the desired N-nucleoside as a mixture of anomers (Scheme 2.116) [126].

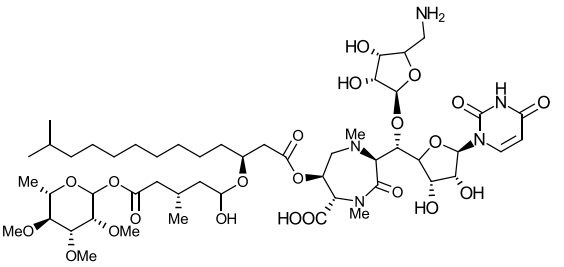


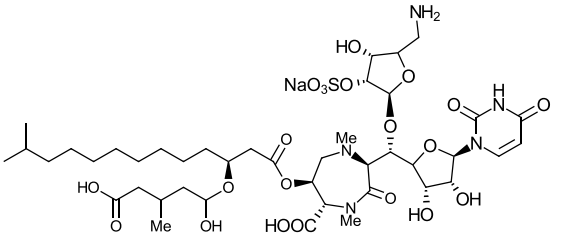
Scheme 2.113 Total synthesis of sulphated Le^x

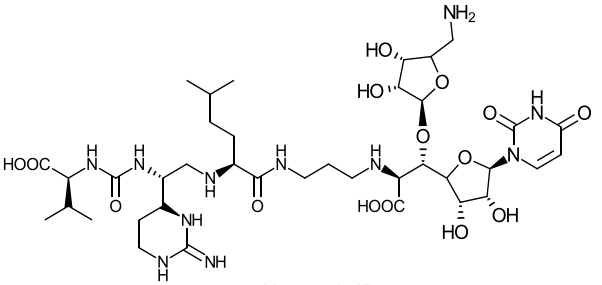


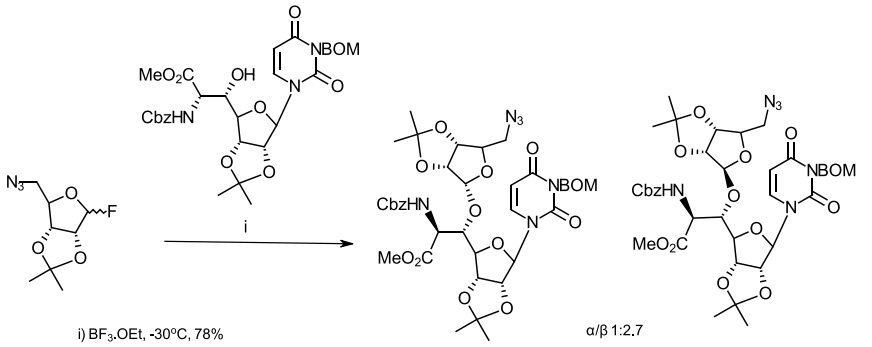
Scheme 2.114 Synthesis of O-glycosides using glycosyl fluorides and silyl glycosyl acceptors, using $B(C_6F_5)_3$ as fluoride migration catalyst

Scheme 2.115 Chemical structure of Lipophosphonoxinscaprazamycin, liposidomycin and muraymycin antibiotics





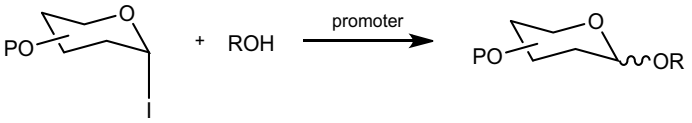




Scheme 2.116 5′-α/β-O-ribosylation of protected uridine acceptor under using ribosyl fluoride donor

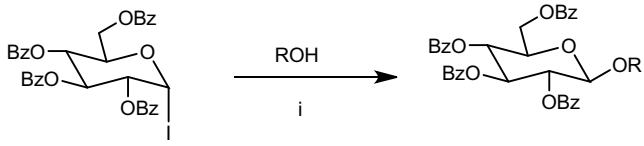
Since the Mukaiyama's original work for introducing glycosyl fluorides as glycosyl donors, different procedures appeared, introducing a collection of catalyst and conditions for preparing a wide range of oligosaccharides with great potential and applicability [127].

2.1.13 Iodine Reaction



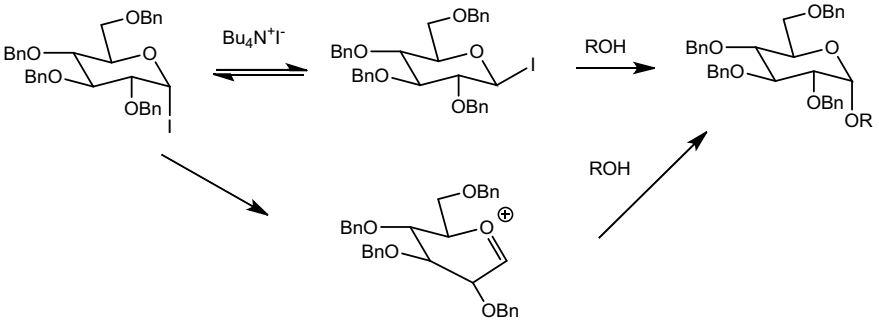
Promoter	Conditions
NBS (1.2), TMSOTf (0.4), TMU (0.2)	5 °C to rt, 4 h
$ZnCl_2$ (1.4)	rt, 12 h
NBS (1.2), $Cu(OTf)_2$ (0.12)	5 °C to rt, 28 h
Bu_4NI	DIPEA PhH, 4 Å MS
NIS, I_2, TMSOTf	3ÅMS, DCE

Glycosyl iodides have been increasingly adopted as glycosyl donorsfor the synthesis of O-, S, and C glycosides, on one side because of the the introduction of suitable reagents for iodination such as iodotrimethylsilane (Me_3SiI), and hexamethyldisilane (HMDS) with molecular iodine, and on the other because of the feasibility for generating either α and β glycosides (Scheme 2.117) [128].



i) NBS with ZnI_2 (cat)

Scheme 2.117 O-glycosylation from proteceted glycosyl iodides under NBS–ZnI_2 conditions

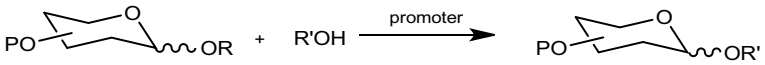


Scheme 2.118 Schematic representation of α-glycosylation stereocontrol involving glycosyl iodides

In general the stereocontrol on glycosylations depends on a combination of factors mainly the protecting group at C-2 position, the nature of the leaving group and the promoter conditions. It is well accepted that there are two possible mechanism S_N1-like and S_N2-like which define the final α/β ratio or the major anomer produced. Usually the intermediate oxacarbenium ion has poor stereochemical control, because it can be attacked from both the α- and β-side while in the S_N2-type the protected glycosyl donor is activated by an electrophile and the leaving group is displaced by the nucleophile being in this case the sugar acceptor or any other aglycone (Scheme 2.118) [129–131].

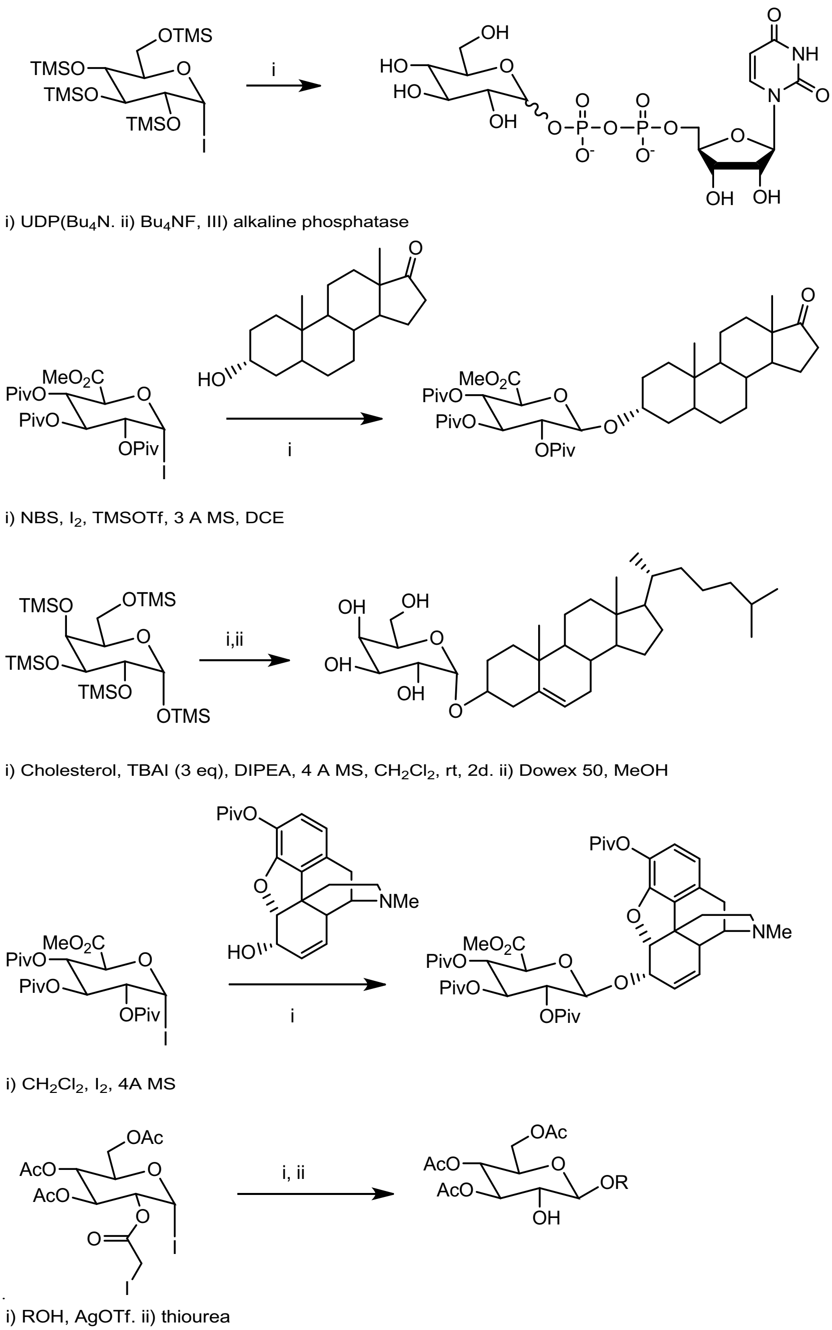
The nature of the aglycones linked to glycosyl iodide donors are diverse and among them morphine, uridine diphosphate, and steroidal alcohols have been glycosylated with promoters such as and Bu_4NF, NBS-I_2-TMSOTf (Scheme 2.119) [132–136].

2.1.14 Silyl Reaction

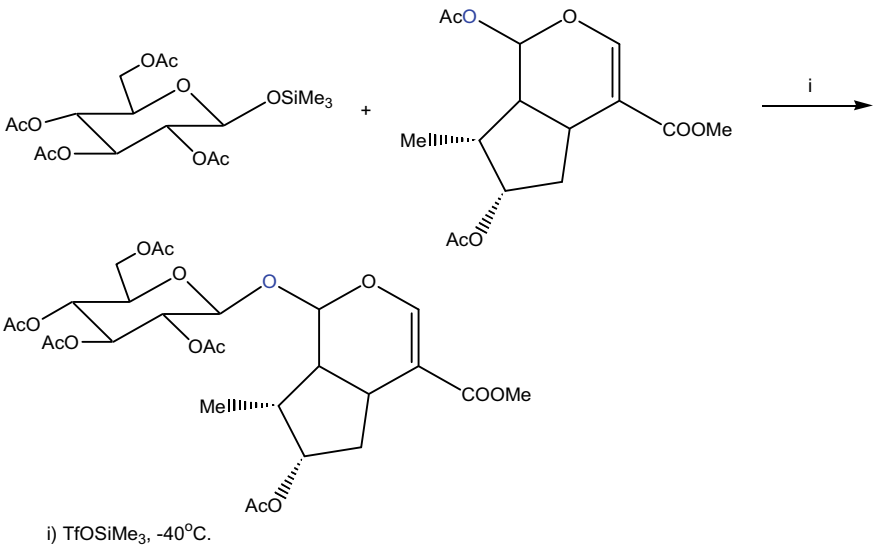


R	Promoter	Conditions
Me_3 Si	TMSOTf or $BF_3.Et_2O$	CH_2Cl_2, − 5 °C
^{t}BuMe$_2$Si	TMSOTf	CH_2Cl_2-acetone, − 35 °C

Silyl groups are best known as versatile protecting groups, and their use as leaving groups for glycoside bond formation has been more limited. An example of glycoside formation involving a silyl group as leaving group is reported for the preparation



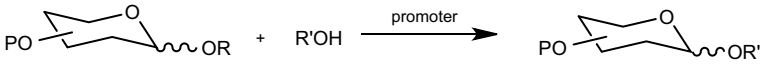
Scheme 2.119 Example of O-glycosylations from glycosyl iodides in the presence of different promoters



Scheme 2.120 Silyl derivatives as glycosyl donors

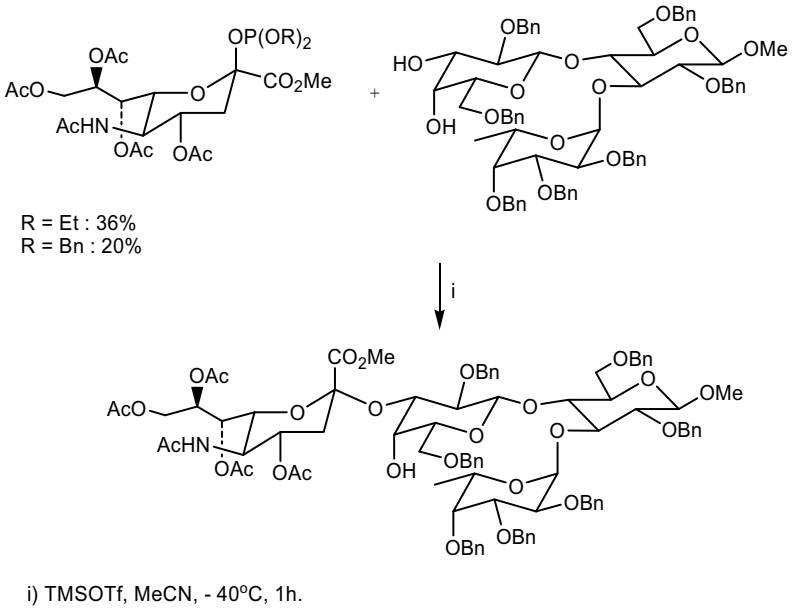
of luganol *O*-glycoside [137]. In this work, the glycosyl donor is combined with luganine in the presence of trimethylsilyltriflate at low temperature (Scheme 2.120). It is worth mentioning that stereoselectivity is dependent on C-2 neighboring group participation. When acetate is the C-2 protecting group, the β-anomer is obtained, while if the protecting group is benzyl, the α-anomer is preferred.

2.1.15 Phosphate Reaction



R	Promoter	Conditions
$P(=O)(OPh)_2$	TMSOTf	CH_2Cl_2, − 5 °C
$P(=S)(Me)_2$	$TrClO_4$	
$P(=O)(NMe_2)_2$	TMSOTf	CH_3CN, − 40 °C
$P(=NTs)(NMe_2)_2$	BF_3-Et_2O	CH_2Cl_2

Phosphorous glycosyl donors are another option for preparing oligosaccharides. These donors have been used for the preparation of sialyl oligosaccharides however

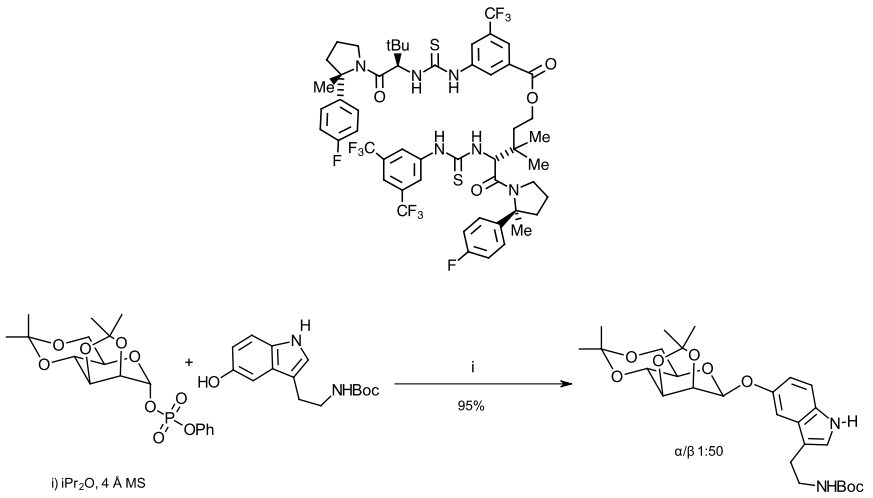


Scheme 2.121 Phosphorous glycosyl donors for oligosaccharide synthesis

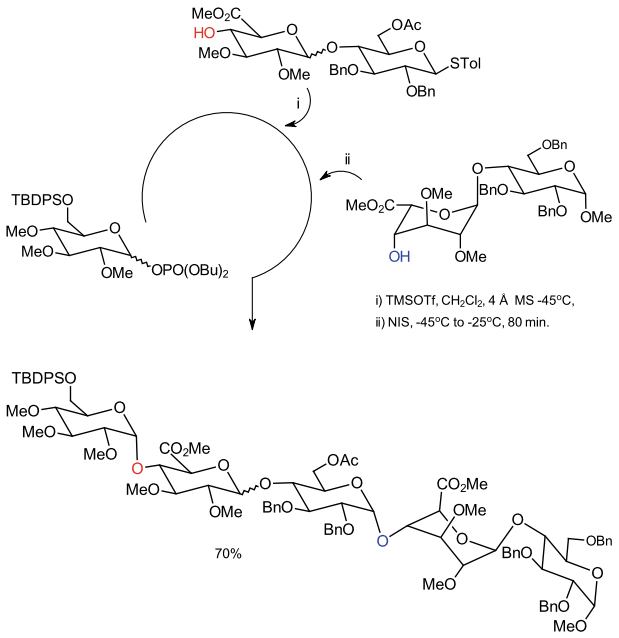
the yield reported were moderate. This is the case of the preparation of sialyl tetrasaccharide derivative which was carried out by condensation between sialyl phosphite with trisaccharide acceptor under TMSOTf as catalyst (Scheme 2.121) [138, 139].

A variety of active molecules such as antipsichotic quetiapine, antiviral zidovudine, vitamin α-tocopherol, neurotransmitter serotonin, hormone estradiol, among others, have been attached to mannose in the form of 2,3-acetonide-protected glycosyl phosphate donor using Lewis acid promoter and bis-thiourea catalyst, providing the mannosyl glycosides with high stereoselectivity. As it is shown in Scheme 2.122 the Lewis acid conditions afforded the α–isomer while the bis-thiourea the β-anomer [140].

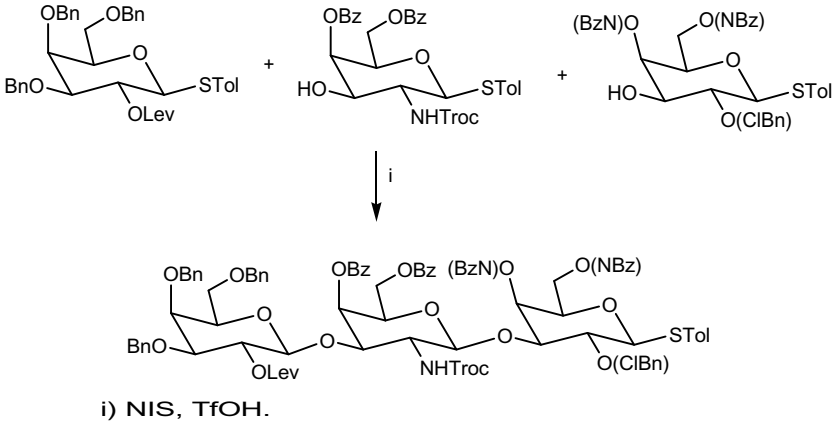
The synthesis of pentasaccharide heparin-based anticoagulant Idraparinux was accomplished in a one-pot reaction requiring three components, a protected glycosyl phosphate donor, glucuronic acid disaccharide thioglycoside acceptor and L-iduronic acid-containing disaccharide acceptor. The first coupling reaction was effected between glycosyl phosphate donor and glucuronic acid disaccharide thioglycoside acceptor using TMSOTf at − 45 °C, and then iduronic acid disaccharide acceptor was added to complete the double *O*-glycoside bond formation (Scheme 2.123) [141].



Scheme 2.122 Selective β-mannosylations and β-rhamnosylations catalyzed by bis-thiourea



Scheme 2.123 Synthesis of protected pentasaccharide heparin-based anticoagulant Idraparinux using 6-O-*tert*-butyl diphenyl silyl glycosyl phosphate donor



Scheme 2.124 One-pot reaction for two β-linkages formation

2.1.16 The Pool Strategy

This term applies to define a one-step reaction used to build up two β-linkages simultaneously from 3 sugar intermediates [142]. This approach has been described for the preparation of the glycosyl ceramide Globo H hexasaccharide identified as an antigen on prostate and brest cancer cells. The synthesis consisted in the initial synthesis of the trisaccharide building block from the one-pot reaction of the 3 suitable sugar intermediates under N-iodosuccinimide and triflic acid conditions in 67% yield (Scheme 2.124).

2.1.17 Enzymatic Approach

Enzymes in organic chemistry has become an essential tool for the synthesis of important target molecules and in many cases they are considered the first choice specially for those key steps involving stereospecifically controlled reaction conditions. In general enzymes are considered efficient catalyst which perform the desired transformation under mild conditions with high selectivity and specificity, usually avoiding epimerization, racemization and rearrangements processes. Besides there is a current need of developing economical and environmentally friendly processes for synthesis. However still some aspects needs close attention in order to fulfill thoroughly the requirements specially for high scale production. Thus, many enzymes are unstable, high cost, difficult to handle, and requires expensive cofactors.

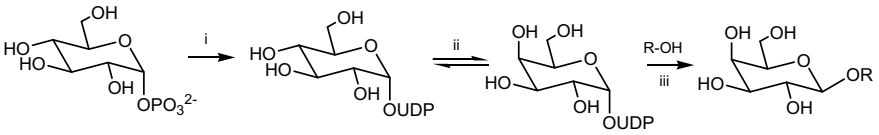
Glycosyltransferases are important enzymes involved in essential processes related to oligosaccharide biosynthesis and they have found also very useful as biocatalyst for the chemoenzymatic synthesis of interesting oligosaccharides and nucleotides [143, 144]. They have been classified as Leloir if they are involved in the

biosynthesis of most of N- and O-linked glycoproteins in mammalians, and requires mono- and diphosphates as glycosyl donors, and non-Leloir enzymes which utilize sugar phosphates as substrates.

Glycosylations with galactosyltransferases can be performed through the use of glucose-1-phosphate as donor. A general sequence consist in the conversion by using UDP-Glc pyrophosphorylase to give UDP-glucose. Epimerization with UDP-glucose epimerase afford UDP-galactose which is used for glycosylation with galactosyltransferase (Scheme 2.125) [145].

The use of phosphorylase enrzymes emerge as a potentially usefull enzymatic tool for glycosylation, and an array of these enzymes such as glucan, sucrose, glucosyl glycerol, laminaribiose nigerose and maltose phosphorylase, have been isolated and identified from different microorganism and considered for synthesis even at industrial scale synthesis [146].

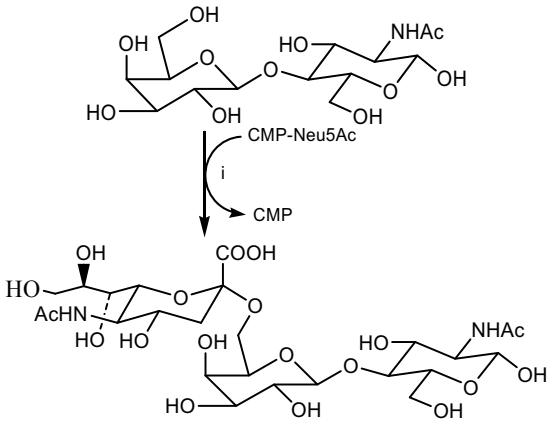
Several chemoenzymatic synthesis of α(2 → 6) and α(2 → 3)-oligosaccharides have been reported through the use of sialyltransferases for glycosidic coupling reactions. One described approach involves the in situ regeneration of CMP-Neu5Ac, requiring catalytic amount of CMP-Neu5Ac (Scheme 2.126) [147].



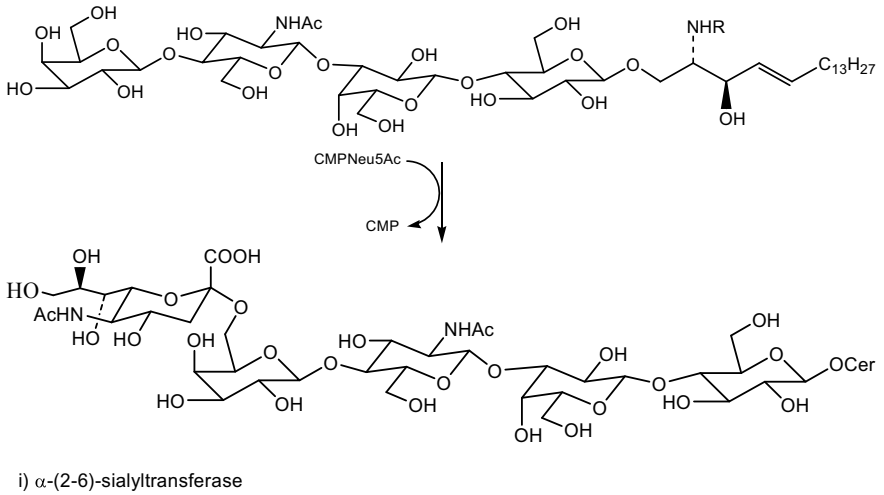
i) UTP, UDP-Glc pyrophosphorylase. ii) UDP-Glc 4-epimerase. iii) Gal transferase.

Scheme 2.125 Glycosylation with galactosyltransferases

Scheme 2.126 Synthesis of silayl trisaccharide mediated by silayl glycosiltransferase



i) α-(2-6)-sialyltransferase



Scheme 2.127 Enzymatic synthesis of ganglioside

Sialyltransferases also proved to be efficient biocatalyst in the preparation of gangliosides, being involved in (2 → 6) linkage formation between the tetrasaccharide ceramide with CMP-Neu5Ac (Scheme 2.127) [148].

The *trans*-sialidase (TcTS) from *Trypanosoma cruzi* has the ability to transfers sialic acid from an α-sialylglycoside donor to a terminal β-galactopyranosyl acceptor to form an α(2 → 3) linkage. The sialic acid donor recognized by TcTS are Neu5AcapNP, Neu5AcaMU and 3'-Sialyllactose (3'SL), and the acceptorsβ-D-Galp(1 → x)-D-Glc derivatives (Scheme 2.128) [149].

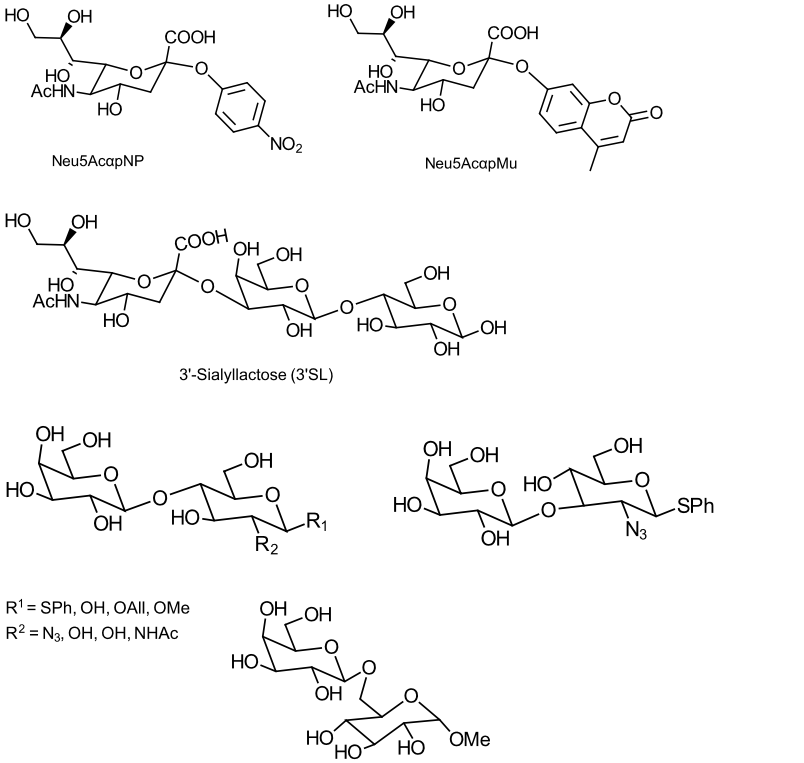
Glucosamine may be enzymatically transformed to glucosamine 6-phosphate by treatment with hexokinase from yeast, and ultimately to glucosamine 1-phosphate by the action of phosphoglucomutase (Scheme 2.129) [150].

UDP-glucuronic acid was prepared from UDP glucose by the action of UDP-Glc dehydrogenase along with NAD. This cofactor was regenerated with lactate dehydrogenase in the presence of piruvate (Scheme 2.130) [151].

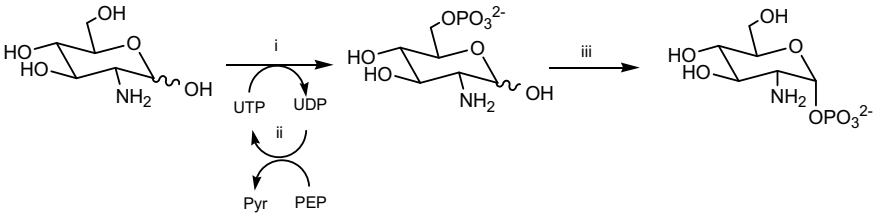
CMP-N-acetylneuraminic acid has been prepared form CTP and NeuAc under catalysis by CMP-NeuAc synthetase. In a cascade representation, it is observed that CTP is synthesized from CMP with adenylate kinase and pyruvate kinase (Scheme 2.131) [152].

Enzymatic synthesis of oligosaccharides.

Mutated glycosidase also known as glycosynthase AbgGlu358Ala in combination with activated glycosyl donors and suitable acceptors can generate synthetic oligosaccharides. Thus, for this transformation the conditions selected were α-glycosyl fluoride as glycosyl donor and p-nitrophenyl as glycosyl acceptor in the presence of ammonium bicarbonate buffer. The proposed mechanism of glycosynthase-catalyzed reaction is illustrated in Scheme 2.132 [153].



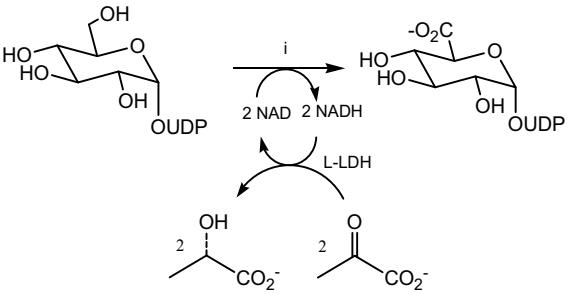
Scheme 2.128 The sialic acid donors and acceptorsused by TcTS in the synthesis of sialylated oligosaccharides

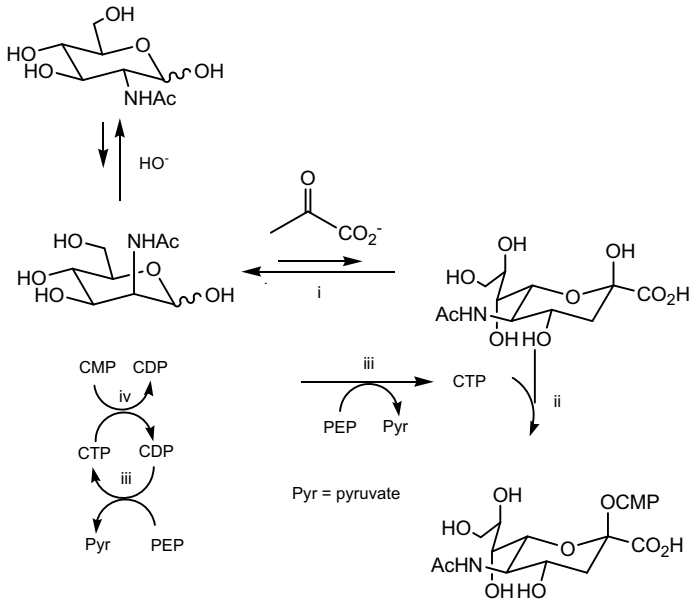


Scheme 2.129 Enzymatic preparation of glucosamine 6- and 1-phosphate

The Regioselective preparation of α-1,3 and α-1,6 disaccharides by using α-glycosidase as biocatalyst has been described. Thus, by combining *p*-nitrophenyl-α-galactose functioning as glycosyl donor, with the glycosyl acceptor methoxygalactose, the expected 1,3- and 1,6-disaccharide were obtained in the form of α- and β-anomers (Scheme 2.133) [154].

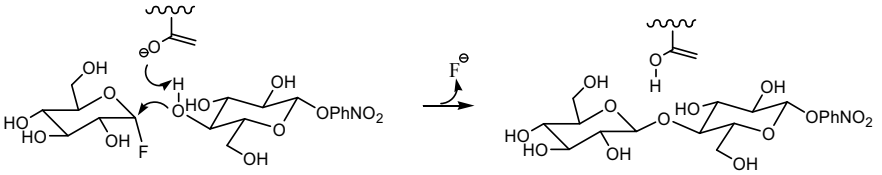
Scheme 2.130 Enzymatic preparation of UDP-glucuronide



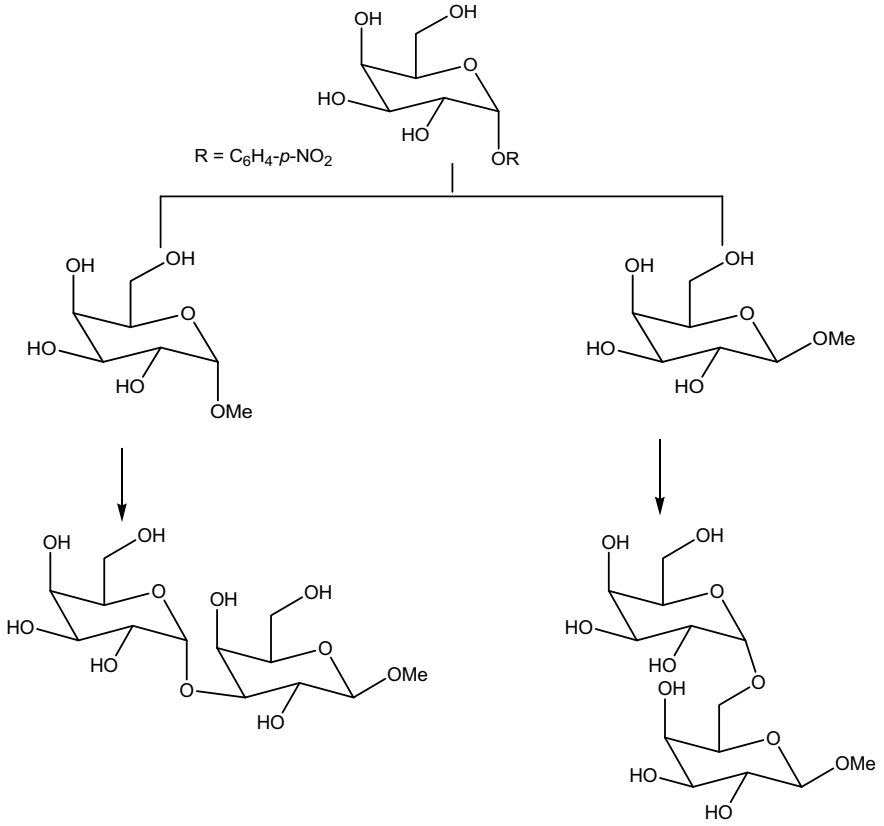


i) UDP-NeuAc aldolase. ii) CMP-NeuAc synthetase. iii) pyruvate kinase. iv) adenylate kinase.

Scheme 2.131 Synthesis of CMP-N-acetylneuraminic acid



Scheme 2.132 Glycosynthase-caralyzed oligosaccharide synthesis

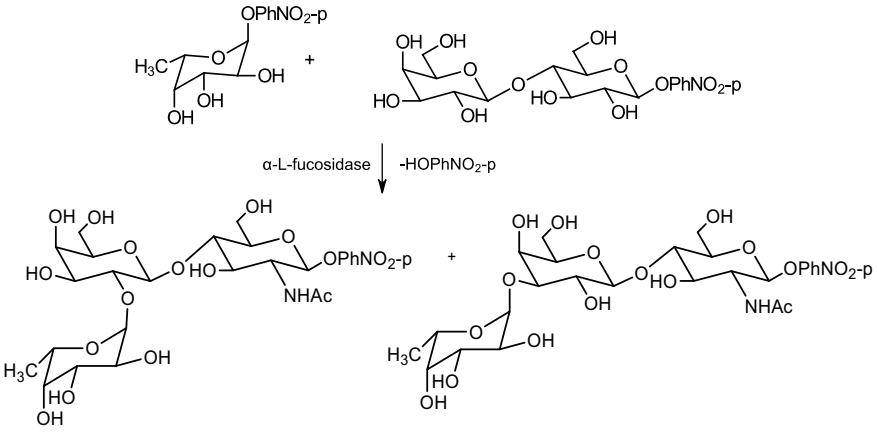


Scheme 2.133 Example of microbial catalyzed coupling reaction

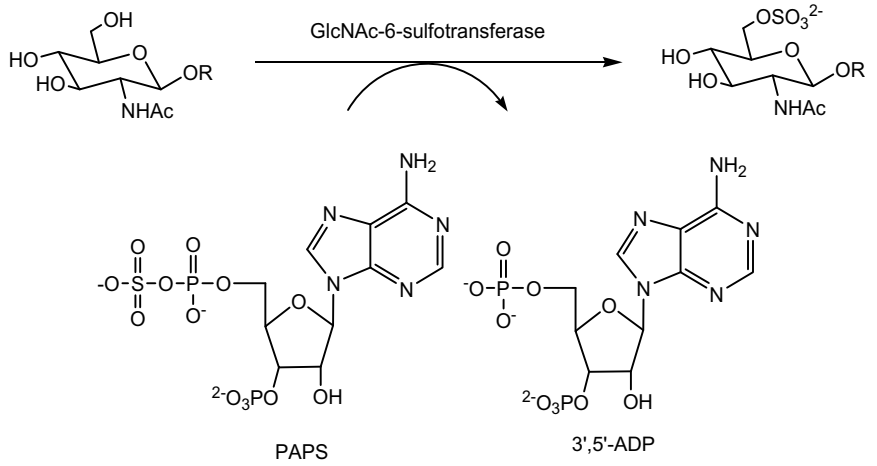
A transglycosylation reaction mediated by α-L-fucosidase from *Alcaligenes sp.* was performed by combination of p-nitrophenylglycosides donors, with different acceptors such as N-acetylglucosamine, lactose, D-GlcNAc, and D-Glc, providing the corresponding p-nitrophenyl glycosides of di- and trisaccharides containing a (1 → 2)-, (1 → 3)-, (1 → 4)-, or (1 → 6)-linked to the α-L-fucosyl group. In the general procedure illustrated in Scheme 2.75 the p-nitrophenyl fucoside donor was combined with p-nitrophenyl lactosamine acceptor, being incubated with α-L-fucosidase at 50 °C to produce the 2- and 3- linked trisaccharides (Scheme 2.134) [155].

Sulfotransferases provides a versatile method for the preparation of glycoside sulfates. A recent report describes the use of 3′-phosphoadenosine-5′-phosphosulfate (PAPS), and GlcNAc-6-sulfotransferase as catalyst (Scheme 2.135) [156].

A chemoenzymatic synthesis of rhodiooctanoside isolated from Chinese medicines was described. The synthesis was carried out by direct β-glucosidation between 1,8-octanediol and D-glucose using immobilized β-glucosidase from



Scheme 2.134 Transglycosylation reaction for the preparation of 2- and 3-linked trisaccharides

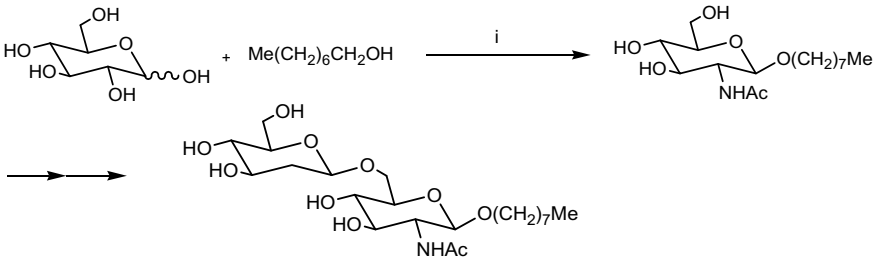


Scheme 2.135 Transfer of the sulfuryl group from PAPS to the glycoside

almonds with the synthetic propolymer ENTP-4000 to generate the glycoside in 58% yield (Scheme 2.136) [157].

Lactosamine was prepared using and enzymatic approach consisting in the preparation of UDP glucose and condensation with N-acetyl glucosamine (GlcNAc) in the presence of galactosyl transferase (Scheme 2.137) [158].

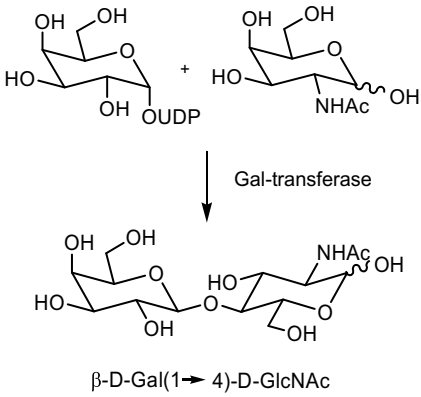
Unprotected glycosyl fluorides also have been used as donors for the enzymatic synthesis of disaccharides. For instance, glycosynthase and glycosidase mutants obtained from *Thermotoga maritima* and *Thermus thermophilus* have been used effectively for the regioselective synthesis of disaccharides (1 → 3) in higher of 80% yield (Scheme 2.138) [159].

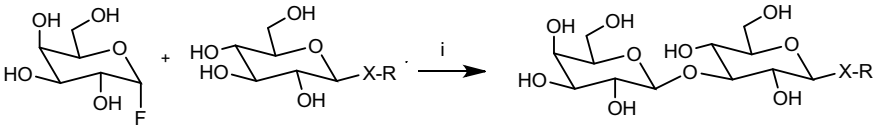


i) 「-glucosidase (250u), 50°C, H_2O.

Scheme 2.136 Chemoenzymatic synthesis of rhodiooctanoside

Scheme 2.137 Enzymatic synthesis of lactosamine





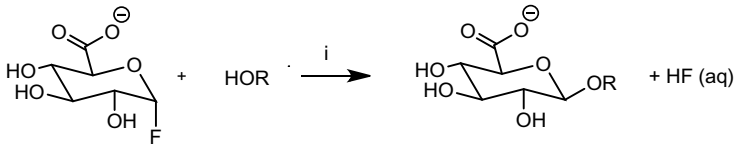
X = O, S
R = Ph-, Bn-

i) Glycosynthase E338G from *Thermus thermophilus*

Scheme 2.138 Enzymatic glycosylation from unprotected glucosyl fluorides

Another example of enzymatic glycosylation using unprotected fluorides donors was achieved by using α-D-glucuronyl fluoride with engineered *Escherichia coli* glucuronylsynthase, providing β-glucuronides in moderated to good yield depending on the alcohol acceptor employed (Scheme 2.139) [160].

A chemoenzymatic approach for the assemble of asymmetric extensions of tetra-antennary glycans from common pentasaccharide core present in



i) glucuronylsynthase phosphate buffer, pH 7.5

Scheme 2.139 Enzymatic glycosylation from unprotected glucuronosyl fluorides

all eukaryotic glycans was described. The enzymes used for the attachment of *N*-acetylneuraminic acid were α(2,3)-sialyltransferase ST3-Gal-IV, mammalian β(1,4)-galactosyltransferase (Gal-T1) for galactose, β(1,3)-*N*-acetylglucosaminyltransferase (β3-GnT-II) for *N*-acetylglucosamine, and mammalian α(1,2)-fucosyltransferase (Fut-I) for fucose. Also the use of α-galactosidase and β-mannosidase were successfully used to cut at terminal positions (Scheme 2.140) [161].

2.1.18 The Solid Phase Methodology

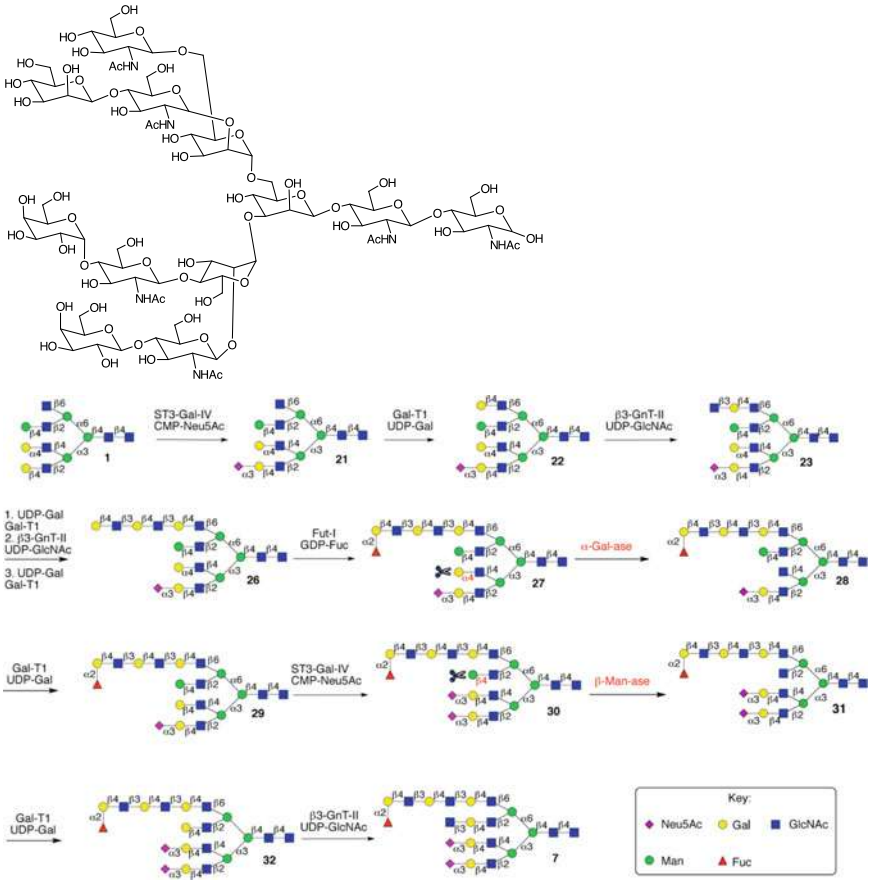
Perhaps what remains as the most challenging task for sugar chemistry is the synthesis of complex oligosaccharides such as those found in bacterial membranes or wall cells, and are usually in the form of glycopeptides. Different types of monosaccharides can be present as constitutive parts such as glucose, galactose, mannose, N-acetylglucosamine, silaic acid and L-fucose. Also, the order of linkage and stereoselectivity between them is rarely conserved.

The different nature, stereoselectivity and linkage sequence have been a formidable obstacle for the development of general procedures of the type used for peptides and oligonucleotides which can be prepared on machine synthesizers with high efficiency.

The main advantage of the solid phase methodology is the coupling of sugar units to the resin, which allows easy washing away of the non reacted reagents, avoiding tedious purifications steps.

Nonetheless despite the difficulties, interesting progress has been made for preparing oligosaccharides [162], and glycopeptides [163], suggesting that in the solid phase technology for complex sugars will be affordable.

The solid phase approach involves three elements namely the glycosyl donor, glycosyl acceptor and the resin which is properly activated with a group susceptible for attachment either with the glycosyl donor or acceptor depending on the strategy of choice. Although it appears obvious, it is important to remain that the linkage between the resin an the sugar should be easily cleaved under compatible conditions for the glycoside bond.

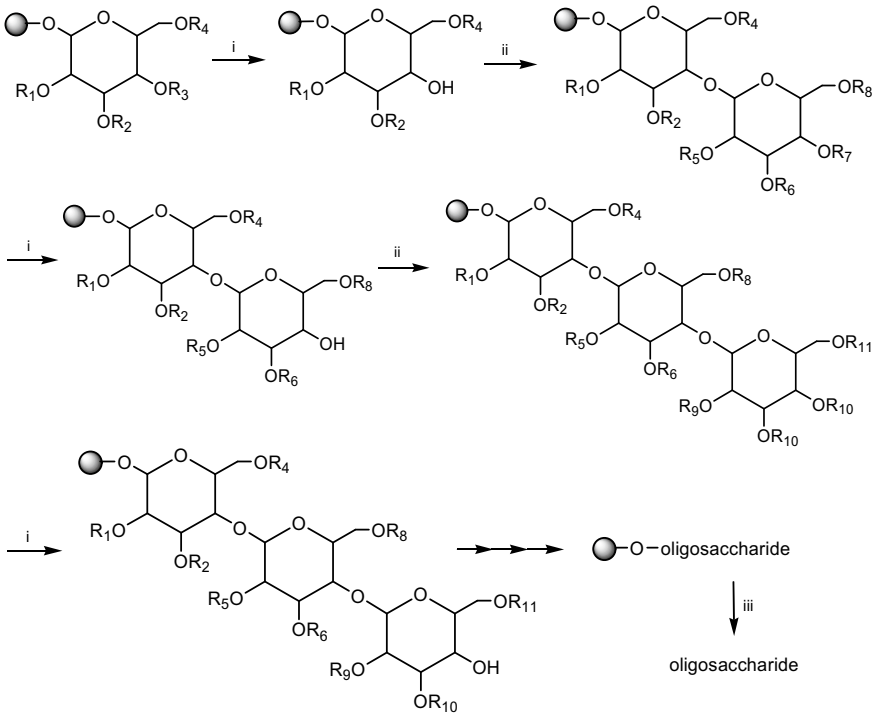


Scheme 2.140 Chemoenzymatic approach for the assemble of asymmetric extensions of tetra-antennary glycans from common pentasaccharide

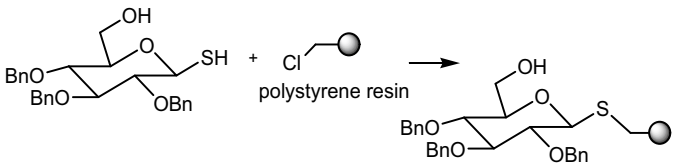
According to a comprehensive review [164], the synthetic strategies are classified by: (a) Donor-bound, (b) Acceptor-bound, and (c) Bidirectional Strategies.

One general approach involves the initial attachment of a glycosyl donor (halides, trichcloroacetimidate, sulfoxides, phosphates, phosphates, thio and pentenyl and glycols) to the resin (polystyrene-base). The attached sugar is selectively deprotected depending on the required position (1,2-1,3-1,4-1,6), transforming the resin-sugar complex in a sugar acceptor which will be coupled to the next glycosyl donor to produce a second linkage. By repeating this sequence an elongated chain is obtained. The final release and full deprotection will produce the free oligosaccharide (Scheme 2.141) [165].

An example of the donor bound strategy is the bounding of sulfur glycoside to polistyrene resin to form a sufur linkage between the donor and the resin (Scheme 2.142). Suitable hydroxyl group from the donor will serve as linkage site



Scheme 2.141 General scheme for solid-phase oligosaccharide synthesis 1,4-linkage case

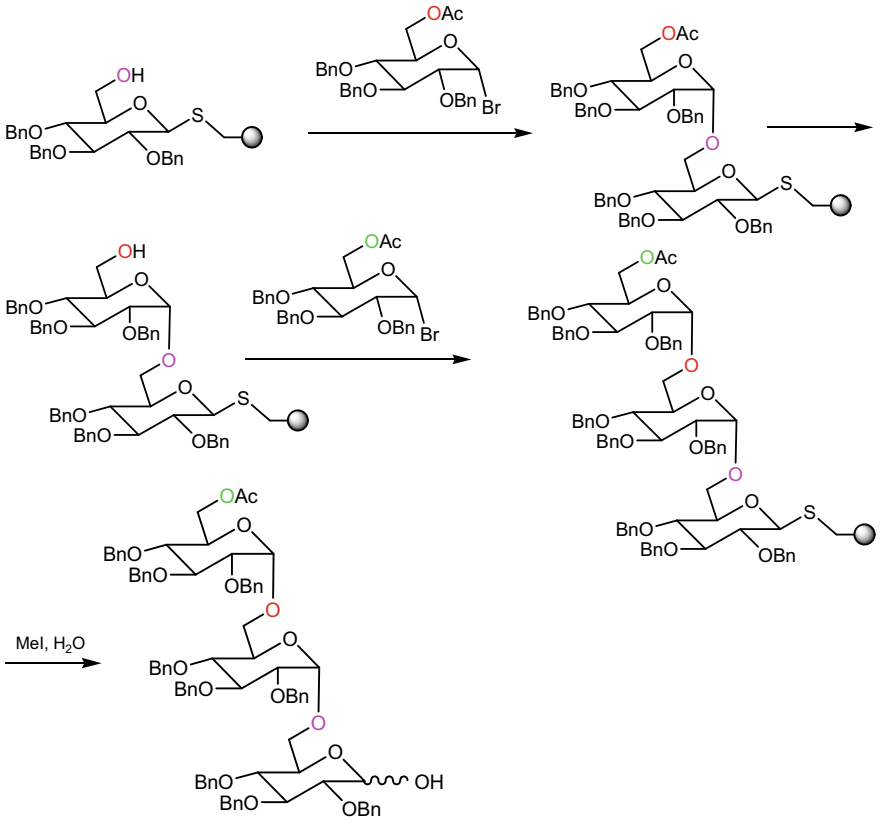


Scheme 2.142 Example of donor bound strategy for solid-phase glycosilation reactions

with de next sugar unit for chain elongation.

It should be noted that the glycosyl donor also contains a position available for the linkage with the next sugar. In other words, the glycosyl donor once attached to the resin becomes a glycosyl acceptor, as can be seen for the next coupling sequence (Scheme 2.143) [164].

The synthesis of β-(1 → 6) gentotetraose was accomplished by using a benzoyl propionate as resin linker. The glycosyl donor chosen was acetobromoglucose functionalized with trichloroacetate group as a temporary protecting group at position 5. Glycosylation reactions were effected under Helferich conditions and cleavage from resin was performed with hydrazinium acetate (Scheme 2.144).

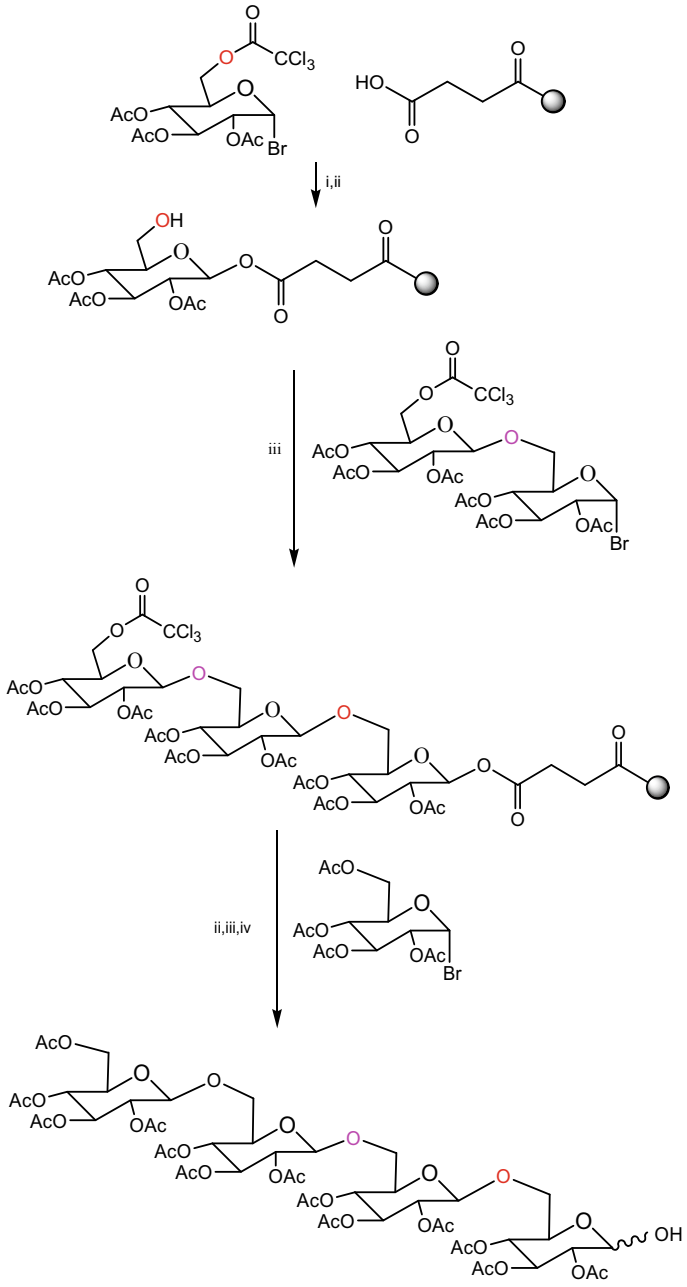


Scheme 2.143 Sulfur mediated solid-phase coupling reaction

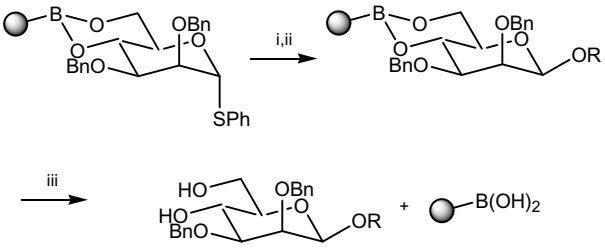
Polymer solid phase has been also exploited successfully by Crich et al. [166] for the synthesis of sensitive β-mannosides, using a variation of sulfhoxide method, consisting in the transformation of sulfoxide to triflic group as leaving group. The subsequent addition of alcohol acceptor to the donor attached to the Wang resin will result in the glycoside β-mannoside formation (Scheme 2.145).

The N-phenyl trifluoroacetimidate donor was incorporated as a building block for solid-phase assembly as decribed in scheme, starting from the coupling with a resin under TfOH conditions, and subsequent condensation with S-phenylglucuronic acid, to furnish dimer which was transformed into imidate donor until reaching a building block at multigram scale (Scheme 2.146) [167].

More recently, the introduction of a protocol named Automated Glycan Assembly (AGA) probed his effectiveness in the synthesis of 100-mer polymannoside, the largest polysaccharide prepared by any synthetic method. The concepts proposes as required steps the attachment to a photocleavable linker, preparation of the growing

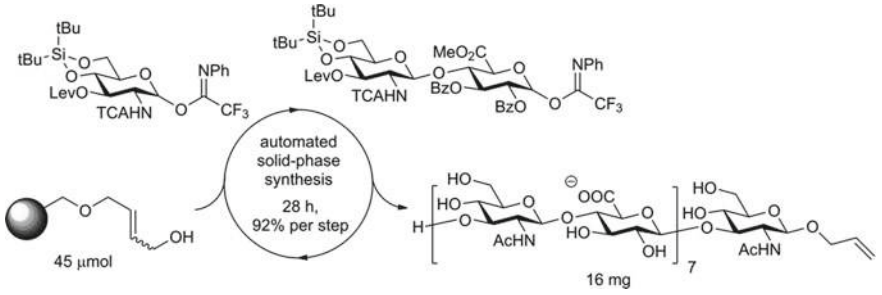


Scheme 2.144 Solid-phase coupling promoted by Helferich conditions



i) BSP, TTBP, Tf_2O, -60°C. ii) ROH. iii) Me_2CO/H_2O.

Scheme 2.145 Solid-phase synthesis of β-mannoside glycoside



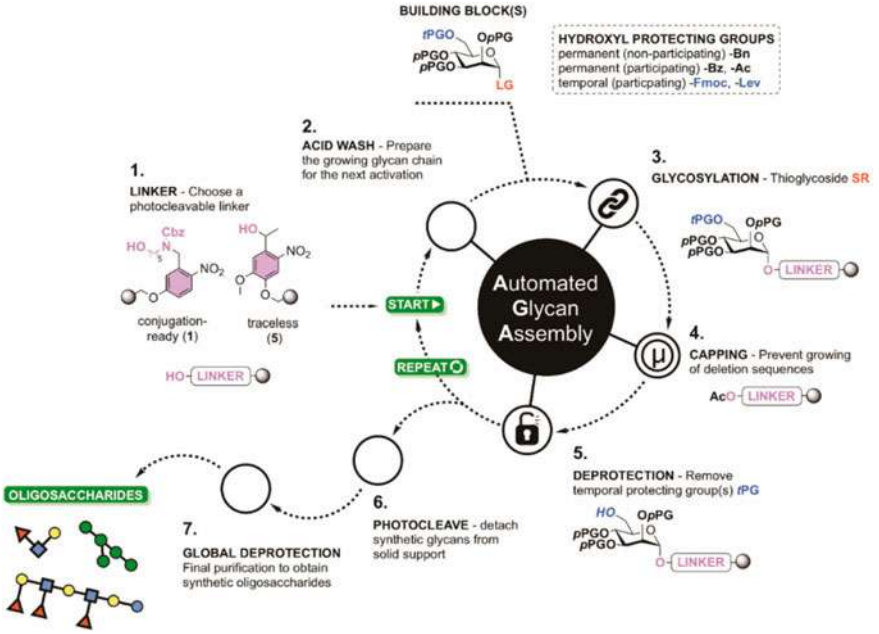
Scheme 2.146 Solid-phase assembly by using N-phenyl trifluoroacetimidate donors

glycan chain, thioglycosylation, capping, deprotection, photocleavage, and global deprotection (Scheme 2.147) [168].

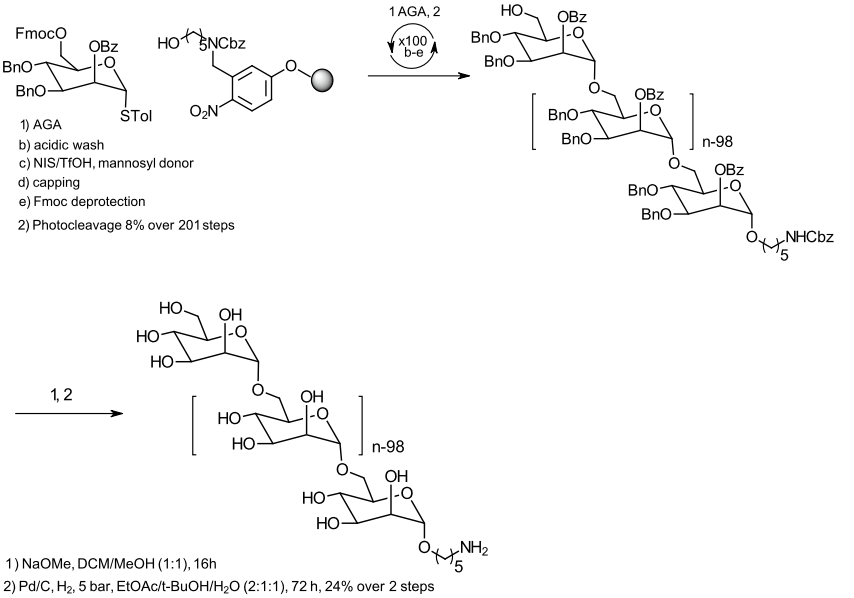
As mentioned, the initial step consisting in the attachment with a resin with photocleavable linker, and combined with mannose thioglycoside donor, washing acidic reagents in each step, coupling to extend the length, capping to avoid unreacted nucleophiles to interfiere in subsequent steps, removal of Fmoc at 6th position, and final photocleavage from the resin providing the polysaccharide in 3% yield (Scheme 2.148).

The use of a polytetrafluoroethylene particle as carrier capable of performing coupling, filtration and deprotection was introduced and conceptualised as the hop-on/off carrier oligosaccharide synthesis. The mentioned particle was suitable for this methodology because it takes into account to be a reversible linker providing coupling in solution with glicosyl donor and acceptor, attachment, separation by filtration, and detachment (Scheme 2.149) [169].

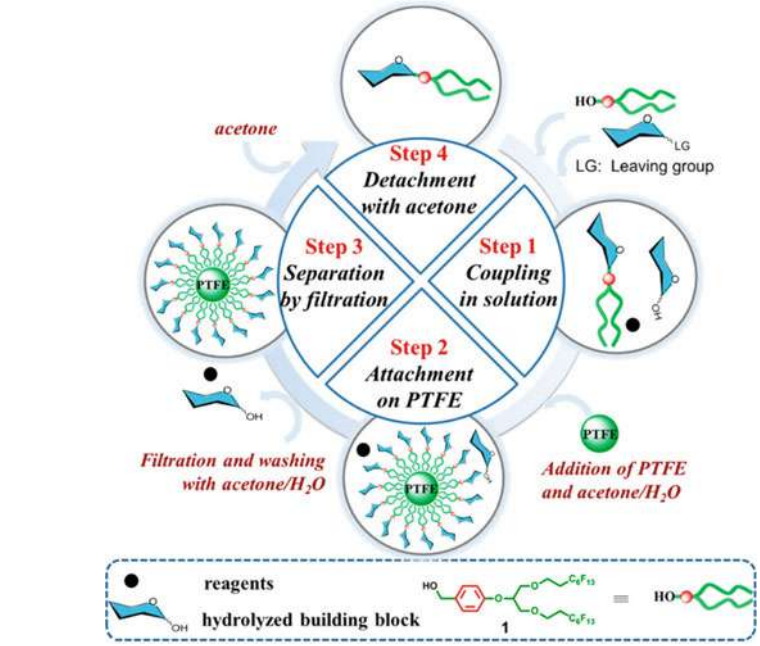
Another effort oriented to perform oligosaccharide synthesis in automated fashion was described in the synthesis of rhamnan oligosaccharides having α 1 → 2 and 1 → 3 linkages, as represented in a simplified diagram requiring as building blocks the

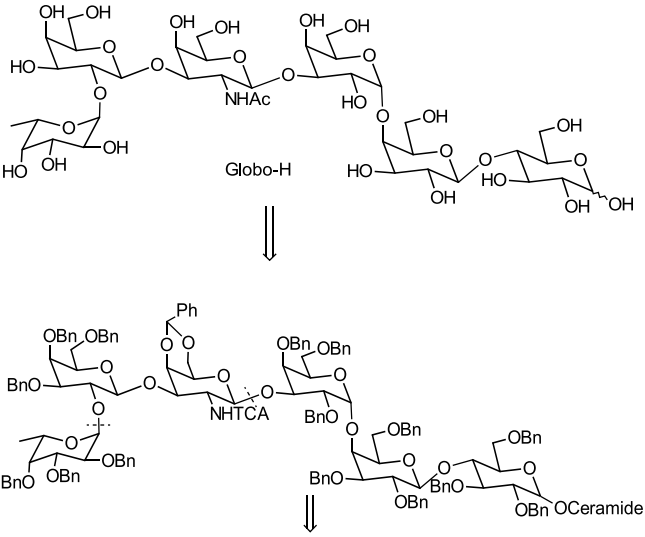


Scheme 2.147 Simplified representation of the automated glycan Assembly (AGA) concept

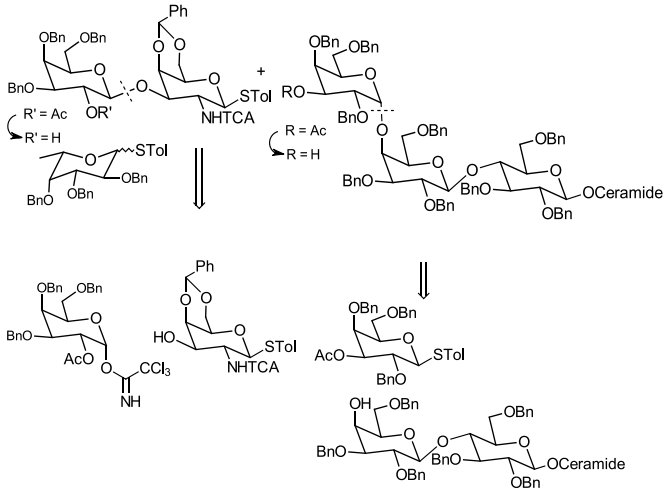


Scheme 2.148 The automated glycan assembly applied in the synthesis of 100-mer α-(1-6)-polymannoside



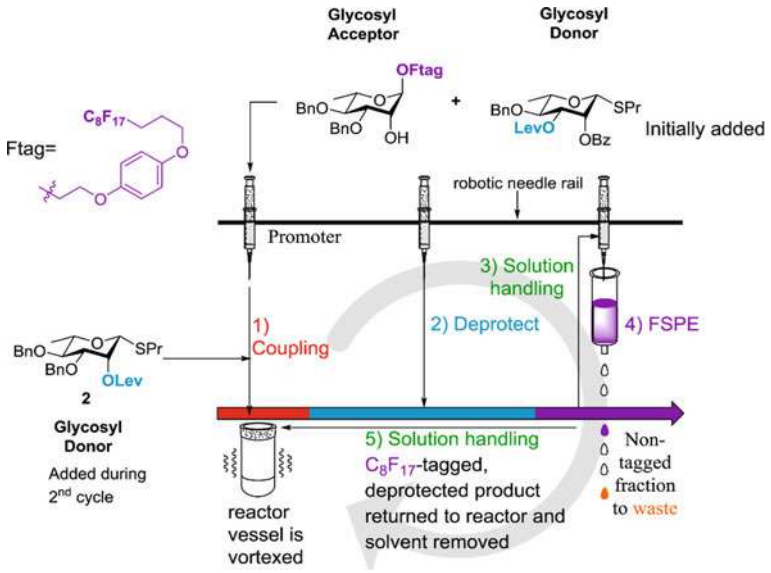


Scheme 2.149 Oligosaccharide synthesis based on the use of polytetrafluoroethylene particle as a carrier

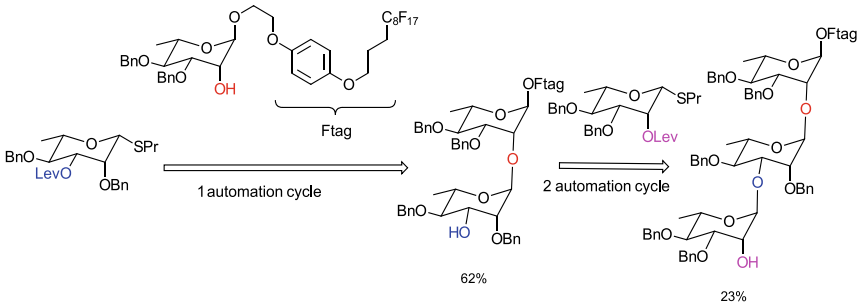


Scheme 2.149 (continued)

glycosyl acceptorheptadecafluoroundecyl)oxy)phenoxy) ethyl 3,4-di-O-benzyl-α-l-rhamnopyranoside (Ftag) and donors propyl 2,4-di-O-benzyl-3-O-levolinoyl-1-thio-β-l-rhamnopyranoside initially added, and propyl 3,4-di-O-benzyl-2-O-levolinoyl-1-thio-β-l-rhamnopyranoside added in 2nd cyrcle (Scheme 2.150) [170].



Scheme 2.150 Automated Ftag rhamnan oligosaccharides synthesis having α 1 → 2 and 1 → 3 linkages



Scheme 2.151 Automated synthesis of OFtag α 1 → 2 and 1 → 3 trisaccharide

Thus, the first cycle involves the coupling between rhamnosyl Ftag acceptor with 3-*O*-levolinoyl thio rhamnosyl donor producing 62% of OFtag disaccharide, next deprotection step, and washing noticing that non-tagged fractions were discarded and the taged returned to reactor to be coupled to 2-O-levolinoyl-1-thio-β-l-rhamnosyl donor to prepare OTaged α 1 → 2 and 1 → 3 trisaccharide (Scheme 2.151).

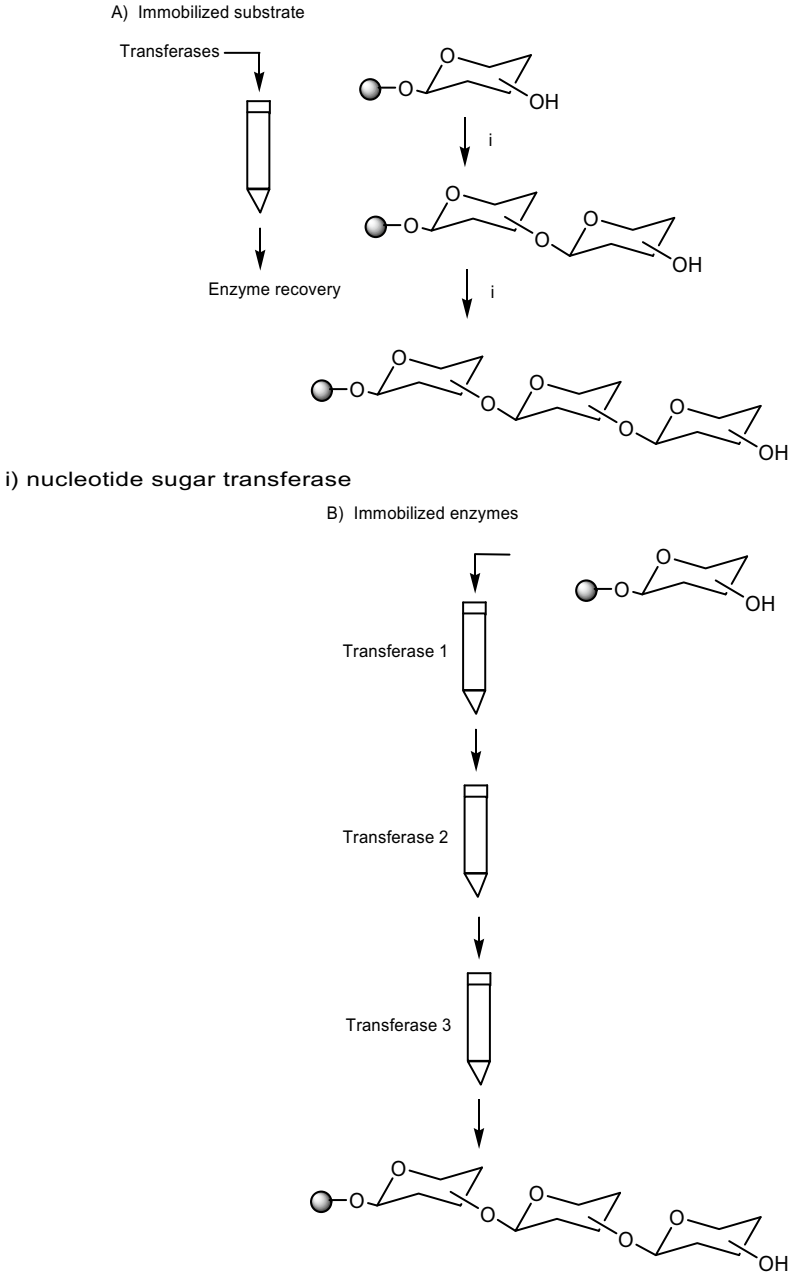
The enzymatic solid-phase oligosaccharide synthesis relies mainly by the use of glycosyltransferases, glycosidases and glycosynthases. By taking advantage on their high stereo- and regioselectivity, various oligosaccharides and glycopeptides have been prepared usually under mild conditions without the need of using protecting groups. Unfortunately, the enzymatic approach is still in some cases unaffordable due its high cost for large scale processes, lower yields provided and their limited capability for recognizing a broad range of sugars specially those not common. Two general approaches have been proposed for the preparation of oligosaccharides through the solid-phase approach (Scheme 2.152) [171].

A solid-phase enzymatic approach for extending the oligosaccharide chain was described by Gijsen et al. [171] in which a disaccharide-linker fragment attached to a resin was coupled with the glycosyltransferases UDP-galactose and CMP-NeuAc in the presence of galacosyltransferases and Sialyltransferase as enzymatic catalyst. Final treatment with hydrazine was used to release the tetrasaccharide from the solid support (Scheme 2.153).

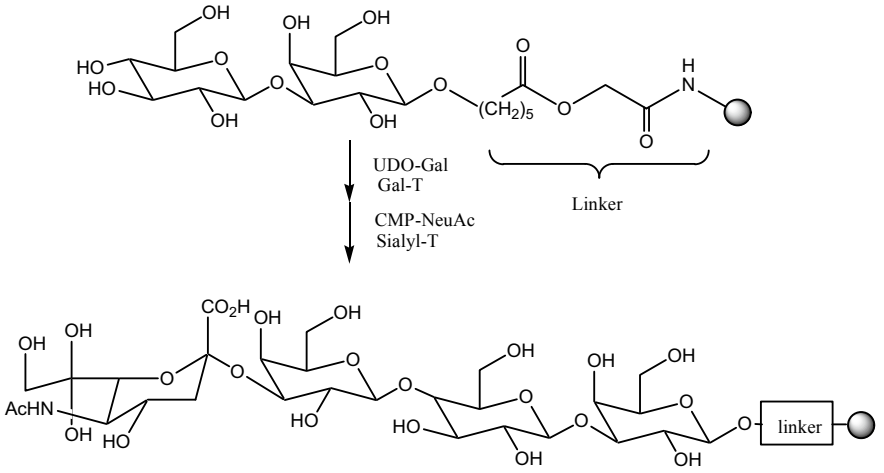
2.1.19 Miscellaneous Glycosylations

2.1.19.1 Selenosyl Donors

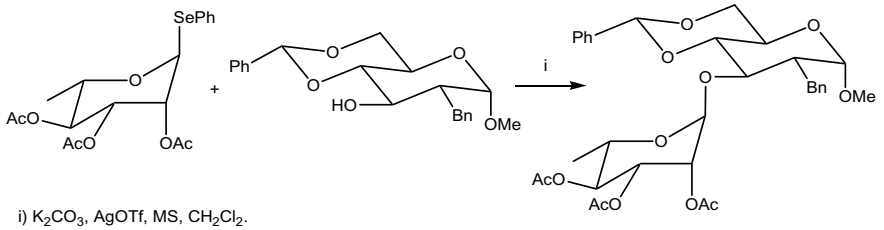
The use of selenoglycosides as glycosyl donors and acceptor in glycosilation reactions has also been described by Metha and Pinto [172]. A typical glycosidation procedure with phenylselenoglycoside donors involves the glycosyl acceptor, 4-Å molecular sieves, silver triflate, and potassium carbonate in dichloromethane (Scheme 2.154).



Scheme 2.152 Two general approaches for immobilized solid-phase oligosaccharide synthesis



Scheme 2.153 Enzymatic-solid phase glycosylation reaction



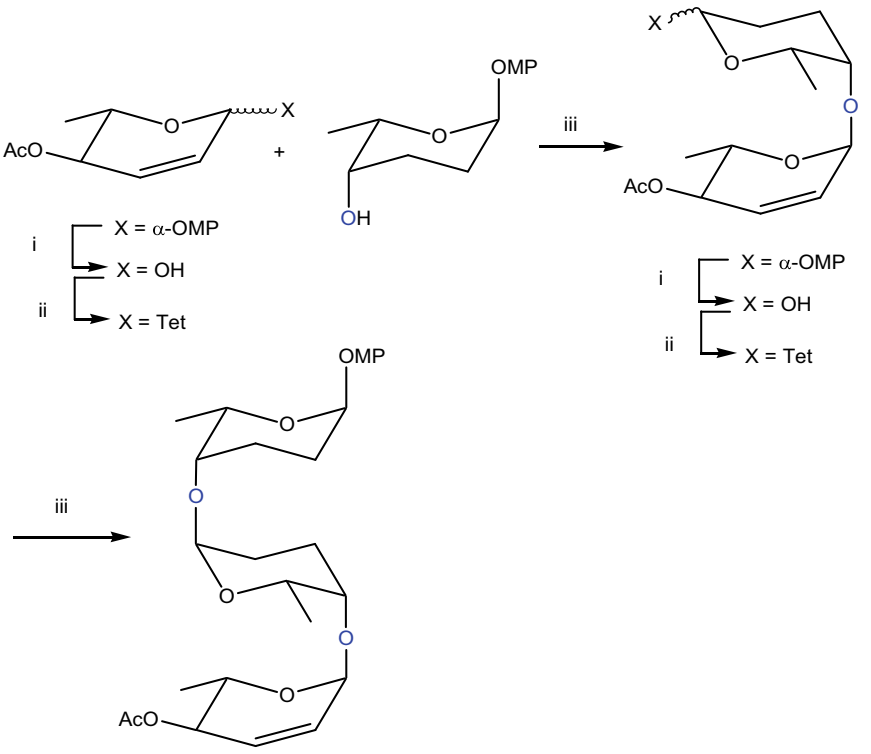
Scheme 2.154 Phenylselenosugars as glycosyl donors

2.1.19.2 Tretrazol as Leaving Group

Tetrazol has also been tested as a leaving group for the preparation of an antibiotic fragment [173]. A coupling reaction with the methoxyphenyl glycosyl acceptor was catalyzed with $(Me_3)_3OBF_4$ as shown in Scheme 2.155.

2.1.19.3 Sigmatropic Glyosylations

2-Aminodisaccharides were obtained by an elegant [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement, by Takeda et al. [174]. The addition of thiophenol to an unsaturated C-1 in the presence of Lewis acid, was followed by a sigmatropic rearrangement with an imidate group which migrates from C-4 to C-2. Disaccharide formation was catalyzed with $Pd(CH_3CN)_2$-AgOTf complex in dichloromethane (Scheme 2.156).



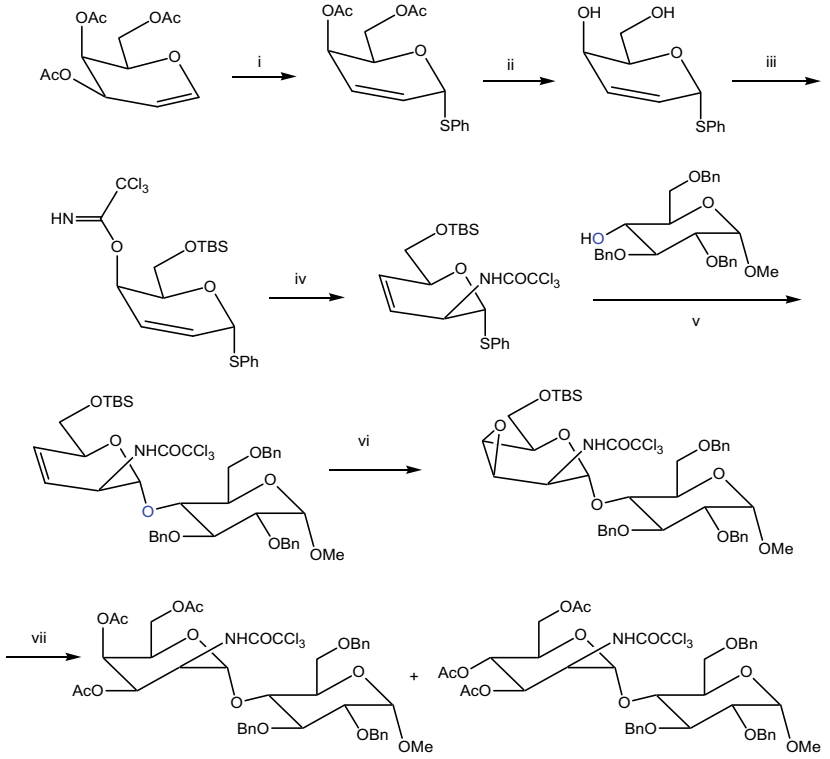
Scheme 2.155 The use of tetrazol as a leaving group

2.1.19.4 Zinc Promoted Glycosylation

The total synthesis of the cyclic glycolipid Arthrobacilin A, a cell growth inhibitor was achieved by Garcia and Nizhikawa [175], under zinc *p-tert*-butylbenzoate salt as glycoside catalyst, obtaining the β-galactoside glycoside in 73% along with α-isomer in 27% (Scheme 2.157).

2.1.20 Heterogenous Catalysis

Stereocontrolled α- and β- glycosylations by using environmentally benign heterogenous catalyst has been developed as a novel approach for stereoselective formation of β-O-glycosidic linkages. Polymeric materials such as montmorillonite K-10 [176], heteropoly acid ($H_4SiW_{12}O_{40}$) [177], sulphated zirconia (SO_4/ZrO_2) [178], and perfluorinated solid-supported sulfonic acids (Nafion resins) [179] have been



i) PhSH, $SnCl_4/CH_2Cl_2$. ii) MeONa/MeOH. iii) a) TBSCl-imidazol/CH_2Cl_2. b) Cl_3CCN-NaH/CH_2Cl_2. iv) xylene, reflux. v) $Pd(CH_3CN)_2$-AgOTf, MS 4A/CH_2Cl_2. vi) m-CPBA/CH_2Cl_2. viii) Ac_2O-AcOH/$BF_3.OEt_2$.

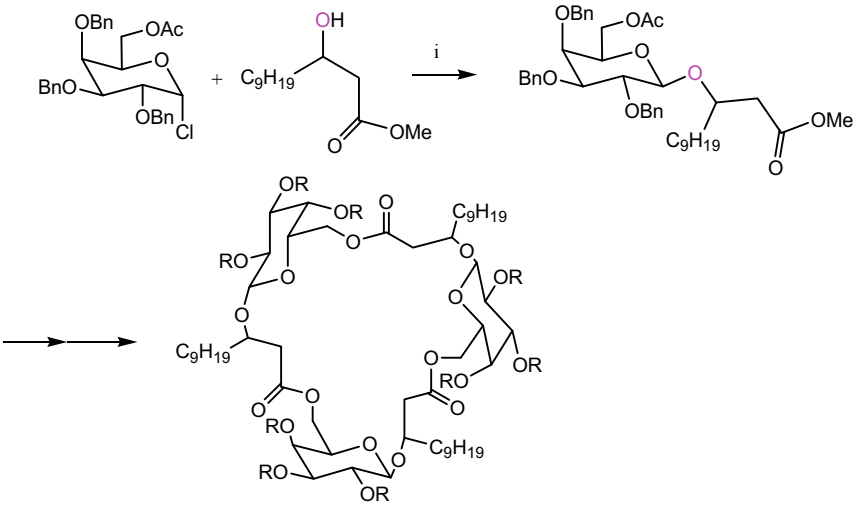
Scheme 2.156 Sigmatropic rearrangement

assayed successfully providing series of stereocontrolled *O*-glycosides in high yield (Scheme 2.158).

Glycosyl N-trichloroacetylcarbamate obtained fromreaction of tetrabenzyl glucopyranoside hemiacetals with trichloroacetyl isocyanate were used as glycosyl donors. Various Lewis acids were tested for α-selective glycosylation observing that the promoters TMSOTf and $TMSClO_4$ yields the best results (Scheme 2.159) [180].

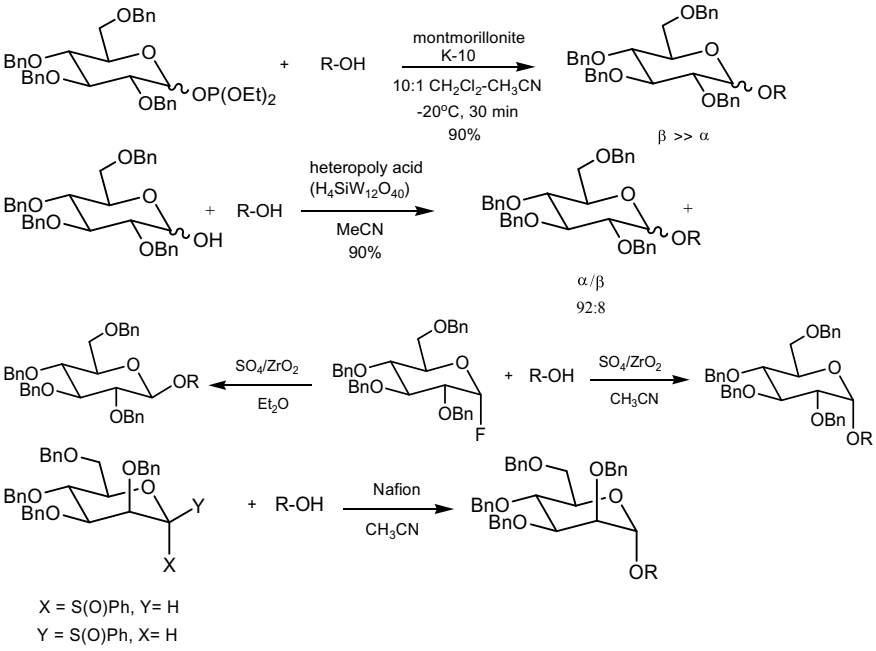
N-Sulfonyl imidazole has been used as activating agent for preparing 2-deoxy monosaccharides through deprotonation of the anomeric hydroxyl group with KHMDS at low temperature. Further reaction with N-sulfonyl imidazole resulted in the glycosyl sulfonates intermediate generated in situ which was finally reacted with the desired nucleophile to produce the β-glycoside in moderate to good yields (Scheme 2.160) [181, 182].

On the other hand 1,2-cyclopropaneacetylated sugar has been proposed as glycosyl donors for O-glycosylations, allowing stereoselective control depending on the catalyst employed. Thus, β-anomeric products were obtained with $BF_3 \cdot OEt_2$ as

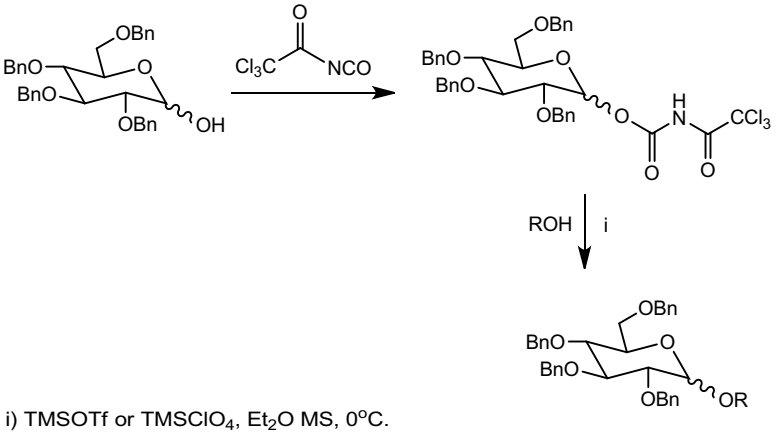


i) zinc p-tert-butylbenzoate, 2-methyl-2-butene, MS, CH_2Cl_2, r.t., 2.5h

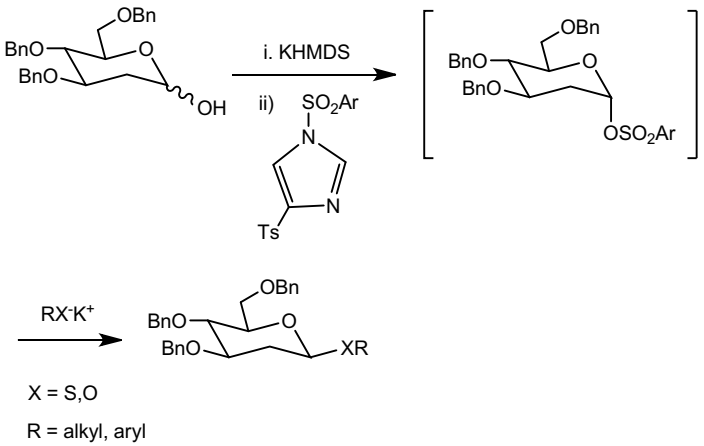
Scheme 2.157 Glycosylation reaction for preparation of Arthrobacilin A



Scheme 2.158 Stereocontrolled *O*-glycosidations using heterogeneous polymeric materials



Scheme 2.159 O-glycosylation via N-trichloroacetylcarbamate

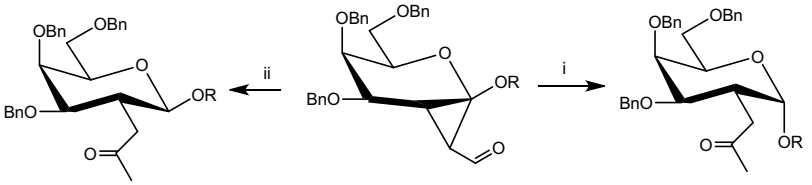


Scheme 2.160 Preparation of β-glycosides via glycosyl sulfonate formation

catalyst, whereas TMSOTf-catalyzed glycosylation prefers the α-anomeric products (Scheme 2.161).

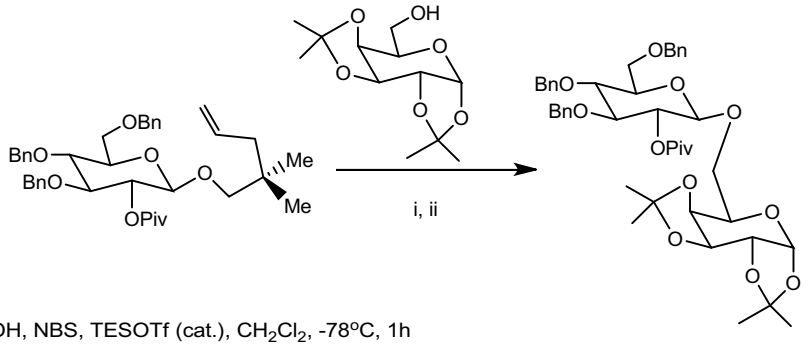
Gem-dimethyl 4-n-pentenyl glycosides were proposed as glycosyl donorsfor glycosylation and hydrolysis of the anomeric carbon when using NBS as the sole stoichiometric activator with yield reported around 80% mainly with β selectivity (Scheme 2.162) [183].

The latent-active reaction named interrupted Pummerer reaction mediated (IPRm) glycosylation has been introduced to refer a glycosylation reaction in which a glycosyl donor having a O-2-(2-propylsulfinyl)benzyl leaving group (OPSB) is



i) TMSOTf, ROH, CH_2Cl_2, MS, 0°C to rt. ii) $BF_3.Et_2O$, ROH, CH_2Cl_2, MS, -20°C to rt

Scheme 2.161 Stereocontrolled glycosylations from 1,2-cyclopropaneacetylated sugar as glycosyl donors

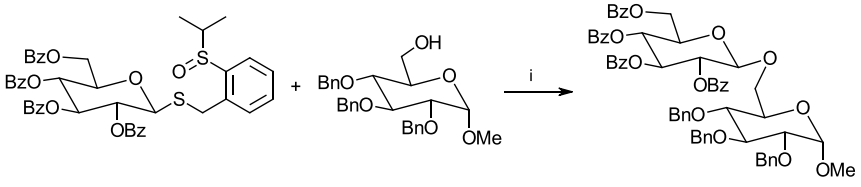


i) ROH, NBS, TESOTf (cat.), CH_2Cl_2, -78°C, 1h

Scheme 2.162 Preparation of protected β-1,6 disaccharide form Gem-dimethyl 4-n-pentenyl glycosides

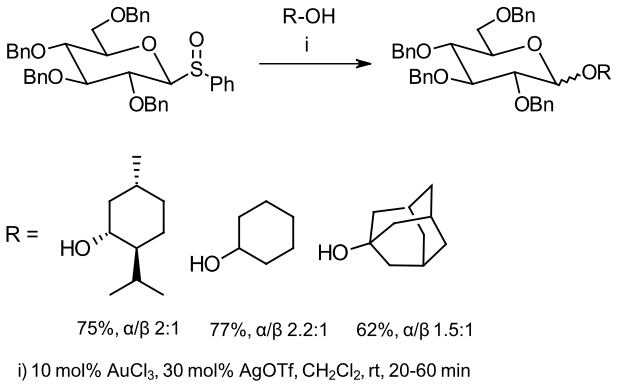
conjugated to an acceptor containing at the anomeric position a less active S-2-(2-propylthio)benzyl leaving group (SPTB) which is further oxidized to S-2-(2-propylsulfinyl)benzyl leaving group (SPSB) and then glycosylated with glycosyl acceptors to furnish disaccharide as β-anomer in good yield (Scheme 2.163) [184].

The use of $AuCl_3$/AgOTf reagent system for preparing O-glycosides was described, employing sulfoxide glycosyl donors with a variety of aglycons. By using



i) Tf_2O, DCM, 0°C, 1h, 97%

Scheme 2.163 Interrupted Pummerer reaction mediated (IPRm) glycosylations



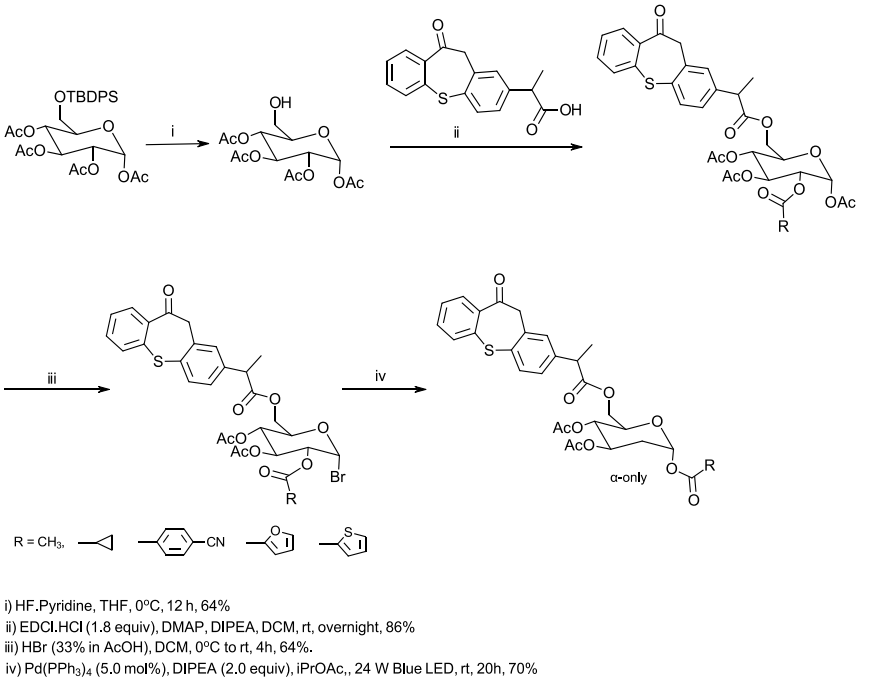
Scheme 2.164 O-glycosylation promoted by $AuCl_3$–AgOTf catalyst

these conditions different O-glycosides from primary to tertiary alcohols and saccharide acceptors bearing acid sensitive groups were accomplished in moderate to good yields (Scheme 2.164) [185].

2.1.21 Photoactivated Glycosylation Reactions

The term photocatalysis refers to a process in which the use of radiation in the range of visible (Blue LED wavelength) could accelerate or facilitate the glycosidic bond formation. The use of radiation in organic chemistry is a consolidated alternative and within carbohydrate chemistry the use of radiation became a useful tool for the synthesis of simple and more complex oligosaccharides and oligopeptides. In the case of glycosylation reactions, the focus is directed to activate the glycosyl donors through the use photosensitizer or photocatalyst, following the principle that these species will have the ability to collect radiation and transfer it via sensitization to the glycosyl donor [186]. Different glycosyl donors and photocatalyst have been evaluated for preparing O-glycosides, one example is the synthesis of 2-deoxyglycosides from glycals with isopropylidene acceptor in the presence of photocatalyst, blue LED, and PhSSPh as additive. Optimization assays were performed with three photocatalyst, The Fukuzumi catalyst X in the excited state (A → A*), the dimeric BINOL-derived catalyst (B) and eosin Y (C). From the three mentioned, the later afforded (1 → 6) disaccharide with the highest yield in α-selectivity fashion [191].

The conversion of glycosyl halides to 2-deoxydisaccharide and D-galactose derivatives of pharmaceuticals such as Ibuprofen, Probenecid, Febuxostat, and Zaltoprofen (Scheme 2.165) was carried out under photocatalytic conditions with LED and Excited-State Palladium-Catalyst. The proposed mechanism suggests a radical oxidative addition of photoexcited Palladium followed by acyl migration to C-1 [187].

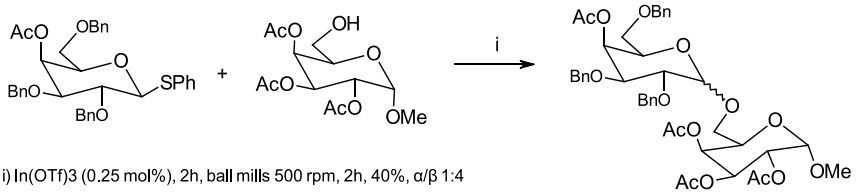


Scheme 2.165 Preparation of peracetylated 2-deoxyglucopyranoside linked at 6th position with Zaltoprofen under visible-light induced excited-state palladium catalysis

Also, glycosyl trichloroacetimidates probed to be effective glycosyl donors for the *O*-glycosidic bond formation under photocatalytic conditions in the presence photocatalyst and Blue LED irradiation. A proposed mechanism describes the way eosin Y is activated by the Blue LED irradiation, being responsible Brønsted-Lowry acid (H^+) transfered to the imidate donor [188].

2.1.22 Mechanochemistry for Glycosylation Reactions

The application of compression, or friction usually in a high-speed ball milling is an alternative method used in organic chemistry and its involvement in glycoside chemistry hasn't been the exception. Mechanochemistry differs from glassware reactions in that no solvent is required and could be achieved in a mortar or specialize equipment in which two types are known: the planetary ball mills (PBM) and mixer or shaker mills (SM) [189]. By using this alternative method some disaccharides, glycosyl phenols, and derivatized polysaccharides where obtained, showing the potential and versatility of this approach. In this regard the synthesis of disaccharide has been



Scheme 2.166 Mechanochemical conditions for the preparation of disaccharide using $In(OTf_3)$ as promoter

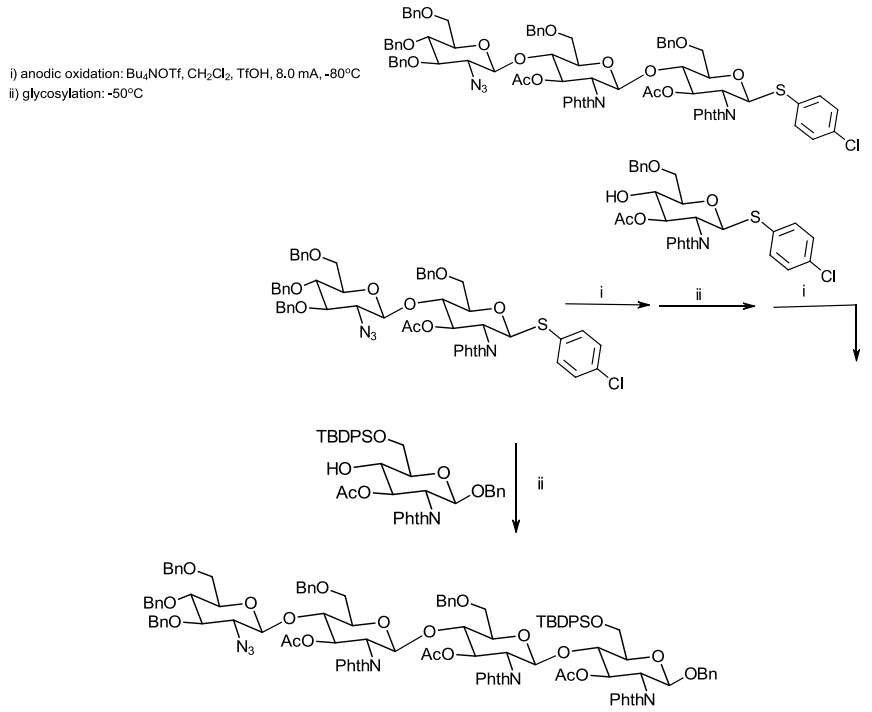
achieved by using perbenzylated thioglycosyl donors with a suitable acceptor, using $In(OTf_3)$ under mechanochemical conditions (Scheme 2.166) [190].

2.1.23 Electrochemical Glycosylation Reactions

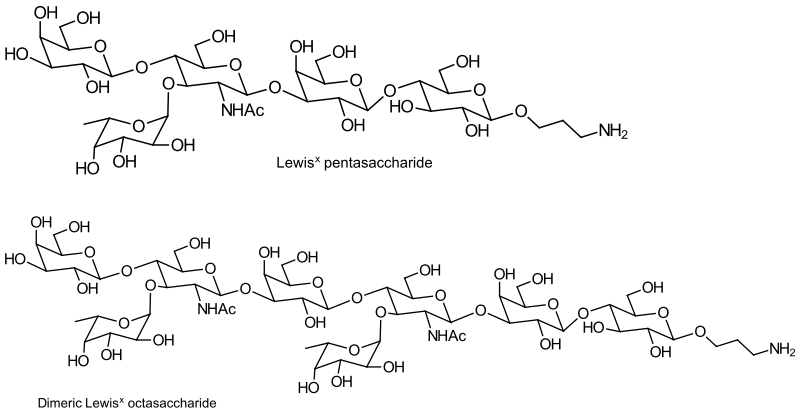
The electrochemical approach to perform glycosylation reactions has been explored with satisfactory results as it is shown in the preparation of disaccharides and short oligosaccharides. The electrochemical approach was assayed as a glycosylation protocol in the preparation of tetrasaccharide by using a 2 + 1 + 1 strategy by combining a thiophenyl disaccharide donor with disarmed thiophenyl acceptor and protected 6-O tertbutyldiphenylsilyl (TBDPS) glycosyl acceptor. By using an automated electrochemical assembly strategy, disaccharide donor was mixed with disarmed thioglycoside acceptor into a electrolysis cell during a first cycle and once the glycosylation took place, the building block bearing TBDSP, was introduced for the second cycle to yield 47% of protected tetrasacharide precursor of MyC-IV a symbiotic signal molecule of *Arbuscular Mycorrhiza* as shown in Scheme 2.167 [191].

2.1.24 Synthesis of Oligosaccharides and Cyclic Oligosaccharides

Oligosaccharide synthesis is a preponderant topic within glycoside chemistry due their involvement in many processes, and in particular immune recognition, adhesion, not to mention its rule in auto-immune processes, tumour-associated antigens etc. For instance, human milk oligosaccharides after absorption reach epithelial cells and modulate neonatal response against infections, autoimmune disease and inflammation [192]. It is well known that cell surface carbohydrates are attachment points for bacteria, viruses, and parasites, in particular LewisX pentasaccharide and dimeric LewisX octasaccharide (Scheme 2.168) found in bacterial and viral infection, and



Scheme 2.167 Automated electrochemical assembly strategy for the preparation of protected tetrasaccharide precursor of MyC-IV



Scheme 2.168 Cell surface carbohydrates LewisX pentasaccharide and dimeric LewisX octasaccharide

over-expressed on some tumour cells such as colon and liver cancer (also discussed in glycoconjugates section).

The tumour associated carbohydrate antigens (TACAs) are a group of short oligosaccharides present at the surface of different tumour cells and have been subjected to intense studies because although their immunogenicity is poor when attached to proteins could serve as synthetic vaccines [193]. The representative TACA oligosaccharides are: GloboH, SSEA4, GM2, GM3, Lewis blood group and mucin glycan Stn, Tn and TF (Scheme 2.169). The sialo TACA antigens are over expressed in breast, prostate, colorectal ovarian, pancreatic, stomach cancer and therefore their identification is useful in diagnosis and immunotherapy [194].

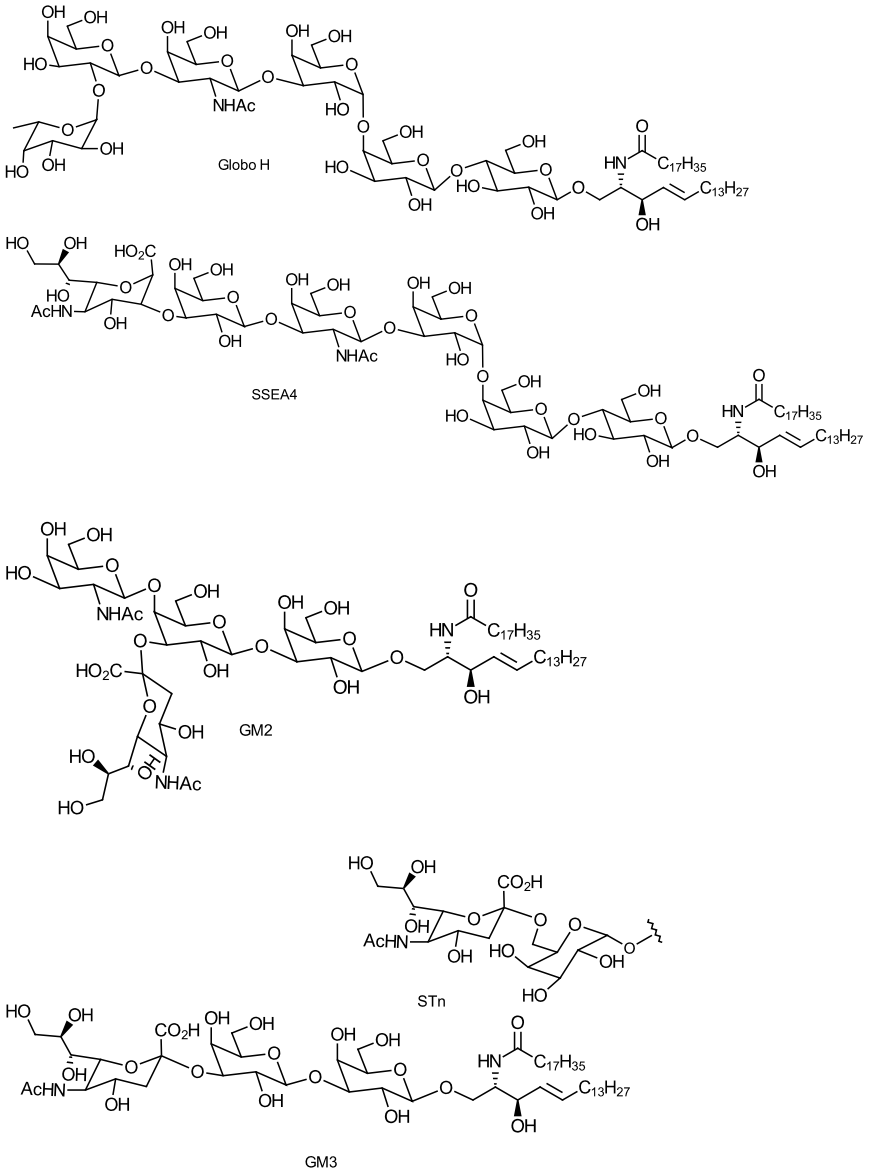
The Thomsen-Friedenreich (TF or T) antigen present in about 90% of human cancer cells was identified and contains N-acetyl galactose (GalNAc) linked with a galactose and a Ser/Thr residue. It binds to carbohydrate binding proteins specific for galactose known as galectines (Gal 1-3) through their carbohydrate recognition domain (CDR). The carbohydrate recognition domain of galectine subtype Gal-3 was complexed with TF antigen, GM1 pentasaccharide. It is observed for the three antigens the conserved interactions are with residues Arg186 and Glu165 and two water molecules (Scheme2.170) [195].

Human lectins are carbohydrate binding proteins playing a key rule in the recognition of TACA antigens, as it is the case of human macrophage galactose lectin (MGL) identified as endocytic type II transmembrane receptor having an extracellular carbohydrate recognition domain (CRD) that specifically binds terminal N-acetylgalactosamine glycan residues such as the Tn and sialyl-Tn antigens found on tumour cells. The crystal structure of the MGL CRD made posible to visualize the secondary structure of the MGL CRD bound to GalNAc and Tn-Ser antigen molecules as well as the interaction of the residues and the calcium ion involved in the recognition (Scheme 2.171) [196].

Unfortunately, although TACA antigens are over expressed in various tumour cells, there is slight expression of TACAs on normal tissue and this fact may reduce immunogenicity or induce immune tolerance. Therefore, the design of TACA analogues became an alternative for increasing immune response without affecting normal cells, and therefore different group dedicate efforts for preparing modified TACA antigens as is the case of the synthesis of tri- and tetrasaccharide used as soluble competitors against dimLe^x in ELISA test which were prepared from protected trisaccharide, with fucosyl donor, activated with NIS and catalytic TMSOTf (Scheme 2.172) [197].

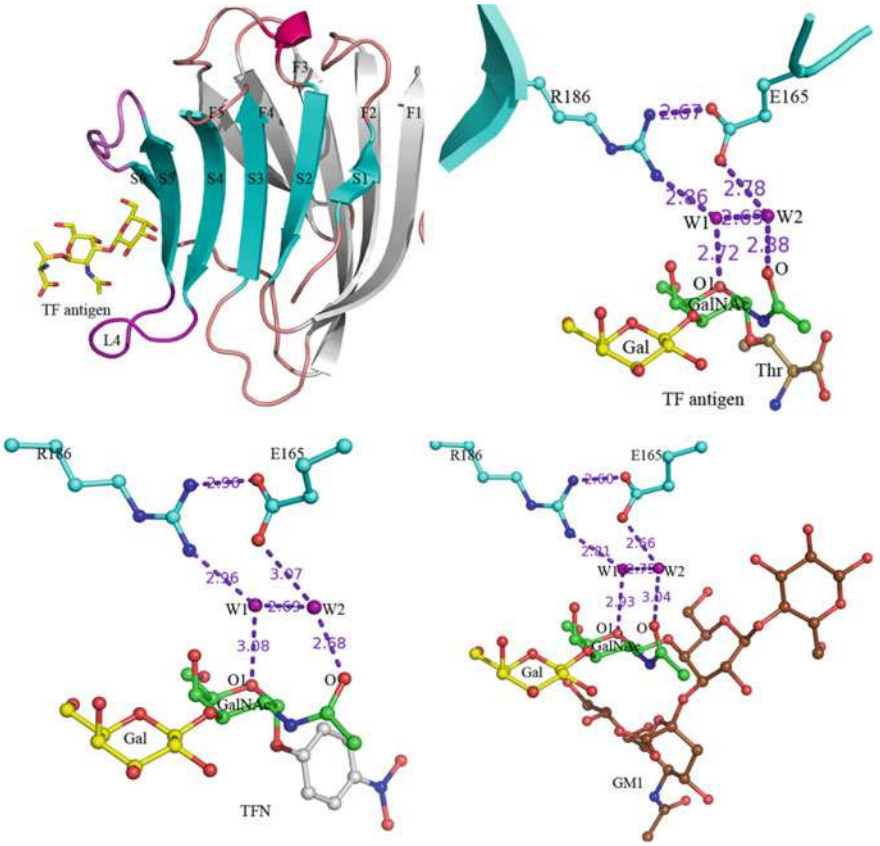
In viral infections the attachment to the host cell occurs at the cell-surface receptors through glycoproteins (N-linked and O-linked) and glycolipids. Being the N-linked to asparagine, O-linked to threonine-serine and glycolipid to ceramide (Scheme 2.173) [198].

Natural human milk oligosaccharides (HMO) contains a cocktail of more than 100 identified oligosaccharides having as building blocks five monosaccharides β-D-galactose (Gal), β-D-glucose (Glc), β-D-N-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc), α-L-fucose (Fuc), sialic acid α-D-*N*-acetylneuraminic acid (Neu5Ac) (Scheme 2.26), and serve in the development of the infant's microflora and immune system [199].



Scheme 2.169 The tumour associated carbohydrate antigens (TACAs)

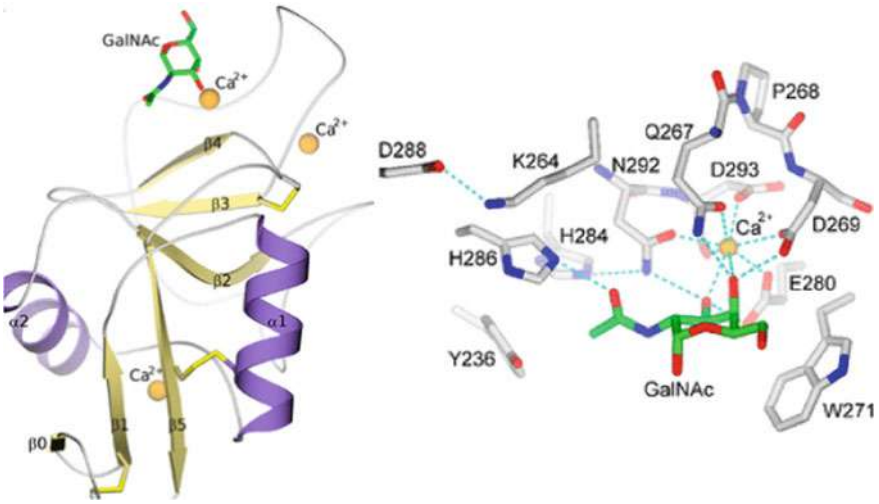
The biosynthetic pathway shows the sequence involving elongation, branching and fucosylation for the assemble of the monosaccharide units by the most important enzymes, N-acetylglucosaminyltransferases (GlcNAcT), galactosyltransferases (GalT), and fucosyltransferases (FucT) [200] (Scheme 2.174).



Scheme 2.170 Stereo diagrams showing human Gal-3 interactions of TF, TFN and GM1 antigens with Arg186-Water-Glu165-Water molecules

Since cow milk is scarce on these key sugars, some efforts are invested for the preparation of this nutrients [203]. It is noteworthy to mention that fucosylated HMOs are the most abundant HMOs and provides the infants with strong defences against pathogens. Therefore, methods either enzymatic or synthetic have been deployed for preparing short HMO precursors using α-L-fucosyl donor such as *p*-nitrophenyl α-L-fucopyranoside (*p*NP-Fuc). This is the case of a transglycosylation reaction using α-L-fucosidase from *Thermotoga maritima* conjugated to lactose as acceptor, providing 2′-fucosyllactose a constituent of human milk (Scheme 2.175) [204].

The synthesis of cyclic oligosaccharides involves the preparation of linear saccharides which ultimately are joined together to form a cyclic macromolecule. There are two main approaches proposed based on the cycloglycosylation step. The first involves the preparation of a long chain having and each end the donor and acceptor functionalities that will be interconnected through a glycosidic bond at a final step, and the second involving the polycondensation of smallest repeating unit called



Scheme 2.171 Crystal structure of carbohydrate recognition domain (CRD) from human macrophage galactose lectin (MGL) bound to Tn and sialyl-Tn antigens

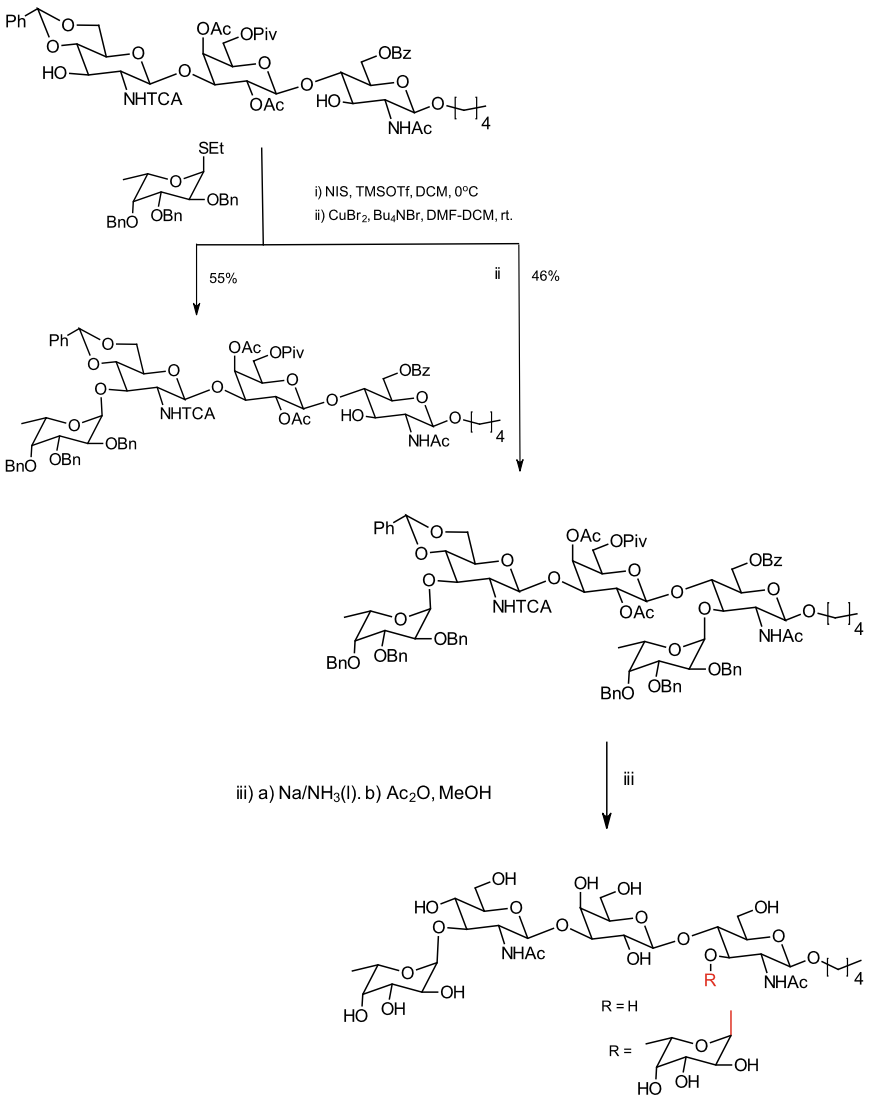
"saccharide monomers". It has been observed that the later strategy is considered less laborious, however produce cyclic oligomers of different size since under these conditions the ring formation step is not controllable.

The chemical synthesis of cyclic oligosaccharides has been mainly driven to obtain cyclic (1 → 4)-linked oligopyranosides, however (1 → 3), and (1 → 6) linked cycloforms are also described. In the case of (1 → 2)-linked oligosaccharides, the ring closure require about 17 or more glucopyranoside residues because (1 → 2)-linkage composed of pyranoside connected by one equatorial and one axial bond assumes rigid conformations and cannot cyclize [205].

The pioneering total synthesis of cyclic oligosaccharide α-Cyclodextrin was carried out by Ogawa's group in 1985 [206] and since then alternative chemical or enzymatic methodologies appeared for preparing cyclic oligosaccharides. Nowadays the industrial production of cyclodextrins relies on the enzymatic conversion of prehydrolyzed starch into a mixture of cyclic and acyclic oligomers.

A full report about cyclic oligosaccharides [206] proposes four approaches to the synthesis of cyclic oligosaccharides developed during the last 10 years. (i) the stepwise preparation of a linear precursor that is subjected to cycloglycosylation; (ii) the one-pot polycondensation/cycloglycosylation of a small "oligosaccharide monomer" typically, a di-, or trisaccharide that can yield a range of macrocycles of different sizes. (iii) the enzyme-assisted synthesis of natural or unnatural cyclic oligosaccharides. (iv) the ring opening of cyclodextrins followed by oligosaccharide chain elongation and cycloglycosylation (Scheme 2.176).

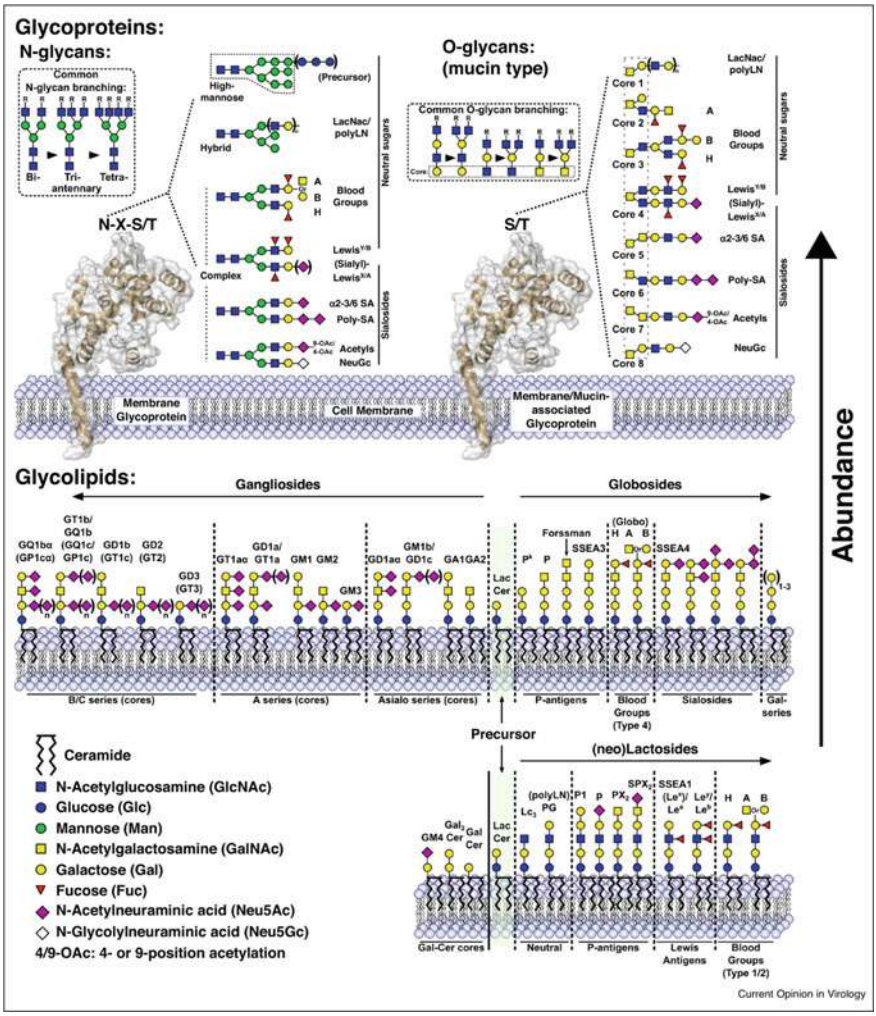
Despite the significant advances observed in cyclic oligosaccharide synthesis, their preparation is time consuming, producing the target compounds with low regio-



Scheme 2.172 Synthesis tri- and tetrasaccharide dimLe^x analogues

and stereoselective in low yields. The total synthesis of α-CD and γ-CD was described according to Scheme 2.177 [207, 208].

In 1990 it was reported the chemical synthesis of β-(1 → 3) linked hexasaccharide. The chemical approach involved the glycosidic reaction between benzylidene acceptor and protected glucosyl bromide as glycosyl donor, under silver triflate-promoter conditions. As it can be seen in Scheme 2.88, the construction of the linear oligosaccharide and its final cycloglycosylation was performed by using glycosyl

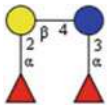
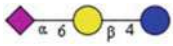
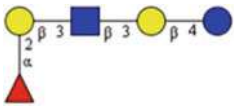
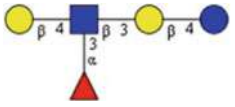
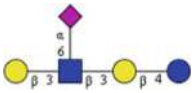


Scheme 2.173 Cell-surface glycoproteins (N-linked and O-linked) and glycolipids receptors

bromides which were prepared by photolytic brominolysis of 1,2-O-benzylidene glucose with $BrCCl_3$ (Scheme 2.178) [209].

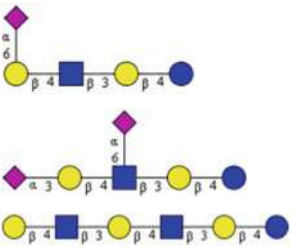
The formation of (1 → 6)-glycopyranosidic linkages might produce cyclic di- tri- and tetrasaccharides. An early synthesis of β-(1 → 6)-glucopyranan under Helferich conditions, generated along with the linear oligomer, a cyclic di- and tetrasaccharide in 12 and 6% respectively (Scheme 2.179) [210].

An improved synthesis of cyclotetraoside was described by the same group 10 years later, consisting in the preparation from the peracetylated tetrasaccharide into the tetrasaccharide derivative having both the acceptor and the donor components. The final cyclization was performed under Helferich conditions providing a

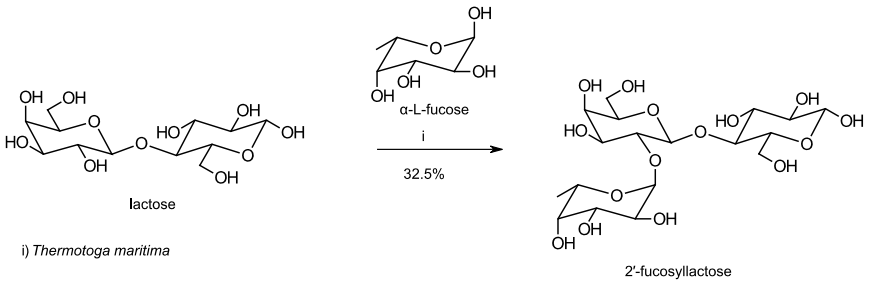
Lactose	Lac	477.2	
Lacto-*N*-biose	LNB	518.3	
N-acetyllactosamine	LacNAc	518.3	
2-fucosyllactose	2′FL	651.3	
3-fucosyllactose	3FL	651.3	
Difucosyllactose	DFL	825.4	
Lacto-*N*-triose	LNT2	722.4	
3-sialyllactose	3′SL	838.4	
6-sialyllactose	6′SL	838.4	
Lacto-*N*-tetraose	LNT	926.5	
Lacto-*N*-neotetraose	LNnT	926.5	
Lacto-*N*-fucopentaose I	LNFPI	1100.5	
Lacto-*N*-fucopentaose III	LNFPIII	1100.5	
Sialyllacto-*N*-tetraose a	LSTa	1287.6	
Sialyllacto-*N*-tetraose b	LSTb	1287.6	

Scheme 2.174 Representative building block monosaccharides in HMOS [201, 202]

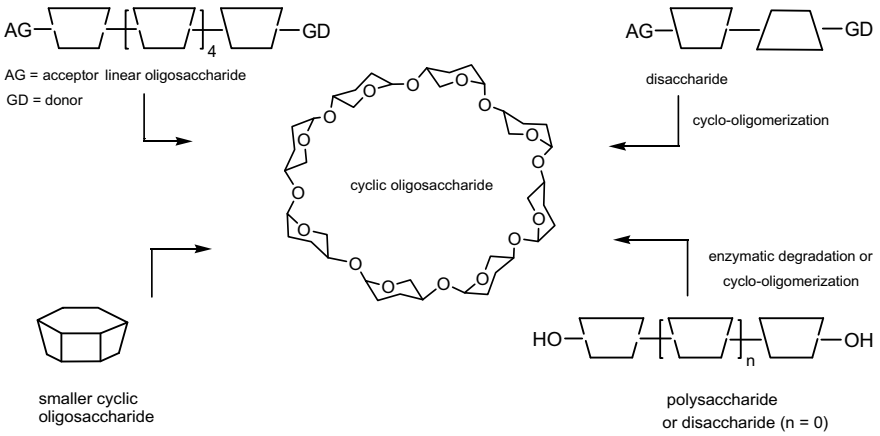
Sialyllacto-*N*-tetraose c	LSTc	1287.6
Disialyllacto-*N*-tetraose	DSLNT	1648.8
Para-lacto-*N*-neohexaose	pLNnH	1375.7



Scheme 2.174 (continued)

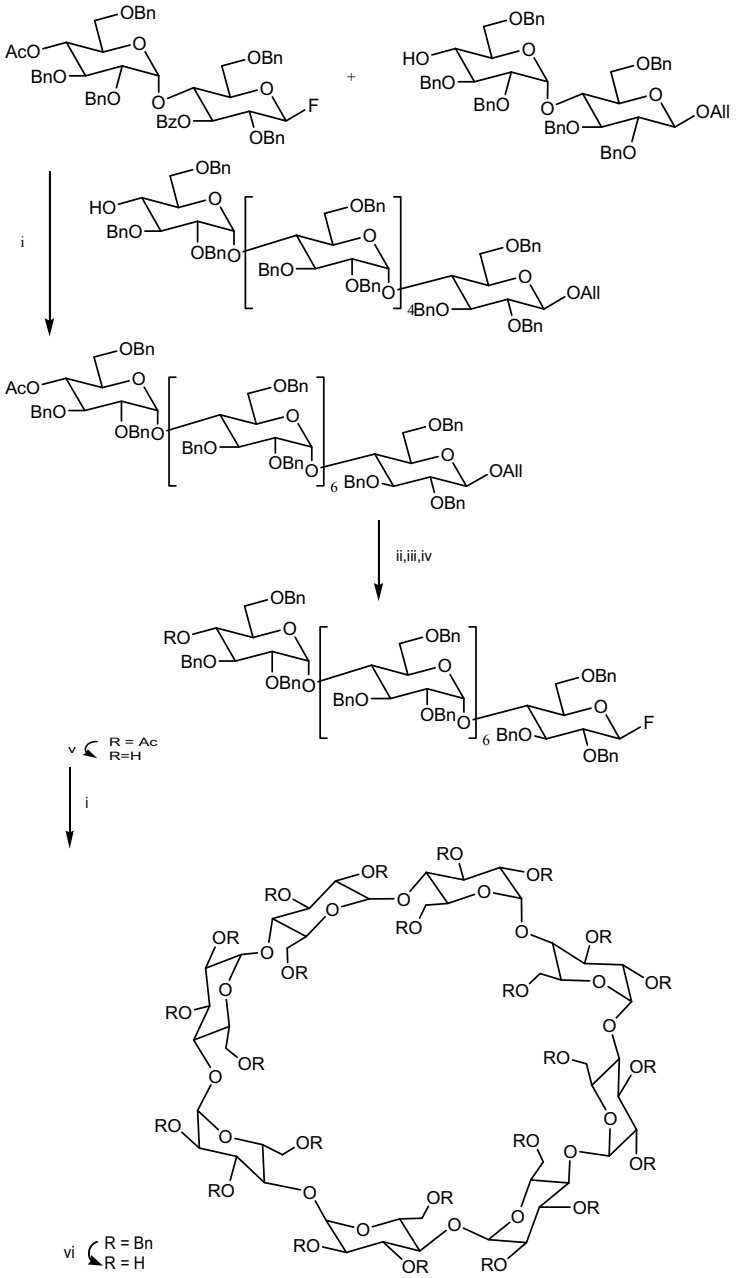


Scheme 2.175 Enzymatic synthesis of a fucosylated trisaccharide a constituent of human milk

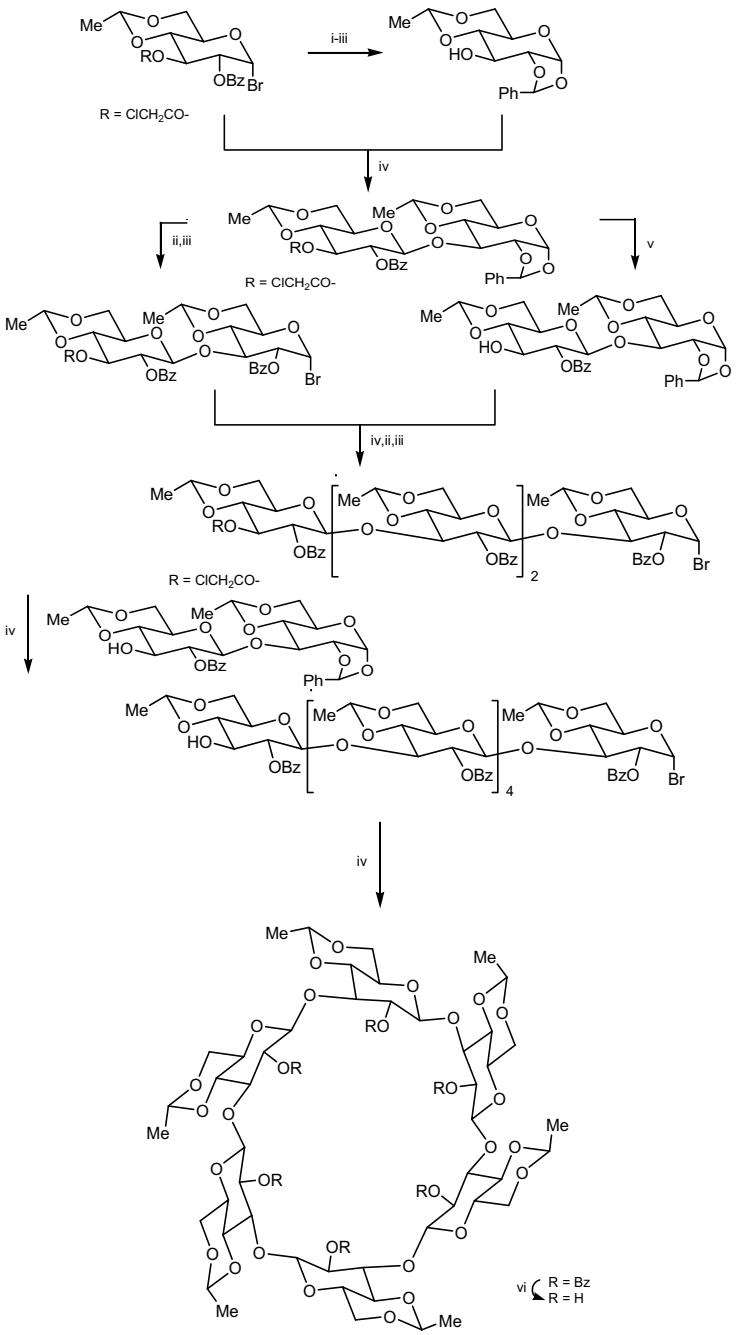


Scheme 2.176 The four suggested approaches to the synthesis of cyclic oligosaccharides

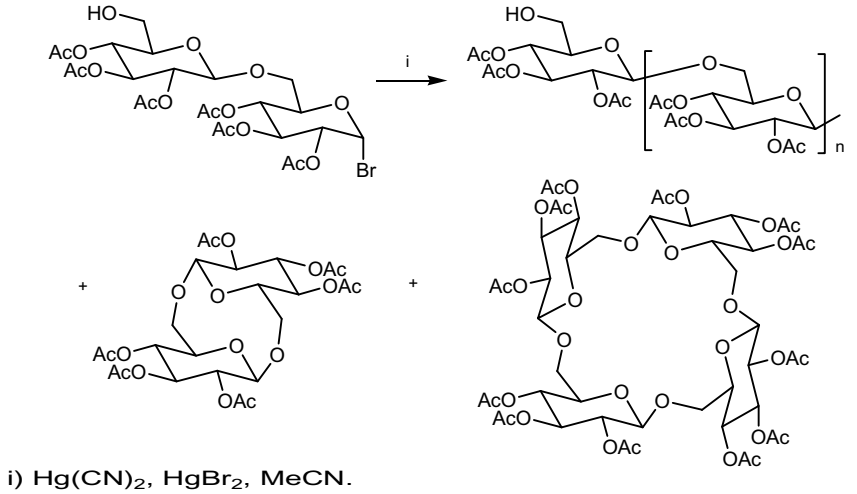
mixture of tri- and tetrasaccharide in 22% and 25% yield respectively (Scheme 2.180) [148, 211].



Scheme 2.177 Chemical synthesis of cyclic α(1 → 4)-oligosaccharide γ-CD



Scheme 2.178 Synthesis of cyclic β-(1 → 3)-linked oligosaccharide



Scheme 2.179 Preparation of linear, and cyclic β(1 → 6) di- and tetrasacharides

2.1.24.1 Chemoenzymatic and Enzymatic Synthesis

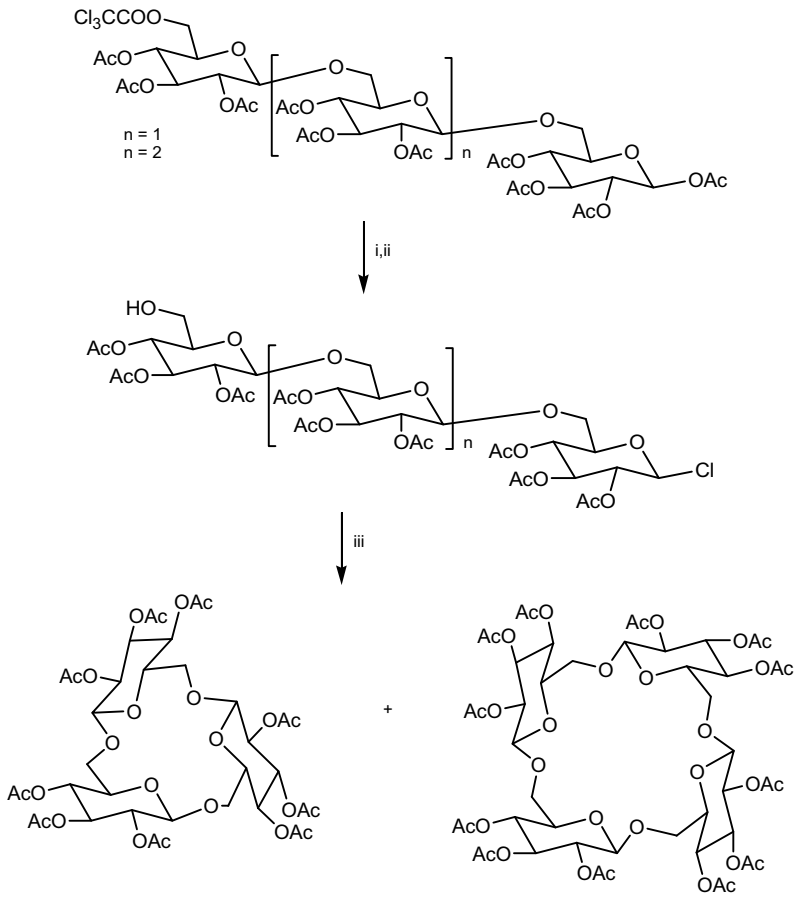
The use of enzyme is as mentioned for many O- or N-glycosides the parallel possibility for preparing cyclic oligosaccharides. The limitation continue to be the availability and affordability, however, some enzymes such as glycosidases and cycloglycosyltransferases (CGTases) which are involved in the preparation of cyclodextrins from starch and other α-(1 → 4)-glucans are accessible and more versatile [211].

The feasibility of the chemoenzymatic approach was established in the preparation of cyclic β(1 → 4) hexa-, hepta- and octasaccharides, from 6-O-methylmaltosyl fluoride when incubated with CGTase. Thus, a mixture of 6^{I}, 6^{III}, 6^{V}-tri-O-methyl-α-CD (42%), 6^{I}, 6^{III}, 6^{V}-tetra-O-methyl-γ-CD (16%) and in less proportion 6^{I}, 6^{III}, 6^{V}-tri-O-methyl-β-CD were obtained (Scheme 2.181) [171, 212].

Furthermore, under the same conditions it was possible to prepare from the maltotriosyl fluoride the cyclic α(1 → 4) hexasaccharide (6^{I}, 6^{II}-dideoxy-6^{I},6^{II}-diiodo-α-CD) in 38% (Scheme 2.182) [148, 213].

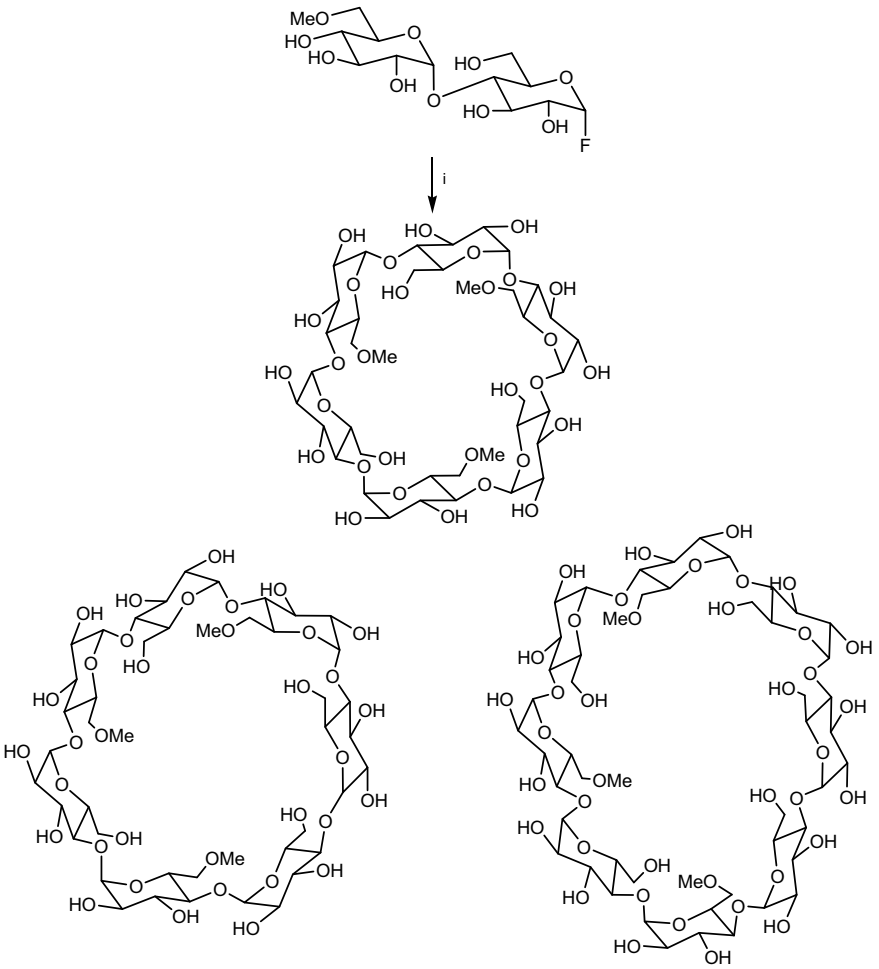
An alternative option for the enzymatic preparation of cyclic oligosaccharides besides CGTases are glycosidases which exerts his action on polysaccharides. This possibility was exploited in the preparation of cyclic fructins by conversion of β-(1 → 2)-fructofuranan by bacterial fructotransferases isolated from *Bacillus circulans* (Scheme 2.183) [214].

Summary of preparation of the main glycosyl donors

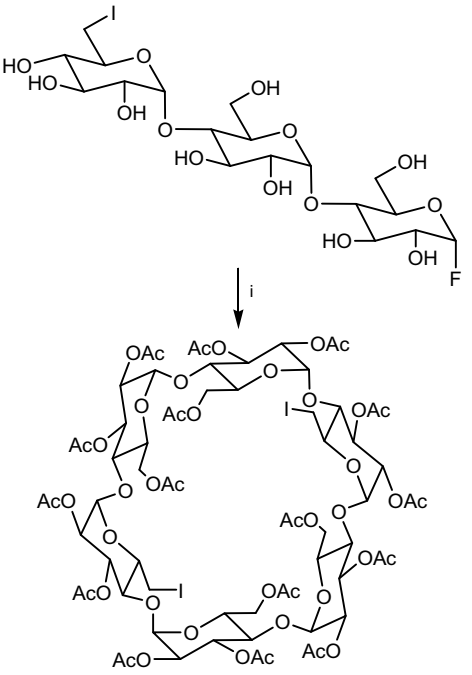


i) Cl_2CHOMe, $BF_3.Et_2O$/DCE. ii) $HgBr_2$/DCE, MS.

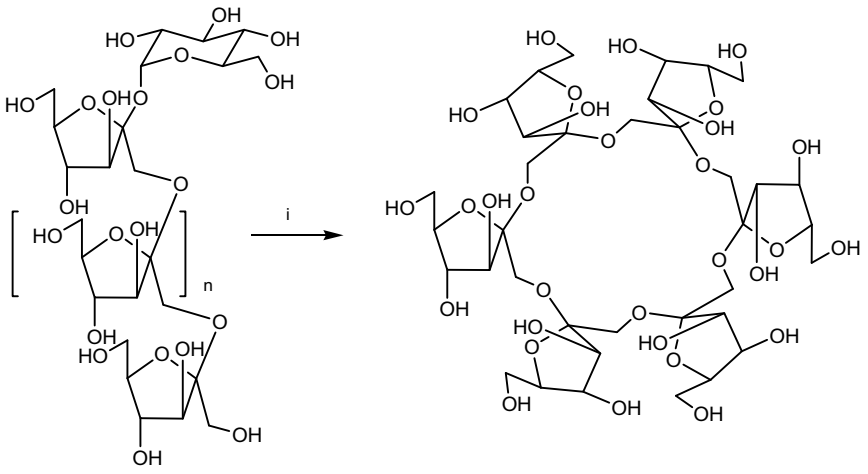
Scheme 2.180 Improved synthesis of cyclic β(1 → 6) tri- and tetrasacharides



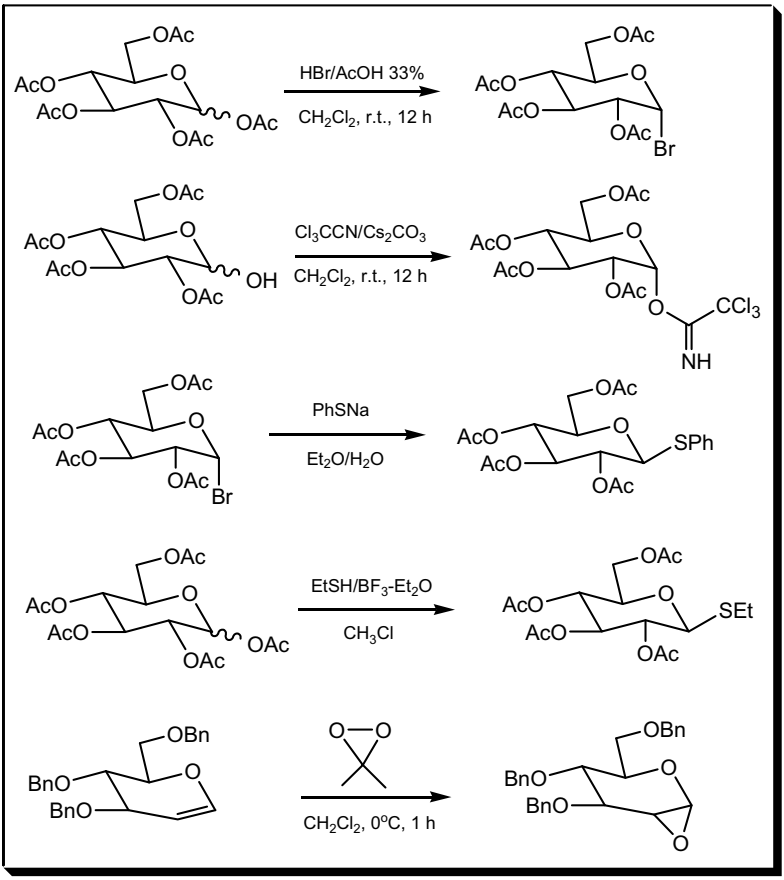
Scheme 2.181 Synthesis of of 6^{I}, 6^{III}, 6^{V}-tri-O-methyl-α-CD, 6^{I}, 6^{III}, 6^{V}-tetra-O-methyl-γ-CD and 6^{I}, 6^{III}, 6^{V}-tri-O-methyl-β-CD



Scheme 2.182 Enzymatic synthesis of 6^{I}, 6^{II}-dideoxy-6^{I},6^{II}-diiodo-α-CD



Scheme 2.183 Enzymatic synthesis of cycloinulooligosaccharides



References

1. Toshima K, Tatsuta K (1993) Recent progress in O-glycosylation methods and its application to natural product synthesis. Chem Rev 93:1503–1531
2. Anderson FB, Leaback DH (1961) Substrates for the histochemical localization of some glycosidases. Tetrahedron 12:236–239
3. Böttcher S, Hederos M, Champion E, Dekany G, Thiem J (2013) Novel efficient routes to indoxyl glycosides for monitoring glycosidase activities. Org Lett 15:3766–3769
4. Hurtado-Ponce PB, Brito-Arias M (2020) Covalent functionalization of carbon nanotubes with an Azoic O-Glycoside. Ann Rev Research 5(4):57–60
5. Aronow J, Stanetty C, Baxendale IR, Mihovilovic MD (2019) Methyl glycosides via Fischer glycosylation: translation from batch microwave to continuous flow processing. Monatsh Chem 150:11–19
6. Wessel HP (1988) Use of trifluoromethanesulfonic acid in fischer glycosylations. J Carbohydr Chem 7:263–268

7. Shearly YF, O'Dell CA, Amett G (1987) Synthesis and antiviral evaluation of carbocyclic analogs of 2-amino-6-substituted-purine 3′-deoxyribofuranosides. J Med Chem 30:1090–1094
8. Williams L, Schunck N, Götz KH, Ringwald M, Schmidt MS (2019) Systematic synthesis and characterization of a series of different bromoalkylglycosides by Fischer glycosylation. Carbohydr Res 486:107841
9. Beale TM, Taylor MS (2013) Synthesis of cardiac glycoside analogs by catalyst-controlled. Regioselective Glycosylation of Digitoxin Org Lett 15:1358–1361
10. Kaneko M, Herzon SB (2014) Scope and limitations of 2-deoxy- and 2,6-dideoxyglycosyl bromides as donors for the synthesis of β-2-deoxy- and β-2,6-dideoxyglycosides. Org Lett 16:2776–2779
11. Koenigs W, Knorr E (1901) Ueber einige Derivate des Traubenzuckers und der Galactose (p). Chem Ber 34:957–981
12. Igarashi K (1977) Advances in carbohydrate chemistry and biochemistry. Adv Carbohydr Chem Biochem 34:243–283
13. Kim J-H, Yang H, Park J, Boons G-J (2005) A general strategy for stereoselective glycosylations. J Am Chem Soc 127:12090–12097
14. De Ninno MP, McCarthy PA, Duplatiel KC, Eller C, Etienne JB, Zawistowski MP, Bangerter FW, Chandler CE, Morehouse LA, Sugarman ED, Wilkins RW, Woody HA, Zaccaro LM (1997) Steroidal glycoside cholesterol absorption inhibitors. J Med Chem 40:2547–2554
15. Conrow RB, Bernstein S (1971) Steroid conjugates. VI. Improved Koenigs-Knorr synthesis of aryl glucuronides using cadmium carbonate, a new and effective catalyst. J Org Chem 36:863–870
16. Stachulski AV, Jenkins GH (1998) The synthesis of O-glucuronides. Nat Prod Rep 173–186
17. Bredereck A, Wagner A, Kuhn H, Ott H (1960) Oligosaccharidsynthesen II. Synthesen von Di- und Trisacchariden des Gentiobiosetyps. Chem Ber 93:1201–1206
18. Bächli P, Percival EG (1952) The synthesis of laminaribiose and proof of its identity with laminaribiose isolated from laminarin. J Chem Soc 224:1243–1246
19. Khorlin AY, Privalova IM, Bystrova IB (1971) Synthesis of N-acetylneuraminyl-(2→3)- and—(2→6)-hexoses. Carbohydr Res 19:272–275
20. Paulsen H, Tietz H (1982) Synthesis of trisaccharide moieties from N-acetylneuraminic acid and N-acetyllactosamine. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 21:927–928
21. Wessel HP, Iberg N, Trumtel M, Viaud MC (1996) Selectively deoxygenated sulfated tetrasaccharides as probes for the investigation of smooth muscle cell antiproliferative activity. BioMed Chem Lett 6:27–32
22. Katano K, An H, Aoyagi Y, Overhand M, Sucheck SJ, Stevens WC Jr, Hess CD, Zhou X, Hecht SM (1998) Total synthesis of bleomycin group antibiotics. The total synthesis of bleomycin demethyl A2, bleomycin A2 and decarbamoyl bleomycin demethyl A2. J Am Chem Soc 120:11285–11296
23. Thiem J, Sajus H (2019) Improved synthesis of the Kijanimicin oligodeoxytetrasaccharide. Carbohydr Res 471(1):19–27
24. Talisman IJ, Kumar V, Razzaghy J, Malhotra SV (2011) O-Glycosidation reactions promoted by in situ generated silver N-heterocyclic carbenes in ionic liquids. Carbohyd Res 346:883–890
25. Lemieux RU, Hendriks KB, Stick RV, James K (1975) Halide ion catalyzed glycosidation reactions. Syntheses of α-linked disaccharides. J Am Chem Soc 97:4056–4062
26. Thomas M, Beale TM, Patrick J, Moon PJ, Mark S, Taylor MS (2014) Organoboron-catalyzed regio- and stereoselective formation of β-2-deoxyglycosidic linkages. Org Lett 16: 3604–3607
27. (a) Umezawa S, Koto S, Tatsuta K, Hineno H, Nishimura Y, Tsumura T (1969) Studies of aminosugars. XXI. The total synthesis of kanamycin C. Bull Chem Soc Jpn 42:529–533. (b) Hanessian S, Tremblay M, Swayze EE (2003) Tobramycin analogues with C-5 aminoalkyl ether chains intended to mimic rings III and IV of paromomycin Tetrahedron 59:983–993. (c) Tanaka H, Nishida Y, Furuta Y, Kobayashi K (2002) A convenient synthetic pathway for multivalent assembly of aminoglycoside antibiotics starting from amikacin. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 12:1723–1726

28. Roth HJ, Kleeman A (1988) Pharmaceuthical chemistry: drug synthesis v. 1 Ellis Horwood Ltd, Publisher
29. Suami T, Otake T, Nishimura T, Ikeda Y (1973) Synthesis of raffinose and an isomer Synthesis of raffinose and an isomer. Carbohyd Res 26:234–239
30. Murakami T, Hirono R, Sato Y, Furusawa K (2007) Efficient synthesis of ω-mercaptoalkyl 1,2-trans-glycosides from sugar peracetates Carbohydr Res 342: 1009–1020
31. Ferlin N, Duchet L, Kovensky J, Grand E (2008) Microwave-assisted synthesis of long-chain alkyl glucopyranosides. Carbohyd Res 343:2819–2821
32. Wei G, Lv X, Du Y (2008) $FeCl_3$-catalyzed α-glycosidation of glycosamine pentaacetates. Carbohydr Res 343:3096–3099
33. Xue JL, Cecioni S, He L, Vidal S, Praly J-P (2009) Variations on the $SnCl_4$ and CF_3CO_2Ag-promoted glycosidation of sugar acetates: a direct, versatile and apparently simple method with either α or β stereocontrol. Carbohydr Res 344:1646–1653
34. Aich U, Loganathan D (2007) Zeolite-catalyzed Helferich-type glycosylation of long-chain alcohols. Synthesis of acetylated alkyl 1,2-trans glycopyranosides and alkyl 1,2-cis C2-hydroxy-glycopyranosides. Carbohydr Res 342:704–719
35. Bagget N, Samra AK, Smithson A (1983) Synthesis of some aryl 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-l-idopyranosides and of 4-methylcoumarin-7-yl α-l-idopyranosiduronic acid. Carbohydr Res 124:63–74
36. London JA, Wang ECS, Barsukov IL, Yates EA, Stachulski AV (2021) Synthesis and toxicity profile in 293 human embryonic kidney cells of the β D-glucuronide derivatives of ortho-, meta- and para-cresol. Carbohydr Res 499:108225
37. Kumar A, Kumar V, Dere RT, Schmidt RR (2011) Glycoside bond formation via acid-base catalysis. Org Lett 13:3612–3615
38. Cox DJ, Smith MD, Fairbanks AJ (2010) Glycosylation catalyzed by a chiral Brønsted acid. Org Lett 12:1452–1455
39. Mensah EA, Azzarelli JM, Nguyen HM (2009) Palladium-controlled β-selective glycosylation in the absence of the C(2)-ester participatory group. J Org Chem 74:1650–1657
40. (a) Schmidt RR (1986) New methods for the synthesis of glycosides and oligosaccharides—are there alternatives to the Koenigs-Knorr method? Angew Chem Int Engl 25:212–235. (b) Schmidt RR, Kinzy W (1994) Anomeric-oxygen activation for glycoside synthesis: the trichloroacetimidate method. Adv Carbohydr Chem Biochem 50:21–123
41. Fürstner A, Müller T (1999) Efficient total syntheses of resin glycosides and analogues by ring-closing olefin metat. J Am Chem Soc 121:7814–7821
42. Hasegawa A, Fushimi K, Ishida H, Kiso M (1993) Syntesis of saialyl Lewis analogs conteining azidoalkyl groups at the redicing end. J Carbohydr Chem 12:1203–1216
43. Danishefsky S, Shair MD (1996) Observations in the chemistry and biology of cyclic enediyne antibiotics—total syntheses of calicheamicin gamma(i)(1) and dynemicin-a. J Org Chem 16:16–44
44. Larson DP, Heathcock CH (1997) The total synthesis of tricolorin A. J Org Chem 62:8406–8418
45. Lu SF, O'Yang QO, Guo ZW, Yu B, Hui YZ (1997) Total synthesis of tricolorin A. J Org Chem 62:8400–8405
46. Brito-Arias M, Pereda-Miranda R, Heathcock CH (2004) Synthesis of tricolorin F. J Org Chem 69:4567–4570
47. (a) Boons GJ, Isles S, (1996) Vinyl glycosides in oligosaccharide synthesis. 2. The use of allyl and vinyl glycosides in oligosaccharide synthesis. J Org Chem 61:4262–4264. (b) Boons G-J (1996) Contemp Org Synth 3:173–200
48. (a) Komba S, Galustian H, Ishida H, Feizi T, Kannagi R, Kiso M (1999) The first total synthesis of 6-sulfo-de-N-acetylsialyl Lewis x Ganglioside: a superior ligand for human L-selectin. Angew Chem Int Ed 38:1131–1133. (b) Zhang Y, Brodsky A, Sinay P (1998) Synthesis of mono-, di- and trisulfated Lewis x trisaccharides. Tetrahedron: Asymmetry 9:2451–2464. (c) Hasegawa A, Ito K, Ishida H, Kiso M (1995) Synthetic studies on sialoglycoconjugates 70: synthesis of sialyl and sulfo lewis× analogs containing a ceramide or 2-(Tetradecyl)hexadecyl residue. J Carbohydr Chem 14:353–368

49. (a) Koenig A, Jain R, Vig R, Norgard-Sumnicht KE, Matta KL, Varki A (1997) Selectin inhibition: synthesis and evaluation of novel sialylated, sulfated and fucosylated oligosaccharides, including the major capping group of GlyCAM-1. Glycobiology 7:79–93. (b) Sanders WJ, Gordon EJ, Dwir O, Beck PJ, Alon R, Kiessling LL (1999) Inhibition of L-selectin-mediated Leukocyte rolling by synthetic glycoprotein mimics. J Biol Chem 274:5271–5278
50. Lubineau A, Alais J, Lemoine R (2000) Synthesis of 3e- and 6e-monosulfated and 3e,6e-disulfated Lewis x pentasaccharides, candidate ligands for human L-selectin. J Carbohydr Chem 19:151–169
51. Nicolaou KC, Ohshima T, van Delft FL, Vourloumis D, Xu JY, Pfefferkorn J, Kim S (1998) Total synthesis of eleutherobin and eleuthosides A and B. J Am Chem Soc 120:8674–8680
52. Chang S-S, Lin Ch-Ch, Li Y-K, Mong K-KT (2009) A straightforward α-selective aromatic glycosylation and its application for stereospecific synthesis of 4-methylumbelliferyl α-T-antigen. Carbohydr Res 344:432–438
53. Ludek O, Gu W, Gildersleeve JC (2010) Activation of glycosyl trichloroacetimidates with perchloric acid on silica ($HClO_4$–SiO_2) provides enhanced α-selectivity. Carbohydr Res 345:2074–2078
54. Park NH, Nguyen HM (2009) Stereoselective rearrangement of trichloroacetimidates: application to the synthesis of r-glycosyl ureas. Org Lett 11:2433–2436
55. Chen J, Zhou Y, Chen C, Xu W, Yu B (2008) Synthesis of a tetrasaccharide substrate of heparanase. Carbohyd Res 343:2853–2862
56. Lian G, Gao Q, Lin F (2008) Synthesis of fructofuranosides: efficient glycosylation with N-phenyltrifluoroacetimidate as the leaving group. Carbohydr Res 343:2992–2996
57. Wang L, Overkleeft HS, van der Marel GA, Codeé JDC (2018) Controlled stereoselective synthesis of α-glucans. J Am Chem Soc 140(13):4632–4638
58. Heuckendorff M, Jensen HH (2017) Removal of some common glycosylation by-products during reaction work-up. Carbohydr Res 439:50–56
59. Chu A-HA, Nguyen SH, Sisel JA, Minciunescu A, Bennett CS (2013) Selective synthesis of 1,2-*cis*-α-glycosides without directing groups. Application to iterative oligosaccharide synthesis. Org Lett 15:2566–2569
60. Imamura A, Lowary T (2010) β-selective arabinofuranosylation using a 2,3-O-xylylene-protected donor. Org Lett 12:3686–3689
61. Lonn H (1985) Synthesis of a tetra- and a nona-saccharide which contain α-l-fucopyranosyl groups and are part of the complex type of carbohydrate moiety of glycoproteins. Carbohydr Res 139:115–121
62. Ley SV, Priepke HWM (1994) A facile one-pot synthesis of a trisaccharide unit from the common polysaccharide antigen of group B streptococci using cyclohexane-1, 2-diacetal (CDA) protected rhamnosides. Angew Chem Int Engl 33:2292–2294
63. Boons G-J, Demchenko AV (2000) Recent advances in O-sialylation. Chem Rev 100:4539–4566
64. Paul S, Jayaraman N (2007) Synthesis of aryl-2-deoxy-d-lyxo/arabino-hexopyranosides from 2-deoxy-1-thioglycosides. Carbohydr Res 342:1305–1314
65. Hotta K, Ishida H, Kiso M, Hasegawa A (1995) Synthetic studies on sialoglycoconjugates 66: first total synthesis of a cholinergic neuron-specific ganglioside GQ1bα1 14:491–506
66. Crich D, Li H (2000) Synthesis of the Salmonella type E(1) core trisaccharide as a probe for the generality of 1-(benzenesulfinyl)piperidine/triflic anhydride combination for glycosidic bond formation from thioglycosides. J Org Chem 67:4640–4646
67. Lu Y-S, Li Q, Zhang L-H Ye X-S (2010) Highly direct α-selective glycosylations of 3,4-O-carbonate-protected 2-deoxy- and 2,6-dideoxythioglycosides by preactivation protocol. Org Lett 10:3445–3448
68. Yamago S, Yamada T, Maruyama T, Yoshida J (2004) Iterative glycosylation of 2-deoxy-2-aminothioglycosides and its application to the combinatorial synthesis of linear oligoglucosamines. Angew Chem Int Ed 43:2145–2148
69. Jing Y, Huang X (2004) Fluorous thiols in oligosaccharide synthesis. Tetrahedron Lett 45:4615–4618

70. Galan MC, Jouvin K, Alvarez-Dorta D (2010) Scope and limitations of imidazolium-based ionic liquids as room temperature glycosylation promoters. Carbohyd Res 345:45–49
71. Lourenço EC, Ventura MR (2011) The synthesis of compatible solute analogues—solvent effects on selective glycosylation. Carbohydr Res 346:163–168.
72. Smith R, Müller-Bunz H, Zhu X (2016) Investigation of α-thioglycoside donors: reactivity studies toward configuration-controlled orthogonal activation in one-pot systems. Org Lett 18(15):3578–3581
73. Chu A-HA, Minciunescu A, Montanari V, Kumar K, Bennett CS (2014) An air- and water-stable iodonium salt promoter for facile thioglycoside activation. Org Lett 16:1780–1782
74. Hongwen He H, Xiangming Zhu X (2014) Thioperoxide-mediated activation of thioglycoside donors. Org Lett 16:3102–3105
75. Chu A-HA, Nguyen SH, Sisel JA, Minciunescu A, Bennett CS (2013) Selective synthesis of 1,2-cis-R-glycosides without directing groups. Application to iterative oligosaccharide synthesis. Org Lett 15:2566–2569
76. Nokami T, Nozaki Y, Saigusa Y, Shibuya A, Manabe S, Ito Y, Yoshida J (2011) Glycosyl sulfonium ions as storable intermediates for glycosylations. Org Lett 13:1544–1547
77. Zheng Z, Zhang L (2019) Gold-catalyzed synthesis of α-D-glucosides using an o-ethynylphenyl β-D-1-thioglucoside donor. Carbohydr Res 471:56–63
78. Hoang KM, Lees NR, Herzon SB (2019) Programmable synthesis of 2-deoxyglycosides. J Am Chem Soc 141:8098–8103
79. Xiao X, Zeng J, Fang J, Sun J, Li T, Song Z, Cai L, Wan Q (2020) One-pot relay glycosylation. J Am Chem Soc 142(12):5498–5503
80. Kabotso DEK, Pohl NLB (2017) Pentavalent bismuth as a universal promoter for s-containing glycosyl donors with a Thiol additive. Org Lett 19(17):4516–4519
81. Park TJ, Weïwer M, Yuan X, Baytas SN, Munoz EM, Murugesan S, Linhardt RJ (2007) Glycosylation in room temperature ionic liquid using unprotected and unactivated donors. Carbohyd Res 342:614–620
82. Delacroix S, Bonnet J-P, Courty M, Postel D, Van Nhien AN (2013) Glycosylation mediated—BAIL in aqueous solution. Carbohydr Res 381:12–18
83. Schmalisch S, Mahrwald R (2013) Organocatalyzed direct glycosylation of unprotected and unactivated carbohydrates. Org Lett 15:5854–5857
84. Pfaffe M, Mahrwald R (2012) Direct glycosylation of unprotected and unactivated carbohydrates under mild conditions. Org Lett 14:792–795
85. Meng B, Zhu Z, Baker DC (2014) 1,2-cis Alkyl glycosides: straightforward glycosylation from unprotected 1-thioglycosyl donors. Org Biomol Chem 28:5182–91
86. Gudmundsdottir AV, Nitz M (2008) Protecting group free glycosidations using p-toluenesulfonohydrazide donors. Org Lett 10:3461–3463
87. Mamidyala SK, Finn MG (2009) Glycosylation using unprotected alkynyl donors. J Org Chem 74:8417–8420
88. Qiu X, Fairbanks AJ (2020) Direct synthesis of para-nitrophenyl glycosides from reducing sugars in water. Org Lett 22(6):2490–2493
89. Cheetham NWH, Tran TD (2020) Direct formation and isolation of unprotected α-and β-D-ribopyranosyl urea, α-and β-D-ribofuranosyl urea, and a ribosyl-1,2-cyclic carbamate in carbohydrate melts. Carbohydr Res 492:108021
90. Ichikawa Y, Kaneno D, Saeki N, Minami T, Masuda T, Yoshida K, Kondo T, Ochi R (2021) Protecting group-free method for synthesis of *N*-glycosyl carbamates and an assessment of the anomeric effect of nitrogen in the carbamate group. Carbohydr Res 505:108280
91. Pelletier G, Zwicker A, Allen CL, Schepartz A, Miller SJ (2016) Aqueous glycosylation of unprotected sucrose employing glycosyl fluorides in the presence of calcium ion and trimethylamine. J Am Chem Soc 138(9):3175–3182
92. Mootoo DR, Konradsson P, Udodong U, Fraser-Reid B (1988) Synthesis of the tetrasaccharide motif and its structural analog corresponding to the lipopolysaccharide of *Escherichia coli* O75. J Am Chem Soc 110:5583–5584

93. Codee JDC, Litjens REJN, den Heeten R, Overkleeft HS, van Boom JN, van der Marel GA (2003) Ph_2SO/Tf_2O: a powerful promotor system in chemoselective glycosylations using thioglycosides. Org Lett 5:1519–1522
94. Yoshida M, Kiyoi T, Tsukida T, Kondo H (1998) One-pot synthesis of lewis x oligosaccharide derivatives using armed-disarmed coupling method. J Carbohydr Chem 17:673–681
95. Demchenko AV, Malysheva NN, De Meo C (2003) S-Benzoxazolyl (SBox) glycosides as novel, versatile glycosyl donors for stereoselective 1,2-cis glycosylation. Org Lett 5:455–458
96. Heuckendorff M, Jensen HH (2018) DIDMH in combination with triflic acid—a new promoter system for thioglycoside glycosyl donors. Carbohydr Res 455:86–91
97. Fischer E, Zach K (1913) Sitz. ber. kgl. preuss. Akad Wiss 16:311
98. Freiser-Reid B, Kelly DR, Tulshian DB, Ravi PS (1983) Routes from "Triacetyl Glucal" to 6-deoxy-Hex-2-enopyranosides. J Carbohydr Chem 2:105–114
99. Shull BK, Wu Z, Koreeda M (1996) A convenient, highly efficient one-pot preparation of peracetylated glycals from reducing sugars. J Carbohydr Chem 15:955–964
100. Murray RW, Jeyaraman R (1985) Dioxiranes—synthesis and reactions of methyldioxiranes. J Org Chem 50:2847–2853
101. Adam W, Bialas J, Hadjiarapoglou L (1991) A convenient preparation of acetone solutions of dimethyldioxirane. Chem Ber 124:2377–2378
102. Marzabadi CH, Spilling CD (1993) Stereoselective glucal epoxide formation. J Org Chem 58:3761–3766
103. Belluci G, Catelani G, Chiappe C, D'Andrea F (1994) A simple and highly diastereoselective preparation of glycal epoxides using the MCPBA-KF complex. Tetrahedron Lett 35:8433–8436
104. Du Y, Kong F (1995) Stereoselective glycosylation of fully benzylated 1,2- and 1,3-anhydrosugar- pyranose with protected serine methyl ester. J Carbohydr Chem 14:341–352
105. Halcomb RL, Danishefsky SJ (1989) On the direct epoxidation of glycals: application of a reiterative strategy for the synthesis of β-linked oligosaccharides. J Am Chem Soc 111:6661–6666
106. Upreti M, Ruhela D, Vishwakarma RA (2000) Synthesis of the tetrasaccharide cap domain of the antigenic cell surface Lipophosphoglycan of *Leishmania donovani* parasite. Tetrahedron 56:6577–6584
107. (a) Broddefalk J, Bergquist KE, Kihlberg J (1996) Preparation of a glycopeptide analogue of type II collagen—use of acid labile protective groups for carbohydrate moieties in solid phase synthesis of O-linked glycopeptides. Tetrahedron Lett 37:3011–3014. (b) Broddefalk J, Bäcklund J, Almqvist F, Johansson M, Holmdahl R, Kilhberg J (1998) T cells recognize a glycopeptide derived from type II collagen in a model for rheumatoid arthritis. J Am Chem Soc 120:7676–7683
108. Kunz H (1987) Synthesis of glycopeptides, partial structures of biological recognition components [New synthetic methods (67)]. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 26:294–308
109. Li Y, Tang P, Chen Y, Yu B (2008) Gold(I)-catalyzed glycosidation of 1,2-anhydrosugars. J Org Chem 73:4323–4325
110. Cui X-K, Zhong M, Meng X-B, Li Z-J (2012) The synthesis of 2-deoxy-α-d-glycosides from D-glycals catalyzed by TMSI and PPh_3. Carbohydr Res 358:19–22
111. Procopio A, Dalpozzo R, De Nino A, Maiuolo L, Nardi M, Oliverio M, Russo B (2007) A facile Er(OTf)3-catalyzed synthesis of 2,3-unsaturated O- and S-glycosides. Carbohydr Res 342:2125–2131
112. Wong CH, Ichikawa Y, Krach T, Gautheron-Le Narvor C, Dumas DP, Look GC (1991) Probing the acceptor specificity of .beta.-1,4-galactosyltransferase for the development of enzymatic synthesis of novel oligosaccharides. J Am Chem Soc 113:8137–8145
113. Tanaka M, Nakagawa A, Nishi N, Iijima K, Sawa R, Takahashi D, Toshima K (2018) Boronic-acid-catalyzed regioselective and 1,2-cis-stereoselective glycosylation of unprotected sugar acceptors via SNi-type mechanism. J Am Chem Soc 140:3644−3651
114. Hu Y, Yu K, Shi L-L, Liu L, Sui J-J, Liu D-Y, Xiong B, Sun J-S (2017) o-(p-Methoxyphenylethynyl)phenyl glycosides: versatile new glycosylation donors for the highly efficient construction of glycosidic linkages. J Am Chem Soc 139:12736−12744

115. -Hu Z, Tang Y, Yu B (2019) Glycosylation with 3,5-dimethyl-4-(2′-phenylethynylphenyl)phenyl (EPP) glycosides via a dearomative activation mechanism. J Am Chem Soc 141(12):4806–4810
116. Mi X, Lou Q, Fan W, Zhuang L, Yang Y (2017) Gold(I)-catalysed synthesis of β-Kdo glycosides using Kdo orthohexynylbenzoate as donor. Carbohydr Res 448:161–165
117. Zhang Y, Xiang G, He S, Hu Y, Liu Y, Xu L, Xiao G (2019) Orthogonal one-pot synthesis of oligosaccharides based on glycosyl ortho-alkynylbenzoates. Org Lett 21:2335−2339
118. Liu X, Wen G-E, Liu J-C, Liao J-X, Sun J-S (2019) Total synthesis of scutellarin and apigenin 7-O-β-d-glucuronide. Carbohydr Res 475:69–73
119. Wang Z, Hua Q, Yang Y (2019) Gold(I)-promoted synthesis of a β-(1,3)-glucan hexadecasaccharide via the highly convergent strategy. Carbohydr Res 482:107735
120. Shimizu M, Togo H, Yokohama M (1998) Chemistry of glycosyl fluorides. Synthesis 6:799–822
121. Morita M, Natori T, Akimoto K, Osawa T, Fukushima H, Koezuka Y (1995) Synthesis of a-, b-monoglycosylceramides and four diastereomers of an a-galactosylceramide. BioMed Chem Lett 5:699–701
122. Mukaiyama T, Hashimoto Y, Shoda S (1983) Stereoselective synthesis of 1,2-cis-glycofuranosides using glycofuranosyl fluorides. Chem Lett 935–938
123. Nicolaou KC, Bockovich NJ, Carcanague DR (1993) Total synthesis of sulfated Lex and Lea-type oligosaccharide selectin ligands. J Am Chem Soc 115:8843–8844
124. Sati GC, Martin JL, Xu Y, Malakar T, Zimmerman PM, Montgomery J (2020) Fluoride migration catalysis enables simple, stereoselective, and iterative glycosylation. J Am Chem Soc 142(15):7235–7242
125. Seydlová G, Pohl R, Zborníkova E, Ehn M, Simak O, Panova N, Kolař M, Bogdanova K, Veceřova R, Fiser R, Šanderova H, Vítovska D, Sudzinova P, Pospísil J, Benada O, Křížek T, Sedlak D, Bartu˚nek P, Krasny´L, Rejman D (2017) Lipophosphonoxins II: design, synthesis, and properties of novel broad spectrum antibacterial agents. J Med Chem 60:6098−6118
126. Hirano S, Ichikawa S, Matsuda A (2007) Development of a highly β-selective ribosylation reaction without using neighboring group participation: total synthesis of (+)-caprazol, a core structure of caprazamycins. J Org Chem 72:9936–9946
127. (a) Thiem J, Wiesner M (2020) Glycosylation employing glycopyranosyl fluorides promoted by TiF_4 under mild conditions. J Carbohydr Chem 39(8):398–414. (b) Nielsen MM, Pedersen CM (2018) Catalytic glycosylations in oligosaccharides synthesis. Chem Rev 118:8285–8358. (c) Cresswell AJ, Davies SG, Roberts PM, Thomson JE (2015) Beyond the Balz–Schiemann reaction: the utility of tetrafluoroborates and boron trifluoride as nucleophilic fluoride sources. Chem Rev 115(2):566–611
128. Murakami T, Sato Y, Shibakami M (2008) Stereoselective glycosylations using benzoylated glucosyl halides with inexpensive promoters. Carbohyd Res 343:1297–1308
129. Walvoort MTC, Dinkelaar J, van den Bos LJ, Lodder G, Overkleeft HS, Codée JDC, van der Marel GA (2010) The impact of oxacarbenium ion conformers on the stereochemical outcome of glycosylations. Carbohyd Res 345:1252–1263
130. Bohé L, Crich D (2015) A propos of glycosyl cations and the mechanism of chemical glycosylation; the current state of the art. Carbohydr Res 403:48–59
131. Meloncelli P, Martin AD, Lowary TL (2009) Glycosyl iodides. History and recent advances. Carbohydr Res 344:1110–1122
132. Uchiyama T, Hindsgaul OJ (1998) Rapid conversion of unprotected galactose. Carbohydr Chem 17:1181–1190
133. Harding JR, King CD, Perrie JA, Sinnott D, Stachulski A (2005) Glucuronidation of steroidal alcohols using iodosugar and imidate donors V. Org Biomol Chem 3:1501–1507
134. Kulkarni SS, Gervay-Hague J (2008) Two-step synthesis of the immunogenic bacterial glycolipid BbGL1. Org Lett 10:4739–4742
135. Bickley J, Cottrell JA, Ferguson JR, Field RA, Harding JR, Hughes DL, Kartha KPR, Law JL, Schienmann F, Stachulski A (2003) Preparation, X-ray structure and reactivity of a stable glycosyl iodide. Chem Commun 1266–1267

136. Ko Y-J, Shim S-B, Shin J-H (2009) Facile synthesis of 2-O-iodoacetyl protected glycosyl iodides: useful precursors of 1→2-Linked 1,2-trans-glycosides. Org Lett 11:609–612
137. Tietze LF, Fischer R (1983) Stereoselective synthesis of iridoid glycosides. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 22:888
138. Coteron JM, Singh K, Asensio JL, Domingues-Dalda M, Fernandez-Mayoralis A, Jimenez-Barbero J, Martin-Lomas M (1995) Oligosaccharides structurally related to e-selectin ligands are inhibitors of neural cell division: synthesis, conformational analysis, and biological activity. J Org Chem 60:1502–1519
139. Hanashima S, Tomiya T, Ishikawa D, Akai S, Sato K (2009) Sialylation using N-glycolylneuraminyl phosphite donors to synthesize Neu5Gc-containing glycans. Carbohydr Res 344:959–965
140. Li Q, Levi SM, Jacobsen EN (2020) Highly selective β-mannosylations and β-rhamnosylations catalyzed by bis-thiourea. J Am Chem Soc 142:11865−11872
141. Dey S, Lo H-J, Wong C-H (2019) An efficient modular one-pot synthesis of heparin-based anticoagulant idraparinux. J Am Chem Soc 141:10309−10314
142. (a) Burkhart F, Zhang Z, Wacowich-Sgarbi S, Wong CH (2001) Synthesis of the globo H hexasaccharide using the programmable reactivity-based one-pot strategy. Angew Chem Int Ed 40:1274–1277
143. Nilsson KG (1987) A simple strategy for changing the regioselectivity of glycosidase-catalysed formation of disaccharides. Carbohydr Res 167:95–103
144. Freeman GA, Shauer SR, Rideout JL, Short SA (1995) 2-amino-9-(3-azido-2,3-dideoxy-beta-d-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-6-substitute d-9H-purines. Synthesis and anti-HIV activity. Bioorg Med Chem 3:447–458
145. Simon ES, Grabowski S, Whitesides GM (1990) Convenient synthesis of cytidine 5′-triphosphate, guanosine 5′-triphosphate, and uridine 5′-triphosphate and their use in the preparation of UDP-glucose, UDP-glucuronic acid, and GDP-mannose. J Org Chem 55:1834–1841
146. O'Neill EC, Field RA (2015) Enzymatic synthesis using glycoside phosphorylases. Carbohydr Res 403:23–37
147. Ichikawa Y, Shen GJ, Wong C-H (1991) Enzyme-catalyzed synthesis of sialyl oligosaccharide with in situ regeneration of CMP-sialic acid. J Am Chem Soc 113:4698–4700
148. Gaudino JJ, Paulson JC (1994) A novel and efficient synthesis of neolacto series gangliosides 3′-nLM1 and 6′-nLM1. J Am Chem Soc 116:1149–1150
149. Agusti R, Gallo-Rodriguez C, de Lederkremer RM (2019) *Trypanosoma cruzi* trans-sialidase. A tool for the synthesis of sialylated oligosaccharides. Carbohydr Res 479:48–58
150. Heidlas JE, Lees WJ, Pale P, Whitesides GM (1992) Gram-scale synthesis of uridine 5′-diphospho-N-acetylglucosamine: comparison of enzymic and chemical routes. J Org Chem 57:146–151
151. Toone EJ, Simon ES, Whitesides GM (1991) Enzymatic synthesis of uridine 5′-diphosphoglucuronic acid on a gram scale. J Org Chem 56:5603–5606
152. Liu JLC, Shen G-J, Ichikawa Y, Rutan JF, Zapata G, Vann WF, Wong C-H (1992) Overproduction of CMP-sialic acid synthetase for organic synthesis. J Am Chem Soc 114:3901–3910
153. Mackenzie LFQ, Wang Q, Warren RAJ, Whiters SG (1998) Glycosynthases: mutant glycosidases for oligosaccharide synthesis. J Am Chem Soc 120:5583–5584
154. Drueckhammer DG, Hennen WJ, Pederson RL, Barbas III CF, Gautheron CM, Krach T, Wong C-H (1991) Enzyme catalysis in synthetic carbohydrate chemistry. Synthesis 499–525
155. Zeng X, Murata T, Usui T (2003) Glycosidase-catalyzed synthesis of fucosyl di- and trisaccharide derivatives using α-l-fucosidase from Alcaligenes sp. J Carbohydr Chem 22:309–316
156. Cook BN, Bhakta S, Biegel T, Bowman KG, Armstrong JI, Hemmerich S, Bertozzi CR (2000) Differential carbohydrate recognition of two GlcNAc-6-sulfotransferases with possible roles in L-selectin ligand biosynthesis. J Am Chem Soc 122:8612–8622
157. Akita H, Kawahara E, Kato K (2004) Chemoenzymatic synthesis of rhodiooctanoside isolated from Chinese medicines, rhodiolae radix. Tetrahedron Asymmetry 15:1623–1629

158. Wong CH, Halcomb RL, Ichikawa Y, Kajimoto T (1995) Enzymes in organic synthesis: application to the problems of carbohydrate recognition (Part 2). Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 34:521–546
159. Marton Z, Tran V, Tellier C, Dion M, Drone J, Rabiller C (2008) Engineering of glucoside acceptors for the regioselective synthesis of β-(1→3)-disaccharides with glycosynthases. Carbohydr Res 343:2939–2946
160. Wilkinson SM, Liew ChW, Mackay JP, Salleh HM, Withers SG, McLeod MD (2008) *Escherichia coli* glucuronylsynthase: an engineered enzyme for the synthesis of β-glucuronides. Org Lett 10:1585–1588
161. Gagarinov IA, Li T, Sastre Toraño J, Caval T, Srivastava AD, Kruijtzer JAW, Heck AJR, Boons G-J (2017) Chemoenzymatic approach for the preparation of asymmetric bi-, tri-, and tetra-antennary N-glycans from a common precursor. J Am Chem Soc 139(2):1011–1018
162. (a) Nicolaou KC, Watanabe N, Li J, Pastor J, Winssinger N (1998) Solid-phase synthesis of oligosaccharides: construction of a dodecasaccharide. Angew Chem Int Ed 37:1559–1561. (b) Nicolaou KC, Winssinger N, Pastor J, De Roose F (1997) A general and highly efficient solid phase synthesis of oligosaccharides. Total synthesis of a heptasaccharide phytoalexin elicitor (HPE). J Am Chem Soc 119:449–450. (c) Wong CH, Ye XS, Zhang Z (1998) Assembly of oligosaccharide libraries with a designed building block and an efficient orthogonal protection−deprotection strategy. J Am Chem Soc 120:7137–7138
163. Mitchell SA, Pratt MR, Hruby UJ, Polt R (2001) Solid-phase synthesis of O-linked glycopeptide analogues of enkephalin. J Org Chem 66:2327–2342
164. Seeberger PH, Haase WC (2000) Solid-phase oligosaccharide synthesis and combinatorial carbohydrate libraries. Chem Rev 100:4349–4394
165. Sears P, Wong CH (2001) Toward automated synthesis of oligosaccharides and glycoproteins. Science 291:2344–2350
166. Crich D, Smith M (2002) Solid-phase synthesis of β-mannosides. J Am Chem Soc 124:8867–8869
167. Walvoort MTC, Volbeda AG, Reintjens NRM, van den Elst H, Plante OJ, Overkleeft HS, van der Marel GA, Codée JDC (2012) Automated solid-phase synthesis of hyaluronan oligosaccharides. Org Lett 14:3776–3779
168. Joseph AA, Pardo-Vargas A, Seeberger PH (2020) Total synthesis of polysaccharides by automated glycan assembly. J Am Chem Soc 142(19):8561–8564
169. Feng Y, Wu J, Chen G, Chai Y (2020) Fast and low-cost purification strategy for oligosaccharide synthesis based on a hop-on/off carrier. Org Lett 22(7):2564–2568
170. Kohout VR, Pirinellia AL, Pohl NLB (2019) Acid-mediated N-iodosuccinimide-based thioglycoside activation for the automated solution-phase synthesis of α-1,2-linked-rhamnopyranosides. Pure Appl Chem 91(7):1243–1255
171. Gijsen HJM, Qiao L, Fitz W, Wong CH (1996) Recent advances in the chemoenzymatic synthesis of carbohydrates and carbohydrate mimetics. Chem Rev 96:443–474
172. Metha S, Pinto MB (1993) Phenylselenoglycosides as novel, versatile glycosyl donors and acceptors in oligosaccharide synthesis. J Org Chem 58:3269–3276
173. Sobti A, Kim K, Solikowski GA (1996) Application of glycosyltetrazoles in oligosaccharide synthesis—assembly of the c3 trisaccharide component of the antibiotic PI-080. J Org Chem 61:6–7
174. Takeda K, Kaji E, Nakamura H, Akiyama A, Konda A, Mizuno Y, Takayanagi H, Harigaya Y (1996) Synthesis of 2-amino-2-deoxy-d-hexopyranoside-containing disaccharides involving glycosylation and [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement. Synthesis 341–348
175. Garcia DM, Yamada H, Hatakeyama S, Nishikawa M (1994) Total synthesis of arthrobacilin A. Tetrahedron Lett 35:3325–3328
176. Nagai H, Matsumura S, Toshima K (2002) Environmentally benign and stereoselective formation of β-O-glycosidic linkages using benzyl-protected glucopyranosyl phosphite and montmorillonite K-10. Tetrahedron Lett 43:847–850
177. Toshima K, Nakai H, Matsumura S (1999) Novel dehydrative glycosidations of 1-hydroxy sugars using a heteropoly acid. Synlett 9:1420–1422

178. Toshima K, Kasumi K, Matsumura S (1999) Novel stereocontrolled glycosidations of 2-deoxyglucopyranosyl fluoride using a heterogeneous solid acid, sulfated zirconia (SO_4/ZrO_2). Synlett 6:813–815
179. Oikawa M, Tanaka T, Fukuda N, Kusumoto S (2004) One-pot preparation and activation of glycosyl trichloroacetimidates: operationally simple glycosylation induced by combined use of solid-supported, reactivity-opposing reagents. Tetrahedron Lett 45:4039–4042
180. Shirahata T, Matsuo J-i, Teruya S, Hirata N, Kurimoto T, Akimoto N, Sunazuka T, Kaji E, Ōmura S (2010) Improved catalytic and stereoselective glycosylation with glycosyl N-trichloroacetylcarbamate: application to various 1-hydroxy sugars. Carbohydr Res 345:740–749
181. Issa JP, Lloyd D, Steliotes E, Bennett CS (2013) Reagent controlled β-specific dehydrative glycosylation reactions with 2-deoxy-sugars. Org Lett 15:4170–4173
182. Tian Q, Xu L, Ma X, Zou W, Shao H (2010) Stereoselective synthesis of 2-C-acetonyl-2-deoxy-d-galactosides using 1,2-cyclopropaneacetylated sugar as novel glycosyl donor. Org Lett 12:540–543
183. Fortin M, Kaplan J, Pham K, Kirk S, Andrade RB (2009) *gem*-dimethyl 4-pentenyl glycosides: novel glycosylating agents and anomeric protecting groups. Org Lett 11:3594–3597
184. (a) Xiao X, Zhao Y, Shu P, Zhao X, Liu Y, Sun J, Zhang Q, Zeng J, Wan Q (2016) Remote activation of disarmed thioglycosides in latent-active glycosylation via interrupted pummerer reaction. J Am Chem Soc 138(40):13402–13407. (b) Zhao Y, Zeng J, Liu Y, Xiao X, Sun G, Sun J, Shu P, Fu D, Meng L, Wan Q (2018) J Carbohydr Chem 37(9):471–497
185. Palanivel A, Chennaiah A, Dubbu S, Mallick A, Vankar Y (2017) $AuCl_3$-AgOTf promoted O-glycosylation using anomeric sulfoxides as glycosyl donors at room temperature. Carbohydr Res 437:43–49
186. Sangwanab R, Kumar P, Mandal P (2017) Recent advances in photoinduced glycosylation: oligosaccharides, glycoconjugates and their synthetic applications. RSC Adv 7:26,256–26,321
187. Zhao G, Wang T (2018) Stereoselective synthesis of 2-deoxyglycosidesfrom glycals by visible-light-induced photoacid catalysis. Angew Chem Int Ed 57:6120–6124
188. Zhao G, Yao W, Mauro JN, Ngai M-Y (2021) Excited-state palladium-catalyzed 1,2-spin-center shift enables selective C-2 reduction deuteration, and iodination of carbohydrates. J Am Chem Soc 143(4):1728–1734
189. Perona A, Hoyos P, Farrán A, Hernáiz MJ (2020) Current challenges and future perspectives in sustainable mechanochemical transformations of carbohydrates. Green Chem 22:5559–5583
190. Kumar V, Yadav N, Kartha KPR (2014) In(III) triflate-catalyzed detritylation and glycosylation by solvent-free ball milling. Carbohydr Res 397:1826
191. Yano K, Itoh T, Nokami T (2020) Total synthesis of Myc-IV(C16:0, S) via automated electrochemical assembly. Carbohydr Res 492:108018
192. Triantis V, Bode L, van Neerven RJJ (2018) Immunological effects of human milk oligosaccharides. Front Pediatr 6:1–14
193. Mettu R, Chen C-Y, Wu C-Y (2020) Synthetic carbohydrate-based vaccines: challenges and opportunities. J Biomed Sc 27(9):1–22
194. Wang Q, Guo Z (2011) Synthetic and immunological studies of sTn derivatives carrying substituted phenylacetylsialic acids as cancer vaccine candidate. ACS Med Chem Lett 2(5):373–378
195. Bian C-F, Zhang Y, Sun H, Li D-F, Wang D-C (2011) Structural basis for distinct binding properties of the human galectins to thomsen-friedenreich antigen. PLoS ONE 6(9):e25007, 1–10
196. Gabba A, Bogucka A, Luz JG, Diniz A, Coelho H, Corzana F, Cañada FJ, Marcelo F, Murphy PV, Birrane G (2021) Crystal structure of the carbohydrate recognition domain of the human macrophage galactose C-type lectin bound to GalNAc and the tumour-associated Tn antigen. Biochemistry 60(17):1327–1336
197. Forman A, Hendel J, Auzanneau F-I (2019) Convergent synthesis of tetra- and penta-saccharide fragments of dimeric Lewis X. Carbohydr Res 482:107730

198. Thompson AJ, de Vries RP, Paulson JC (2019) Virus recognition of glycan receptors. Curr Opin Virol 34:117–129
199. Wiciński M, Sawicka E, Gębalski J, Kubiak K, Malinowski B (2020) Human milk oligosaccharides: health benefits, potential applications in infant formulas, and pharmacology. Nutrients 12(1):266, 1–14
200. Blank D, Dotz V, Geyer R, Kunz C (2012) The glycobiology of human milk oligosaccharides and lewis blood group: individual high-throughput sample profiling to enhance conclusions from functional studies. Adv Nutr 3:440S-449S
201. Auer F, Jarvas G, Guttman A (2021) Recent advances in the analysis of human milk oligosaccharides by liquid phase separation methods. J Chromatogr 1162(122497):1–9
202. Chen X (2015) Human milk oligosaccharides (HMOS): structure, function, and enzyme-catalyzed synthesis. Adv Carbohydr Chem Biochem 72:113–190
203. Zeuner B, Meyer AS (2020) Enzymatic transfucosylation for synthesis of human milk oligosaccharides. Carbohydr Res 493:108029
204. Guzmán-Rodríguez F, Alatorre-Santamaría S, Gómez-Ruiz L, Rodríguez-Serrano G, García-Garibay M, Cruz-Guerrero A (2018) Synthesis of a fucosylated trisaccharide via trans-glycosylation by α-l-fucosidase from *Thermotoga marítima.* Appl Biochem Biotechnol 186:681–691
205. Gattuso G, Nepogodiev SA, Stoddart JF (1998) Synthetic cyclic oligosaccharides. Chem Rev 98:1919–1958
206. Ogawa T, Takahashi Y (1985) Synthesis of α-Neu5Acp-(2→3)-d-Gal and α-Neu5Acp-(2→3)-β-d-Galp-(1→4)-d-Glc. Carbohydr Res 138:C5–C9
207. Takahashi Y, Ogawa T (1987) Total synthesis of cyclomaltooctaose and an isomer of cyclomaltohexaose, cyclo{→6)-[α-d-Glcp-(1→4)]5-α-d-Glcp-(1-}O. Carbohydr Res 169:127–149
208. Collins PM, Ali MH (1990) A new cycloglucohexaose derivative the chemical synthesis of Cyclo{→3-[β-D-Glcp-(1→3)-]5-D-Glcp(1→)}. Tetrahedron Lett 31:4517–4520
209. Bassieux D, Gagnaire D, Vignon M (1977) Étude par R.M.N.-13C et-1h du (1→6)-β-d-glucane et des oligosaccharides linéaires et cycliques correspondants. Carbohydr Res 56:19–33
210. Excoffier G, Paillet M, Vignon M (1985) Cyclic (1→6)-β-d-glucopyranose oligomers: synthesis of cyclogentiotriose and cyclogentiotetraose peracetates. Carbohydr Res 135:C10–C11
211. Nakamura N (1994) Methods. Carbohydr Chem 10:269
212. Cottaz S, Apparu C, Driguez H (1991) Chemoenzymatic approach to the preparation of regioselectively modified cyclodextrins. The substrate specificity of the enzyme cyclodextrin glucosyltransferase (CGTase). J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:2235–2241
213. Apparu C, Driguez H, Williamson G, Svensson B (1995) Chemoenzymatic synthesis of 6ω-S-α-d-glucopyranosyl-6ω-thiomaltooligosaccharides: their binding to *Aspergillus niger* glucoamylase G1 and its starch-binding domain. Carbohyd Res 277(2):313–320
214. Kamakura M, Uchiyama T (1993) Reactions catalyzed by cycloinulo-oligosaccharide fructanotransferase. Biosc Biotechnol Biochem 57:343

Chapter 3
N-Glycosides

These type of glycosides are generated when a sugar component is attached to an aglycon, through a nitrogen atom, establishing as result a C-N-C linkage. Nucleosides are among the most relevant *N*-glycosides since they are essential components of DNA, RNA, cofactors and a variety of antiviral and anti neoplasic drugs.

Usually for nucleosides, a pyrimidine or purine base is linked to the anomeric carbon of a furanoside ring. The nucleosides responsible for the formation of the genetic material DNA and RNA are: adenine, guanine, cytidine and thymine, the later exchanged by uracil in the case of RNA (Scheme 3.1). Nucleosides can be classified in natural nucleosides such as those involved in the genetic storage of information, naturally modified nucleosides, and synthetic nucleosides.

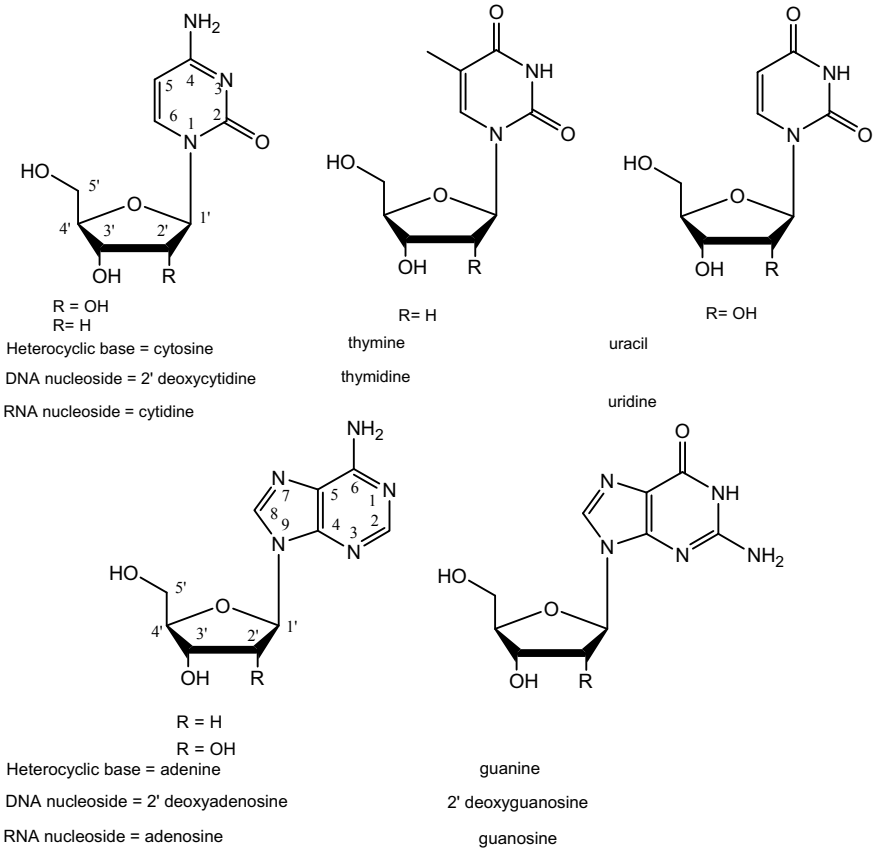
Naturally modified nucleosides include a significant and diverse number of compounds, some of them with slight changes mostly at the base, or major structural modifications done by enzymes. So far most of them have unknown biochemical function [1], nonetheless they have been strongly associated with antiviral, antitumoral and growth regulation processes (Scheme 3.2).

Representative examples of natural modified nucleosides includes queuosine (Q) and Wye base (W) which have been found in the tRNA of some plants and bacteria, and it plays and important rule in the inhibition of tumor processes. Derived from this relevant biological function the total synthesis of these unique nucleosides have been reported for Q [2–4] and W [5].

Moreover, the synthesis of complex nucleoside antibiotics has been reviewed [6]. The analysis was focused on the challenging synthetic methods for carbohydrate and nucleoside chain elaboration, glycosidation, methods for controlling stereochemistry and for joining subunits. As result, the total synthesis of Polyoxin J, [7] sinefungin, [8] thuringiensin, [9] tunicamycin V, [10] nikkomycin B, [11] octosyl acid A, [12] hikizimycin [13] and capuramycin [14] was completed (Scheme 3.3).

Important cofactors playing a key rule as biological catalysts required by the enzymes for the optimal performance of biochemical transformations are nucleotides.

M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_3

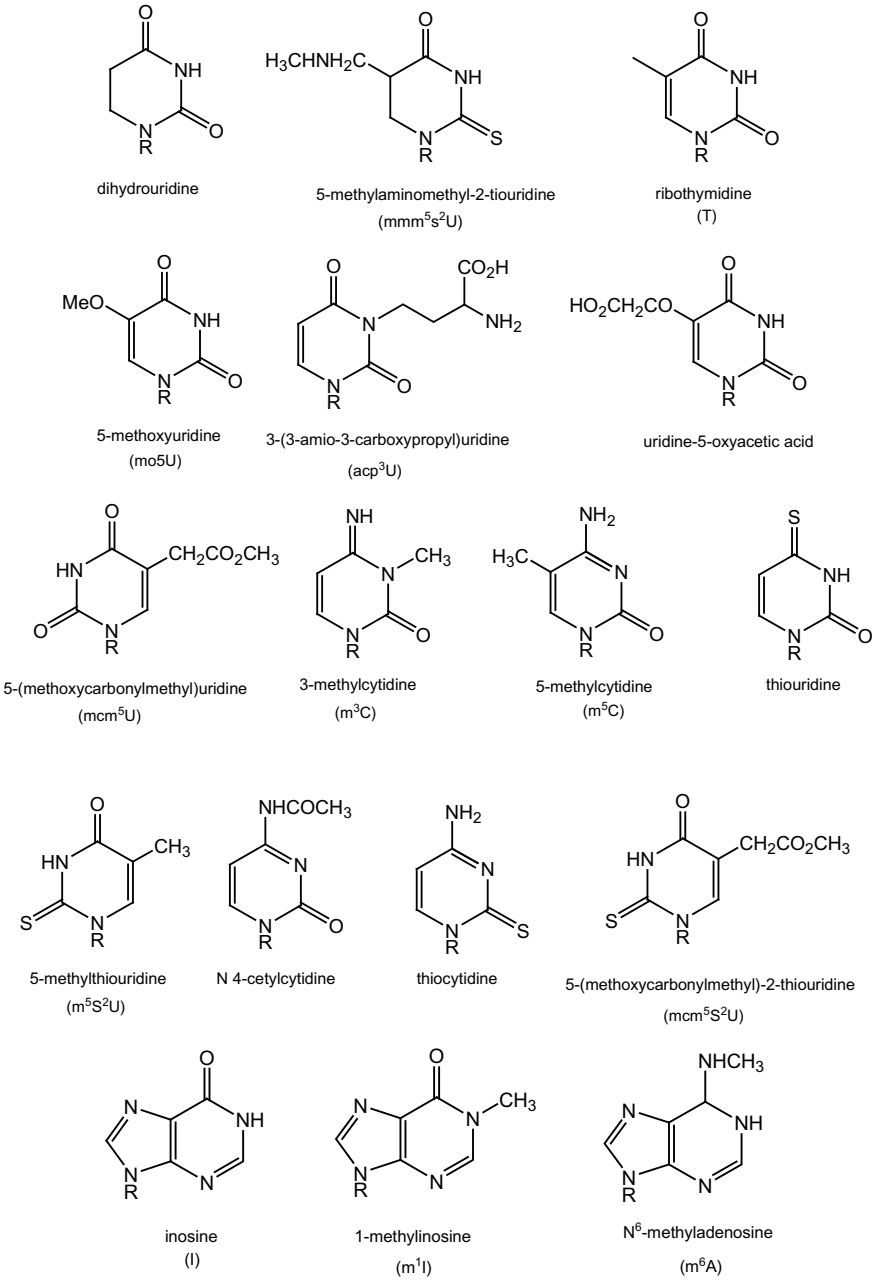


Scheme 3.1 DNA and RNA nucleosides

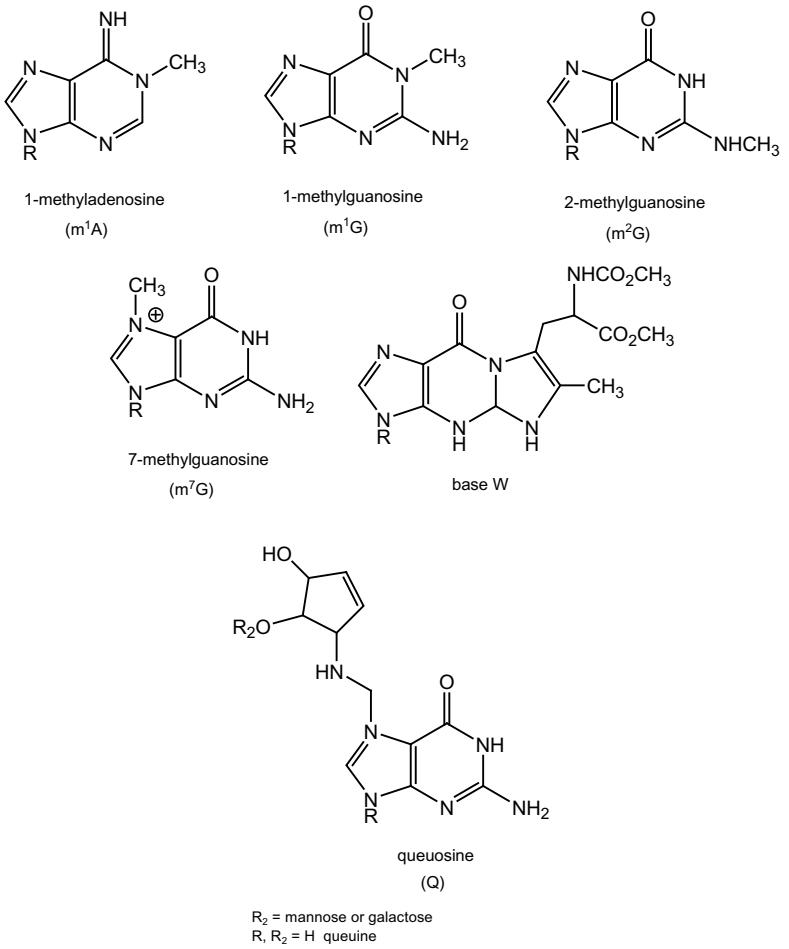
Such is the case of Adenosine triphosphate ATP and Nicotinic acid adenine dinucleotide NAD that are constituted by an adenosine nucleoside combined with phosphate for the former, and phosphate and nicotinamide for the later (Scheme 3.4).

3.1 Nucleoside Formation

Considering a disconnection analysis there are two major general routes for nucleoside syntheses [15]. The first is based on the attachment between the aglycon base and the protected sugar activated with a good leaving group at the anomeric position. Under these conditions, the stereoselectivity is conditioned by the protecting group attached at position 2. The second general procedure considers the coupling reaction between a base precursor and the sugar derivative which contains the free amine linked to the anomeric carbon. The ring closure generally takes place after



Scheme 3.2 Naturally modified nucleosides

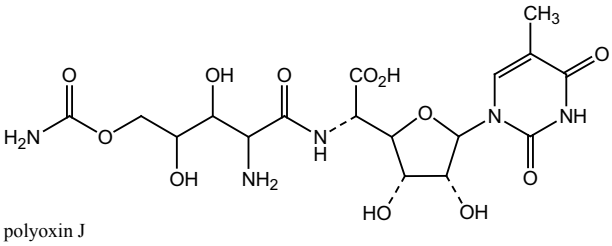


Scheme 3.2 (continued)

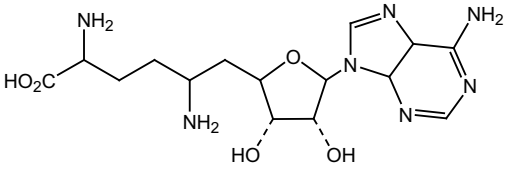
the glycosidation reaction and the configuration is predetermined by the nitrogen attached to the anomeric carbon. The later approach has been most efficiently used for preparing carbocyclic nucleosides (Scheme 3.5).

3.2 Protecting Groups

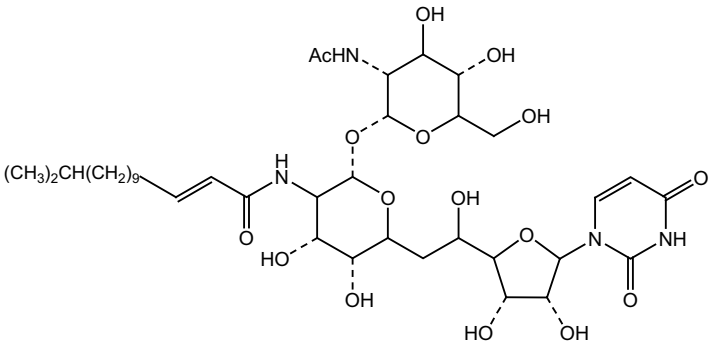
It has been mentioned in the previous chapter that protecting groups are important components for most of the general methodologies designed for establishing glycosidic bonds. Usually, the methods for glycoside formation requires prior protection of those elements (usually heteroatoms) within the molecule that are needed to remain



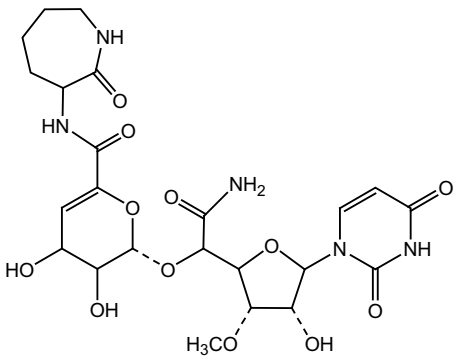
polyoxin J



sinefungin

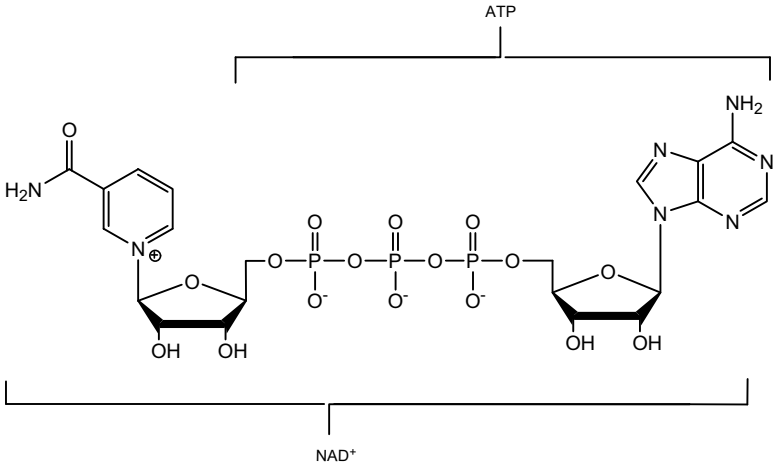


tunicamycin V

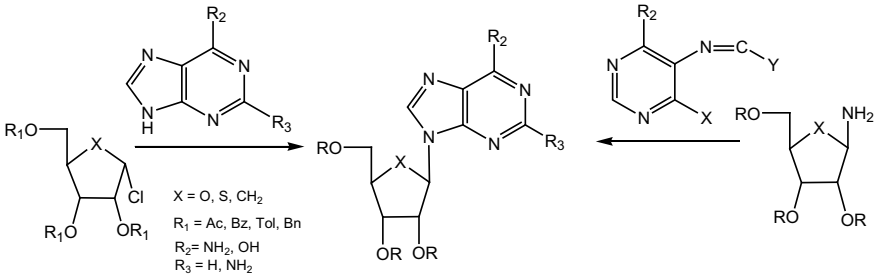


capuramycin

Scheme 3.3 Complex nucleoside antibiotics



Scheme 3.4 Structure of nucleoside cofactors ATP and NAD



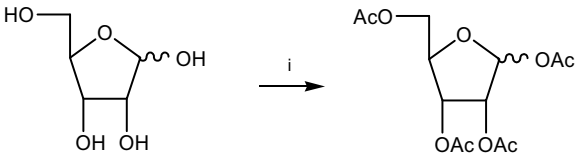
Scheme 3.5 General procedures for N-glycoside formation

unaltered. Also important is the fact that the cleavage of the protecting group should be carried out under preferentially mild conditions and in the case of complex nucleosides the installation and removal of the protecting groups for nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur should be accomplished under compatible conditions. The protection and deprotection of nucleosides can be done by chemical or enzymatic means. Some of the most commonly used protecting groups used in the preparation of *O*-glycosides are also useful in the synthesis of nucleosides (Scheme 3.6).

3.2.1 Ribofuranoside Protecting Groups

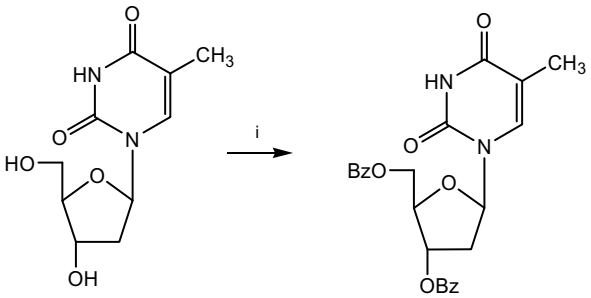
Enzymes have been found to be interesting alternatives for installing protecting groups on nucleosides. Some of the enzymes used for this purpose are *subtilisin* mutant (8350) [17] and lipases mainly from *Pseudomona* and *Candida* strains [18].

Acetate (CH_3CO-)



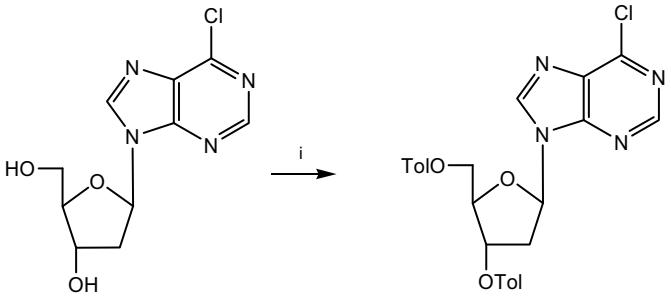
i) Ac_2O, CH_2Cl_2, DMAP, r.t.
cleavage: (1) NaOMe, MeOH.
(2) Aqueous NH_3, dioxane.

Benzoyl (PhCO-)



i) Bz-Cl, pyridine.
cleavage: (1) R-NH_2, EtOH, 100°C.
(2) EtOH, KOH, reflux, 3 h.
(3) NH_3, MeOH

Toluyl (p-MePhCO-)

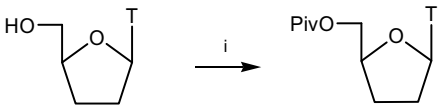


Scheme 3.6 Common ribose protecting groups [16]

i) Tol-Cl, pyridine.

cleavage: NH_3, MeOH, 100°C, 78%.

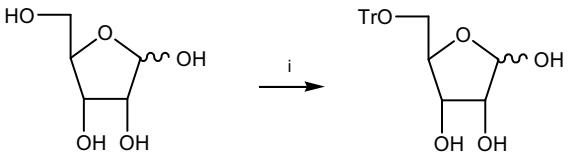
Pivaloyl (Me_3CCOCl)



i) Piv-Cl, pyridine.

cleavage: NaOMe, MeOH.

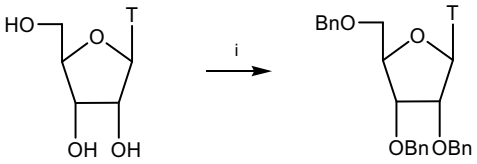
Trityl (Ph_3C-)



i) Tr-Cl, pyridine, r.t.

cleavage: (1) 80%, AcOH, 60°C.
(2) HCO_2H, Et_2O.

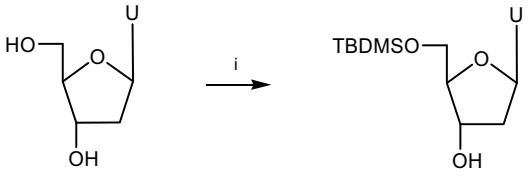
Benzyl ($PhCH_2$-)



i) BnBr, NaH, DMF.

cleavage: $H_2/Pd(OH)_2$, EtOH.

Tertbutyldimethylsilyl ($^tBuMe_2Si$-)

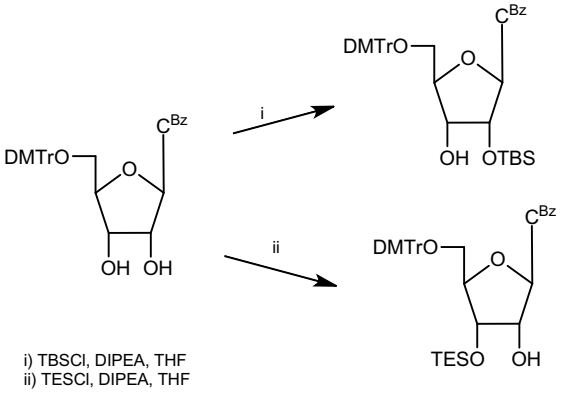


i) TBDMS-Cl, pyridine, r.t.

Scheme 3.6 (continued)

cleavage: (1) tetrabutylammonium fluoride (TBAF).
(2) pTsOH, MeOH, H_2O, 7h.

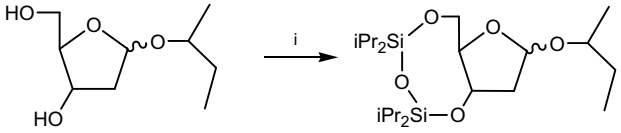
Triethylsilane (TES-), *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl (TBS-)



i) TBSCl, DIPEA, THF
ii) TESCl, DIPEA, THF

Ref[16]

Tetraisopropylsilyl ([$(^iPr)_2Si]_2O$-)



i) $Pr_2iSi(Cl)OSi(Cl)Pr_2i$, imidazole, THF, rt, 90 min.
cleavage: Bu_4NF, THF.

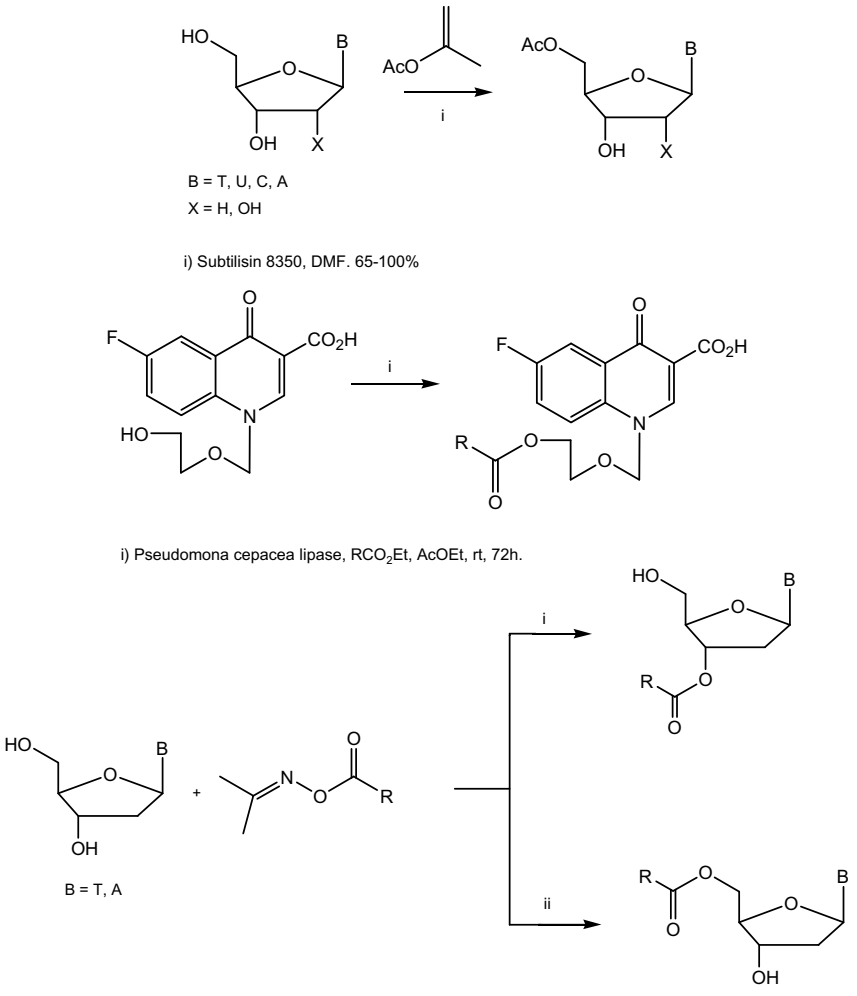
Scheme 3.6 (continued)

Representative protections of purine and pyrimidine nucleosides are indicated in Scheme 3.7.

By using the appropriate lipase it is possible to achieve regioselective acyl protections on nucleosides. For instance, the enzymatic transesterification reaction of 5′-fluorouridine with n-octanoic anhydride catalyzed with *Candida Antarctica* (CAL), *Pseudomona* sp. (PS), (KIWI-56) and *Mucor javanicus* (M) lipase was performed, producing 5′-, 3′- and 2′-acylnucleosides respectively (Scheme 3.8) [19].

Regioselective removal of certain protecting groups such as acetates attached to the ribosyl moiety of nucleosides might be carried out by enzymes. For instance Subtilisin strain selectively hydrolyze the 5′-position of purine and pyrimidine tri-*O*-acylated esters to produce 2′, 3′-di-*O*-Acylribonucleosides in 40–92% (Scheme 3.9) [20].

On the other hand, diastereoselective deacetylation of peracetylated 2′-deoxyribofuranosyl thymine was carried out using wheat germ lipase (WGL) and



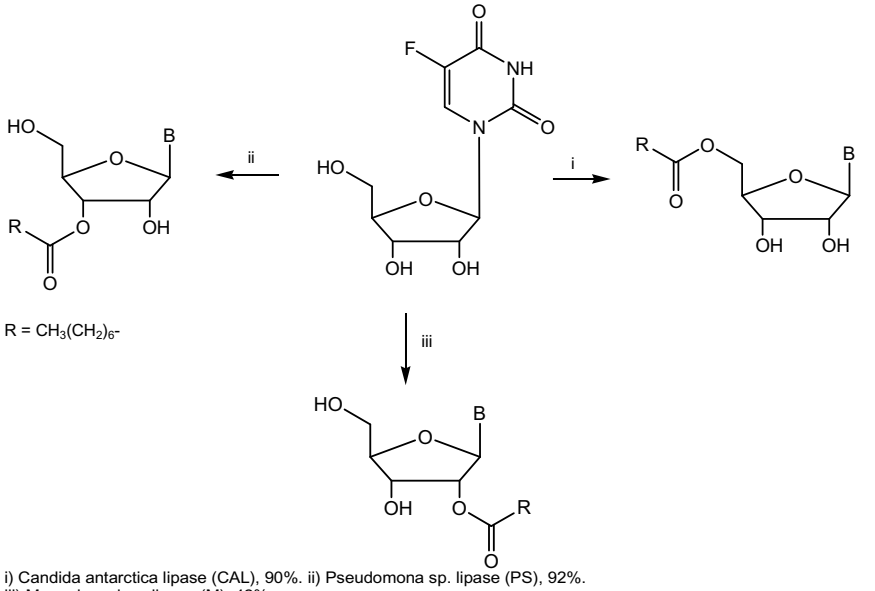
Scheme 3.7 Enzymatic regioselective acylation by oximeacetates and lipases

porcine liver esterase (PLE), affording pure β-anomer thymidine in 29 and 31% respectively (Scheme 3.10) [21].

When porcine pancreas lipase (PPL) in phosphate buffer is used for deacetylation of 3′, 5′-di-O-acetylthymine, the removal of the acetyl group at the 5′-position is achieved, leading to the 3′-O-acetylthymidine (Scheme 3.11) [22].

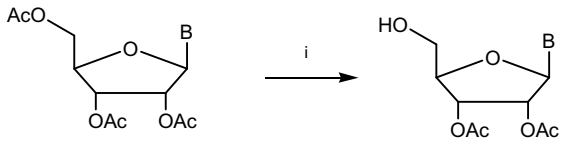
Other suitable selective protections and deprotections useful for chemical manipulations which might occur at the ribosyl moiety are illustrated in Scheme 3.12.

Regioselective protections and deprotections is often a critical step especially for the preparation of complex nucleosides. Some suitable deprotections of complex



i) Candida antarctica lipase (CAL), 90%. ii) Pseudomona sp. lipase (PS), 92%.
iii) Mucor javanicus lipase (M), 42%.

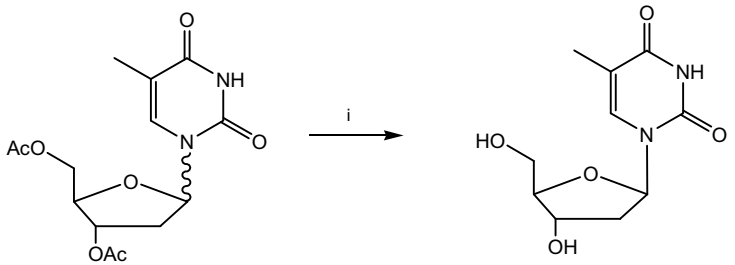
Scheme 3.8 Regioselective acyl protection by lipase



B = U, C, A, G, N-2AcG, H

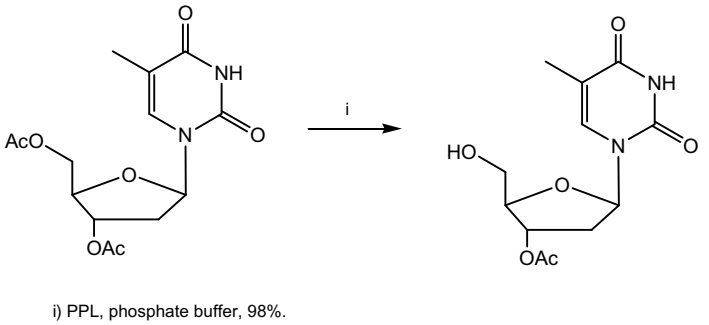
i = Subtillisin or PPL, organic solvent, phosphate buffer, pH 7.

Scheme 3.9 Selective enzymatic 5′-acetyl deprotection



i) WGL, phosphate buffer, 29%. or PLE, phosphate buffer, 31%.

Scheme 3.10 Lipase-catalyzed deacetylation of anomeric nucleoside



i) PPL, phosphate buffer, 98%.

Scheme 3.11 Selective enzymatic 5′-deacetylation of 3′, 5′-di-O-acetyl thymidine

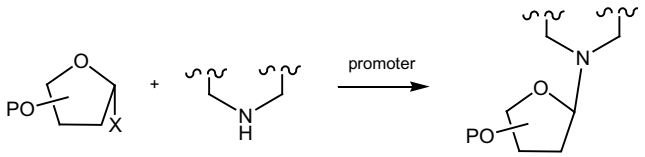
nucleosides which do not alter the original composition of the structure have been described (Scheme 3.13) [6].

3.3 General Methods

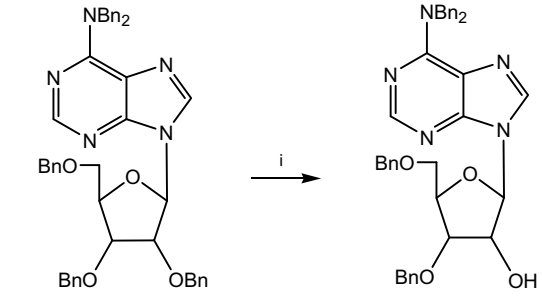
- Michael reaction
- Fischer-Helferich reaction
- Davol-Lowy reaction
- Silyl coupling reaction (Hilbert-Johnson, Vorbrüggen)
- Sulfur mediated reaction
- Imidate mediated reaction
- Mitsunobu reaction
- Palladium mediated reaction
- Ortho alkynylbenzoates protocol
- Microbial/enzymatic approach
- Oligonucleotide synthesis.

3.3.1 The Michael Reaction

3.3.1.1 General Scheme and Conditions

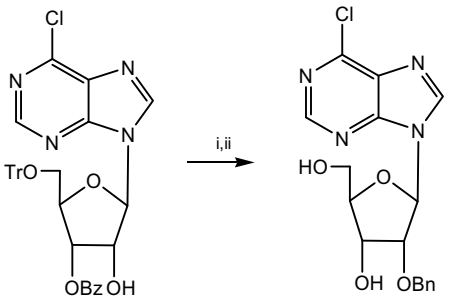


X = Cl, Br



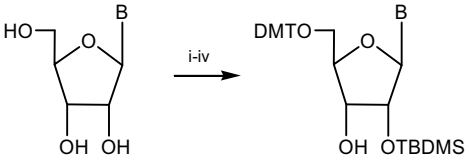
i) t-BuMgBr, PhH, 80°C, 69%

Ref. [22]



i) BnOH, $Me_2NCON{=}NCONMe_2$. ii) NH_3/MeOH

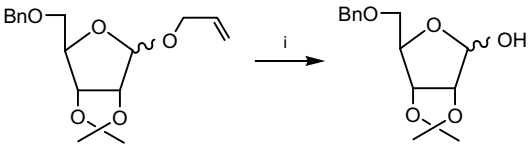
Ref. [23]



B = G, A, C, U

i) t-$Bu_2Si(OTf)_2$, Im, DMF, 0°C. ii) t-$BuMe_2SiCl$, Im, DMF, 60°C, 80-87%. iii) HF-Py, CH_2Cl_2, 0°C, 90% iv) DMT-Cl, Py, 0°C, 90%.

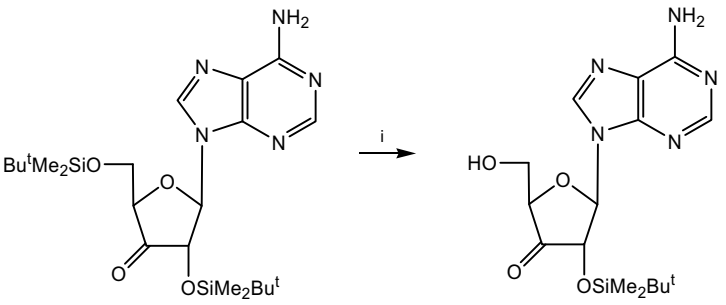
Ref. [24]



i) DIBAL, $NiCl_2$, Et_2O, 0°C, 55%

Scheme 3.12 Miscellaneous chemical protection and deprotection [22–26]

Ref. [25]



i) CF_3COOH-H_2O (9:1), 0°C, 95 %.

Ref. [26]

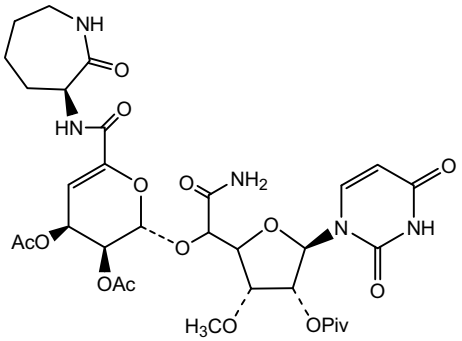
Scheme 3.12 (continued)

Promoter	Conditions
NaH	DMF
K_2CO_3	DMF
KOH-TBA	CH_2Cl_2

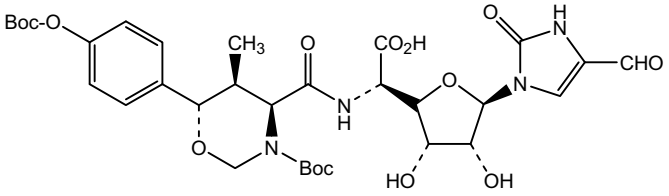
It is a classical procedure for preparing nucleosides and it can be considered a modified *O*-glycoside approach. In this way, the sugar derivative is an R-*O*-furanosyl halide where R can be acyl-, benzoyl, benzyl, tosyl, or silyl, and the halogen commonly chlorine instead of bromine, since it has proved to be more stable for furanose derivatives than its counterpart. The nitrogen base (purine or pyrimidine) is reacted under basic conditions, usually NaH or K_2CO_3 in DMF (Scheme 3.14).

A variety of antibiotics have been prepared according to this method, as in the case of the nucleoside known as methyltubercidine. For achieving this goal, the 7-deazaguanine was used as nitrogen base which was condensed to 2,3,5-tri-*O*-benzylribofuranosyl bromide under NaH/DMF conditions to afford a 1:1 anomeric mixture of the N-glycoside (Scheme 3.15) [28].

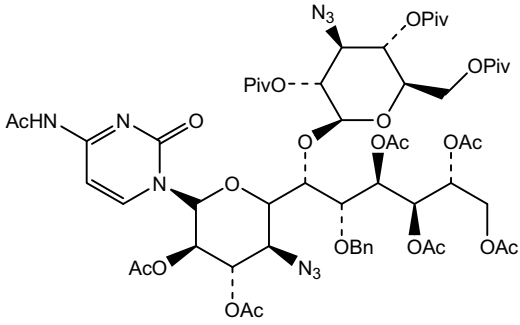
More recently Battaharya [29] reported the synthesis of fluoroarabinotubercidine, toyocamicine and sangivamicine, under the current N-glycoside formation procedure. Other deazapurines have been described by Seela et al [30] involving the condensation between the purine base, with protected ribosyl halides under basic conditions. According to Seela [31] and Kazimierczuk [32] the stereoselective glycosylation of the sodium salts of halopurines, with 2-deoxy-3,5-di-*O*-*p*-tolouyl-α-D-*erytro*-pentofuranosyl chloride gave β-nucleosides via Walden inversion . This was demonstrated in the preparation of 2-



1. NaOH, aq MeOH, 2.5 h (cleaves O-Ac and O-Piv)



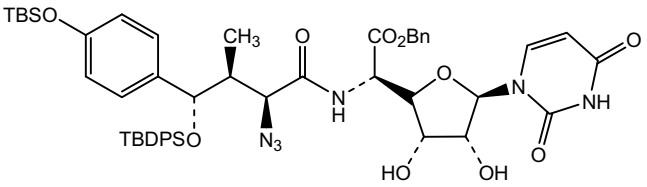
1. TFA, 0°C, 15 min. (cleaves O- and N-BOC)
2. H_2O, then lyophilize (cleaves acetal)



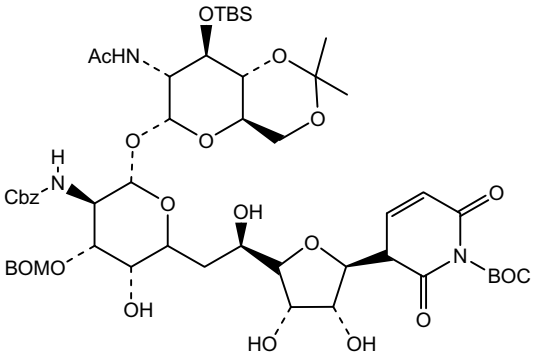
1. DDQ, CH_2Cl_2, 58°C, 43h (cleaves O-Bn)
2. n-Bu_4NOH, MeOH, reflux, 2 h (cleaves acyls)
3. H_2, Lindlar, H_2O (reduces azide groups)

Scheme 3.13 Suitable deprotection of complex nucleosides [27]

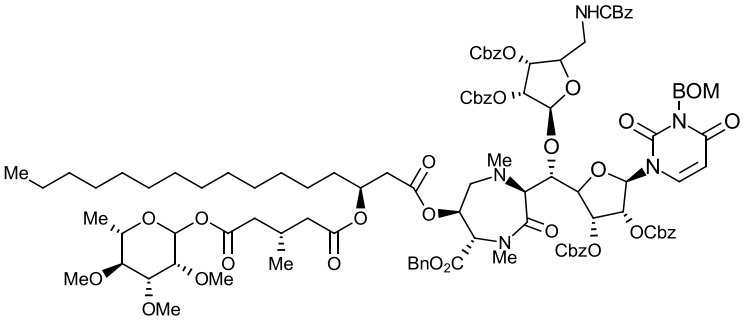
amino 2′-desoxytubercidine and 2-aminotubercidine by condensation of 3,5-di-*O*-(p-tolyl)-α-D-pentafuranosylchloride and 5-*O*-[(1,1-dimethylethyl)dimethylsilyl]-2,3-*O*-(1-methylethyliden)-α-D-ribofuranosylchloride with the halopurine under Michael conditions. Final ammonia treatment provided the target deazanucleoside (Scheme 3.16).



1. n-Bu_4NF, THF, 30 min. (cleaves 2 O-SiR_3)
2. H_2, 10 % Pd-$BaSO_4$, aq. MeOH, 30 min. (cleaves benzyl ester and reduces -N_3)



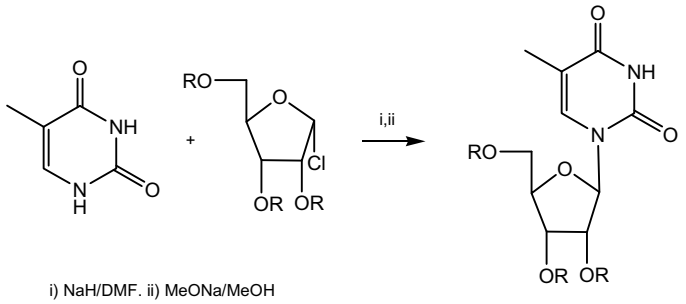
1. 10% HCO_2H, Pd, 1.5 h (cleaves O-BOM, N-Cbz)
2. 13% HCO2H, MeOH, 40°C, 5 h (cleaves N-BOC, acetonide)
3. HF, MeOH, CH_3CN (cleaves O-TBS)



1. Pd black, EtOH/HCO_2H (20:1), 98 % (cleaves O-BOM, O-Bn, O-Cbz, N-Cbz)

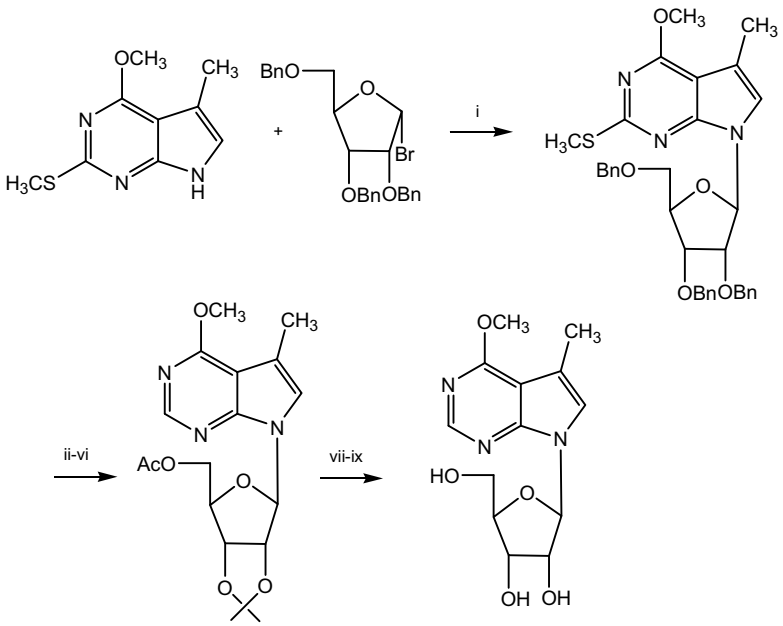
Ref[27]

Scheme 3.13 (continued)



i) NaH/DMF. ii) MeONa/MeOH

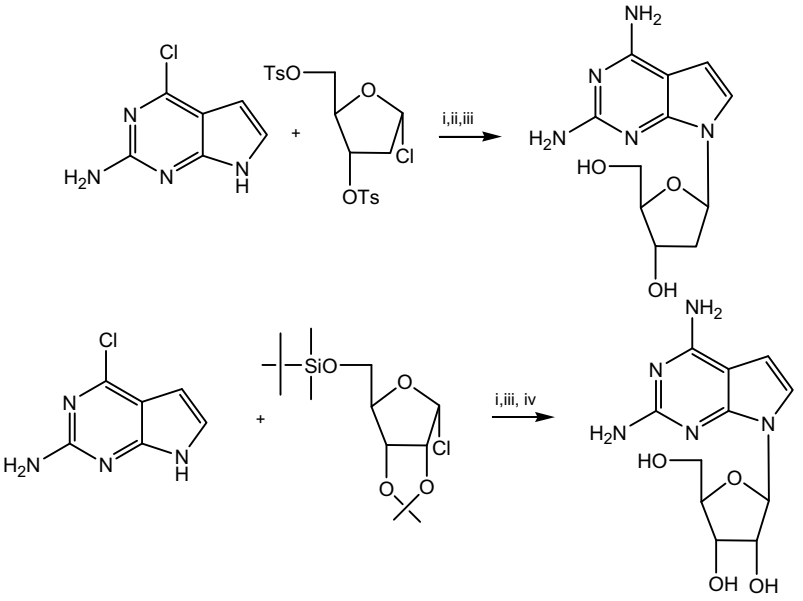
Scheme 3.14 The Michael modification



i) NaH/DMF. ii) Ni/EtOH-PhH. iii) HCl/dioxane. iv) H_2, Pd-C. v) a) acetone/p-TsOH. b) Ac_2O/Py. vii) $POCl_3$. viii) NH_3/MeOH. ix) F_3CCOOH/H_2O.

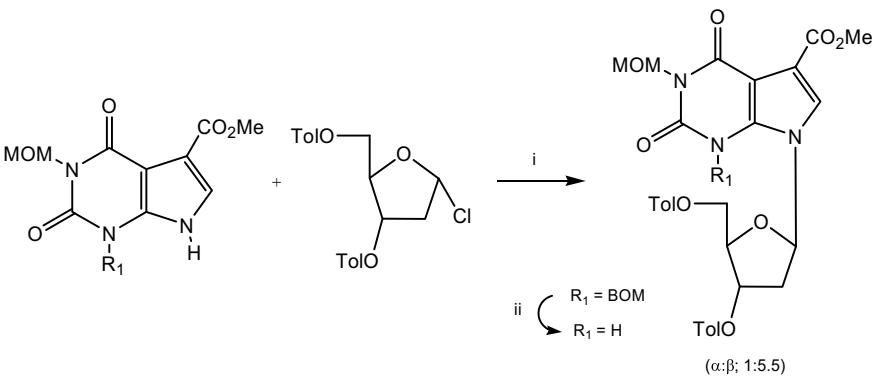
Scheme 3.15 Synthesis of methyltubercidine

The 7-deazapurine nucleoside Cadeguomycin isolated from strain of the actinomycete culture filtrate *Streptomyces hygroscopicus* was also synthesized under this approach. Thus, coupling reaction between protected 7-deazapurine derivative with 1-chloro-2-deoxy-3,5-ditoluyl-α-D-erythro-pentofuranose was effected with preference for the β-isomer. Subsequent transformations provided the target molecule 2′-deoxycadeguomycin (Scheme 3.17) [33].

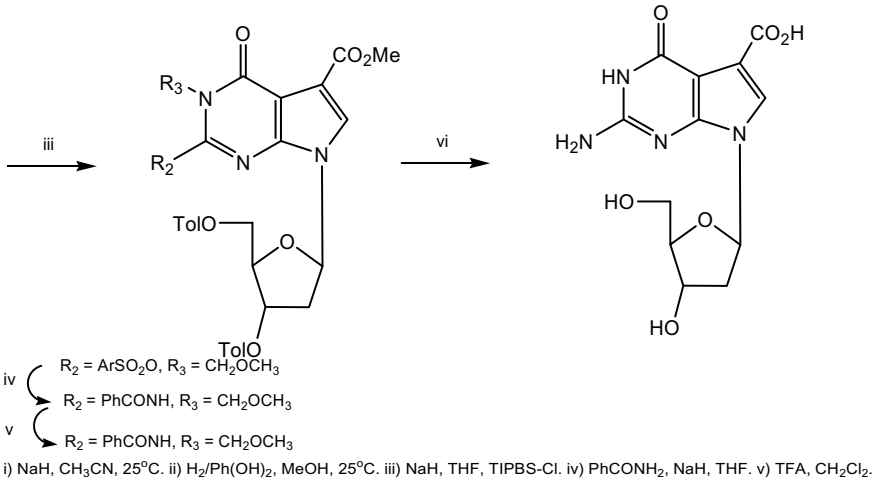


i) KOH, TBA/CH_2Cl_2. ii) MeONa/MeOH. iii) NH_3/MeOH. iv) CF_3COOH/H_2O.

Scheme 3.16 Synthesis of 2-aminotubercidine and 2-amino-2′-deoxytubercidine



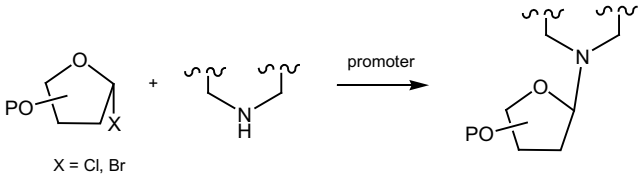
Scheme 3.17 Synthesis of 7-deazapurine nucleoside 2-deoxycadeguomycin



Scheme 3.17 (continued)

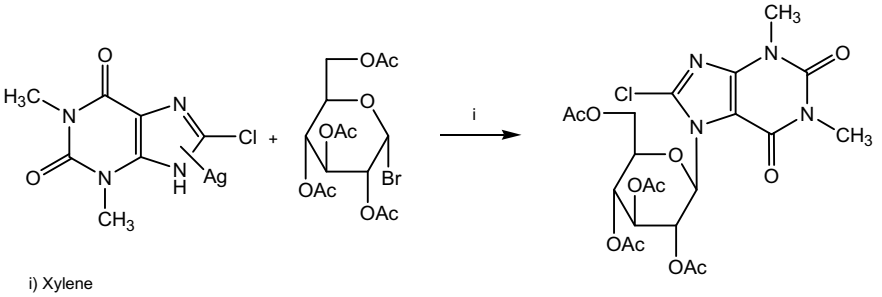
3.3.2 The Fischer-Helferich Reaction

3.3.2.1 General Scheme and Conditions



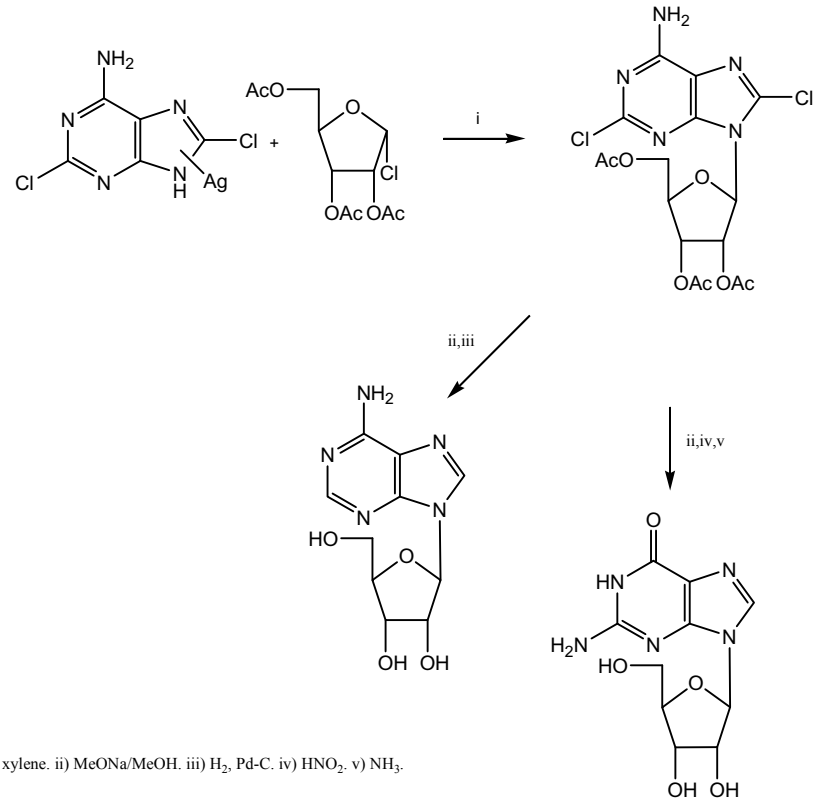
Promoter	Conditions
Silver salts	Xilene

This general procedure consists in the use of an acylfuranoside or acylpyranoside, which is reacted with the silver or mercury salts of a nitrogen base. The original reaction involves the condensation between silver salt of theophylline with acetobromoglucose in hot xylene, giving preferentially the N-7 regioisomer (Scheme 3.18).

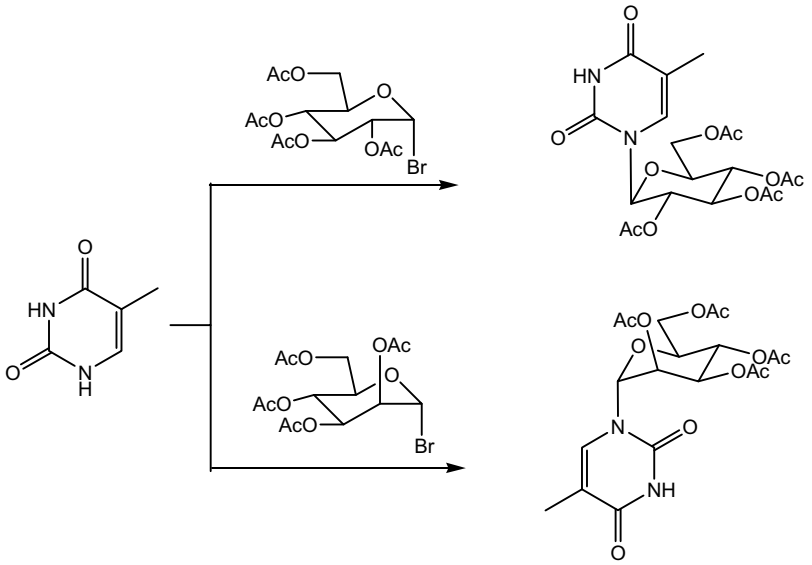


Scheme 3.18 The Fischer-Helferich method

The feasibility of this method is observed in the synthesis of adenosine and guanosine by condensation of tri-*O*-acetyl-α-D-ribofuranosyl chloride with the silver salt of 2,8-dichloroadenine to generate an intermediate which under the conditions described below can generate either adenosine or guanosine (Scheme 3.19) [34].



Scheme 3.19 Synthesis of adenosine and guanosine



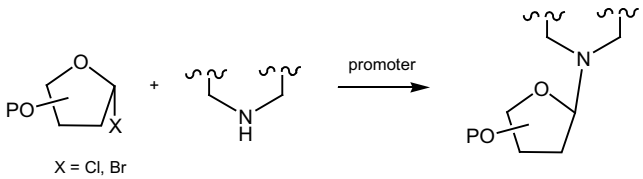
Scheme 3.20 Tipson's trans rule

The stereochemistry of this reaction can be predicted by applying the "trans rule" proposed by Tipson [35] and extended by Baker. The rule establish that the condensation between the purine or pyrimidine sal with the acyl-*O*-glycosyl halide will generate a nucleoside with C1–C2 trans configuration regardless the initial configuration of C1–C2 of the sugar.

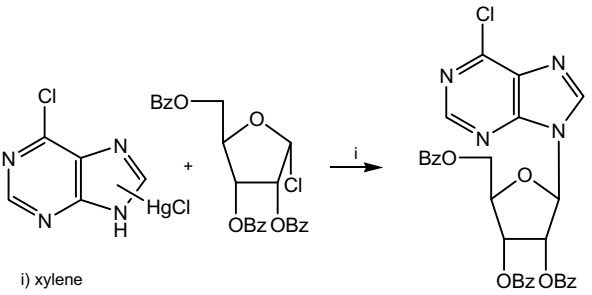
The trans rule is demonstrated in the preparation of thymidine acetoglucopyranose and mannopyranose, where –OH at position 2 for the former is equatorial, and axial for the later. By following the rule, the coupling reaction generates the β- and α-anomers respectively, having both of them a trans disposition between substituents at positions 1 and 2 (Scheme 3.20).

3.3.3 The Davol-Lowy Reaction

3.3.3.1 General Scheme and Conditions



Scheme 3.21 The Davol-Lowy method



Promoter	Conditions
$Hg(CN)_2$	CH_3NO_2, reflux
$Hg(CN)_2$	Xilene

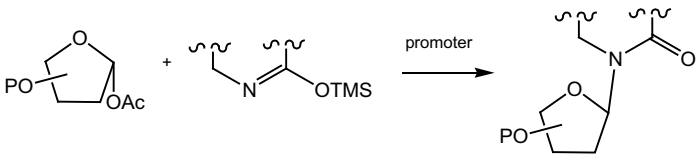
This method has been also considered a modified Fischer-Helferich procedure and involves the use of mercury chloride instead silver salts. Under these conditions the useful intermediate chloropurine nucleoside has been prepared under mild conditions (Scheme 3.21).

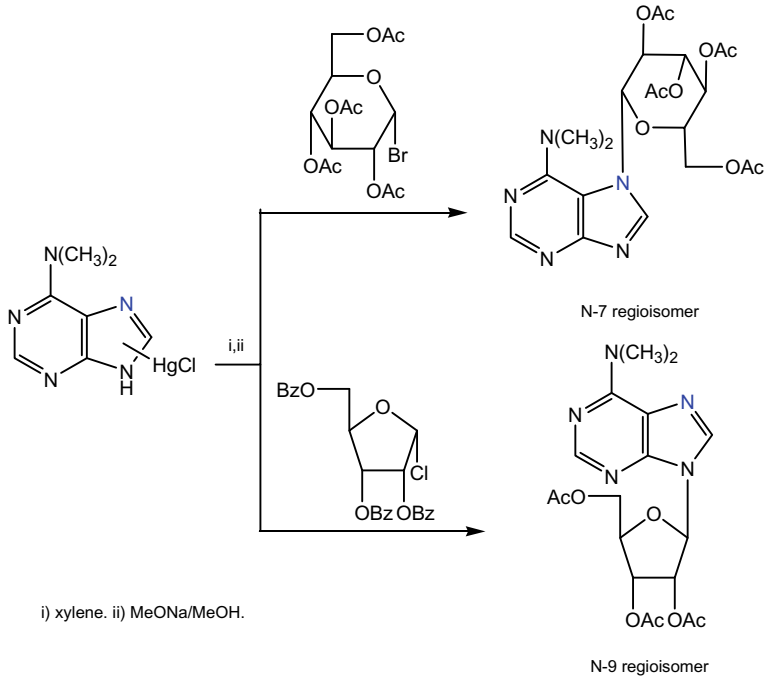
The nature of the glycosyl halide is important for determine the regioselectivity of the glycosidic linkage. If the condensation reaction occurs between purines with acetobromoglucose the N-7 regioisomer is obtained preferentially. On the other hand if acetoribosyl chloride is condensed with the same purine, the N-9 regioisomer is the major product observed (Scheme 3.22).

Another purine nucleoside prepared under these conditions is shown in Scheme 3.23, consisting in the coupling reaction between the protected guanine with protected furanosyl chloride in nitromethane under refluxing conditions produced the corresponding N-glycoside in 50% yield [36].

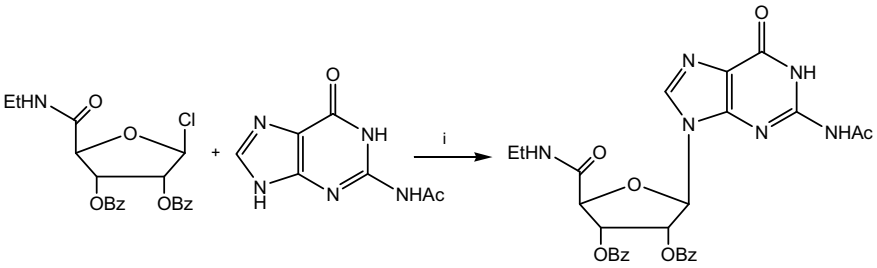
3.3.4 Silyl Coupling Reaction

3.3.4.1 General Scheme and Conditions





Scheme 3.22 Preparation of N-7 and N-9 regioisomers



Scheme 3.23 Glycosidation reaction for preparation of guanine derivative

Promoter	Conditions
TMS-OTf	CH_3CN, 0 °C → r.t
TMS-OTf	$PhNO_2$,127 °C
$SnCl_4$	CH_3CN
HMDS-TMDS	

(continued)

(continued)

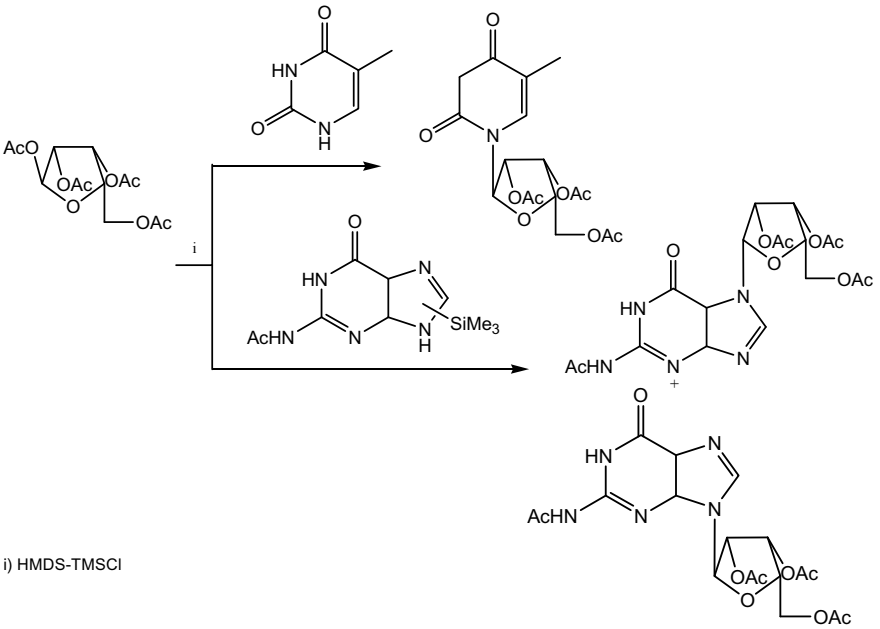
Promoter	Conditions
$(MeSi)_2NAc$	
$CF_3(CF_2)_3SO_3K$/HMDS-TMSCl	
HMDS/$(NH_4)_2SO_4$	

Various types of silyl agents have been tested as either protecting groups and or N-glycoside promoters. Among them trimethylsilyl chloride (TMS-Cl), bis(trimethylsilyl) acetamide (BSA), trimethylsilyltriflate, and hexamethyldisilasane are representative examples.

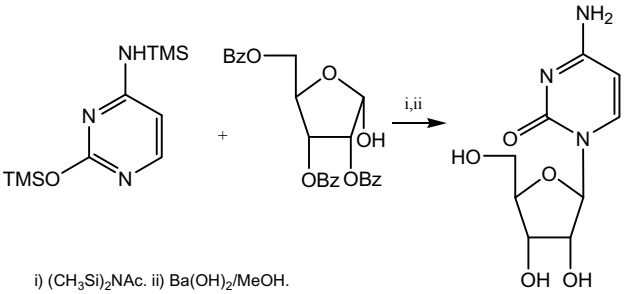
De Clercq et al. [37] prepared purine and pyrimidine α-D-lixofuranosylnucleosides employing HMDS, TMS and TMSF as silyl coupling agents. Nucleoside α-D-lyxofuranosyl thymine was prepared by condensation between 1,2,3,5-tetra-*O*-acetyl-α-D-lyxose with thymine in the presence of HMDS-TMSCl mixture (Scheme 3.24).

Likewise cytidine has been synthesized in 95% through condensation of silyl cytidine obtained from cytosine with bis (trimethylsilyl) acetamide, and sugar derivative 2,3,5-tri-*O*-benzoylribose, as represented in Scheme 3.25.

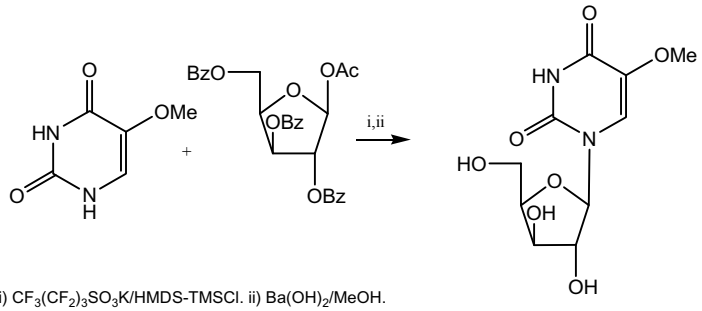
Hilbert and Johnson [38] developed a procedure for preparing nucleosides employing a mixture of hexamethyldisilane (HMDS), trimethylsilane chloride and potassium nonaflate. According to this procedure 5-methoxyuridine was prepared by



Scheme 3.24 Preparation of α-D-lyxofuranosyl thymine and guanine protected nucleosides



Scheme 3.25 Silyl mediated coupling reaction



Scheme 3.26 Hilbert and Johnson approach

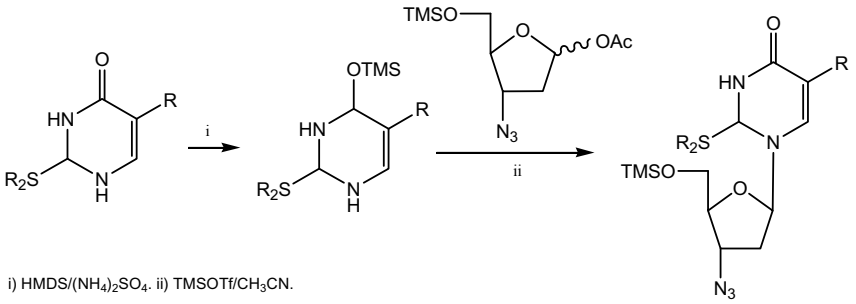
condensing 5-methoxyuracil, with 1-*O*-acetyl-2,3,5-tri-*O*-benzoyl-β-D-ribofuranose (Scheme 3.26).

A widespread silyl-based methodology was developed by Vorbrüggen [39] which is based in the use of persilylated purines or pyrimidines, which are condensed with peracylated sugars in the presence of Lewis acid catalysis. Usually silylation of the base is achieved with hexamethyldisilazane (HMDS) or N,O-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide, the later less difficult to remove during the work up process. Among the Lewis acid employed as catalyst, trimethylsilyl triflate (TMSOTf) has been the most suitable condensing agent for this reaction.

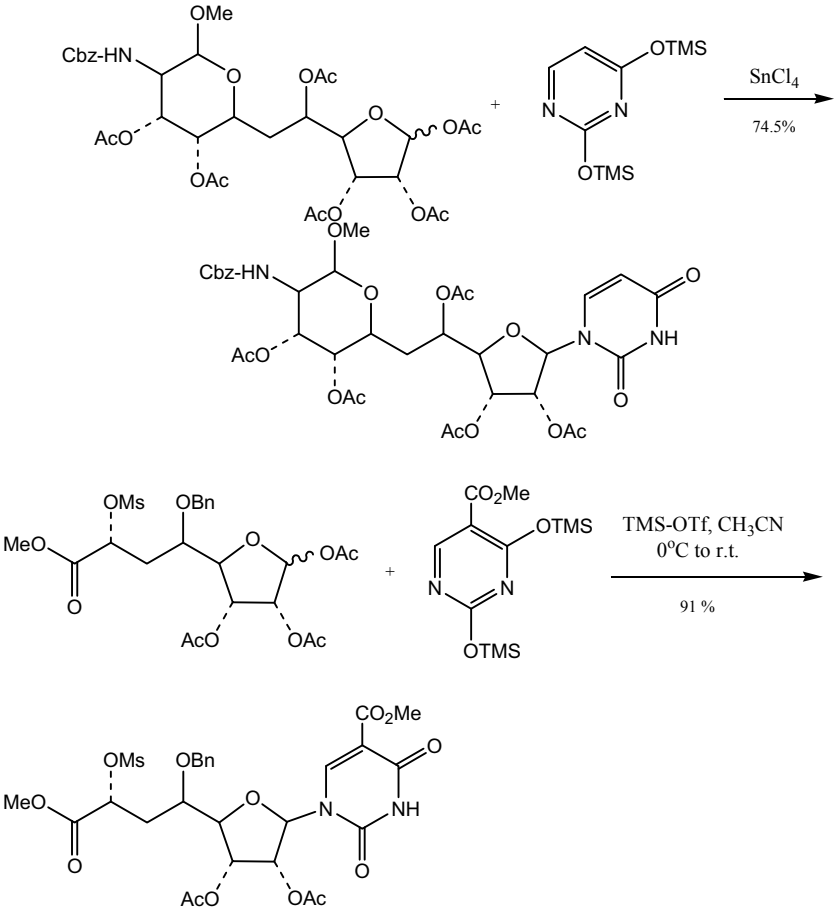
AZT alkylthioanalogs have been synthesized under the method reported by Vorbrüggen. This condition requires hexamethyldisilane for activation of the anomeric center, and trimethylsilyltriflate as condensing agent (Scheme 3.27).

An important anti cancer nucleosides gemcitabine was prepared under silyl conditions however following a linear methodology in which the sugar donor was conjugated to an open form N-2-cyanovinyl Amide, followed by cyclisation.

Vörbruggen-type coupling reaction has been method of choice in the N-glycoside bond formation of various complex nucleosides such as octosyl acid A, tunicaminyl-uracil, sinefungin, and hikizimycin. Some of the general conditions reported for the accomplishment of the mentioned synthesis are described in Scheme 3.28 [6]a−b.



Scheme 3.27 Vörbruggen's synthesis of AZT thioderivatives

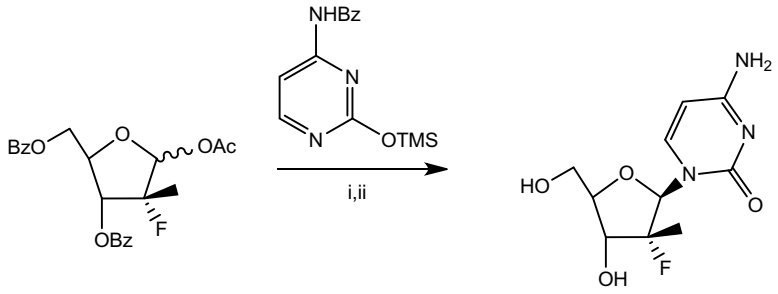


Scheme 3.28 Vörbruggen-type coupling reactions

Likewise by following a variant of this protocol Wang et al. were able to prepare 2′-deoxy-2′-fluoro-2′-C-methylcytidine (PSI-6130), a potent and selective inhibitor of HCV NS5B polymerase. Thus, the N-glycosylation step was carried out by coupling reaction between 2′-deoxy-2′-fluoro-2′-methyl ribose acetate with Silylated N-benzoylcytosine tin(IV) chloride as a catalyst (Scheme 3.29) [40].

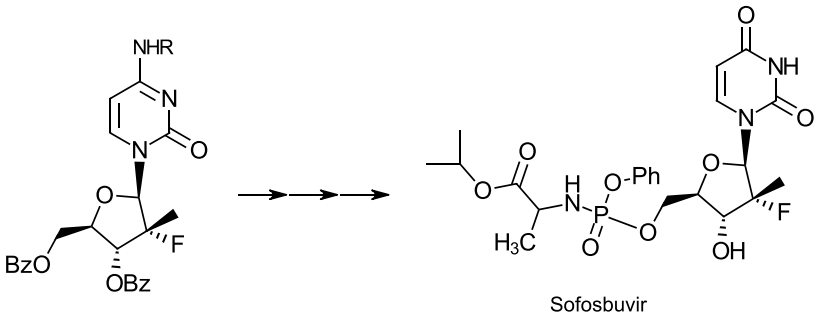
The resulting 2′F, 2′C-methylcytidine underwent further development to provide second generation antiviral agents involving the conversion from cytidine to uridine base, and incorporating a phosphoramidate group at the 5-position, to furnish a potent anti-hepatitis C virus (HCV) which has been introduced to the market as Sofosbuvir (Scheme 3.30) [41].

The N-glycosylation of protected (triethylsilyl)ethynyl furanoside with 2-fluoroadenine to produce after deprotection and 2-deoxygenation the remarkably potent anti-HIV nucleoside 4′-Ethynyl-2-fluoro-2′-deoxyadenosine (EfdA, islatravir) was performed with TMSOTf and DBU in MeCN. Another approach for preparing this modified nucleoside was described by following a 12-step sequence starting from (R)-glyceraldehyde acetonide in 18% overall yield (Scheme 3.31) [42, 43].

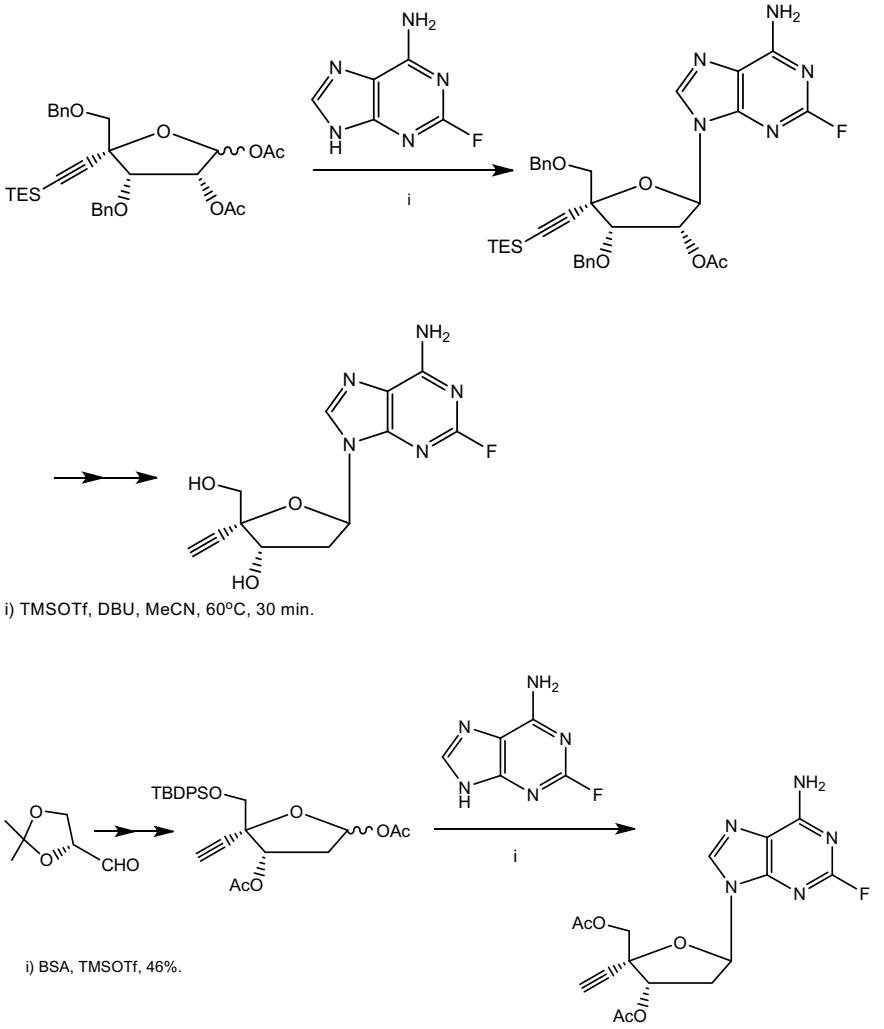


i) $SnCl_4$, PhCl, 65°C. ii) NH_3, MeOH, rt

Scheme 3.29 Synthesis of antiviral 2′-deoxy-2′-fluoro-2′-C-methylcytidine (PSI-6130)

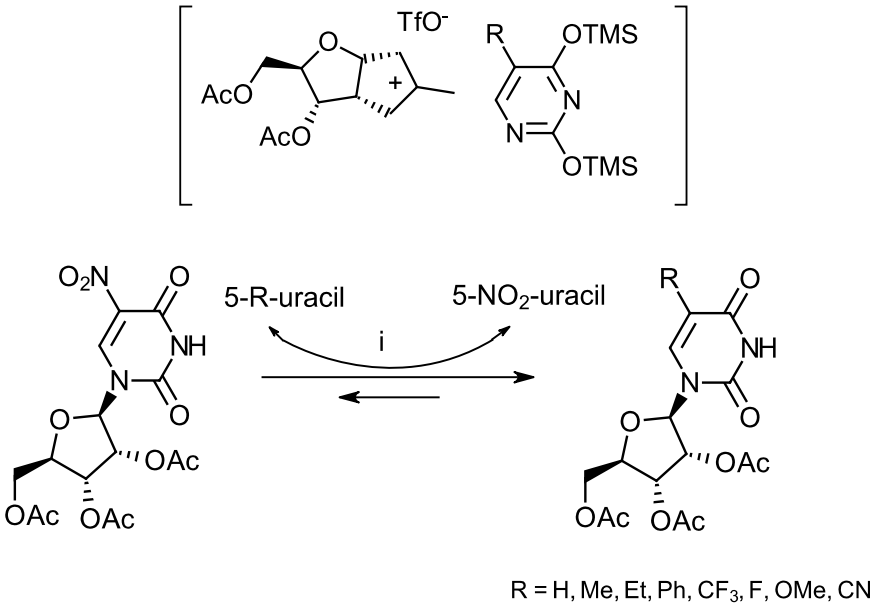


Scheme 3.30 Modification of 2′F, 2′C-methylcytidine to nucleoside Sofosbuvir



Scheme 3.31 Methods for preparing anti-HIV 4′-Ethynyl-2-fluoro-2′-deoxyadenosine (EfdA)

Transglycosylation reaction of pyrimidine nucleosides under Vörbruggen conditions were described using nitrouridine as donor and uridine R-substituted as acceptor under bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (BSA)-trimethylsilyl trifluoromethansulfonate (TMSOTf) conditions. According to the proposed mechanism the reaction proceeds via silylation of uridine and dioxolenium intermediate as shown in Scheme 3.32. Also microwave conditions showed slight improvement in yield reducing heating time [44].



R = H, Me, Et, Ph, CF_3, F, OMe, CN

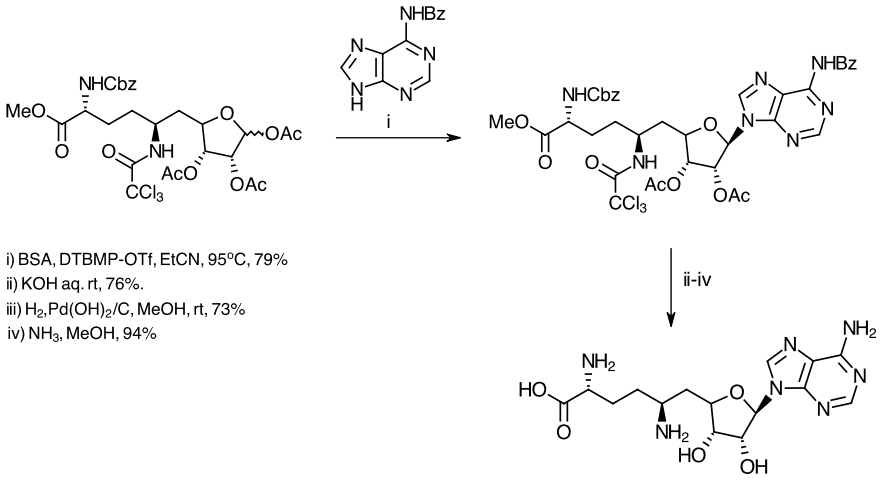
i) BSA, TMSOTf, CH_3CN, μW 80°C, 2h, 49-76% β anomer.

Scheme 3.32 Synthesis of 5-R substituted uridine nucleosides following transglycosylation approach under Vörbruggen conditions

Naturally occurring Sinefungin isolated from *Streptomyces griseolus* and *Streptomyces incarnatus* is a nucleoside analogue of the methyl donor S-adenosyl-Lmethionine (SAM) used by methyltransferases for the methylation of cytosine and in the cysteine biosynthesis [45] The inhibition activity of Sinefungin against methyltransferases in dengue virus has been evaluated, observing an IC_{50} = 0.030 μM although its inhibitory effect was nonselective [46]. The total asymmetric synthesis of C9′-epi-Sinefungin was described, involving Vörbruggen conditions betwwen triacetate ribosyl donor with N6-benzoyladenine promoted by Bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (BSA) and 2,6-di-tert-butyl-4-methylpyridinium triflate (DTBMP-OTf) as shown in Scheme 3.33 [47].

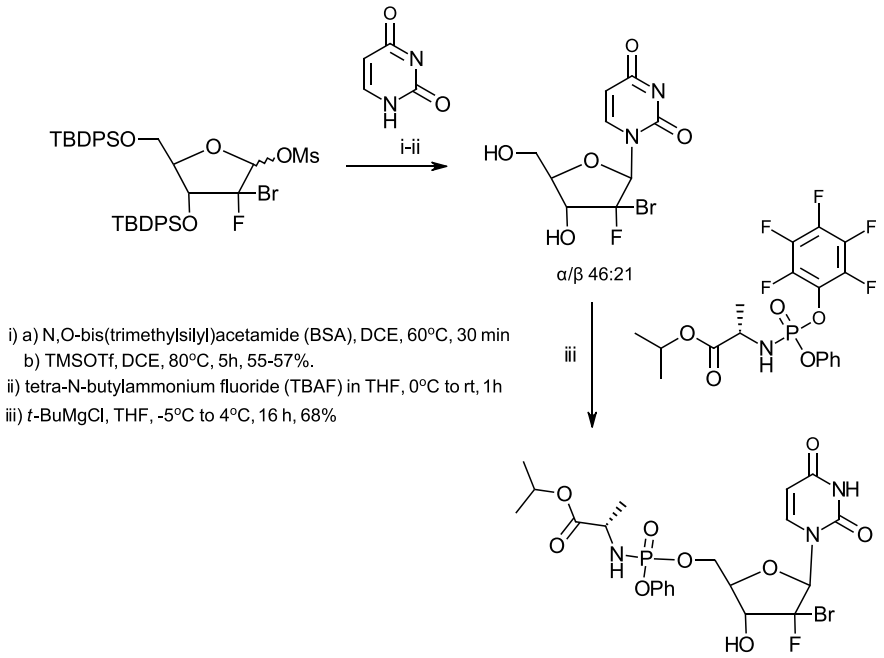
N-glycosylation under Vörbruggen conditions can also be effected with mesyl glycosyl donor as it was described in the report for preparing 2′-α-Fluoro, 2′-β-bromo-ribonucleosides phosphoramidate prodrugs. Among the nucleosides reported the uracyl nucleoside resulted with the highest profile in terms of inhibition (12.5 μM) and absorption against Hepatitis C Virus (Scheme 3.34) [48].

Fluorinated nucleosides displaying highly potent anti-HIV and HCV have been prepared using as a common precursor exo 4′-methylene-nucleoside, leading to 2′-fluoro-4′-azido-uracyl and 2′,4′-difluoro-2′-methyl guanosine analogues, exhibiting potent anti-HIV with EC_{50} values of 0.3 nM and anti HCV with EC_{50} of 0.066 μM respectively (Scheme 3.35) [49, 50].



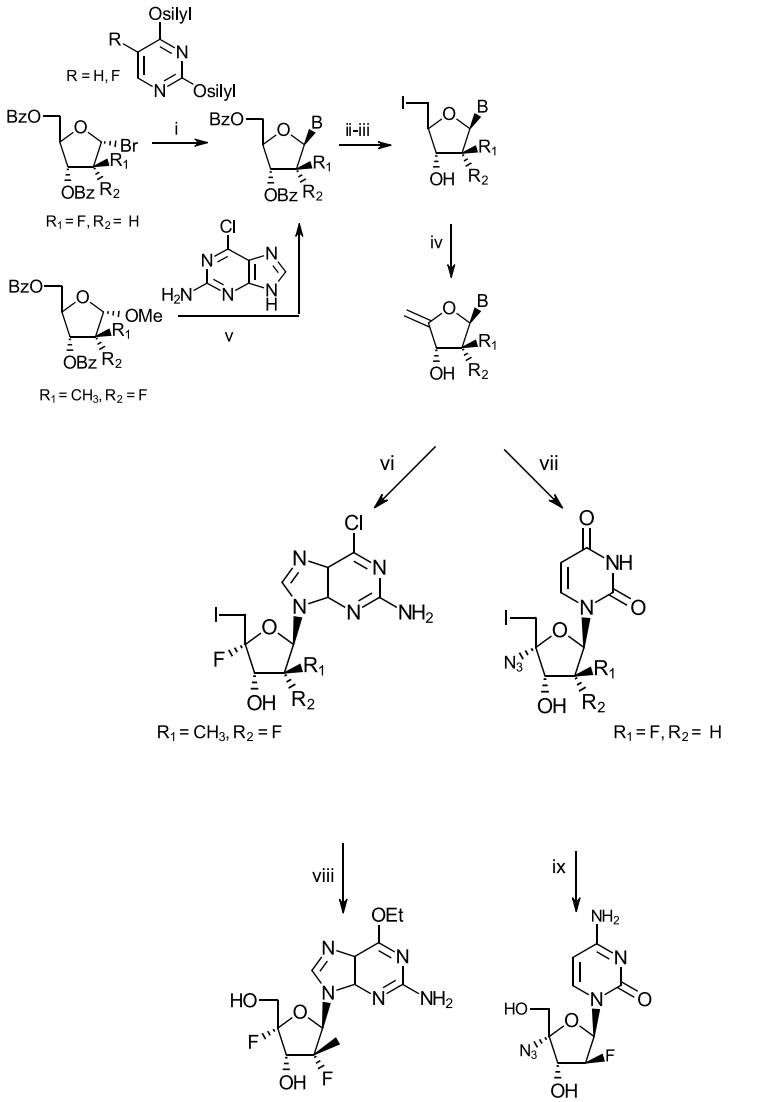
i) BSA, DTBMP-OTf, EtCN, 95°C, 79%
ii) KOH aq. rt, 76%.
iii) H_2,Pd(OH)$_2$/C, MeOH, rt, 73%
iv) NH_3, MeOH, 94%

Scheme 3.33 Vörbruggen conditions for the N-glycosylation reaction of C9′-epi-Sinefungin



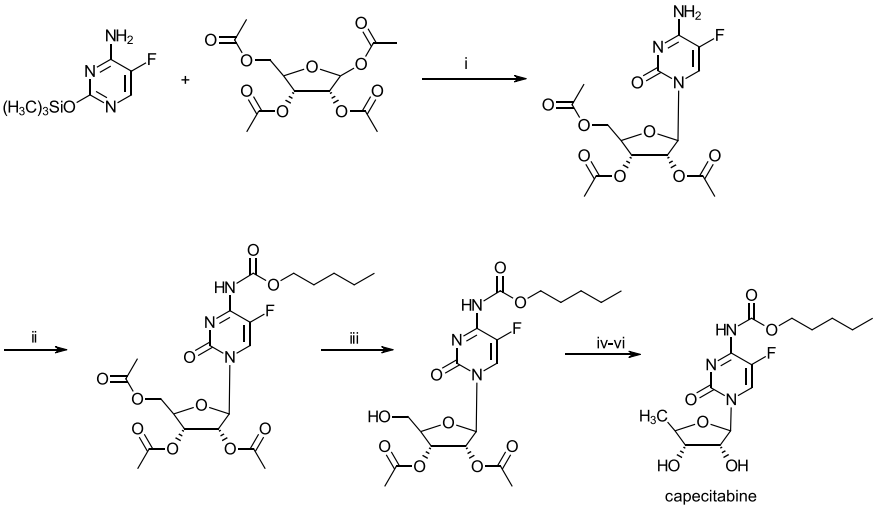
i) a) N,O-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (BSA), DCE, 60°C, 30 min
b) TMSOTf, DCE, 80°C, 5h, 55-57%.
ii) tetra-N-butylammonium fluoride (TBAF) in THF, 0°C to rt, 1h
iii) *t*-BuMgCl, THF, -5°C to 4°C, 16 h, 68%

Scheme 3.34 Preparation of 2′-α-fluoro, 2′-β-bromo-ribonucleosides phosphoramidate prodrugs using mesyl ribosyl donors under silyl conditions



Scheme 3.35 Preparation of highly potent anti HIV and HCV fluorinated nucleosides using exo 4′-methylene-nucleoside intermediate

Capecitabine is a 5′-deoxynucleoside containing a 5-fluorocytosine ring bearing a N_4-pentylcarbamate group used as front-line therapy in breast cancer and as adjuvant for colorectal cancer. Various approaches have been proposed for the synthesis of this important nucleoside, being the N-glycosylation key step accomplished under silyl conditions between peracetylated β-D-ribose and 5-fluorocytidine nucleoside providing the desired nucleoside which was transformed to the corresponding N_4-pentylcarbamate and selectively deacylated by means of Alcalase CLEA–catalyzed and finally reduced at the 5′ hydroxyl position to furnish the target N-nucleoside (Scheme 3.36) [51].

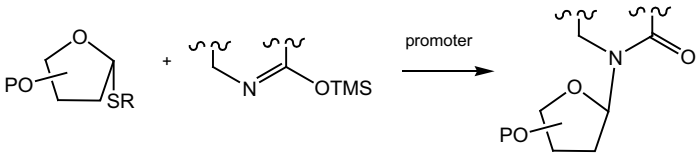


i)) Hexamethyldisilazane, $(NH_4)_2SO_4$, $SnCl_4$, CH_2Cl_2. 78%
ii) n-$C_5H_{11}OCOCl$, CH_2Cl_2, py, 75%.
iii) Alcalase CLEA, CH_3CH_2OH 80%.
iv) a) CBr_4, Ph_3P polymer bound, CH_2Cl_2. b) LiI, CH_3COCH_3.
v) $(C_4H_9)_3SnH$, AIBN, THF. (vi) NaOH, CH_3OH

Scheme 3.36 Chemoenzymatic synthesis of N-nucleoside capecitabine

3.3.5 Sulfur Mediated Reaction

3.3.5.1 General Scheme and Conditions



R = Ph, (=O)Ph

Promoter	Conditions
NIS-OTf	CH_2Cl_2
TMS-OTf	DCE r.t
Br_2	DMF

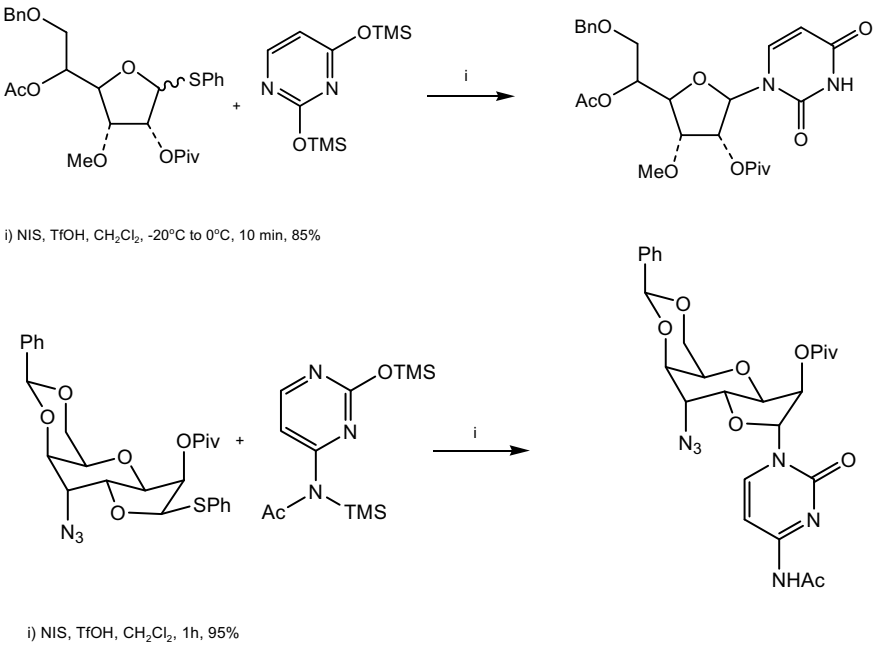
Derived from their extensive use in the preparation of *O*-glycosides, the sulfur glycosyl donors have become another standard procedure for N-glycosylations. The conditions reported for the coupling reactions involves the sulfur glycosyl donor, the silyl protected heterocycle acceptor and usually N-iodosuccinimide, triflic acid as catalyst (Scheme 3.37) [52].

3.3.6 Imidate Mediated Reaction

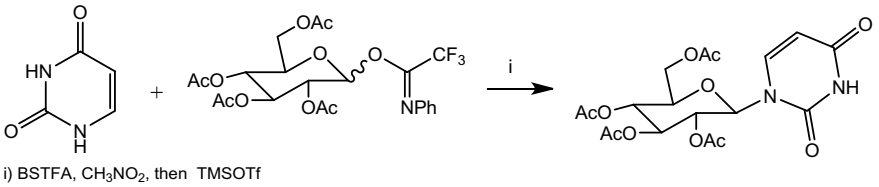
The imidate reaction is by far a method established for preparation of O-glycosides, however some N-glycosylation have been achieved by following this protocol. An interesting novel step is the incorporation of N,O-bis(trimethylsilyl)trifluoroacetamide (BSTFA) as a silylating reagent when glycosyl trifluoroacetimidates were used as donors, providing the β-nucleoside in 80% yield (Scheme 3.38) [53].

3.3.7 Mitsunobu Reaction

This reaction has been selected as another strategy for preparing N- and carboxyclic nucleosides. The mechanism involves a nucleophilic substitution displacement with inversion of the configuration between species bearing poor leaving groups with nucleophiles. The reaction mechanism involves the initial reaction of triphenylphosphine (Ph_3P) with diethylazodicarboxylate (DEAD) to produce a dipolar intermediate



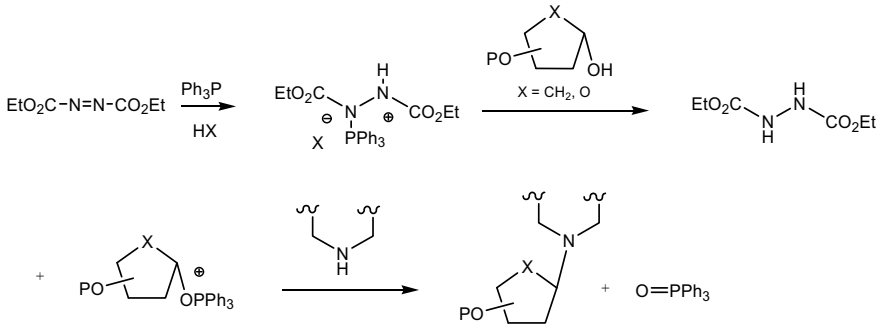
Scheme 3.37 N-glycoside formation via sulfur glycosyl donor



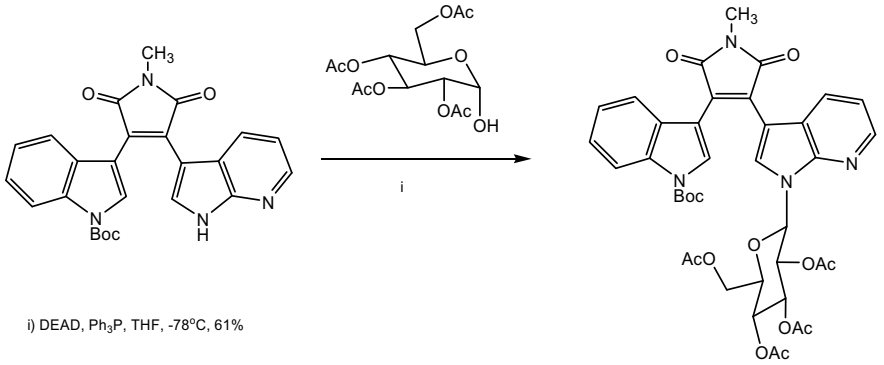
Scheme 3.38 Synthesis o glucopyranosyl pyrimidine from glycosyl trifluoroacetimidates

which will react with an alcohol to form an alcoxyphosphonium salt and diimide. Then the nucleophile will displace triphenylphospine oxide to give the substitution product. (Scheme 3.39) [54].

This procedure was used successfully for preparing the N-glycoside shown in Scheme 3.40 by reacting 2,3,4,6-tetraacetyl glucose with the heterocyclic base under the Mitsunobu conditions [55].



Scheme 3.39 The Mitsunobu reaction for the construction of glycosidic bond

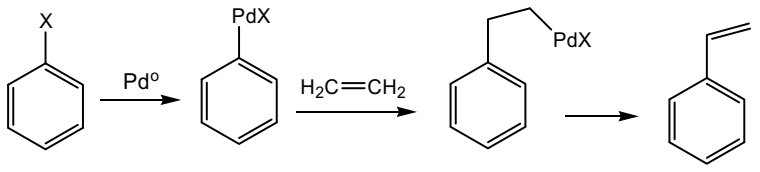


Scheme 3.40 The Mitsunobu reaction for preparation of N-glycosides

3.3.8 Palladium Mediated Reaction

Palladium catalysis is a well established and versatile methodology for the preparation of nucleosides. Also known as the Heck reaction, it was developed initially for C–C bond formation and consist in the coupling of an aryl halide with activated olefin in the presence of palladium (0) as catalyst (Scheme 3.41) [56].

More recently other palladium mediated reaction have been developed with great potential for heterocycle coupling reaction with furanosides, to produce an interesting

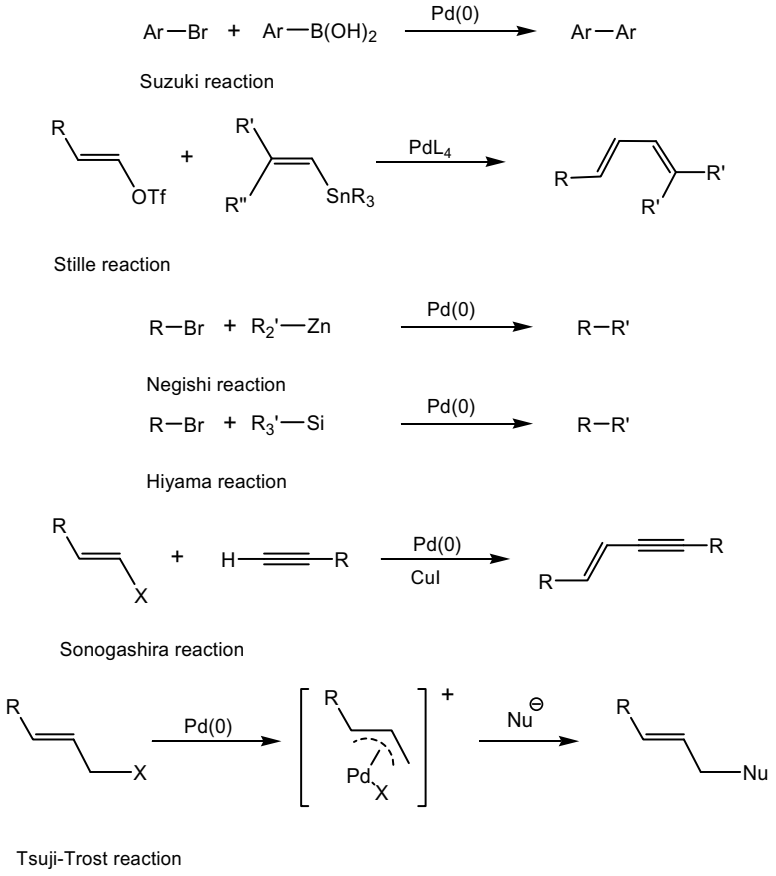


Scheme 3.41 The Heck reaction

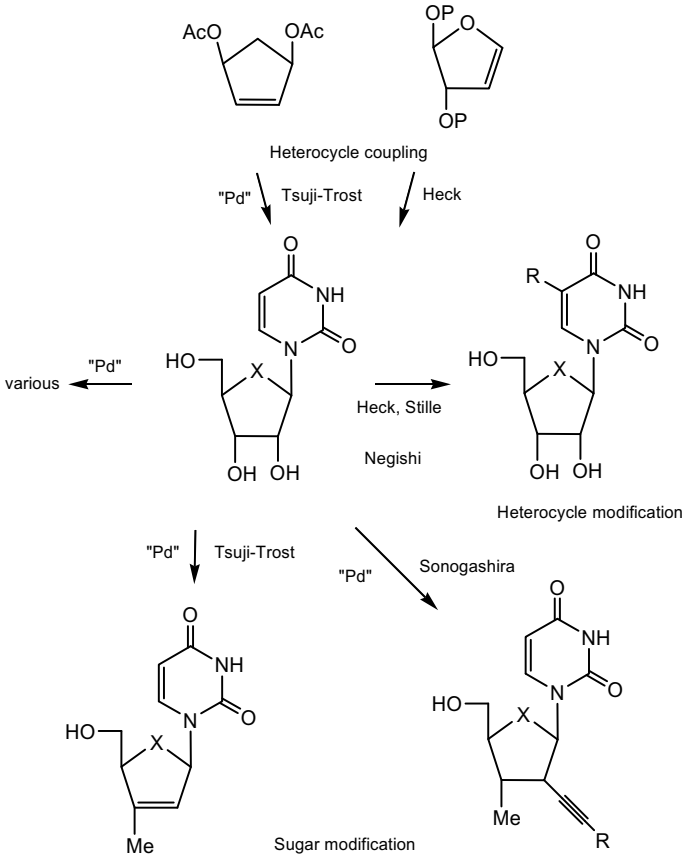
variety of nucleosides. The group of reactions includes the Suzuki (organoboranes) [57], Stille (organostannanes) [58], Negishi (zincated) [59], Sonogashira (alkyne-CuI) [60], Hiyama (organosilicon) [61], and Tsuji−Trost [62] (Scheme 3.42).

Early reports in the use of Heck-type reactions for the preparation of nucleosides were described by Bergstrom [63]. More recently a comprehensive overview about palladium mediated reactions for *N*-glycoside bond formation or modifications at the base or the sugar moieties were described. A general scheme summarizing such possibilities is shown in Scheme 3.43 [64].

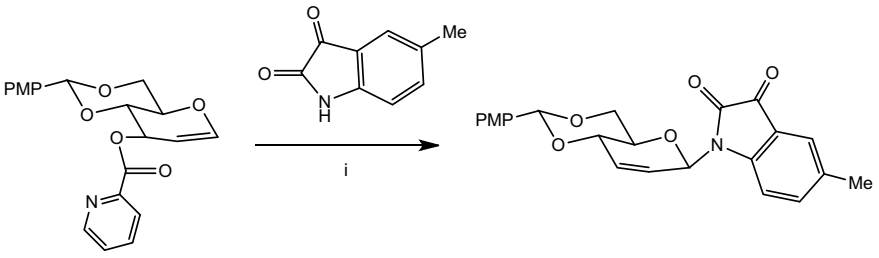
Palladium-catalyzed reaction was applied for a N-heterocyclic glycosylation, by using glycal type donors with methyl isatin through a classic Ferrier rearrangement, in the presence of dppb ligand which improved the yield to 50% (Scheme 3.44) [65].



Scheme 3.42 Palladium mediated coupling reactions

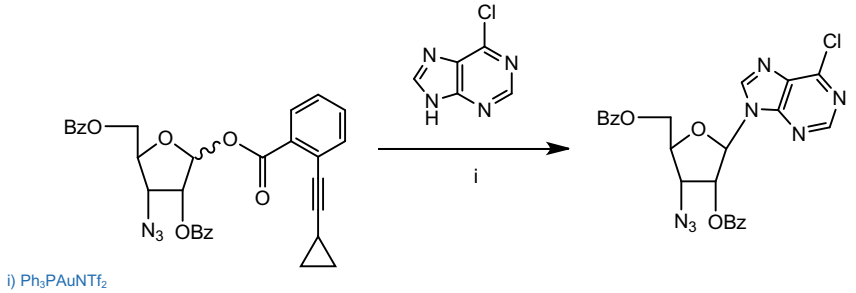


Scheme 3.43 Palladium-assisted modifications



i) $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ DPPB, THF, 70°C

Scheme 3.44 Synthesis of glycosyl isatin through a classic Ferrier rearrangement



Scheme 3.45 The ortho-alkynylbenzoates method catalysed by gold complex

3.3.9 Ortho-Alkynylbenzoates Protocol

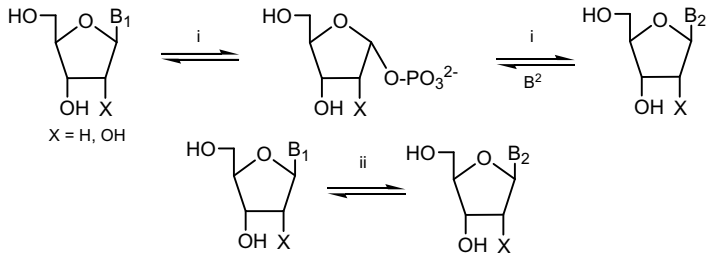
This method consists in the coupling reaction between ribofuranosyl ortho-alkynylbenzoate as donor with purines or pyrimidines in the presence of $Ph_3PAuNTf_2$ providing the N-glycosides in high β-selectivity. This method can be successfully applied in the preparation of complex nucleosides such as Antibiotic A201A, and Tunicamycin (Scheme 3.45) [66, 67].

3.3.10 Microbial/Enzymatic Approach

The synthesis of nucleosides by enzymatic methods is another extended possibility, and for this purpose the enzyme nucleoside phosphorylase has been selected as one of the most appropriate one. Usually the conversion proceeds by the reversible formation of a purine or pyrimidine nucleoside and inorganic phosphate from ribose-1-phosphate (R-1-P) and a purine or pyrimidine base. The general approach consists in the reaction of R-1-P as glycosyl donor which is condensed with purine or pyrimidine analogs. Following this method any heterocycle recognized by this enzyme can be glycosilated (Scheme 3.46).

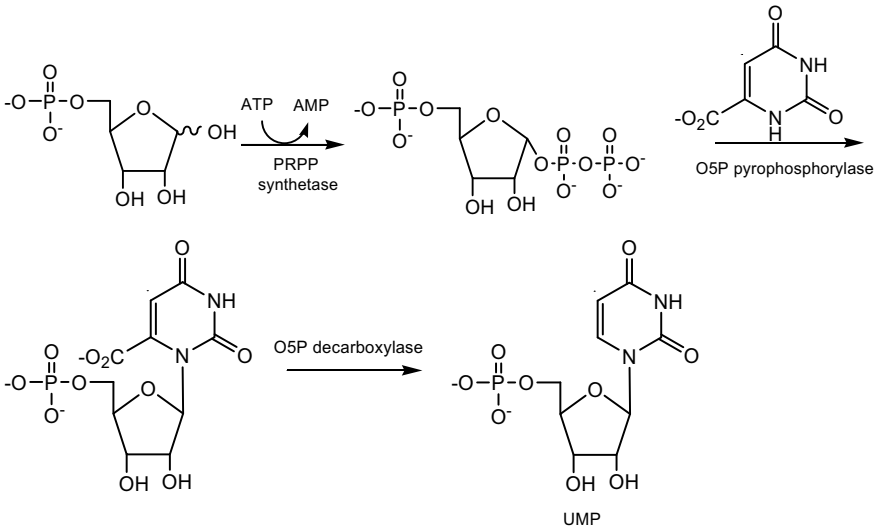
The enzyme synthetase phosphoribosyl pyrophosphate PRPP was used for nucleotide synthesis of UMP. The sequence involves the conversion of ribose-6-phosphate with PRPP synthetase to produce phosphoribosyl pyrophosphate which was condensed with orotate in the presence of O5P-Pyrophosphorylase to yield the nucleotide intermediate orotidine 5′-phosphate which after descarboxylation produced by the action of O 5P-decarboxylase the nucleotide Uridine monophosphate (Scheme 3.47) [68].

Bacterial α-D-glucopyranosyl-1-phosphate thymidylyltransferase was assayed as a catalyst for the synthesis of furanosyl nucleotides. Thus, five furanosyl-1-phosphates were evaluated as potential substrates for the bacterial thymidylyltransferase to produce only the β-anomer (1,2-cis-phosphate) of the sugar nucleotide as confirmed by proton NMR (Scheme 3.48) [69].

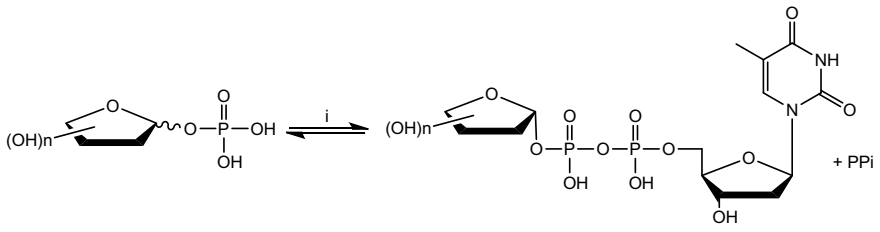


i) nucleoside phosphorilase. ii) trasribosylase.

Scheme 3.46 General scheme for enzyme-mediated nucleoside synthesis

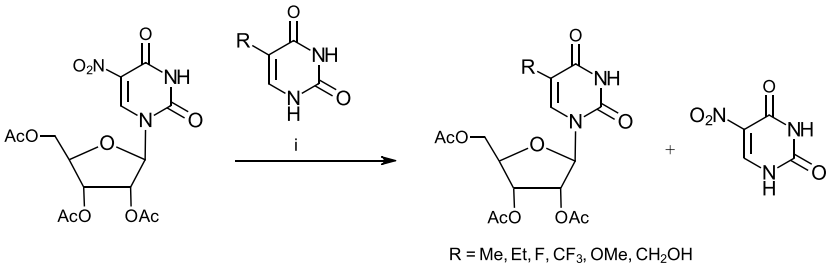


Scheme 3.47 Enzyme catalyzed synthesis of nucleotide



i) thymidylyltransferase CPs2L, deoxythymidine 5'-triphosphate, Mg^{2+}

Scheme 3.48 Enzyme catalyzed synthesis of nucleotide by thymidylyltransferase



Scheme 3.49 Transglycosylation of pyrimidine nucleosides under microwave conditions

Transglycosylation of nucleosides constitute an important approach in the preparation of active nucleosides from suitable nucleoside precursors under a variety of conditions such as microwave irradiation or oil bath heating, and particularly useful employing Vorbruggen conditions. This method has been applied in the preparation of uridine derivatives from 5-nitro uridine ribosyl triacetate under microwave irradiation and silyl/triflate conditions (Scheme 3.49) [44].

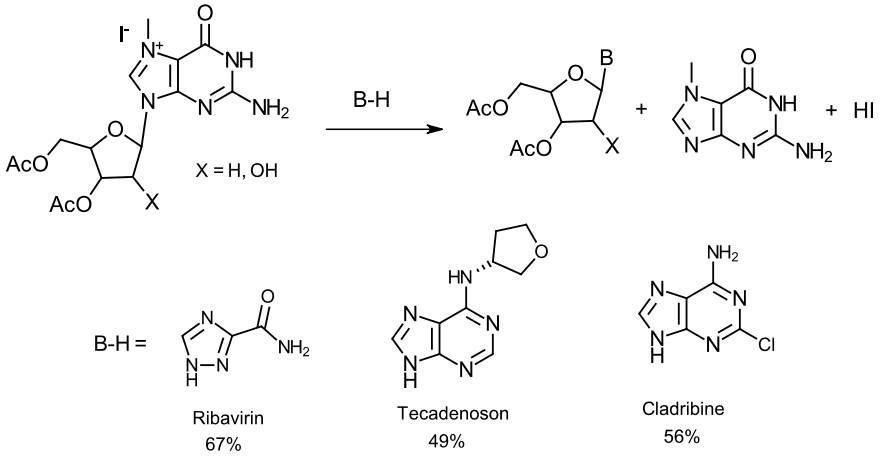
Also the enzymatic transglycosylation approach has proven to be a valuable alternative for instance employing the enzyme purine nucleoside phosphorylase from *Aeromonas hydrophila* (AhPNP) using "one-pot, one-enzyme" transglycosylation concept resulted a suitable method for preparing biologically important antiviral nucleoside ribavirin, A1 adenosine receptor stimulator tecadenoson, and antimetabolite for multiple sclerosis (MS) cladribine. The strategy consisting in the preparation of 7-methylguanosine iodide or 7-methyl-2′-deoxyguanosine iodide, and further transglycosylation reaction with heterocycle base, incubated with purine nucleoside phosphorylase (AhPNP) in buffer-glycerol at room tmperature (Scheme 3.50) [70].

3.4 Oligonucleotide Synthesis

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and Ribonucleic acid (RNA) are very important natural polymers responsible for the processing of the genetic information of all organisms.

The basic repetitive unit known as nucleotide is composed by a nucleotide base, a sugar moiety and a phosphate. The combinatorial pattern of the four different nucleosides constituted by the heterocyclic bases cytosine, thymine, guanine, and adenine are the base of DNA structure. In RNA strands uracil replace thymine and the furanoside is ribose instead of 2-deoxyribose. The phosphate group is attached at position 3′ of one sugar unit and the 5′ position of the next one forming a 3′–5′ elongation chain (Scheme 3.51).

Oligonucleotide synthesis does not involve N-glycoside bond formation, however requires the design of nucleoside donors and nucleoside acceptors, following the



i) 50 mM KH_2PO_4, pH 7.5, glycerol (20%) or DMSO, 1:1 donor/acceptor, AhPNP , rt

Scheme 3.50 Enzymatic transglycosylation for the synthesis of antimetabolite nucelosides ribavirin, tecadenoson, and cladribine using purine nucleoside phosphorylase

same principle that applies for glycoside coupling reactions were suitable protecting groups, glycosyl donors and acceptors are requested.

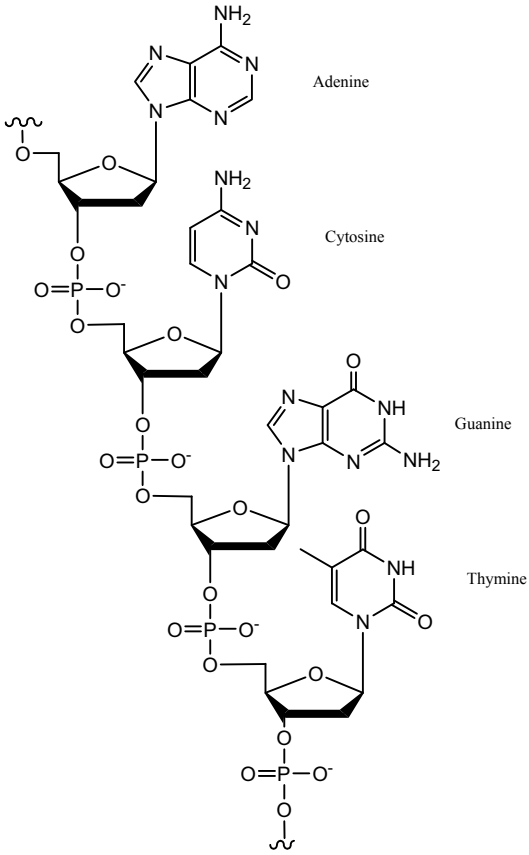
Solid phase procedures appear to be of great advantage for the coupling of nucleosides, and unlike for oligosaccharide solid phase chemistry, the attachment positions are always the same (3′ and 5′). The sequence of reactions that occurs in oligonucleotide synthesis starts on the attachment of 3′-OH position of 5′-protected nucleoside to a resin. Next, is deprotection of 5′-OH and subsequent attachment to a nucleoside donor which contains a phosphate precursor which in turn will be converted to phosphate group.

There are mainly two procedures for oligonucleotide synthesis: The phosphoramidite and the phosphonate method [15, 71].

3.4.1 Phosphoramidite Method

This methodology involves the use of the air sensitive reagent 2-cyanoethyl tetraisopropylphosphorodiamidite $\{[(CH_3)_2CH]_2N\}POCH_2CH_2CN$ or 2-cyanoethyl N,N-diisopropylchlorophosphoramidite $(iPr)_2NP(Cl)OCH_2CH_2CN$ for activation of nucleoside donor [72]. This intermediate can be obtained by treatment of PCl_3 with 2 eq of diisopropylamine, and 1 eq of cianoethylethanol. The general phosphoramidite approach, is outlined in Scheme 3.52, and begins with a nucleoside previously protected at the 5′-OH position with 4,4′-dimethoxytrityl group (Tr-), also attached to a silica support. The trityl group is then removed from the 5-OH position and allowed to react with a nucleoside donor protected at position 5-OH with Trityl

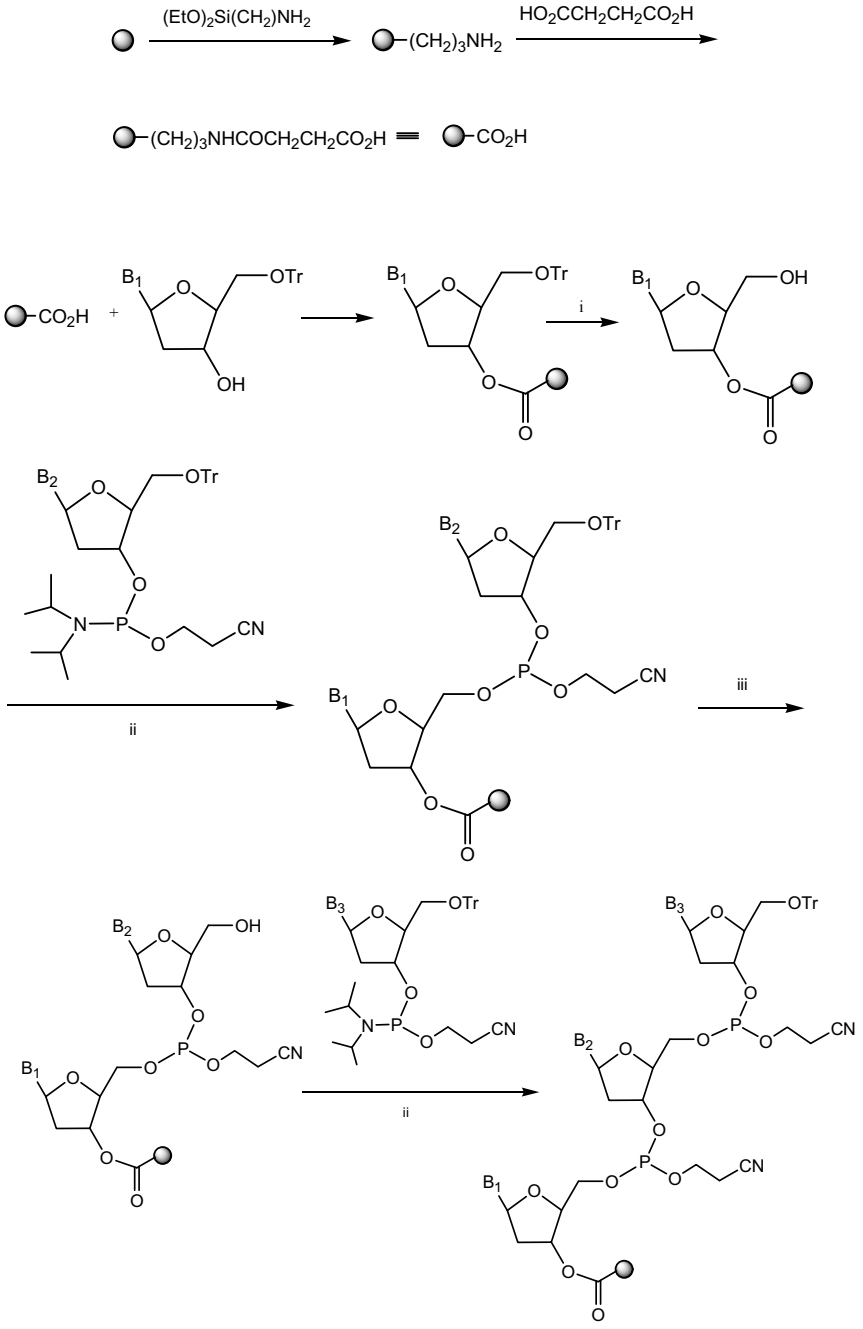
Scheme 3.51 Fragment of single strand of DNA structure



group and activated at position 3′ with 2-cyanoethyl diisopropylphophoroamidite. The coupling reaction being the critical step is catalyzed by tetrazol, and the process is repeated for the installation of subsequent nucleoside unit. Once the oligonucleotide chain is formed, the phosphoramidite group is transformed to phosphate with I_2–H_2O and released from resin with ammonia.

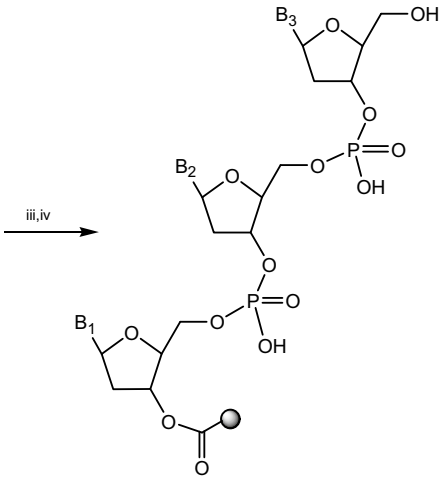
3.4.2 HOBt Solid Phase Synthesis

This protocol involves the initial attachment of a deoxy nucleoside with a highly cross-linked polystyrene resin and then reacted with a second phosphoramidite nucleoside in the presence of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt) as the promoter to the solid-phase synthesis. Further deprotection with I_2–MeOH, tricholoracetic acid and ammonia provides the desired oligonucleotides in good yields (Scheme 3.53) [73, 74].

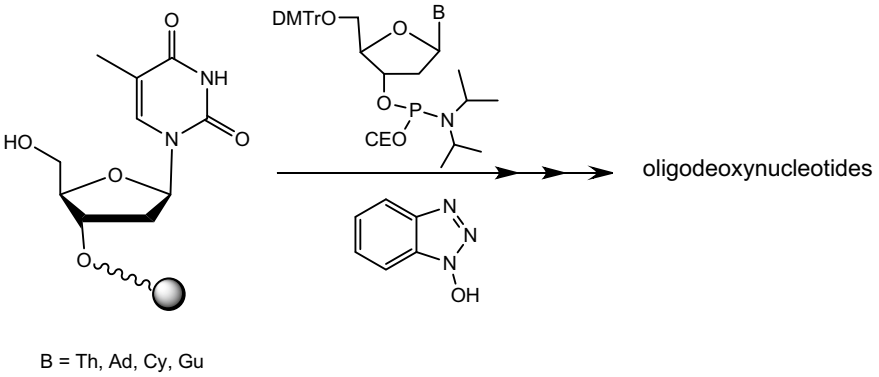


Scheme 3.52 The phosphoramidite oligonucleotide strategy

Scheme 3.52 (continued)



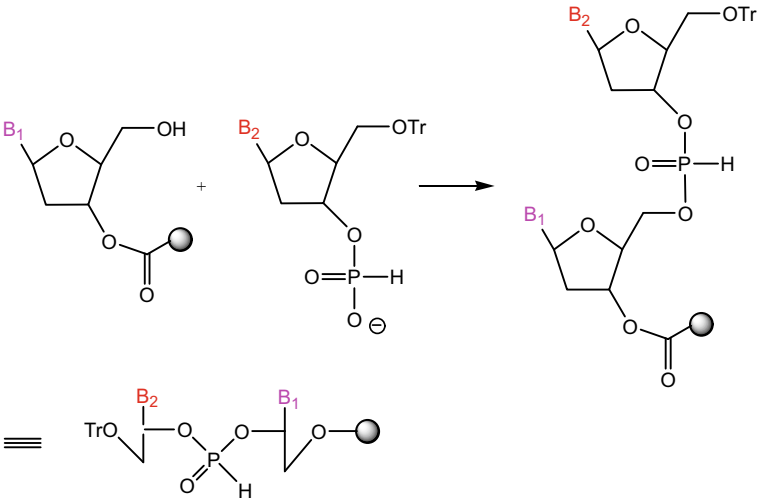
i) Cl_3CCOOH. ii) tetrazol. iii) Cl_3CCOOH. iv) a) I_2/H_2O. b) NH_4OH



Scheme 3.53 The HOBt solid phase synthesis

3.4.3 Phosphonate Method

In this method the nucleoside donor is functionalized as a phosphotriester sugar derivative which reacts with nucleoside acceptor at 5-OH position which is available for linkage. An advantage of this method is the possibility of introducing susbstituents to the phosphate position giving place to the preparation of modified oligonucleotides Scheme 3.54.

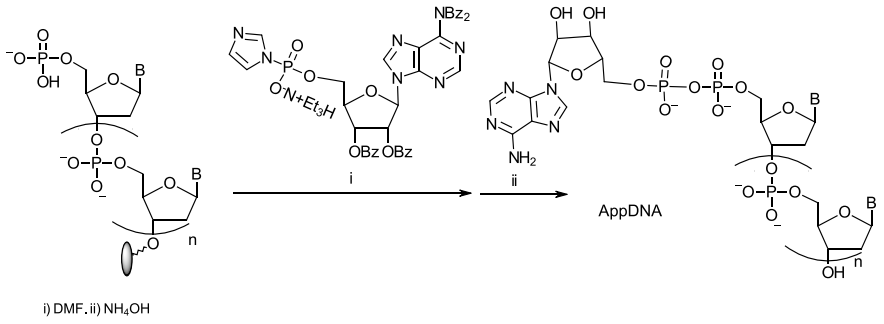


Scheme 3.54 The phosphonate method

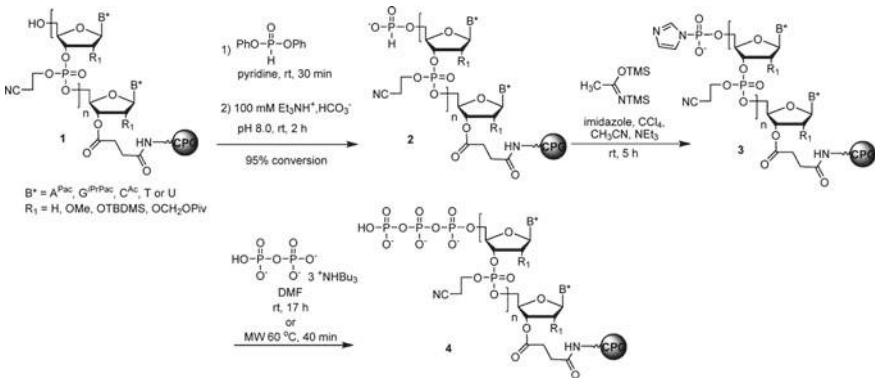
3.4.4 *Phosphorimidazolides Method*

This method proposes a coupling reaction between a phosphate nucleoside attached to a resin with adenosine 5′-phosphorimidazolidate, to produce the corresponding protected AppDNA, which if finally, debenzoylated with ammonia (Scheme 3.55) [75].

Another example on the applicability of this method is observed in the solid-phase preparation of the solid-phase dinucleotide triphosphate. This report consisted in the treatment of resin bounded phosphoramidite dinucleoside with a solution of diphenyl phosphite in pyridine, followed by hydrolysis, affording the solid-supported Hp-ON. Next the intermediate was oxidized to an activated 5′-phosphoroimidazolidate and



Scheme 3.55 The phosphorimidazolides approach



Scheme 3.56 Another example of the phosphorimidazolides approach

subsequently treated with excess of (tri-*n*-butylammonium) pyrophosphate affording solid-phase nucleoside triphosphate (Scheme 3.56) [76].

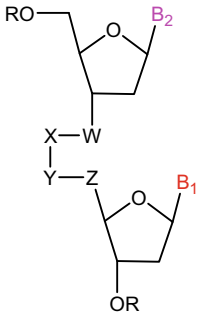
3.4.5 Modified Oligonucleotides

Modified oligonucleotides is another important application of solid phase oligonucleotide synthesis. It is known that natural oligonucleotides used as therapeutic strategy against viral infections as *antisense* for targeting RNA sequences may undergo enzymatic hydrolysis by endonucleases. Series of modified oligonucleotides carrying the modification either on the base, sugar or phosphate moiety provides ideally endonuclease resistance as well as high affinity for complementary RNA sequences.

Phosphodiester bond is the primary target for endonuclease breakage, therefore the effort has been focused mainly on the modification of this segment of the chain. As a result of this, a first generation of modified phosphorous oligonucleotides such as phosphothioates, methylphosphonates, phosphoramidates, phosphotriesters and phosphodithioates were synthesized. Although these phosphorous derivatives showed increased resistance to endonuclease activity, the affinity for complementary sequences was decreased [77–79]. For instance the synthesis of the antisense oligomer phosphorothioate analog of a 28-nucleotide homo-oligodeoxycytidine (S-dC_{28}) was achieved, and tested as a potent inhibitor of HIV in vitro, showing significant inhibition of reverse transcriptase activity and syncytium formation between HIV-1 producing cells and $CD4^+$ [80].

A second generation proposed the replacement of phosphodiester group by a bioisoster such as amides, urea, and carbamate (Scheme 3.57). In general the observations reveal better enzymatic hydrolysis resistances, but again poor affinity toward RNA complementary sequences.

Alternatively Dempcy et al. [81] reported the synthesis of modified guanidine-timidine oligonucleotide following the procedure depicted in Scheme 3.58. The reac-



W	X	Y	Z
O	-P(O)S-	O	CH_2
O	-P(O)CH_3-	O	CH_2
O	-P(O)NHR-	O	CH_2
O	-P(O)OR-	O	CH_2
NH	-P(O)O-	O	CH_2

Scheme 3.57 Modified oligonucleotides

tions involved are the condensation between 3′-amino-5′-O-trityl-3′-deoxythymidine and 3′-azido-5′-isothiocyano-3′,5′-deoxythymidine, to generate 5′ → 3′ thiourea-nucleoside dimer. Reduction followed by coupling reaction of dimer with the later nucleoside produced chain elongation reaction. Guanidine conversion was done with aminoiminosulfonic acid and ammonium hydroxide, affording guanidinium thymidyl pentamer.

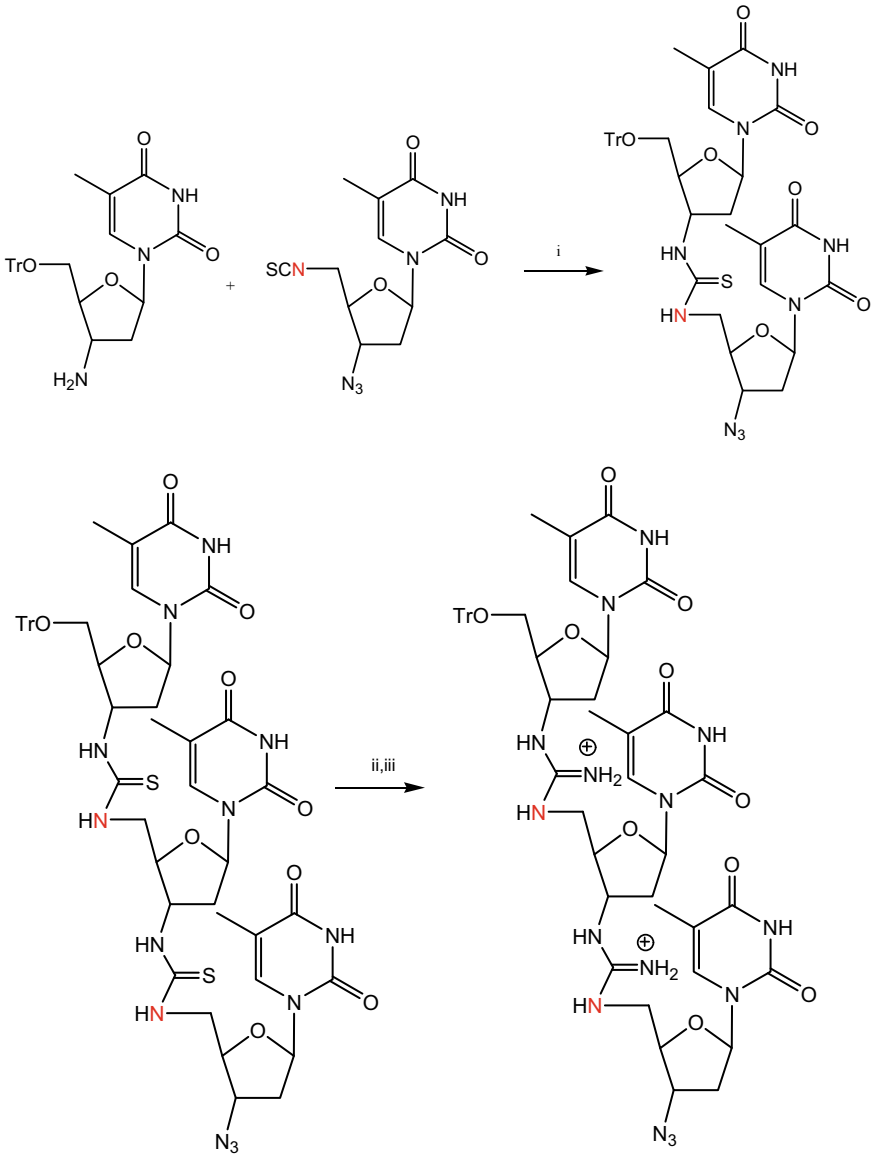
Another type of modified oligonucleosides more recently decribed correspond to the oligoribonucleoside phosphorothioates (PS-ORNs) which were prepared by using ribonucleoside 3′-*O*-oxazaphospholidine derivatives as monomer unit and submitted to react under activating conditions with protected 5′-OH nucleoside anchored to a highly cross-linked polystyrene (Scheme 3.59) [82].

The unit assemble for oligoribonucleotide synthesis is to some extend similar to deoxyribonucleotides synthesis, however, an additional consideration should be taken into account, which is the suitable protection of position 2-OH of ribose. The use of silyl protecting group, is one of the best choices so far reported, in particular the hindered *tert*-butyldimethyl silyl (TBDS) group. The protection of tritylribonucleoside produced a mixture of isomers, being the 2-OH silyl derivative generated in between 50 and 90% yield. Final removal of this protecting group is usually achieved with 1 M tetrabutylammonium fluoride in THF (Scheme 3.60).

Some other choices for 2-OH protection are: tertahydropyran-1-il, 4-methoxytetrahydropyran-4-il and modified ketal of 1-(2-fluorophenyl)-4-methoxypiperidin-4-il (Fpmp), however it has been found that acid conditions for removal of these protecting groups are not compatible with trityl protecting group.

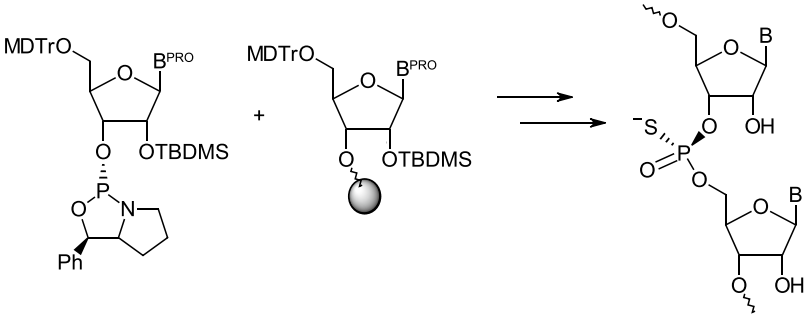
Simultaneous protection of position 3′ and 5′ can be achieved by using the silyl protecting group tetraisopropyldisiloxychloride (TIPS-Cl) in pyridine. This type of protection has been useful in the conversion of adenosine to 2′-deoxyadenosine under the conditions reported by Barton and McCombie [83] (Scheme 3.61).

Among the third-generation antisense oligonucleotides (ASO) some contains phosphorodiamidate morpholino groups (PMO) replacing the natural ribosyl ring and phosphate, conferring either nuclease stability and antisense efficiency. A notable case is the introduction of drug Eteplirsen to treat childhood muscular dystrophy known as Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD) [84]. A straightforward protocol to

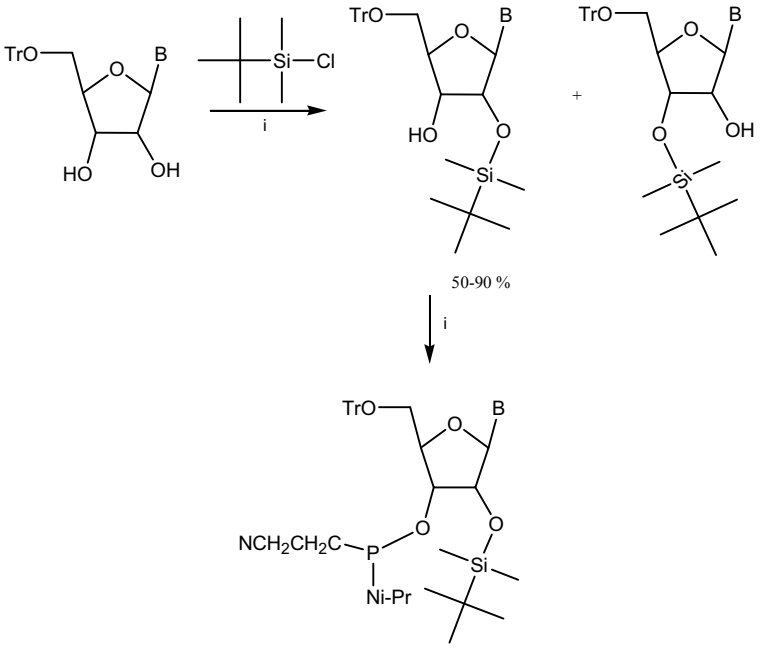


i) DMF. ii) H_2S. iii) 3´-azido-5´-isothiocyano-3´,5´-deoxythymidine. iv) a) TFA.
b) $H_2NC(=NH)SO_2H$. c) NH_4OH.

Scheme 3.58 Preparation of guanidinium oligonucleotides



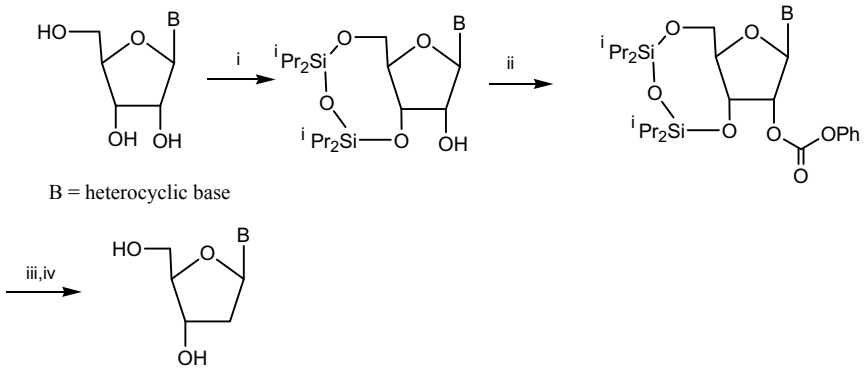
Scheme 3.59 Preparation of oligoribonucleoside phosphorothioates (PS-ORNs)



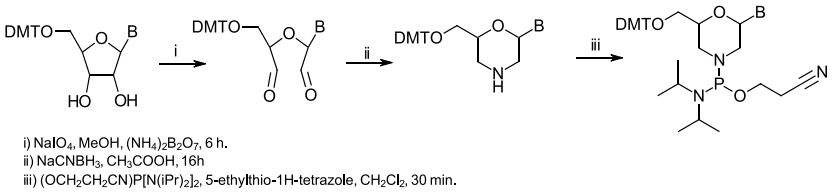
Scheme 3.60 Ribose protecting groups for oligoribonucleotide synthesis

transform ribosyl moiety to morpholino group involves diol opening, followed by double nucleophilic addition-reduction, and final installation of phosphorodiamidate as shown in Scheme 3.62 [85].

As a result of the remarkable advances for synthesizing oligonucleotides (for a comprehensive study see Ref. [86]), a wealth of ASO candidates have been prepared and introduced to the market, being the first FDA approved Fomivirsen (Vitravene), a synthetic 21-nucleotide phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotide for the treatment of cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis, back in 1998 [87]. Since then,

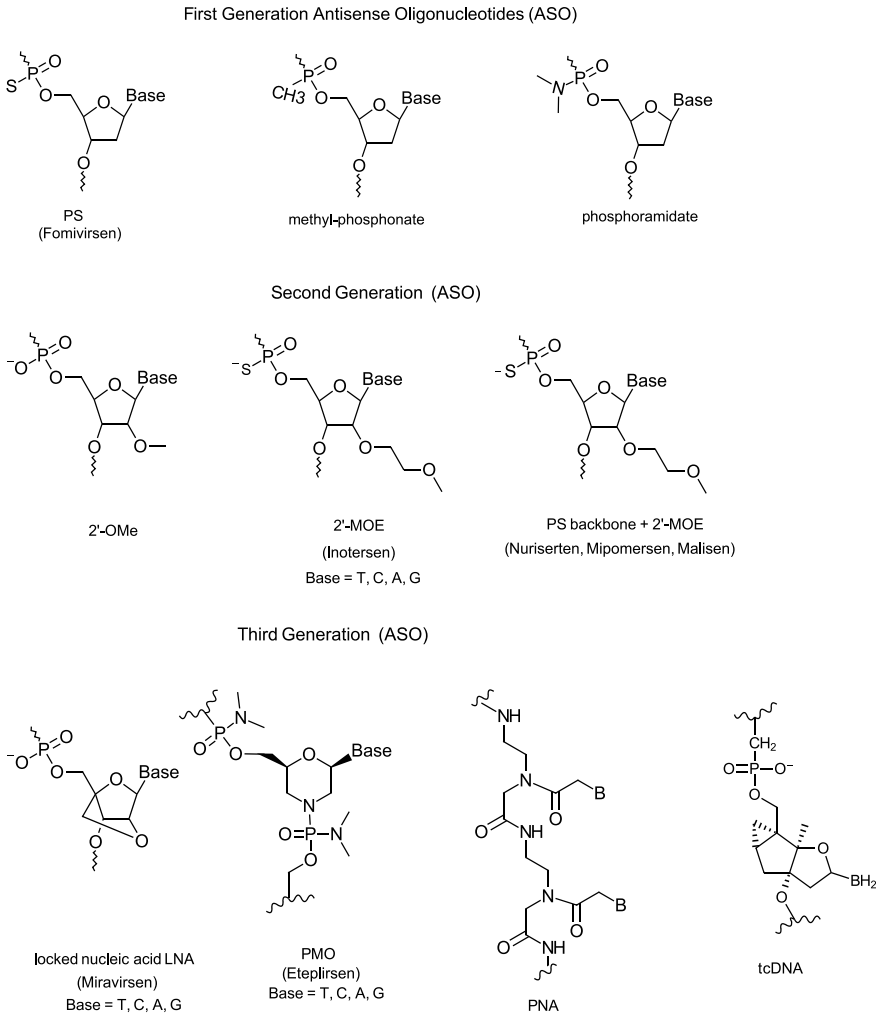


Scheme 3.61 The Barton-McCombie procedure for the preparation of 2′ deoxynucleosides



Scheme 3.62 Preparation of phosphorodiamidate morpholino (PMO) oligonucleotide building blocks

a variety of first, second and third generation antisense oligonucleotides (ASO) have appeared to treat different gene related abnormalities (Scheme 3.63). Example of ASO drugs currently prescribed are: Mipomersen against Homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia (HoFH), Nusinersen (Spinraza) indicated for Spinal muscular atrophy (SMA), Patisiran (Onpattro) for treating transthyretin-mediated amyloidosis (hATTR), Inotersen (Tegsedi) to treat polyneuropathy of hereditary amyloidosis (hATTR), Eteplirsen (Exondys 51) and Golodirsen (Vyondys 53) to treat muscle degenerative disorder (MDD), Miravirsen for treatment of hepatitis C virus, the antisense peptide nucleic acid (PNA) as anti-infective agents, and Milasen to treat neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis 7 (CLN7) in children. On the other hand, other antisense oligonucleotides which are undergoing clinical trials with high potential are Tominersen, Tofersen, Volanesorsen (Waylivra), Alicaforsen, Vutrisiran, Fitusiran, and Inclisiran to treat Huntington disease (HD), for amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Familial chylomicronemia syndrome (FCS), Pouchitis, hATTR, Hemophilia, and familial hypercholesterolemia (HeFH) respectively [88].



Scheme 3.63 First, second and third generation antisense oligonucleotide (ASO) building blocks

References

1. Nishimura S (1982) Minor components in transfer RNA: their characterization, location, and function. Progr Res Mol Biol 12:49–85
2. Kondo T, Ohgi T, Goto T (1977) Synthesis of 5-methyltubercidin and its α-anomer via condensation of the anion of 4-methoxy-5-methyl-2-methylthiopyrrolo [2,3-d] pyrimidine and 2,3,5-tri-O-benzyl-D-ribofuranosyl bromide agric. Biol Chem 41:1501–1507
3. Akimoto H, Imayima E, Hitaka T, Nomura H, Nishimura S (1988) Synthesis of queuine, the base of naturally occurring hypermodified nucleoside (queuosine), and its analogues. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans I:1637–1644
4. Barnett CJ, Grubb LM (2000) Total synthesis of Q base (queuine). Tetrahedron 56:9221–9225

5. Itaya T (1990) Synthesis of 7-methyl-3-β-D-ribofuranosylwye, the putative structure for the hypermodified nucleoside isolated from archaebacterial transfer ribonucleic acids. Chem Pharm Bull 38:2656–2661
6. (a) Knapp S (1995) Synthesis of complex nucleoside antibiotics. Chem Rev 95:1859–1876. (b) Migawa MT, Risen LM, Griffey RH, Swayze EE (2005) An efficient synthesis of gougerotin and related analogues using solid- and solution-phase methodology. Org Lett 7:3429–3432
7. Chida N, Koizumi K, Kitada Y, Yokohama C, Ogawa S (1994) Total synthesis of (+)-polyoxin J starting from myo-inositol. J Chem Soc Chem Comm 111–113
8. Maguire MP, Feldman PL, Rapoport H (1990) Stereoselective synthesis and absolute stereochemistry of sinefungin. J Org Chem 55:948–955
9. Kalvoda L, Prystas M, Sorm F (1976) Synthesis of exotoxin produced by Bacillus thuringiensis. I. Formation of the ethereal bond between ribose and glucose. Collect Czech Chem Commun 41:788–799
10. Myers AG, Gin DY, Rogers DH (1994) Synthetic studies of the tunicamycin antibiotics. Preparation of (+)-tunicaminyluracil, (+)-tunicamycin-V, and 5′-epitunicamycin-V. J Am Chem Soc 116:4697–4718
11. Hahn H, Heitsch H, Rathmann R, Zimmermann G, Bormann C, Zahner H, Konig W (1997) Partialsynthese der Nikkomycine Bx und Kx sowie unnatürlicher Stereoisomerer und Strukturanaloga (partial synthesis of nikkomycins Bx, Kx and unnatural stereoisomers and structural analogs). Liebigs Ann Chem 803–807
12. Hanessian S, Kloss J, Sugawara T (1986) Stereocontrolled access to the octosyl acids: total synthesis of octosyl acid A. J Am Chem Soc 108:2758
13. Ikemoto N, Schreiber SL (1992) Total synthesis of (−)-hikizimycin employing the strategy of two-directional chain synthesis. J Am Chem Soc 114:2524–2536
14. Knapp S, Nandan SR (1994) Synthesis of capuramycin. J Org Chem 59:281–283
15. Blackburn GM, Gait M (1990) Nucleic acids in chemistry and biology. IRL
16. Blaisdell TP, Lee S, Kasaplar P, Sun X, Tan KL (3013) Practical silyl protection of ribonucleosides. Organ Lett 15:4710–4713
17. (a) Ferrero M, Gotor V (2000) Biocatalytic selective modifications of conventional nucleosides, carbocyclic nucleosides, and C-nucleosides. Chem Rev100:4319–4348. (b) Wong CH, Chen ST, Hennen WJ, Bibbs JA, Wang YF, Liu JLC, Pantoliano MW, Whitlo M, Bryan PN (1990) Enzymes in organic synthesis: use of subtilisin and a highly stable mutant derived from multiple site-specific mutations. J Am Chem Soc 112:945–953
18. de la Cruz A, Elguero J, Gotor V, Goya P, Martínez A, Moris F (1991) Lipase-mediated acylation of acyclonucleosides. Application to novel fluoroquinolone derivatives. Synth Commun 21:1477–1480. Gotor V, Morís F (1992) Regioselective acylation of 2′-deoxynucleosides through an enzymatic reaction with oxime esters. Synthesis 626–628
19. Ozaki S, Yamashita K, Konishi T, Maekawa T, Eshima M, Uemura A, Ling L (1995) Enzyme aided regioselective acylation of nucleosides. Nucleosides Nucleotides 14:401–404
20. Singh HK, Cote GL, Sikirski RS (1993) Enzymatic regioselective deacylation of 2′,3′,5′-tri-o-acylribonucleosides—enzymatic-synthesis of 2′,3′-di-o-acylribonucleosides. Tetrahedron Lett 34:5201–5204
21. Damkjaer DI, Petersen M, Wengel J (1994) Lipase catalyzed diastereoselective deacetylations of anomeric mixtures of peracetylated 2′-deoxynucleosides Nucleosides Nucleotides 13:1801–1807
22. Kawana M (1981) The reactions of benzylated pyrrole and adenine ribonucleosides with grignard reagents. Chem Lett 1541–1542
23. Kozai S, Fuzikawa T, Harumoto K, Maruyama T (2003) Introduction of a benzyl group onto the 2′-OH of 6-chloropurine 3′-O-benzoylriboside. Nucleosides Nucleotides Nucleic Acids 22:779–781
24. Serebryany V, Beigelman L (2002) An efficient preparation of protected ribonucleosides for phosphoramidite RNA synthesis. Tetrahedron Lett 43:1983–1985
25. Taniguchi T, Ogasawara K (1988) Extremely facile and selective Nickel-catalyzed allyl ether cleavage. Angew Chem Int Ed 37:1136–1137

26. Robins MJ, Samano V, Johnson MD (1990) Nucleic acid-related compounds. 58. Periodinane oxidation, selective primary deprotection, and remarkably stereoselective reduction of tert-butyldimethylsilyl-protected ribonucleosides. Synthesis of 9-(.beta.-D-xylofuranosyl)adenine or 3′-deuterioadenosine from adenosine. J Org Chem 55:410–412
27. Nakamura H, Tsukano C, Yoshida T, Yasui M, Yokouchi S, Kobayashi Y, Igarashi M, Takemoto Y (2019) Total synthesis of caprazamycin a: practical and scalable synthesis of syn-β-hydroxyamino acids and introduction of a fatty acid side chain to 1,4-diazepanone. J Am Chem Soc 141:8527−8540
28. Kondo T, Ohgi T, Goto T (1983) Synthesis of Q Base (Queuine). Chem Lett 419–422
29. Battacharya BK, Rao TS, Revankar GR (1995) Total synthesis of 2′-deoxy-2′-arafluoro-tubercidin, 2′-deoxy-2′-arafluoro-toyocamycin, 2′-deoxy-2′-arafluoro-sangivamycin and certain related nucleosides. J Chem Soc 1543–1550
30. Seela F, Steker H, Driller H, Bindig U (1987) 2-Amino-2′-desoxytubercidin und verwandte Pyrrolo[2,3-d]pyrimidinyl-2′-desoxyribofuranoside. Liebigs Ann Chem15–19
31. Seela F, Kehne A (1983) Desoxytubercidin: synthese eines 2-desoxyadenosin-isosteren durch Phasentransferglykosylierung. Liebigs Ann Chem 876–884
32. Kazimierczuk Z, Cottam HB, Revankar GR, Robins RK (1984) Synthesis of 2′-deoxytubercidin, 2′-deoxyadenosine, and related 2′-deoxynucleosides via a novel direct stereospecific sodium salt glycosylation procedure. J Am Chem Soc 106:6379–6382
33. Edstrom E, Wei Y (1995) A new synthetic route to.beta.-2′-deoxyribosyl-5-substituted Pyrrolo[2,3-d]pyrimidines. Synthesis of 2′-deoxycadeguomycin. J Org Chem 60:5069–5076
34. Davoll J, Lythgoe B, Todd AR (1948) 185. Experiments on the synthesis of purine nucleosides. Part XIX. A synthesis of adenosine. J Chem Soc 967–969
35. (a) Montgomery JA, Thomas HL (1962) Purine nucleosides. Adv Carbohydr Chem 17:301–369. (b) Tipson RS (1939) A note on the action of silver salts of organic acids on bromoacetyl sugars. A new form of tetraacetyl l-rhamnose. J Biol Chem 130:55–59
36. Jung KH, Schmidt RR (1988) Synthese von N-ethylguanosin-5′-carboxamid. Liebigs Ann Chem 1013–1014
37. De Clercq E, Gosselin G, Bergogne MC, De Ruddes J, Imbach JL (1987) Systematic synthesis and biological evaluation of alpha- and beta-D-lyxofuranosyl nucleosides of the five naturally occurring nucleic acid bases. J Med Chem 30:982–991
38. Hilbert GE, Johnson TB (1930) Researches on pyrimidines. cxvii. A method for the synthesis of nucleosides. J Am Chem Soc 52:4489–4494
39. (a) Vorbrüggen H, Krolikiewicz K, Bennua B (1981) Nucleoside syntheses, XXII1) nucleoside synthesis with trimethylsilyl triflate and perchlorate as catalysts. Chem Ber 114:1234–1255. (b) Vorbrüggen H, Höfle G (1981) Nucleoside syntheses, XXIII1) on the mechanism of nucleoside synthesis. Chem Ber 114:1256–1268
40. Wang P, Chun B-K, Rachakonda S, Du J, Khan N, Shi J, Stec W, Cleary D, Ross BS, Sofia MJ (2009) An efficient and diastereoselective synthesis of PSI-6130: a clinically efficacious inhibitor of HCV NS5B polymerase. J Org Chem 74:6819–6824
41. (a) Cini E, Barreca G, Carcone L, Manetti F, Rasparini M, Taddei M Stereoselective synthesis of Sofosbuvir through nucleoside phosphorylation controlled by kinetic resolution. Eur J Org Chem 20–21:2622–2628. (b) Barth R, Rose CA, Schöne O (2015) Synthetic routes to Sofosbuvir. In: Časar Z (eds) Synthesis of heterocycles in contemporary medicinal chemistry. Top Heterocycl Chem 44. Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/7081_2015_183
42. Fukuyama K, Ohrui H, Kuwahara S (2015) Synthesis of EFdA via a diastereoselective Aldol reaction of a protected 3-Keto. Furanose Organ Lett 17:828–831
43. Kageyama M, Nagasawa T, Yoshida M, Ohrui H, Kuwahara S (2011) Enantioselective total synthesis of the potent anti-HIV nucleoside EfdA. Org Lett 13(13):5264–5266
44. Gong Y, Chen L, Zhang W, Salter R (2020) Transglycosylation in the modification and isotope labeling of pyrimidine nucleosides. Org Lett 22:5577−5581
45. Brito-Arias M (2020) Enzymes involved in glycolysis, fatty acid and amino acid biosynthesis: active site mechanism and inhibition. Bentham Science Publishers, pp 175–183

46. Behnam MAM, Nitsche C, Boldescu V, Klein CD (2016) The medicinal chemistry of dengue virus. J Med Chem 59:5622−5649
47. Decultot L, Policarpo RL, Wright BA, Huang D, Shair MD (2020) Asymmetric total synthesis of C9′-epi-sinefungin. Org Lett 22(14):5594–5599
48. Mengshetti S, Zhou L, Sari O, De Schutter C, Zhang H, Cho JH, Tao S, Bassit LC, Verma K, Domaoal RA, Ehteshami M, Jiang Y, Ovadia R, Kasthuri M, Ollinger Russell O, McBrayer T, Whitaker T, Pattassery J, Pascual L, Uher L, Lin BY, Lee S, Amblard F, Coats SJ, Schinazi RF (2019) Discovery of a series of 2′-α-fluoro,2′-β-bromo-ribonucleosides and their phosphoramidate prodrugs as potent pan-genotypic inhibitors of hepatitis C virus. J Med Chem 62:1859−1874
49. Wang Q, Hu W, Wang S, Pan Z, Tao L, Guo X, Qian K, Chen C-H, Lee K-H, Chang J Synthesis of new 2′-deoxy-2′-fluoro-4′-azido nucleoside analogues as potent anti-HIV agents Eur J Med Chem 46:4178–4183
50. Wang G, Dyatkina N, Prhavc M, Williams C, Serebryany V, Hu Y, Huang Y, Wan J, Wu X, Deval J, Fung A, Jin Z, Tan H, Shaw K, Kang H, Zhang Q, Tam Y, Stoycheva A, Jekle A, Smith DB, Beigelman L (2020) Synthesis and anti-HCV activity of sugar-modified guanosine analogues: discovery of AL-611 as an HCV NS5B polymerase inhibitor for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C. J Med Chem 63:10380−10395
51. Ciceri S, Ciuffreda P, Grisenti P, Ferraboschi P (2015) Synthesis of the antitumoral nucleoside capecitabine through a chemo-enzymatic approach. Tetrahedron Lett 56(43):5909–5913
52. Maier S, Preuss R, Schmidt RR (1990) Synthesis of the Ezomycin A basic structure. Liebigs Ann Chem 483–489
53. Liao J, Sun J, Yu B (2009) An improved procedure for nucleoside synthesis using glycosyl trifluoroacetimidates as donors. Carbohyd Res 344:1034–1038
54. Mitsunobu O (1981) The use of diethyl azodicarboxylate and triphenylphosphine in synthesis and transformation of natural products. Synthesis 1–28
55. Marminon C, Pierré A, Pfeiffer B, Pérez V, Léonce S, Joubert A, Bailly C, Renard P, Hickman J, Prudhomme M (2003) Syntheses and antiproliferative activities of 7-azarebeccamycin analogues bearing one 7-azaindole moiety. J Med Chem 46:609–622
56. Heck RF (1982) Palladium-catalyzed vinylation of organic halides organic reactions, vol 27, pp 345–390
57. Miyaura NM, Suzuki A (1995) Palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling reactions of organoboron compounds. Chem Rev 95:2457–2483
58. Scott WJ, Crisp GT, Stille JK (1984) Palladium-catalyzed coupling of vinyl triflates with organostannanes. A short synthesis of pleraplysillin-1. J Am Chem Soc 106:4630–4632
59. Negishi EI (2002) A genealogy of Pd-catalyzed cross-coupling. J Organomet Chem 653:30–40
60. Sonogashira K (1991) Coupling reactions between sp2 and sp carbon centers. Compr Organ Chem 3:521–549
61. Hatanaka Y, Hiyama T (1991) Highly selective cross-coupling reactions of organosilicon compounds mediated by fluoride ion and a palladium catalyst. Synlett 845–853.
62. (a) Trost BM, Van Vranken DL (1996) Asymmetric transition metal-catalyzed allylic alkylations. Chem Rev 96:395–422. (b) Tsuji J, Yamakawa T (1979) A convenient method for the preparation of 1-olefins by the palladium catalyzed hydrogenolysis of allylic acetates and allylic phenyl ethers with ammonium formate. Tetrahedron Lett 20:613–616
63. Ruth JL, Bergstrom DE (1978) C-5 substituted pyrimidine nucleosides. 1. Synthesis of C-5 allyl, propyl, and propenyl uracil and cytosine nucleosides via organopalladium intermediates. J Org Chem 43:2870–2876. Bergstrom DE, Ruth JL (1976) Synthesis of C-5 substituted pyrimidine nucleosides via organopalladium intermediates. J Am Chem Soc 98:1587–1589. Bergstrom DE, Ruth JL, Warwick P (1981) C-5-substituted pyrimidine nucleosides. 3. Reaction of allylic chlorides, alcohols, and acetates with pyrimidine nucleoside derived organopalladium intermediates. J Org Chem 46:1432–1441
64. Agrofolio LA, Gillaizeau I, Saito Y (2003) Palladium-assisted routes to nucleosides. Chem Rev 103:1875–1916

65. Ji L, Xiang S-H, Leng W-L, Hoang KLM, Liu X-W (2015) Palladium-catalyzed glycosylation: novel synthetic approach to diverse N-heterocyclic glycosides. Org Lett 17:1357–1360
66. Nie S, Li W, Yu B (2014) Total synthesis of nucleoside antibiotic A201A. J Am Chem Soc 136:4157–4160
67. Li J, Yu B (2015) A modular approach to the total synthesis of tunicamycins angew. Chem Int Ed 54:6618–6621
68. Gross A, Abril O, Lewis JM, Geresh S, Whitesides GM (1983) Practical synthesis of 5-phospho-D-ribosyl.alpha.-1-pyrophosphate (PRPP): enzymatic routes from ribose 5-phosphate or ribose. J Am Chem Soc 105:7428–7435
69. Timmons SC, Hui JP, Pearson JL, Peltier P, Daniellou R, Nugier-Chauvin C, Soo EC, Syvitski RT, Ferrieres V, Jakeman DL (2008) Enzyme-catalyzed synthesis of furanosyl nucleotides. Organic Lett 10:161–163
70. Rabuffetti M, Bavaro T, Semproli R, Cattaneo G, Massone M, Morelli CF, Speranza G, Ubiali D (2019) Synthesis of Ribavirin, tecadenoson, and cladribine by enzymatic transglycosylation. Catalysts 9:355, 2–12
71. Eckstein F (ed) (1991) Oligonucleotides and analogs—a practical approach. IRL Press Oxford University Press, New York
72. Li NS, Piccirilli JA (2004) Synthesis of the phosphoramidite derivatives of 2′ Deoxy-2′-C-α-methylcytidine and 2′-Deoxy-2′-C-α-hydroxymethylcytidine: analogues for chemical dissection of RNA's 2′-hydroxyl group. J Org Chem 69:4751–4959
73. Ohkubo A, Seio K, Sekine M (2004) A new strategy for the synthesis of oligodeoxynucleotides directed towards perfect O-selective internucleotidic bond formation without base protection. Tetrahedron Lett 45:363–366
74. Ohkubo A, Kuwayama Y, Nishino Y, Tsunoda H, Seio K, Sekine M (2010) Oligonucleotide synthesis involving deprotection of amidine-type protecting groups for nucleobases under acidic conditions. Org Lett 12:2496–2499
75. Dai Q, Saikia M, Li N-S, Pan T Piccirilli JA (2009) Efficient chemical synthesis of AppDNA by adenylation of immobilized DNA-5′-monophosphate. Organ Lett 11:1067–1070
76. Zlatev I, Lavergne T, Debart F, Vasseur J-J, Manoharan M, Morvan F (2010) Efficient solid-phase chemical synthesis of 5′-triphosphates of DNA, RNA, and their analogues. Organ Lett 12:2190–2193
77. De Mesmaeker A, Haner R, Martin P, Moser HE (1995) Antisense oligonucleotides. Acc Chem Res 28:366–374
78. Damha MJ, Giannaris PA, Marfey PA, Reid LS (1991) Oligodeoxynucleotides containing unnatural L-2′-deoxyribose. Tetrahedon Lett 32:2573–2576
79. Sekine M, Tsuruoka H, Iimura S, Kusuoku H, Wada T (1996) Studies on steric and electronic control of 2′-3′ phosphoryl migration in 2′-phosphorylated uridine derivatives and its application to the synthesis of 2′-phosphorylated oligouridylates. J Org Chem 61:4087–4100
80. Mitsuya H, Yarchoan R, Broder S (1990) Molecular targets for AIDS therapy. Science 249:1533–1544
81. Dempcy R, Browne KA, Bruice TC (1995) Synthesis of the polycationic thymidyl DNG, its fidelity in binding polyanionic DNA/RNA and the stability and nature of the hybrid complexes. J Am Chem Soc 117:6140–6141
82. Oka N, Kondo T, Fujiwara S, Maizuru Y Wada T (2009) Stereocontrolled synthesis of oligoribonucleoside phosphorothioates by an oxazaphospholidine approach. Organ Lett 11:967–970
83. Barton DHR, McCombie SW (1975) A new method for the deoxygenation of secondary alcohols. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:1574–1585
84. Roberts TC, Langer R, Wood MJA (2020) Advances in oligonucleotide drug delivery. Nat Rev Dug Discov 19:673–694
85. Langner HK, Jastrzebska K, and Caruthers MH (2020) Synthesis and characterization of thiophosphoramidate morpholino oligonucleotides and chimeras. J Am Chem Soc 142:16240−16253

86. Wan WB, Seth PP (2016) The medicinal chemistry of therapeutic oligonucleotides. J Med Chem 59:9645−9667
87. Bradley CA, First antisense drug is approved with fleeting success. Nature. Milestones | antisense RNA. https://www.nature.com/articles/d42859-019-00080-6
88. Dhuri K, Bechtold C, Quijano E, Pham H, Gupta A, Vikram A, Baha R (2020) Antisense oligonucleotides: an emerging area in drug discovery and development. J Clin Med 9:2004, 1–24

Chapter 4
Nucleoside Mimetics

Modified nucleosides are useful therapeutic agents being currently used as anti tumor, antiviral and antibiotic agents. Despite the fact that a significant variety of modified nucleosides displays potent and selective action against the mentioned diseases, the challenge still attracts full attention since most of them do not discriminate between normal and tumor cell and in viral infection resistant strains usually appears during the course of the treatment.

Synthetic acyclic, carbocyclic, C-nucleosides and modified N-nucleosides have shown remarkable action against AIDS, Hepatitis, and Herpes infections among others. Some of the nucleosides used as approved drugs are: acyclovir, carbovir being the treatment of choice against Herpes, AZT, ddI, ddC, ddG, Abacavir, which in combination with protease inhibitors are indicated in the treatment against HIV, and C-nucleoside Ribavirin in the treatment against Hepatitis [1, 2].

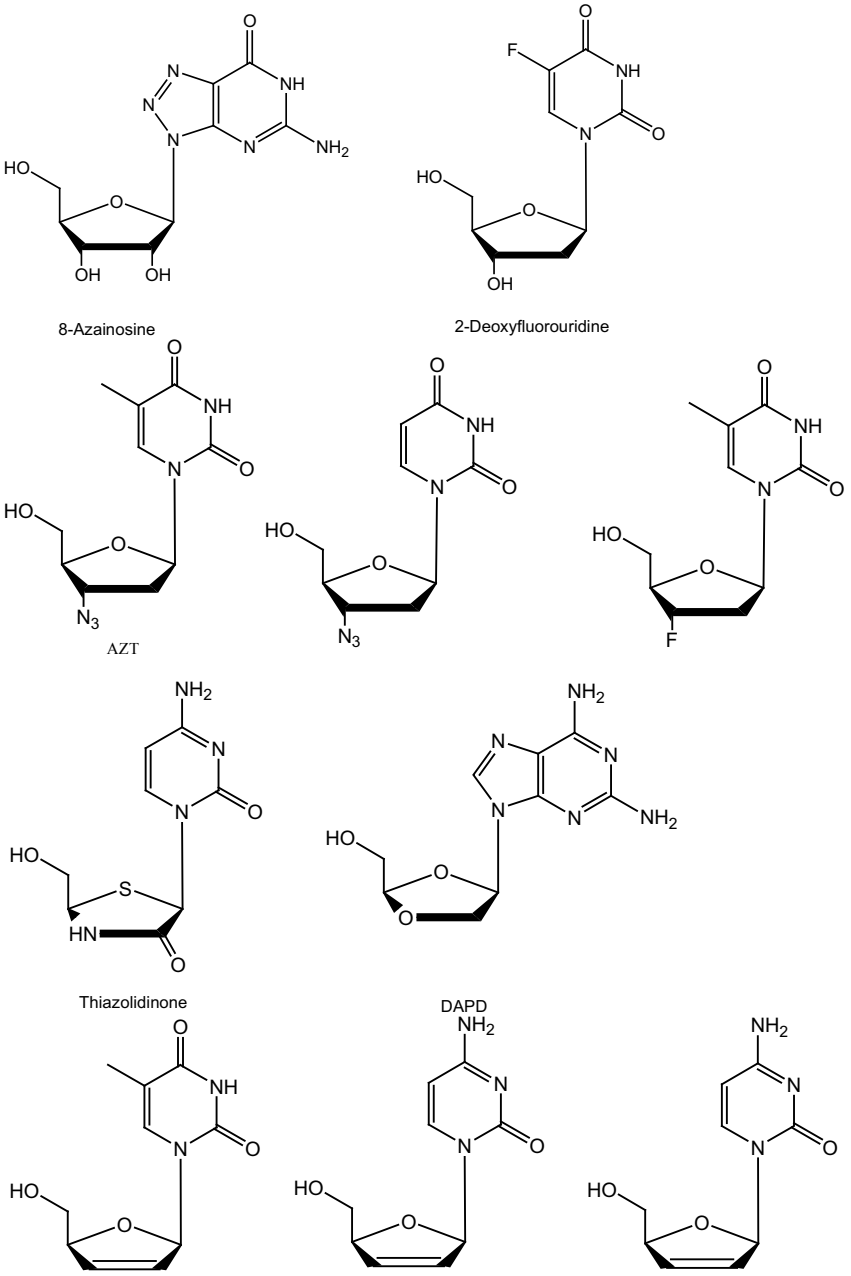
Representative examples of chemotherapeutic agents modified at the heterocyclic base, the sugar fragment, L and C-nucleosides, carbocyclic and acyclic nucleosides are depicted in Scheme 4.1.

A significant number of synthetically modified nucleosides were designed as antiretroviral drugs in the therapy of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. During retroviral infection, the viral RNA is used as template for proviral DNA synthesis, a process mediated by the viral DNA polymerase better known as reverse transcriptase. Thus, the process involves the initial formation of a RNA–DNA hybrid which is then degraded by a RNAse to release the DNA strand that will be the template for the synthesis of the double stranded viral DNA, a process also catalyzed by the reverse transcriptase [3].

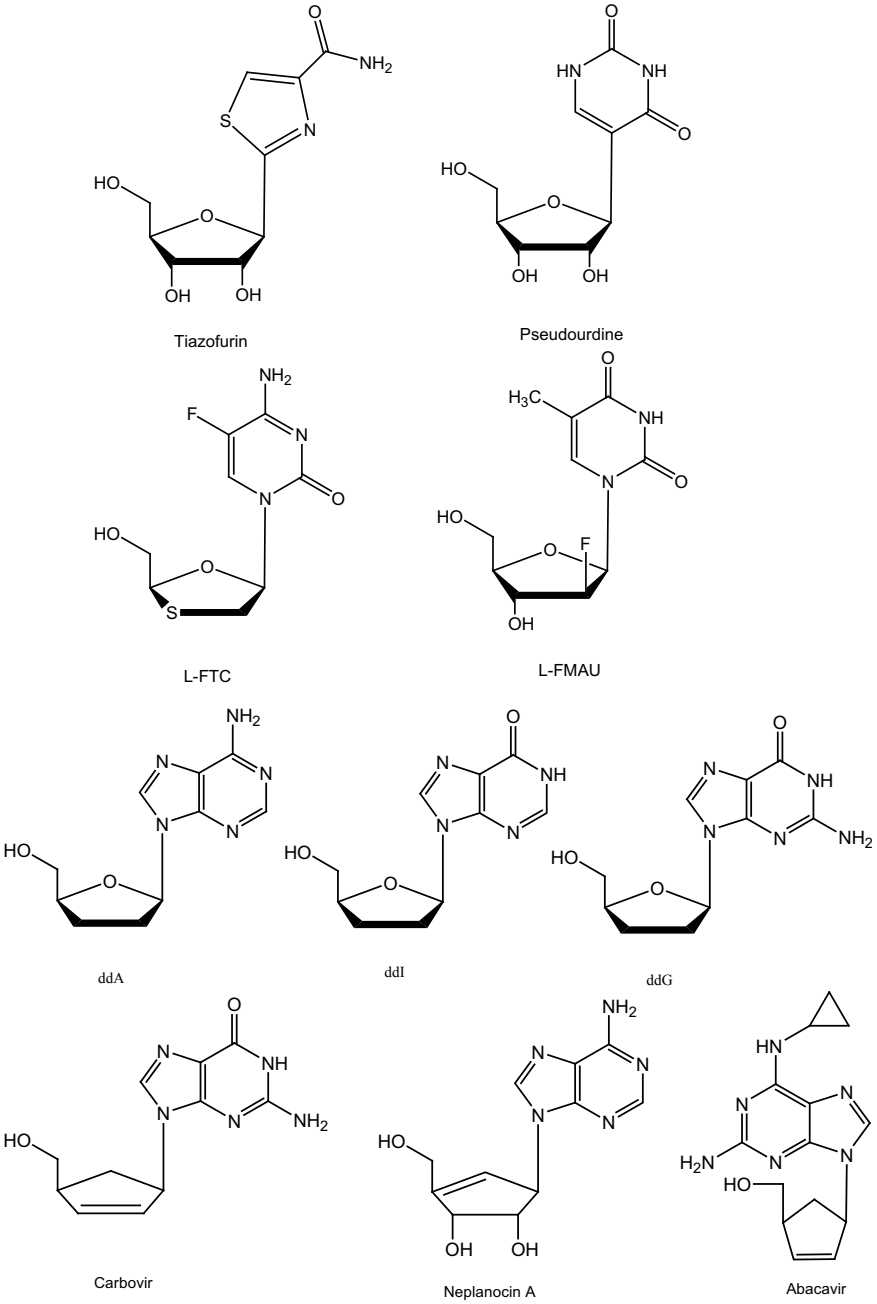
The proposed mechanism of action of modified agents such as AZT during viral infection involves the interruption of the viral replication process that occurs between the virus and host, particularly the replication inhibition inside T cells, monocytes and macrophages.

When the modified nucleoside is introduced into de cell, a sequential 5′-phosphorylation process mediated by kinases occurs on the furanoside ring which is subsequently incorporated into the DNA as triphosphate (Scheme 4.2).

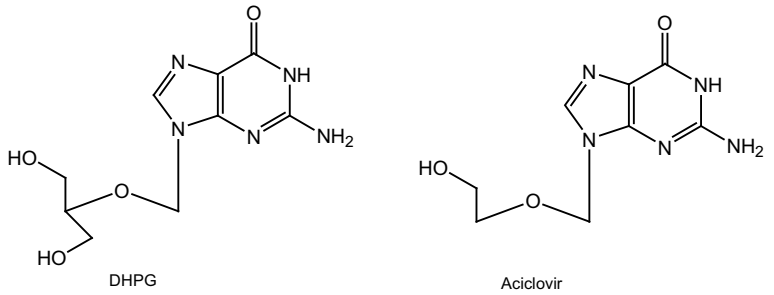
M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_4



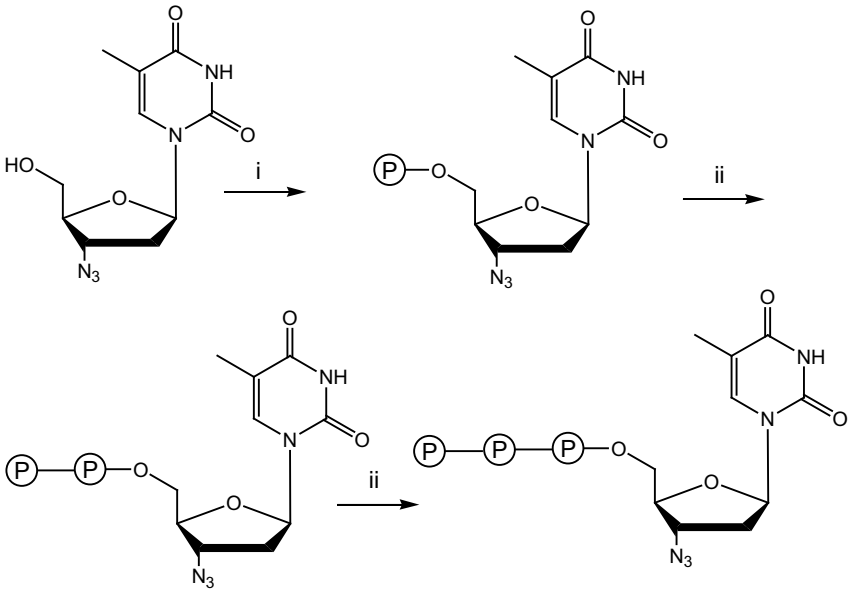
Scheme 4.1 Representative synthetically modified nucleosides



Scheme 4.1 (continued)



Scheme 4.1 (continued)

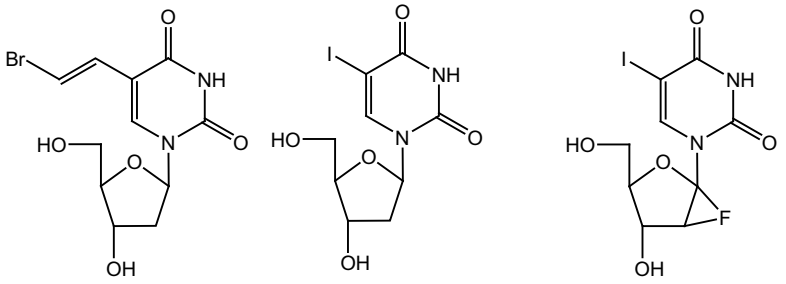


i) Timidinkinase. ii) Timidilatokinase. iii) Nucleosidediphosphatekinase.

Scheme 4.2 Phosphorylation of AZT

An important collection of active nucleosides mimetics has been synthesized and classified for better understanding as follows [4]:

Modified N-nucleosides
L-nucleosides (D-isomers)
C-nucleosides
Carbocyclic nucleosides
Acyclic nucleosides
Thionucleosides.



Scheme 4.3 Active C-5 substituted pyrimidines

4.1 Modified N-Nucleosides

A broad number of modified N-nucleosides have been developed and tested on clinical trials, being some of them highly promising. The chemical manipulations have been made at the heterocyclic base, the sugar of both. Some representative examples of chemical modifications leading to key intermediates or active nucleosides are.

4.1.1 Heterocycle Modifications

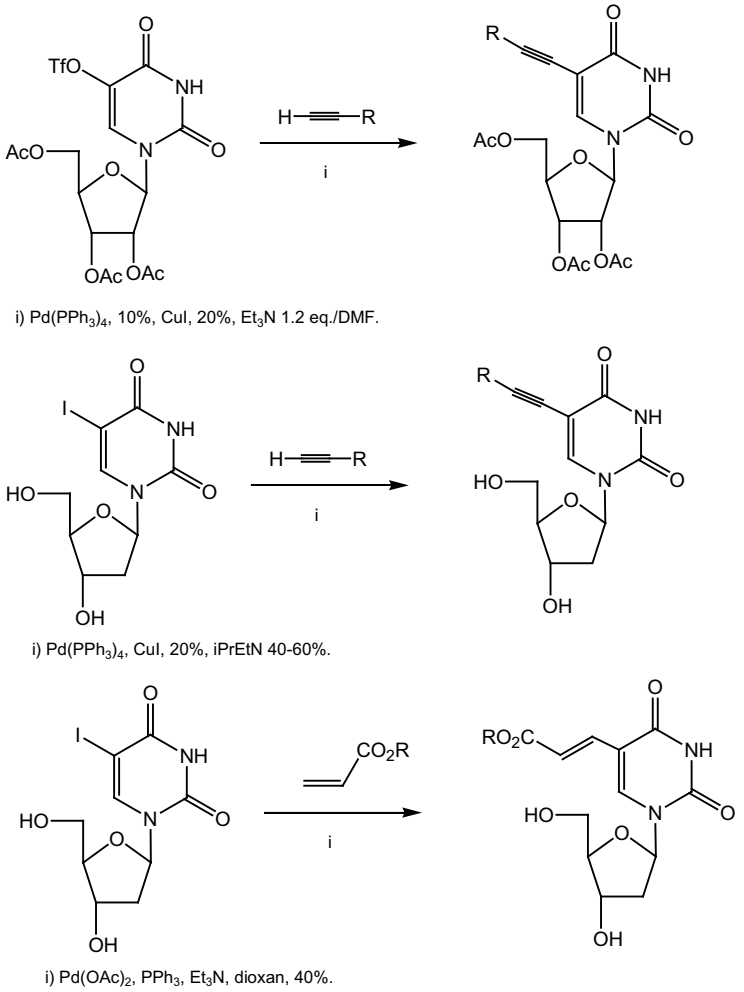
4.1.1.1 C-5 Substituted Pyrimidines

Several nucleoside analogs bearing modifications at the 5-position has been found to be active as antiviral and anticancer drugs Examples of this are BVDU, IDU and FIAU (Scheme 4.3) [5].

Palladium mediated transformations is a suitable strategy for introducing substituents at C-5. Some of the reactions implemented for this purposes are the Sonogashira [6, 7], Stille [8, 9], Heck [10], and Hiyama [11] (Scheme 4.4).

4.1.1.2 C-6 Substituted Pyrimidines

By following palladium-mediated substitutions, a more limited number of C-6 substituted pyrimidines have been described in comparison with C-5. For instance, by applying the Stille reaction it has been possible to prepare C-6 substituted aryl, vinyl, alkynyl derivatives (Scheme 4.5) [12].

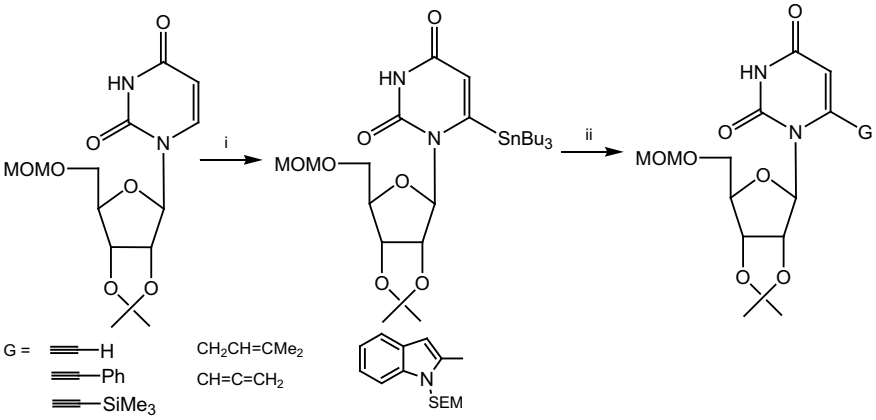


Scheme 4.4 Palladium mediated substitutions at C-5 pyrimidine position

4.1.1.3 Pyrimidine Nitrogen Modification

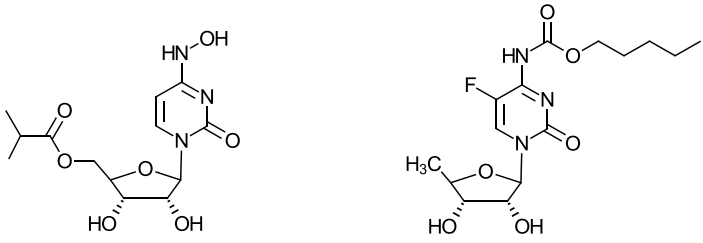
Modification on the primary amine at pyrimidine rings has been described particularly for the preparation of antiviral or anti-cancer drugs. As representative example the cytidine modified N-nucleosides molnupiravir and capecitabine (Scheme 4.6), are relevant drugs, the former as orally bioavailable drug candidate for the COVID-19 and the later currently used as monotherapy in breast cancer and as adjuvant for colorectal cancer.

Oxime N-nucleoside molnupiravir was prepared from uridine in five steps consisting in acetylation, triazole derivatization, oxime substitution and protecting



i) LDA, then Bu_3SnCl, 98%, G-X (Pd), CuI, DMF, 60-90%.

Scheme 4.5 Palladium-mediated substitution of 6-C substituted pyrimidines



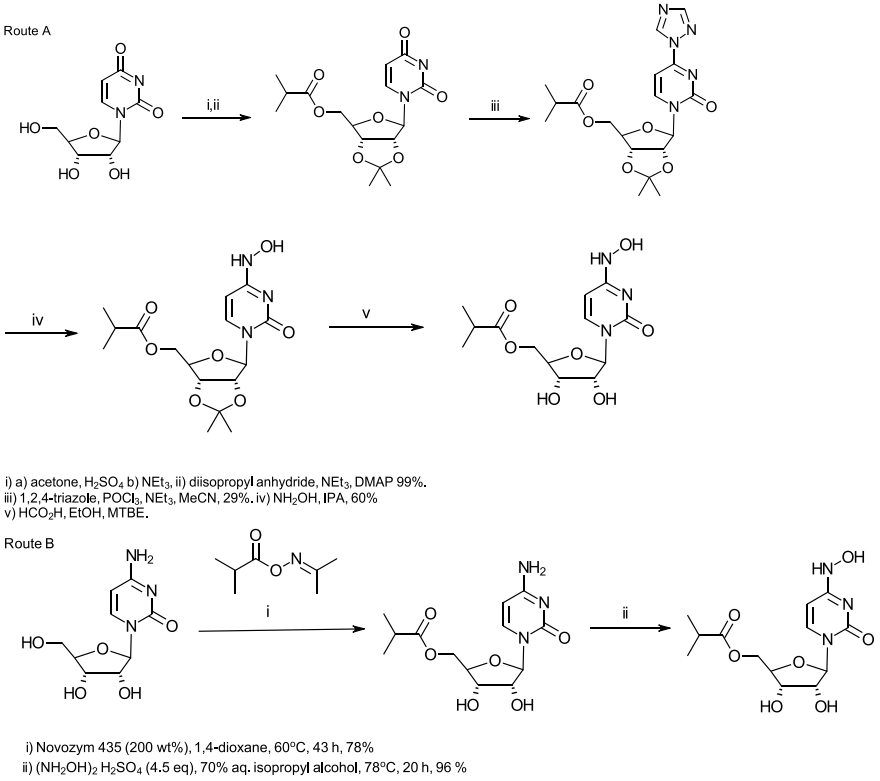
Scheme 4.6 Structure of amino modified cytidine antiviral molnupiravir and anti-cancer capecitabine

group removal (route A). An improved method represented in route B starting from cytidine which was treated with acetone oxime O-isobutyryl ester as acylating reagent and catalyzed with Novozym 435 enzyme providing molnupiravir in high yields at large scale (Scheme 4.7) [13].

4.1.1.4 Purine Formation

The conventional methods of preparation of C–C purines are based on heterocyclization [14, 15]. The classical procedures involve:

(a) 2-C-C-purines cyclization of 4-aminoimidazole-5-carboxamides or nitriles with carboxylic acid equivalents.



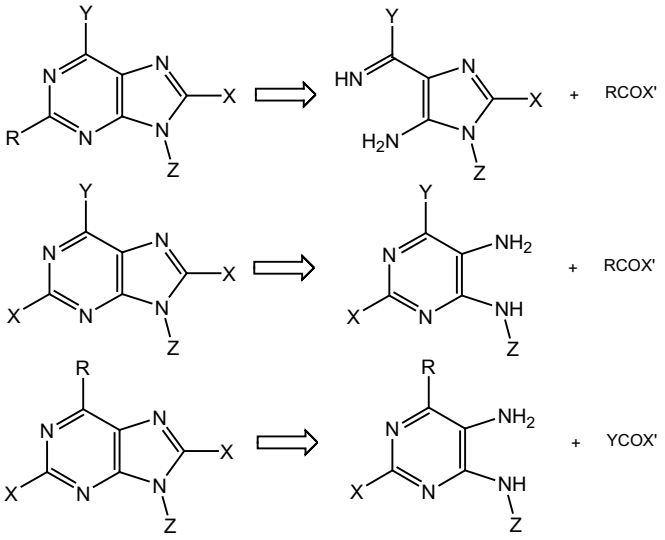
Scheme 4.7 Original and improved method for preparing potentially anti-COVID-19 molnupiravir

(b) 8-C-C-purines from 5,6-diaminopyrimidines and carboxylic acid derivatives; and for 6-C-C-purines from 4-alkyl or 4-aryl-substituted 5,6-diaminopyrimidines (Scheme 4.8) [16].

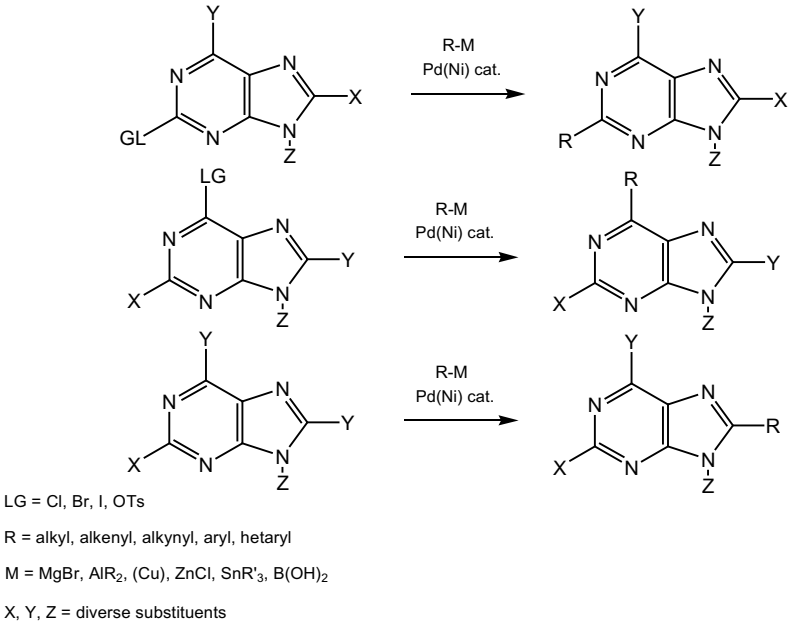
Other explored methods involve radical [17, 18] or nucleophilic substitution [19], sulfur extrusion [20], and Wittig type reactions [21, 22]. Despite their usefulness, other methods based on the use of organometallic complex are getting particular significance especially in the synthesis of substituted purines (Scheme 4.9) [16].

Usually the cross-coupling reactions involving organometallic compounds includes organolithium [23], magnesium [24], aluminium [25], cuprates [26], zinc [27], stannanes [28] and boron [29], reagents, in the presence of palladium catalyst and the purine base bearing a good leaving group usually halides or tosyl (Scheme 4.10).

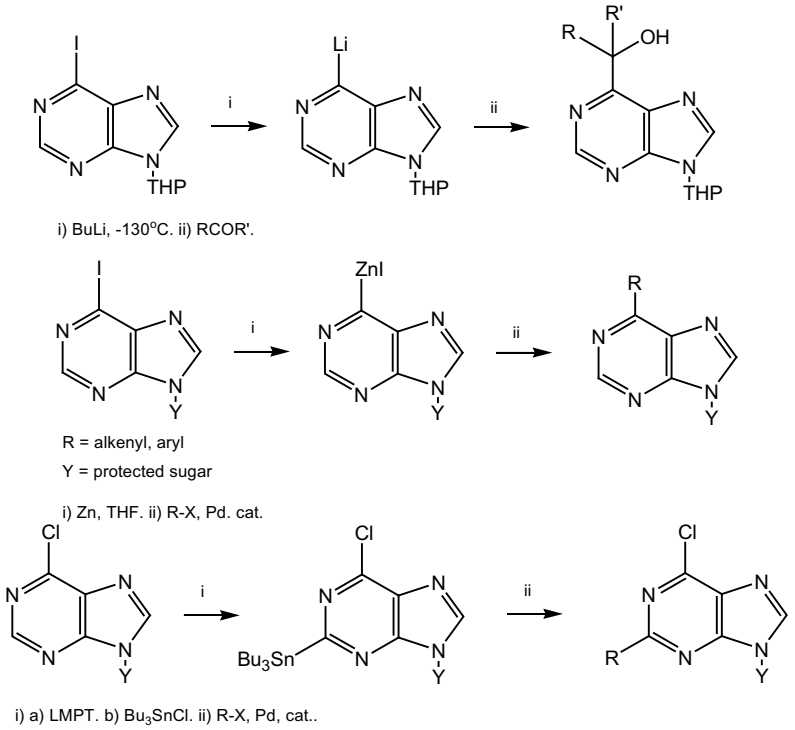
Modified purines have been designed as Janus kinase (JAK) inhibitor which are cytokines involved in defense mechanism and immunoregulation, however under abnormal conditions also playing a major role in autoimmune disease counting for more than hundred, among them rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, inflammatory bowel disease and psoriasis just to mention. Modified purine



Scheme 4.8 Conventional methods of preparation of C–C purines



Scheme 4.9 General scheme between purines and organometallic compounds

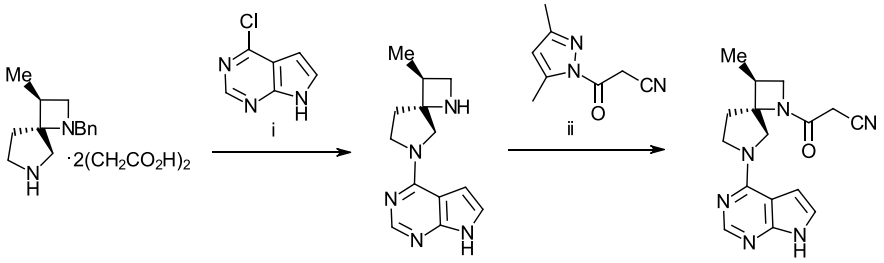


Scheme 4.10 Cross-coupling reactions for purine modification

delgocitinib, is a JAK inhibitor prescribed for the treatment of atopic dermatitis and its synthesis consisting in the stereo-controlled formation of spirodiamine with chloropyrrolopyrimidine followed by reductive debenzylation and amide formation with cyanoacetylpyrazole providing delgocitinib−3,5-dimethylpyrazole complex which was recrystallized to furnish pure delgocitinib in good yield (Scheme 4.11) [30].

Deazapurines are pyrrolo[2,3]pyrimidines of natural or synthetic source with significant antitumor, antiviral and antibacterial activities. Some compounds included in this class are tubercidin, toyocamycin, sangivamycin and the hypermodified nucleoside queuosine. A flexible route for the preparation of pyrrolo[2,3]pyrimidines (7-deazapurines) has been developed, consisting in the condensation of protected uracil with ethyl N-(p-nitrophenethyl)glycinate and subsequent treatment with acetic anhydride and amine base with heating to afford 5-(acetyloxy)pyrrolo[2,3-d]-pyrimidine-2,4-dione in 74% yield (Scheme 4.12) [31].

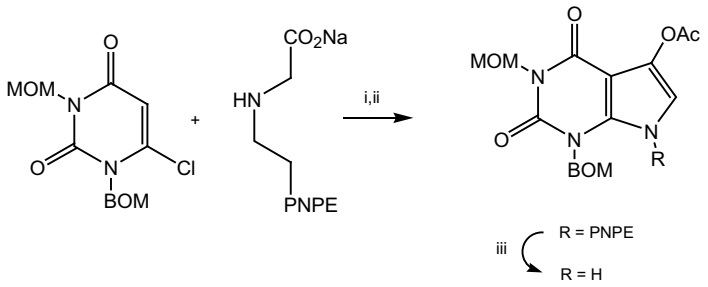
Modified 3-deoxydeazapurine was prepared under silyl conditions and also a library of modified aryl substituted at 7th position was created, by using Suzuki coupling reaction (Scheme 4.13). From the group of substituted deazapurine nucle-



i) a) K_3PO_4, t-BuOH/H_2O. b) H_2, Pd/C, AcOH 92%.

ii) MeCN, 75°C, 3 h, 86%

Scheme 4.11 Synthesis of purine modified delgocitinib



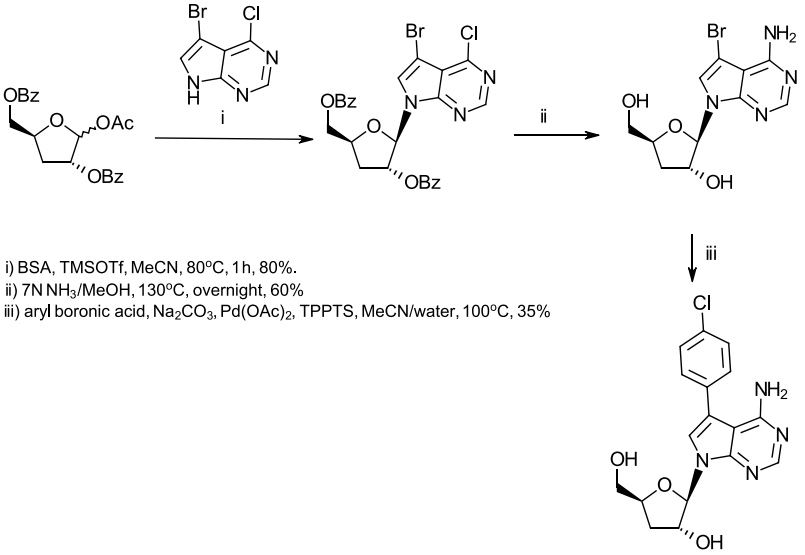
i) EtOH/H_2O, Δ. ii) Ac_2O, n-Pr_3N, 100°C. iii) DBU, CH_3CN, 25°C 81%

Scheme 4.12 Synthesis of 7-deazapurine analogues

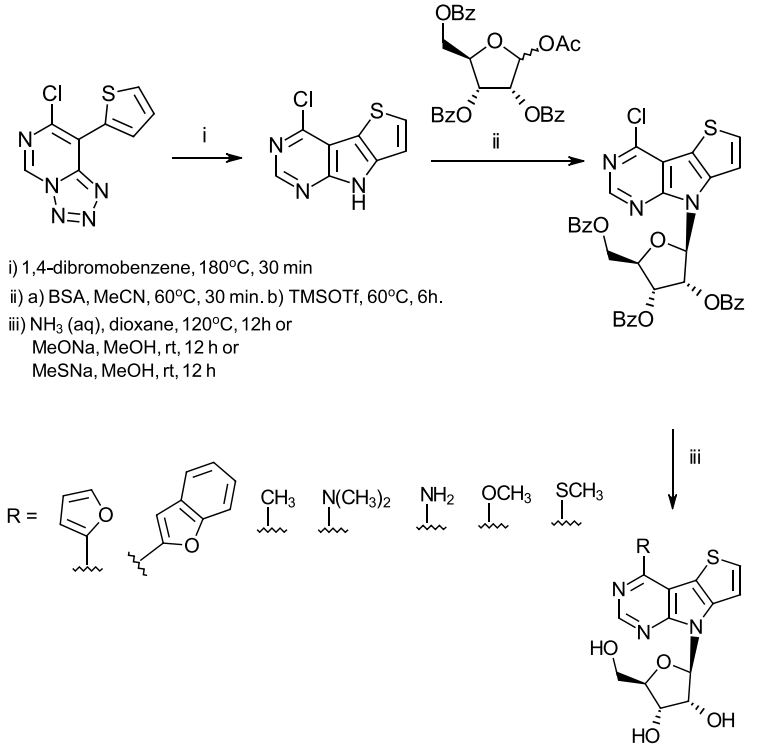
oside prepared, the 4-chloro phenyl analogue was the best candidate as inhibitor against *Trypanosoma cruzi* displaying an EC_{50} of 0.047 μM [32].

Fused thienopyrrolopyrimidine were prepared under thermal cyclization of tetrazolopyrimidine, followed by Vorbrüggen N-glycosylation to provide 4-chlorothienopyrrolopyrimidine nucleoside intermediates, and final nucleophilic substitution to yield R-pyrimidine nucleosides (Scheme 4.14). The resulting fused nucleosides were evaluated as cytotoxic/cytostatic candidates in human solid tumors observing different degrees of inhibition [33].

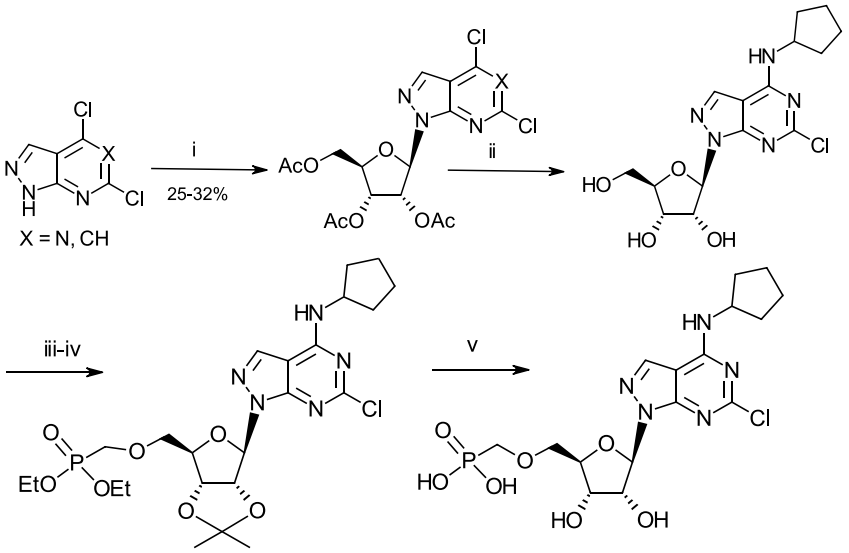
The design of 5′-ribonucleotide phosphohydrolase (CD73) inhibitors is a plausible strategy to avoid immune suppression during tumor growth and metastasis processes. An effort for reaching this goal was described in the synthesis and evaluation of cyclopentylamino pyrazolopyrimidine phosphonic acid derivatives, starting from the N-glycosylation of pyrazolopyrimidine dichloride with β-D-ribofuranose 1,2,3,5-tetraacetate, followed by regiospecific amination, and final phosphate derivatization (Scheme 4.15), providing potent CD73 inhibitor with EC_{50} of 2.6 nM [34].



Scheme 4.13 Preparation of *Trypanosoma cruzi* inhibitor 7-aryl deazapurine analogues



Scheme 4.14 Synthesis of cytotoxic and antiviral fused thienopyrrolopyrimidine nucleosides



i) HMDS, $(NH_4)_2SO_4$, reflux and then β-D-ribofuranose 1,2,3,5-tetraacetate, TMSOTf, CH_3CN, rt
ii) cyclopentylamine, Et_3N, MeOH, rt and then 7 N NH_3 in MeOH
iii) 2,2-dimethoxypropane, p-TSA, acetone, rt
iv) NaHMDS, diethyl p-toluenesulfonyloxy methylphosphonate THF, 0 °C–rt; yield = 73%
v) TMS-Br, CH_3CN, rt and then MeOH/HCl, yield = 93%

Scheme 4.15 Glycosylation reaction of potent CD73 cyclopentylamino pyrazolopyrimidine phosphonic acid

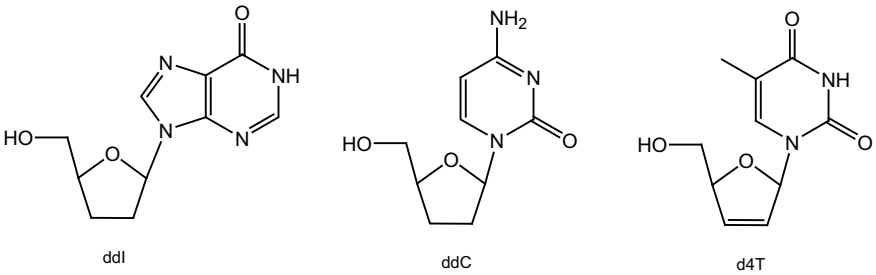
4.1.2 Sugar Modifications

4.1.2.1 2′3′-Dideoxysugars

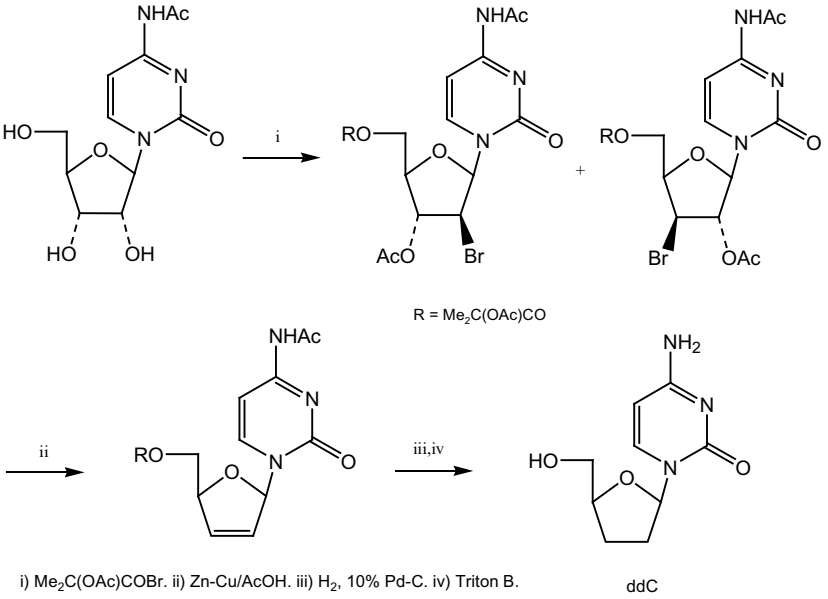
A significant number of saturated and unsaturated dideoxysugars have been synthesized and tested as antiviral or anticancer drugs. Remarkably, ddI and ddC are approved drugs for the treatment of AIDS [3], and others such as d4T being currently under clinical studies (Scheme 4.16) [35, 36].

A method for preparing ddC was described involving bromoacetylation with HBr in acetic acid of N^4-acetylcytidine followed by reductive elimination with zinc-cooper couple in acetic acid to provide the corresponding 2′3′-unsaturated derivative. Final hydrogenation over 10% palladium on charcoal gave ddC in 95% accompanied by some N–C cleavage in 5% (Scheme 4.17) [37]. Similar reaction conditions were used for preparing 2′3′-dideoxyadenosine in 81% yield from adenosine [38].

The design and synthesis of potent inhibitors for Human Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) 2′,3′-dideoxy-2′3′-didehydro-β-L-cytidine (β-L-d4C) and 2′,3′-dideoxy-2′3′-didehydro-β-L-5-fluorocytidine (β-L-Fd4C) nucleosides was carried out according to the pathway shown in Scheme 4.18 [39]. The key starting material 3′,5′-dibenzoyl-



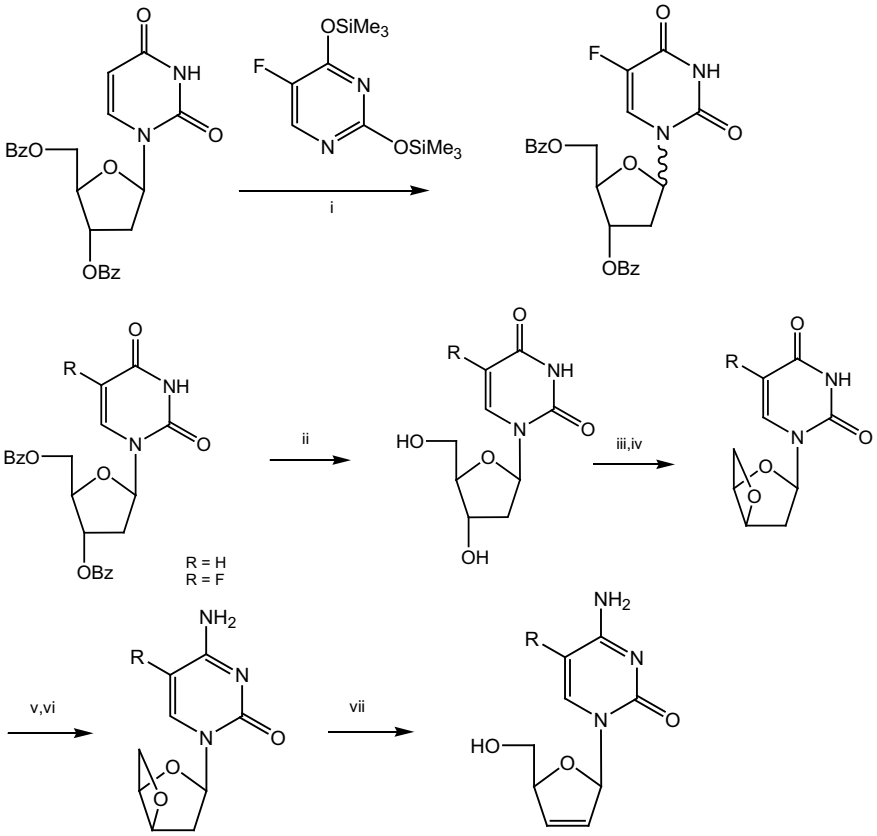
Scheme 4.16 Anti-AIDS 2′3′-dideoxy nucleosides



Scheme 4.17 Synthesis of anti-AIDS ddC

2′-deoxy-β-L-uridine was submitted to transglycosilation reaction with silylated 5-fluorouracil using TMSOTf as catalyst, affording an anomeric mixture separated by chromatography. After benzoyl deprotection, the anomeric nucleosides were treated with mesyl chloride followed by base to form cyclic ethers. Further transformation at the pyrimidine ring was followed by potassium *tert*-butoxide treatment to furnish β-L-d4C and β-L-Fd4C.

Other methods designed for the preparation of 2′3′-unsaturated and saturated deoxyfuranosides are based on: (a) the Corey-Winter reaction involving cyclic thionocarbonate [40–42]; (b) the Eastwood olefination process in which a five-membered cyclic orthoformate suffer a fragmentation to give in the presence of acetic anhydride desired the olefin (successfully applied in the preparation of ddU)



i) $CF_3SO_3SiMe_3$, CH_3CN. ii) NH_3/MeOH. iii) MsCl, Py. iv) 1N NaOH, EtOH/H_2O. v) 1,2,4-triazole, p-$ClC_6H_4OPOCl_2$, Py. vi) NH_4OH, dioxane. vii) *t*-BuOK, DMSO.

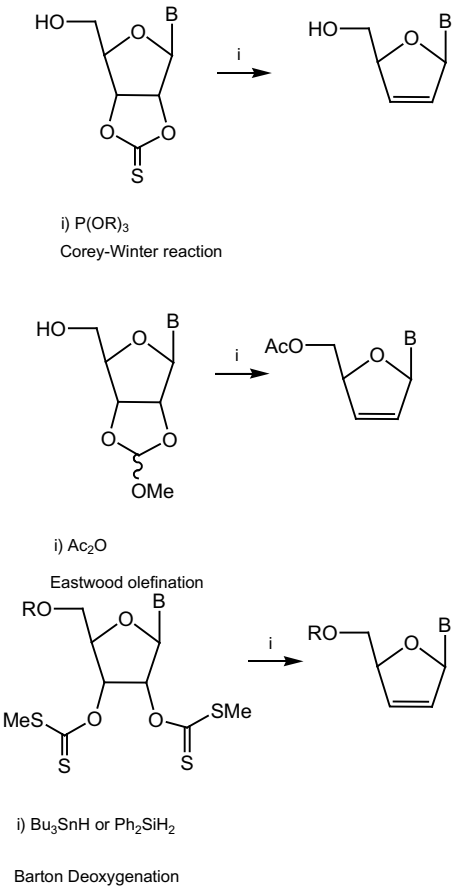
Scheme 4.18 Synthesis of anti hepatitis B virus β-L-d4C and β-L-Fd4C

[43, 44] and (c) the Barton deoxygenation involving the cyclic thionocarbonate or the bisxantate, and then treated with tributyltin hydride [40, 41, 45, 46] or alternatively diphenylsilane [42, 47] (Scheme 4.19).

The synthesis of modified nucleosides from natural nucleosides is another useful alternative for preparing pharmaceutically active dideoxy nucleosides. The potent antiviral inhibitors ddC, ddG, d4C, and d4G have been obtained from the corresponding protected natural nucleosides, as shown in Scheme 4.20 [48].

The chemoenzymatic approach has been also explored for the synthesis of 2′,3′ dideoxynucleosides. Such is the case of the antiviral 2′,3′-dideoxyguanosine which was synthesized from guanosine in 40% overall yield using as a key step the commercially available mammalian adenosine deaminase (ADA) (Scheme 4.21) [49].

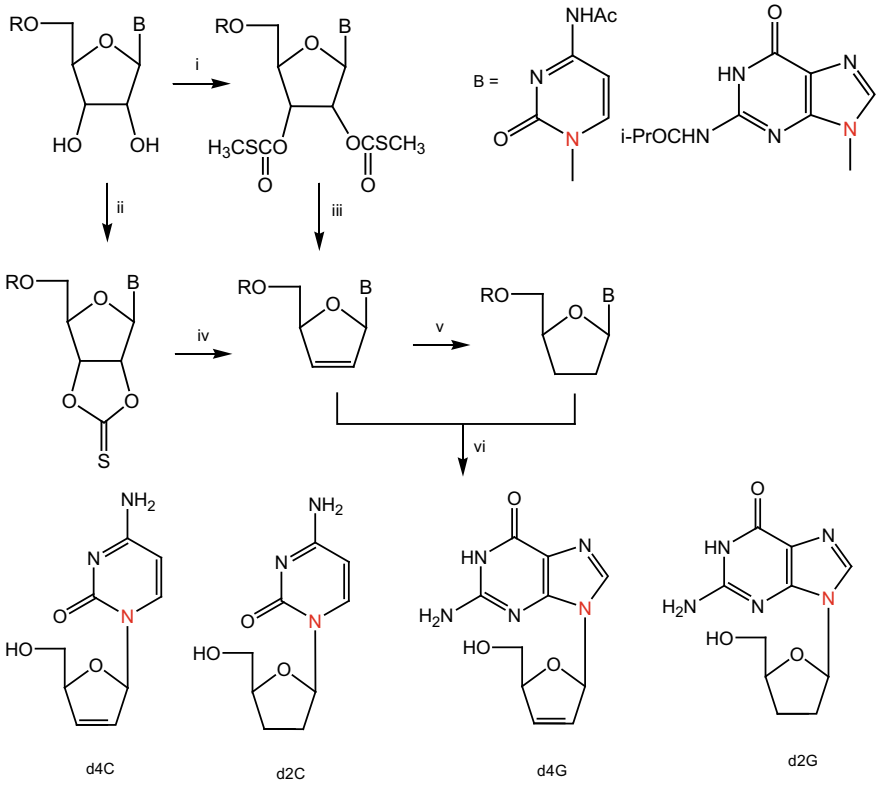
Scheme 4.19 Alternative procedures for preparing 2′3′-unsaturated nucleosides



An strategy for preparing D- and L-2′-fluoro-2′3′-unsaturated nucleosides has been described and their anti-HIV activity evaluated. This approach requires 1-acetyl-5-*O*-benzoyl-2,3-dideoxy-3,3-difluoro–D-ribofuranose as key starting material which was condensed under Vörbruggen's conditions with purines and pyrimidines to provide the corresponding nucleosides. The resulting nucleosides were subjected to β-elimination to generate the fluoro unsaturated nucleosides. (Scheme 4.22) [50].

4.1.2.2 2′-Deoxynucleosides

The Barton deoxygenation provides another useful method for preparing 2′- and 3′-deoxynucleosides (obtained as a mixture), and involves as a key step the hydride reduction of the cyclic thionocarbonate with tributyltin hydride [47]. On the other



i) NaOH, CS_2/CH_3I. ii) $(Im)_2C=S$. iii) Bu_3SnH. iv) $(EtO)_3P$. v) H_2, Pd-C. vi) $NH_3/MeOH$.

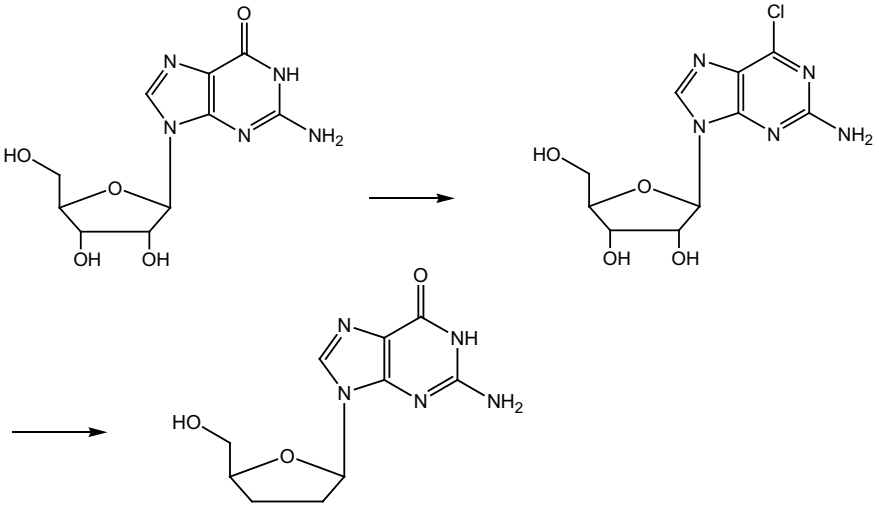
Scheme 4.20 Antiviral modified nucleosides from natural sources

hand 2′-monotosylate nucleoside when treated with excess of lithium triethylborohydride, produce the 2′-deoxy-3′β-hydroxy nucleoside in high yield (Scheme 4.23) [51].

2′-Deoxynucleosides have been obtained from starting materials of different composition such as α,β-unsaturated aldehydes [52] chiral epoxy alcohols [53], butenolides [54, 55] and polyfunctionalized acetals among others [56].

The remarkable 2′-deoxynucleoside AZT widely prescribed as anti-AIDS drug was originally prepared from thymidine by Horwitz and coworkers [57], and since then, several other synthesis have been developed, some of them starting with either a nucleoside, or a sugar derivative [58–61], and others relaying on the use of noncarbohydrate starting materials [61, 62].

The procedure developed by Chu et al. [55] consisted in the use of mannitol as staring material which was subsequently transformed to provide the protected key intermediate 3′azide-2′deoxyribofuranose. The next step involved the coupling reaction with silylated thymine under Vörbruggen's conditions to produce an anomeric mixture of nucleosides in 66%. Final desilylation and separation by chromatography



Scheme 4.21 Chemoenzymatic synthesis of 2′,3′-dideoxyguanosine

column provided AZT in overall yield of 25% from the furanoside intermediate (Scheme 4.24).

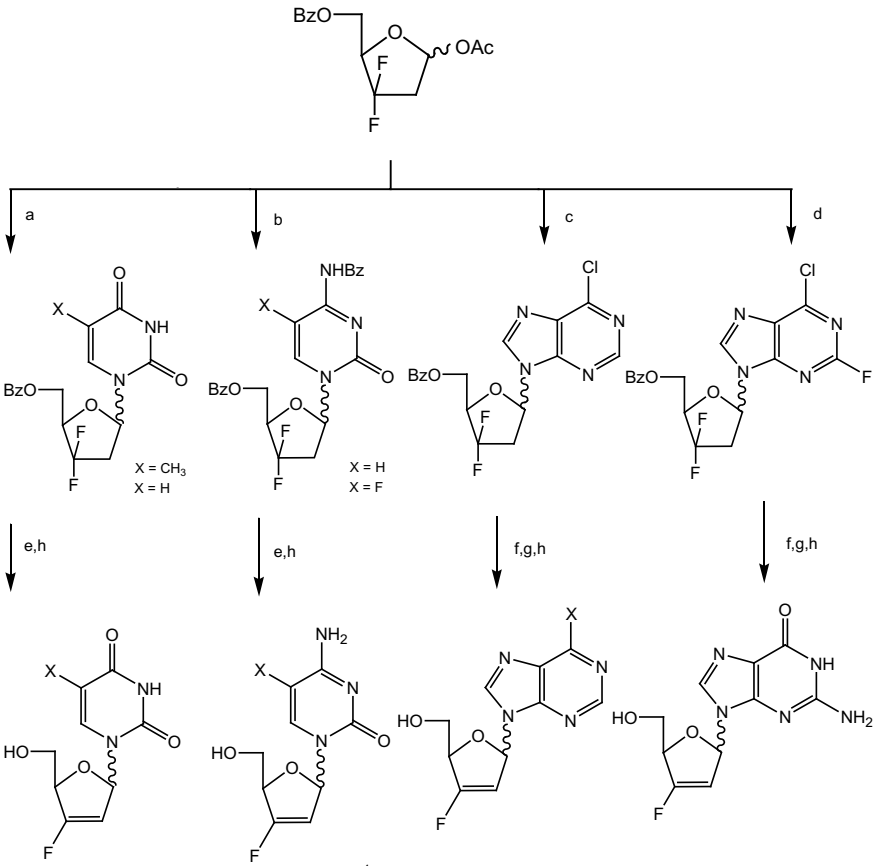
Another possibility was described by Hager and Liotta involving the coupling reaction between the azido diol intermediate and silylated thymine under Vörbruggen conditions to yield a diastereomeric mixture of azido diol nucleoside. Finally when exposed to concentrated acidic conditions the open form is converted into the β-anomer of AZT in 67% yield (Scheme 4.25) [62].

Transglycosidic reaction mediated by a deoxyribosyl transferase obtained from *E. coli* has been used in the synthesis of 3′-azido-2′,3′-dideoxyguanosine. The enzymatic reaction occurs between AZT which acts as glycosyl donor with substituted 2-amino-6-purines to generate the desired purine nucleoside and thymine as byproduct (Scheme 4.26) [63].

4.1.2.3 3′-Deoxynucleosides

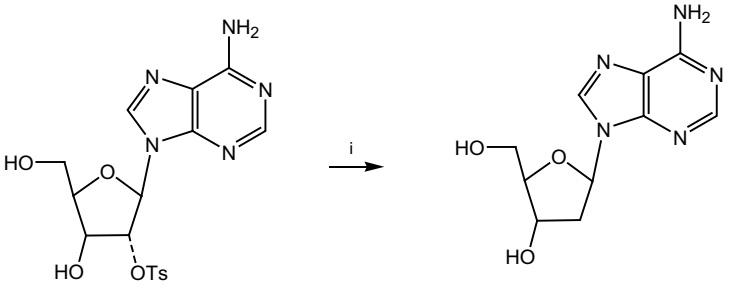
These deoxynucleosides may be readily prepared from 3′-O-tosylate via a [1,2]-hydride shift from C3′ to C2′ position with accompanying inversion of the C2′ center affording a 3′-ketone which was stereoselectively reduced by the hydride to produce 3′-deoxynucleoside (Scheme 4.27) [51].

Also 3′-deoxyguanosine was synthesized by an enzymatic transglycosylation of 2,6-diaminopurine using 3′-deoxycytidine as a donor of the sugar moiety. The



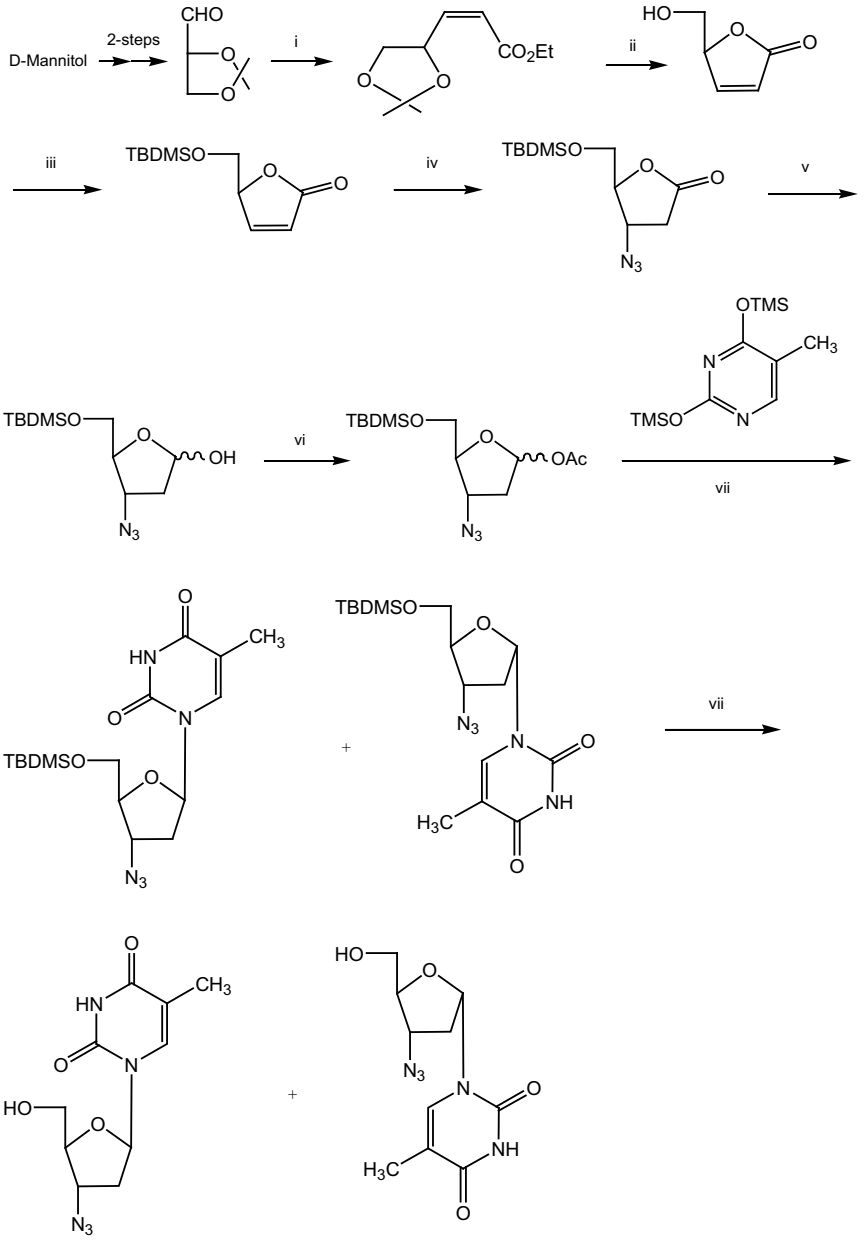
i) silylated thymine, TMSOTf, MeCN. b) silylated N^4-Bz-cytosine derivatives, TMSOTf, MeCN. c) silylated 6-chloropurine, TMSOTf, MeCN. d) silylated 6-Cl-2-F-purine, TMSOTf, MeCN. e) NH_3/MeOH, r.t. f) NH_3/MeOH, 90°C. g) $HSCH_2CH_2OH$, MeONa, MeOH, reflux. h) t-BuOK, THF.

Scheme 4.22 Preparation of D- and L-2′-fluoro-2′3′-unsaturated nucleosides



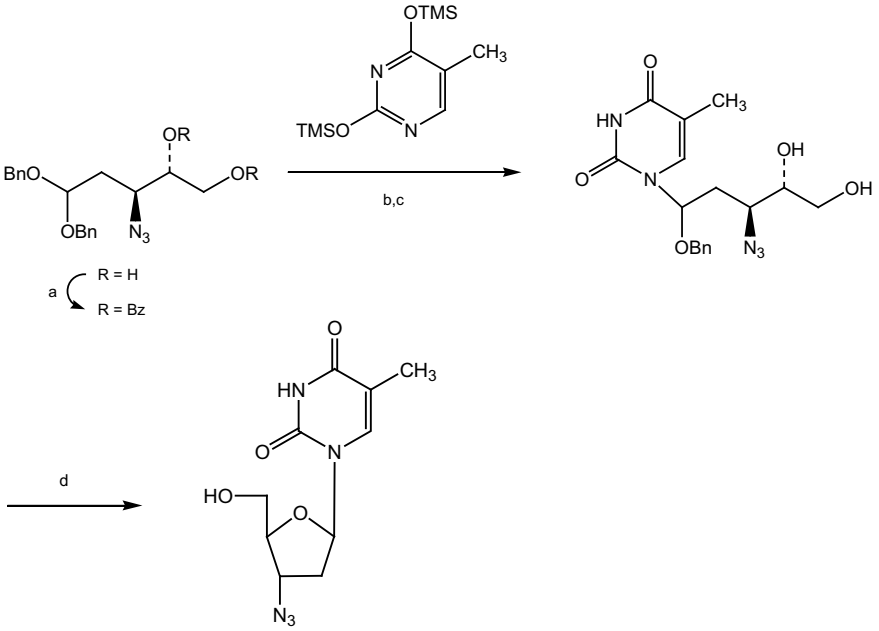
i) $LiEt_3BH$, DMSO/THF

Scheme 4.23 The Barton deoxygenation for preparing 2′-deoxynucleosides



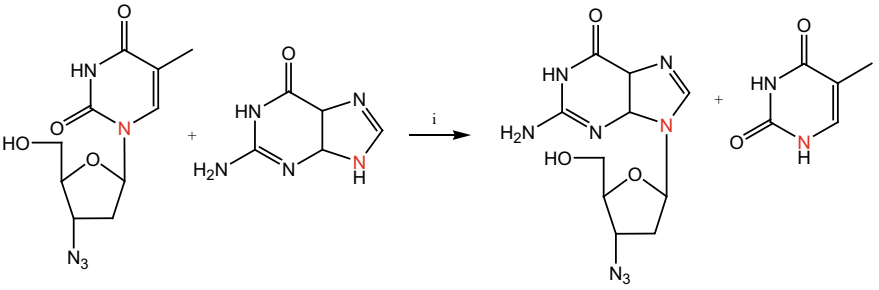
i) $Ph_3P{=}CHCO_2Et$, MeOH, 0°C. ii) HCl dil. iii) t-Bu$(Me)_2$SiCl. imidazole, DMF. iv) LiN_3, THF, AcOH, H_2O. v) DIBAL, CH_2Cl_2, -78°C. vi) Ac_2O, Py. vii) TMS-triflate, $ClCH_2CH_2Cl$. viii) n-Bu_4NF, THF.

Scheme 4.24 Synthesis of AZT from mannitol



i) PhCOCl (2.2 equiv.), NEt_3, DMAP, CH_2Cl_2. b) $(CH_3)_3SiOTf$, $ClCH_2CH_2Cl$. c) NaOH (2 equiv.), MeOH.
b) 4.7 N H_2SO_4 in MeOH.

Scheme 4.25 Synthesis of AZT from azido diol intermediate

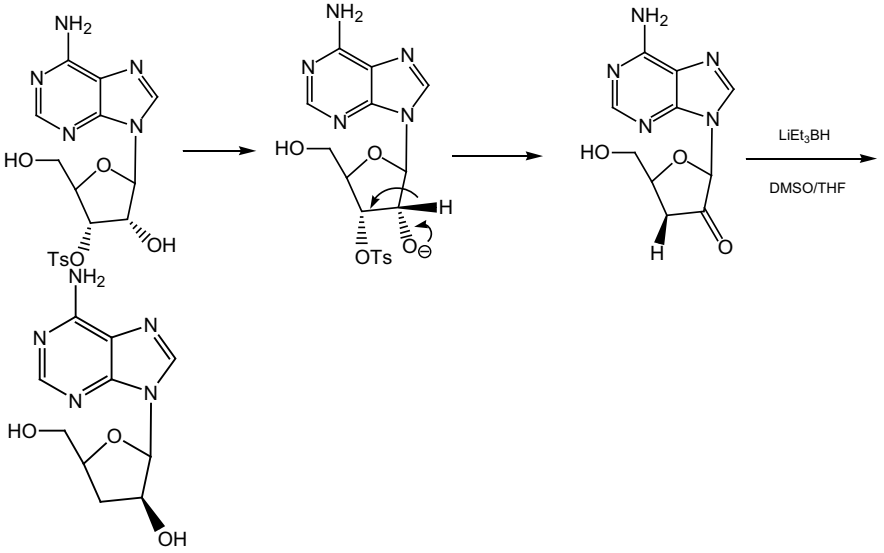


i) glycosyltransferases, pH 6.0, 50°C.

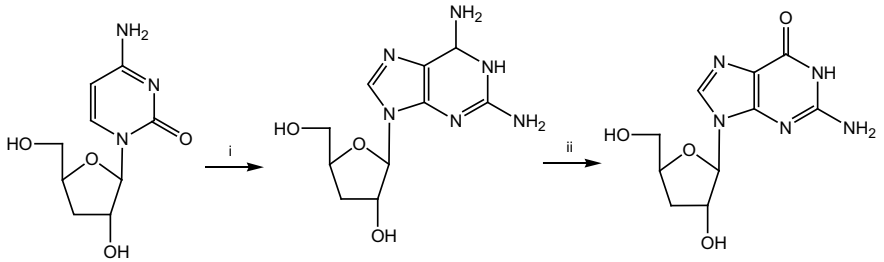
Scheme 4.26 Enzymatic synthesis of 3′-azido-2′,3′-dideoxyguanosine

diaminopurine nucleoside was transformed to 3′-deoxyguanosine by the action of adenosine deaminase (Scheme 4.28) [64].

Lodenosine [9-(2,3-dideoxy-2-fluoro-β-D-threo-pentofuranosyl)] adenine (FddA) is a reverse transcriptase inhibitor with activity against HIV. This purine analog was evaluated as one of the most selective inhibitors in a series of 2′3′-dideoxyadenosines, although less active than ddA. An efficient method was



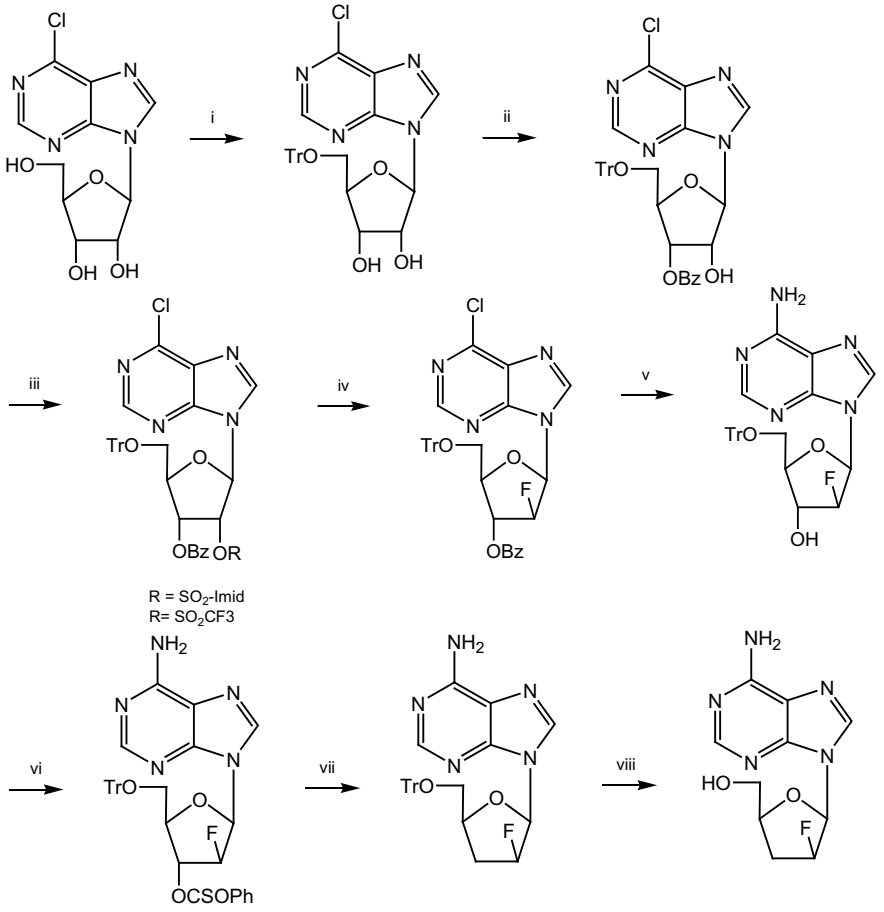
Scheme 4.27 Method for preparation of 3′-deoxynucleoside



i) 2,6-diaminopurine, *E. coli* BM-11 and BMT-4D/1A, K-phosphate buffer, 52°C, 26 h, 64%. ii) Adenosine deaminase (ADase), r.t., 16 h, 68%.

Scheme 4.28 Enzymatic synthesis of 3′-deoxyguanoside

developed starting from chloropurine riboside which was tritylated and selectively benzoylated at 3′-position. Before fluorination the 2′-hydroxyl group was converted to imidazolesulfonate or trifluoromethanesulfonate. Fluorination proceeds smoothly with 6 equiv. of $Et_3N.{}_3HF$ at reflux in 88% yield. Simultaneous 6-amination and 3′-debenzylation was done with ammonia in high yield. Elimination of the 3′-hydroxy group was carried out under the Barton-McCombie procedure involving the formation of the 3′-O-thiocarbonyl followed by silane treatment. Final removal of trityl group afforded FddA (Scheme 4.29) [65].



i) TrCl-iPrNH, DMF, 79%. ii) a) BzCl-Py, toluene. b) cat. Et_3N, toluene, 70%. iii) a) SO_2Cl_2-Py, CH_2Cl_2, b) imidazole. or CF_3SO_2Cl, DMAP, toluene. iv) $Et_3.3HF$, Et_3N, 70 and 78%. v) NH_3-MeOH, toluene 98%. vi) ClC(S)(OPh), DMAP, CH_3CN, 92%. vii) Ph_2SiH_2, AIBN, dioxane, 81%. viii) 80% AcOH, 100°C, 85%.

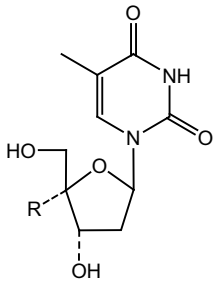
Scheme 4.29 Preparation of antiviral 2′3′-fluoro dideoxyadenosine FddA

4.1.2.4 4′-Substituted Nucleosides

4′-Substituted nucleosides have attracted much attention because of the discovery of potent anti HIV agents 4′-azido- and 4′-cyano thymidine (Scheme 4.30).

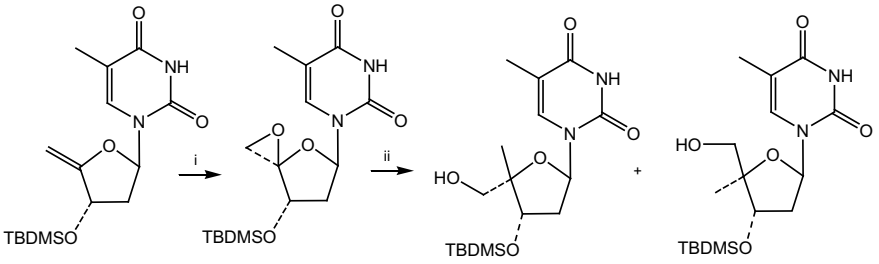
One procedure involves the epoxidation of the exoglycal with dimethyldioxirane and ring opening of the resulting 4′,5′-epoxynucleosides to produce with high stereoselectivity the 4′-C-branched nucleosides (Scheme 4.31) [66].

Likewise, others 4′-substituted nucleosides such as 4′-C-Ethynyl-β-D-arabino- and 4′-C-Ethynyl-2′-deoxy-β-D-ribopentofuranosyl pyrimidines have been reported by a different approach outlined in Scheme 4.32 [67].



R = N_3, CN

Scheme 4.30 Structure of potent anti-HIV 4′-substituted nucleosides



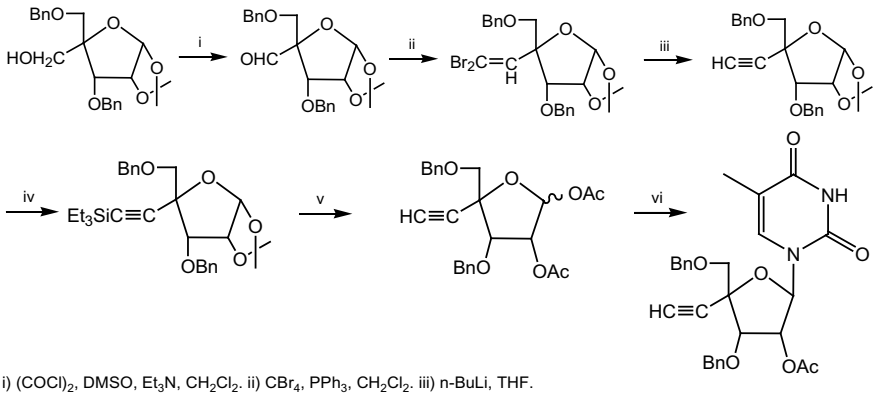
TBDMS = $^{t}BuMe_2Si$

64%

5%

i) DMDO, CH_2Cl_2, -30°C. ii) Me_3Al (3 eq.), CH_2Cl_2, -30°C, 2h.

Scheme 4.31 Ring opening of 4′,5′-epoxynucleosides



i) $(COCl)_2$, DMSO, Et_3N, CH_2Cl_2. ii) CBr_4, PPh_3, CH_2Cl_2. iii) n-BuLi, THF.
iv) n-BuLi, THF, then Et_3SiCl. v) a) 70% AcOH, TFA. b) Ac_2O, Py. vi) N,O-bis (trimethylsilyl)acetamide, thymine, CH_2Cl_2, reflux, 1h, 96%.

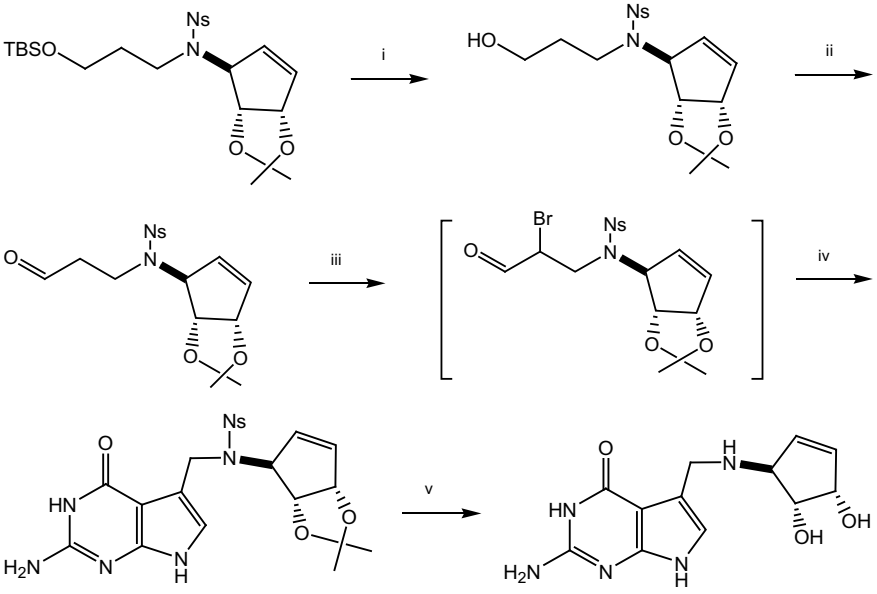
Scheme 4.32 Synthesis of 4′-C-Ethynyl-β-D-arabino- and 4′-C-Ethynyl-2′-deoxy-β-D-ribopentofuranosyl pyrimidines

4.1.3 Complex Nucleosides

The hypermodified Q base Queuine found in tRNA of plants and animals has been strongly associated with tumor growth inhibition. Three different approaches for preparing queuine have been described [68–71], the more recent in eleven steps from ribose. Completion of the synthesis involved the condensation of bromo aldehyde intermediate with 2,3-diamino-6-hydroxypyrimidine to give the desired heterocyclic product in 45%. Final removal of protecting groups provided Q base (Scheme 4.33).

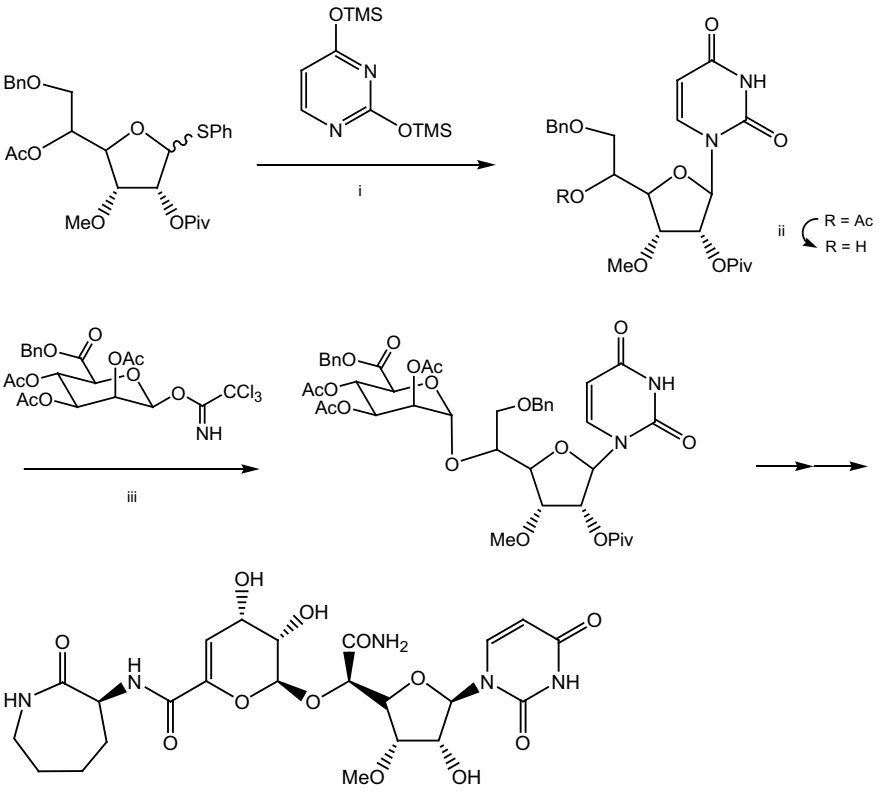
Capuramycin is a complex nucleoside antibiotic isolated from *Streptomyces griseus* 446-S3, which exhibit antibacterial activity against *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Mycobacterium smegmatis* ATCC 607. The total synthesis was reported by Knapp and Nandan [72] consisting in the glycosylation reaction between the key thioglycoside donor and silylated pyrimidine to produce the corresponding L-*talo*-uridine. The next glycosidic coupling reaction was carried out with L-t*alo*-uridine and imidate glycosyl donor under TMS-OTf conditions to afford the disaccharide nucleoside. Further transformations lead to the target molecule (Scheme 4.34).

Due its promising role as anti-tuberculosis drug, further efforts for preparing capuramycin and other analogs have been deployed as described in a more recent concise total synthesis [73, 74].



i) TBAF, THF, 87%. ii) TEMPO, NaOCl, KBr, CH_2Cl_2, 88%. iii) TMSBr, DMSO, MeCN. iv) NaOAc, H_2O/MeCN, 45%.
v) a) $HSCH_2CH_2OH$, DBU, DMF, 46%. b) HCl, MeOH, 84%.

Scheme 4.33 Synthesis of hypermodified base queuine



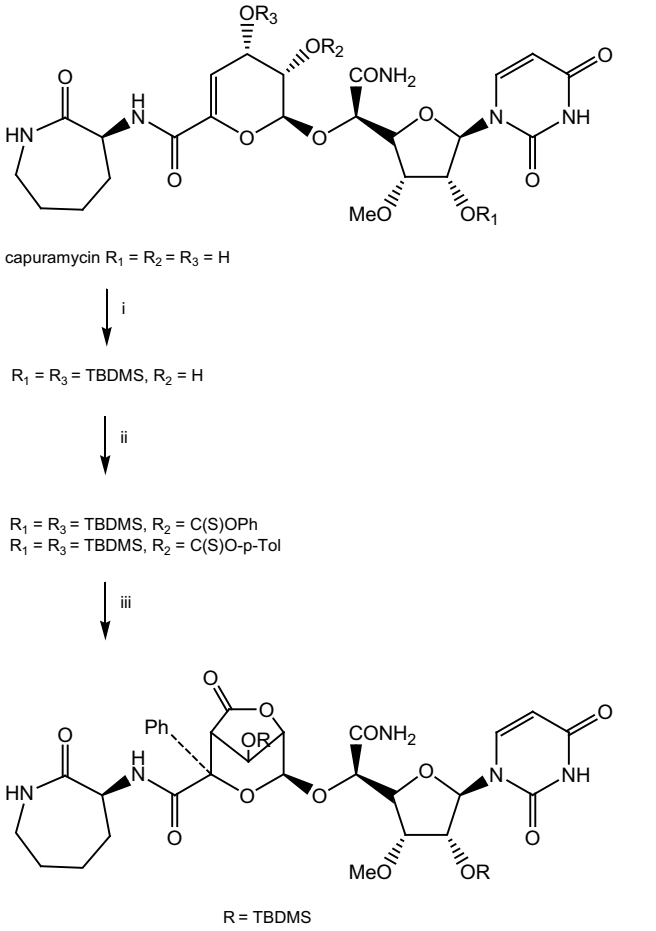
i) NIS, TfOH, CH_2Cl_2, -20°C. ii) NaOMe, MeOH, 77%. iii) TMS-OTf, CH_2Cl_2, -25°C, 16 h, 85%.

Scheme 4.34 Synthesis of capuramycin

Moreover, capuramycin.has been also chemically transformed in an attempt to extend the antibacterial spectrum. Thus, radical oxygenation gave unexpected lactone in moderate yield via an intramolecular radical Ar–C glycosylation-lactonization reaction (Scheme 4.35) [75].

Synthetic studies of unique class Tunicamycin antibiotics leading to the preparation of (+)-Tunicaminyluracil, (+)-Tunicamycin-V and 5′-*epi*-Tunicamycin-V were described by Myers et al. [76]. The key features are the development and application of a silicon-mediated reductive coupling of aldehydes, the allylic alcohols to construct the undecose core of the natural product, and the development of an efficient procedure for the synthesis of the tetrahalose glycosidic bond within the antibiotic (Scheme 4.36).

An alternative approach for the synthesis of tunicamycins is reported in a stereoselective approach, being the key reactions the Mukaiyama aldol reaction, intramolecular acetal formation, gold(I)-catalyzed O- and N-glycosylation, and final N-acylation (Scheme 4.37) [77].

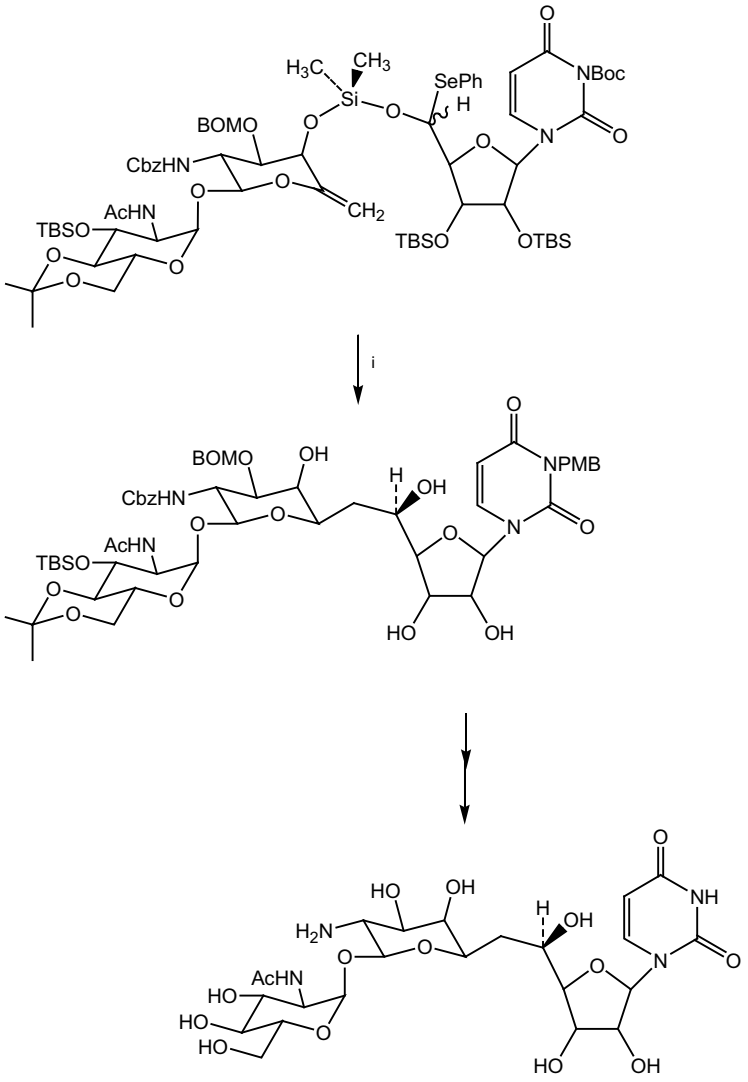


Scheme 4.35 Chemical transformations of capuramycin

4.1.3.1 Fused Heterocyclic Nucleosides

Selective and potent anti-Varicella Zoster Virus (VZV) bicyclic furanopyrimidine deoxynucleosides were synthesized. The bicyclic formation was performed by palladium-catalyzed coupling of aryl acetylenes with 5-iodo-2′-deoxyridine affording the desired fused furanenucleoside (Scheme 4.38) [78].

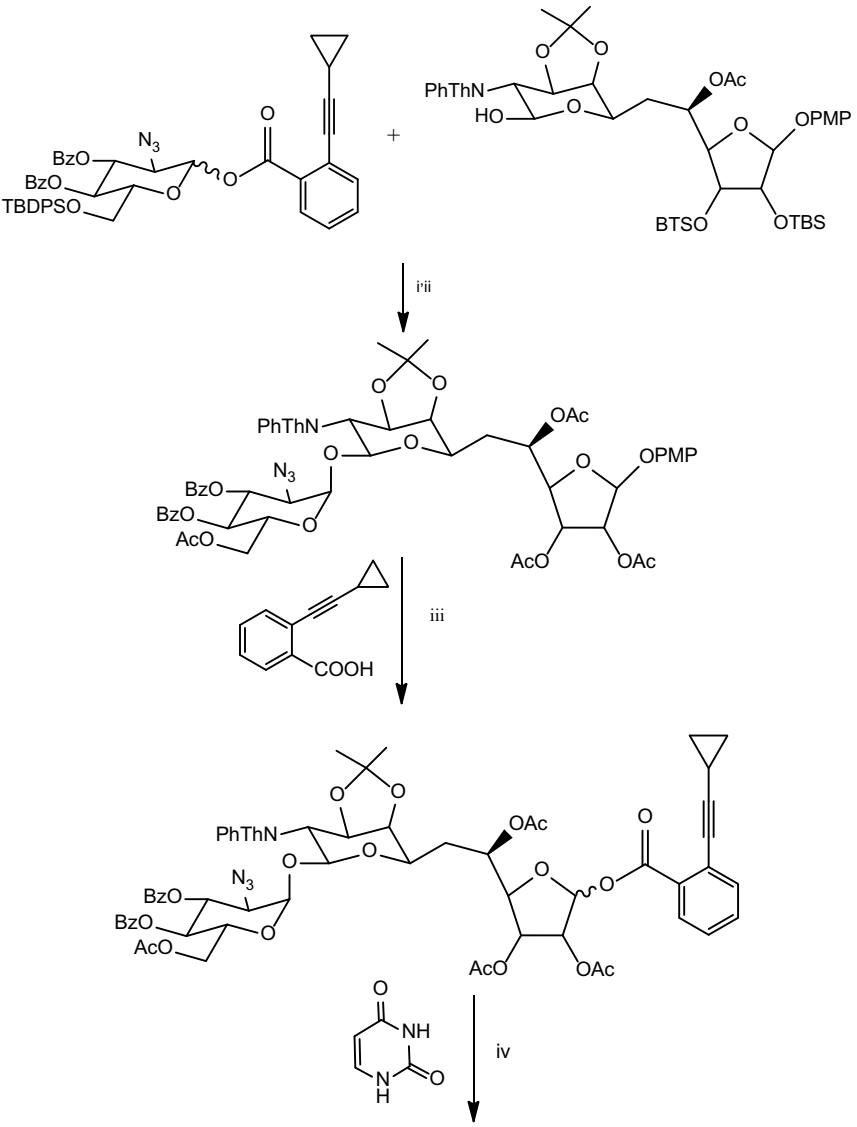
Triciribine is a tricyclic nucleoside with antineoplastic and antiviral properties, synthesized in an improved fashion from 6-Bromo-5-cyanopyrrolo



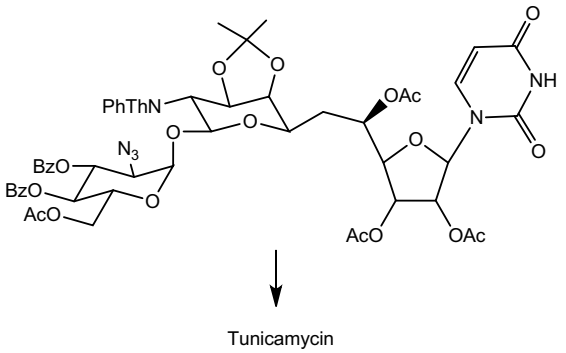
i) triethyborate, Bu_3SnH, toluene, 0°C. 2 h. b) $KF.H_2O$, MeOH. 60%.

Scheme 4.36 Key step for the synthesis of tunicamycin antibiotic

[2,3-d] pyrimidin-4-one intermediate. Series of transformations including N-glycoside coupling reaction afforded 4-amino-5-cyano-7-[2,3,5-tri-O-benzoyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl] pyrrolo [2,3-d] pyrimidine that was then converted to the desired tricyclic nucleoside (Scheme 4.39) [79].

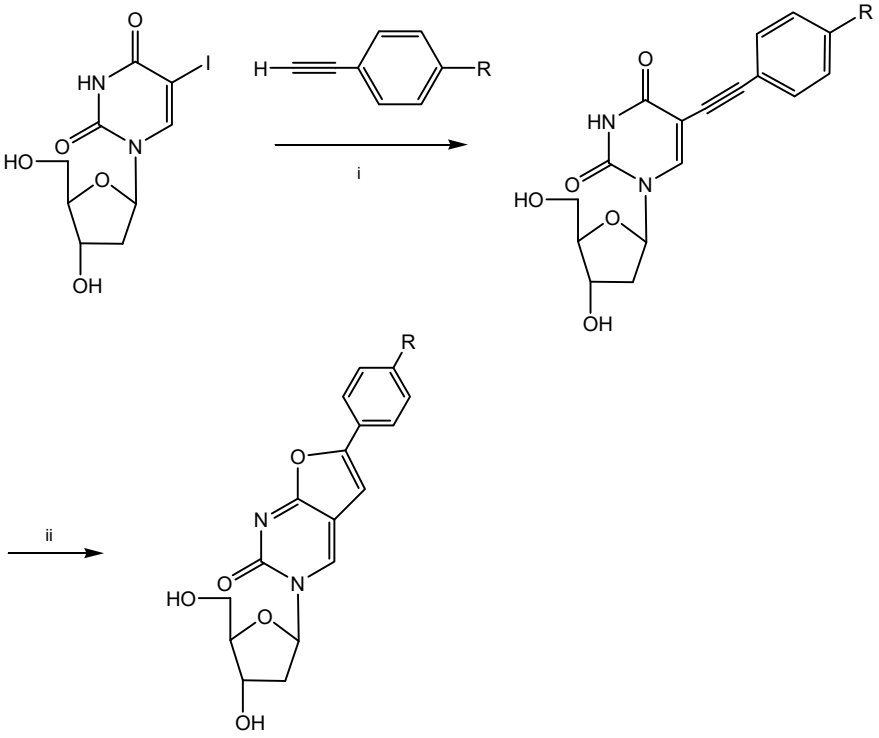


Scheme 4.37 Synthesis of tunicamycins mediated by gold complex catalysis



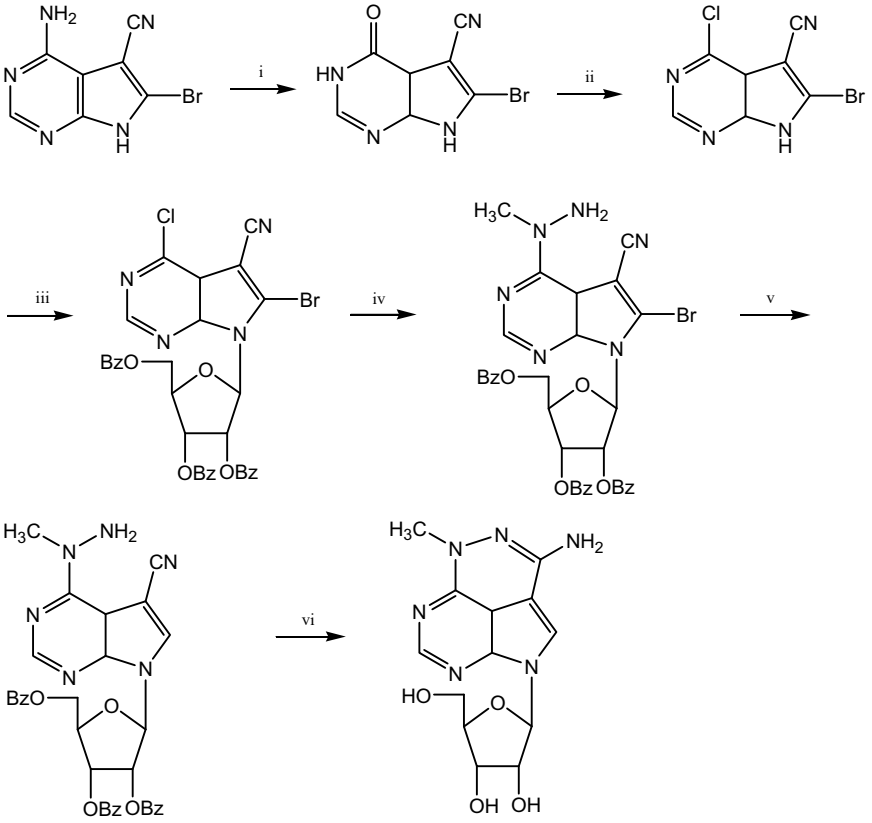
i)[$Ph_3PAuNTf_2$], toluene, AW MS, RT. i) a) HF.Pyr, THF, 60°C. b) Ac_2O, Pyr, DMAP, RT. iii) a) CAN, THF/H_2O, RT. b) EDCI, DMAP, DIPEA, DCM, RT. iv) a) BSTFA, CH_3CN, 50°C. b) [$Ph_3PAuNTf_2$], $ClCH_2CH_2Cl$, RT.

Scheme 4.37 (continued)



i) $Pd(PPh_3)_4$, iPr_2EtN, CuI, DMF, r.t, 19 h. ii) Et_3N/MeOH. CuI, Δ, 4h.

Scheme 4.38 Synthesis of bicyclic furano pyrimidine

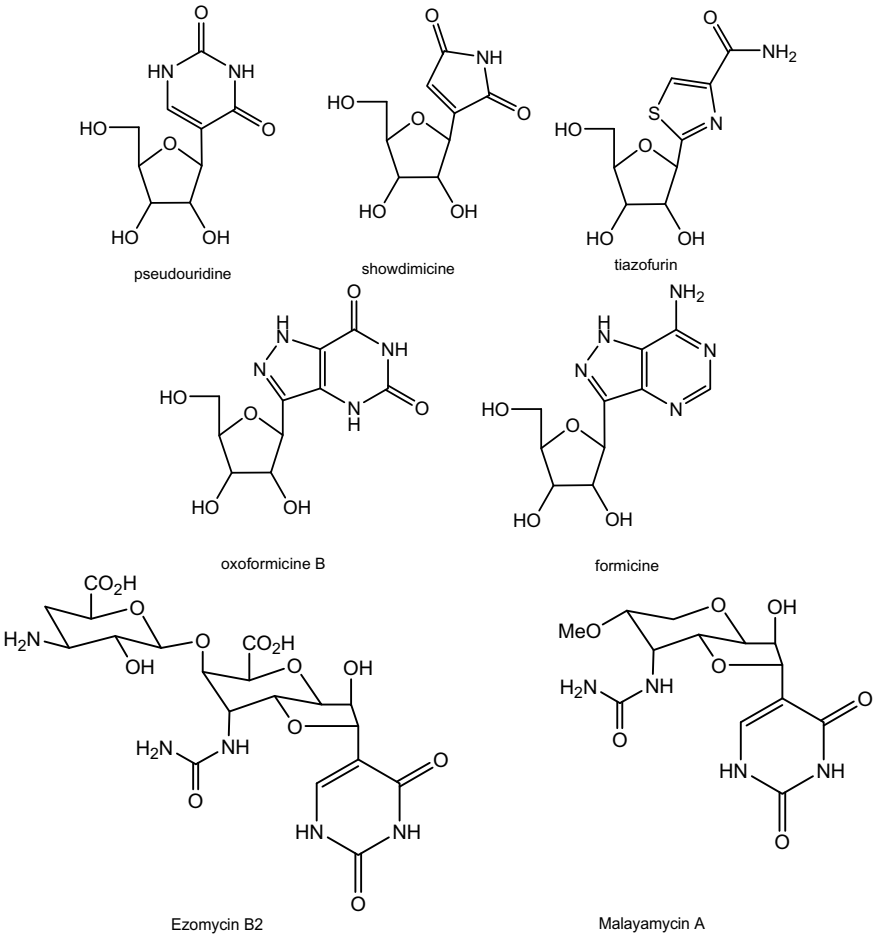


i) $NaNO_2$, AcOH, H_2O, ii) $POCl_3$. iii) BSA, CH_3CN then 1-O-acetyl-2,3,5-tri-O-benzoyl-b-D-ribofuranoside, TMSOTf. iv) NH_2NHCH_3, EtOH, $CHCl_3$. v) HCO_2NH_4, 10% Pd-C, EtOH, reflux. vi) NaOMe, MeOH, reflux.

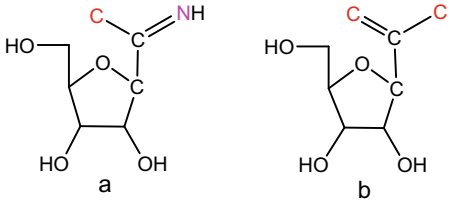
Scheme 4.39 Synthesis of tricyclic nucleoside Triciribine

4.2 C-Nucleosides

These modified nucleosides are structurally distinct to their counterparts N-nucleosides because of the presence of a C–C linkage instead of C-N between the furanoside and the heterocyclic aglycon. Their source could be either naturally occurring (pyrazomycin, showdomycin, formycin) or synthetic (thiazofurin), having in either case significant anti tumor and antiviral activity. Also, some of them have been found in tRNA codons (pseudouridine) and others (tiazofurine and oxazofurine) designed as competitive inhibitor of cofactor nicotin adenin dinucleotide (Scheme 4.40).



Scheme 4.40 Biologically active *C*-nucleosides



Scheme 4.41 *C*-nucleosides partial representations, with and without heteroatom attached to the *C*-glycosidic bond

An early approximation for the preparation of C-nucleosides proposed two basic possibilities depending on the nature of the atoms surrounding the C–C bond (Scheme 4.41) [80].

(a) If there is one heteroatom adjacent to the *C*-glycosidic bond, example tiazofurine, formicine, pyramicine.
(b) If there is no heteroatom adjacent to the *C*-glycosidic bond.

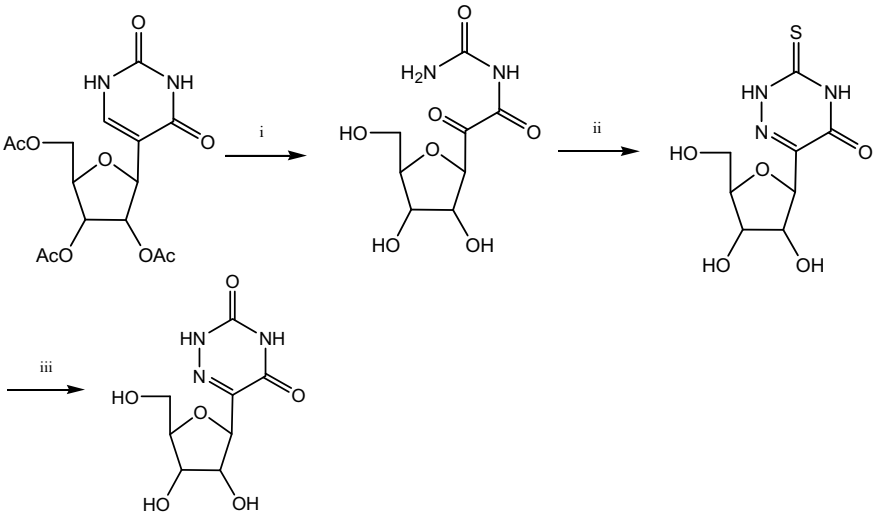
Alternatively other authors considers three general pathways for preparing *C*-nucleosides depending on the precursor employed as starting material [81].

An early synthesis of modified C-nucleoside from naturally occurring pseudouridine was carried out via ring opening with ozone to generate intermediate which was treated with thiosemicarbazone to afford 6-azathiopseudouridine. Treatment with iodomethane in acid medium produce the desired *C*-nucleoside as shown in Scheme 4.42 [82].

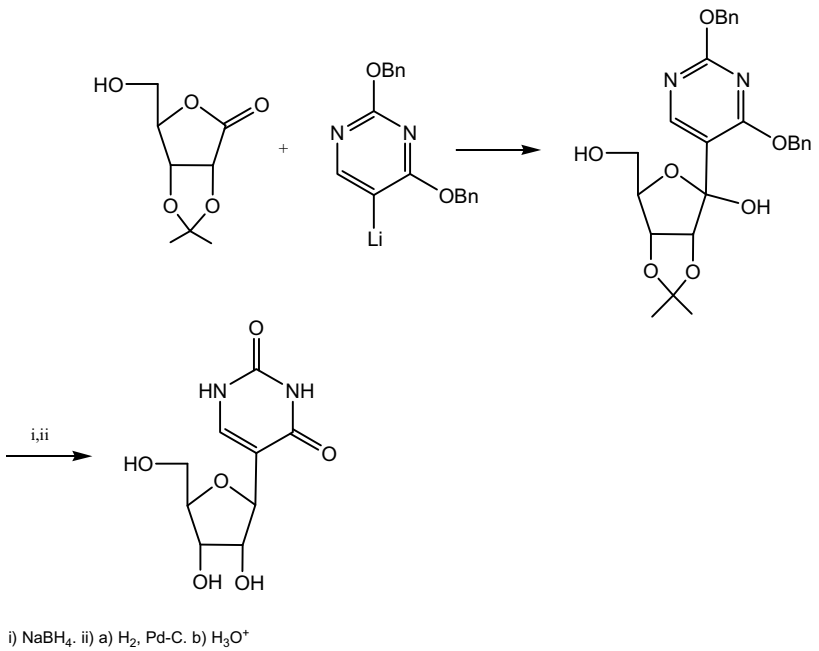
The synthesis of the *C*-nucleoside pseudouridine was reported by Asburn and Binkley [83], involving the condensation between 5-*O*-acety-2,3-*O*-isopropylidene-D-ribonolactone with 2,4-dibenzyloxypirimidin-5-il lithium to provide the condensation product which was subjected to hydride reduction and hydrogenolysis to yield pseudouridine (Scheme 4.43).

Similarly, pyridine, pyridazine, and pyrimidine C-nucleosides catalogued as Favipiravir (T-705) analogues were prepared and evaluated as anti-influenza prodrugs, observing for the pyridine derivative the highest inhibition of virus replication in MDCK cells. Thus, the first step consisting in the C-nucleoside bond formation between ribonolactone with pyridine derivative via nucleophilic addition with LDA, followed by reduction with triethylsilane in the presence of a strong Lewis acid providing C-nucleoside as anomeric mixture. The next steps consisting in protecting group removal and amide formation leads to the target C-nucleoside (Scheme 4.44), which was evaluated as anti-influenza virus inhibitor in vitro displaying potent inhibition with EC_{50} value of 1.9 μM comparable with favipiravir [84].

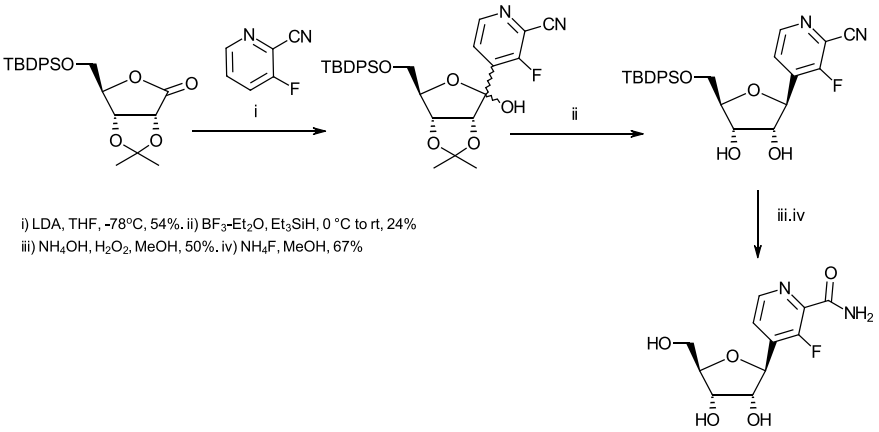
C-nucleoside prodrug Remdesivir was originally developed as anti-Ebola virus and lately reaching notoriety for being authorized as the first treatment for COVID-19 to receive FDA approval. Its chemical synthesis was designed from protected ribonolactone providing an electrophilic position to be attached with bromo pyrrolo[2,1-f][triazin-4-amino] adenine nucleobase via metal insertion at the halogen



Scheme 4.42 Preparation of 6-azapseudouridine



Scheme 4.43 Preparation of pseudouridine



Scheme 4.44 Synthesis of anti-influenza pyridine C-nucleoside as favipiravir analogue

position, forming the corresponding hemiketal, which was further transformed to the cyano C-nucleoside already a potent C-nucleoside against viruses such as HCV (EC_{50} of 4.1 μM) [85]. The final step consisting in the phosphoramidate attachment at 5′ position presenting two alternatives, being the first a straight coupling with phosphoramidoyl chloridate providing low yield, and as second alternative a previous acetonide protection and coupling with *p*-nitrophenolate 2-ethylbutyl L-alaninate, observing as result a substantial yield improvement (Scheme 4.45) [86].

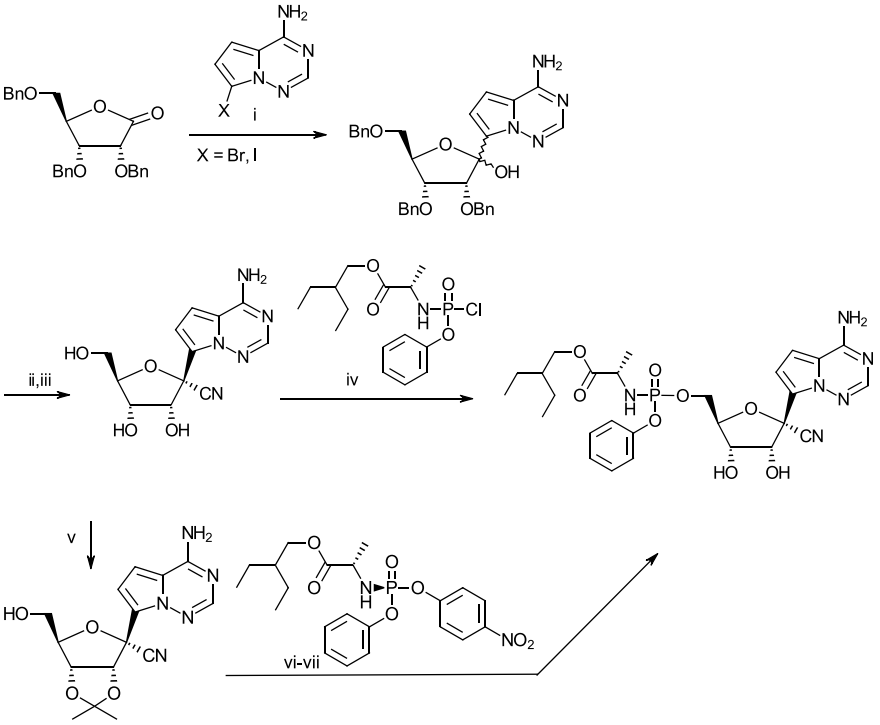
Antitumor *C*-nucleoside Tiazofurine was synthesized by Robins et al. [87], from 2,3,5-tri-*O*-benzoyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl cianide which undergoes ring closure under conditions described in Scheme 4.46.

A new report for the synthesis of Tiazofurin is described, avoiding the use of H_2S gas which is unsafe on large-scale production. The synthesis initiates with the preparation of 1-cyano-2,3-*O*-isopropylidene-5-*O*-benzoyl-β-D-ribofuranose which was reacted with cysteine ethyl ester hydrochloride to give thiazoline derivative in 90%. Further steps including oxidative aromatization under MnO_2 in benzene and acetonide deprotection with iodide in methanol produced the desired C-nucleoside (Scheme 4.47) [88].

Another biologically important *C*-nucleoside known as showdomicine was prepared by Trumnlitz and Moffat [89]. The aldehyde used as starting material was converted first to an α-hydroxyacid and then to α-ketoacid. Wittig reaction on this intermediate and Lewis acid catalysis produced ring closure (Scheme 4.48).

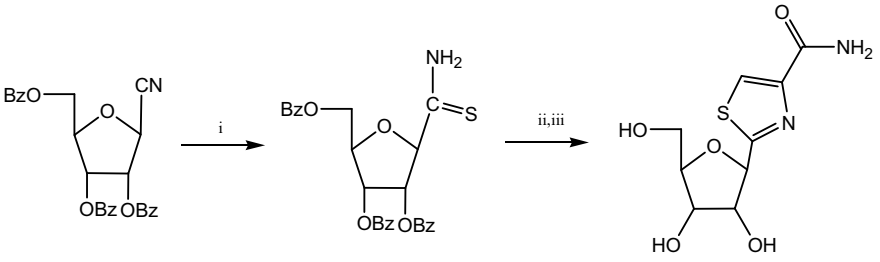
Pyrazine riboside derivative was synthesized by treatment of glycine riboside with formaldehyde and cyanide (Strecker conditions) to generate cyanide intermediate as a mixture of isomers. Sulfenylation and sodium methoxide treatment produce the *C*-nucleoside (Scheme 4.49) [90].

Analogs of antiviral C-nucleoside Formycin have been synthesized by using the palladium-mediated glycosidic reaction between the furanoid glycal and the



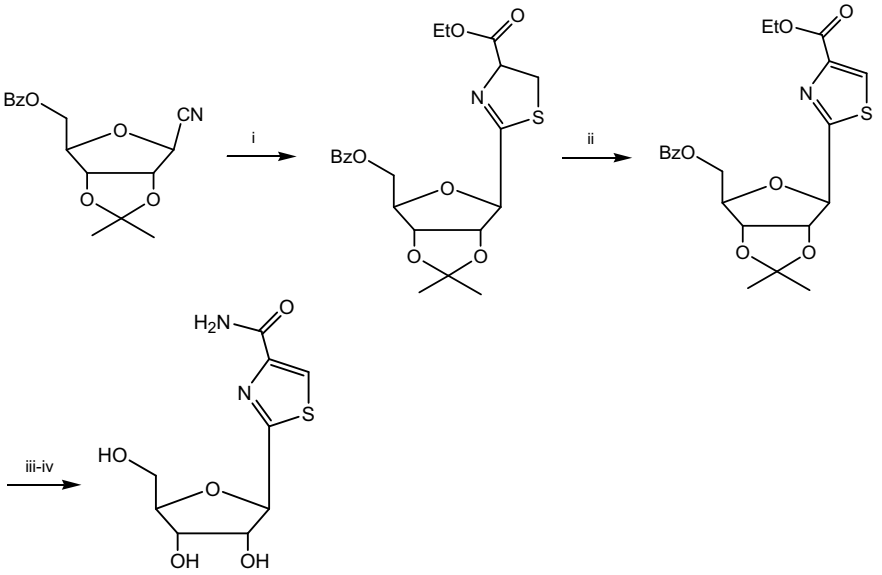
i) 1,1,4,4-tetramethyl-1,4-dichlorodisilylethylene (1.2 equiv), NaH (2.2 equiv, 60% mineral oil), n-BuLi, (3.3 equiv), THF, -78°C, 1h, 60%
ii) TMSCN (4 equiv), BF_3OEt_2 (3 equiv) or TfOH, CH_2Cl_2, -78°C, 5 h, 85% (85:15 β/α)
iii) BCl_3 or BBr_3(4–8 equiv), CH_2Cl_2, 78°C, 1h, 86%
iv) NMI, $OP(OMe)_3$, 21%
v)) 2,2-dimethoxypropane, H_2SO_4, acetone, rt, 90%
vi) $MgCl_2$, $(i\text{-}Pr)_2NEt$, MeCN, 50 °C, 70% vii) 37% HCl, THF, rt, 69%

Scheme 4.45 Synthesis of C-nucleoside anti COVID-19 drug Remdesivir



i) H_2S, 4-DMAP. ii) ethylbromopyruvate. iii) NH_3/MeOH.

Scheme 4.46 Synthesis of tiazofurine



i) Cysteine ether ester hydrochloride/TEA. ii) MnO_2/Ph, reflux. iii) 90% TFA. iv) MeOH/NH_3

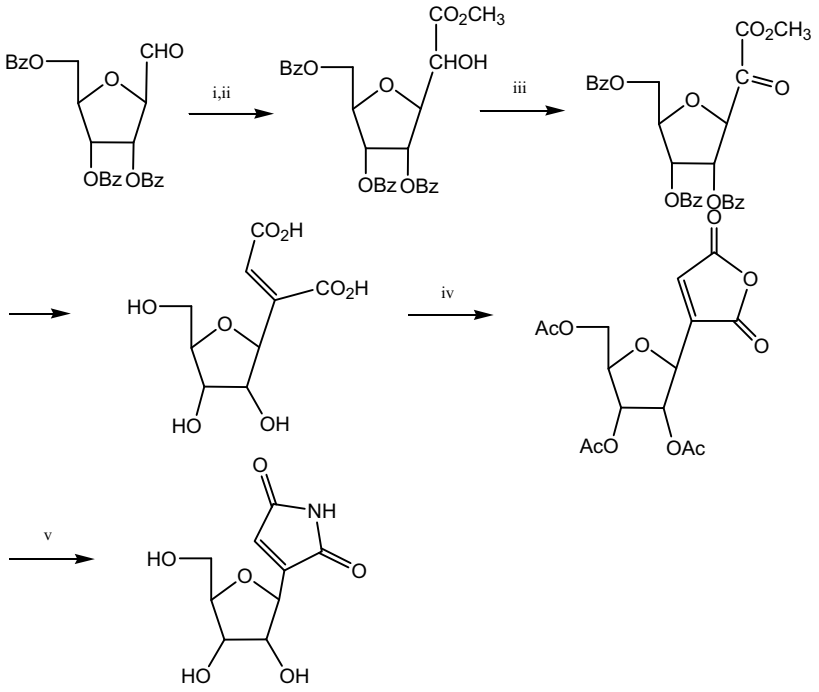
Scheme 4.47 A new synthetic methodology for tiazofurin

iodinated heterocycle. Similar conditions were used for preparing the pyrimidine analogues (Scheme 4.50) [91].

Radical cyclization of ribo-phenylselenoglycoside tethered with propargyl moieties on C-5 hydroxyl group afforded cyclic intermediates potentially useful for the synthesis of C-nucleoside derivatives. Propargyl intermediate was prepared from ribo-phenylselenoglycoside via two-step sequence and then under radical reaction conditions (Bu_3SnH/AIBN) transformed to the cyclic intermediates in high yields. Further ring opening produce aldehyde intermediate which was subjected to coupling reaction with 1,2-phenylenediamine to produce the pyrazine C-glycoside (Scheme 4.51) [92].

Polyhalogenated quinoline *C*-nucleosides were synthesized as potential antiviral agents. The key step reaction for quinolin-2-one ring formation consisted in the condensation between 2-aminophenoneallose derivative with keteneylidene(triphenyl)-phosphorane in benzene under reflux to provide the desired 6,7-dichloroquinolin-2-one nucleoside in 50% yield (Scheme 4.52) [93].

The Novel bicyclic C-nucleoside Malayamycin A from *Streptomyces malaysiensis* was elegantly synthesized from D-Ribonolactone which was transformed to the target molecule according to the pathway indicated in Scheme 4.53 [94].



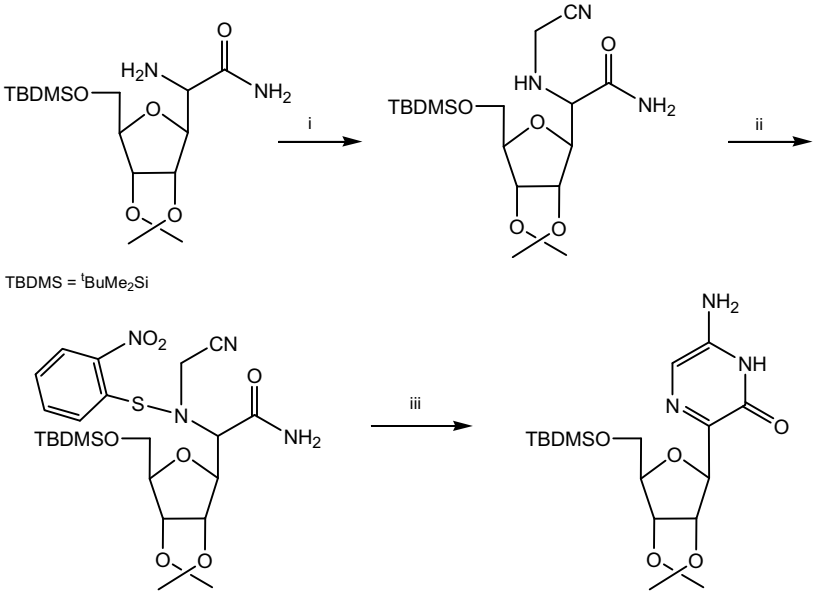
i) NaCN. ii) a) MeOH-H_3O^+. b) Me_2SO-DCC. iii) $Ph_3P{=}CHCONH_2$. iv) Ac_2O. v) a) NH_3. b) EPP. v) H^+.

Scheme 4.48 Preparation of showdomicine

4.3 Carbocyclic Nucleosides

This class of modified nucleosides in which the furanose ring has been replaced by a cycloalcane ring (mainly cyclopentane) have been prepared by chemical or enzymatic methods. Besides their potent anti tumor and antiviral activity for some of them, they have also shown high resistance to phosphorylases.

The use of enzymes particularly lipases for protections and deprotections is an important strategy for preparing carbocyclic nucleosides. This approach has been advantageous especially for the resolution of enantiomeric forms, leading to high enantiomeric purity. Constrained three [95], and four [96] member ring carbocyclic nucleosides have been obtained by applying chemoenzymatic methodologies involving lipase for enantiomeric resolution and stereoselective deprotections. In the case of more abundant five member rings the use of lipases for enzymatic resolution and regioselective deprotections have been under intense study. Special attention has been paid to cyclopentenyl diacetates which have been used as building blocks for the preparation of important carbocyclic nucleosides such as Neplanocin and Aristeromycin. To achieve this goal, the hydrolase enzyme acetyl-cholinesterase (EEAC)



Scheme 4.49 Synthesis of C-nucleoside by pyrazine ring formation

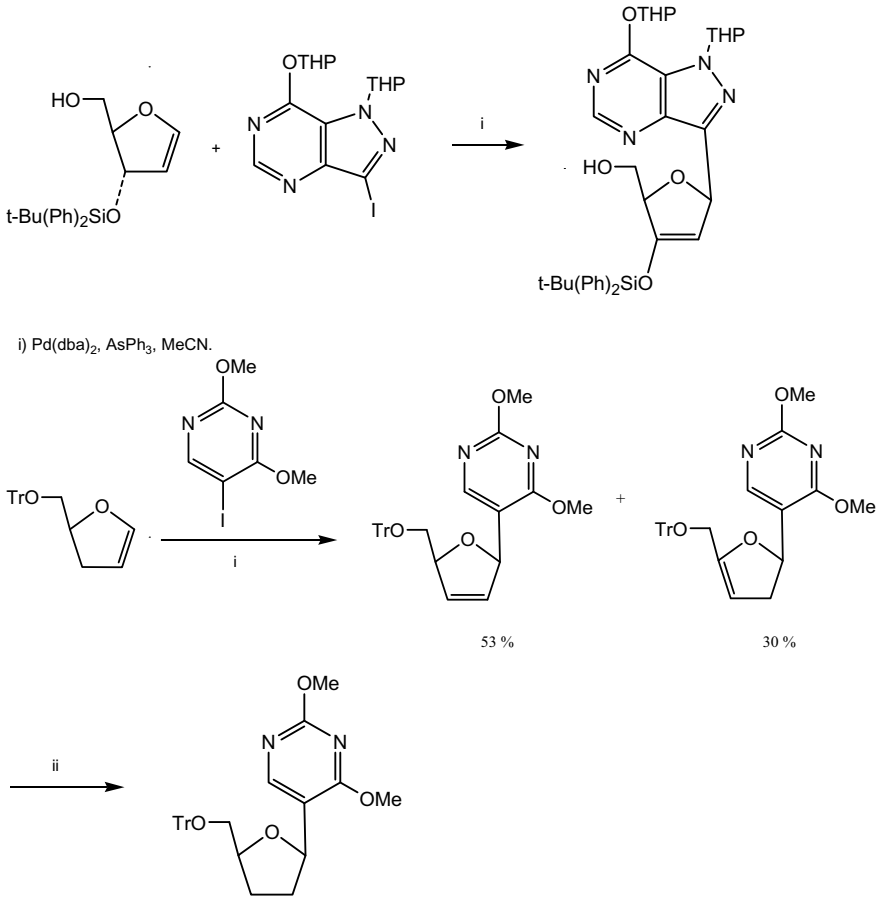
showed high efficiency for obtaining the desired enantiomer (1R,4S)-4-hydroxy-2-cyclopentenyl derivative in enantiomeric excess (ee) up to 96% (Scheme 4.54) [97–99].

Racemic cyclopentenyl derivatives have been used as starting material in the preparation of the antiviral carboxylic nucleoside (−)-5′-Deoxyaristeromycin. The key step reaction was the enzymatic resolution with *Pseudomona sp* lipase (PSL) of the racemic mixture affording the (+)-enantiomer which was transformed chemically to the desired carbocyclic nucleoside (Scheme 4.55).

The separation of racemic carbocyclic nucleosides by enzymatic means has been reported as an alternative approach. Thus, racemic aristeromycin was treated with adenosine deaminase (ADA) to give (−)-carbocyclic inosine and pure destrorotatory enantiomer (Scheme 4.56) [100].

4.3.1 Cyclopropane Carbocyclic Nucleosides

Conformationally constrained cyclopropane nucleosides have been prepared following a chemoenzymatic approach [95]. Thus, the racemic resolution of *trans*-1-(diethoxyphosphyl)difluoromethyl-2-hydroxymethylcyclopropane followed by acetate hydrolysis was carried out with porcine pancreas lipase (PPL) to yield (+)-



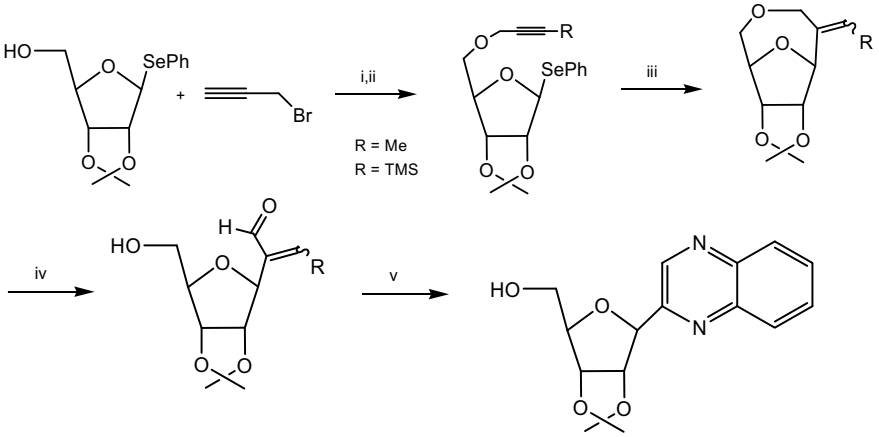
Scheme 4.50 Palladium-mediated synthesis of *C*-nucleoside formycin analogues

and (−)-cyclopropanes in high enantiomeric excess. Further transformation lead to the preparation of the target cyclopropane nucleoside (Scheme 4.57).

4.3.2 Cyclobutane Carbocyclic Nucleosides

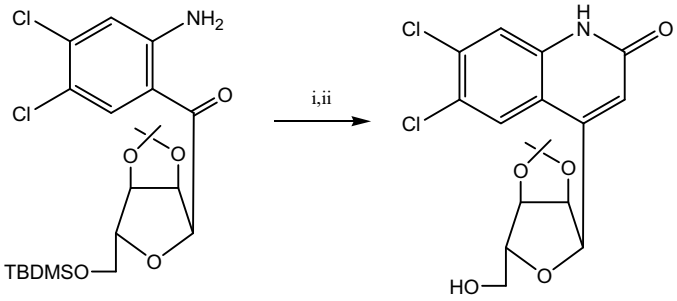
Lubocavir is a synthetic potent inhibitor of DNA polymerase, active against cytomegalovirus [91, 101] (Scheme 4.58).

The carboxyclic four membered *C*-nucleoside Cyclobut-A was prepared following the Barton decarboxylation method. The method is based on the reaction between carboxylic acids with heteroaromatic compounds (Scheme 4.59) [102].



i) NaH, ii) n-BuLi, TMSI or MeI. iii) n-Bu_3SnH. iv) SeO_2-AcOH, 1,4-Dioxane. v) a) O_3. b) DMS. 3) 1,2-phenylenediamine.

Scheme 4.51 C-nucleoside derivative formation via radical cyclization



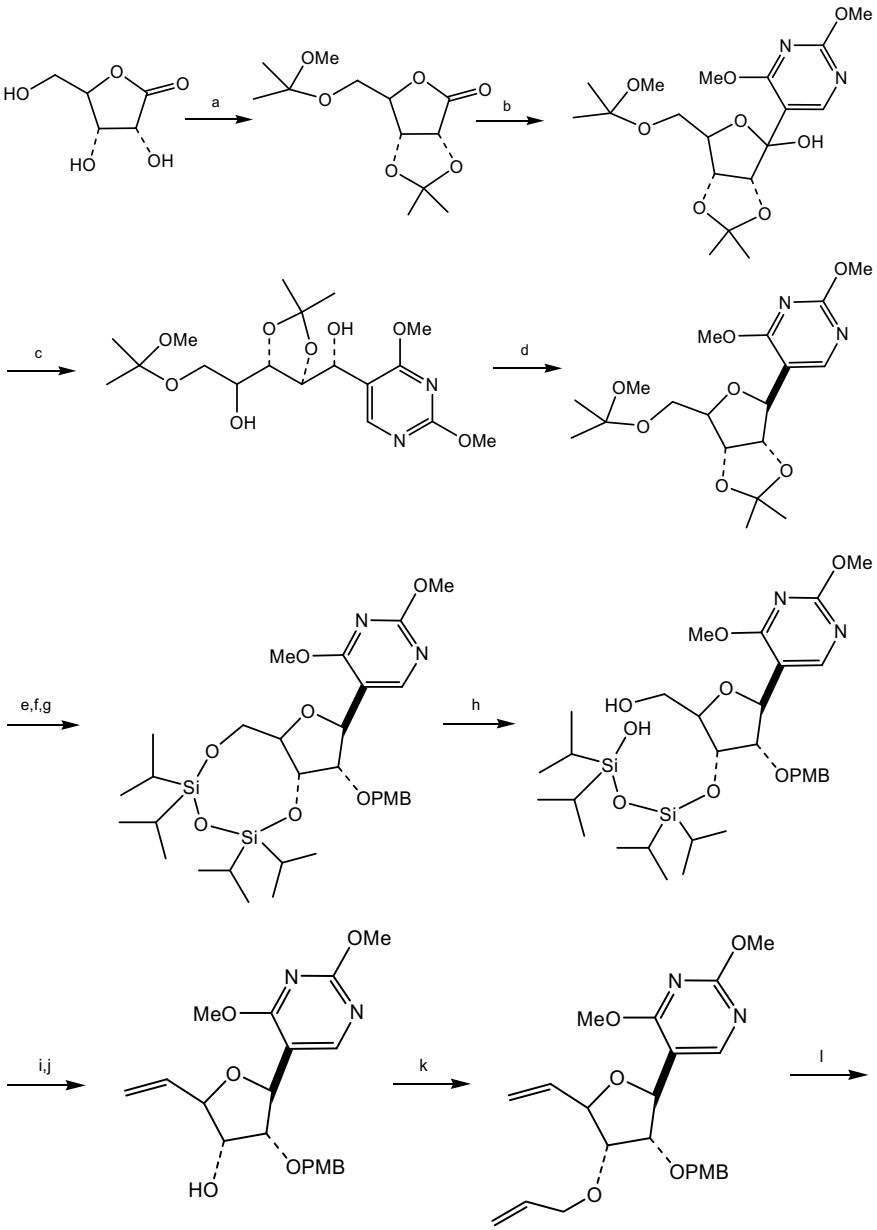
i) Ph_3P=C=C=O, PhH, reflux. ii) TBAF, THF, rt.

Scheme 4.52 Quinolin-2-one *C*-nucleoside formation via Wittig reaction

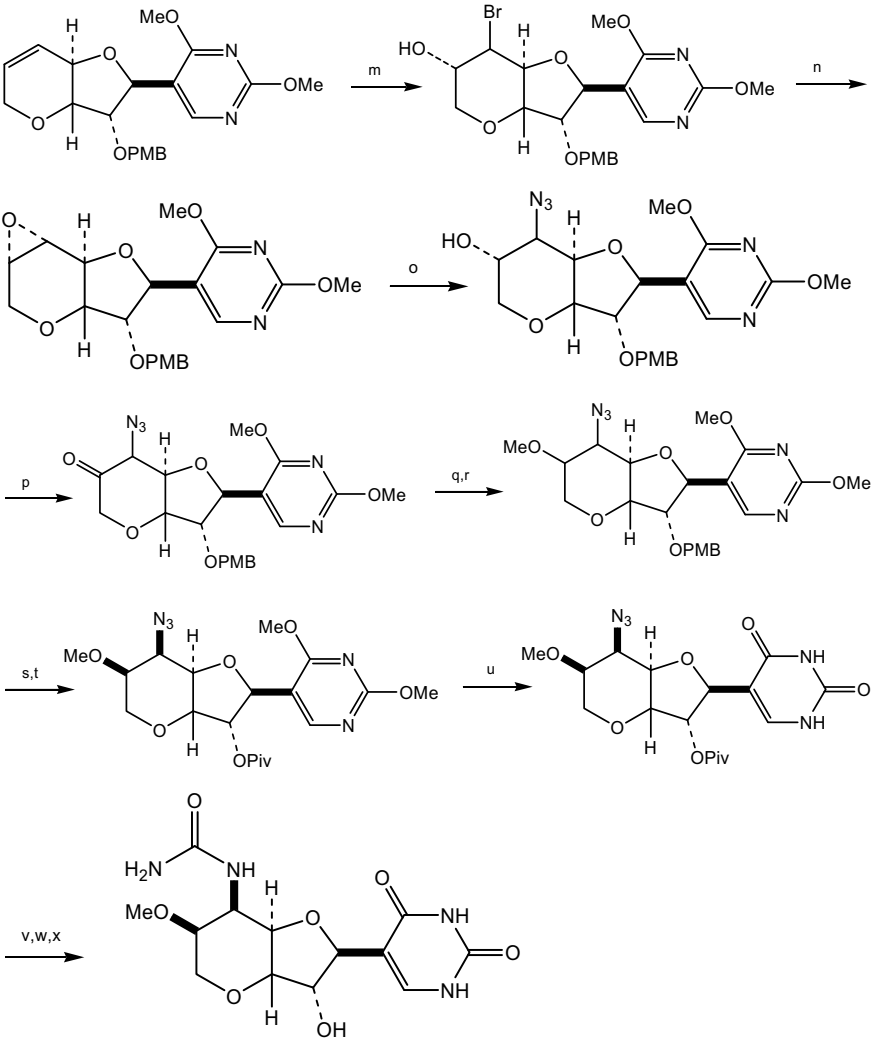
Other carbocyclic oxetanocin analogs have been prepared from oxetanocin A [103] 3,3-diethoxy-1,2-cyclobutanedicarboxylate [104], and enantiomeric cyclobutanone intermediates [105] as starting materials.

4.3.3 Cyclopentane Carbocyclic Nucleosides

The Mitsunobu reaction has become a valuable alternative approach for preparing cyclopentane carbocyclic nucleosides. This has been demonstrated in the preparation of conformationally locked carbocyclic AZT triphosphate analogues under this versatile conditions [106]. The standard procedure usually takes place with diethyl or diisipropylazocarboxylate (DEAD or DIAD) with triphenylphosphine $(Ph)_3P$ in THF

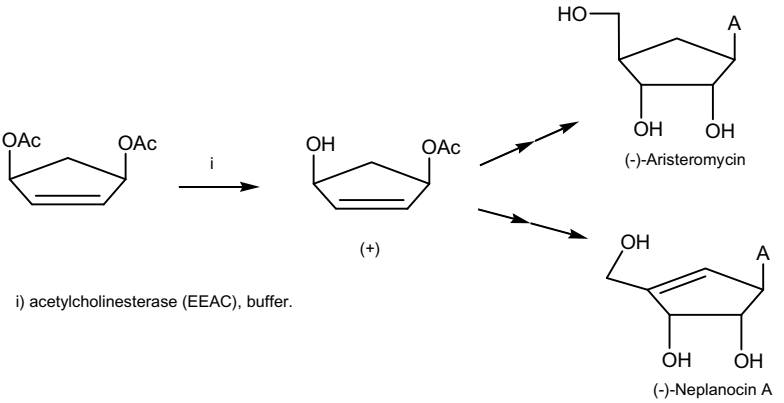


Scheme 4.53 Total synthesis of C-nucleoside Malayamycin A

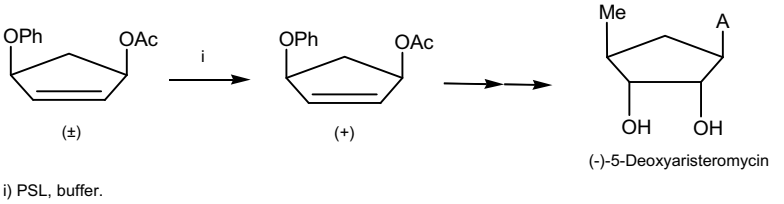


a) 2,2-dimethoxypropane, Na_2SO_4, PPTS, 94%. b) 2,4-dimethoxy-5-iodopyrimidine, t-BuLi, 75%. c) L-Selectride, $ZnCl_2$, DCM, 86%. d) DIAD, Ph_3P, THF, 91%. e) 70% AcOH, 85%. f) 1,3-dichloro-1,1,3,3-tetraisopropyldisiloxane, pyridine, 89%. g) NaH, PMBBr, DMF/THF, 84%. h) 1 N HCl, Dioxane, 88%.i) DMSO, $(COCl)_2$, i-Pr_2NEt, DCM. j) Ph_3PCH_3Br, NaHMDS, THF (36%, 2 steps). k) allyl bromide, NaH, DMF, 93%. l) $Cl_2RuCHPh(PCy_3)_2$, DCM, reflux (89%). m) NBS, H_2O, THF. n) NaOH, THF. o) NaN_3, methoxyethanol (5:1, 41%, 3 steps for 14). p) Dess-Martin periodinate, DCM. q) $NaBH_4$, MeOH. r) NaH, MeI, DMF (93%, 3 steps). s) DDQ, H_2O, DCM (84%). t) Piv-Cl, DMAP, NEt_3, pyridine. u) TMS-Cl, NaI, actonitrile (42%, 2 steps). v) PMe_3, H_2O, THF. w) trichloroacetylisocyanate, DCM. x) $MeNH_2$, MeOH, H_2O (60%, 3 steps).

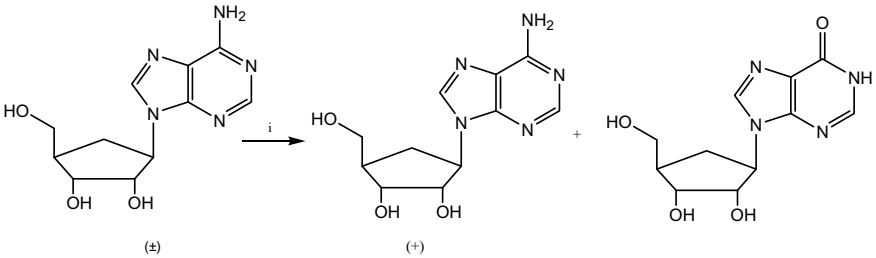
Scheme 4.53 (continued)



Scheme 4.54 Enantiomeric resolution of prochiral cyclopentene diacetate



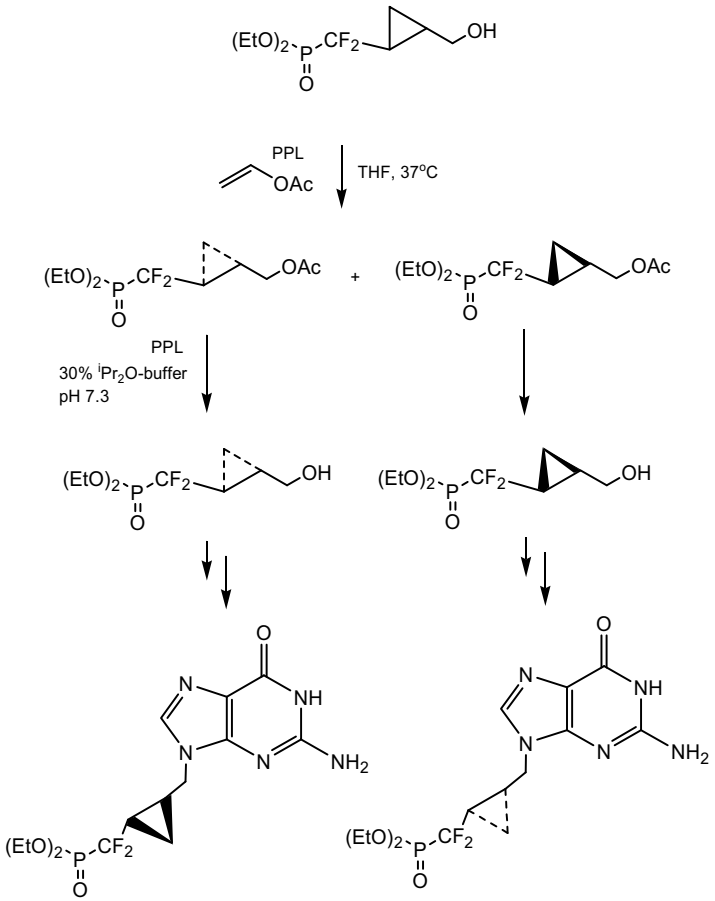
Scheme 4.55 Enzymatic resolution of racemic cyclopentene building blocks



Scheme 4.56 Enzymatic resolution of carbocyclic nucleoside

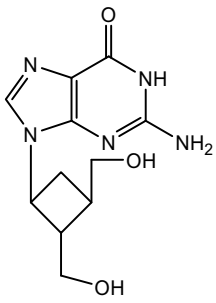
to yield carbocyclic purines or pyrimidines nucleosides in high yield (Scheme 4.60) [107].

Another example on the applicability of this method was observed in the preparation of the carbocyclic thymidine nucleoside. It is worth mentioning that the desired stereochemistry of the hydroxyl group is obtained also through the Mitsunobu reaction (Scheme 4.61) [108].

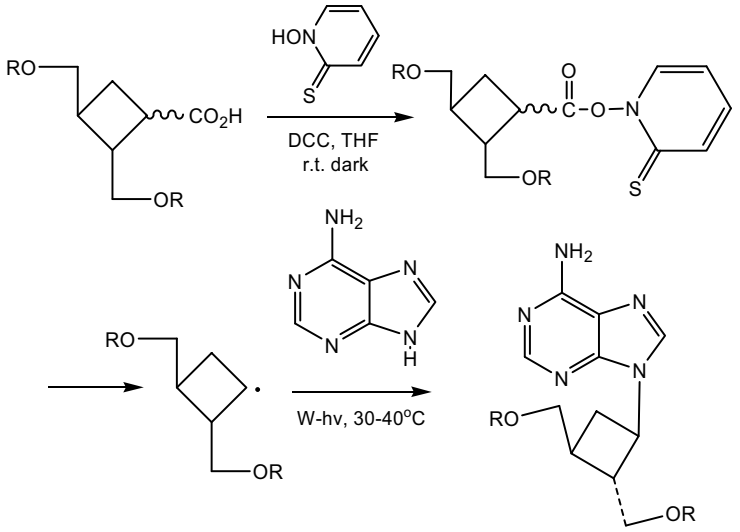


Scheme 4.57 Chemoenzymatic syntheses of cyclopropane nucleosides

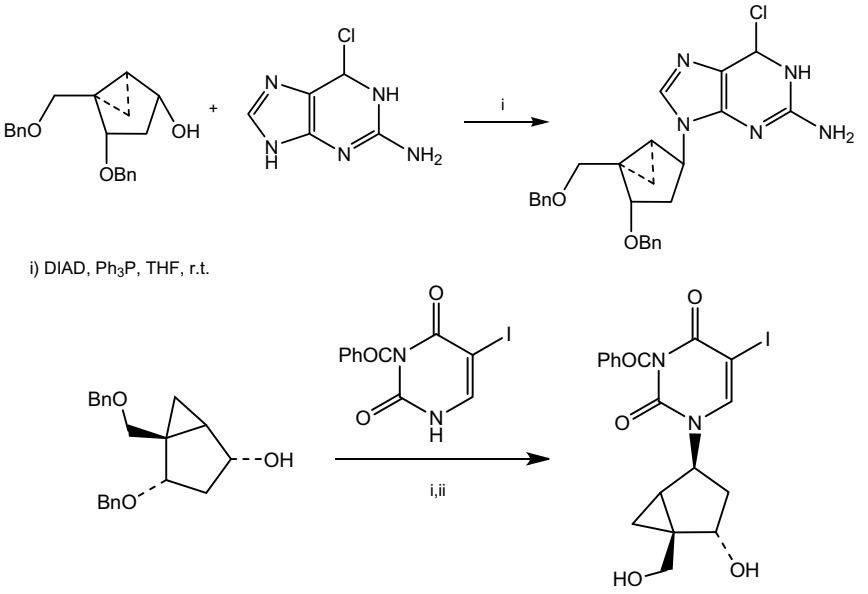
Scheme 4.58 Structures of carboxetan carbocyclic nucleoside



Lobucavir

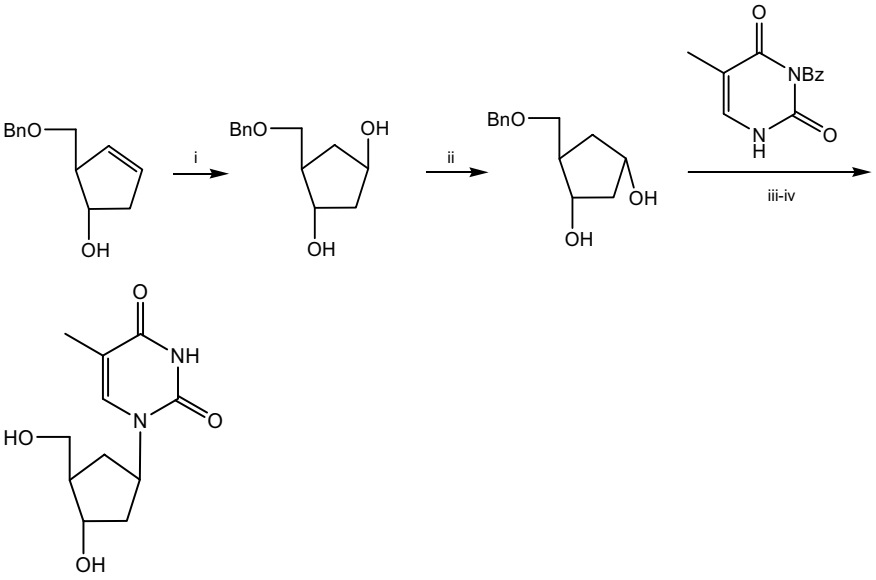


Scheme 4.59 The Barton decarboxylation method for the preparation of carbocyclic C-nucleosides



i) Ph_3P, DEAD, THF. ii) BCl_3, CH_2Cl_2.

Scheme 4.60 Synthesis of conformationally locked carbocyclic purine and pyrimidines under the Mitsunobu approach



i) NaH, BnBr. ii) 9-BBN, H_2O_2/NaOH, 87 %. iii) PPh_3, DIAD. iv) a) NaOH/MeOH. b) H_2, Pd/C, 90%

Scheme 4.61 The Mitsunobu reaction for preparation of the carbocyclic thymidine nucleoside

4.3.4 Palladium Mediated

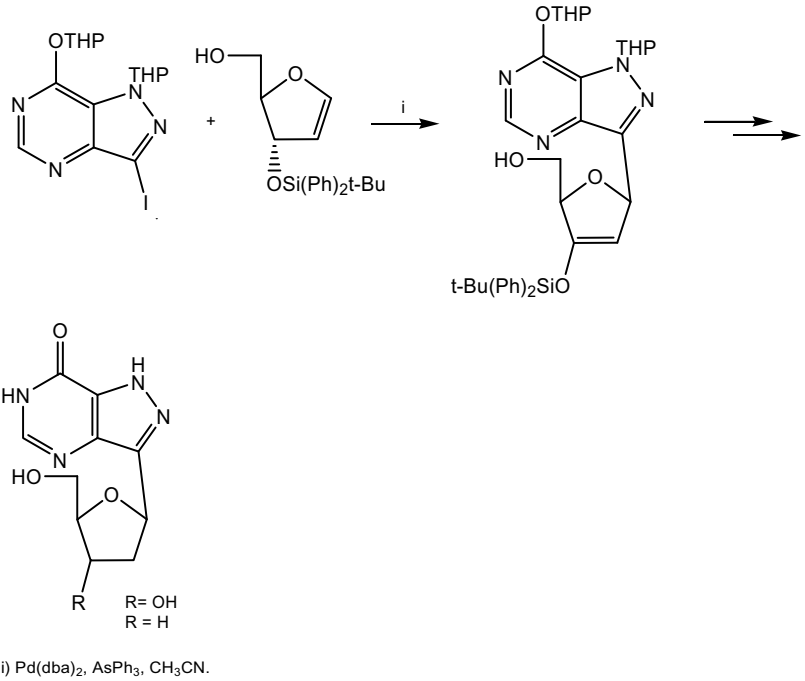
Based on the widespread palladium-coupling methodologies, several dideoxy, carbocyclic and C-nucleosides have been efficiently prepared. For instance the antiviral C-nucleosides 2′-deoxyformycin B was prepared by condensation reaction between the heterocycle iodide intermediate with the glycal, under $Pd(dba)_2$ as palladium catalyst in 62% yield (Scheme 4.62) [109].

Solid phase synthesis of carbovir analogs under palladium catalysis was recently reported [110]. The carbocyclic derivative was linked to the Wang resin and then coupled with chloropurines under Pd(0) catalyst (Scheme 4.63).

The Tsuji-Trost approach was used to prepare (−)-neplanocin A and its analogue [111]. This synthesis proceeds via an allylic rearrangement of the hydroxyl group from the (+)-allylic alcohol to the (−)-allylic acetate (Scheme 4.64).

Carbocyclic nucleoside Aristeromycin with antitumor and antiviral activity was prepared by condensation of the carbocyclic diacetate intermediate with the sodium salt of adenosine base under Pd(0) in 75% yield (Scheme 4.65) [112].

Palladium mediated coupling of purine base with carbocyclic acetates, carbonates or benzoates lead to a mixture of N-7 and N-9 isomers. The regioselectivity of purine alkylations depends on the size and nature of the ligands, being the most typical Ph_3P, BINAP, $P(OMe)_3$, $P(OiPr)_3$, $P(OPh)_3$ (Scheme 4.66) [113].

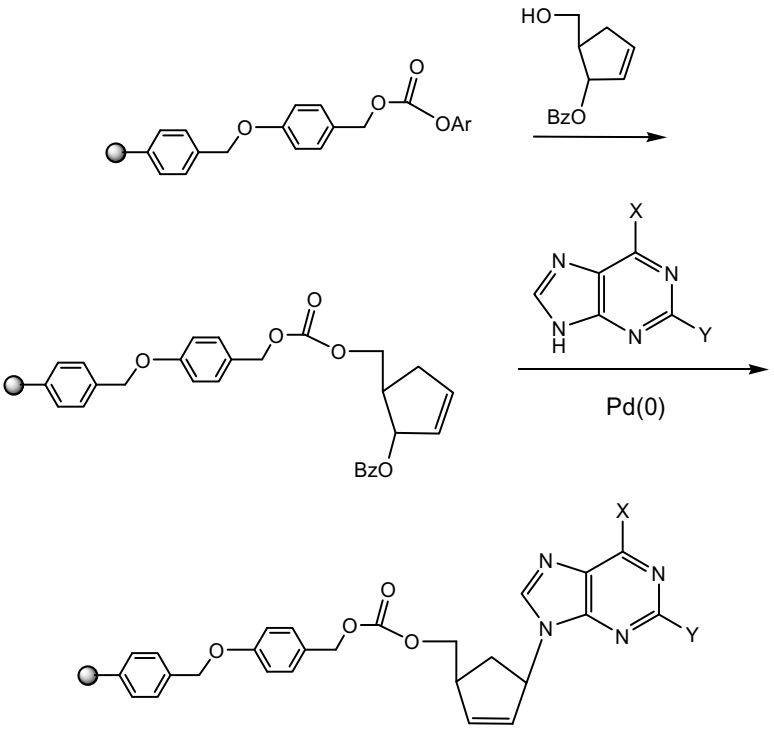


Scheme 4.62 Palladium-mediated 2′-deoxyformycin B and 2′,3′-dideoxyformycin B

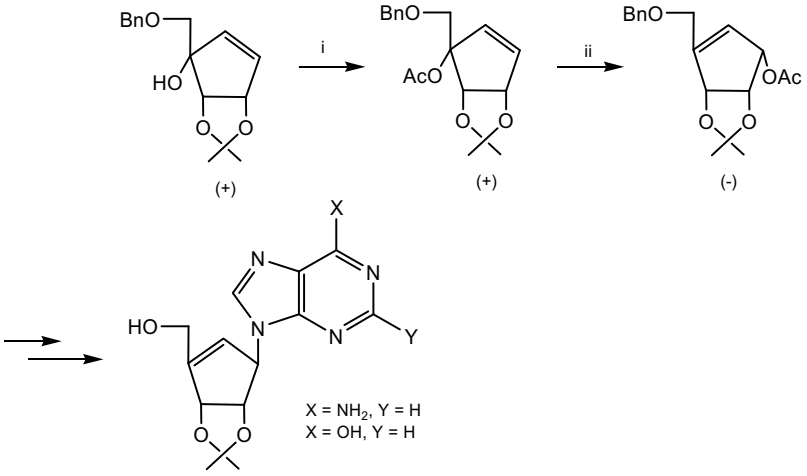
Another straightforward methodology for preparing carbocyclic nucleosides involves the direct condensation of mesylated carboxyclic intermediate with the heterocyclic base in the presence of potassium carbonate and crown ethers as coupling conditions (Scheme 4.67) [114].

Several approaches for preparing (±)-6′-β-fluoro-aristeromycin have been addressed, since exhibit the most potent inhibitory activity against AdoHcy hydrolase, one of the latest consisting in the initial fluoroketone formation as a mixture of anomers from available isopropylidene cyclopentenone. Attempts to prepare carbocyclic nucleoside by direct glycosylation reaction either under Mitsunobu conditions or activating the anomeric position with triflate leaving group fail, and therefore the target molecule was synthesized from condensation of fruoro cyclopentane amine intermediate with 4,6-dichloropyrimidine and subsequent transformation to adenine (Scheme 4.68) [115].

Anti HIV carbocyclic nucleoside structurally related to a remarkably potent reverse transcriptase inhibitor 4′-ethynyl-2-fluoro-2′-deoxyadenosine (MK-8591) with IC_{50} 0.00021 μM was synthesized and evaluated as reverse transcriptase inhibitor displaying also potent reverse transcriptase inhibition with IC_{50} of 33 nM in infected human peripheral blood mononuclear cells antiviral assay (hPBMCs). The first part of the effort consisted in the preparation of racemic 3-ethynyl-4-(methoxymethoxy)cyclopentan-1-ol from allyloxy cyclopentyl methanol which was

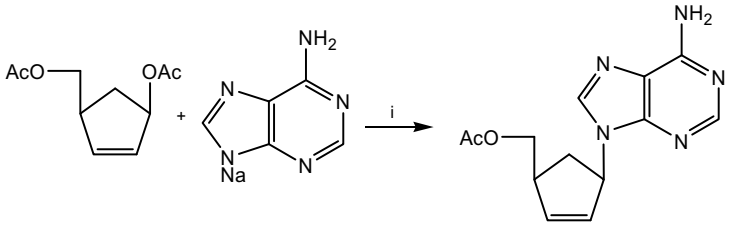


Scheme 4.63 Solid-phase synthesis of carbocyclic nucleosides under palladium catalysis



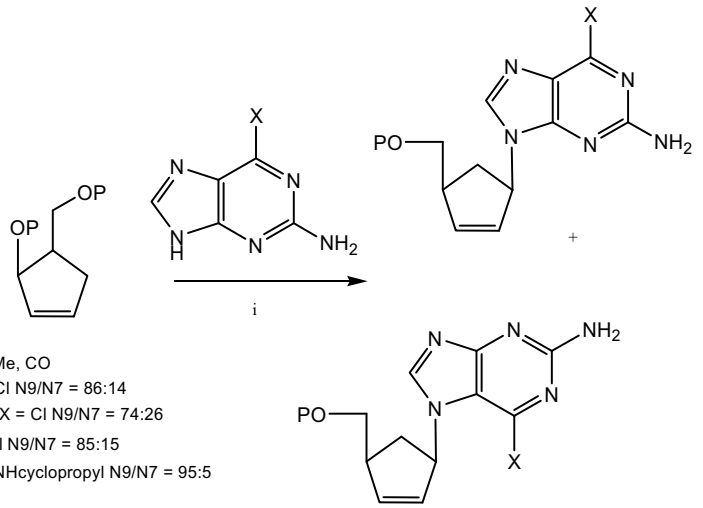
i) Ac_2O, DMAP. ii) $PdCl_2(MeCN)_2$, pBQ, THF.

Scheme 4.64 Tsuji-Trost reaction for the preparation of neplanocin A



i) $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (0.005 eq.), Et_3N, THF, reflux

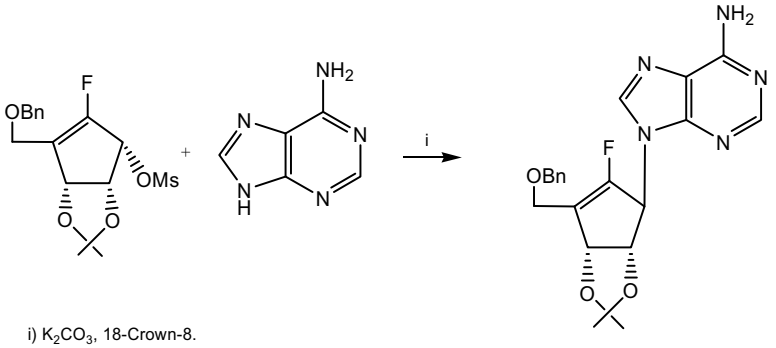
Scheme 4.65 Palladium catalyzed synthesis of aristeromycin



P = Ac, CO_2Me, CO
P = Ac, X = Cl N9/N7 = 86:14
P = CO_2Me, X = Cl N9/N7 = 74:26
P = H, X = Cl N9/N7 = 85:15
P = Ac, X = NHcyclopropyl N9/N7 = 95:5

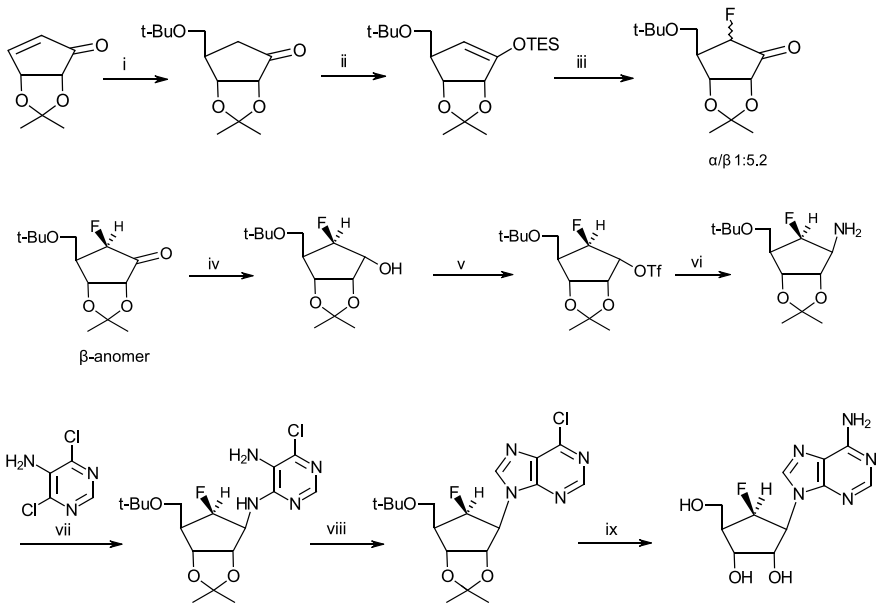
i) $Pd(PPh_3)_4$, THF/DMSO, 45ºC 50-70%.

Scheme 4.66 Palladium-catalyzed coupling with purine base



i) K_2CO_3, 18-Crown-8.

Scheme 4.67 Preparation of carbocyclic nucleosides with mesylated carboxylic intermediates



i) CuBr-SMe, sec-BuLi, KOt-Bu, LiBr, $[(CH_3)_2CH]S$, $(CH_3)_3COCH_3$, THF,C to -20°C, 5.5 h, 70%
ii) LiHMDS, TESCl, THF, -78°C, 10 min, 98%
iii) Selectfluor, DMF, 0°C, 12h, 91%
iv) $NaBH_4$, MeOH, 0°C, 30 min, 70%
v) Tf_2O, Py. 0°C., 30 min, 95%
vi) a) NaN_3, DMF. b) LaH, THF, 0°C to rt, 2h, 60%. vii) Et_3N, n-BuOH, 80°C, 100 h, 66%
viii) $CH_3C(O)OCH(OEt)_2$, 120°C, 14 h, 70%
ix) a) NH_3 in t-BuOH, 100°C, 15 h, 84% b) 67% aq TFA, 50°C, 5 h, 68%

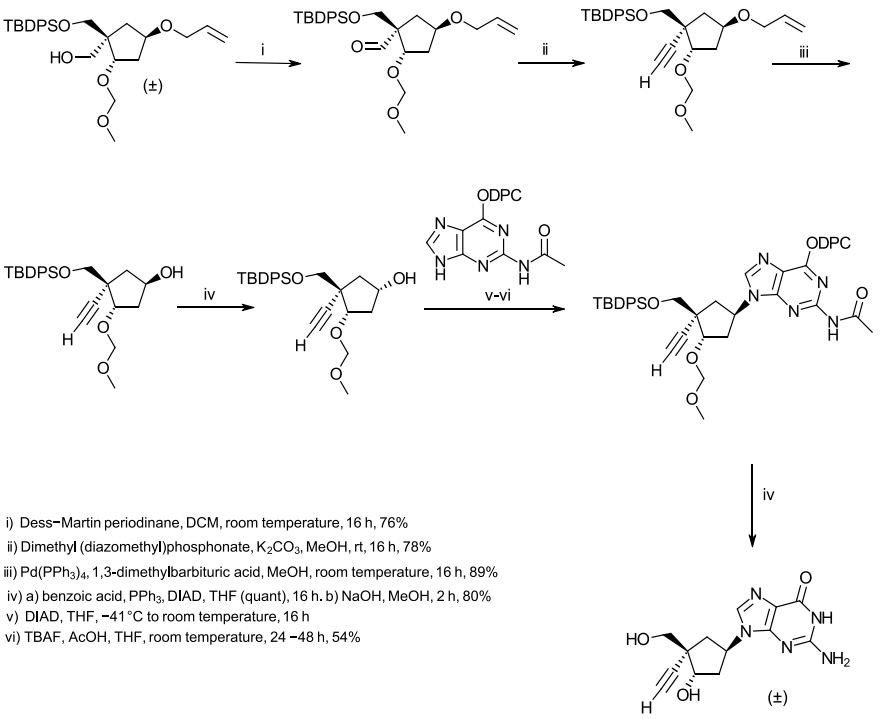
Scheme 4.68 Asymmetric synthesis of carbocyclic nucleoside (−)-6′-β-fluoro-aristeromycin

subsequently transformed to the aldehyde and then under Seyferth–Gilbert conditions to install the ethynyl group at the cyclopentane ring. The next step involving deprotection with $Pd(PPh_3)_4$, followed by hydroxyl inversion and attachment to the purine ring under Mitsunobu conditions. Final removal of protecting groups yields de target carbocyclic nucleosides as racemate (Scheme 4.69) [116].

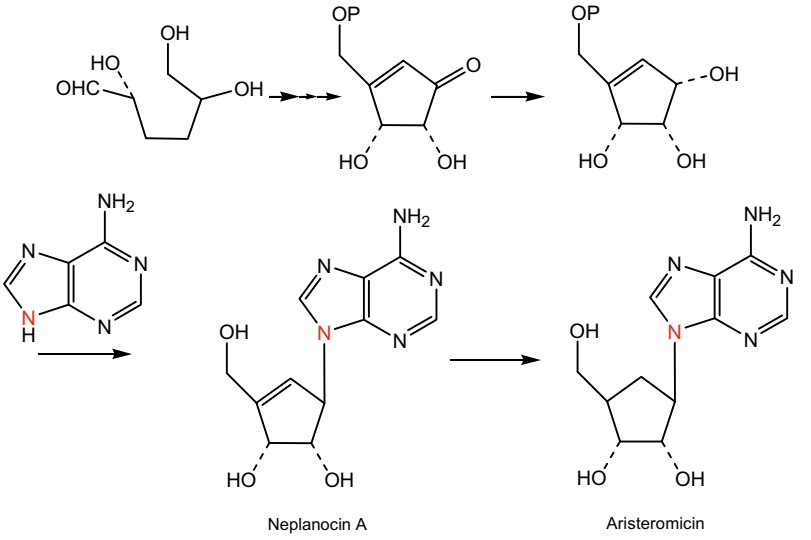
4.3.5 Enzymatic Synthesis

Likewise, carbocyclic nucleosides aristeromycin and neplanocin A can be biosynthetically prepared by using a mutant strain of *S. citricolor* as it is observed in Scheme 4.70.

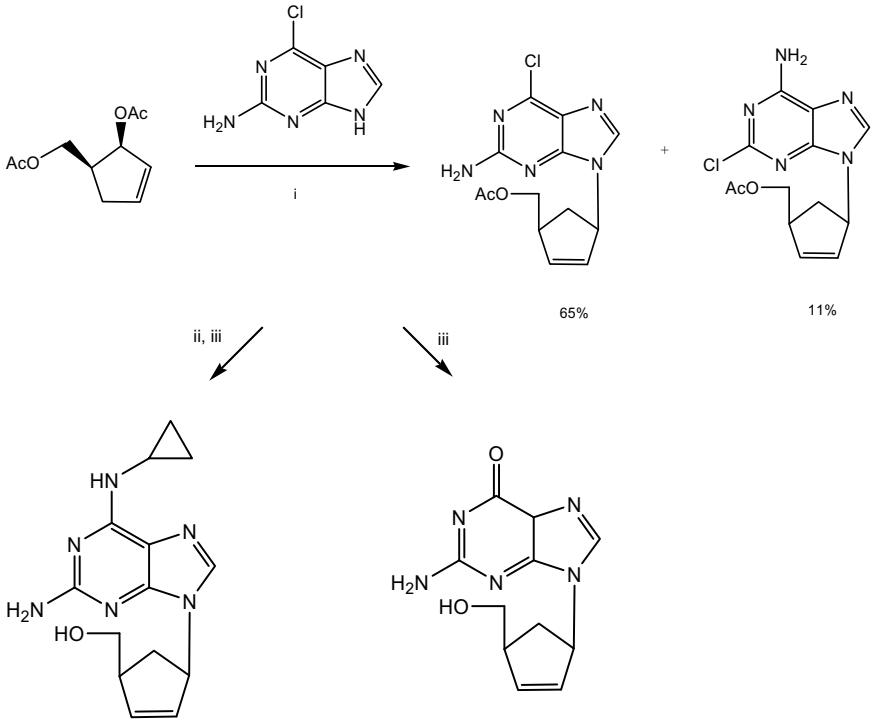
The cyclopropylamino carbocyclic nucleosides (−)-Abacavir is a potent anti-HIV with promising results on clinical trials [117]. An improved synthesis has been



Scheme 4.69 Synthesis and anti HIV ethynylguanosine carbocyclic nucleoside



Scheme 4.70 Biosynthetic pathway of neplanocin A and aristeromycin

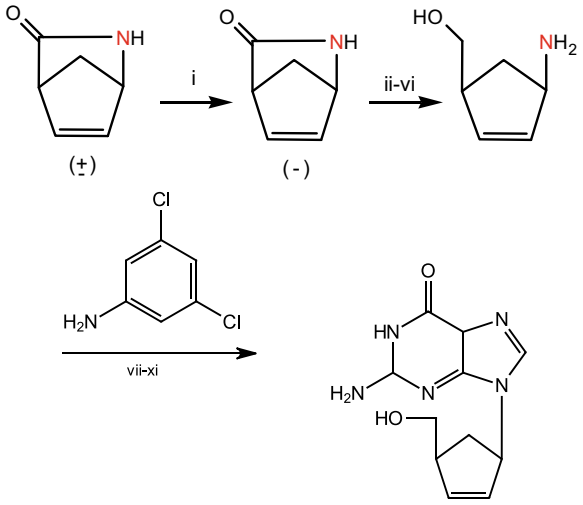


Scheme 4.71 Synthesis of anti-HIV (−)-abacavir and (−)-carbovir

described by Crimmins et al. [118], involving the treatment of key carbocyclic 2-amino-6-cloropurine intermediate with cyclopropilamine producing Abacavir along its parent anti-HIV carbocyclic nucleoside (−)-Carbovir (Scheme 4.71).

4.3.5.1 Base Ring Formation

Another useful strategy used for preparing carbocyclic nucleosides involves the use of intermediates in which the amino group is already attached to the sugar moiety and once the coupling reaction is achieved, a ring closure process takes place to generate the expected nucleoside. According to this procedure Roberts et al. [119] prepared the potent antiviral inhibitor (−)-carbovir which posses similar activity than AZT against HIV in MT-4 cells. Thus, the starting material (±)-2-azabiciclo [2.2.1] hept-5-en-3-one was submitted to microbial treatment with *Pseudomona solanacearum* to provide enantiomerically pure (−) isomer. The enantiomerically pure carbocyclic



i) P. solanacearum NCIB 40249. ii HCl-H_2O. iii $(MeO)_2CMe_2$. iv) Ac_2O/Py. v) $Ca(BH_4)_2$/THF. vi) HCl-H_2O/EtOH. vii) PrNEt, nBuOH. viii) 4-Cl-$C_6H_4N_2$+ Cl- -AcOH, AcONa/H_2O. ix) Zn, AcOH/EtOH-H_2O. x) $(EtO)_3CH$/HCl. xi) NaOH/H_2O.

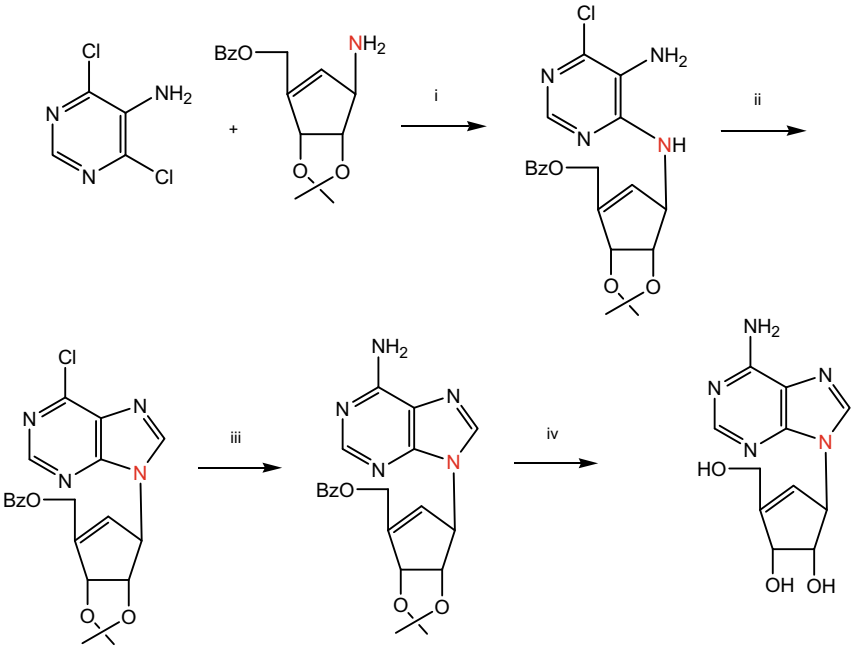
Scheme 4.72 Synthesis of (−)-carbovir

amine was then conjugated to 2-amino-4,6-dichloropirimidine to produce the carbocyclic precursor which was ultimately cyclized to afford the desired (−)-carbovir (Scheme 4.72).

Anti leukemia carboxylic nucleoside Neplanocin A has been synthesized by Marquez et al., under the ring closure approach mentioned above. Thus, condensation of pyrimidine intermediate with isopropylideneaminocyclopentenediol furnished intermediate which was further cyclized to the purine base with triethylortoformiate. Final conversion to adenine ring with ammonia and protecting group removal gave place to Neplanocin A (Scheme 4.73) [120].

Likewise, this procedure was applied for the preparation of the close related pyrimidine analog by condensation of the previous carbocyclic amine with the unsaturated ether to produce the pyrimidine precursor who was transformed to thiopyrimidine and then to carbocyclic cytosine as it can be observed in Scheme 4.74. This compound has been found to be active against leukemia type L1210 in vivo [121].

An antiviral carbocyclic purine nucleoside was also reported [122] by following a ring closure step for purine formation. Condensation between pyrimidine intermediate with carbocyclic amine afforded condensation product which is activated with diazonium salt for amino introduction. Ring closure was achieved with triethyl orthoformate in acid medium (Scheme 4.75).



i) EtN_3/EtOH. ii) $HC(OEt)_3$, Ac_2O. ii) NH_3/MeOH. iii) BCl_3/CH_2Cl_2-MeOH

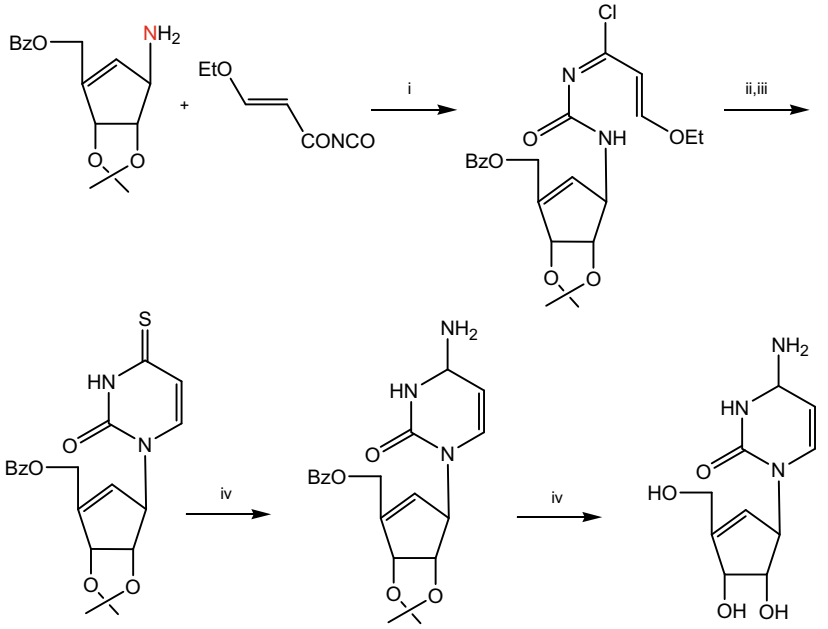
Scheme 4.73 Synthesis of neplanocin A

4.3.6 Carbocyclic C-Nucleosides

This class of C-nucleosides in which a methylene group replaces the furan oxygen ring do not show significant biological activity so far, however there is an interest to synthesize C-nucleoside with natural heterocycle moieties in a stereocontrolled fashion. A recent stereocontrolled synthesis of carbocyclic C-nucleosides has been proposed involving as key starting material the cyano carboxylic intermediate which was condensed to 9-deazapurine to produce saturated and unsaturated carbocyclic 9-deazapurine nucleosides (Scheme 4.76) [123].

4.4 Acyclic Nucleosides

Since the discovery of Acyclovir as an antiherpes drug, important efforts have been made toward the synthesis of analogs of acyclovir and other acyclic nucleosides. A



i) PhH. ii) DMF, NH_4OH. iii) Lawesson. iv) NH_3 liq.v) a) BCl_3/CH_2Cl_2-MeOH. b) Dowex H^+

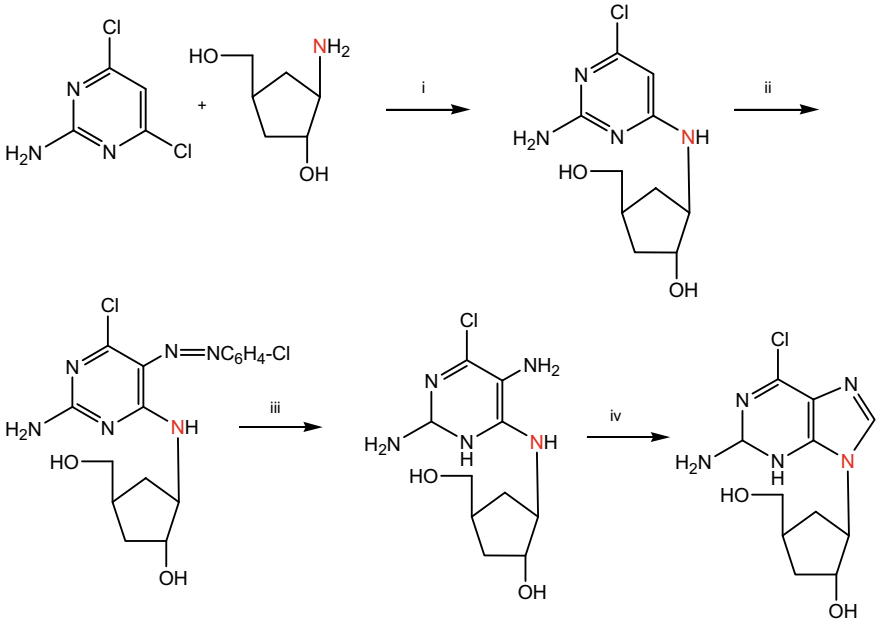
Scheme 4.74 Synthesis of carbocyclic pyrimidine nucleoside

comprehensive review made by Chu and Cutler [124] summarize the major achievements carried out for preparing acyclonucleosides defined as those heterocyclic compounds containing one or more hydroxyl groups on the alkyl side chain.

At least three representative synthesis of acyclovir have been made, the first by Schaeffer et al. [125] involving a condensation reaction of dichloropurine with ether chloride intermediate, and further purine transformation to generate 9-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl)guanine (acyclovir) (Scheme 4.77).

An improved version introduced by Barrio et al. [126, 127] consist in the initial reaction of 1,3-dioxolane with trimethylsilyl iodide to produce the side chain which was then condensed with the halogenated purine. To yield after hydrolysis and ammonolysis the target acyclovir (Scheme 4.78).

Robins and Hatfield [128] employed a chemoenzymatic approach for preparing acyclovir consisting initially in the use of mercury salts and hexamethyldisilane (HMDS) and in the final step an enzymatic conversion. Thus, the procedure involves the condensation between 2,6-dichloropurine with the bromoether, providing regioisomer N-7 shown in Scheme 4.79. Further amination and final transformation to guanine with the enzyme adenosin-deaminase produces the desired antiviral compound.



i) Et_3N/EtOH. ii) 4-Cl-$C_6H_4N_2^+Cl^-$, Na_2CO_3, AcOH/H_2O. iii) Zn/AcOH. iv) $CH(OEt)_3$-HCl/DMF.

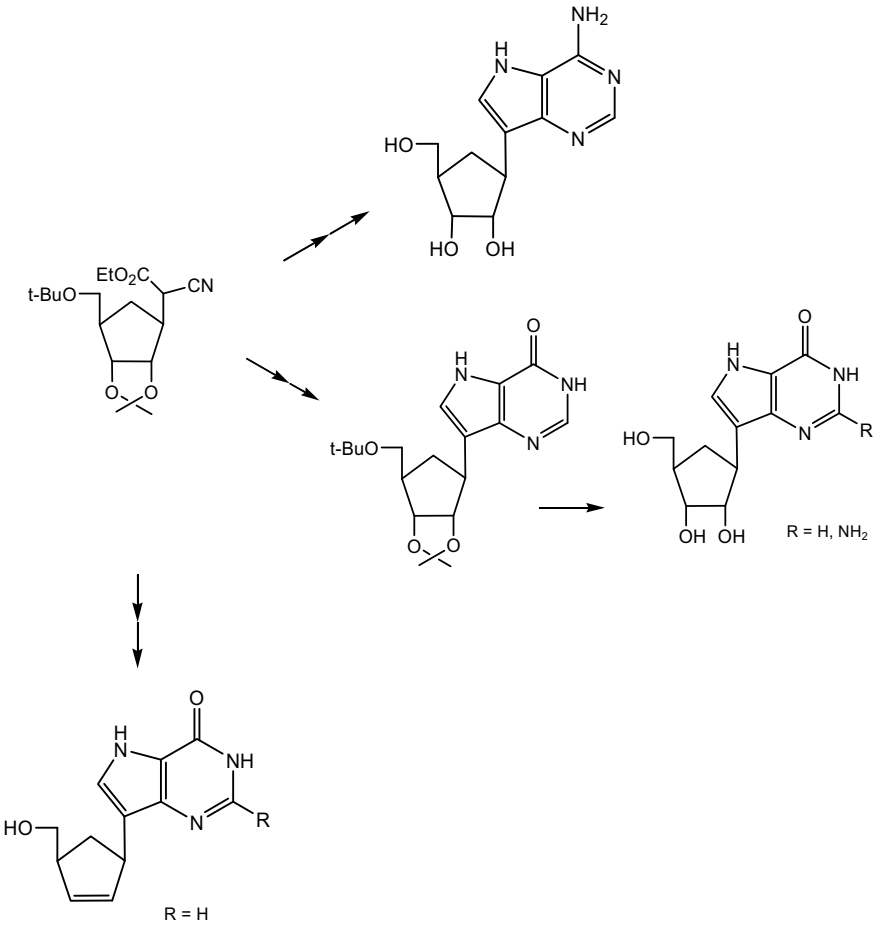
Scheme 4.75 Ring closure approach for preparation of carbocyclic purine

The effectiveness of acyclovir as antiviral drug encouraged different group to synthesize more potent acyclic analogs. As a result of this efforts, the acyclic nucleoside 9-[(1,3-Dihydroxy-2-prpoxy)methyl]guanine (DHPG) [129] was prepared and tested as antiviral nucleoside, showing similar potency as acyclovir against simple herpes but stronger against encefalitis and vaginitis herpes.

Various report of DHPG were described, one of them involving the use of hexamethyldisilylasane (HMDS) as condensing agent (Scheme 4.80) [124].

An alternative route for preparing DHPG involved the condensation reaction of acetylguanine base and triacetate derivative in the presence of ethanesulfonic acid, at temperatures ranging from 155 to 160 °C. As result two regioisomers were obtained from which one of those was converted to the desired antiviral compound Scheme 4.81 [124].

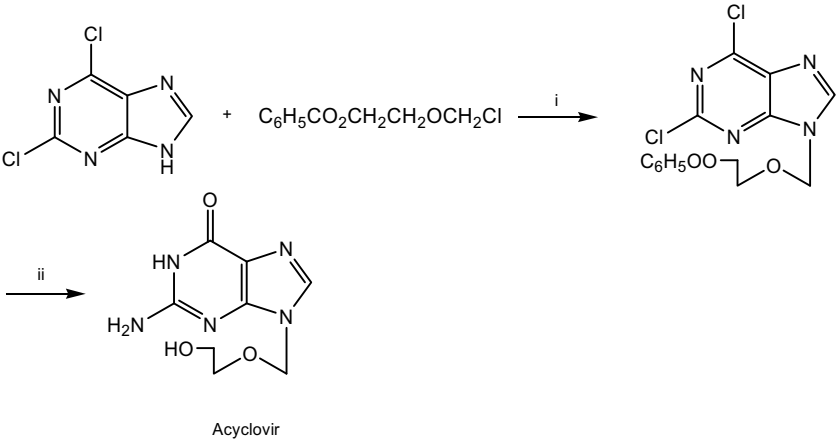
Acyclic nucleoside phosphonate emerged as powerful strategy in the treatment of different viral infections such as herpes simplex viruses type 1 and 2 (HSV-1 and HSV-2), human cytomegalovirus (HCMV), and human papillomavirus (HPV) among others. Preparation of cidofovir or (S)-HPMPC was conducted trityl protected (R)-glycidol with N-Benzoylcytosine, followed by reaction with diethyl tosyloxymethylphosphonate providing (S)-nucleotide ester, and deprotection step to yield (S)-HPMPC in 39% from starting materials, and its (R)-enantiomer in 2.4% (Scheme 4.82) [130].



Scheme 4.76 Stereocontrolled syntheses of carbocyclic 9-deazapurine nucleosides

Phosphonate acyclic nucleoside 9-(2-phosphonomethoxyethyl)adenine (PMEA or Adefovir) was founded as a good antiviral analogue with prolongated action [131]. A regio-defined synthesis base on the purine ring formation was described involving the initial attachment of the phosphonate amine intermediate by nucleophilic substitution to the 5-amino-4,6-dichoropyrimidine base, and then ring formation followed by amination to produce the desired phosphonate acyclic adenine PMEA (Scheme 4.83) [132].

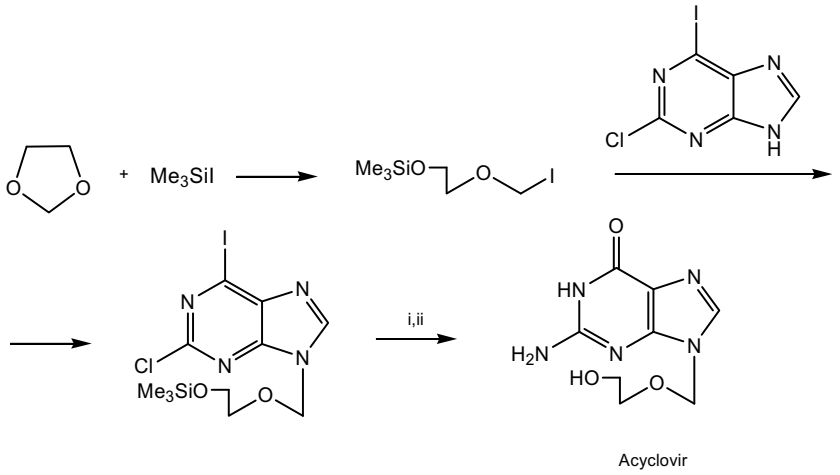
Tenofovir or PMPA is a front-line phosphonate acyclic nucleoside used mainly in HIV infections as treatment to decrease AIDS development, and in chronic hepatitis B disease. It is manufactured using the Clinton Health Access Initiative (CHAI) process and more recently through low-cost raw materials. The first method requires (R)-propylene carbonate and adenine as starting materials, while the



Acyclovir

i) Et_3N. ii) NH_3.

Scheme 4.77 First synthesis of acyclovir



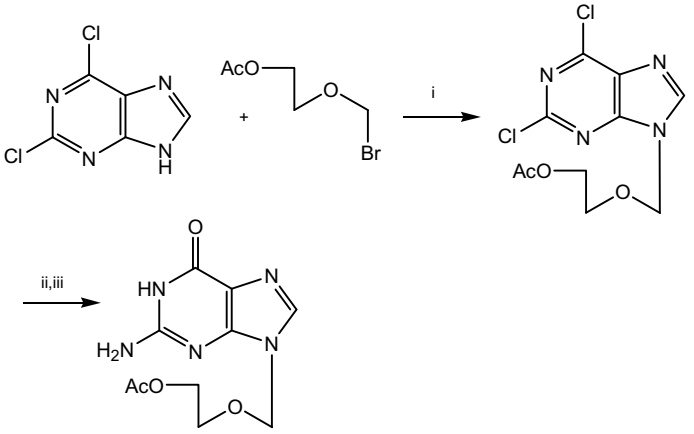
Acyclovir

i) K_2CO_3. ii) NH_3.

Scheme 4.78 Improved synthesis of acyclovir

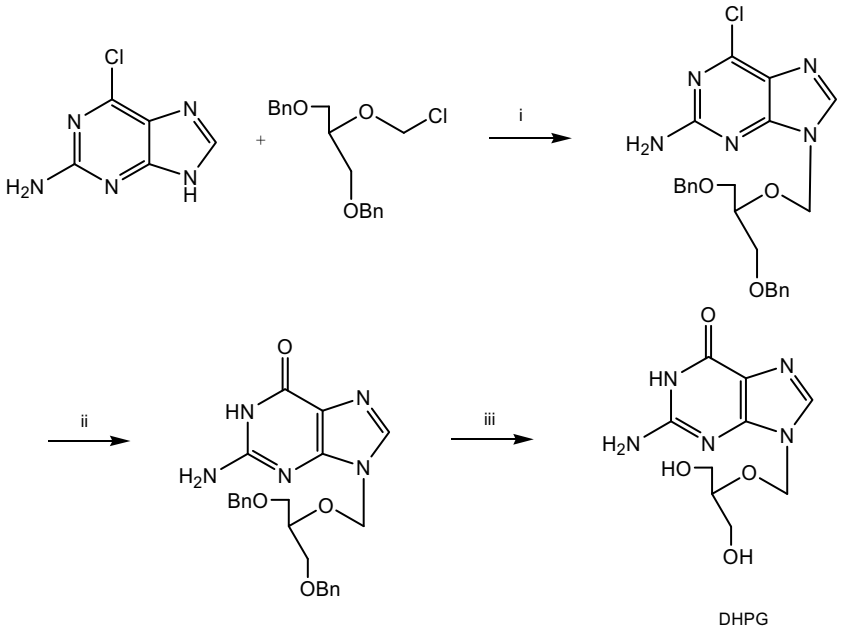
second uses diaminomaleonitrile converted to formimidate and condensed with (R)-1-aminopropan-2-ol to give after cyclization (R)-5-amino-1-(2-hydroxypropyl)-1H-imidazole-4-carbonitrile. Further adenine formation and phosphonate installation yields tenofovir according to the steps shown in Scheme 4.84 [133].

Long chain phosphonate acyclic nucleosides have been introduced as a strategy for improving membrane penetration and other pharmacokinetic properties, considering



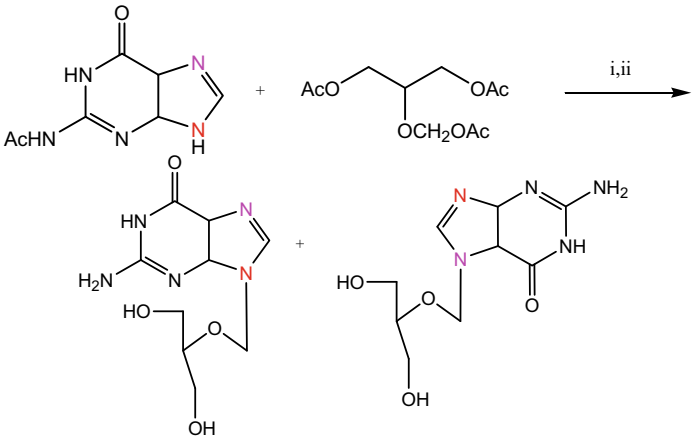
i) $Hg(CN)_2$-HMDS. ii) NH_3. iii) adenosin-deaminase.

Scheme 4.79 Acyclovir synthesis



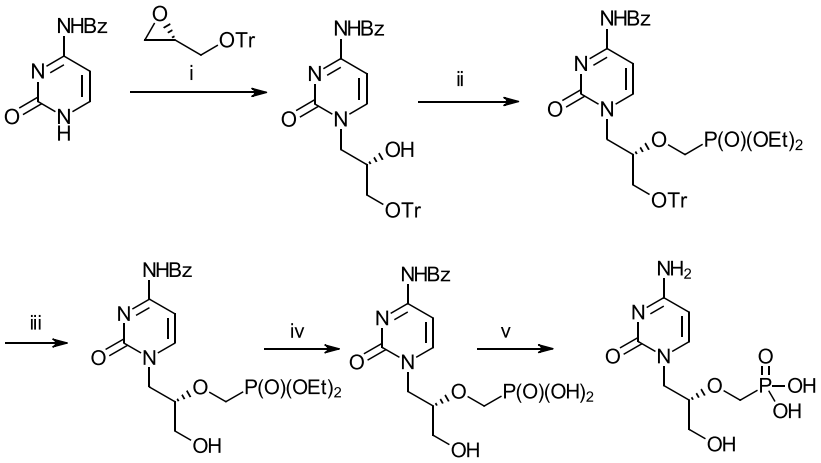
i) HMDS. ii) NaOMe, $HSCH_2CH_2OH$. iii) H_2, Pd-C

Scheme 4.80 Synthesis of antiviral acyclic nucleoside DHPG



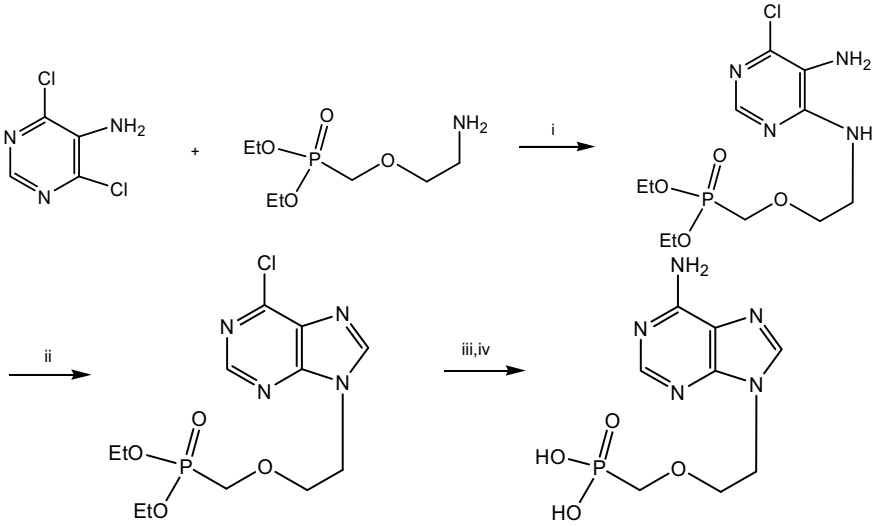
i) $EtSO_3H$, 155-160ºC. ii) MeONa/MeOH

Scheme 4.81 Alternative synthesis of DHPG

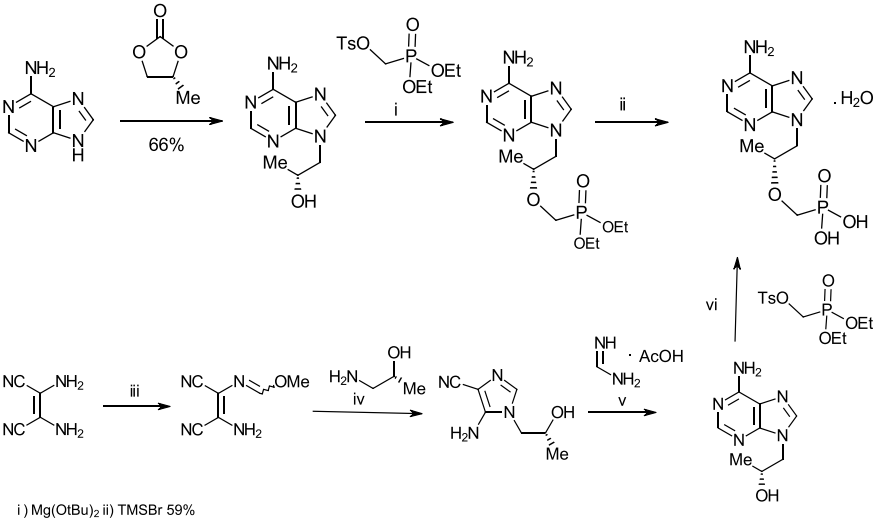


i) K_2CO_3, DMF, 72ºC, 5h or NaH, DMF, 105ºC, 5h (82%).
ii) $TsOCH_2P(O)(OEt)_2$. NaH (3 eq). DMF. O'C, 6 h (80%)
iii) HCl (g), CH_2C1_2, 0-5°C, 10 min (55%)
iv) TMSBr, CH_2C1_2, rt, 18 h. v) NH4OHconc, rt, 4 h (78%)

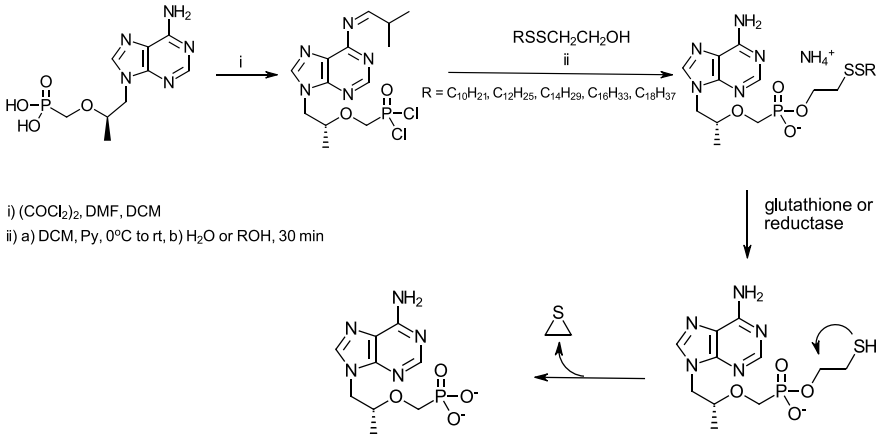
Scheme 4.82 Preparation of acyclic nucleoside phosphonate cidofovir or (S)-HPMPC



Scheme 4.83 Synthesis of phosphonate acyclic adenine PMEA



Scheme 4.84 Multigram preparation of anti HIV phosphonate acyclic nucleoside tenofovir



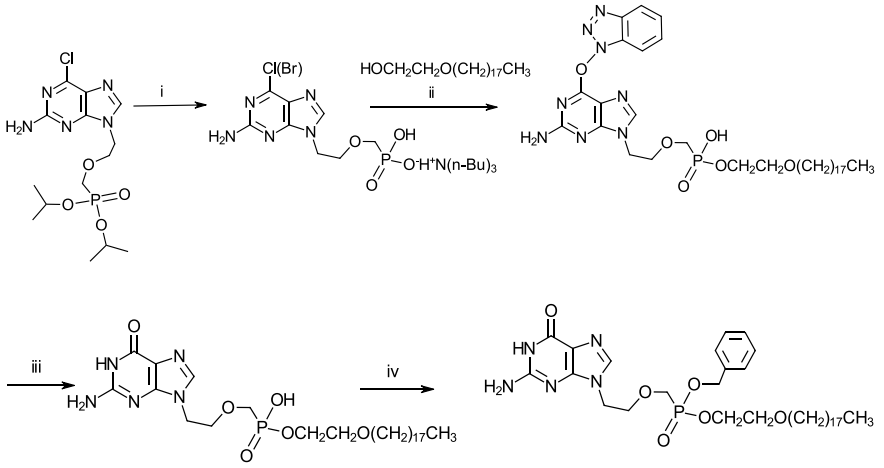
Scheme 4.85 Synthesis of lipid disulfide conjugates of tenofovir

that some important broad-spectrum antivirals present poor membrane absorption and bioavailability as limiting condition. To exemplify this approach the monoester disulfide of tenofovir was prepared as prodrug consisting in the attachment of a long chain, separated by a disulfide bond to the tenofovir nucleoside. The logic of this concept relies on the fact that disulfide bond will be reduced by glutathione or reductase, producing a thiol which after spontaneous thiirane formation will release the nucleoside in his active form (Scheme 4.85) [134].

Long chain alkoxyalkyl acyclic nucleoside phosphonate diesters were synthesized and evaluated as antiviral agents, resulting the octadecyloxyethyl benzyl 9-[(2-phosphonomethoxy)ethyl]guanine derivative as potent human papillomavirus (HPV) inhibitor with $EC_{50} = 0.18, 0.04, 0.10\ \mu M$ for HPV-11,16 and 18 genotypes respectively. The synthesis starts with diisopropyl 9-(2-phosphonomethoxy)ethyl]-2-amino-6-chloropurine transformed to a mixture of the 6-chloro and 6-bromo purine phosphonates and then esterified with 2-octadecyloxyethan-1-ol, followed by conversion to guanine nucleobase and final benzyl esterification, to furnish the target acyclic nucleoside prodrug (Scheme 4.86) [135].

4.5 Thionucleosides

Nucleosides having the sugar ring oxygen replaced by sulfur are known as thionucleosides. The synthesis and therapeutic evaluation mainly as antiviral and anticancer drugs of these nucleoside mimics has been reviewed [136]. A comparative analysis of thionucleosides and nucleosides showed that sulfur replacement in some cases produced equivalent or higher potency [9, 137], and do not undergo enzymatic cleavage of the glycosidic bond, although it has been also observed increased toxicity



i) a) bromotrimethylsilane, CH_3CN, b) H_2O, c) tributylamine, toluene, 85%
ii) PyBOP, DIEA, DMF, rt, 18 h, 31%
iii) 80% aq acetic acid, reflux, 5 h, 80%
iv) benzyl alcohol, PyBOP, DIEA, rt, 18 h, 58%

Scheme 4.86 Synthesis of alkoxyalkyl acyclic nucleoside phosphonate diesters as potent anti HPV

as in the case of β-4′-thiothymidine [138]. Some thionucleosides displaying antiviral and/or anticancer activity are shown in Scheme 4.87.

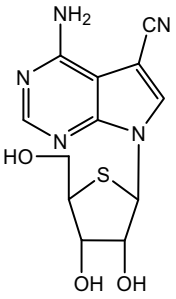
Based on their structural features N-thionucleosides defined also as thioribosyl sugars are classified into four groups (Scheme 4.88).

4.5.1 Preparation of Thioribofuranosyl Intermediates

A number of approaches oriented to replace or insert a sulfur atom instead or besides the cyclic oxygen into the ribose ring have been described. One of the earliest methods for preparing thioribosyl acetates was described by Reist et al. [139, 140] involving as key steps the conversion of the 4-thiobenzoyl pyranoside into the thioribofuranosyl acetate (Scheme 4.89).

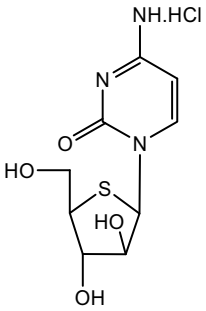
Short time later another report introduced the use of sodium in liquid ammonia followed by benzoylation to yield tribenzoylated thioribofuranoside as a mixture of anomers (α:β, 1:3) (Scheme 4.90) [141].

The thioribosyl derivative benzyl 3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-2-deoxy-1,4-dithio-D-*erythro*-pentofuranoside has been prepared and used as glycosyl donor in various thionucleoside synthesis [141–143]. The synthesis started from 2-deoxy ribose which was transformed to the methylbenzyl derivative by following a standard procedure and then treated with benzylmercaptan in acid to produce the dithiobenzylated derivative. Next, was to invert the hydroxyl group at 4-position by using the Mitsunobu protocol



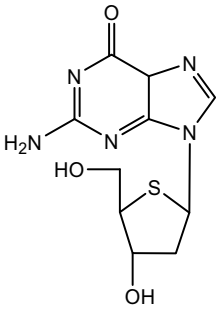
Thiotoyocamycin

Leukemia growth inhibitor



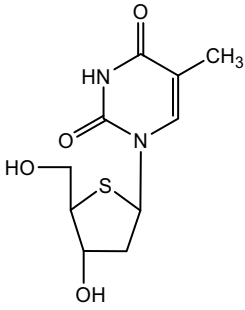
Thioarabinofuranosylcytosine

KB cell growth inhibitor



2'-Deoxy thioguanosine

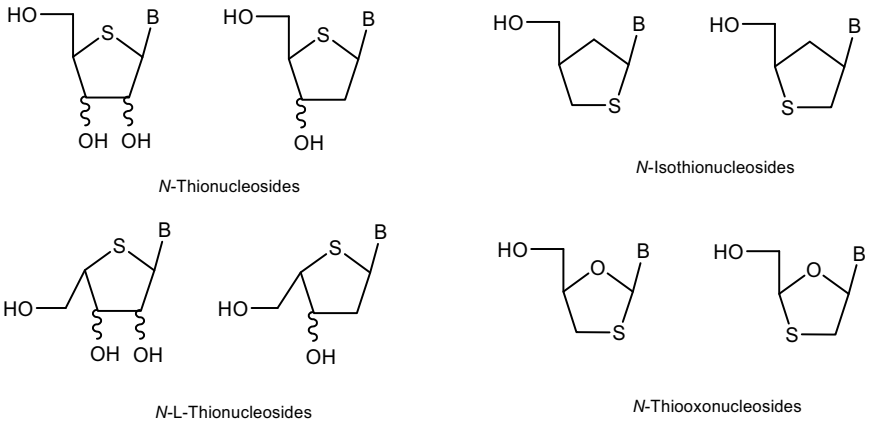
Antiviral against HBV and HCMV



Thiothymidine

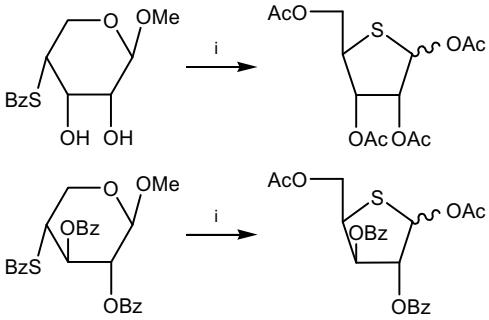
Carcinoma growth inhibitor

Scheme 4.87 Some active N-thionucleosides

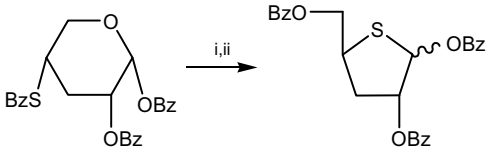


Scheme 4.88 Classification of N-thionucleosides

Scheme 4.89 Early synthesis of thioribofuranosyl derivatives



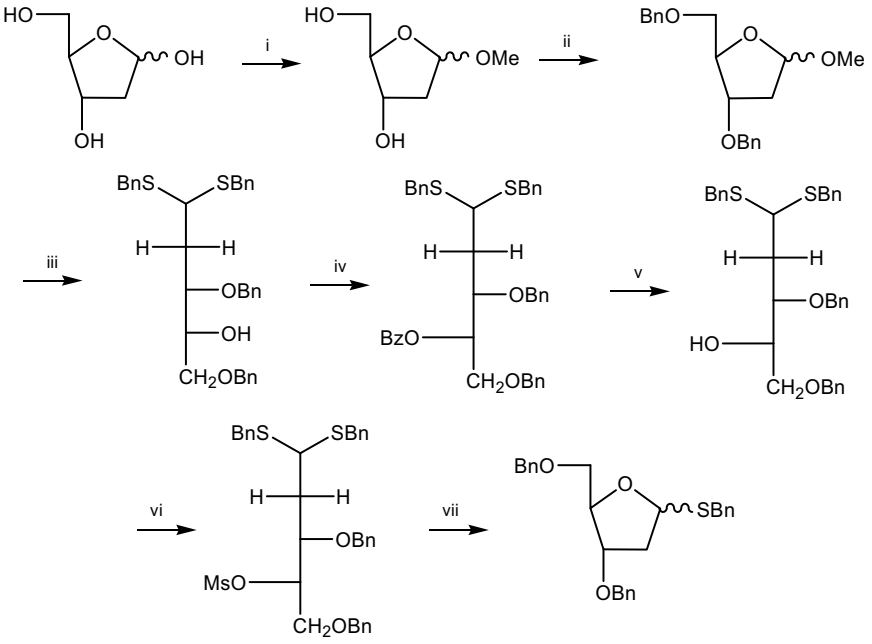
Scheme 4.90 Preparation of benzoylated thioribofuranoside



to generate the intermediate with the desired stereochemistry. Final tosyl protection and NaI-$BaCO_3$ treatment afforded the desired thiosugar (Scheme 4.91) [142].

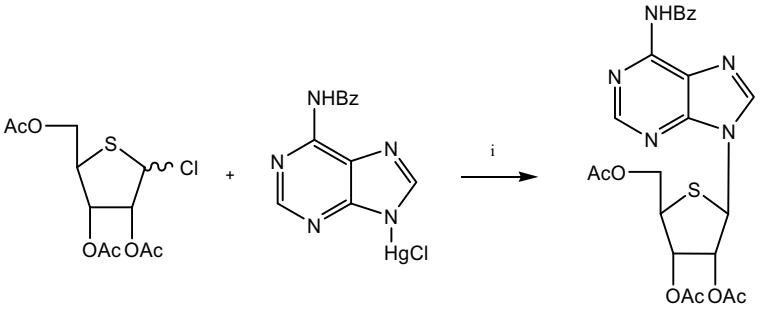
4.5.2 Glycosidic Bond Formation

The general methods for preparing N-thionucleosides are similar as for N-nucleosides, however variations from slight to significant can be found specially in the preparation of four ring thietanocin or thiolane analogs [143, 144]. Thus, according to a comprehensive review [136], the earliest reports for N-thionucleoside formation used chloromercury salt of purine and chlorine or benzoyl thioriboside as glycosyl donor, while more recently the silyl approach has been preferred (Scheme 4.92).



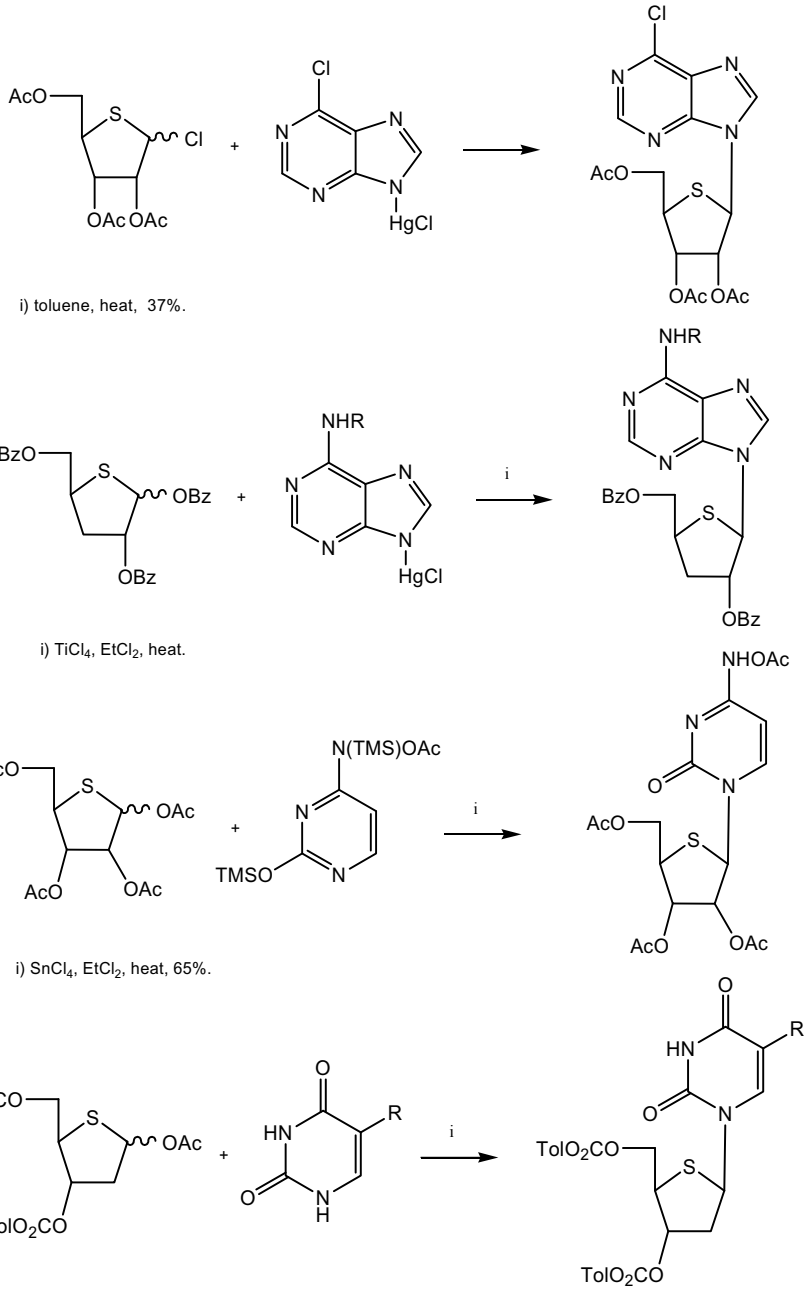
i) MeOH, HCl. ii) NaH, Bu_4NI, BnBr/THF. iii) BnSH, HCl. iv) PPh_3, $PhCO_2H$, DEAD/THF. v) NaOMe/MeOH. vi) MsCl/Py. vii) NaI, $BaCO_3$, acetone

Scheme 4.91 Synthesis of benzyl 3,5-di-*O*-benzyl-2-deoxy-1,4-dithio-D-*erythro*-pentofuranoside



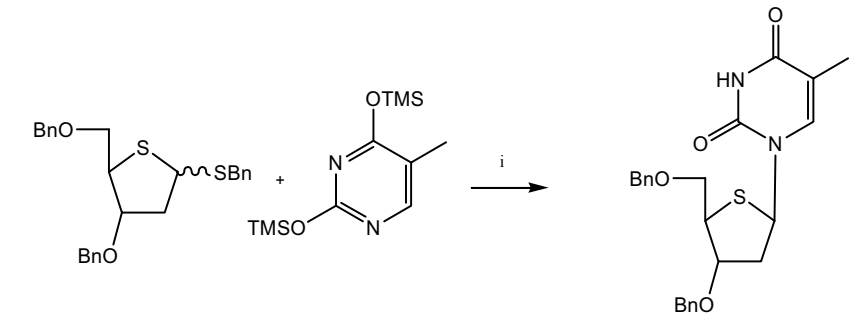
i) toluene

Scheme 4.92 Common glycosylation reactions for the preparation of thionucleosides [138, 145–148]

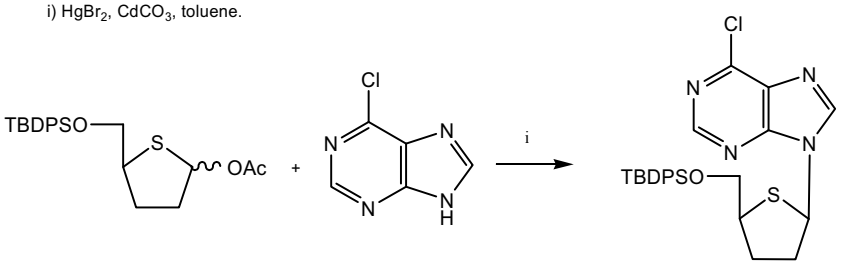


Scheme 4.92 (continued)

i) a) HMDS, TMSCl, MeCN. b) TfOTMS.



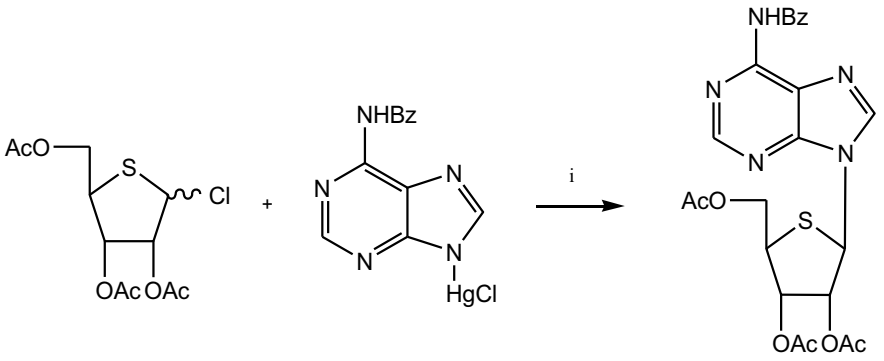
i) $HgBr_2$, $CdCO_3$, toluene.



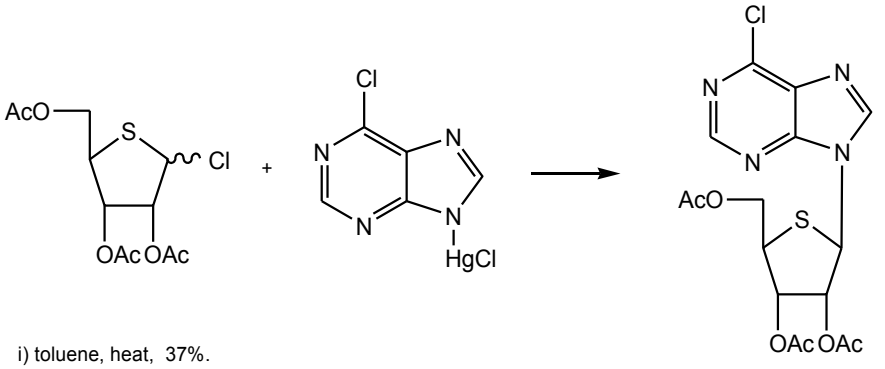
i) Et_3AlCl.

Scheme 4.92 (continued)

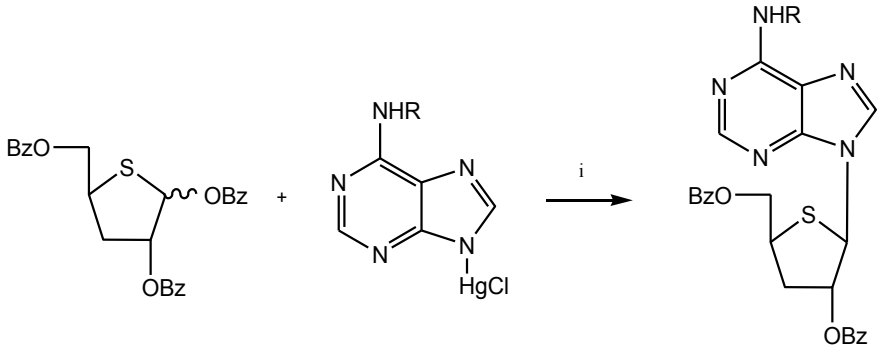
4.5.2.1 Chloromercuration Promoted Coupling Reactions



i) toluene



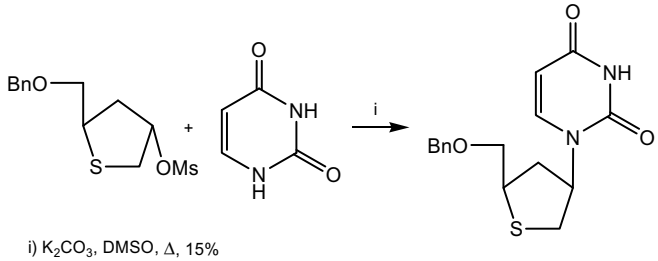
i) toluene, heat, 37%.



i) $TiCl_4$, $EtCl_2$, heat.

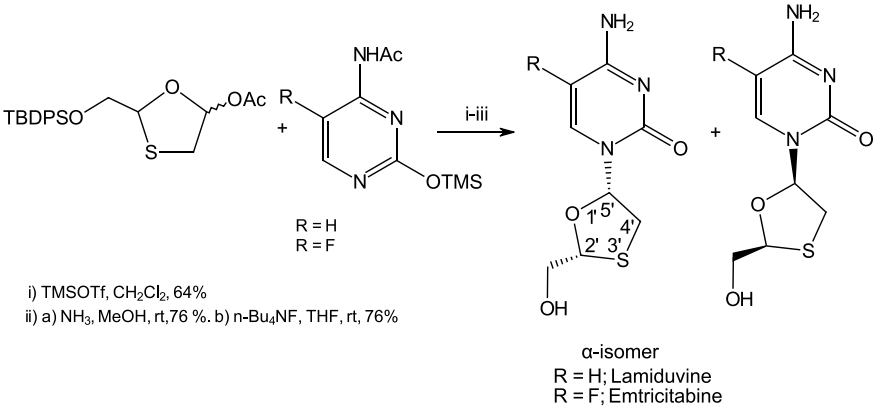
4.5.2.2 Silyl-Mediated Coupling Reactions [138, 145, 146]

The preparation of potential anti-HIV N-Isothionucleosides was described starting from glucose. The key coupling reaction proceed in low yield between the pyrimidine base and the mesyl tetrahydrothiophene derivative under potassium conditions (Scheme 4.93) [149].



i) K_2CO_3, DMSO, Δ, 15%

Scheme 4.93 Preparation of N-isothionucleoside



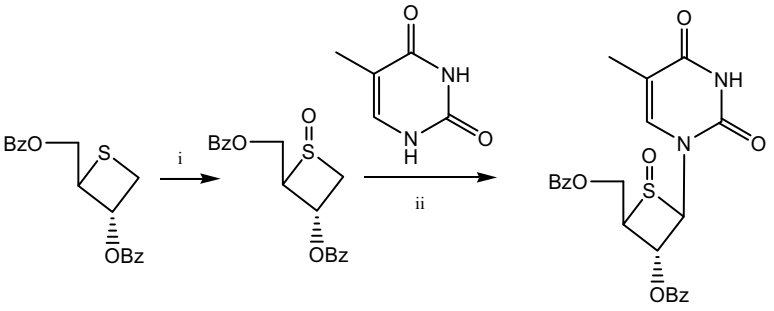
Scheme 4.94 Preparation of N-thioxonucleosides lamivudine and Emtricitabine

Lamivudine or 3TC and Emtricitabine or FTC are N-thioxonucleosides used in the front line as anti-HIV agents and to treat hepatitis B infection. The conditions employed for performing the coupling reaction were TMSOTf as Lewis acid catalyst, affording a mixture of anomers (α:β, 1:2), having the α-anomer absolute configuration 2′R,5′S-(−) in 64% yield of the racemate (Scheme 4.94) [150]. Efforts to improve the synthesis leading to the α-isomer has been proposed such as, the enzymatic resolution for preparing the 1,3-oxathiolane by using subtilisin Carlsberg (STS) providing enantiomeric purity of 45% ee [151]. Also synthetic approaches for preparation of oxathiolane ring intermediate used in the synthesis of lamivudine and emtricitabine were conducted using L-menthol, thioglycolic acid and vinylacetate producing N-thioxonucleosides in high chiral purity [152].

Thietane nucleoside was synthesized starting from the benzoyl thietane derivative which prior to the coupling reaction was treated with peroxide to produce the sulfoxide derivative. Then under Lewis acid conditions a Pummerer rearrangement process takes place to produce in the presence of thymine the expected thietane nucleoside (Scheme 4.95) [144].

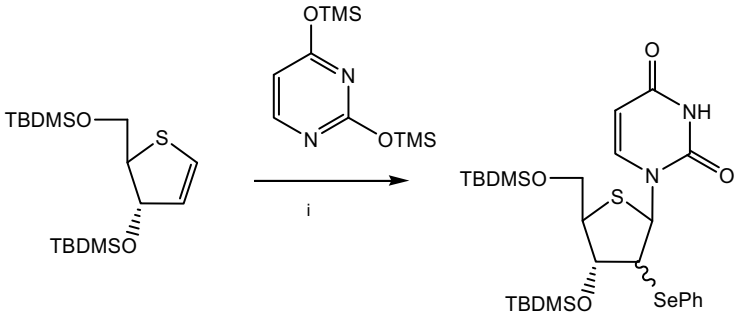
More recently the stereoselective synthesis β-4′-thionucleosides based on electrophilic glycosilation of 4-thiofuranoid glycals was described. Thus, the condensation of TBDMS-4-thioglycal with silylated uracil in the presence of PhSeCl as electrophile furnished thionucleosides in 88% as a mixture of anomers (α:β; 1:4) (Scheme 4.96) [153].

The concept of single drug molecule interacting with multiple enzymes was applied in diabetic mouse model to determine how A3 adenosine receptor (AR) ligands including A3 AR agonist and antagonist affects adiponectin production, closely related with insulin sensitivity. As a result, the synthesis of A3 AR agonist adenosine receptor (AR) N-alkyl-3-iodobenzyl amino purin tetrahydrothiophene-2-carboxamide and A3AR antagonist chloro iodobenzyl aminopurine tetrahydrothiophene derivatives were introduced. For the agonist derivatives the N-glycosylation



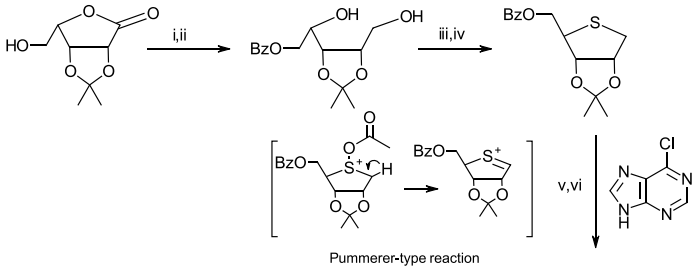
i) TMSOTf, Et_3N, ZnI_2, toluene, 30 %.

Scheme 4.95 Synthesis of thymidine thietane nucleoside

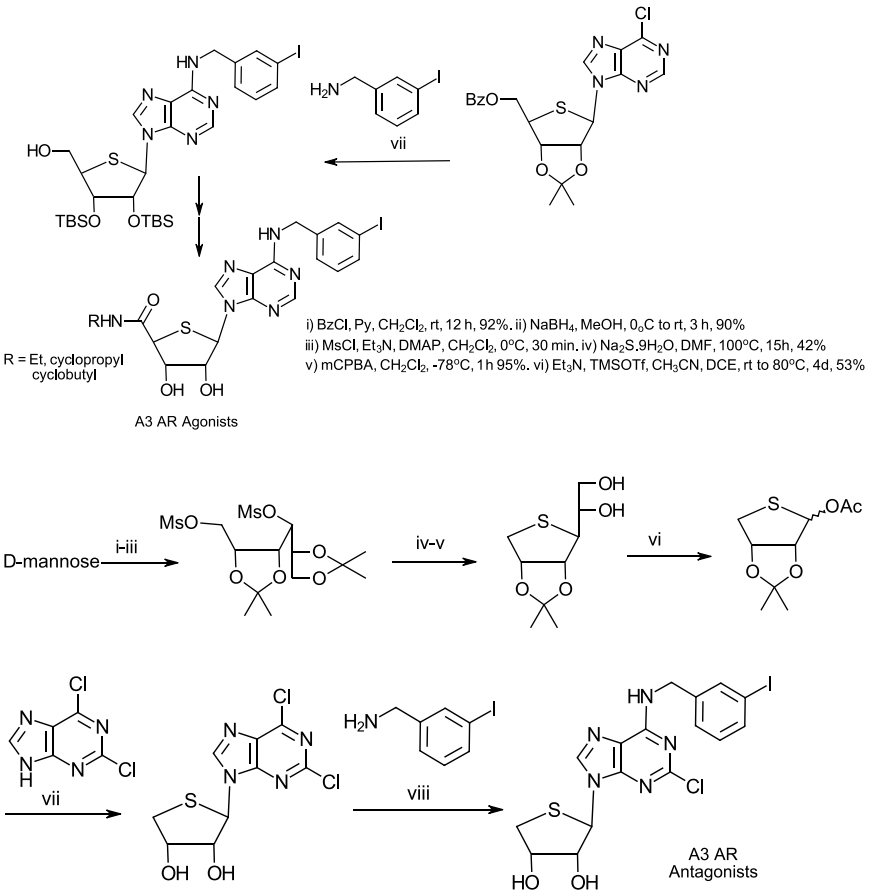


i) PhSeCl 88 %.

Scheme 4.96 Synthesis β-4′-thionucleosides based on electrophilic glycosidation of 4-thiofuranoid glycols



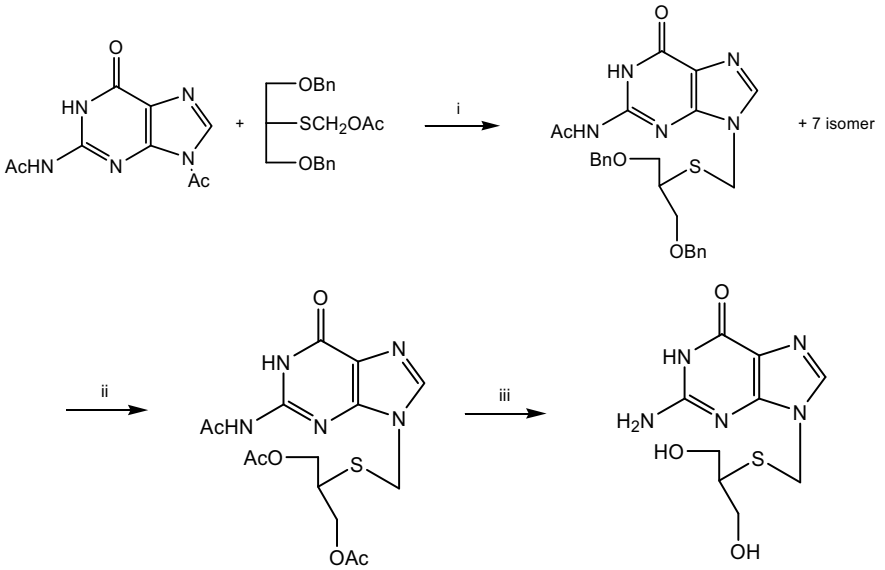
Scheme 4.97 N-glycosylation reaction of purine thioribosyl A3 AR agonist and antagonist adenosine receptor



Scheme 4.97 (continued)

between protected thioribosyl moiety and 6-chloropurine proceeds via Pummered-type reaction while for the antagonist silyl conditions as shown in Scheme 4.97 [154, 155].

The thio analog of antiviral DHPG with comparable activity to DHPG against HSV-1 and human cytomegalovirus was synthesized according to the scheme shown below (Scheme 4.98) [124].



i) $(p\text{-}NO_2C_6H_4)_2P(O)OH$. ii) $(C_2H_5)O\text{-}BF_3$, Ac_2O. iii) NH_3.

Scheme 4.98 Synthesis of thio analog of DHPG

References

1. Mitsuya H, Yarchoan R, Broder S (1990) Molecular targets for AIDS therapy. Science 249:1533–1544
2. Huryn DM, Okabe M (1992) AIDS-driven nucleoside chemistry. Chem Rev 92:1745–1768
3. Mitsuya H, Broder S (1986) Inhibition of the in vitro infectivity and cytopathic effect of human T-lymphotrophic virus type III/lymphadenopathy-associated virus (HTLV-III/LAV) by 2′,3′-dideoxynucleosides. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 83:1911–1915
4. Simons C (2001) Nucleoside mimetics: their chemistry and biological properties. Gordon and Breach Science Publishers, Amsterdam
5. Agrofolio LA, Guillaizeau I, Saito Y (2003) Palladium-assisted routes to nucleosides. Chem Rev 103:1875–1916
6. Crisp G, Flynn BL (1993) Palladium-catalyzed coupling of terminal alkynes with 5-(trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy) pyrimidine nucleosides. J Org Chem 58:6614–6619
7. Mansur TS, Evans CA, Charron M, Korba BE (1997) Discovery of imidazol[1,2-c]pyrimidin-5(6h)-one heterosubstituted nucleoside analogs with potent activity against human hepatitis-b virus in-vitro. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 7:303–308
8. Farina V, Hauck SI (1991) Palladium-catalyzed approach to 5-substituted uracil and uridine derivatives. Synlett 157–159
9. Rahim SG, Trivedi N, Bogunovic-Batchelor MV, Hardy GW, Mills G, Selway JW, Snowden W, Littler E, Coe PL, Basnak I, Whale RF, Walker RT (1996) Synthesis and anti-herpes virus activity of 2′-deoxy-4′-thiopyrimidine nucleosides. J Med Chem 39:789–795
10. (a) Heck RF (1968) Acylation, methylation, and carboxyalkylation of olefins by Group VIII metal derivatives. J Am Chem Soc 90:5518–5526. (b) Li JJ, Gribble GW (2000) Palladium in heterocyclic chemistry. Pergamon Press, New York

11. Hanamoto T, Kobayashi T, Kondo M (2001) Fluoride ion-assisted cross-coupling reactions of (alpha-fluorovinyl)diphenylmethylsilane with aryl iodides catalyzed by Pd(0)/Cu(I) systems. Synlett 2:281–283
12. Palmisano G, Santagostino M (1993) Base-modified pyrimidine nucleosides. Efficient entry to 6-derivatized uridines by Sn-Pd transmetallation-coupling process. Tetrahedron 49:2533–2542
13. Ahlqvist GP, McGeough CP, Senanayake C, Armstrong JD, Yadaw A, Roy S, Ahmad S, Snead DR, Jamison TF (2021) Progress toward a large-scale synthesis of molnupiravir (MK-4482, EIDD-2801) from cytidine. ACS Omega 6:10396–10402
14. Lister JH (1971) Fused pyrimidines Part II purines. In: Weissberger A, Taylor EC (eds) The chemistry of heterocyclic compounds, vol 24. Wiley
15. Shaw G (1984) Purines comprehensive heterocycle. Chemistry 5:499–605
16. Hocek M (2003) Syntheses of purines bearing carbon substituents in positions 2, 6 or 8 by metal- or organometal-mediated C−C bond-forming reactions. Eur J Org Chem 245–254
17. Nair V, Chamberlain SD (1985) Novel photoinduced carbon-carbon bond formation in purines. J Am Chem Soc 107:2183–2185
18. Nair V, Young D (1984) Synthetic transformations of transient purinyl radicals: formation of mono- and diarylated and heteroarylated nucleosides. J Org Chem 49:4340–4344
19. Tanji K, Higashino T (1990) Purines. IX. Reaction of 9-phenyl-9H-purine-2-carbonitriles with grignard reagents. Heterocycles 30:435–440
20. Vorbrügen H, Krolikiewicz K (1976) C-substitution of nucleosides with the aid of the Eschenmoser sulfide contraction. Angew Chem Int Ed 15:689–690
21. Taylor EC, Martin SF (1974) A general method of alkylation and alkenylation heterocycles. J Am Chem Soc 96:8095–8102
22. Mornet R, Leonard NJ, Theiler M, Doree M (1984) Specificity of the 1-methyladenine receptors in starfish oocytes: synthesis and properties of some 1,8-disubstituted adenines, 1,6-dimethyl-1H-purine, and of the 1-(azidobenzyl)adenines. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:879–885
23. McKenzie TC, Glass D (1987) The reaction of 6-halopurines with phenyl metal complexes. J Heterocycl Chem 24:1551–1553
24. Nguyen CD, Beaucourt L, Pichat L (1979) Modification de la position 8 des purines nucleosides et de l'adenosine monophosphate cyclique-3′,5′. Reactions de couplage catalytique des organo-magnesiens avec les bromo-8 purines ribosides et bromo-8 adenosine monophosphate cyclique-3′,5′ silyles en presence de dichloro-bis-triphenylphosphine palladium. Tetrahedron Lett 20:3159–3162
25. Hirota K, Kitade Y, Kanbe Y, Maki Y (1992) Convenient method for the synthesis of C-alkylated purine nucleosides(palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling reaction of halogenopurine nucleosides with trialkylaluminums). J Org Chem 57:5268–5270
26. Dvořáková H, Dvořák D, Holý (1996) A coupling of 6-chloropurines with organocuprates derived from grignard-reagents—a convenient route to sec and tert 6-alkylpurines. Tetrahedron Lett 37:1285–1288
27. Gundersen LL, Bakkestuen AK, Aasen AJ, Øveras H, Rise F (1994) 6-Halopurines in palladium-catalyzed coupling with organotin and organozinc reagents. Tetrahedron 50:9743–9756
28. Van Aerschot AA, Mamos P, Weyns NJ, Ikeda S, Clercq E, Herdewijn P (1993) Antiviral activity of C-alkylated purine nucleosides obtained by cross-coupling with tetraalkyltin reagents. J Med Chem 36:2938–2942
29. Vottori S, Camaioni E, Francesco Di, Volpini R, Monopoli A, Dionisotti S, Ongini E, Cristalli G (1996) 2-Alkenyl and 2-alkyl derivatives of adenosine and adenosine-5′-N-ethyluronamide: different affinity and selectivity of E- and Z-diastereomers at A2A adenosine receptors. J Med Chem 39:4211–4217
30. Takiguchi H, Higashi A, Watanabe T, Takeichi T, Shimazaki T, Inaba T (2021) Stereocontrolled synthesis of delgocitinib, a JAK inhibitor for the treatment of atopic dermatitis. Org Process Res Dev 25:342–348

31. Edstrom E, Wei Y (1995) A new synthetic route to.beta.-2′-Deoxyribosyl-5-substituted pyrrolo[2,3-d]pyrimidines. Synthesis of 2′-deoxycadeguomycin. J Org Chem 60:5069–5076
32. Hulpia F, Van Hecke K, Franca da Silva C, da Gama J Batista D, Maes L, Caljon G, Soeiro MN, Van Calenbergh S (2018) Discovery of novel 7-aryl 7-deazapurine 3′-deoxy-ribofuranosyl nucleosides with potent activity against *Trypanosoma cruzi*. J Med Chem 61:9287−9300
33. Tokarenko A, Lišková B, Smoleń S, Táborská N, Tichý M, Gurská S, Perlíková P, Frydrych I, Tloušťová E, Znojek P, Mertlíková-Kaiserová H, Poštová Slavětínská L, Pohl R, Klepetářová B, Khalid N-U-A, Wenren Y, Laposa RR, Džubák P, Hajdúch M, Hocek M (2017) Synthesis and cytostatic and antiviral profiling of thieno-fused 7-deazapurine ribonucleosides. J Med Chem 60(6):2411–2424
34. Sharif EU, Kalisiak J, Lawson KV, Miles DH, Newcomb E, Lindsey EA, Rosen BR, Debien LPP, Chen A, Zhao X, Young SW, Walker NP, Sträter N, Scaletti ER, Jin L, Xu G, Leleti MR, Powers JP (2021) Discovery of potent and selective methylenephosphonic acid CD73 inhibitors. J Med Chem 64(1):845–860
35. Balzarini J, Kang GJ, Dalal M, Herdeweijn P, De Clercq E, Broder S, Johns DG (1987) The anti-HTLV-III (anti-HIV) and cytotoxic activity of 2′,3′-didehydro-2′,3′-dideoxyribonucleosides: a comparison with their parental 2′,3′-dideoxyribonucleosides. Mol Pharmacol 32:162–167
36. Hamamoto Y, Nakashima H, Matsui T, Matsuda A, Ueda T, Yamamoto N (1997) Inhibitory effect of 2′,3′-didehydro-2′,3′-dideoxynucleosides on infectivity, cytopathic effects, and replication of human immunodeficiency virus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 31:907–910
37. Manchand PS, Belica PS, Holman MJ, Huang TN, Maehr H, Tam SYK, Yang T (1992) Syntheses of the anti-AIDS drug 2′,3′-dideoxycytidine from cytidine. J Org Chem 57:3473–3478
38. Robins MJ, Hansske F, Low NW, Park JI (1984) A mild conversion of vicinal diols to alkenes. Efficient transformation of ribonucleosides into 2′-ene and 2′,3′-dideoxynucleosides. Tetrahedron Lett 25:367–370
39. Lin T-S, Luo MZ, Liu M-C, Zhu Y-L, Gullen E, Dutschman EG, Cheng Y-C (1996) Design and synthesis of 2′,3′-dideoxy-2′,3′-didehydro-beta-L-cytidine (beta-L-d4C) and 2′,3′-dideoxy 2′,3′-didehydro-beta-L-5-fluorocytidine (beta-L-Fd4C), two exceptionally potent inhibitors of human hepatitis B virus (HBV) and potent inhibitors of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) in vitro. J Med Chem 39:1757–1759
40. Corey EJ, Winter RAE (1963) A new, stereospecific olefin synthesis from 1,2-diols. J Am Chem Soc 85:2677–2678
41. Dudycz LW (1989) Synthesis of 2′,3′-dideoxyuridine via the Corey-Winter reaction. Nucleosides Nucleotides 8:35–41
42. Corey EJ, Hopkins PB (1982) A mild procedure for the conversion of 1,2-diols to olefins. Tetrahedron Lett 23:1979–1982
43. Mansuri MM, Starrett JE, Wos JA, Tortolani DR, Brodfuerhrer PR, Howell HG, Martin JC (1989) Preparation of 1-(2,3-dideoxy-.beta.-D-glycero-pent-2-enofuranosyl)thymine (d4T) and 2′,3′-dideoxyadenosine (ddA): general methods for the synthesis of 2′,3′-olefinic and 2′,3′-dideoxy nucleoside analogs active against HIV. J Org Chem 54:4780–4785
44. Shiragami H, Irie Y, Yokozeki H, Yasuda N (1988) Synthesis of 2′,3′-dideoxyuridine via deoxygenation of 2′,3′-O-(methoxymethylene)uridine. J Org Chem 53:5170–5173
45. Rosowsky A, Solan VC, Sodroski JG, Ruprecht RM (1989) Synthesis of the 2-chloro analogs of 3′-deoxyadenosine, 2′,3′-dideoxyadenosine, and 2′,3′-didehydro-2′,3′-dideoxyadenosine as potential antiviral agents. J Med Chem 32:1135–1140
46. Kim CH, Marquez VE, Broder S, Mitsuya H, Driscoll JS (1987) Potential anti-AIDS drugs. 2′,3′-Dideoxycytidine analogs. J Med Chem 30:862–866
47. Barton DHR, Jang DO, Jaszberenyi JC (1991) Towards dideoxynucleosides: the silicon approach. Tetrahedron Lett 32:2569–2572
48. Chu C, Bhadti UT, Doboszowski B, Gu ZP, Kosugi Y, Pullaiah KC, Van Roey P (1989) General syntheses of 2′,3′-dideoxynucleosides and 2′,3′-didehydro-2′,3′-dideoxynucleosides. J Org Chem 54:2217–2225

49. Fleet GWJ, Son JC, Derome AE (1988) Tetrahedron, methyl 5-0-tert-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-deoxy-α β-d-threo-pentofuranoside as a divergent intermediate for the synthesis of 3′-substituted-2′,3′-dideoxynucleosides: synthesis of 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine, 3′-deoxy-3′-fluorothymidine and 3′-cyano-3′-deoxythymidine. Tetrahedron 44:625–636
50. Zhou W, Gumina G, Chong Y, Wang J, Schinazi RF, Chu CK (2004) Synthesis, structure−activity relationships, and drug resistance of β-d-3′-fluoro-2′,3′-unsaturated nucleosides as anti-HIV agents. J Med Chem 47:3399–3408
51. Hansske F, Robins MJ (1983) Nucleic acid related compounds. 45. A deoxygenative [1,2]-hydride shift rearrangement converting cyclic cis-diol monotosylates to inverted secondary alcohols. J Am Chem Soc 105:6736–6737
52. Motawia MS, Wendel J, Abdel-Megid AES, Pedersen EB (1989) A convenient route to 3′-amino-3′-deoxythymidine. Synthesis 384–387
53. Svansson L, Kvarnström I, Classon B, Samuelson B (1991) Synthesis of 2′,3′-dideoxy-3′-C-hydroxymethyl nucleosides as potential inhibitors of HIV. J Org Chem 56:2993–2997
54. Okabe M, Sun RC, Tam SYK, Todaro LJ, Coffen DL (1988) Synthesis of the dideoxynucleosides "ddC" and "CNT" from glutamic acid, ribonolactone, and pyrimidine bases. J Org Chem 53:4780–4786
55. Chu CK, Beach JW, Ullas GV, Kosugi Y (1988) An efficient total synthesis of 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine (AZT) and 3′-azido-2′,3′-dideoxyuridine (AZDDU, CS-87) from D-mannitol. Tetrahedron Lett 29:5349–5352
56. Lavallée JF, Just G (1991) Asymmetric synthesis of 3′-carbomethoxymethyl 3′-deoxythymidine via radical cyclization. Tetrahedron Lett 32:3469–3472
57. Horwitz JP, Chua J, Noel M (1964) Nucleosides. V. The monomesylates of 1-(2′-deoxy-β-D-lyxofuranosyl)thymine. J Org Chem 29:2076–2078
58. Rideout JL, Barry DW, Lehman SN, St. Clair MH, Furman PA, Freeman GA (1987) 3,608,606. E.P. Chem Abst 106:P38480b
59. Zaitseva VE, Dyatkina NB, Krayavskii AA, Skaptsova NV, Turina OV, Gnuchev NV, Gottikh BP, Azhaev AV (1984) Aminonucleosides and their derivatives. Bioorg Khim 10:670–680
60. Wilson JD, Almond MR, Rideout JL (1989) E.P. 295, 090. Chem Abst 111:P23914a
61. Jung ME, Gardiner JM (1991) Synthetic approaches to 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine and other modified nucleosides. J Org Chem 113:2614–2615
62. Hager MW, Liotta DC (1991) Cyclization protocols for controlling the glycosidic stereochemistry of nucleosides. Application to the synthesis of the antiviral agent 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine (AZT). J Am Chem Soc 113:5117–5119
63. Freeman GA, Shauer SR, Rideout JL, Short SA (1995) 2-Amino-9-(3-azido-2,3-dideoxy-β-d-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-6-substituted-9H-purines: synthesis and anti-HIV activity. Bioorg Med Chem 3:447–458
64. Barai VN, Zinchenko AI, Eroshevskaya LA, Zhernosek EVBalzarini J, De Clercq E, Mikhailopulo IA (2003) Chemo-enzymatic synthesis of 3-deoxy-β-D-ribofuranosyl purines and study of their biological properties. Nucleosides Nucleotides Nucleic Acids 22:751–753
65. Izawa K, Takamatsu S, Katayama S, Hirose N, Kosai S, Maruyama T (2003) An industrial process for synthesizing lodenosine (FddA). Nucleosides Nucleotides Nucleic Acids 22:507–517
66. Haraguchi K, Takeda S, Tanaka H (2003) Ring opening of 4′,5′-epoxynucleosides: a novel stereoselective entry to 4′-C-branched nucleosides. Org Lett 5:1399–1402
67. Ohrui H, Kohgo S, Kitano K, Sakata S, Kodama E, Yoshimura K, Matsuoka M, Shigeta S, Mitsuya H (2000) Syntheses of 4′-C-ethynyl-β-d-arabino- and 4′-C-ethynyl-2′-deoxy-β-d-ribo-pentofuranosylpyrimidines and -purines and evaluation of their anti-HIV activity. J Med Chem 43:4516–4525
68. Kondo T, Ohgi T, Goto T (1983) Synthesis of Q base (queuine). Chem Lett 419–422
69. Akimoto H, Imamiya E, Hitaka T, Nomura H (1988) Synthesis of queuine, the base of naturally occurring hypermodified nucleoside (queuosine), and its analogues. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:1637–1644
70. Barnett CJ, Grubb LM (2000) Total synthesis of Q base (queuine). Tetrahedron 56:9221–9225

71. Thumbs P, Ensfelder TT, Hillmeier M, Wagner M, Heiss M, Scheel C, Schön A, Müller M, Michalakis S, Kellner S, Carell T (2020) Synthesis of galactosyl-queuosine and distribution of hypermodified Q-nucleosides in mouse tissues. Angew Chem Int Ed 59:12352–12356
72. Knapp S, Nandan SR (1994) Synthesis of capuramycin. J Org Chem 59:281–283
73. Kurosu M, Li K, Crick DC (2009) Concise synthesis of capuramycin. Org Lett 11:2393–2396
74. Mitachi K, Kansal RG, Hevener KE, Gillman CD, Hussain SM, Yun HG, Miranda-Carboni GA, Glazer ES, Clemons Jr WM, Kurosu M (2020) DPAGT1 inhibitors of capuramycin analogues and their antimigratory activities of solid tumors. J Med Chem 63(19):10855–10878
75. Hotoda H, Daigo M, Takatsu T, Muramatsu A, Kaneko M (2000) Novel intramolecular radical Ar-C glycosylation-lactonization reaction in the transformation of capuramycin. Heterocycles 52:133–136
76. Myers AG, Gin DY, Rogers DH (1994) Synthetic studies of the tunicamycin antibiotics. Preparation of (+)-tunicaminyluracil, (+)-tunicamycin-v, and 5′-epi-tunicamycin-V. J Am Chem Soc 116:4697–4718
77. Li J, Yu B (2015) A modular approach to the total synthesis of tunicamycins. Angew Chem Int Ed 54:6618–6621
78. McGwigan C, Barucki H, Blewett S, Caragio A, Erichsen, G. Andrei G, R. Snoock R, De Clercq E, Balzarini J (2000) Highly potent and selective inhibition of varicella-zoster virus by bicyclic furopyrimidine nucleosides bearing an aryl side chain. J Med Chem 43:4993–4997
79. Porcari AR, Towsend LB (2004) An improved total synthesis of triciribine: a tricyclic nucleoside with antineoplastic and antiviral properties nucleosides. Nucleotides Nucleic Acids 23:31–39
80. Hannesian S, Pernet AG (1976) Synthesis of naturally occurring C-nucleosides, their analogs, and functionalized C-glycosyl precursors. Adv Carbohydr Chem Biochem 33:111–188
81. De las Heras F, Tam SY, Klein RS, Fox JJ (1976) Nucleosides. XCIV. Synthesis of some C-nucleosides by 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions to 3-(ribofuranosyl) propiolates J Org Chem 41:84–90
82. Bobek M, Farkas J, Sorm F (1969) Nucleic acid components and their analogues. CXXIV. Synthesis of 5-β-D-ribofuranosyl-6-azauracil (6-azapseudouridine). Collec Czech Chem Commun 34:1690–1695
83. Asbun WA, Binkley SB (1968) Synthesis of 5-substituted pyrimidines. II. J Org Chem 33:140–142
84. Wang G, Wan J, Hu Y, Wu X, Prhavc M, Dyatkina N, Rajwanshi VK, Smith DB, Jekle A, Kinkade A, Symons JA, Jin Z, Deval J, Zhang Q, Tam Y, Chanda S, Blatt L, Beigelman L (2016) Synthesis and anti-influenza activity of pyridine, pyridazine, and pyrimidine C-nucleosides as favipiravir (T-705) analogues. J Med Chem 59:4611–4624
85. Cho A, Saunders OL, Butler T, Zhang L, Xu J, Vela JE, Feng JY, Ray AS, Kim CU (2012) Synthesis and antiviral activity of a series of 10-substituted 4-aza-7,9-dideazaadenosine C-nucleosides. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 22:2705–2707
86. Siegel D, Hui HC, Doerffler E, Clarke MO, Chun K, Zhang L, Neville S, Carra E, Lew W, Ross B, Wang Q, Wolfe L, Jordan R, Soloveva V, Knox J, Perry J, Perron M, Stray KM, Barauskas O, Feng JY, Xu Y, Lee G, Rheingold AL, Ray AS, Bannister R, Strickley R, Swaminathan S, Lee WA, Bavari S, Cihlar T, Lo MK, Warren TK, Mackman RL (2017) Discovery and synthesis of a phospho ramidate prodrug of a pyrrolo[2,1-f][triazin-4-amino] adenine C-nucleoside (GS-5734) for the treatment of Ebola and emerging viruses. J Med Chem 60:1648−1661
87. Sriswastava PC, Pickering MV, Allen LB, Streeter DG, Campbell MT, Witkowski JT, Sidwell RW, Robins RK (1977) Synthesis and antiviral activity of certain thiazole C-nucleosides. J Med Chem 20:256–262
88. Ramasamy KS, Bandaru R, Averett D (2000) A new synthetic methodology for tiazofurin. J Org Chem 65:5849–5851
89. Trummlitz G, Moffat JG (1973) C-Glycosyl nucleosides. III. Facile synthesis of the nucleoside antibiotic showdomycin. J Org Chem 38:1841–1845
90. Von Krosigk U, Benner SA (2004) Expanding the genetic alphabet: pyrazine nucleosides that support a donor[bond]donor[bond]acceptor hydrogen-bonding pattern. Helv Chim Acta 87:1299–1324

91. Zhang HC, Daves GD Jr (1992) Syntheses of 2′-deoxypseudouridine, 2′-deoxyformycin B, and 2′,3′-dideoxyformycin B by palladium-mediated glycal-aglycon coupling. J Org Chem 57:4690–4696
92. Kim G, Kim HS (2000) C-Glycosylation via radical cyclization: synthetic application to a new C-glycoside. Tetrahedron Lett 41:225–227
93. Chen JJ, Drach JC, Towsend LB (2003) Convergent synthesis of polyhalogenated quinoline C-nucleosides as potential antiviral agents. J Org Chem 68:4170–4178
94. Hannessian S, Marcotte S, Machaalani S, Huang G (2003) Total synthesis and structural confirmation of malayamycin a: a novel bicyclic C-nucleoside from *Streptomyces malaysiensis*. Org Lett 5:4277–4280
95. Yokamatsu T, Salto M, Abe H, Suemune K, Matsumoto K, Kihara T, Soeda S, Shimeno H, Shibuya S (1997) Synthesis of (2′S,3′S)-9-(4′-phosphono-4′,4′-difluoro-2′,3′-methanobutyl)guanine and its enantiomer. Evaluation of the inhibitory activity for purine nucleoside phosphorylase. Tetrahedron 53:11297–11306
96. Katagiri N, Morishita Y, Yamaguchi M (1998) Highly regio- and enantio-selective deacylation of carbocyclic 3′,5′-di-O-acyloxetanocins by lipases. Tetrahedron Lett 39:2613–2616
97. Deardorff DR, Mattews AJ, McKeenin DS, Craney CL (1986) A highly enantioselective hydrolysis of cis-3,5-diacetoxycyclopent-1-ene.: An enzymatic preparation of 3(R)-acetoxy-5(S)-hydroxycyclopent-1-ene. Tetrahedron Lett 27:1255–1256
98. Deardorff DR, Shambayati S, Myles DC, Heerding D (1988) Studies on the synthesis of (–)-neplanocin A. Homochiral preparation of a key cyclopentanoid intermediate. J Org Chem 53:3614–3615
99. Deardorff DR, Savin KA, Justman CJ, Karanjawala ZE, Sheppeck JEII, Hager DC, Aydin N (1996) Conversion of allylic alcohols into allylic nitromethyl compounds via a palladium-catalyzed solvolysis: an enantioselective synthesis of an advanced carbocyclic nucleoside precursor1. J Org Chem 61:3616–3622
100. Herdewijn P, Balzarini J, De Clercq E, Vanderhaeghe H (1985) Resolution of aristeromycin enantiomers. J Chem Med 28:1385–1386
101. Tenney DJ, Yamanaka G, Voss SW, Cianci CW, Tuomari AV, Sheaffer AK, Alamn M, Colonno RJ (1997) Lobucavir is phosphorylated in human cytomegalovirus-infected and -uninfected cells and inhibits the viral DNA polymerase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 41:2680–2685
102. Barton DHR, Ramesh M (1990) Tandem nucleophilic and radical chemistry in the replacement of the hydroxyl group by a carbon–carbon bond. A concise synthesis of showdomycin. J Am Chem Soc 112:891–892
103. Kitagawa M, Hasegawa S, Saito S, Shimada N, Takita T (1991) Synthesis and antiviral activity of oxetanocin derivatives. Tetrahedron Lett 32:3531–3534
104. Honjo M, Maruyama T, Sato Y, Horii T (1989) Synthesis of the carbocyclic analogue of oxetanocin A. Chem Pharm Bull 37:1413–1415
105. Bisacchi GS, Braitman A, Cianci CW, Clark JM, Field AK, Hagen ME, Hockstein DR, Malley MF, Mitt T, Slusarchyk WA, Sundeen JE, Terry BJ, Tuomari AV, Weaver ER, Young MG, Zahler R (1991) Synthesis and antiviral activity of enantiomeric forms of cyclobutyl nucleoside analogs. J Med Chem 34:1415–1421
106. Ohnishi Y, Ichikawa Y (2002) Stereoselective synthesis of a C-glycoside analogue of N-Fmoc-serine β-N-acetylglucosaminide by Ramberg–Bäcklund rearrangement. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 12:997–999
107. Russ P, Schelling P, Scapozza L, Folkers G, De Clercq E, Marquez VE (2003) Synthesis and biological evaluation of 5-substituted derivatives of the potent antiherpes agent (north)-methanocarbathymine. J Med Chem 46:5045–5054
108. Ludek OR, Meier C (2003) Synthesis of carbocyclic analogues of thymidine nucleosides. Nucleotides Nucleic Acids 22:683–685
109. Zhang HC, Daves GD Jr (1993) Enantio- and diastereoisomers of 2,4-dimethoxy-5-(2,3-dideoxy-5-O-tritylribofuranosyl)pyrimidine. 2′,3′-dideoxy pyrimidine C-nucleosides by palladium-mediated glycal-aglycon coupling. J Org Chem 58:2557–2560

110. Crimmins MT, Zuercher WJ (2000) Solid-phase synthesis of carbocyclic nucleosides. Org Lett 2:1065–1067
111. Obara T, Shuto S, Saito Y, Snoeck R, Andrei G, Balzarini J, De Clercq E, Matsuda A (1996) New neplanocin analogues. 7. Synthesis and Antiviral activity of 2-halo derivatives of neplanocin A. J Med Chem 39:3847–3892
112. Saville-Stones EA, Lindell SD, Jennings NS, Head JC, Ford MJ (1991) Synthesis of (±)-2′,3′-didehydro-2′,3′-dideoxy nucleosides via a modified Prins reaction and palladium(0) catalysed coupling. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:2603–2604
113. Gundersen LL, Benneche T, Undheim K (1992) Pd(0)-catalyzed allylic alkylation in the synthesis of (±)carbovir. Tetrahedron Lett 33:1085–1088
114. Jeong LS, Park JG, Choi WJ, Moon HR, Lee KM, Kim HO, Kim HD, Chun MW, Park HY, Kim K, Sheng YY (2003) Synthesis of halogenated 9-(dihydroxycyclopent-4′-enyl) adenines and their inhibitory activities against S-adenosylhomocysteine hydrolase nucleosides. Nucleotides Nucleic Acids 22:919–921
115. Kim G, Yoon J-s, Jarhad DB, Shin YS, Majik MS, Mulamoottil VA, Hou X, Qu S, Park J, Baik M-H, Jeong LS (2017) Asymmetric synthesis of (−)-6′-β-fluoro-aristeromycin via stereoselective electrophilic fluorination. Org Lett 19:5732−5735
116. Alexandre F-R, Rahali R, Rahali H, Guillon S, Convard T, Fillgrove K, Lai M-T, Meillon J-C, Xu M, Small J, Dousson CB, Raheem IT (2018) Synthesis and antiviral evaluation of carbocyclic nucleoside analogs of nucleoside reverse transcriptase translocation inhibitor MK-8591 (4′-Ethynyl-2-fluoro-2′-deoxyadenosine). J Med Chem 61(20):9218–9228
117. Foster RH, Faulds D (1998) Abacavir Drugs 55:729–736
118. Crimmins MT, King BW (1996) An efficient asymmetric approach to carbocyclic nucleosides: asymmetric synthesis of 1592U89, a potent inhibitor of HIV reverse transcriptase. J Org Chem 61:4192–4193
119. Taylor SJC, Sutherland AG, Lee C, Wisdom R, Thomas S, Roberts SM, Evans C (1990) Chemoenzymatic synthesis of (–)-carbovir utilizing a whole cell catalysed resolution of 2-azabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-en-3-one. J Chem Soc Chem Commun 1120–1121
120. Lim MI, Marquez VE (1983) Total synthesis of (−)-neplanocin A. Tetrahedron Lett 24:5559–5562
121. Marquez VE, Lim MI, Treanor SP, Plowman J, Priest MA, Markovac A, Khan MS, Kaskar B, Driscoll JS (1988) Cyclopentenylcytosine. A carbocyclic nucleoside with antitumor and antiviral properties. J Med Chem 31:1687–1694
122. Shearly YF, O'Dell CA, Amett G (1987) Synthesis and antiviral evaluation of carbocyclic analogs of 2-amino-6-substituted-purine 3′-deoxyribofuranosides. J Med Chem 30:1090–1097
123. Chun BK, Song GY, Chu CK (2001) Stereocontrolled syntheses of carbocyclic C-nucleosides and related compounds. J Org Chem 66:4852–4858
124. Chu CK, Cutler S (1986) Chemistry and antiviral activities of acyclonucleosides. J Heterocyclic Chem 23:289–319
125. Schaeffer HJ, Beauchamp L, de MirandaP, Elion G, Bauer DJ, Collins P (1978) 9-(2-Hydroxyethoxymethyl)guanine activity against viruses of the herpes group. Nature 272:583–585
126. Barrio JR, Bryant JD, Keyser GE (1980) A direct method for the preparation of 2-hydroxyethoxymethyl derivatives of guanine, adenine, and cytosine. J Med Chem 23:572–574
127. Keyser GE, Bryant JD, Barrio JR (1979) Iodomethylethers from 1,3-dioxolane and 1,3-oxathiolane: preparation of acyclic nucleoside analogs. Tetrahedron Lett 20:3263–3264
128. Robins MJ, Hatfield PW (1982) Nucleic acid related compounds. 37. Convenient and high-yield syntheses of N-[(2-hydroxyethoxy)methyl] heterocycles as "acyclic nucleoside" analogues. Can J Chem 60:547–553
129. Naesens L, De Clercq E (1997) Therapeutic potential of HPMPC (cidofovir), PMEA (adefovir) and related acyclic nucleoside phosphonate analogues as broad-spectrum anttviral agents. Nucleotides Nucleosides 16:983–992

130. Dang Q, Liu Y, Erion MD (1998) A new regio-defined synthesis of PMEA. Nucleotides Nucleosides 17:1445–1451
131. Field AK, Davies ME, de Witt C, Perry HC, Liou R, Germerhausen JL, Karkas JD, Ashton WT, Johnson DB, Tolman RL (1983) 9-([2-hydroxy-1-(hydroxymethyl)ethoxy]methyl)guanine: a selective inhibitor of herpes group virus replication. Proc Natl Acd Sci 80:4139–4143
132. Brodfuehrer PR, Howell HG, Sapino Jr C, Vemishetti P (1994) A practical synthesis of (S)-HPMPC. Tetrahedron Lett 35(20)3243–3246
133. Yokohama M (2000) Synthesis and biological activity of thionucleosides. Synthesis 12:1637–1655
134. Derstine BP, Tomlin JW, Peck CL, Dietz J-P, Herrera BT, Cardoso FSP, Paymode DJ, Yue AC, Arduengo AJ III, Opatz T, Snead DR, Stringham RW, McQuade DT, Gupton BF (2020) An efficient synthesis of tenofovir (PMPA): a key intermediate leading to tenofovir-based HIV medicines. Org Process Res Dev 24:1420–1427
135. (a) Giesler KE, Marengo J, Liotta DC (2016) Reduction sensitive lipid conjugates of tenofovir: synthesis, stability, and antiviral activity. J Med Chem 59(15):7097–7110. (b) Giesler KE, Liotta DC (2016) Next-generation reduction sensitive lipid conjugates of tenofovir: antiviral activity and mechanism of release. J Med Chem 59(22):10244–10252
136. Beadle JR, Valiaeva N, Yang G, Yu J-H, Broker TR, Aldern KA, Harden EA, Keith KA, Prichard MN, Hartman T, Buckheit Jr. RW, Chow LT, Hostetler KY (2016) Synthesis and antiviral evaluation of octadecyloxyethyl benzyl 9-[(2-phosphonomethoxy)ethyl]guanine (ODE-Bn-PMEG), a potent inhibitor of transient HPV DNA amplification. J Med Chem 59(23):10470–10478
137. Van Drannen NA, Freeman GA, Short SA, Harvey R, Jansen R, Szczech G, Koszalka GW (1996) Synthesis and antiviral activity of 2′-deoxy-4′-thio purine nucleosides. J Med Chem 39:538–542
138. Dyson MR, Coe PL, Walker RT (1991) The synthesis and antiviral activity of some 4′-thio-2′-deoxy nucleoside analogs. J Med Chem 34:2782–2786
139. Reist EJ, Gueffroy DE, Goodman L (1964) Synthesis of 4-Thio-D- and -L-ribofuranose and the corresponding adenine nucleosides. J Am Chem Soc 86:5658–5663
140. Reist EJ, Fischer LV, Goodman L (1968) Thio sugars. Synthesis of the adenine nucleosides of 4-thio-D-xylose and 4-thio-D-arabinose. J Org Chem 33:189–192
141. Ritchie RGS, Vyals DM, Szarek WA (1978) Addition of pseudohalogens to unsaturated carbohydrates. VI. Synthesis of 4′-thiocordycepin. Can J Chem 56:794–802
142. Haraguchi K, Nishikawa A, Sasakura E, Tanaka H, Nakamura K, Miyasaka T (1998) Electrophilic addition to 4-thio furanoid glycal: a highly stereoselective entry to 2′-deoxy-4′-thio pyrimidine nucleosides. Tetrahedron Lett 39:3713–3716
143. Naka T, Nishizono N, Minakawa N, Matsuda A (1999) Nucleosides and nucleotides. 189. Investigation of the stereoselective coupling of thymine with meso-thiolane-3,4-diol-1-oxide derivatives via the Pummerer reaction. Tetrahedron Lett 40:6297–6300
144. Nishikono N, Koike N, Yamagata Y, Fujii S, Matsuda A (1996) Nucleosides and nucleotides. 159. Synthesis of thietane nucleosides via the Pummerer reaction as a key step. Tetrahedron Lett 37:7569–7572
145. Bobek M, Whistler RL, Bloch A (1970) Preparation and activity of the 4′-thio-derivatives of some 6-substituted purines nucleosides. J Med Chem 13:411–413
146. George R, Ritchie S, Szarek WA (1973) Synthesis of 4′-thiocordycepin synthesis of 4′-thiocordycepin. J Chem Soc Chem Commun 686–687
147. Bobek M, Bloch A, Parthasarathy R Whistler RL (1975) Synthesis and biological activity of 5-fluoro-4′-thiouridine and some related nucleosides. J Med Chem 18:784–787
148. Secrist JA III, Tiwari KM, Riordan JM, Montgomery JA (1991) Synthesis and biological activity of 2′-deoxy-4′-thio pyrimidine nucleosides. J Med Chem 34:2361–2366
149. Niedballa U, Vorbrueggen H (1974) Synthesis of nucleosides. 9. General synthesis of N-glycosides. I. Synthesis of pyrimidine nucleosides. J Org Chem 39:3654–3660
150. Jones MF, Noble SA, Robertson CA, Storer R (1991) Tetrahydrothiophene nucleosides as potential anti-HIV agents. Tetrahedron Lett 32:247–250

151. Hu L, Schaufelberger F, Zhang Y, Ramström O (2013) Efficient asymmetric synthesis of lamivudine via enzymatic dynamic kinetic resolution. Chem Commun 49:10376–10378
152. Kashinath K, Snead DR, Burns JM, Stringham RW, Gupton BF, McQuade DT (2020) Synthesis of an oxathiolane drug substance intermediate guided by constraint-driven innovation. Org Process Res Dev 24:2266–2270
153. Beach JW, Jeong LS, Alves AJ, Pohl D, Kim HO, Chang CN, Doong SL, Schinazi RF, Cheng YC, Chu CK (1992) Synthesis of enantiomerically pure (2′R,5′S)-(–)-1-(2-hydroxymethyloxathiolan-5-yl)cytosine as a potent antiviral agent against hepatitis B virus (HBV) and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). J Org Chem 57:2217–2219
154. Yu J, Ahn S, Kim HJ, Lee M, Kim J, Jin SH, Lee E, Kim G, Cheong JH, Jacobson KA, Jeong LS, Noh M (2017) Polypharmacology of N6-(3-iodobenzyl)adenosine5′-N-methyluronamide (IB-MECA) and related A3 adenosine receptor ligands: peroxisome proliferator activated receptor (PPAR) γ partial agonist and PPARδ antagonist activity suggests their antidiabetic potential. J Med Chem 60(17):7459–7475
155. An S, Kim G, Kim HJ, Ahn S, Kim HY, Ko H, Hyun YE, Nguyen M, Jeong J, Liu Z, Han J, Choi H, Yu J, Kim JW, Lee HW, Jacobson KA, Cho WJ, Kim Y-M, Kang KW, Noh M, Jeong LS (2020) Discovery and structure–activity relationships of novel template, truncated 1′-homologated adenosine derivatives as pure dual PPARγ/δ modulators. J Med Chem 63(24):16012–16027

Chapter 5
C-Glycosides

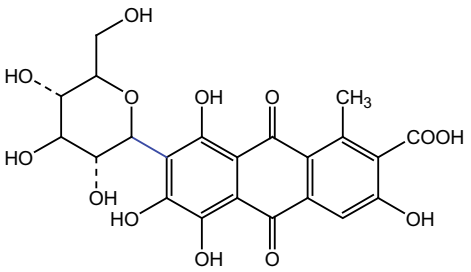
This type of glycosides have attracted much attention, considering that many of them have demonstrated their effectiveness as therapeutic agents. The increasing significance of *C*-glycosides is that the conformational differences compared to *O*- or *N*-glycosides are minimal, and that they are resistant to enzymatic or acidic hydrolysis since the anomeric center has been transformed from acetal to ether [1]. A glycoside is defined as *C*-glycoside when what it is suppose to be the anomeric carbon of a sugar is interconnected to the aglycon, generating a new C–C bond. According to Levy and Tang [2] the term *C*-glycoside describes those structures in which a common structural motifs the presence of carbon functionality at what would otherwise be the anomeric position of a sugar or derivative. Structurally *C*-glycosides can be constituted by aliphatic, or aromatic aglycon, and the sugar can be pyranose or furanose. A variety of natural product *C*-glycosides has been described. Examples of *C*-glycosides isolated from different plant genus or insects and characterized spectroscopically are: Carminic acid (cochineal), Aloin (Aloe vera), Scoparin (*Cytisus scoparius*), Saponarin (*Saponaria officinalis)*, flavonoid phytoalexins such as Cucumerins (*Cucumis sativus*) and Naringenin (grapefruit) [3], *C*-glucosyl xanthones [4] and complex benzoquinone Altromycin B [5] (*actinomycetes*) among others (Scheme 5.1).

Moreover, much effort and creativity has been devoted to the preparation of complex C-glycosides with potent antibiotics activity. That is the case of Aurodox [6], Lasalocid A [7], Herbicidin [8], and the hyperfunctionalized molecules Spongistatin [9] and Palytoxin [10] (Scheme 5.2).

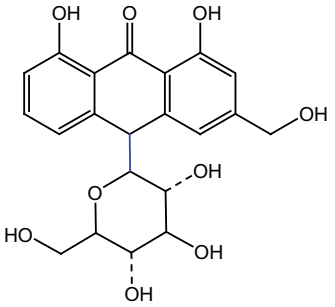
5.1 Synthetic Approaches for the Preparation of C-Glycosides

Based on comprehensive studies [2, 11–13], the general strategies for *C*-glycosides can be over viewed as follows:

M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_5



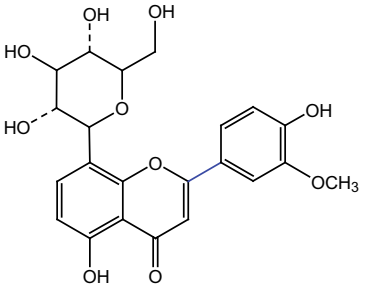
Carminic acid



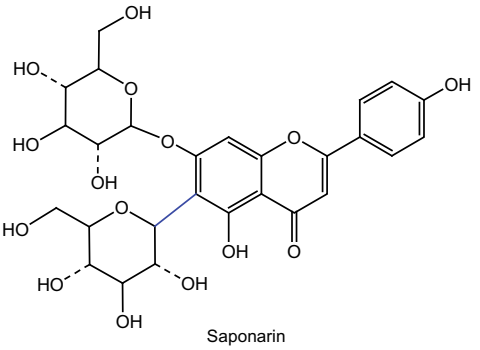
Aloin

cochineal

Aloe vera



Scoparin

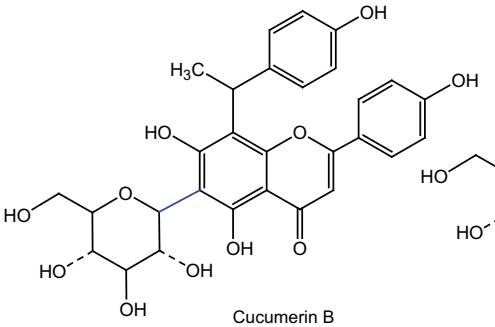


Saponarin

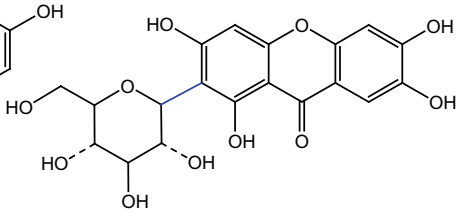
Cytisus scoparius

Saponaria officinalis

Scheme 5.1 Some naturally occurring C-glycosides

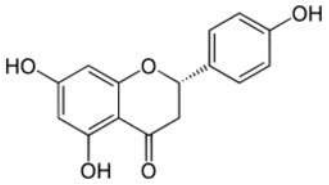


Cucumerin B



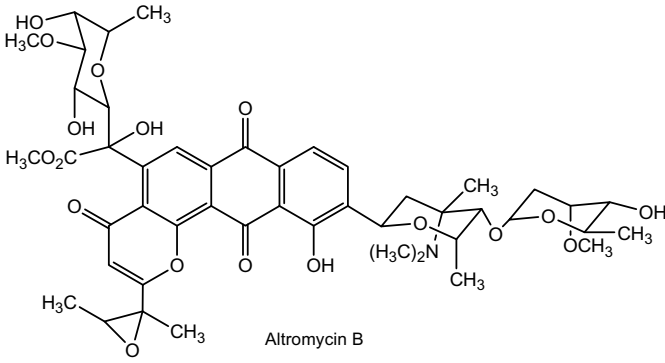
C-Glucosylxanthones

Cucumis sativus



Naringenin

grapefruit

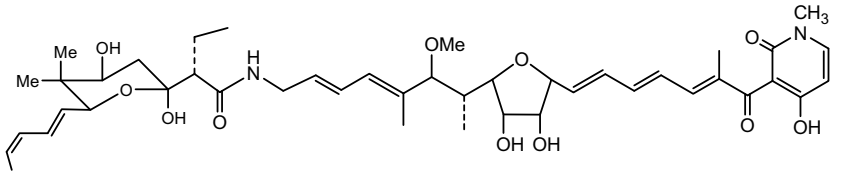


Altromycin B

Actinomycetes

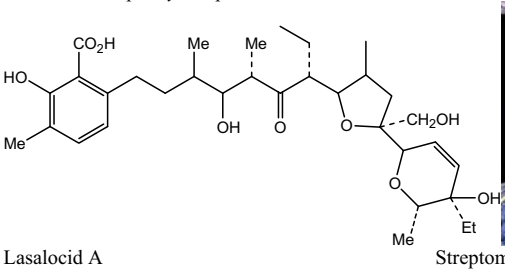
Scheme 5.1 (continued)

- Electrophilic glycosyl donors
- Concerted reactions
- Wittig approximation
- Palladium mediated reactions
- Mitsunobu reaction
- Nucleophilic sugars or anomeric anions intermediates
- Cross-metathesis reaction
- Samarium promoted reaction

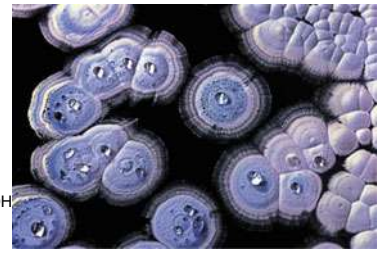


Aurodox

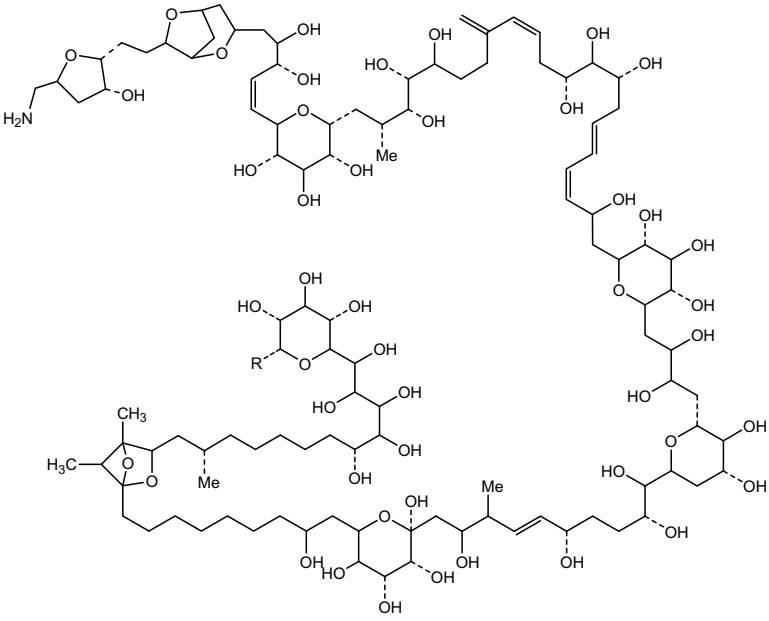
Streptomyces sp



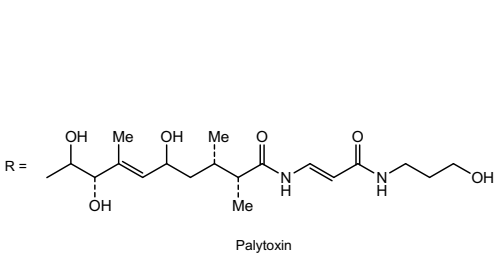
Lasalocid A



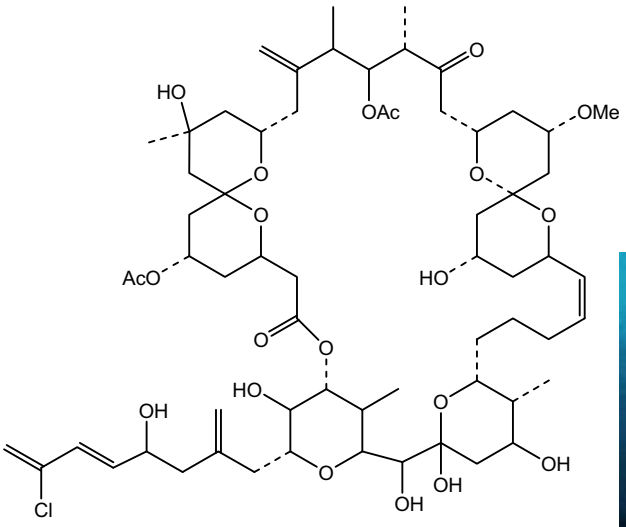
Streptomyces



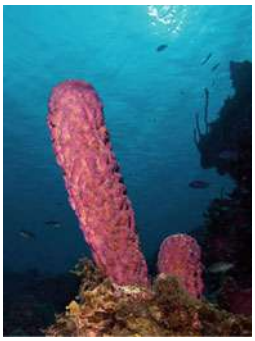
Scheme 5.2 Complex *C*-glycoside antibiotics



Palytoxin



Spongistatin 1

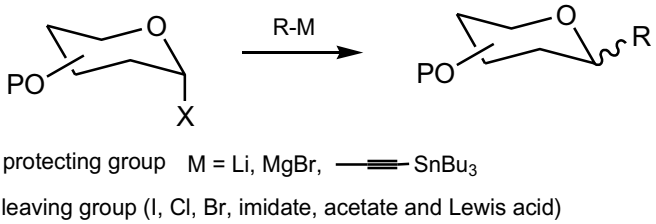


Scheme 5.2 (continued)

- Ramberg-Bäcklund reaction
- Free radical approaches
- Exoglycals
- The tether approach
- With unprotected sugars
- Enzymatic Approach.

5.1.1 *Electrophilic Glycosyl Donors*

5.1.1.1 Glycosyl Donors Bearing Good Leaving Groups



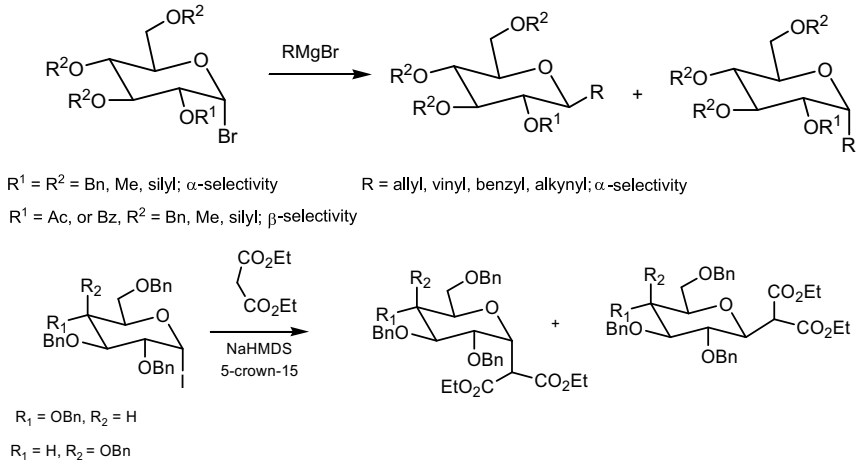
A general approach for the *C*-glycosidic bond formation is based on nucleophilic carbon addition on the electrophilic center of a glycosyl donor. The most extensively used glycosyl donors divided in four main groups (good leaving groups, sugar lactones, glycals, and 1,2 anhydrosugars) are used as electrophilic donors to generate *C*-glycosidic bonds when reacted with organocuprates, organotin, organozinc, cyanide, allylic Grignard, vinyl silyl reagents, and activated aromatic compounds among others [11].

Some of the reaction described that have been used for preparing useful intermediates or C-glycosides are shown in Scheme 5.3.

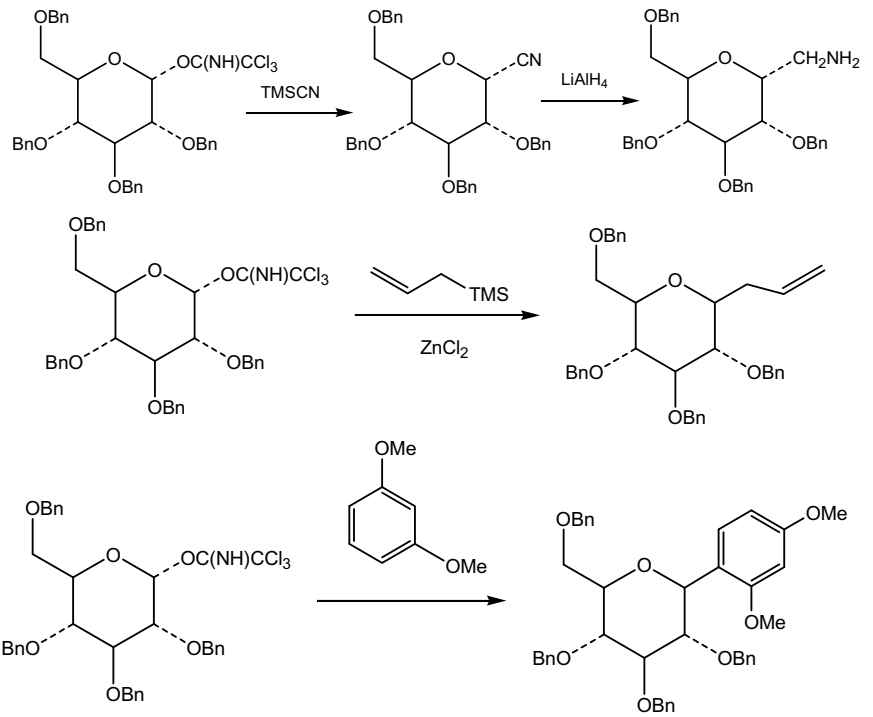
As an example of this approach using glycosyl halide donors with aryl metal acceptors, the synthesis of aryl C-glycosides by using halogenated glycosyl donors with aryl zinc without transition state catalyst, obtaining the corresponding C-aryl-β-glucosides in 50–86% yield and high β-selectivity, although with meta-anisylzinc acceptors the para substituted C-glucoside was observed in 19% yield (Scheme 5.4) [17].

It is worth mentioning that for aryl C-glycosylations, there is a dependence on the electron density of the aromatic ring and the protecting groups at the glycosyl moiety [18]. Moreover depending on the reaction conditions, there is a competing parallel process that ultimately will drive the reaction either to the *O*- or to the C-glycoside formation. This affirmation was demonstrated in the preparation of *C*- and *O*-flavonoid glycosides by Oyama et al., which treated glycosyl fluoride with flavan under Lewis acid conditions. It was observed that $BF_3.ET_2O$ and 2,6-di-tert-butyl-4-methyl pyridine (DTBMP) resulted predominantly in the formation of the 5-O-β-glycoside, while if the reaction is carried out only with BF_3-Et_2O, the C-glycoside is obtained (Scheme 5.5).

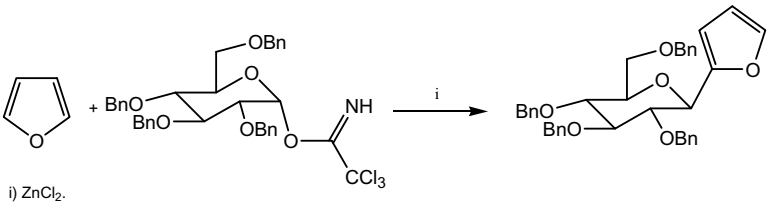
A thorough revision of Friedel–Crafts type reactions was examined using different kinds of leaving groups such as acetate, tricholoro and trifluoro acetimidates, 2-mercaptopyridine, *p*-nitrophenyl benzoate, phosphorothioates, unprotected anomeric hydroxyl glycosyl donors, and trialkoxybenzenes as C-glycosyl acceptor under a variety of Lewis acids promoters at low temperature (−78, −40, −30 °C), obtaining yields from 49 to 80 with mainly β-stereoselectivity [19].

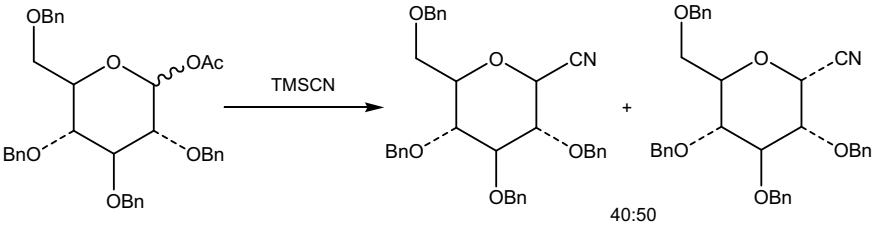


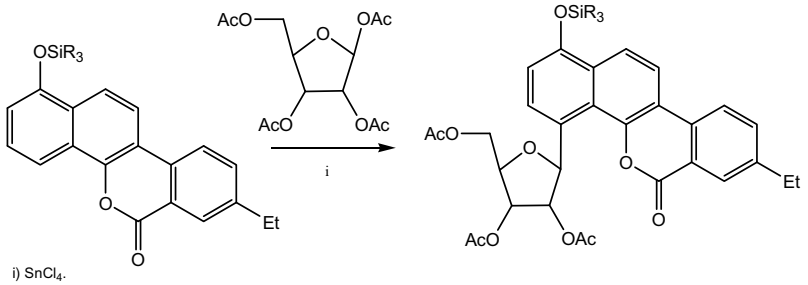
Ref.[14]

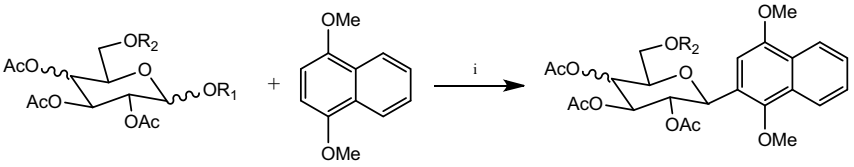


Scheme 5.3 Preparation of C-glycosides or intermediates from electrophilic glycosyl donor with good leaving groups [14–16]

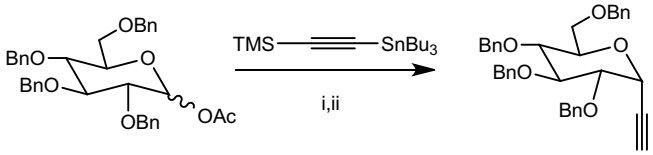






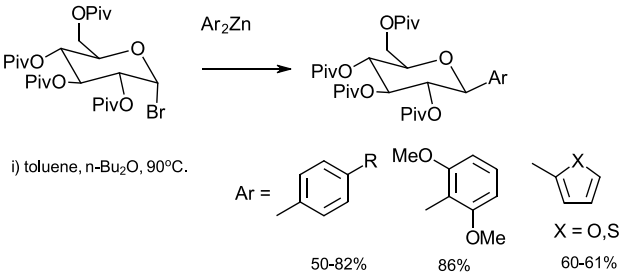


Ref[15]

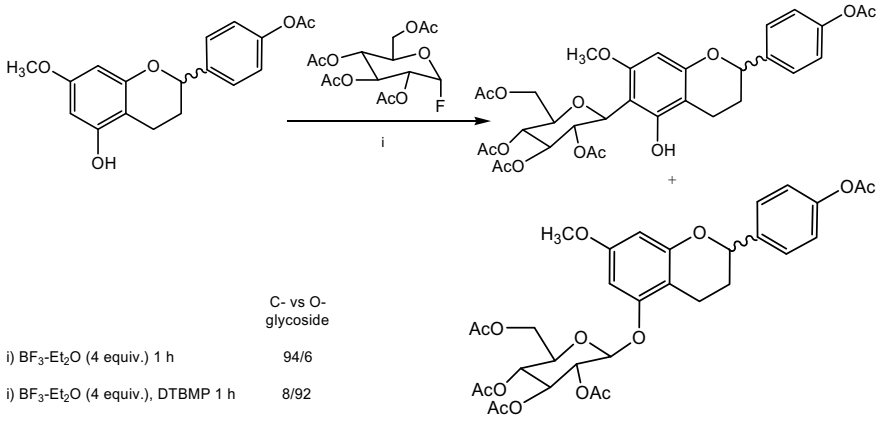


Ref[16]

Scheme 5.3 (continued)



Scheme 5.4 Stereoselective preparation of aryl C-Glycosides under bis(aryl) zinc conditions



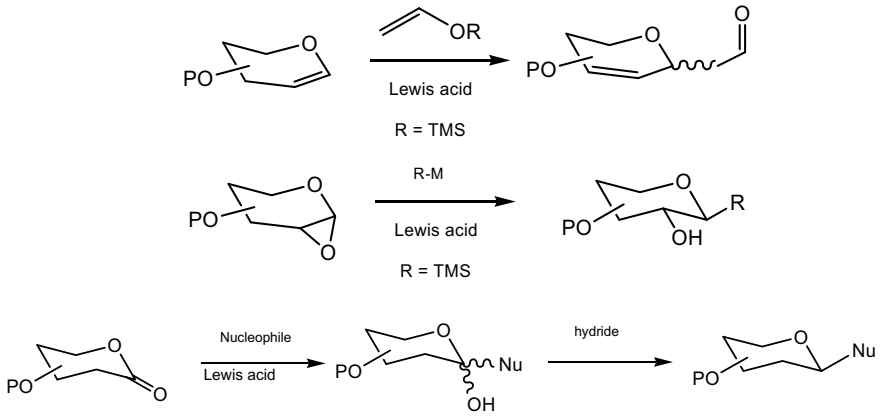
Scheme 5.5 C-glycosylations involving glycosyl donors with leaving group

5.1.1.2 Other Electrophilic Glycosyl Donors

Additionally, the introduction of other electrophilic centers at the anomeric position has extended the possibilities for preparation of C-glycosides by using electrophilic sugars. Some of these electrophilic sugars are: lactols, anomeric esters, glycals, anhydrides, and lactones (Scheme 5.6).

Some of the reactions carried out for preparing C-glycoside intermediates involving these alternative glycosyl donors are shown in Scheme 5.7. In 1,2-anhydrosugars the stereoselectivity is 1,2-trans type and involves a typical S_N2 process. On the other hand glycals exhibit high stereoselectivity, and in glycosyl acetates the stereocontrol relies on the electronic and steric properties of the nucleophiles.

Different C-glycosides emerge as important alternatives for glycemic control and therefore to treat diabetes type 2, having the ability of increasing the amount of sugar removed through the urine. The list includes, canagliflozin, empagliflozin, dapagliflozin, ertugliflozin, HSK0935, and sotagliflozin classified as sodium-glucose



Scheme 5.6 Alternative electrophilic donors for preparation of C-glycosides

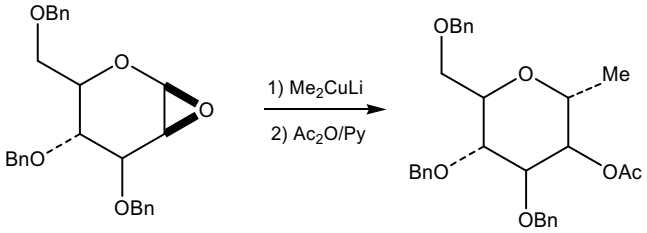
cotransporter-2 (SGLT2) inhibitors (Scheme 5.8). These potent and selective renal sodium-dependent glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors display an IC_{50} of 2.7/710 nM, 3.1/8300 nM, 1.2/1400 nM, 0.87/1969 nM, 1.3/1096 nM and 1.8/36 nM inhibitory rates for hSGLT2 and hSGLT1 subtypes respectively [25].

C-glycoside HSK0935 was prepared from 3,4,5,6-tetra-O-benzyl-D-glucopyranose with Grignard reagent of bromide leading to the pyran ring opening which was oxidized an selectively deprotected (in moderate to low yield. The next step involving a nucleophilic attack of primary alcohol to anomeric ketone and simultaneous carbonyl addition to provide key oxabicyclo[3.2.1]octan-1-ol intermediate, which after methylation and benzyl deprotection affords the target C-glycoside (Scheme 5.9) [26].

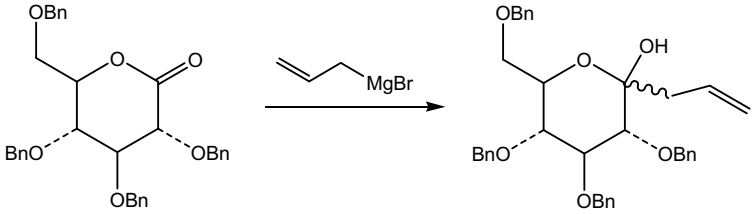
An improved route for preparing dapagliflozin was reported using persilylated gluconolactone coupled with aryl bromide under n-BuLi conditions. The resulting lactol was reacted with CH_3SO_3H/EtOH providing C-aryl glycoside intermediate, being subsequently reduced with a Lewis acid and silane providing the target dapagliflozin with high stereoselectivity (Scheme 5.10) [27].

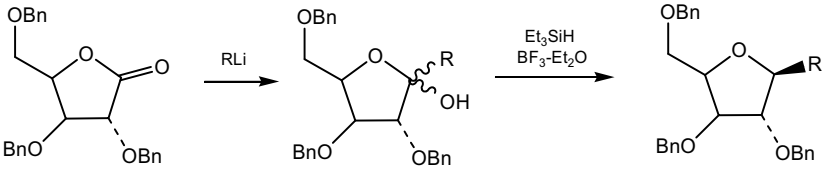
5.1.2 Concerted Reaction and Ring Formation

This type of reactions includes sigmatropic rearrangements and cycloaddition transformations. As an example of the applicability of the sigmatropic rearrangement for preparation o *C*-glycosides, Ireland [7] reported the synthesis of Lasalocid A, consisting in the coupling of acid derivative with protected glycal as a result of enolate addition and Claisen rearrangement. Series of transformation of this precursor will give place to Lasalocid A (Scheme 5.11).



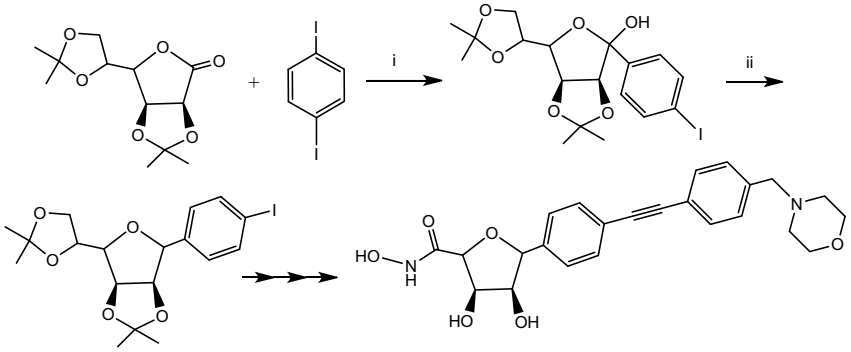
60 %





R = Me, alkynyl

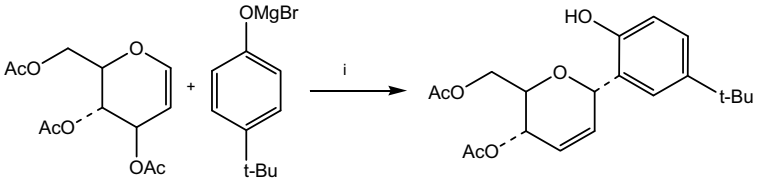
Ref.[20]



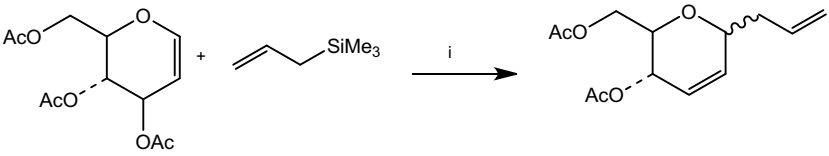
i) n-BuLi, THF, -78°C. ii) BF_3-OEt_2, EtSiH, CH_3CN, -40°C

Ref[21]

Scheme 5.7 *C*-glycoside formation with electrophilic sugars [20–24]

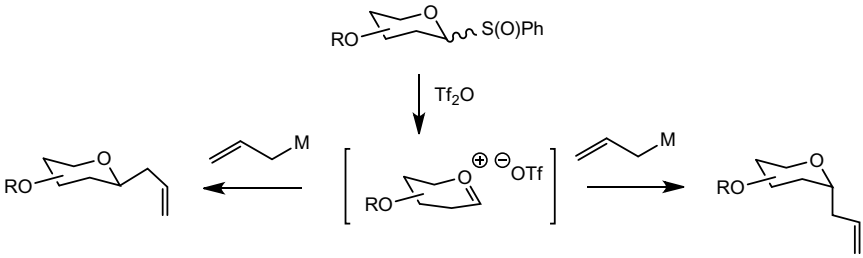


i) ultrasound



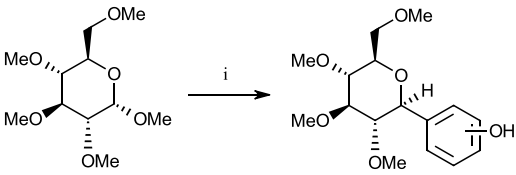
i) $RuCl_3$, CH_3CN, 0.5 h, rt

Ref[22]

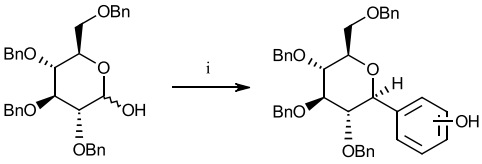


M = $SiMe_3$, $SnBu_3$

Ref[23]



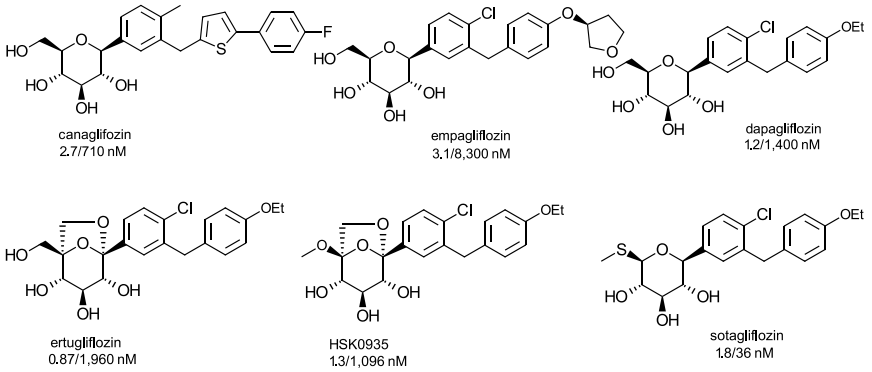
i) dry MeCN, polyphenol, drierite, −78 °C → r.t., TMSOTf, 18–48 h, 37-66%



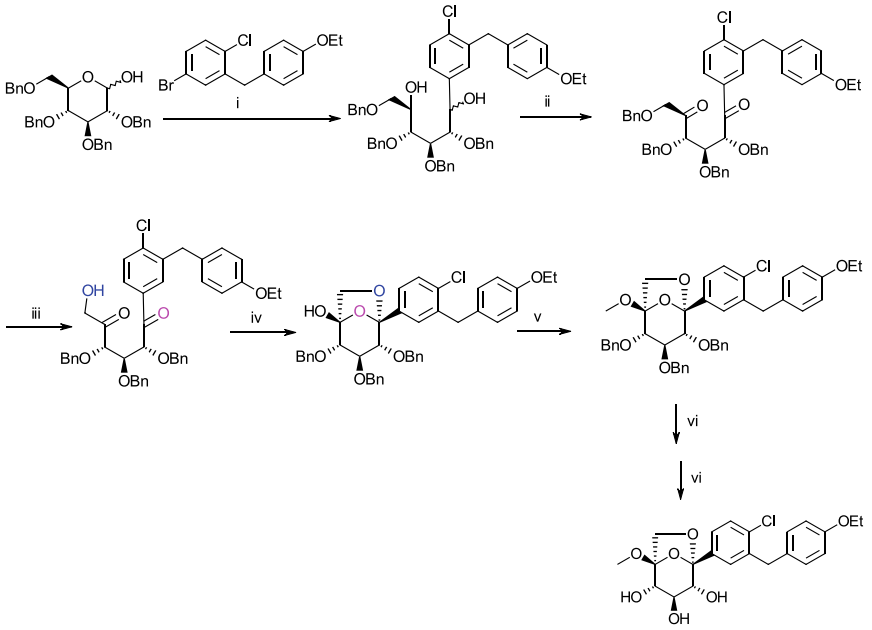
i) CH_2Cl_2/MeCN, drierite, −78 °C → r.t. or 40 °C, TMSOTf, 8–64 h, 6-57%

Ref[24]

Scheme 5.7 (continued)

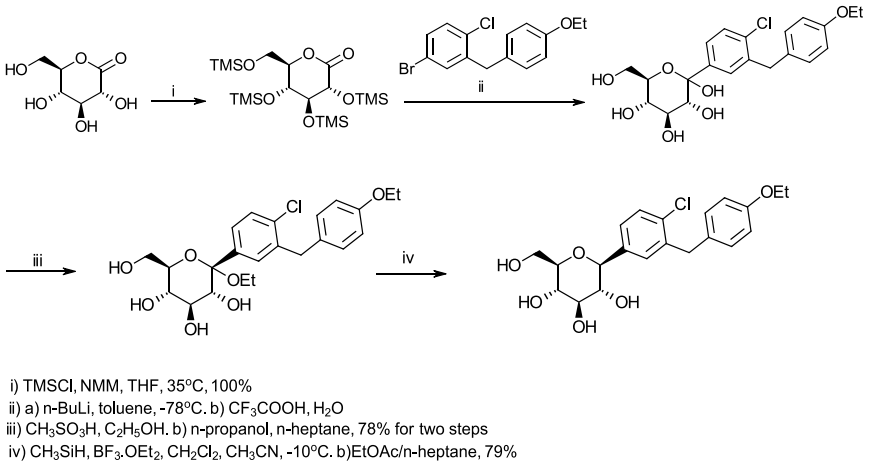


Scheme 5.8 Structure of antidiabetic C-glycosides canagliflozin, empagliflozin, ertugliflozin, dapagliflozin and sotagliflozin and SGLT2/SGLT1 inhibitory values

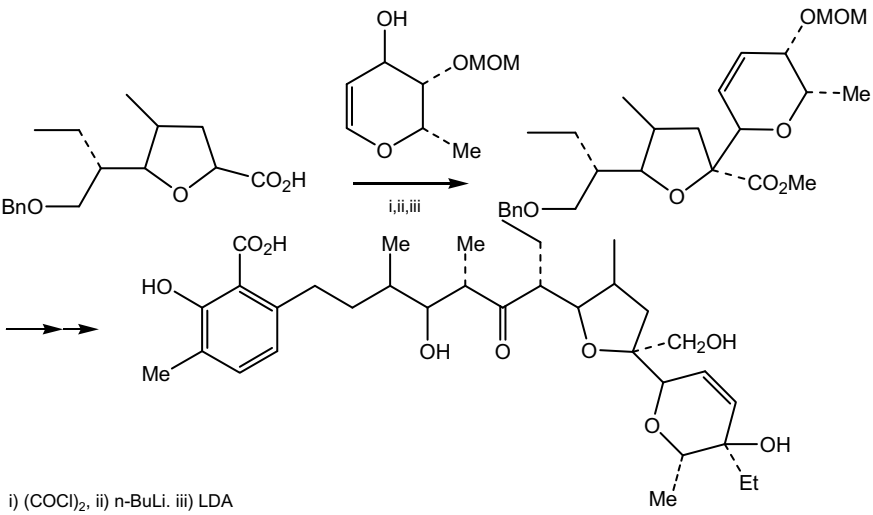


i) Mg, I_2, THF, 60 °C, 3 h, 87%. ii) TFAA, DMSO, Et_3N, DCM, −78 °C, 2 h, 85%.
iii) BCl_3, DCM, −78 °C, 3 h, 21%. iv) MeONa, MeOH, rt, 2 h, 60%
v) CH_3I, NaH, DMF, rt, 1−3 h, 90%
vi) H_2, 10% Pd/C, 1,2-dichlorobenzene, THF/MeOH, rt, 1−5 h 85%

Scheme 5.9 Synthesis of oxabicyclo[3.2.1]octan-1-ol HSK0935 C-glycoside

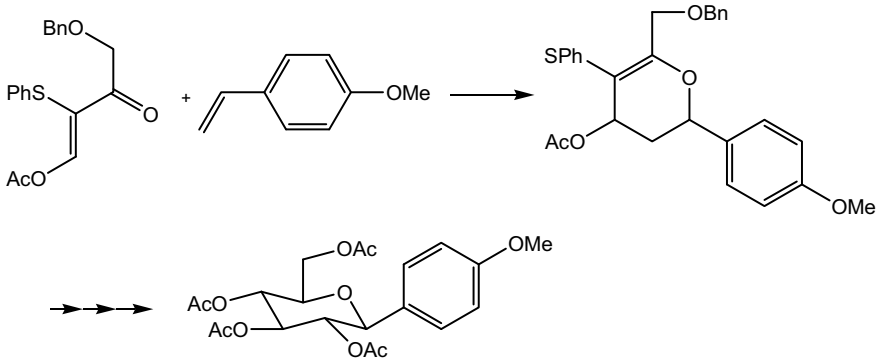


Scheme 5.10 Improved synthesis of C-glycoside dapagliflozin



Scheme 5.11 Synthesis of Lasalocid A

To exemplify the effectiveness of cycloadditions for preparation of *C*-glycosides, Schmidt et al. [28], prepared p-methoxyphenyl 2,3,4,6-tetraacetyl *C*-glucopyranose, by following a Diels–Alder approach. The reaction between heterodiene and dienophile produced cycloadduct that was successively transformed to give the desired product (Scheme 5.12).

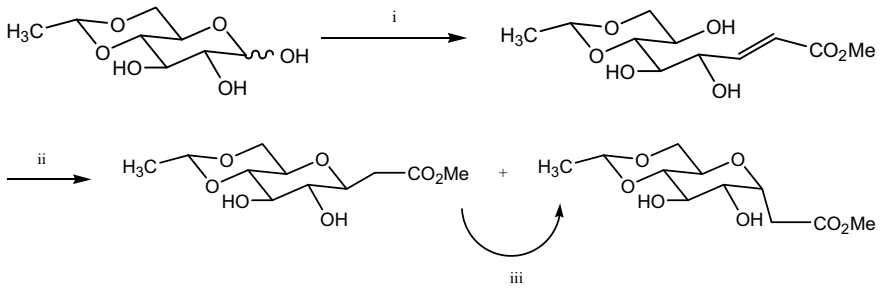


Scheme 5.12 The Diels–Alder reaction for *C*-glycoside formation

Protected monosaccharide is reacted with Wittig ilide to produce a ring opening unsaturated intermediate, which was cyclized to produce a mixture of α,β C-glycosides. The α form could be converted to the β form under sodium methoxide conditions (Scheme 5.13) [29].

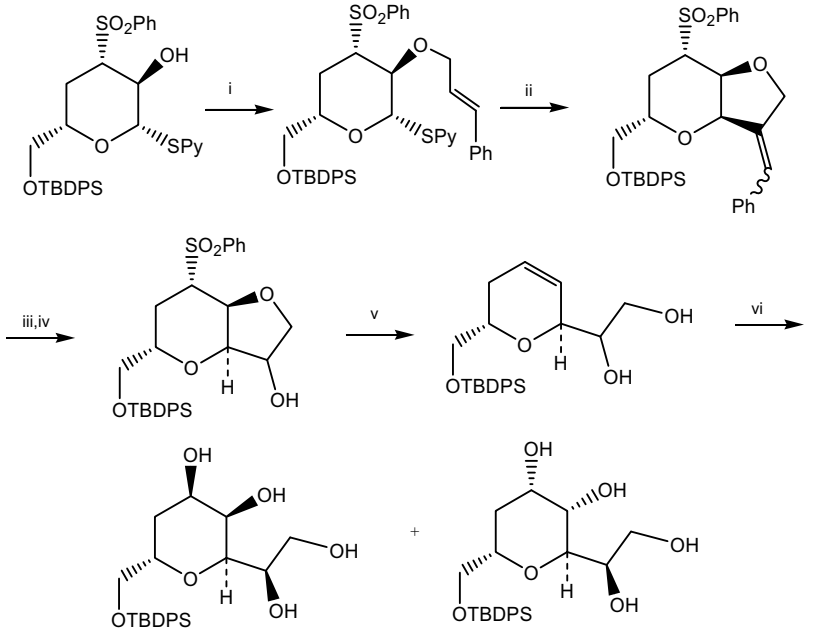
Cation-mediated cyclization reactions of silyl enols ether-containing thioglycosides give bicyclic ketotetrahydrofurans. Treatment with sodium amalgam in buffered methanol yields the expected dihydropyran which was transformed to the diol intermediate, and after separation converted to the bis-acetonides (Scheme 5.14) [30].

Ring closure of polyalcohol has been proposed as a suitable strategy for preparing *C*-glycosides [31]. Condensation between iodine pyranoside intermediate with an aldohexose will result in the condensation product which undergoes cyclization to give the mixture of *C*-disaccharides showed in Scheme 5.15.



i) $Ph_2P{=}CHCO_2Me$. ii) KOH/MeOH. iii) MeONa/MeOH.

Scheme 5.13 Wittig reaction for *C*-glycoside formation



i) PhCH=CHCH$_2$Br, CH_2Cl_2, 50% aq. NaOH, r.t. ii) $AgOSO_2CF_3$, MS, CH_2Cl_2, r.t. then DBU. iii) O_3, CH_2Cl_2, -78°C, then PPh_3, -78°C to r.t. iv) $NaBH_4$, MeOH, 0°C. v) 6% Na(Hg), Na_2HPO_4, MeOH, 0°C. vi) OsO_4, NMO, 9:1 acetone-H_2O, r.t.

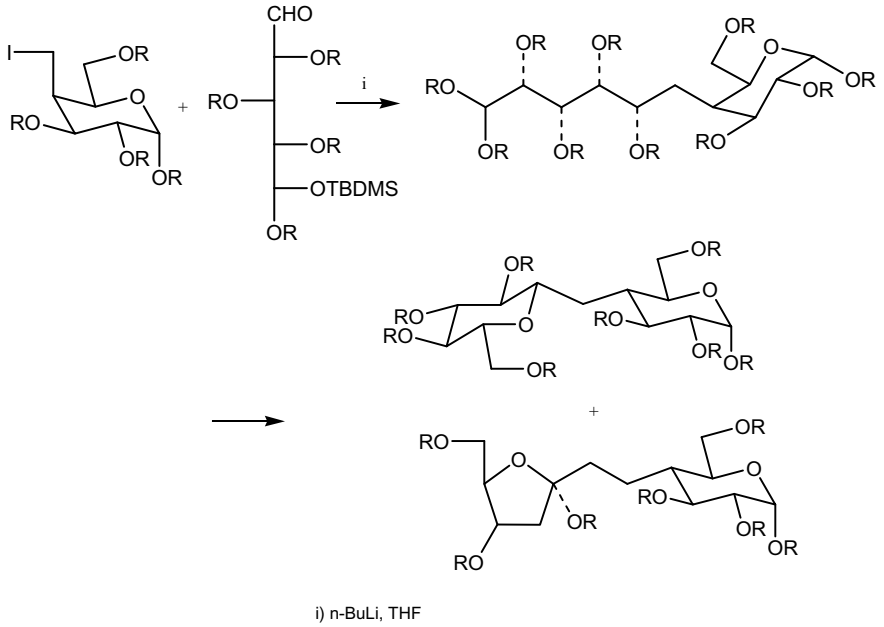
Scheme 5.14 Formation of tetrahydrofurans and application to the synthesis of 2-octulopyranosides

5.1.3 Palladium Mediated Reactions

Heck type reactions have been successfully assayed for preparing interesting *C*-glycosides. Such is the case of Vineomicinone B2 prepared by palladium catalyzed condensation between TBS protected glycal with anthracene derivative [32]. Further transformations will generate *C*-glycoside Vineomicinone B2 (Scheme 5.16).

The synthesis of (1 → 6)-linked *C*-glycosidic disaccharides were suitably prepared starting from glucal triflate as glycosyl donor which was coupled with alkynyl glycosides under palladium mediated conditions, generating the pseudodisaccharides which was reduced with Raney-nickel under hydrogen atmosphere and the glycal epoxidated with dimethyldioxirane and finally transformed to the pyranoside ring by hydride reduction (Scheme 5.17) [33].

Other palladium-mediated coupling includes Stille (palladium-catalyzed vinyl substitution) [34], and Suzuki cross coupling reactions [35].



Scheme 5.15 *C*-disaccharide formation from aldohexoses

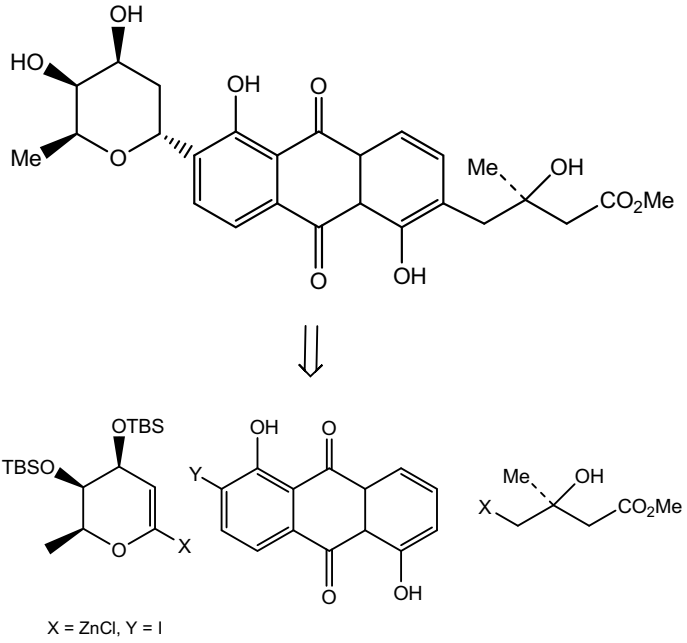
Palladium catalyzed stereoselective synthesis of C-Aryl glycosides following the Catellani protocol was successfully applied for preparing aryl and heterocyclic C-glycoside libraries. The approach requiring aryl iodides, olefins and glycosyl chloride donors using palladium/norbornene (NBE), tri(2-furyl) phosphane (TFP) as cooperative catalysis (Scheme 5.18) [36].

5.1.4 Mitsunobu Reaction

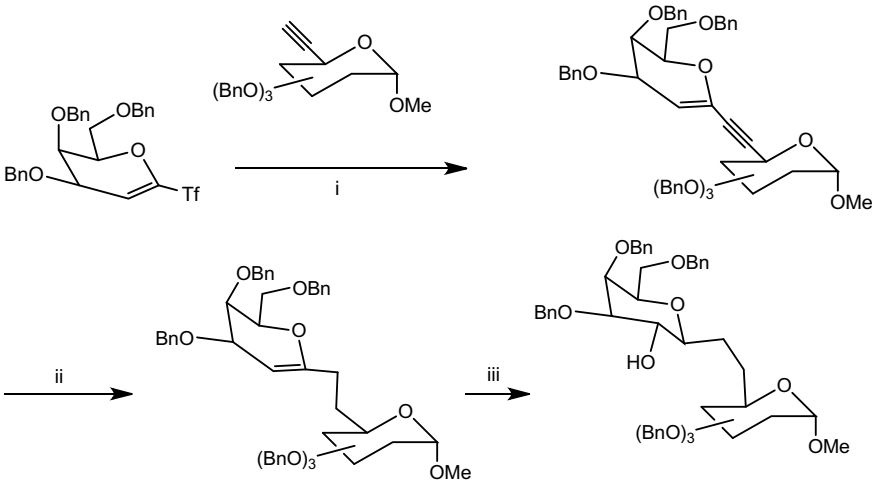
Mitsunobu reaction is an additional useful reaction for preparing *C*-glycosides (Scheme 5.12). When tetra-*O*-methyl glucopyranose is reacted with 1-naphtol in the presence of Mitsunobu conditions (diethylazidodicarboxylate and triphenylphosphine), the resulting product is the *O*-glycoside which is rearranged with BF_3-Et_2O to the corresponding *C*-glycoside (Scheme 5.19) [37].

5.1.5 Nucleophilic Sugars

Anomeric carbons are considered electrophilic sites by nature, however it is possible to invert this reactivity by using metallic bases. The resulting carbanion character

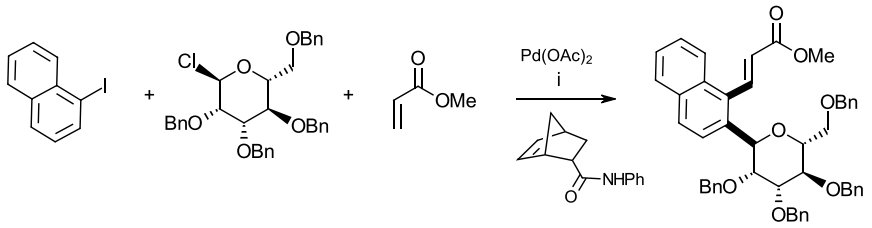


Scheme 5.16 Synthesis of vineomicinone B2 methyl ester

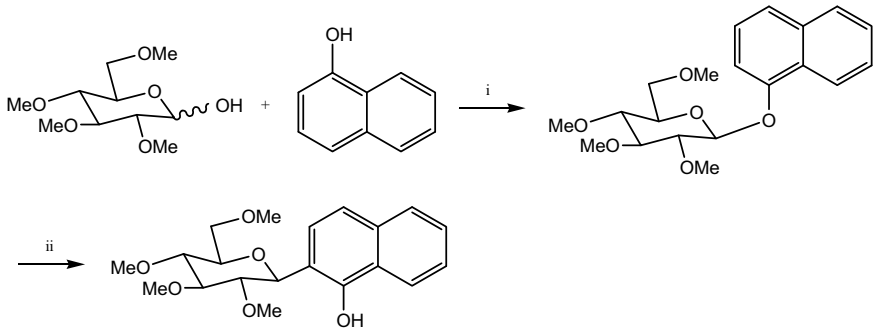


i) $Pd(PPh_3)_2Cl_2$ 5 mol%, CuI 10 mol%, NEt_3, rt. ii) Raney-nickel, H_2 (1bar), THF/MeOH, rt
iii) a) DMDO, CH_2Cl_2, -78°C to rt. b) DIBAL, CH_2Cl_2, -78°C to rt

Scheme 5.17 Synthesis of (1 → 6)-linked *C*-glycosidic disaccharides from glucal triflate



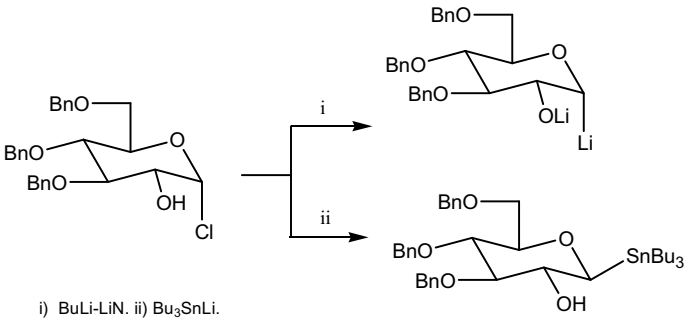
Scheme 5.18 Stereoselective synthesis of C-aryl glycosides via Catellani reaction



Scheme 5.19 Mitsunobu reaction for aromatic C-glycoside formation

is known as *umpolung* reactivity and allows the species to behave as nucleophiles. A variety of glycosyl donors have been converted to lithium or stannane glycosyl anions (Scheme 5.20) [11].

Cis and trans anomeric stannanes can be suitably prepared from glycals, involving for the former the glycal conversion to α-chlorides, then reacted with strong base,

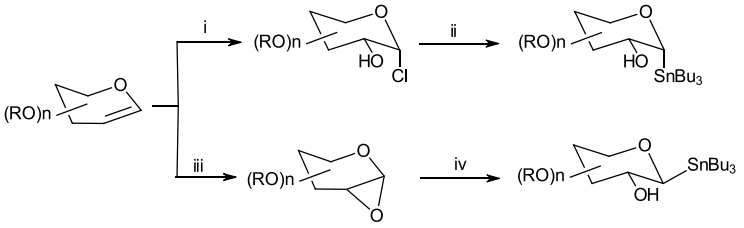


Scheme 5.20 Preparation of lithium and stannane glycosyl anions

and completed with *n*-Bu_3SnCl, while for the later glycal epoxidation followed by n-$Bu_3SnMgMe$ (Scheme 5.21) [38].

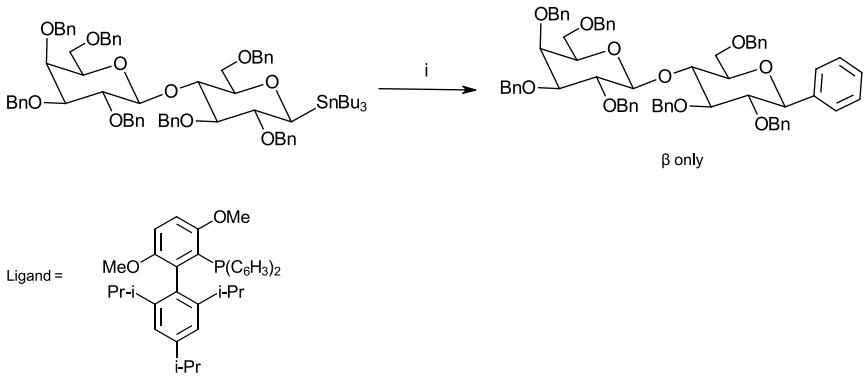
The cross-coupling of β-glucose stannane with aryl acceptors in the form of aryl iodides or diphenyliodonium salts, subjected to the general conditions of $Pd_2(dba)_3$, 2,6-bis(trifluoromethyl)phenyl ligand, CuI, KF, resulted in the preparation of diverse di, tri and tetrasaccharides, demonstrating the scope of this method (Scheme 5.22) [38, 39].

By using this possibility, the synthesis of the C-glycosyl asparagine analogue has been completed by Kessler and co-workers [40]. The transformation of the stannane to the lithium donor was followed by the coupling reaction with the aldehyde glutamic acid derivative to provide the β-D-linked C-glycoside. Removal of Boc protecting group and dehydroxylation reaction under Barton-McCombie condition provided the target molecule (Scheme 5.23).



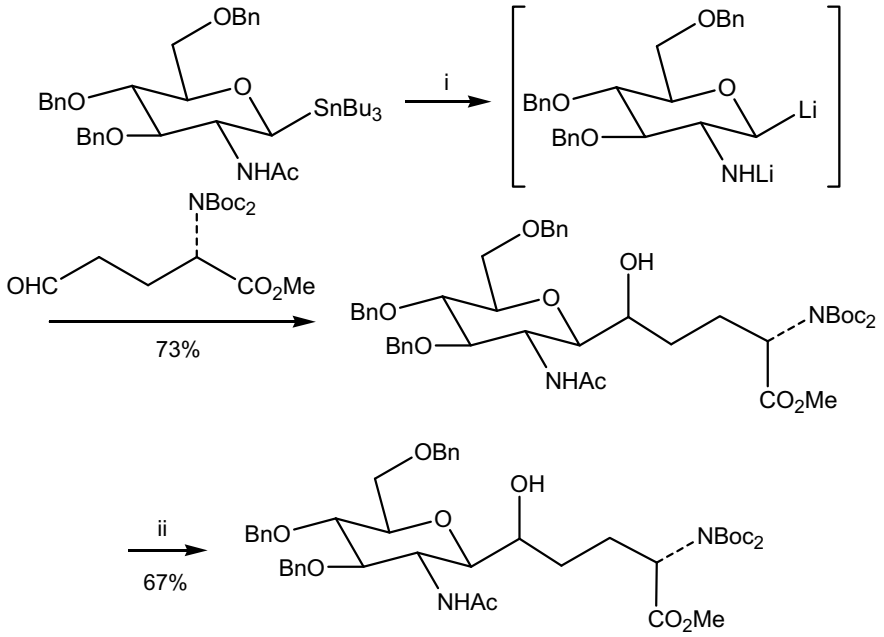
i) a) OsO_4 (2.5 mol%), NMO (2.5 equiv), acetone/t-BuOH/H_2O (21:9:1), 23 °C, b. HCl(g), $Et_2O/CHCl_3$, 0 °C
ii) n-BuLi (1.2 equiv), Li($C_{10}H_8$) (2.5 equiv), THF, −100 °C then n-Bu_3SnCl (3.5 equiv), THF, −100 °C to rt
iii) oxone (4.0 equiv), acetone, $NaHCO_3$, CH_2Cl_2/H_2O, 0 °C to rt
iv) n-$Bu_3SnMgMe$ (1.5 equiv), THF, −20 °C

Scheme 5.21 Preparation of cis-1,2 and trans-1,2 anomeric stannanes from glycals



i) Ph-I or Ph_2IOTf $Pd_2(dba)_3$ (5 mol%), Ligand (20 mol%), CuI (3 equiv), KF (2 equiv), 1,4-dioxane, 110 °C, 90 %

Scheme 5.22 Synthesis of aryl C-glycosides from anomeric stannanes



i) a) MeLi. b) BuLi. ii) a) $MgClO_4$. b) deoxygenation.

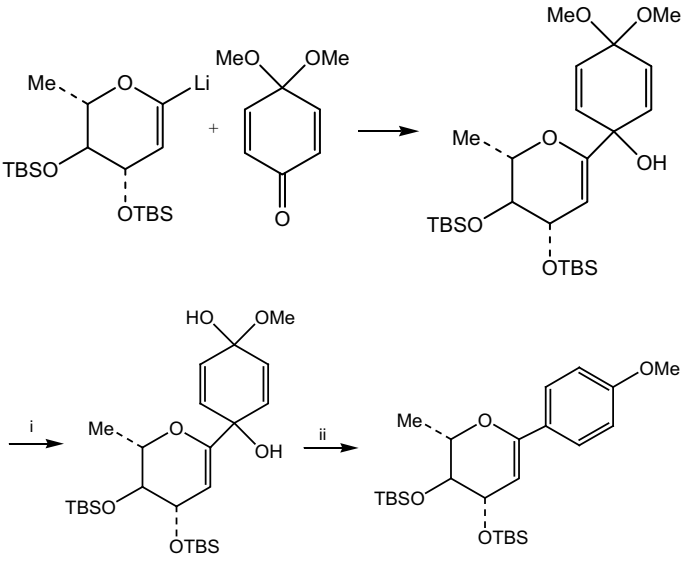
Scheme 5.23 Preparation of C-analogues of glycosyl asparagines from anionic glycosyl donors

Another accomplishment following this umpolung strategy was the preparation of the aromatic C-glycoside shown in Scheme 5.24. Hence, lithium glycal (obtained from glycal treatment with lithium diisopropylamide) was reacted with quinolic ketal to yield addition product, which was transformed to the aromatic C-glycal [41].

Aldol condensations between glycosyl donors containing active methylene carbons with glycosyl acceptors has been also proposed as suitable approach for preparing C-disaccharides. Martin et al. [42], described a procedure for preparing (1,6)- and (1,1)-linked C-disaccharides based on the nitroaldol condensation between the glycosylnitromethane peracetate with the galactose-derived aldehyde to provide after dehydration, reduction of the double bond and radical denitration the desired C-disaccharide (Scheme 5.25).

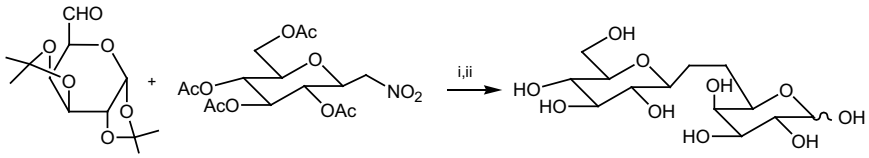
5.1.6 Cross-Metathesis Reaction

Cross-metathesis reaction is an emerging methodology for C–C bond formation. The air stable Grubbs ruthenium complex [43] has become an attractive catalyst for the olefin cross metathesis reactions and has been also applied successfully for



i) DIBAL/CH_2Cl_2. ii) $POCl_3$/Py.

Scheme 5.24 C-glycoside formation using lithium glycal nucleophilic donor



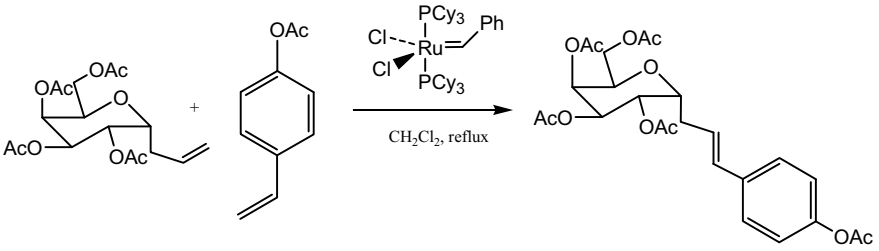
i) KF, MeCN, DCH-18-crown-6. ii) a) Ac_2O, Py, $CHCl_3$. b) $NaBH_4$, MeOH, CH_2Cl_2, 0°C. c) Bu_3SnH, AIBN, reflux. d) NaOMe, MeOH. e) H_3^+O.

Scheme 5.25 C-disaccharide formation with glycosyl donors containing active methylene carbons

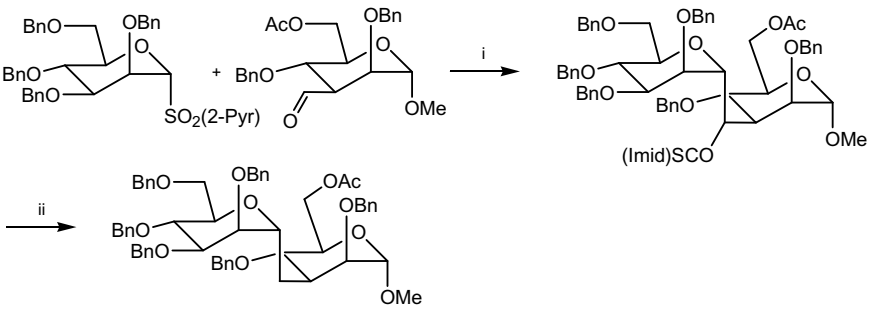
the preparation of pseudosaccharides. The coupling reaction between C-allyl α-D-galactopyranoside with 4-acetoxystyrene led to the formation of the cross-metathesis product (Scheme 5.26) [44].

5.1.7 Samarium Promoted Reaction

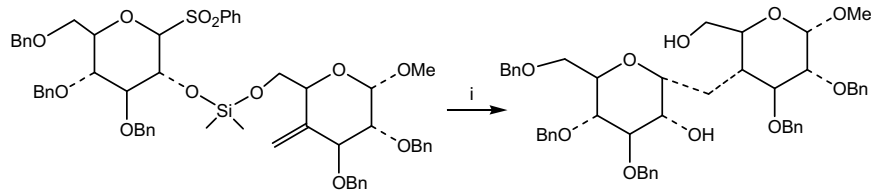
The synthesis of a C-glycoside analogue of α-1,3-mannobiose has been reported via SmI_2-promoted C-glycosylation. The general approach is based on the Barbier-type



Scheme 5.26 Cross-metathesis reaction for C-glycoside formation



i) a) SmI_2 (2.8 eq), THF, 20°C. b) $(Imid)_2CS$ (15 eq), CH_3CN, reflux, 35% ii) F_5PhOH, Ph_3SnH, AIBN, toluene, reflux, 65%.



i) SmI_2, PhH, HMPA, 60°C. b) aq. HF.

Scheme 5.27 Samarium promoted C-glycosylation

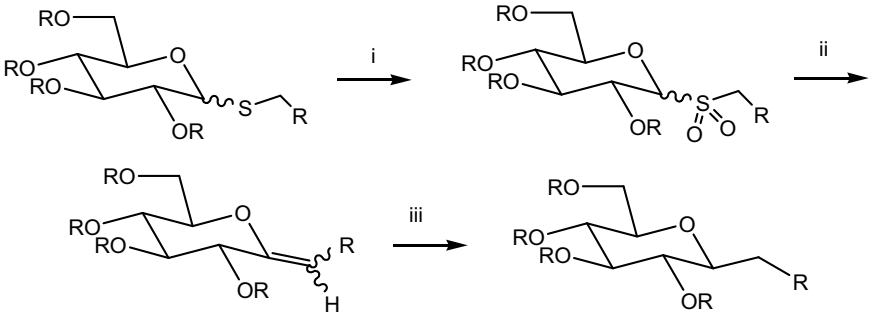
coupling [45] and involves the use of pyridyl sulfone glycosyl donor with a sugar aldehyde in the presence of SmI_2 as catalyst. This procedure has been exploited successfully for the preparation of disaccharides under the tether approach (Scheme 5.27) [46].

5.1.8 The Ramberg-Bäcklund Reaction

This novel procedure introduced by Franck et al. is becoming a practical and versatile approach for the preparation of biologically active C-glycosides such as

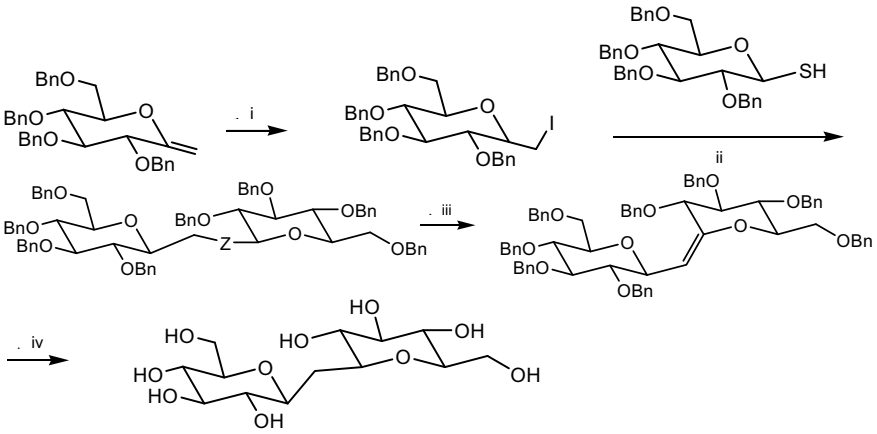
aromatic [5], aminoacids [47, 48] or glycerolipids [49]. The reaction sequence for C-glycoside formation consist in the initial S-glycoside formation, transformation to the sulfone derivative, Ramberg-Bäcklund rearrangement involving sulfone extrusion, and hydrogenolysis (Scheme 5.28).

Another C-disaccharide was prepared by transformation of benzylated exo-glycal to the iodide derivative, which in turn was coupled with the sulfur glycosyl donor. Further transformation to the sulfone and Ramberg-Bäcklund rearrangement produced the unsaturated disaccharide which was finally reduced under Perlman conditions to provide disaccharide in 70% yield (Scheme 5.29) [50].



i) mCPBA, Na_2HPO_4/CH_2Cl_2, 77%. ii) KOH/Al_2O_3, $CBrF_2CBrF_2$/tBuOH, 50°C. iii) H_2, $Pd(OH)_2$/EtOAc.

Scheme 5.28 The Ramberg-Bäcklund approach for C-glycoside formation



i) a) 9-BBN. b) Ph_3P, I_2, Imid. 81%. ii) K_2CO_3, then oxidation. iii) KOH, CCl_4, tBuOH , 60°C. iv) H_2, $Pd(OH)_2$, 70%.

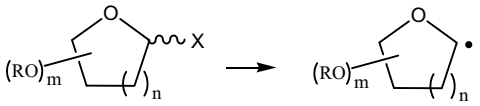
Scheme 5.29 Synthesis of C-isotrehalose

5.1.9 *Free Radical Approach*

This approach is based on the generation of free radical at the anomeric carbon by using glycosyl donors which are subjected to stannous treatment of free radical conditions which in turn will react with mainly exoglycals to produce a C-glycosidic linkage. The general methods leading to anomeric radicals formation are summarized in Scheme 5.30 [51].

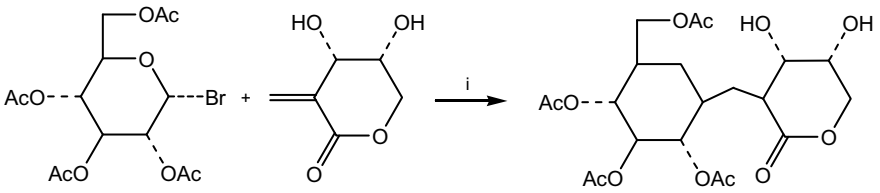
The coupling reaction between acetobromoglucose and the unsaturated lactone shown in Scheme 5.31 will result in the C-disaccharide formation, where a free radical mechanism promoted by a mixture of AlBN-Bu_3SnH is involved [52].

Anomer radicals may also generate rearranged products as a result of 1,2-migration particularly for the case of acetoxy and phosphate groups. This feature



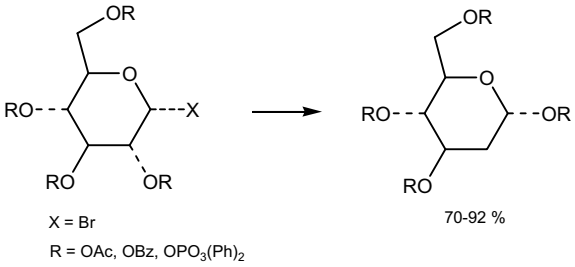
a) Bu_3SnH (Hg-hν or Δ)
X = NO_2, I, Br, Cl, SeAr, SAr
b) $Bu_3SnSnBu_3H$ (Hg-hν)
X = NO_2, I, Br, Cl, SeAr, SAr
c) $(C_2H_5)_3B$ (air) or N-acetoxy-2-thiopyridone (W-hν)
X = TeAr
d) Ester of N-Hydroxy-2-thiopyridone (W-hν)
X = COOH
e) (Diacyloxyiodo)arenes (Hg-hν orΔ)
X = COOH
f) Hg-hν
X = COBu-t etc
g) W-hν
X = $Co(dmgH)_2Py$

Scheme 5.30 General methods leading to anomeric radicals formation



i) AIBN, Bu_3SnH.

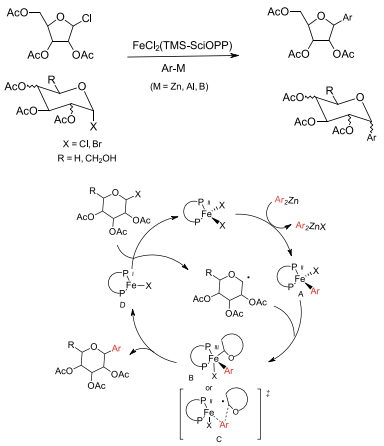
Scheme 5.31 Free radical coupling reaction



Scheme 5.32 Synthesis of 2-deoxy sugars by reductive 1,2-migration of glycosyl bromide

has been exploited successfully for preparing 2-deoxy sugars from commercially available sugars (Scheme 5.32) [53].

A free radical approach using iron complex composed of iron(II) chloride and a bulky bisphosphine ligand, (TMS-SciOPP) has been applied for preparing aryl C-glycoside with high stereoselectivity, consisting in the coupling reaction between affordable acetylated ribofuranosyl or pyranosyl halides with a variety of aryl and hetero aryl metal providing aryl C-glycosides high yields and stereoselectivity. The proposed mechanism postulate as key intermediates the organoiron A which reacts with radical glycosyl donor providing the corresponding aryl C-glycoside along with by-product D through the formation of B or C transition state (Scheme 5.33) [54].



Scheme 5.33 Free radical synthesis of aryl C-glycosides catalyzed by iron complex

5.1.10 *Exoglycals*

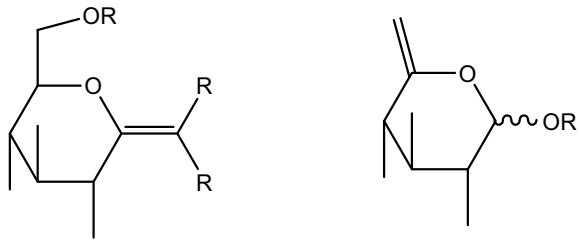
Exo-glycals have been described as another possibility for preparing C-glycosyl derivatives. The term exo-glycal is given to those unsaturated sugars with exocyclic double bonds. The most representative of these compounds are 1,2- and 5-6-unsaturated sugars (Scheme 5.34) [55].

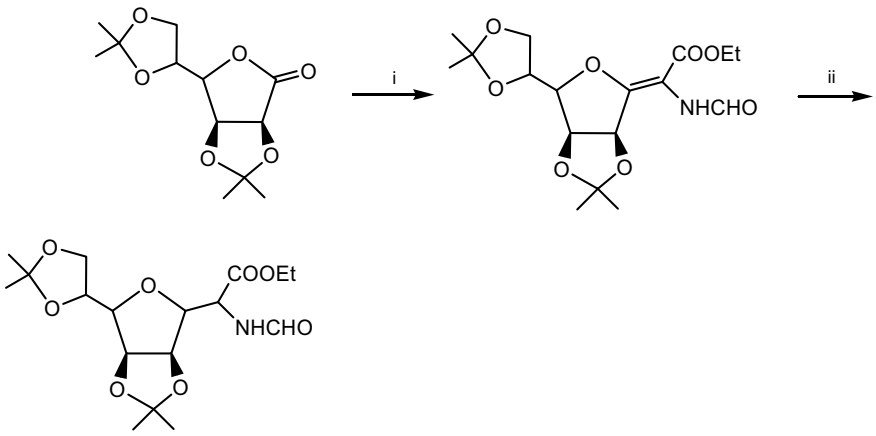
They were first prepared by reacting lactones with ethyl isocyanoacetate and subsequent hydrogenolysis [56, 57] (Scheme 5.35). This reaction has not been exploited extensively due sugar oxazole formation.

More recently two methods were reported for direct olefination of lactones. One is based on phosphorous Wittig type reaction [58] and the other by direct methylenation using the Tebbe reagent [59] (Scheme 5.36).

Alternative methods for the preparation of exo-glycals includes β-elimination of halides [60, 61] dehydration (, Grignard nucleophilic addition, sulfone extrusion (Ramberg-Bäcklunnd olefination) [62], and tosyl hydrazones (Bamford-Stevens conditions) [63] among others (Scheme 5.37).

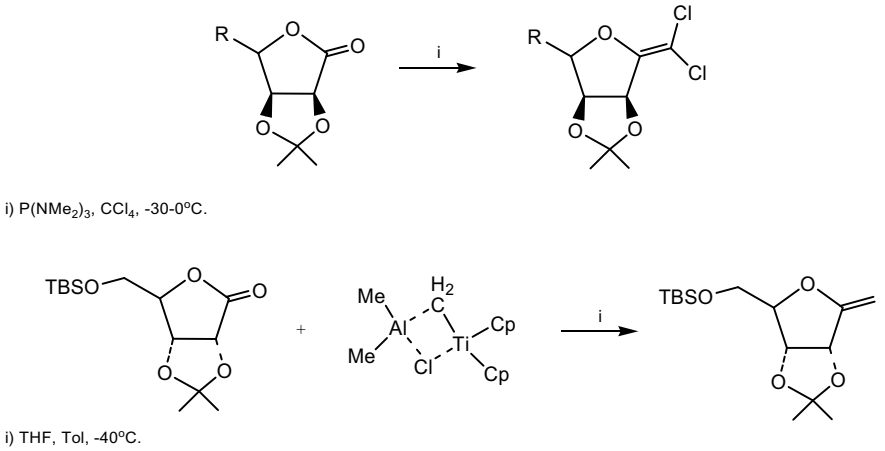
Scheme 5.34 1,2- and 5,6-unsaturated sugars





i) a) $EtOOCCH_2NC$, KH.b) AcOH. ii) a) H_2, Pd/C b) H_2O.

Scheme 5.35 First synthesis of 1,2-unsaturated sugar



Scheme 5.36 Early methods for preparation of exo-glycals

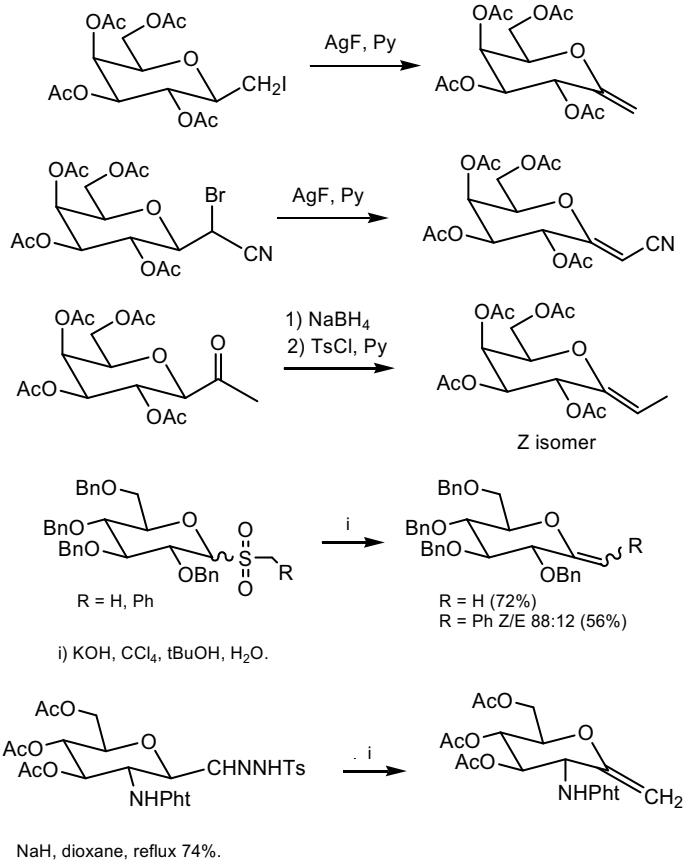
The synthesis several C-disaccharides by using exo-glycals has been described. Such is the case of the preparation of C-disaccharide by reaction of two molecules of the C-methylene intermediate under Lewis acid conditions (Scheme 5.38). The reaction was proposed to proceed via oxonium cation [64].

A 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition of exo-methylene sugar with glycosyl nitrone has been proposed as an approach for the formation of amino-C-ketosyl disaccharides (Scheme 5.39) [65].

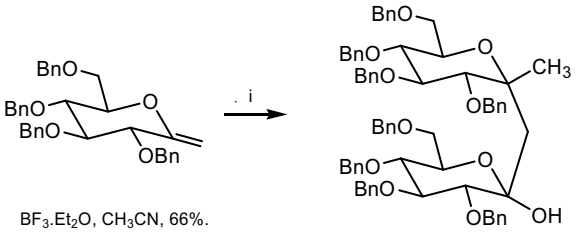
5.1.11 The Tether Approach

Various approaches for C-glycoside construction are comprehensively reviewed focusing mainly on the methylene formation [66]. The strategies presented are based on the concept that a nucleophilic anomeric donor is condensed with an exomethylene sugar to produce a C-disaccharide linkage [67]. According to this strategy methyl α-C-isomaltoside was prepared from the silaketal connected precursor as shown in Scheme 5.40.

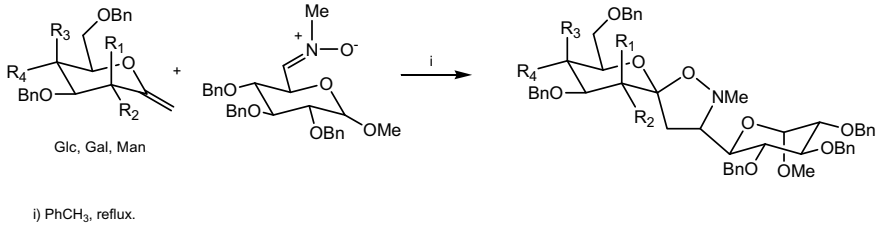
The tether approach considers the preliminary formation of a temporary attachment usually involving a silyl protecting group, as tether which is cleaved after formation of the desired C–C bond. The general conditions involve the use of selenoglucopyranosides [68] or phenylsulfoxides [52, 69] as glycosyl donors. An important application of this methodology can be seen in the preparation of O-C mixed sulfated trisaccharide (Scheme 5.41) [13].



Scheme 5.37 Alternative methods for the preparation of exo-glycals

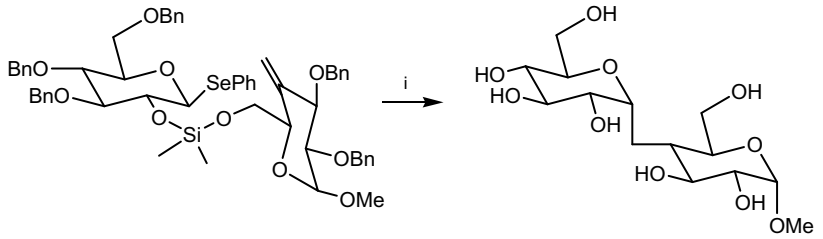


Scheme 5.38 Preparation of C-disaccharide from exo-glycals



i) $PhCH_3$, reflux.

Scheme 5.39 Dipolar cycloaddition of exo-glycals

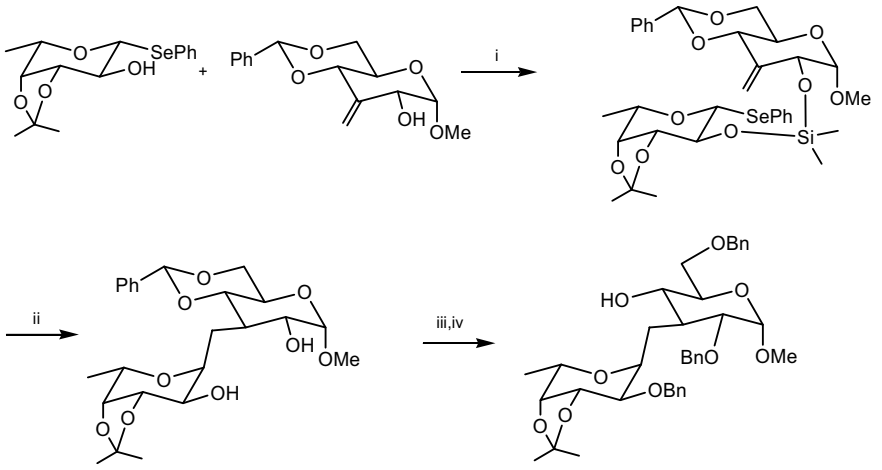


i) a) Bu_3SnH, AIBN, PhH, 60°C. b) HF, THF. c) H_2,Pd/C, MeOH, AcOEt.

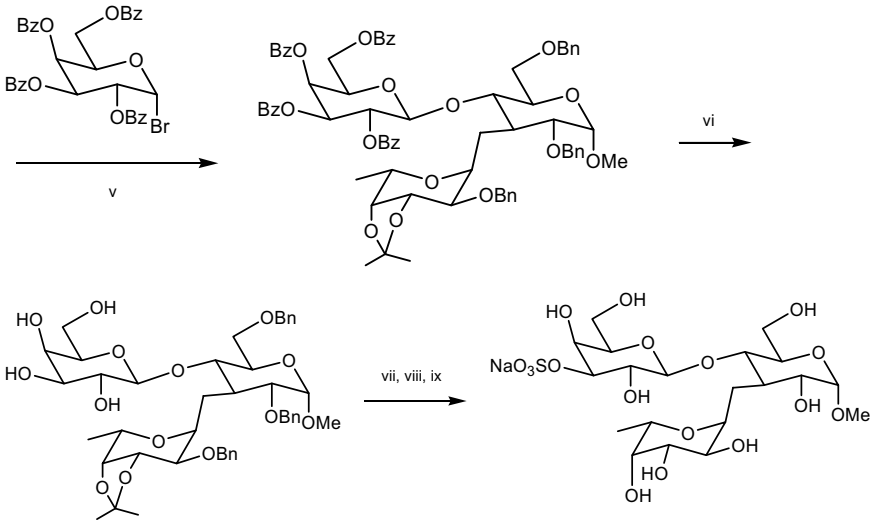
Scheme 5.40 C-glycoside construction under the tether approach

5.1.12 Unprotected Sugars

Direct coupling reaction between unprotected aldoses with aglycones such as dibenzoylmethane gave aryl ketone β-C-glycosides in good yields when treated with



Scheme 5.41 Preparation of sulfated C-trisaccharide under the tether methodology

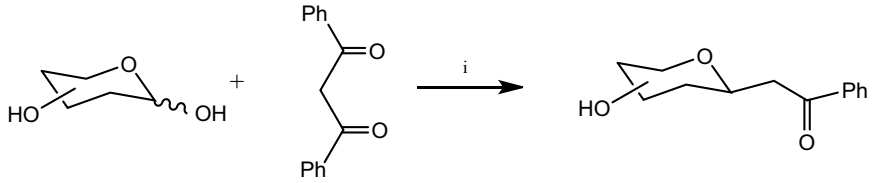


i) a) BuLi; Me_2SiCl_2 (4.4 equiv.), THF, -78°C to 20°C. b) imidazole, THF, r.t. ii) Bu_3SnH (2 equiv.), AIBN, PhMe, 110°C, 17 h. then Bu_4NF, THF, r.t., 60%. iii) BnBr, NaH, DMF, 100%. iv) $NaBH_3CN$, HCl, 70%. v) AgOTf, collidine, MS. 80%. vi) MeONa/MeOH, 97%. vii) Bu_2SnO, MeOH. viii) SO_3/Me_3N, 70%, 3 steps. ix) H_2, Pd/C, 100%.

Scheme 5.41 (continued)

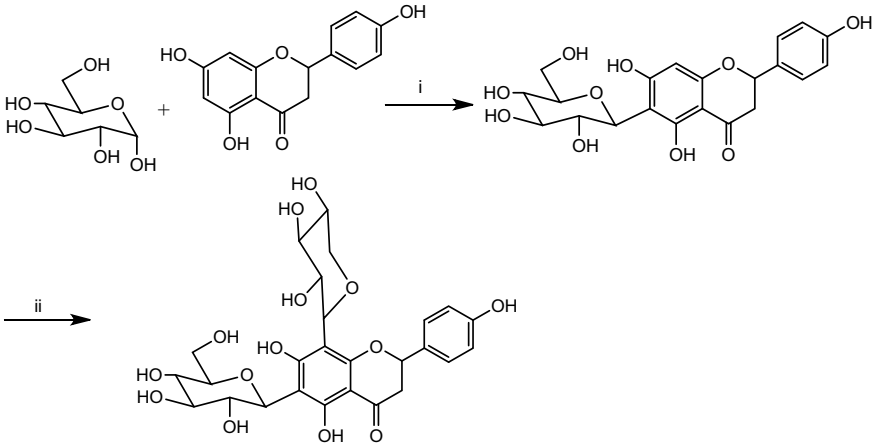
sodium bicarbonate base and a mixture of ethanol–water and subjected to microwave irradiation (Scheme 5.42) [70].

The C-glycoside flavonoid Vicenin-3 was prepared with high regioselectivity by condensation of naringenin with unprotected D-glucose and D-xylose in the presence of scandium trifluoromethanesulfonate although providing moderate yields (Scheme 5.43) [71].



i) $NaHCO_3$, EtOH-H_2O (4:1), MW

Scheme 5.42 Synthesis of aryl ketone β-C-glycosides under microwave irradiation

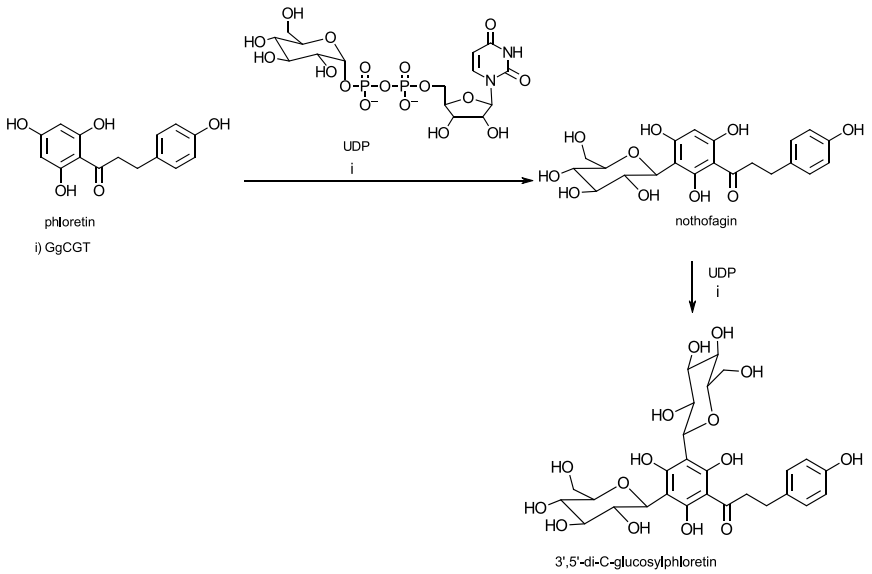


i) $Sc(OTf)_3$, CH_3CN/H_2O (2:1), reflux, 12h 22% yield. ii) D-Xylose, $Sc(OTf)_3$, $EtOH/H_2O$ (2:1), 80°C

Scheme 5.43 Synthesis of C-glycoside flavonoid vicenin-3 from unprotected monosaccharides

5.1.13 Enzymatic Approach

C-glycosyl transferases have been identified in plants from genus *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (GgCGT), rich in flavonoid and triterpenoid glycosides with the ability to catalyze a wide range of substrates employing UDP-Glc as donor, and phenols as acceptors, converting to the corresponding C-glycosides and in lesser extent to di C-glycosides (Scheme 5.44) [72].



Scheme 5.44 Enzymatic synthesis of C-glycosides and di C-glycosides with C-glycosyltransferase from *Glycyrrhiza glabra*

References

1. Belica PS, Franck RW (1998) Benzylic C-glycosides via the Ramberg-Backlund reaction. Tetrahedron Lett 39:8225–8228
2. Levy DE, Tang C (1995) The chemistry of C-glycosides. Pergamon Press, Oxford
3. McNally DJ, Wurms KV, Labbé C, Quideau S, Belanger RR (2003) Complex C-glycosyl flavonoid phytoalexins from Cucumis sativus. J Nat Prod 66:1280–1283
4. Pauletti PM, Castro-Gamboa I, Siqueira-Silva DH, Marx-Young MC, Tomazela DM, Eberlin MN, da Silva-Bolzani V (2003) New antioxidant C-glucosylxanthones from the stems of Arrabidaea samydoides. J Nat Prod 66:1384–1387
5. Pasetto P, Franck W (2003) Synthesis of both possible isomers of the northwest quadrant of altromycin B. J Org Chem 68:8042–8060
6. Dolle RE, Niclolaou KC (1985) Total synthesis of elfamycins: aurodox and efrotomycin. 1. Strategy and construction of key intermediates. J Am Chem Soc 107:1691–1694
7. Ireland RE, Anderson RC, Badoub R, Fitzsimmons B, McGarvey S, Thaissivongs S, Wicox CS (1983) The total synthesis of ionophore antibiotics. A convergent synthesis of lasalocid A (X537A). J Am Chem Soc 105:1988–2006
8. Emery F, Vogel P (1993) Total synthesis of undeculofuranosiduronic acid derivatives related to herbicidins. Tetrahedron Lett 4209–4212
9. Paterson L, Keown LE (1997) Studies in marine macrolide synthesis: Stereocontrolled synthesis of the F-ring subunit of spongistatin 1 (altohyrtin A). Tetrahedron Lett 38:5727–5730
10. Lewis MD, Cha JK, Kishi Y (1982) Highly stereoselective approaches to a- and b-C-glycopyranosides. J Am Chem Soc 104:4976–4978
11. Du Y, Linhardt RJ, Vlahov I (1998) Recent advances in stereoselective C-glycoside synthesis. Tetrahedron 54:9913–9959
12. (a) Postema MHD (1995) C-glycoside Synthesis. CRC Press, Boca Ratón. (b) Postema MHD (1992) Recent developments in the synthesis of C-glycosides. Tetrahedron 48:8545–8599

13. Sinaÿ P (1997) Synthesis of oligosaccharide mimetics. Pure Appl Chem 69:459–463
14. Gervay J, Hadd MJ (1997) Utilization of ELISA technology to measure biological activities of carbohydrates relevant in disease states. Curr Med Chem J Org Chem 62:6961–6967
15. Lin L, He X-P, Xu Q, Chen G-R, Xie J (2008) Synthesis of β-C-glycopyranosyl-1,4-naphthoquinone derivatives and their cytotoxic activity. Carbohydr Res 343:773–779
16. Liu Z, Byun H-S, Bittman R (2010) Synthesis of immunostimulatory α-C-galactosylceramide glycolipids via sonogashira coupling, asymmetric epoxidation, and trichloroacetimidate-mediated epoxide opening. Org Lett 12:2974–2977
17. Yang Y, Yu B (2017) Recent advances in the chemical synthesis of C-glycosides. Chem Rev 117(19):12281–12356
18. Oyama K, Kondo TJ (2004) Total synthesis of flavocommelin, a component of the blue supramolecular pigment from Commelina communis, on the basis of direct 6-C-glycosylation of flavane. Org Chem 69:5240–5246
19. Kitamura K, Ando Y, Matsumoto T, Suzuki K (2018) Total synthesis of aryl C-glycoside natural products: strategies and tactics. Chem Rev 118:1495−1598
20. Calzada E, Clarke CA, Roussin-Bouchard C, Wightman RH (1995) Synthesis of C-glycofuranosides by the stereoselective reduction of hemiacetals. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:517–518
21. Oddo A, Holl R (2012) Design and stereoselective synthesis of a C-aryl furanoside as a conformationally constrained CHIR-090 analogue. Carbohydr Res 359:59–64
22. Srinivas B, Reddy TR, Kashyap S (2015) Ruthenium catalyzed synthesis of 2,3-unsaturated C-glycosides from glycals. Carbohydr Res 406:86–92
23. McGarvey G, LeClair ChA, Schmidtmann BA (2008) Studies on the stereoselective synthesis of C-allyl glycosides. Org Lett 10:4727–4730
24. de Matos AM, Blázquez-Sánchez MT, Bento-Oliveira A, de Almeida RFM, Nunes R, Lopes PEM, Machuqueiro M, Cristóvão JS, Gomes CM, Souza CS, El Idrissi IG, Colabufo NA, Diniz A, Marcelo F, Conceição Oliveira M, López Ó, Fernandez-Bolaños JG, Dätwyler P, Ernst B, Ning K, Garwood C, Chen B, Rauter AP (2020) Glucosylpolyphenols as inhibitors of Aβ-induced fyn kinase activation and tau phosphorylation: synthesis, membrane permeability, and exploratory target assessment within the scope of type 2 diabetes and Alzheimer's disease. J Med Chem 63(20)11663–11690
25. Cinti F, Moffa S, Impronta F, Cefalo CMA, Sun VA, Sorice GP, Mezza T, Giaccari A (2017) Spotlight on ertugliflozin and its potential in the treatment of type 2 diabetes: evidence to date. Drug Des Dev Therapy 11:2905–2919
26. Li Y, Shi Z, Chen L, Zheng S, Li S, Xu B, Liu Z, Liu J, Deng C, Ye F (2017) Discovery of a potent, selective renal sodium-dependent glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitor (HSK0935) for the treatment of type 2 diabetes. J Med Chem 60(10):4173–4184
27. Yu J, Cao Y, Yu HZ, Wang JJA (2019) Concise and efficient synthesis of dapagliflozin. Org Process Res Dev 23:1458–1461
28. Schmidt RW, Frick B, Haag-Zeino B Apparao S (1987) C-aryl-glycosides and 3-deoxy-2-glyculosonates via inverse type hetero-Diels-Alder reaction. Tetrahedron Lett 28:4045–4048
29. Lancelin JM, Pougny SP (1985) Use of selenium in carbohydrate chemistry: preparation of C-glycoside congeners. Carbohydr Res 136:369–374
30. Craig D, Pennington MW, Warner P (1999) Stereoselective synthesis of substituted tetrahydrofurans using 5-endo-trig cyclisation reactions. Tetrahedron 55:13471–13494
31. Khan AT, Sharma P, Schmidt RR (1995) Synthesis of C-disaccharides an unusual ring closure reaction. Carbohydr Res 14:1353–1367
32. Tius MA, Gomez-Galano J, Gu X, Zaidi JH (1991) C-Glycosylanthraquinone synthesis: total synthesis of vineomycinone B2 methyl ester. J Am Chem Soc 113:5775–5783
33. Koester DC, Leibeling M, Neufeld R, Werz DB (2010) A Pd-catalyzed approach to (1→6)-linked C-glycosides. Org Lett 12:3934–3937
34. Abas A, Beddoes RL, Conway JC, Quayle P, Urch CJ (1995) Synthesis and Diels-Alder reactions of semicyclic sugar containing dienes. Synlett 1264–1266

35. Johns BA, Pan YT, Elbein AD, Johnson CR (1985) Use of selenium in carbohydrate chemistry: preparation of C-glycoside congeners. Carbohydr Res 136:369–374
36. Lv W, Chen Y, Wen S, Ba D, Cheng G (2020) Modular and stereoselective synthesis of C-aryl glycosides via Catellani reaction. J Am Chem Soc 142(35):14864–14870
37. Kometani T, Kondo H, Fujimori Y (1988) Improvement in O→ C-glycoside rearrangement approach to C-aryl glycosides: use of 1-O-acetyl sugar as stable but efficient glycosyl donor. Synthesis 1005–1007
38. Zhu F, Rodriguez J, Yang T, Kevlishvili I, Miller E, Yi D, O'Neill S, Rourke MJ, Liu P, Walczak MA (2017) Glycosyl cross-coupling of anomeric nucleophiles: scope, mechanism, and applications in the synthesis of aryl C-glycosides. J Am Chem Soc 139:17908–17922
39. Yi D, Zhu F, Walczak MA (2018) Glycosyl cross-coupling with diaryliodonium salts: access to aryl C-glycosides of biomedical relevance. Org Lett 20:1936−1940
40. Burkhart F, Hoffmann M, Kessler H (1997) Synthesis of a C-glycosidic analog of N-glucoasparagine. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 36:1191–1192
41. Parker KA, Coburn CA (1991) Reductive aromatization of quinol ketals: a new synthesis of C-aryl glycosides. J Am Chem Soc 113:8516–8518
42. Martin OR, Lai W (1993) Synthesis and conformational studies of .beta.-(1.fwdarw.6)- and .beta.,beta.-(1.fwdarw.1)-linked C-disaccharides. J Org Chem 58:176–185
43. (a) Schawab P, France MB, Ziller JW, Grubbs RH (1995) A series of well-defined metathesis catalysts—synthesis of $[RuCl_2(=CHR')(PR_3)_2]$ and its reactions. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 34:2039–2041. (b) Postema MHD, Piper JL, Betts RL (2005) RCM-based synthesis of a variety of β-C-glycosides and their in vitro anti-solid tumor activity. J Org Chem 70:829–836
44. Roy R, Dominique R, Das SK (1999) Extended alkenyl glycosides by ruthenium-catalyzed cross-metathesis reaction and application toward novel C-linked pseudodisaccharides. J Org Chem 64:5408–5412
45. Mazéas T, Skrydstrup JM, Beau JM (1995) Synthesis of an RGD-sialyl-LewisX glycoconjugate: a new highly active ligand for P-selectin. Angew Chem 107:990–993
46. Krintel SL, Jiménez-Barbero J, Skrydstrup T (1999) A convergent synthesis of alpha-C-1,3-mannobioside via SmI2-promoted C-glycosylation. Tetrahedron Lett 40:7565–7568
47. Dondoni A, Marra A (2000) Methods for anomeric carbon-linked and fused sugar amino acid synthesis: the gateway to artificial glycopeptides. Chem Rev 100:4395–4422
48. Ohnishi Y, Ichikawa Y (2002) Stereoselective synthesis of a C-glycoside analogue of N-Fmoc-serine beta-N-acetylglucosaminide by Ramberg-Bäcklund rearrangement. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 12:997–999
49. Yang G, Franck RW, Bittman R, Samadder P, Arthur G (2001) Synthesis and growth inhibitory properties of glucosamine-derived glycerolipids. Org Lett 3:197–200
50. Griffin FK, Paterson DE, Taylor RJ (1999) Ramberg-Bäcklund approaches to the synthesis of C-linked disaccharides. Angew Chem Int Ed 38:2939–2942
51. Togo H, He W, Waki Y, Yokohama M (1998) C-glycosidation technology with free radical reactions. Synlett 7:700–717
52. Chenede A, Perrin E, Rekai ED, Sinaÿ P (1994) Synthesis of C-disaccharides by a samarium diiodide induced intramolecular coupling reaction of tethered sugars. Synlett 420–422
53. Giese B, Gröninger KS, Witzel T, Korth HG, Sustmann R (1987) Synthesis of 2-deoxy sugars. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 26:233–234
54. Adak L, Kawamura S, Toma G, Takenaka T, Isozaki K, Takaya H, Orita A, Li HC, Shing TKM, Nakamura M (2017) Synthesis of aryl C-glycosides via iron-catalyzed cross coupling of halosugars: stereoselective anomeric arylation of glycosyl radicals. J Am Chem Soc 139(31):10693−10701
55. Taillefumier C, Chapleur Y (2004) Synthesis and uses of exo-glycals. Chem Rev 104:263–292
56. Bischofberger K, Hall RH, Jordaan A (1975) Synthesis of glycosyl-amino acids. J Chem Soc Chem Commun 806–807
57. Hall RH, Bischofberger K, Eitelman SJ, Jordann A (1977) Synthesis of C-glycosyl compounds. Part 1. Reaction of ethyl isocyanoacetate with 2,3:5,6-di-O-isopropylidene-D-mannono-1,4-lactone. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:743–753

58. Chapleur Y (1984) A convenient synthesis of substituted chiral tetrahydrofurans from sugar γ-lactones. J Chem Soc Chem Commun 449–450
59. Wilcox CS, Long GW, Suh H (1984) A new approach to C-glycoside congeners: metal carbenemediated methylenation of aldonolactones. Tetrahedron Lett 25:395–398
60. Brockhaus M, Lehmann J (1977) The conversion of 2,6-anhydro-1-deoxy-d-galacto-hept-1-enitol into 1-deoxy-d-galacto-heptulose by β-d-galactosidase. Carbohydr Res 53:21–31
61. Eitelman SJ, Hall RH, Jordaan AJ (1976) A synthesis of acyclic sugar oxazoles. Chem Soc Chem Commun 923–924
62. Griffin FK, Paterson DE, Murphy PV, Taylor RJK (2004) A new route to exo-glycals using the Ramberg-Backlund rearrangement. Eur J Org Chem 1305–1323
63. Toth M, Somsak L (2001) exo-Glycals from glycosyl cyanides. First generation of C-glycosylmethylene carbenes from 2,5- and 2,6-anhydroaldose tosylhydrazones. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:942–943
64. Lay L, Nicotra F, Panza L, Russo G, Caneva E (1992) Synthesis of C-disaccharides through dimerization of exo-enitols. J Org Chem 57:1304–1306
65. Li X, Takahasi H, Ohtake H, Ikegami S (2004) 1,3-Dipolar cycloaddition of exo-methylenesugars with nitrone: approach to new amino-C-ketosyl disaccharides. Tetrahedron Lett 45:4123–4126
66. Casiraghi G, Zanardi F, Rassu G, Spanu P (1995) Stereoselective approaches to bioactive carbohydrates and alkaloids—with a focus on recent syntheses drawing from the chiral pool. Chem Rev 95:1677
67. Vauzeilles B, Cravo D, Mallet J-M, Sinay P (1993) An expeditious synthesis of a C-disaccharide using a temporary ketal connection. Synlett 522–524
68. Fairbanks AJ, Perrin E, Sinaÿ P (1996) Synthesis of the carbon skeleton of the herbicidins via a temporary silaketal tether. Synlett 679–681
69. Mazeas DST, Doumeix O, Beau JM (1994) Samarium iodide induced intramolecular C-glycoside formation: efficient radical formation in the absence of an additive. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 33(13):1383–1386
70. Feng W, Fang Z, Yang J, Zheng B, Jiang Y (2011) Microwave-assisted efficient synthesis of aryl ketone β-C-glycosides from unprotected aldoses. Carbohydr Res 346:352–356
71. Sato S, Koide T (2010) Synthesis of vicenin-1 and 3, 6,8- and 8,6-di-C-β-D-(glucopyranosyl-xylopyranosyl)-4′,5,7-trihydroxyflavones using two direct C-glycosylations of naringenin and phloroacetophenone with unprotected D-glucose and D-xylose in aqueous solution as the key reactions. Carbohydr Res 345:1825–1830
72. Zhang M, Li F-D, Li K, Wang Z-L, Wang Y-X, He J-B, Su H-F, Zhang Z-Y, Chi C-B, Shi X-M, Yun C-H, Zhang Z-Y, Liu Z-M, Zhang L-R, Yang D-H, Ma M, Qiao X, Ye M (2020) Functional characterization and structural basis of an efficient di-C-glycosyltransferase from Glycyrrhiza glabra. J Am Chem Soc 142(7):3506–3512

Chapter 6
Glycoconjugates

Carbohydrates covalently attached to proteins and lipids produce three types of glycoconjugates: proteoglycans, glycoproteins, and glycolipids. Although in the first two cases the types of linkages are the same, chemically proteoglycans behave as polysaccharides and glycoproteins having much less carbohydrate content as proteins. The third important class of glycoconjugates, constituted by a carbohydrate residue covalently attached to a lipidic component has been classified into four types depending on the lipidic nature: glycoglycerol, glycosyl polyisoprenol pyrophosphates, fatty acid esthers and glycosphingolipids [1].

The most common monosaccharides residues found in glycoconjugates are D-galactose, D-mannose, N-acetyl-D-glucosamine, N-acetyl-D-galactosamine, L-fucose, D-xylose, and sialic acids (Scheme 6.1).

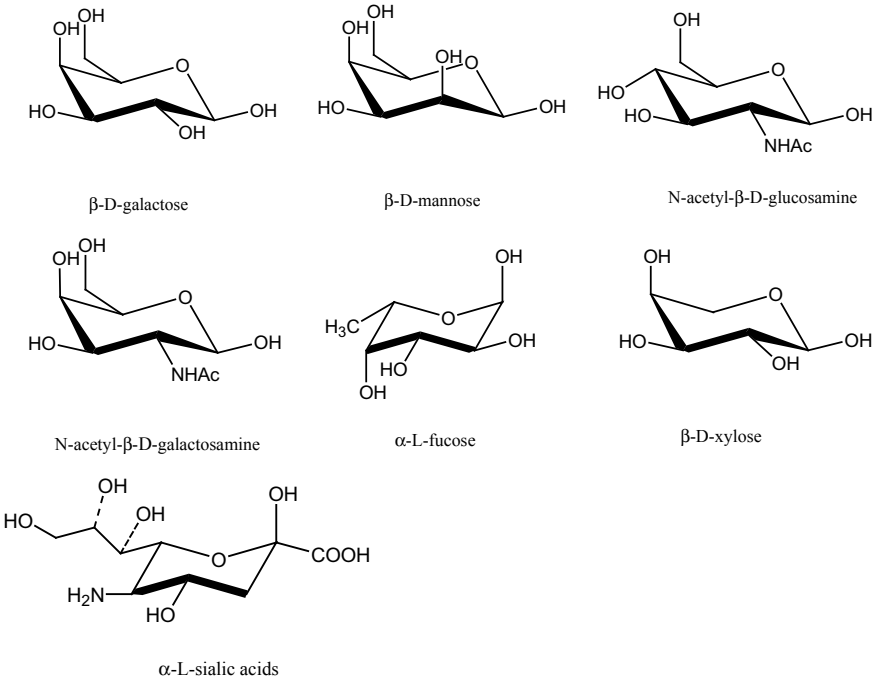
6.1 Biological Function and Structural Information

Glycoproteins and glycolipids are major components of the outer surface of mammalian cells. The former has been implicated in several essential events such as immune defense, viral replication, cell-cell adhesion, inflammation and cell growth, while the later in cell-cell recognition, growth, differentiation, and interaction with proteins of viral and bacterial pathogens.

It is attributed to the hepatic Gal [2]/GalNAc-binding receptor as the first recognition discovery of carbohydrates as biological signals [2]. Subsequently Man-6-phosphate receptor for lysosomal enzymes and Man-receptor from alveolar macrophages were reported and investigated [3, 4].

In the cellular immune system, some specific glycoproteins are implicated in the folding, quality control, and assembly of peptide-loaded major histocompatibility complex antigens and the T cells receptor complex. Furthermore, the oligosaccharides linked to glycoproteins provide protease protection, ER-associated retrograde transport of misfolded proteins, loading of antigenic peptides into MHC I class I,

M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_6



Scheme 6.1 Monosaccharides residues of glycoproteins

and influence the range of antigenic peptides generated in the endosomal pathway for presentation by MHC class II [5].

In addition, enveloped viruses such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) evades immune response by exploiting the host glycosylation machinery to protect potential antigenic epitopes [6]. They also use the host secretory pathway to fold and assemble their often heavily glycosylated coat proteins.

Another important fact to mention is that normal cells and tumor cells have evident differences in glycoprotein content on their cell membranes. Altered glycoproteins of the tumor membranes such as Thomsen-Friedenreich (T antigen) are tumor-associated antigen and belongs to the class of O-glycoproteins [7–9].

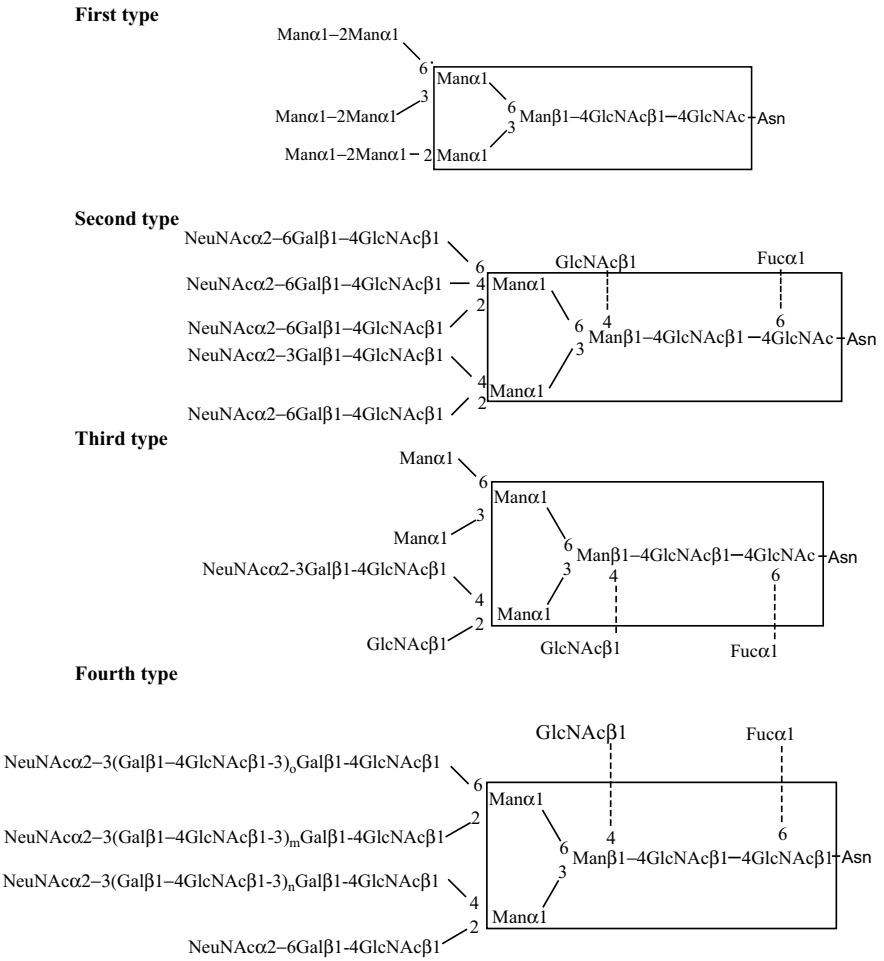
6.1.1 Classification of Glycocoproteins

Based on the type of the glycosidic bond formed between the sugar and the protein residues, glycoproteins are divided in *N*- and *O*-glycans. The first type involved the glycosidic linkage between asparagine and *N*-acetylglucosamine and the second

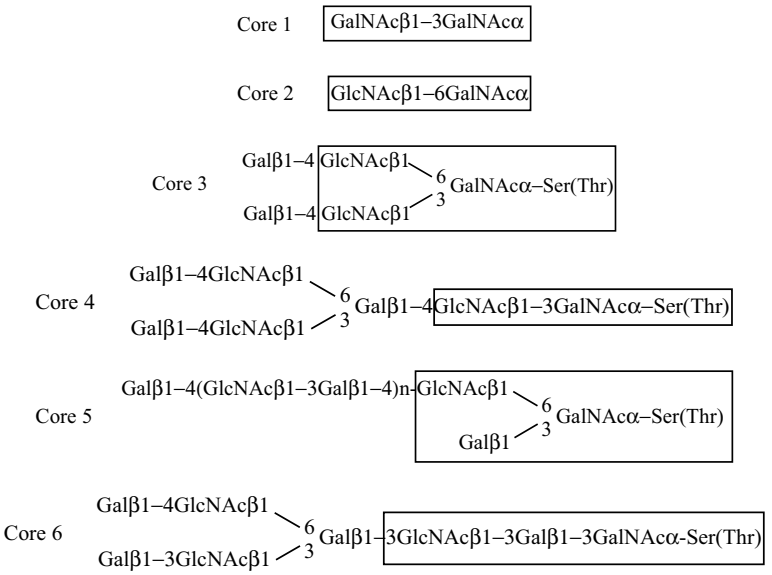
involves an *O*-glycosidic linkage between the sugar residue (fucose, galactose, *N*-acetylgalactosamineand *N*-acetylglucosamine) and the oxygen in the side chain serine, threonine or hydroxyl lysine.

It is known that N-linked glycans contain the pentasaccharide Manα1-6(Manα1-3)Manβ1-4GlcNAcβ1-4GlcNAc as a common core, and they have been classified into four main groups on the basis of the structure and the location of glycan residues added to the trimannosyl core: oligomannose, complex, hybrid, poly-N-acetylglucosamine (Scheme 6.2) [10].

O-glycans do not present common core structures and until now they have been classified in at least six groups according to different core structures (Scheme 6.3).



Scheme 6.2 The four groups of N-linked glycans



Scheme 6.3 Core structures in O-linked glycans

6.1.2 Recognition Sites

There are two main classes of glycosidic linkage depending on the type of glycosidic bond formed between the sugar residue and the protein: the *O*-linked glycans involving the aminoacids serine, threonine and hydroxyl lysine, and *N*-linked glycans involving the amino acid asparagine in the form of tripeptide with sequence AsnXSer (where X is any amino acid except proline).

Thorough studies with sugar analogs indicate that presumably the most important of the substituents is the equatorial OH-group on carbon 3. Also important is the OH-group on carbon 4 which can be either axial or equatorial depending on the glycoprotein. Regarding C-2, there is certain tolerance, however the size of the group should not be too large. Finally C-6 and the anomeric carbon apparently do not play significant role in the binding (Table 6.1) [11].

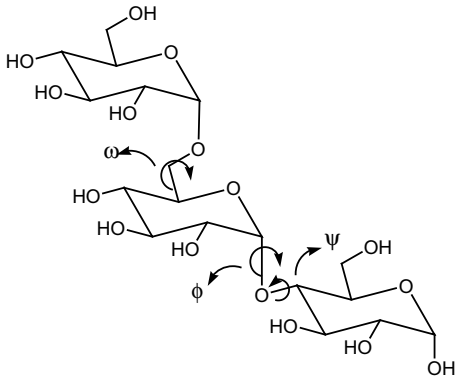
6.1.3 Structural Information of Glycoproteins

A better understanding about the conformation of glycoproteins has been reached by using NMR, molecular dynamics (MD) and in some cases X-ray diffraction techniques. The high motion of oligosaccharides mainly across the glycosidic linkage (Scheme 6.4) has limited the unambiguous conformational determinations in glycoproteins, however the conformations from the MD simulations are in good agreement

Table 6.1 Sugar requirements for three different glycoproteins

	Rat hepatic	Chicken hepatic	MBP-A
1		α≈β large substituents tolerated, negative group	
	Detrimental	Enhancing	Tolerable
2	Eq. N-Ac enhance binding	Eq. N-Ac enhance binding	No effect by N-Ac
3		Eq. OH required	
4	Axial OH required	Eq. OH required	Eq. OH required
5		Large subst. accepted	

Scheme 6.4 Angles of rotation of carbohydrates

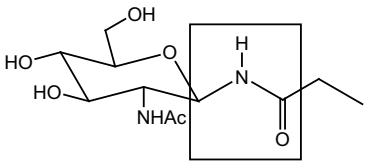


with the values from NMR studies. It has been observed that ω-angle prefers *Gauche* conformation by solvation effects with ϕ-angle largely determined by the anomeric effect, and the ψ-angle highly influenced by non-bonded interactions [12].

The linkage between the sugar residue and the amino acid asparagine (N-linked glycans) is planar along the C1-NH-C=O glycosidic linkage and flexible along the CO-CH_2-CH- bonds (Scheme 6.5).

Based on the considerations that N-glycosidic linkage are rigid for the amide group and flexible for the side chain angles, the conformational motion of the glycoproteins depends on the flexibility of the asparagine side chain. This flexibility will have considerable effect on the volume occupied by the sugar and the shielding effects of the carbohydrate over the protein surface.

Scheme 6.5 Planarity of the Asn-GlcNAc glycosidic linkage



Hydrogen bond and van der Waals interactions showed for some cases stacked conformations, and distances across a carbohydrate residue (from O-1 to O-4) of 5.4 Å and for the first three residues of the core of an N-linked oligosaccharide extend to approximately 16 Å from head to tail [12].

6.2 Carbohydrate Binding Proteins

Carbohydrate-binding proteins are defined as those proteins that interact through non covalent bonds with carbohydrates. Of particular interest are Lectins which binds reversibly to mono- and oligosaccharides with high specificity, and are apparently devoid of catalytic activity [13].

Carbohydrate binding proteins are widespread macromolecules found in virus, bacteria, plants and animals and act as recognition determinants including clearance of glycoproteins from the circulatory system, control of intracellular traffic of glycoproteins, recruitment of leukocytes to inflammatory sites, adhesion of infectious agents to host cells and cell interactions in the immune system in malignancy and metastasis [13].

Depending on the affinity showed toward the type of monosaccharide they can be classified in mannose, galactose/N-acetylgalactosamine, N-acetylglucosamine, L-fucose and N-acetylneuraminic acid. Due their high specificity, lectins specific for galactose do not recognize glucose or mannose, nor N-acetylglucosamine with N-acetylgalactosamine, but mannose-specific animals lectins do recognize fucose.

Lectins also exhibit high specificity for di-, tri-, and tetrasacharides and some interact only with oligosaccharides. Moreover different lectins specific for the same oligosaccharide may recognize different regions of its surface. Some of the lectins and their affinity ligands are shown in Table 6.2.

High resolution studies involving the protein sequence determination and three-dimensional analysis gave insight about the structure and molecular interaction between the sugar ligands and the proteins. As result of this structural analysis, it was observed on the basis of common structural features that lectins fall into three main categories:

(a) simple,
(b) mosaic or multidomain.
(c) macromolecular assemblies.

Simple lectins are most of known plant lectins (Legume, Cereal, Amaryllidaceae, Moraceae, Euphorbiaceae), animal lectins. (galectins or formely S-lectins), and Pentraxins, and contains a non identical small number of subunits of molecular weight below 40 kDa.

Mosaic or multidomain include viral hemagglutinins and animal lectins C- (endocytic lectins, collectins, selectins), P-, and I type. Their molecular weight is variable and are formed by different protein domains, having only one of them the carbohydrate binding site.

Table 6.2 Lectines and affinity ligands

Family	Lectin	Abbrev	Ligand
Legume (plant lectins)	Concanavalin	ConA	MeαMan MeαGlc Manα3(Manα6)Man
	Erithina corallodendron	EcorL	Galβ4Glc
	Fava bean	Favin	MeαMan
	Griffonia simplicifolia	GSIV	Fucα2Galβ3(Fucα4)GlcNAc
	Red kidney bean	PHA	Complex pentasaccharide
	Lathyrus ochrus	LOL I,II	Manα3Manβ4GlcNAc, complex octasaccharide
	Lentil	LCL	MeαMan, MeαGlc
	Pea	PSL	Manα3(Manα6)Man
	Peanut	PNA	Galβ4Glc
	Soybean	SBA	Biantennary pentasccharide
Cereal	Wheat germ	WGA	NeuAc(α2-3)Galβ4Glc GlcNAcβ4GlcNAc sialoglycopeptide
Amaryllidaceae	Snow drop	GNA	MeαMann mannopentaose
Moraceae	Artocarpus integrifolia	Jacalin	MeαGal
Galectins (animal lectins)	Human hart	Galectin 1	Galβ4GlcNAc octasaccharide
	Rat liver	Galectin 2	Galβ4Glc

Macromolecular assemblies are common in bacteria and usually present in he form of fimbriae which are filamentous, heteropolymeric organelles present on he surface of the bacteria [14].

Most plants lectins recognize and interact with terminal nonreducing units of oligo- and polysaccharides, glycoproteins and glycolipids. Anomeric preference is an important finding observed for different carbohydrate-binding proteins, for instance all mannose/glucose binding lectins display great preference for the α-anomeric forms [15], however lectins from Ricinus communis binds preferentially to β-galactosidases while other lectins makes not difference in binding to anomers of GalNAc and GlcNAc. A considerable amount of structural information about carbohydrate-binding proteins such as the complete amino acid sequences for various lectins is available [13, 16].

6.2.1 Combining Sites

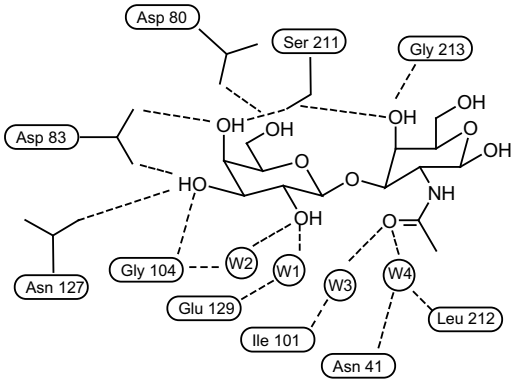
Lectins combine with carbohydrates mainly through weak forces such as hydrogen bonding, coordination with metal ions and hydrophobic interactions. The hydrogen bridge interaction is established between the carbohydrate hydroxyl groups and the amino groups. Additionally, contacts between the carbohydrate and the protein are mediated by water bridges (Scheme 6.6) [17].

Although carbohydrates are essentially polar molecules, there is a significant non-polar. or hydrophobic interactions which occurs between the N-acetyl group of amino sugars and the glycerol moiety of neuraminic acid, with the aromatic amino acids phenylalanine, tyrosine and tryptophan. In the combining site of wheat germ agglutinin with sialyllactose several van der Waals contacts stabilize the orientation of the sugar ring through nonpolar stacking interactions with the aromatic side chain of Tyr64, and Tyr66 that interacts through non-polar with the glycerol tail of the N-acetyl neuraminic acid (Scheme 6.7) [18].

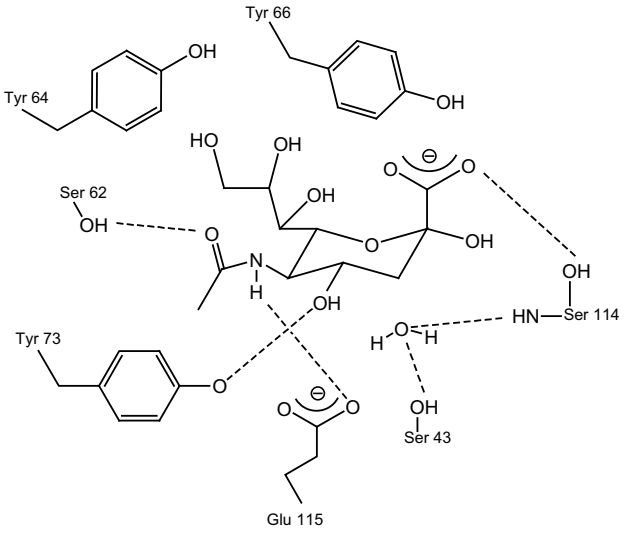
Several classes of lectins are ion dependent for their functional interaction with the ligands. Divalent ions such as calcium and manganesum participate in the stabilization of the amino acid positions that interact with the sugars. The Ca^{2+} ion establish a coordination bond with the carbonyl group of asparagine and with one carboxylate oxygen of an acidic amino acid. The Mn^{2+} does not coordinate any residues that interact directly with the protein, but is involved in fixing the Ca^{2+}.position (Scheme 6.8) [19, 20].

In the interaction of Concanavalin A with the branched trisaccharide Man(α1-6)[Man(α1-3)]Man, several hydrogen bond contacts between the hydroxyl group of the sugar and the aminoacid residues are observed. Some of these interactions are bifurcated or involves water and contributes importantly in the recognition process (Scheme 6.9) [13, 21].

Carbohydrate-binding proteins are classified in two types: Calcium dependent (C-type glycoproteins), and thiol reagent dependent (S-type). The former are structurally more diverse (although the binding region known as carbohydrate recognition domain

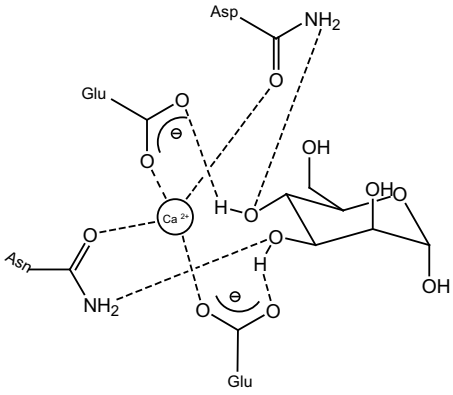


Scheme 6.6 Gal(β1 → 3)GalNAc in the combining site of peanut agglutinin



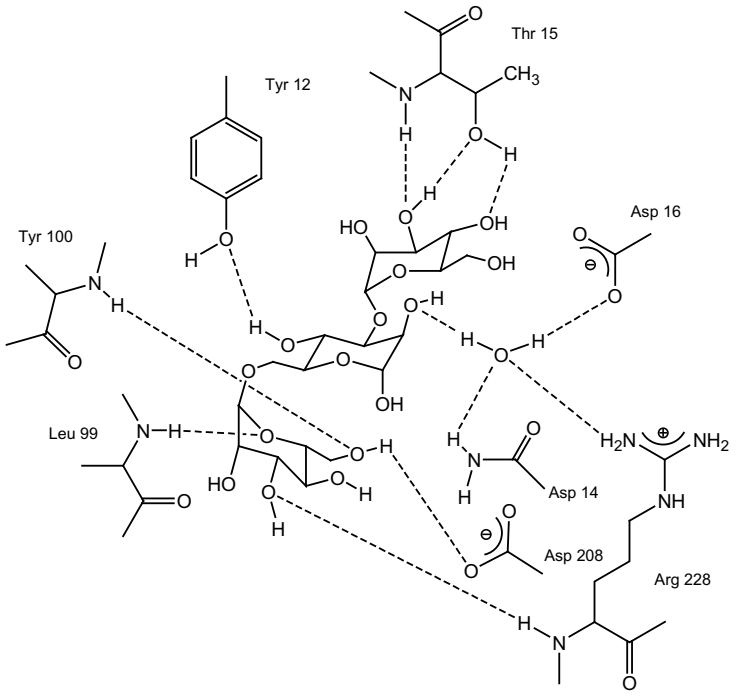
Scheme 6.7 Sialyllactose in the combining site of wheat germ agglutinin

Scheme 6.8 Mannose binding protein C with bound mannose



CRD is highly conserved) and more specific to organs and tissues, while the later are structurally more conserved and are more widespread among the organs and tissue examined [22]. Other carbohydrate-binding proteins that do not fall into this two categories are fibronectin and laminin, serum immunoglobulins, mannose-phosphate receptor, viral hemagglutinins, and serum amyloid protein.

Another important class of carbohydrate binding proteins are known as Selectins (classified as E-, P-, and L-selectins) and are defined as nonenzymatic and nonimmune proteins involved in the leukocyte recruitment to sites of inflammation [23, 24]. It has been found that the tetrasaccharide sialyl Lewis x is the recognition molecule and the use of synthetic sialyl Lewis x confirmed the hypothesis that sulfation increase the affinity for L-selectins [25].

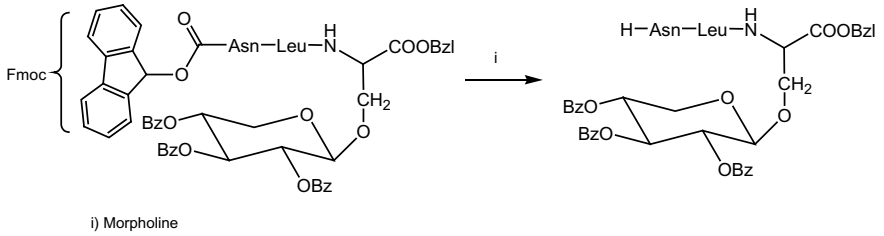


Scheme 6.9 Trimannoside binding site of Concanavalin A

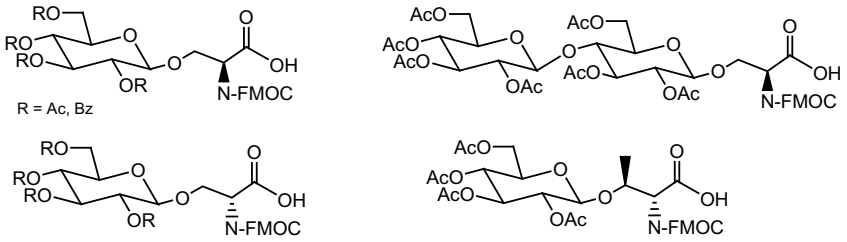
6.3 Glycopeptide Synthesis

The design of glycopeptides requires a combination of sugar and peptide chemistry, being a substantial part the installation of the *O*- or *N*-glycosidic bond [26, 27]. The synthetic approach is in principle designed on the basis of the glycosidic bond required. Thus, while in the case of *O*-glycopeptides, the synthetic methods relies on the common strategies for the preparation of *O*-glycosides, for the preparation of *N*-glycopeptides the strategy of choice involves the coupling between the amino glycosyl donor with aspartate in the presence of a condensing agent or by enzymatic catalysis.

Compatibility between the protecting groups and the glycosidic bond when they are subjected to different reaction conditions such as acid or base conditions is a sensitive issue. For instance it is known that the glycosidic bond in acetals is acid sensitive, however in the case of *O*-glycosyl serine and threonine they conversely present base-sensitivity. The introduction of selective protecting groups for amino acid functionalities which can be cleaved under mild conditions without affecting the glycoside bond or protecting groups attached to the sugar moiety is a feasible approach. Widely employed protecting groups used for this purpose is the Fmoc protecting group (9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl), Pyroc (2-(pyridyl)ethoxycarbonyl), and Aloc



Scheme 6.10 Peptide protecting group Fmoc and removal conditions



Scheme 6.11 N-α-FMOC-amino acid glycosides

(allyloxycarbonyl) for the peptide and Mpm (4-methoxy-benzyl ether) for the sugar region. The conditions needed for the cleavage of the mentioned protecting group in the presence of other functionalities are indicated in Scheme 6.10 [28, 29].

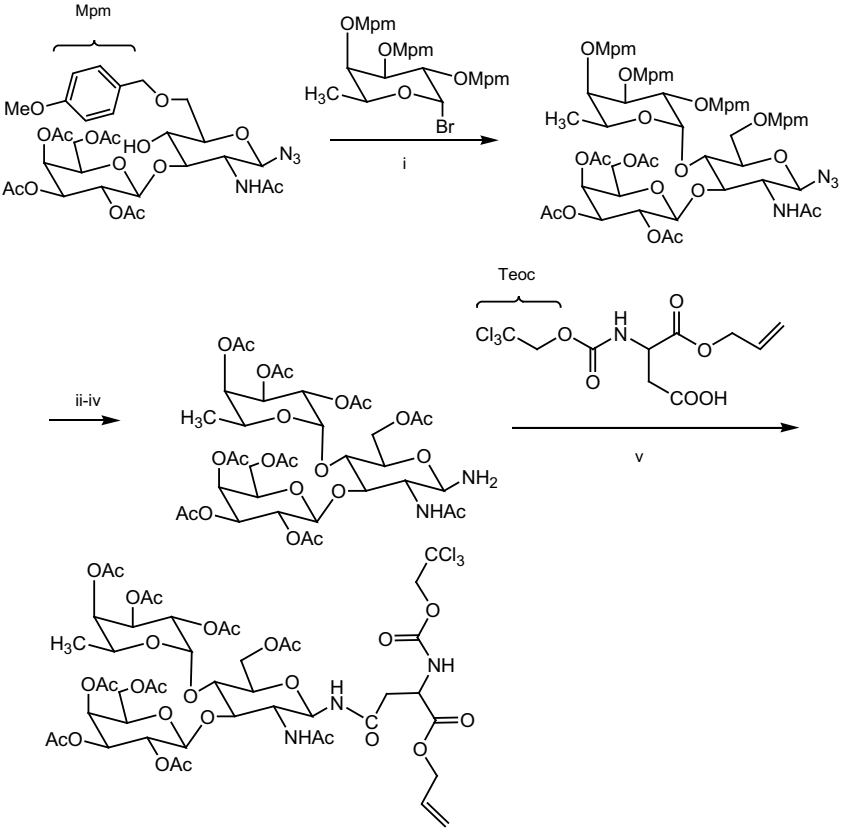
The synthesis of N-α-FMOC amino acid glycosides was carried out from O'Donnell Schiff bases or from N-α-FMOC amino protected serine or threonine and the appropriate glycosyl bromides under Koenigs-Knorr modified conditions [30]. The α-FMOC-protected glycosides were incorporated into 22 enkephalin glycopeptides analogues (Scheme 6.11).

Pyroc is another protecting group useful in peptide chemistry. It is stable to acids, bases and hydrogenolysis, but sensitive to morpholine. The allylic protecting group Aloc is also stable to acid, base and can be removed under of Pd(0) catalysis or weak base as morpholine [29].

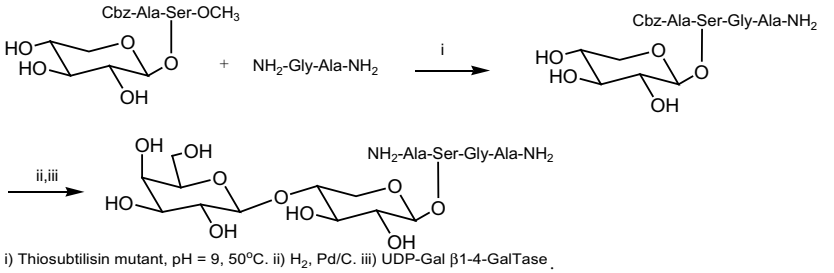
A tumor associated antigen Lewis^a was synthesized by applying a combination of compatible sugar and peptide protecting groups. For this method the azide group was used as anomeric amine precursor (scheme 6.12) [30].

Enzymes has been useful for peptide elongation using an engineered *subtilisin* and disaccharide bond formation with glycosyltransferase as shown in Scheme 6.13 [31].

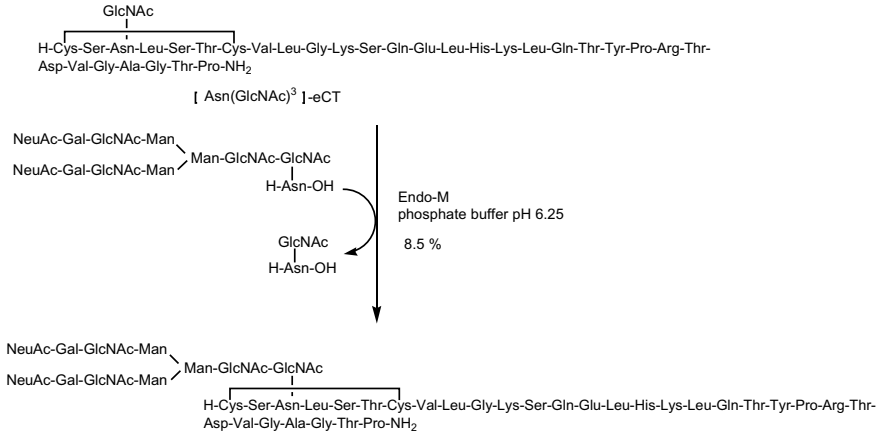
A novel chemoenzymatic synthesis of Ee1 Calcitonine glycopeptide analogue having natural N-linked oligosaccharides such as disialo biantennary complex-type as model compound for glycoprotein has been described. Natural oligosaccharides were next added by a transglycosylation reaction using endo-β-N-acetylglucosaminidase from *Mucor hiemalis* (Scheme 6.14) [32].



Scheme 6.12 Synthesis of glycopeptide Lewis[a]. Lewis[a] correspond to a human blood group system present on the surface of red blood cells

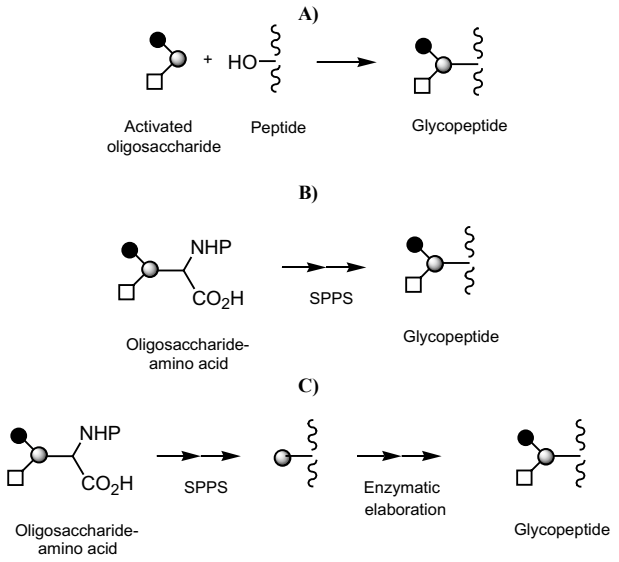


Scheme 6.13 Chemo-enzymatic synthesis of glycopeptide



Scheme 6.14 Atransglycosylation reaction for preparation of glycopeptide

According to Sears and Wong [33] there are three basic approaches for preparing glycopeptides with complex glycans. (A) A converged method consisting in the independent preparation of the sugar and peptide components, and final assemble. (B) The preparation of the sugar attached to an amino acid using glycopeptide chemistry and simultaneous peptide-linked to a glycal. (C) Solid-phase synthesis of the glycopeptide and chemoenzymatic elaboration of the glycal (Scheme 6.15).



Scheme 6.15 Proposed general approaches for glycopeptide synthesis

6.4 Glycoprotein Synthesis

Glycoproteins are essential macromolecules involved in a wide range of functions related to cellular recognition processes. Natural glycoproteins usually exist as a mixture of glycoforms, and found difficult to isolate for their structural characterization and for understanding more about their function [34, 35].

As mentioned, glycoproteins can be obtained by fermentation process, however this natural approximation produce a population of many different glycoforms as result of the participation of many glycosidases and transferases for a given protein, although the mixture can be useful for preparing homogeneous core which in turn might be re elaborated enzymatically [33]. The synthetic preparation of glycoproteins can be considered to some extend glycopeptide chemistry, although the complexity is undoubtedly superior. The synthesis of glycoproteins has received a considerable attention, most of them involving a combination of chemical and enzymatic methods [35–41].

A general strategy proposed by Duus et al. [42] considers the assembly of glycosylated amino acid building blocks in solid phase peptide synthesis according to the general scheme shown in Scheme 6.16.

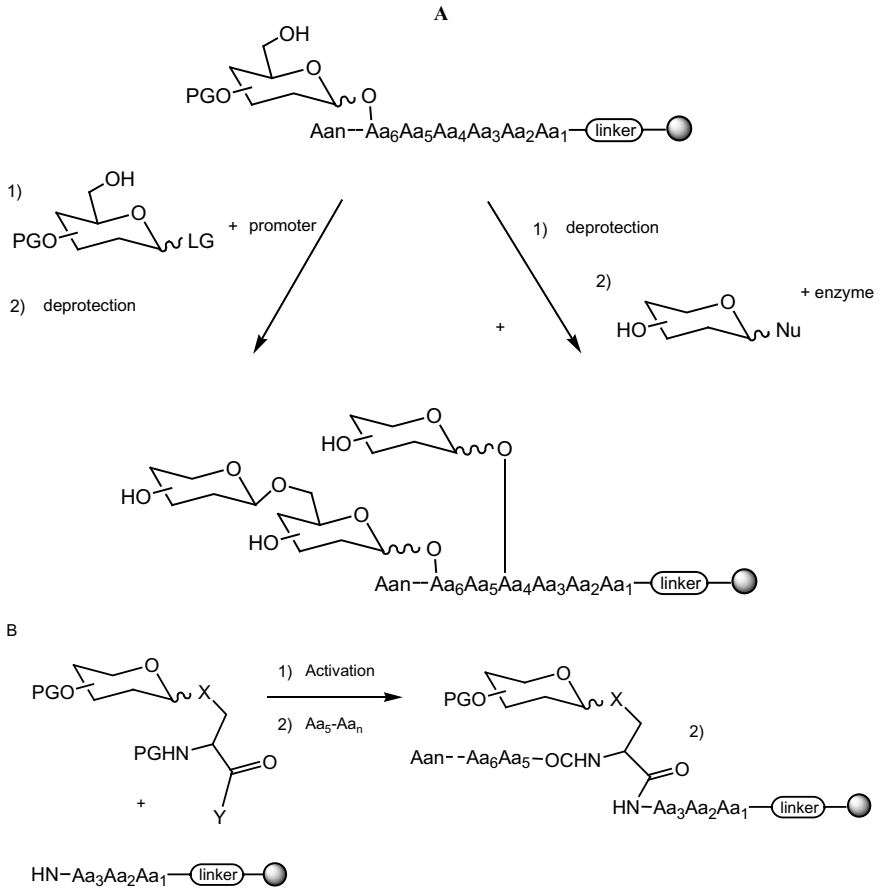
According to a comprehensive review the strategies described so far for chemical glycoprotein synthesis are: (a) Indiscriminate glycosylation, (b) chemoselective and site-specific glycosylation (c) site-selective glycosylation [43].

6.4.1 Indiscriminate Glycosylation

This non-selective approach consists in the preparation of sugars bearing functionalities that under proper conditions may react with a protein. Some of the sugar derivatives used for this purpose are shown in Scheme 6.17.

6.4.2 Chemoselective and Site-Specific Glycosylation

This approach intends to direct selectively the glycosidic linkage by using chemical and enzymatic tools. Such selectivity has been attempted under a strategy coined with the term chemoselective ligation, and some enzymes involved in this strategy are galactose oxidase [53], horseradish peroxidase Examples of these step reactions are indicated in Scheme 6.18.



Scheme 6.16 Strategies for glycopeptide synthesis

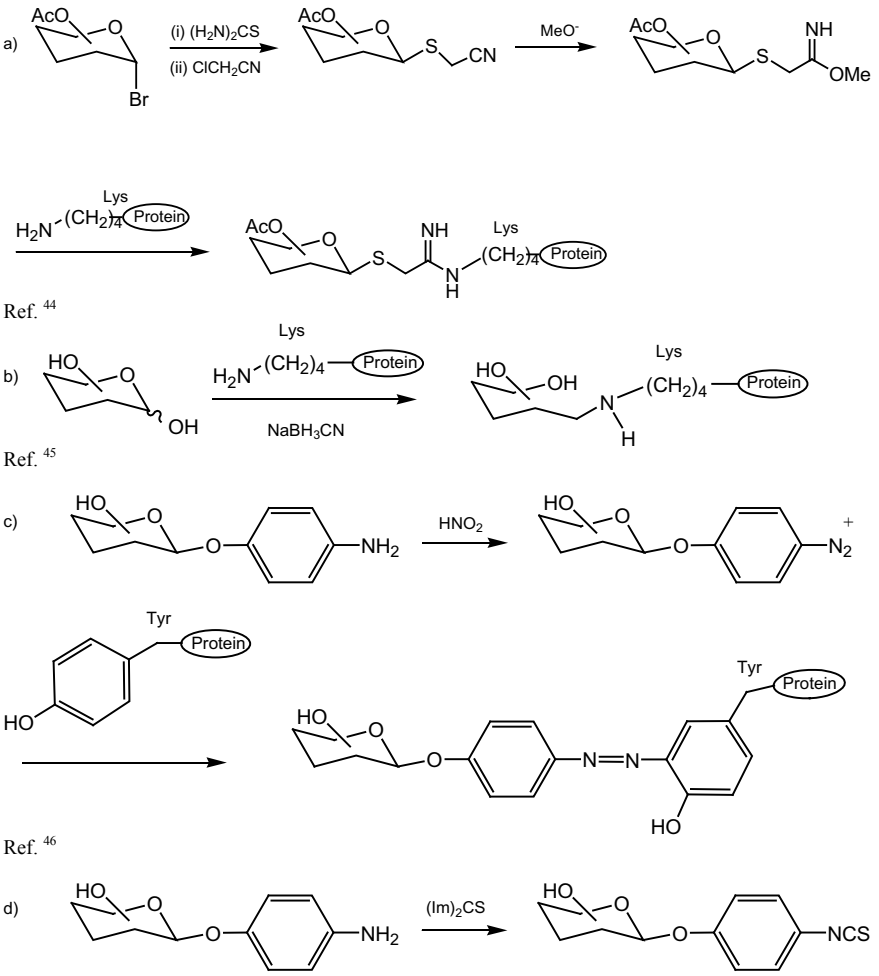
6.4.3 *Native Chemical Ligation and Site-Selective Glycosylation*

This possibility implies the choice of site selectivity on the glycan. In order to reach this goal a combined site-directed mutagenesis and chemical modification has been performed [62, 63]. This strategy involves the introduction of cysteine as chemoselective tag at preselected positions within a given protein and then reaction of its thiol group with glycomethanethiosulfonate (Scheme 6.19).

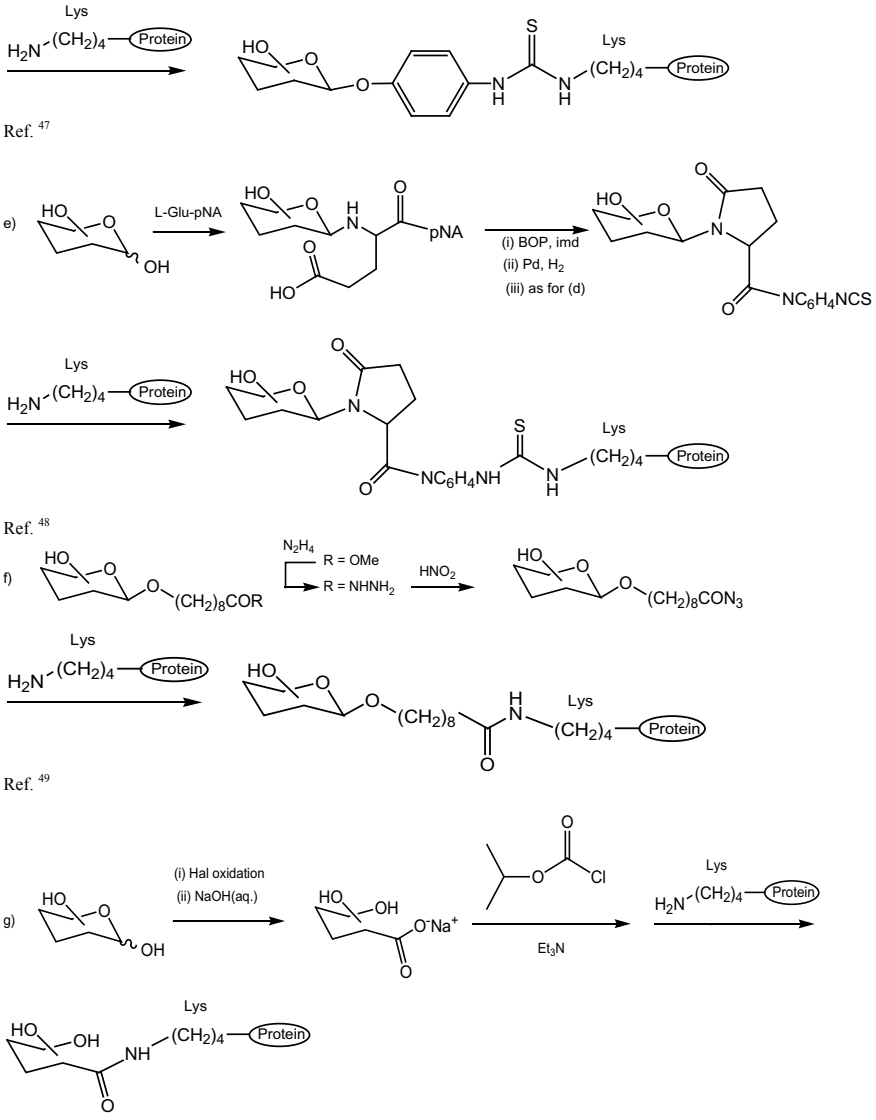
Native chemical ligation (NCL) in peptide synthesis is a widely recognized ligation method involving the N-terminal cysteine with a C-terminal thioester, which after a thio transesterification reaction produce a thio ester and subsequent amine nucleophilic attack giving place to the amide bond formation between the two peptide fragments (Scheme 6.20) [64]

By using this concept alternative methods involving glycosylamines have been developed for the synthesis of glycopeptides as shown in Scheme 6.21, consisting in the use of a thiol auxiliary linked to N-acetylglucosamine used for the thioester exchange with peptide 2 thioester derivative, followed by amide formation and final desulfurization to provide the target glycopeptide molecule [65–67].

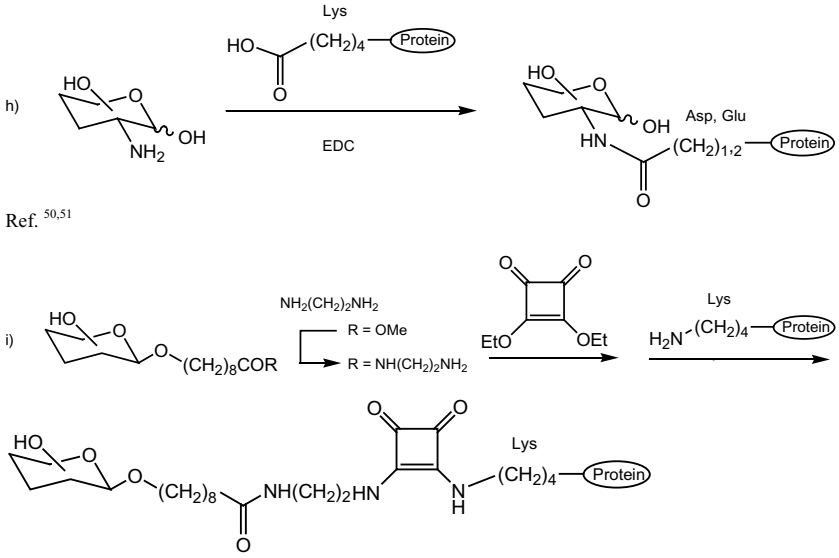
The development of a modified native chemical ligation termed diselenide–selenoester ligation (DSL) was implemented for the synthesis of glycopeptides including human interferon. The methodology involves the coupling between with C-terminus phenylselenoester peptide 1 with N-terminal selenocystine peptide 2 (cysteine oxidized form) without the need of additives and under mild deselinisation conditions (Scheme 6.22) [67].



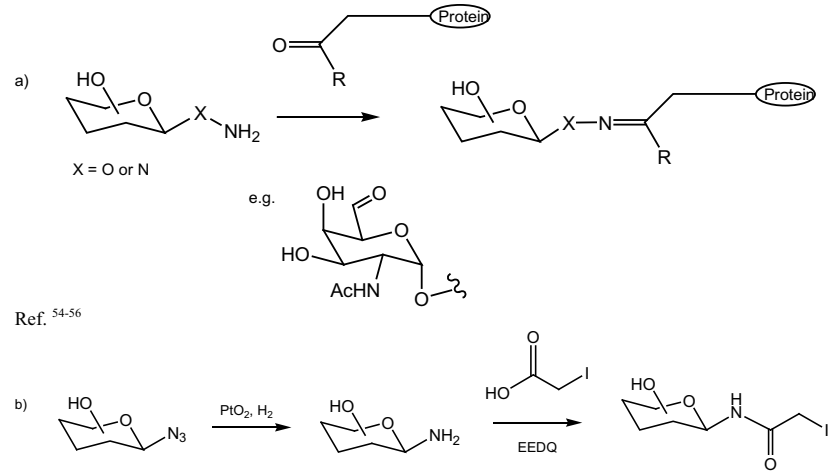
Scheme 6.17 Indiscriminate glycoprotein syntheses [44–52]



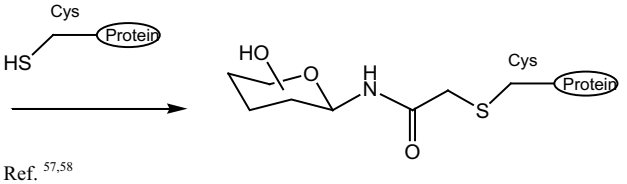
Scheme 6.17 (continued)



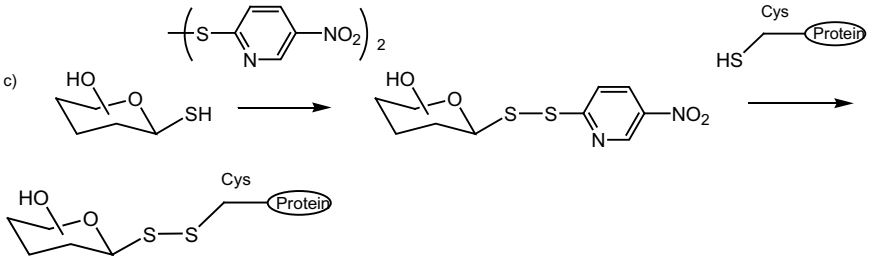
Scheme 6.17 (continued)



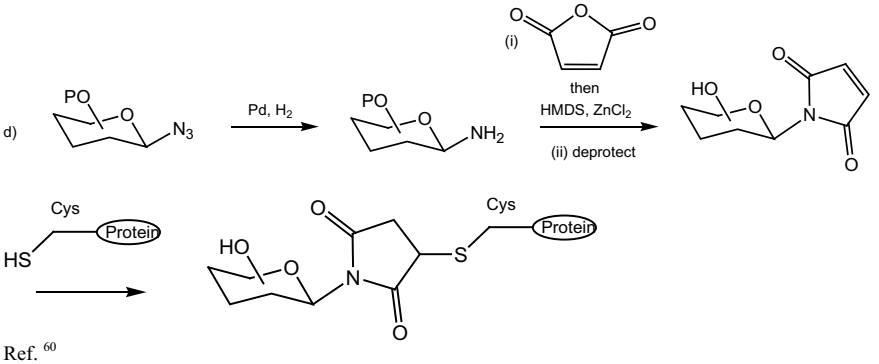
Scheme 6.18 Chemoselective and site specific glycoprotein syntheses [54–62]



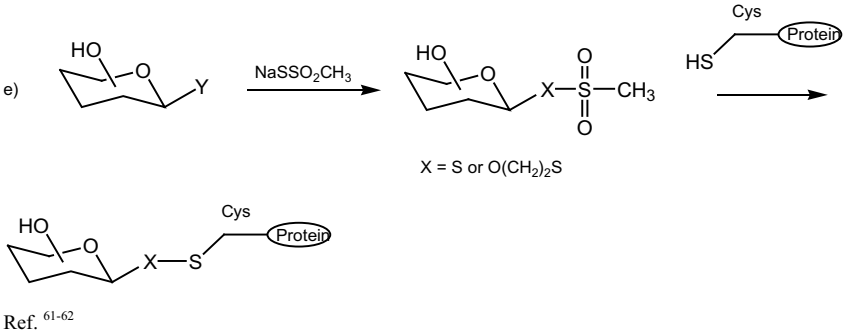
Ref. [57,58]



Ref. [59]

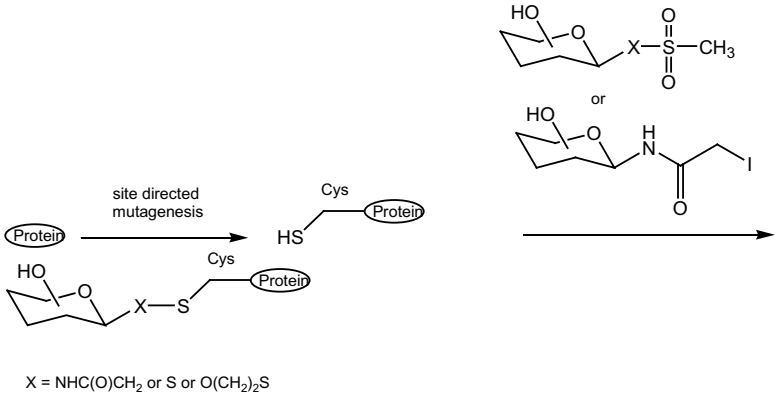


Ref. [60]

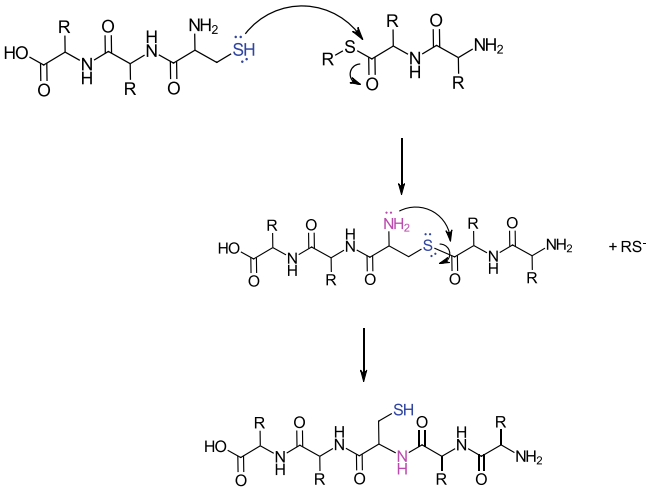


Ref. [61-62]

Scheme 6.18 (continued)



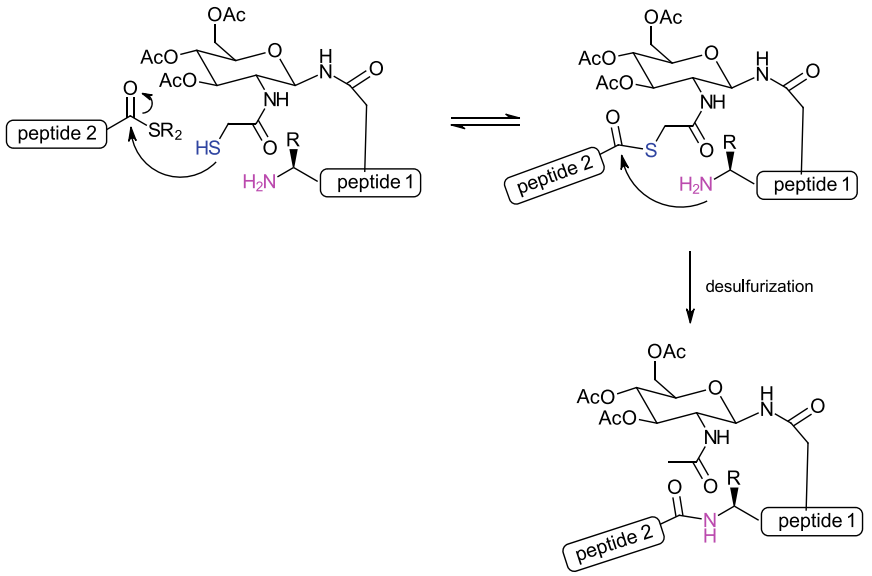
Scheme 6.19 Site-selective glycoprotein syhtheses



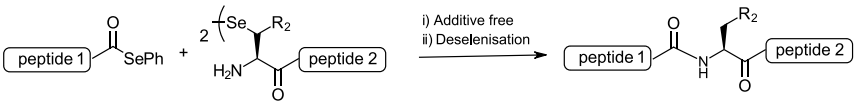
Scheme 6.20 Oligopeptide native chemical ligation (NCL)

6.4.4 Lansbury Aspartylation

This reaction describes a nucleophilic attack of an amino saccharide with a peptide having carboxylic group residue providing the desired amino saccharide attached to the peptide residue through an amide group, along with an acetamide formation and cyclic aspartimide peptide derivatives (Scheme 6.23) [68, 69].



Scheme 6.21 N-Glycopeptide Synthesis using native chemical ligation glycosyl auxiliaries



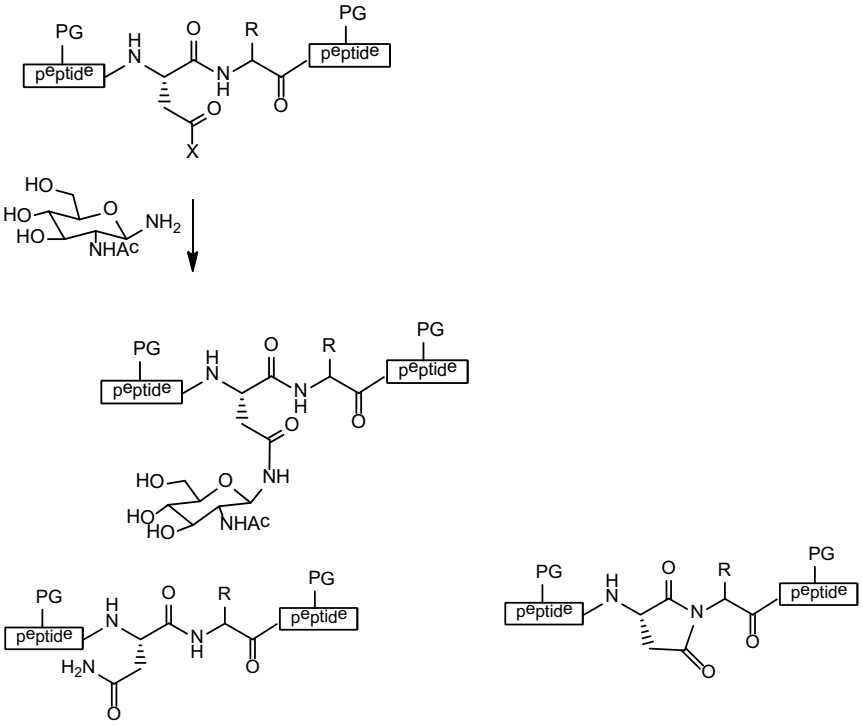
Scheme 6.22 Diselenide–selenoester ligation (DSL) general approach

6.4.5 *Guanylation Reaction*

This method considers the coupling of a glycosyl donor bearing an S-alkyl-isothiourea as a leaving group with a free amine attached at the peptide moiety under silver promoted condition, producing as a result a guanidine group between the sugar and the peptide (Scheme 6.24) [70].

6.4.6 *Enzymatic Synthesis*

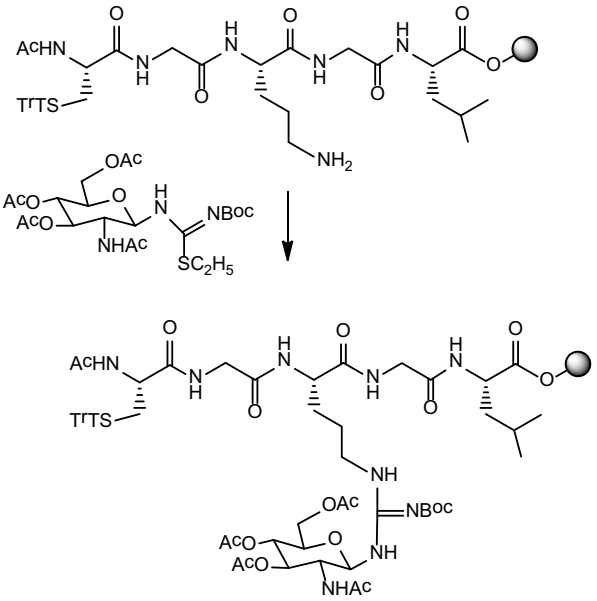
Three basic strategies are considered for obtaining glycoproteins following an enzymatic approach: The elaboration of glycans through the use of glycosyltransferases [71–74], the trimming of glycans by purification of glycoform mixtures



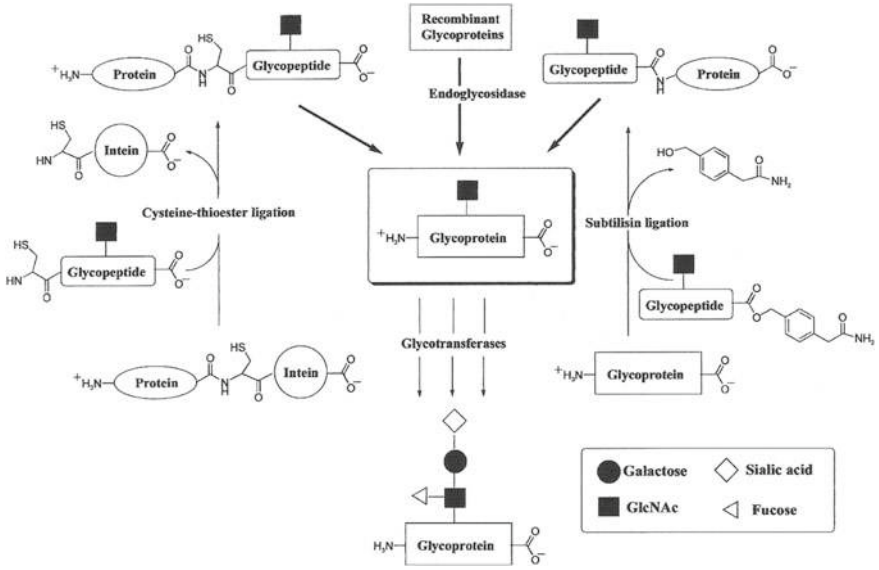
Scheme 6.23 Lansbury aspartylation reaction

through selective enzymatic degradation [75], and alteration of glycans or glycoprotein remodelation, consisting in combined trimming of existing glycan structures followed by elaboration to alternative ones. These methods were used for preparing an unnatural glycoform of ribonuclease B by using endoH degradation and elaboration with galactosyltransferase, fucosyltransferase and sialyltransferase system to construct an sLex glycoform [76]. Other approaches for the assembling of peptides are the "native peptide ligation" [77] and endoglycosidase-catalyzed transglycosylation [32].

Recent advances on glycoprotein synthesis proposes and in vitro approach involving in the following sequential steps, (a) remodeling of recombinant glycoproteins by using glycosidases and glycosyltransferases, (b) ligation of synthetic glycopeptides by enzymatic or chemical methods, (c) intein-mediated coupling of glycopeptides to larger proteins expressed as intein-fusion proteins, (d) ligation of glycopeptides to larger proteins containing N-terminal cysteine expressed as TEV protease cleavable fusion proteins, (e) in vitro translation, and (f) pathway re-engineering in yeast system to produc human –type N-lynked glycoforms (Scheme 6.25) [78].



Scheme 6.24 Guanylation reaction



Scheme 6.25 Strategies for glycoprotein synthesis in vitro

6.5 Synthesis of Antigenic Glycoconjugates

The preparation of complex glycoconjugates has been a current strategy for the design of synthetic vaccines, and usually involves the preparation of the oligosaccharide moiety which provides the immune specificity by chemical or enzymatic methods, and further attachment through a linker with an immunogenic protein. There has been a continuous effort for developing glycoconjugates containing antigens such as MBr1 antigen Globo-H, the blood group determinant and ovarian cancer antigen Lewis^y, N3 antigens associated with gastrointestinal cancer, the adenocarcinoma antigen KH-1, and the small cell lung carcinoma antigen fucosyl GM1 among others (Scheme 6.26), as promising alternative to develop potentially useful carbohydrate-based anticancer vaccines accessible for clinical program. The synthetic approach becomes justified if we consider that cancer and normal cell growing in tissue culture generally show minimal level of expression of such antigens [34].

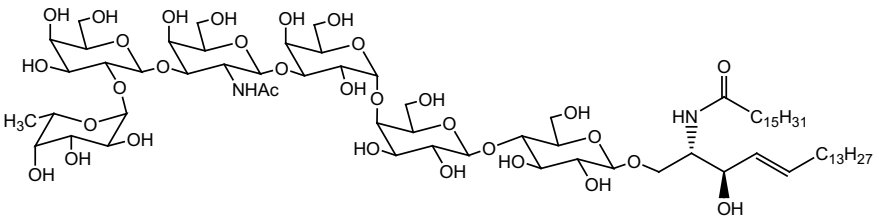
6.5.1 Glycosphingolipid and Gangliosides

6.5.1.1 Synthesis of Glycosphingolipid and Gangliosides

The chemical synthesis of most of these complex oligosaccharides represent a formidable challenge, and requires a convenient combination of strategies that allowed suitable manipulations using appropriate protecting groups, glycosyl donors, acceptors and coupling reactions conditions.

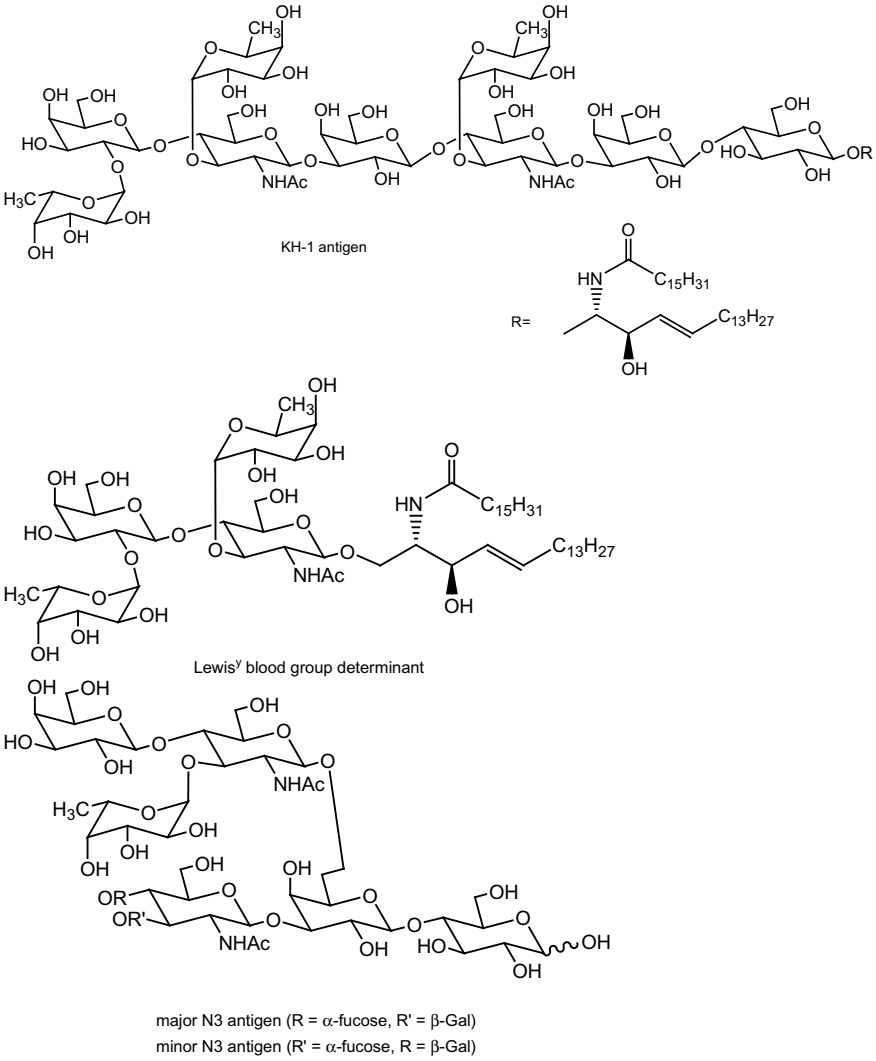
For instance the synthesis of glycolipid KH-1 was achieved by Deshpande et al. [34] based on the glycal methodology (Scheme 6.27).

Likewise, the synthesis of the water-soluble galactosphingolipid analog that binds specifically to recombinant gp 120 was prepared by condensation of *C*-glucosyl aldehyde with Wittig reagent affording the oxazolidone which was transformed into the *C*-glycosylamino acid. By following a subsequent standard protocol represented in Scheme 6.28 the target glycolipid was constructed [79].

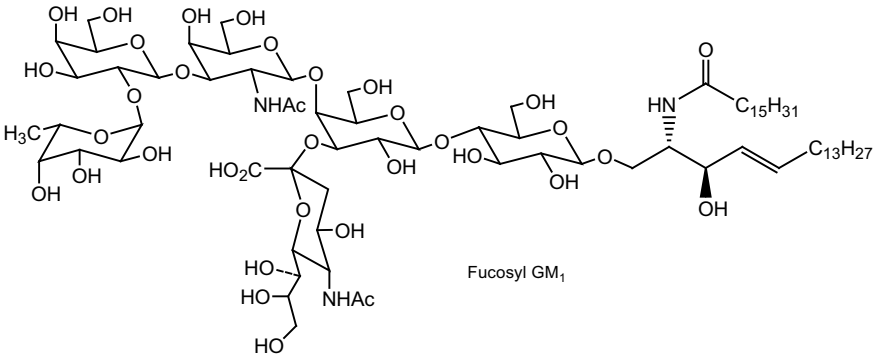


MBr1 antigen / Globo-H

Scheme 6.26 Carbohydrate structures of tumor associated antigens



Scheme 6.26 (continued)



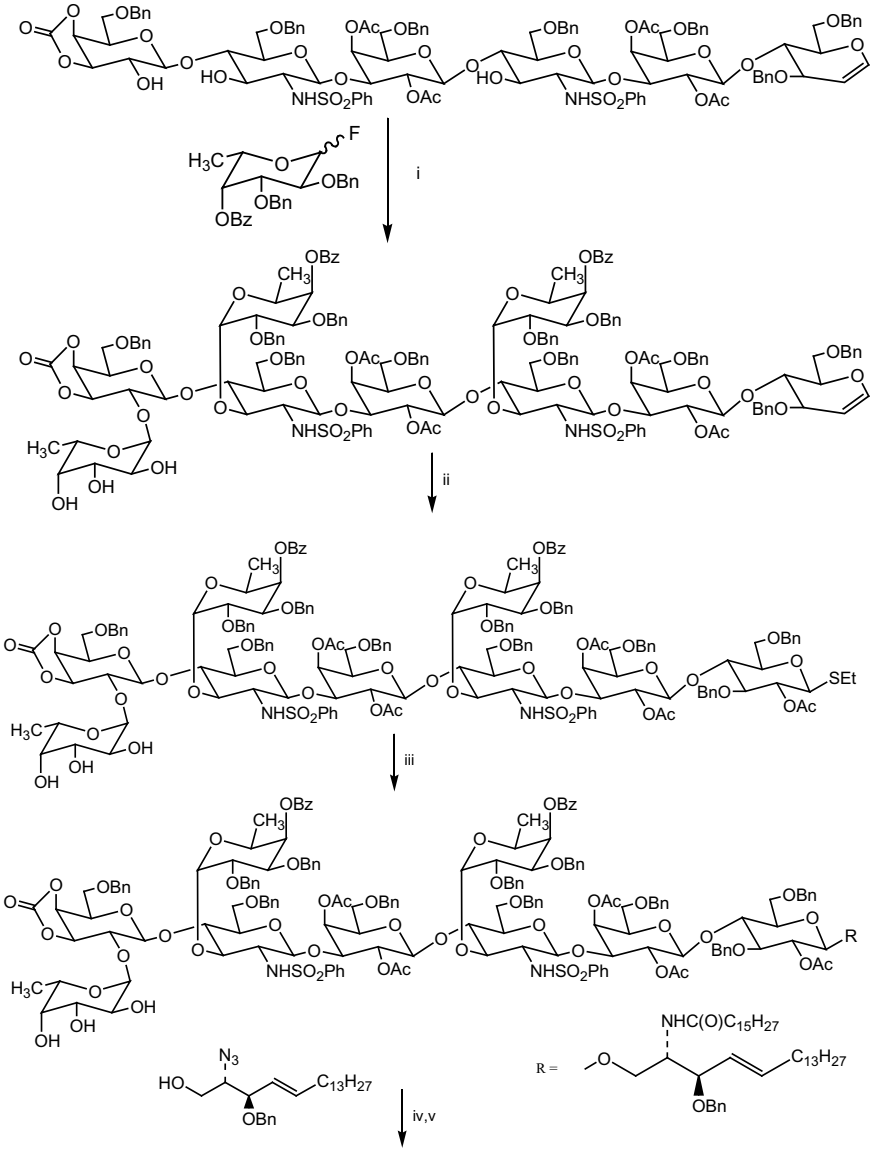
Scheme 6.26 (continued)

Glycoside ceramides are important molecules involved in apoptosis or active cell death. In leukemia cell lines C2 ceramide induces apoptosis via the sphingomyelin pathway. It has been observed that α-galactosylceramides having more than 10 carbons in fatty acid chain have immune stimulatory activities. Thus, the α-Gal-C2 was synthesized by direct glycosylation of C2-Cer with galactosyl fluoride donor in the presence of silver perchlorate as condensing agent (Scheme 6.29) [80].

The convergent synthesis is a procedure consisting in the parallel preparation of fragments or building block that will be connected through a coupling reaction, prior deprotection. This procedure was applied successfully for preparation glycosylphosphatydil inositols (GPI) which are involved in the attachment of glycoproteins with eukaryotic cells (Scheme 6.30) [37].

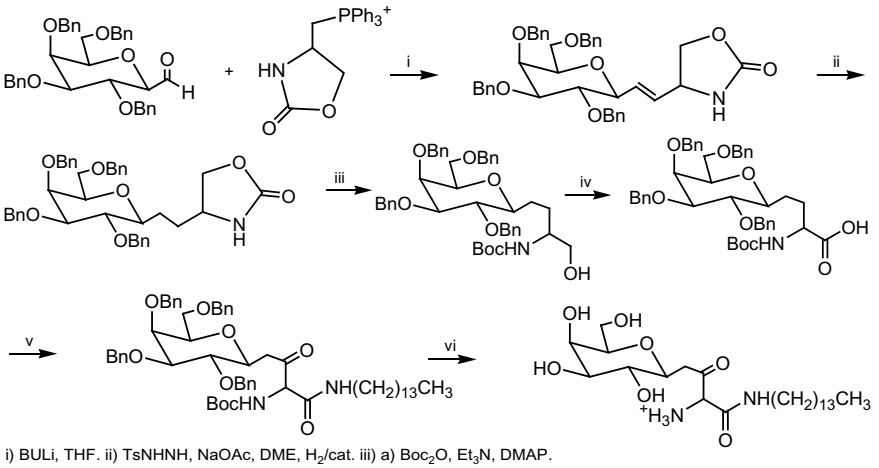
The potential of carbohydrates as antibiotics, antiviral and anticancer substances has been established. Besides, it has been demonstrated their involvement in fertilization, embryogenesis, regulation of the immune system tissue repair, neuronal development, intracellular pathways, and cancer transformation among others [12]. There is an increasing understanding of how carbohydrates behave biologically between normal and disease states and with this accurate information, novel carbohydrates and therapeutic approaches are developed. For instance novel glycoside sulfates have been reported as novel potentially useful drugs (Scheme 6.31) [81, 82].

A variety of glycosphingolipid have been synthesized such as galacturonic sphingolipid from Sphingomonas yanoikuyae [83], immunostimulant C-Glycosphingolipid [84], Mycobacterium tuberculosis Sulfolipids SL-1, Ac2SGL Analogues [85], pentasaccharide moieties of Ganglioside GAA-7 [86] and Ganglioside GM3 [87], Lipidated Brartemicin [88], Analogues, QS-17/18-Based Vaccine Adjuvant [89], Toll-like receptor ligand CRX-527 [90], *E coli* endotoxin Lipid A [91], αGalCer adyuvant [92], iNKT cell ligand [93] (Scheme 6.32).



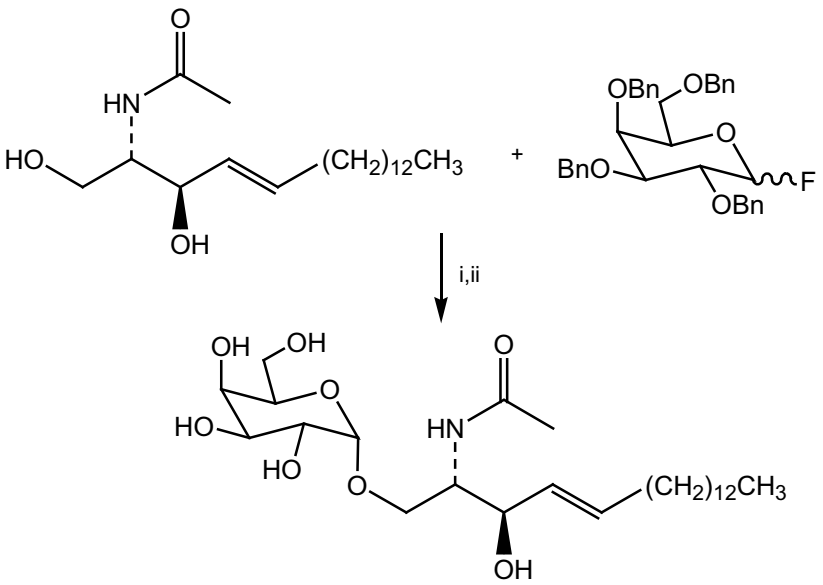
i) Sn(OTf), PhMe/THF (10:1), 4≈ MS. ii) a) DMDO, CH_2Cl_2. b) EtSH, CH_2Cl_2, H^+ (cat.).
c) Ac_2O, Py, CH_2Cl_2. iii) MeOTf, Et_2O/CH_2Cl_2 (2:1) 4≈M.S. iv) a) H_2/Pd-$CaCO_3$, palmitic anh. EtOAc. v) a) Na/NH_3, THF, then MeOH. b) Ac_2O, Et_3N, DMAP, CH_2Cl_2. c) MeONa, MeOH.

Scheme 6.27 Synthesis of KH-1 antigen



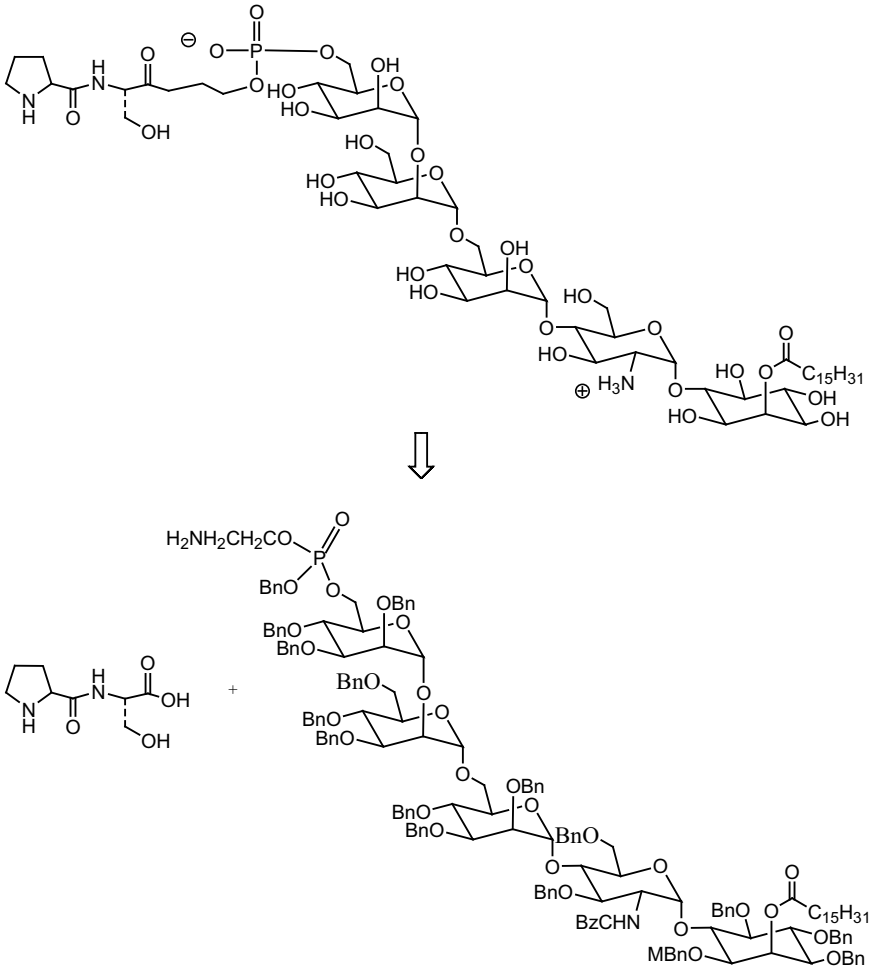
i) BULi, THF. ii) TsNHNH, NaOAc, DME, H_2/cat. iii) a) Boc_2O, Et_3N, DMAP.
b) C_SCO_3, MeOH. iv) Jones. v) EDC, HOBt, tetradecylamine. vi) a) TFA. b) H_2/Pd-C.

Scheme 6.28 Synthesis of galactosphingolipid analog

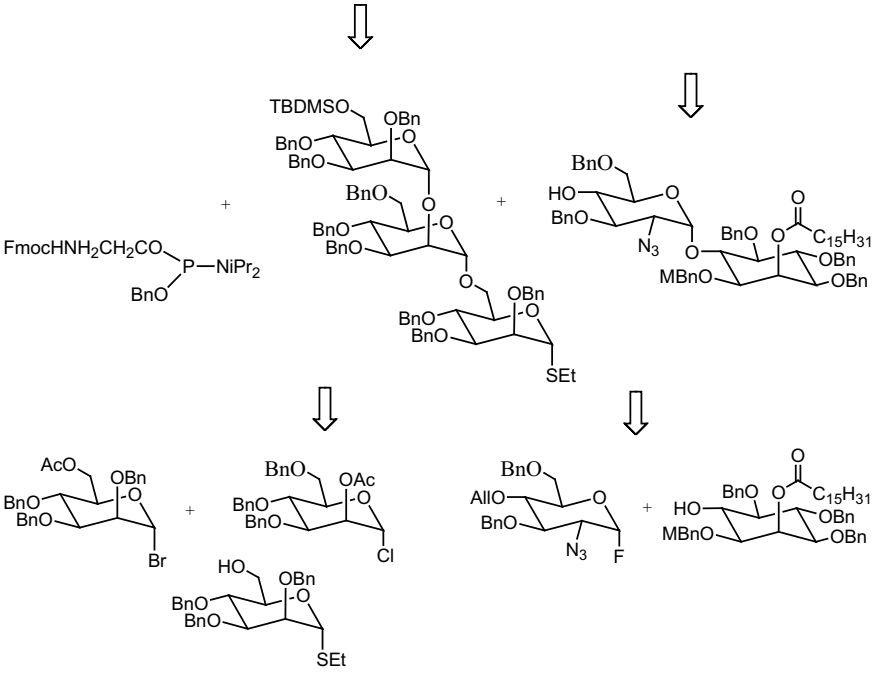


i) $AgClO_4$, THF, MS, 2h. ii) Na/NH_3, 2h.

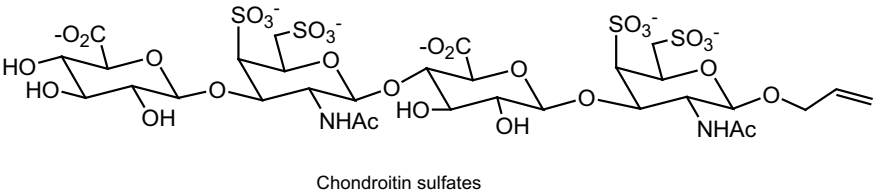
Scheme 6.29 Synthesis of glycosylceramide



Scheme 6.30 Retrosynthesis for the preparation of GPI-anchored peptide using convergent synthesis

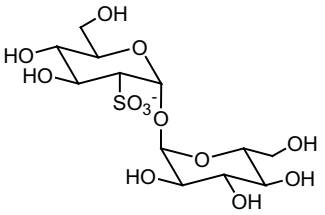


Scheme 6.30 (continued)

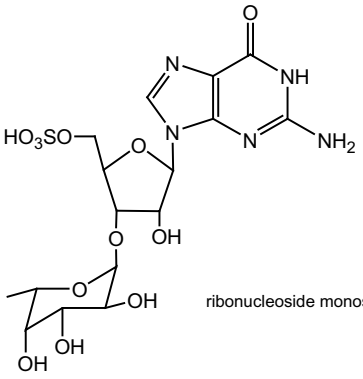


Chondroitin sulfates

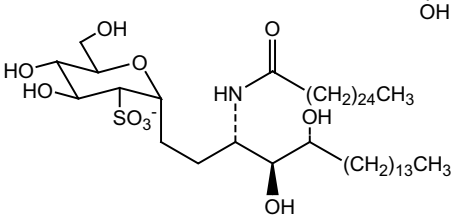
Scheme 6.31 Novel glycoside sulfates and phosphates as potential drugs



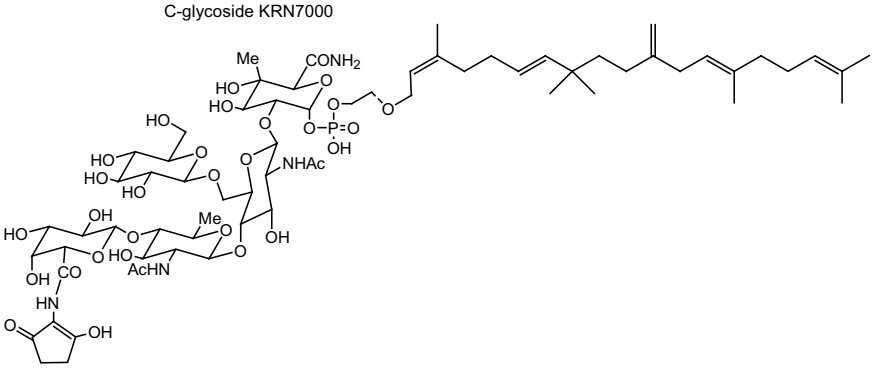
tetrahalose-2-sulfate



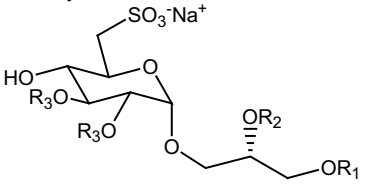
ribonucleoside monosulfate



C-glycoside KRN7000

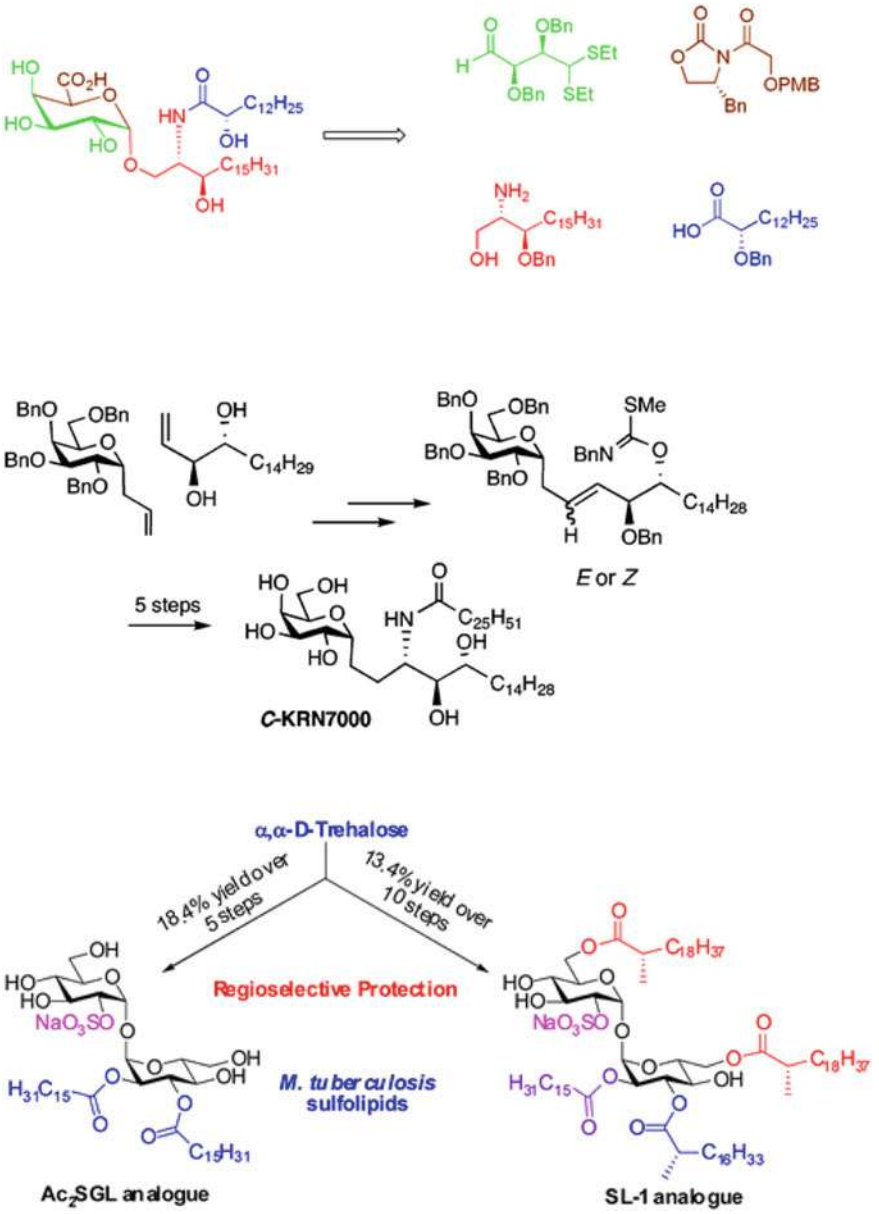


Menomycin A

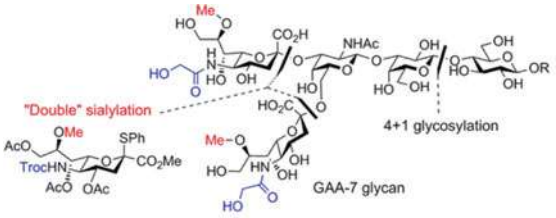


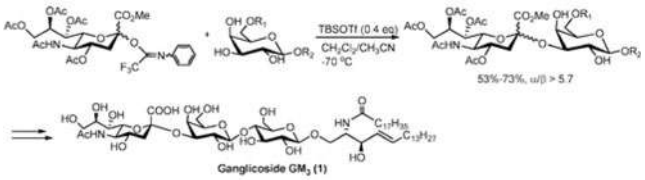
R_1 = oleoyl R_2 = palmitoyl R_3 = H
R_1 = linoleoyl R_2 = palmitoyl R_3 = H
R_1 = palmitoyl R_2 = palmitoyl R_3 = H
R_1 = linoleoyl R_2 = palmitoyl R_3 = palmitoyl

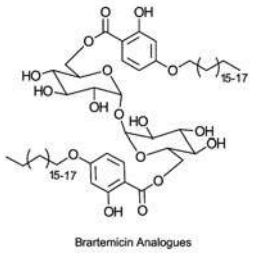
Scheme 6.31 (continued)



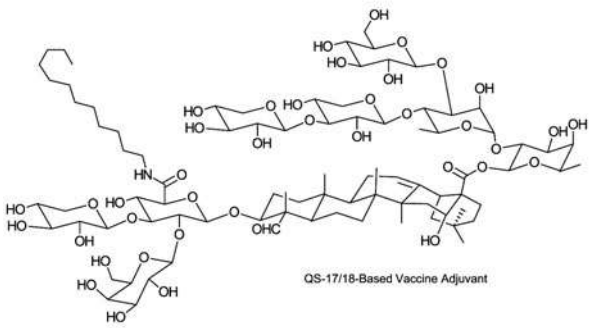
Scheme 6.32 Synthesis of antigenic glycosphingolipids and ganglioside [88–93]





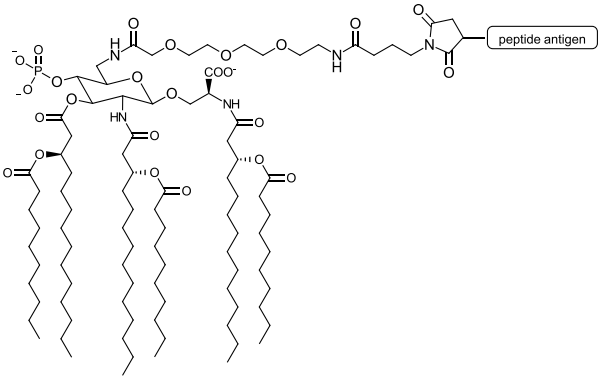


Ref[90]



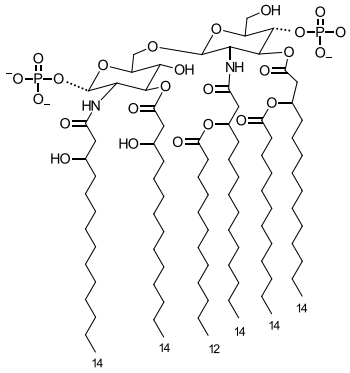
Ref[91]

Scheme 6.32 (continued)



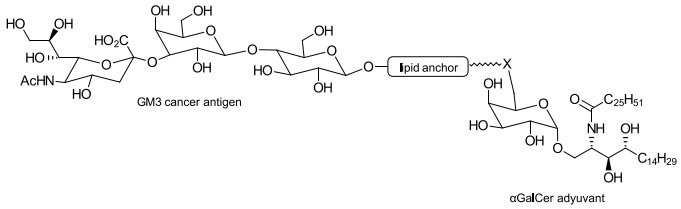
Toll-like receptor ligand CRX-527

Ref [92]



E coli endotoxin Lipid A

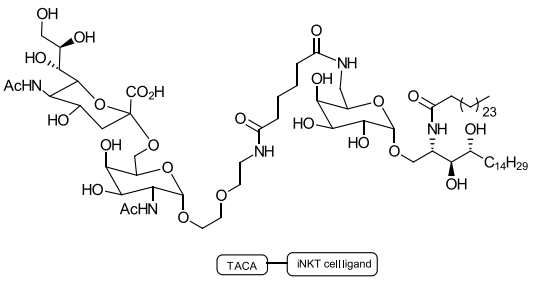
Ref [93]



Ref [94]

Scheme 6.32 (continued)

Scheme 6.32 (continued)



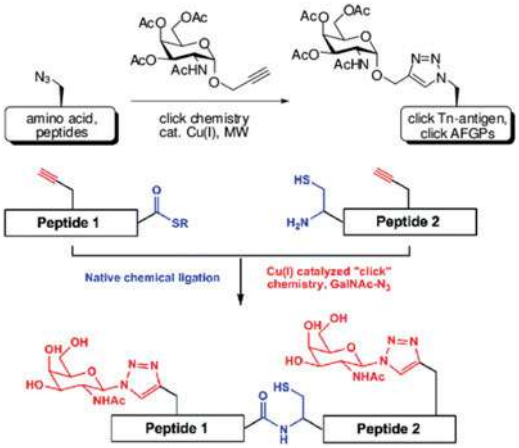
Ref [95]

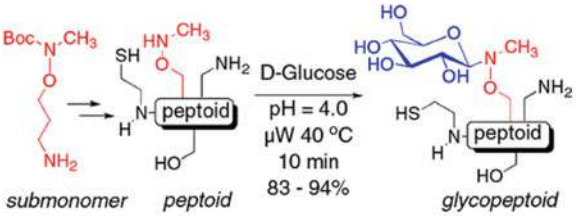
6.6 Glycopeptoids

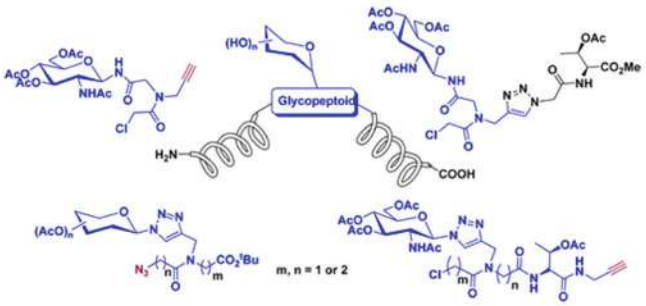
Glycopeptoids correspond to sugar moieties linked to short peptides which eventually can function as a linkers for proteins. In cells the glycosylation of proteins is a post-translational process with a number of important implications such as protein folding, stabilization, trafficking, recognition, immune defence, cell growth, inflammation, metastasis, bacterial and viral infections. It is known that aberrant glycosylation of cell surface glycoproteins is a common feature on numerous tumour cell types and they may undergo adaptive regulation of their cell surface through glycosylation in order to acquire a survival advantage.

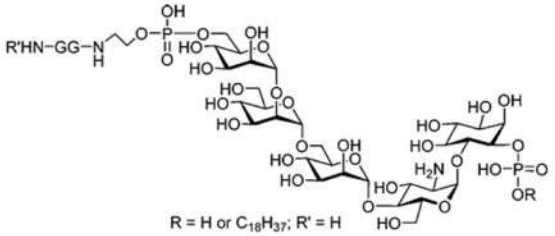
A number a glycopeptoids have been prepared by using different approaches such as click chemistry [94, 95], chemoselective chemistry [96, 97], orthogonal native chemical ligation [98], metal-promoted glycosylative ligation [99] stereoselective synthesis [100] and cross metathesis assisted solid-phase synthesis [101] (Scheme 6.33).

Scheme 6.33 Some approaches for the synthesis of glycopeptoids

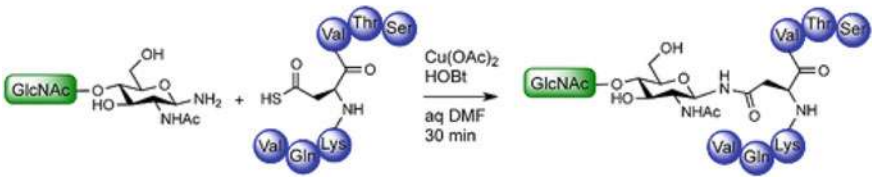




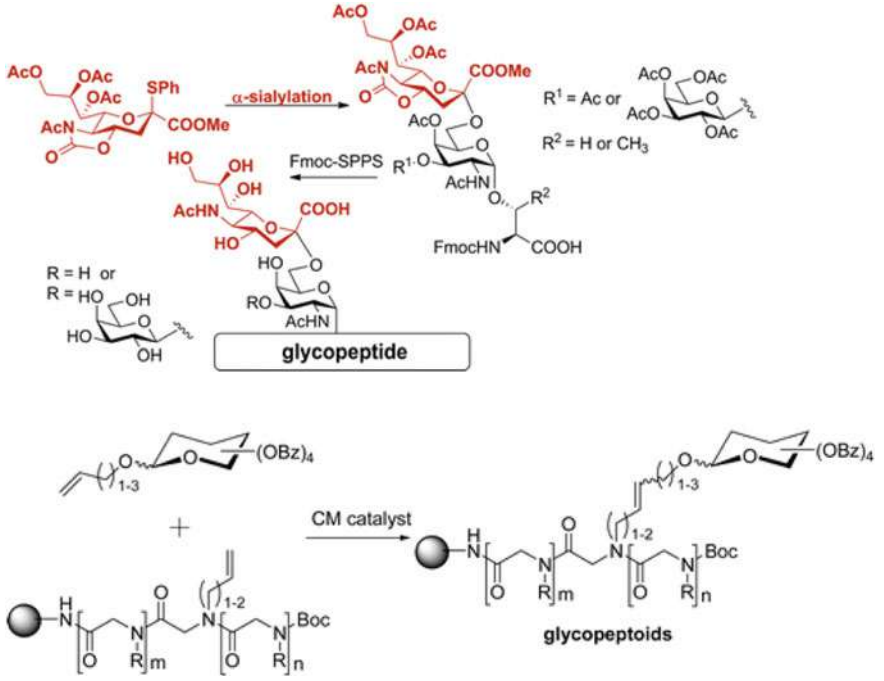




Analogs of CD52 antigen: R = H or $C_{18}H_{37}$; R' = AcNH-GQNDTSQTSSPSLPKT-
Analogs of CD24 antigen:
R = H or $C_{18}H_{37}$; R' = NH_2-SETTTGTSSNSSQSTSNSGLAPNPTNATTKALPKT-



Scheme 6.33 (continued)

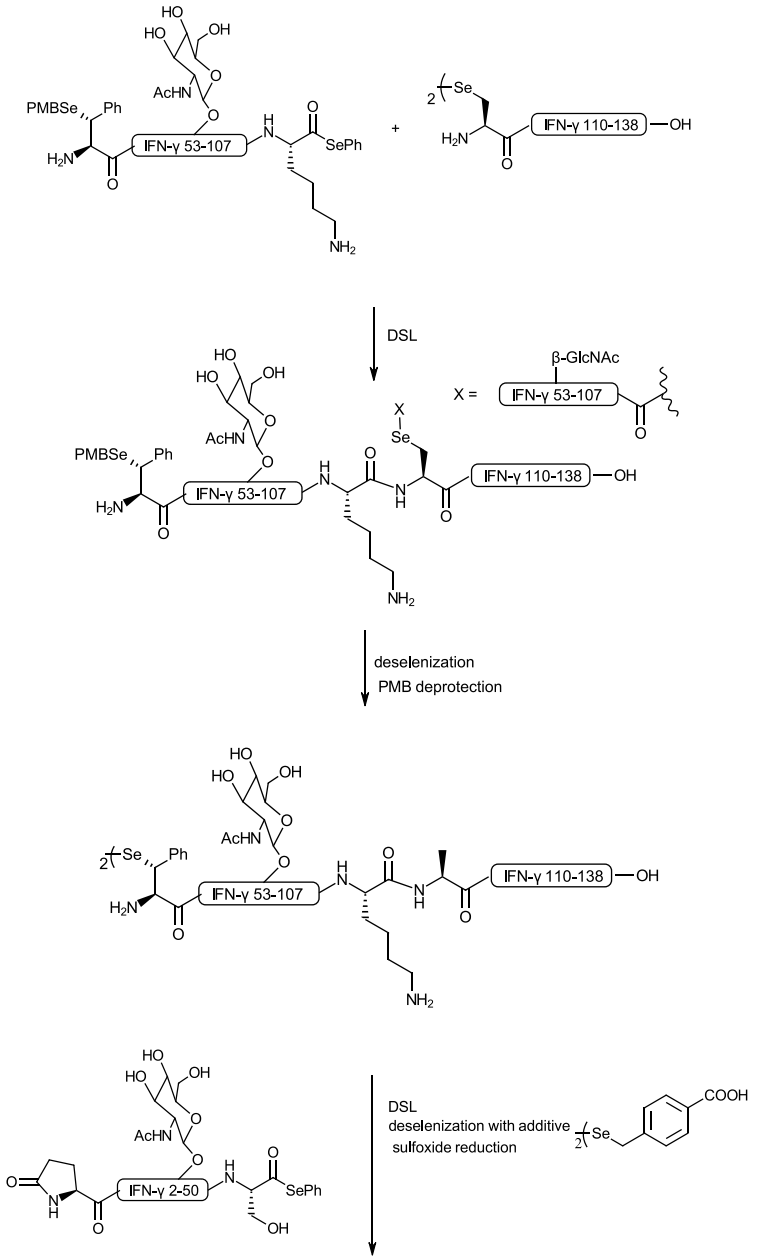


Scheme 6.33 (continued)

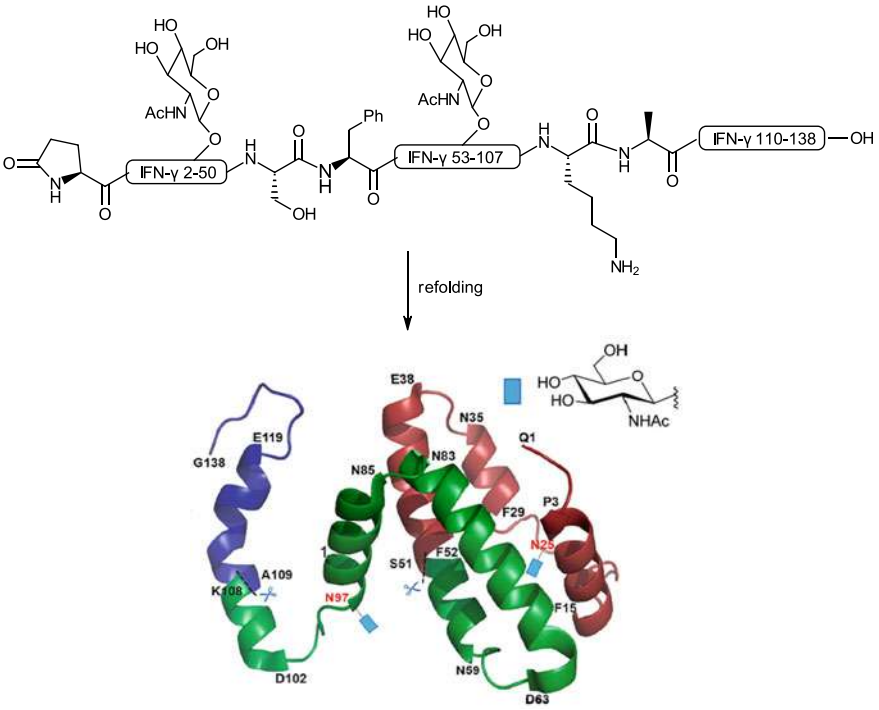
6.7 Glycoproteins

Glycoproteins are macromolecules made by proteins linked to saccharides or glycans through a covalent bond with N- or O- amino acids terminal positions, having key roles as hormones, structural proteins, lubricant-protective, enzymes, in cell-adhesion processes, immunoglobulin, pathogen recognition, and receptors. Usually, the point of join between the protein and the carbohydrate moiety occurs at the -OH position of serine or threonine for O-linked and asparagine for N-linked.

One of such glycoproteins is interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) defined as a cytokine involved in immune response specially against viral infections [102]. Glycosylated human interferon-γ was synthesized following the diselenide–selenoester ligation (DSL) method, starting from the coupling reaction between IFN-γ/53–107 fragment attached at the 97th position with β-GlcNAc, functionalized at the N-terminus with phenylselenoester and at the C-terminus with selenoester, and IFN-γ/110–138 fragment composed selenocystine (cysteine oxidized form) at the N-terminal. After diselenide–selenoester ligation (DSL) the attached fragments were subjected to deselenization, PMB deprotection, another cycle of DSL, deselenization, sulfoxide reduction and final refolding, providing glycosylated human interferon-γ (Scheme 6.34) [103].



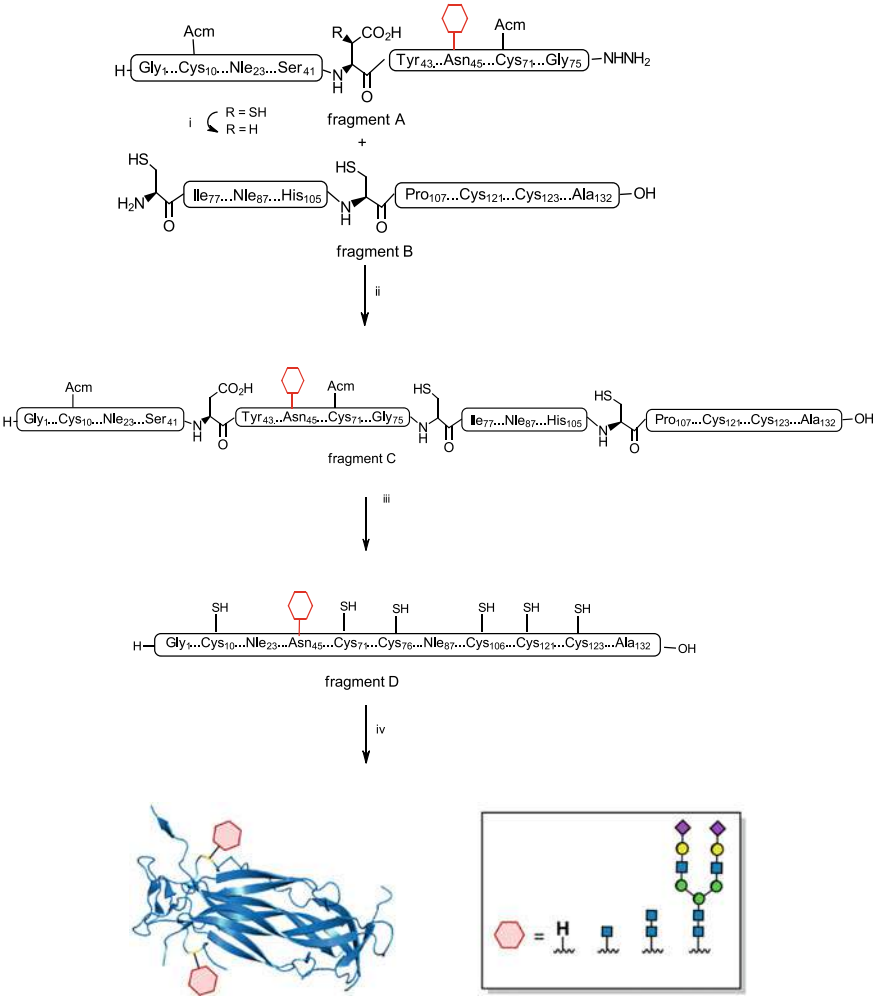
Scheme 6.34 Synthesis of glycosylated human interferon-γ by using diselenide–selenoester ligation (DSL) strategy



Scheme 6.34 (continued)

Interleukins are another class of glycoproteins composed by at least 38 identified family members, been preponderant in autoimmune disease processes, viral infections, and inflammation [104]. The synthesis of Interleukin IL-17A utilizing a convergent route combining peptidyl Gly_1-Gly_{75} hydrazides with $Ile_{77} - Ala_{132}$ (A and B fragments) produces ligated peptide (fragment C) which after deprotection affords cystine-reduced forms of IL-17A isomer (fragment D) having the specific glycosylation sites required (Scheme 6.35). Final folding experiments were undertaken with the aim of promoting disulfide-linked dimer formation, finding as better conditions the folding buffer containing cysteine/cystamine, using arginine to optimize the folding yield up to 6 disulfides bonds present in the glycoprotein [105].

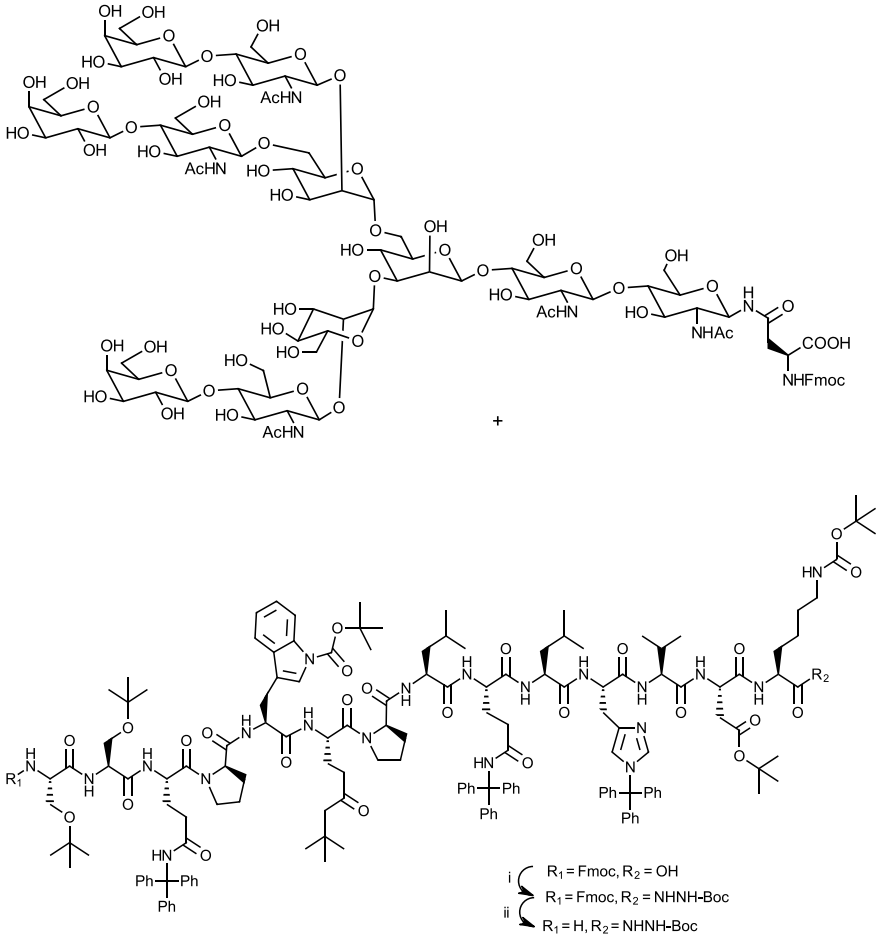
Erythropoietin (EPO) is a N-glycosylated glycoprotein hormone or growth factor which participates importantly in the production and preservation of red blood cells, being the focus of intense research in view of its biological importance and the synthetic challenge represented due the complex di-, tri-, and tetra antennary pattern. The synthesis of glycoform having one triantennary and two biantennary sialyl N-glycans was achieved on two fronts being one one side the synthesis of EPO polypetide composed by 166 amino acids divided in 6 fragments and ligated through improved solid-phase protocols including C-terminal thioester or hydrazide forms.



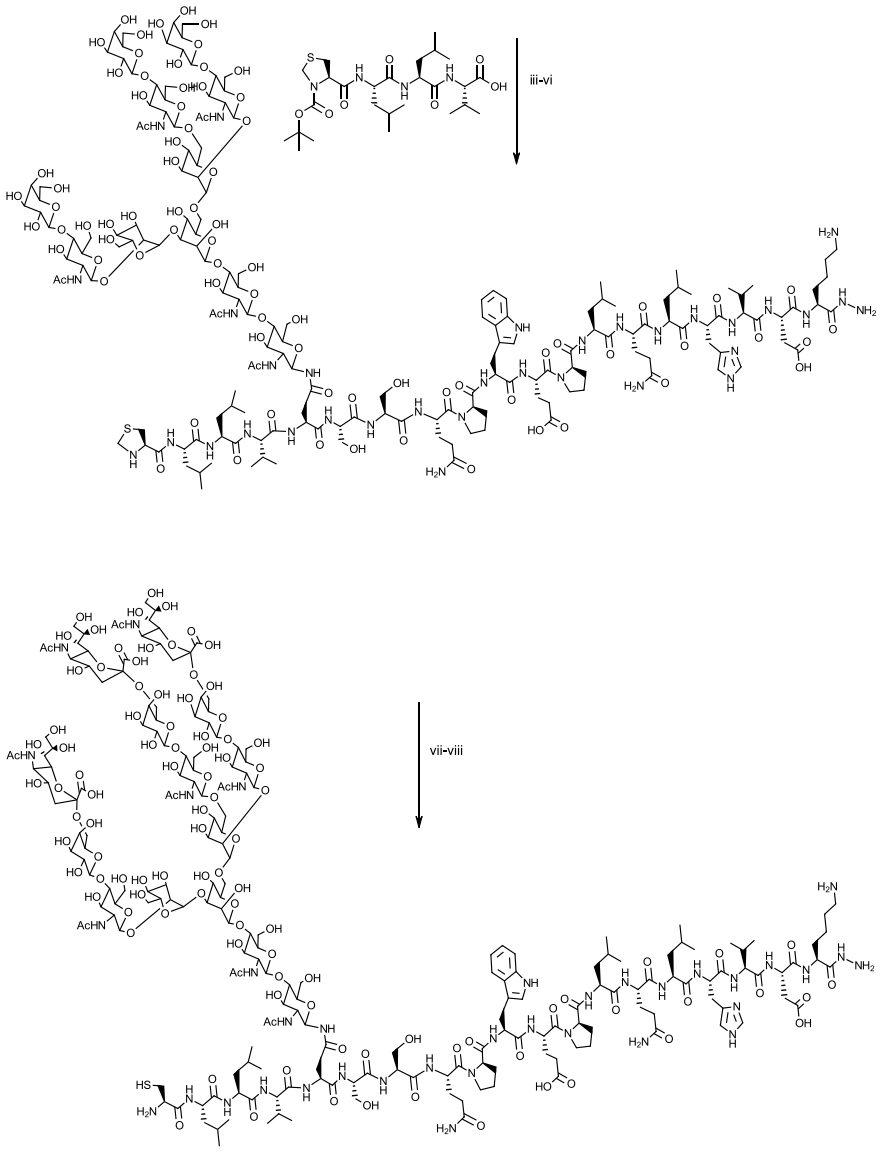
i) Desulfurization: fragment A in Buffer 6 M Gn·HCl, 200 mM Na_2HPO_4, pH 8.0, TCEP, tBuSH, ACVA, 50 °C, 5 h. 53-59%
ii) Hydrazide-based ligation: (1) fragmen A in Buffer A, −15 °C, 15 min; then 200 mM $NaNO_2$, −15 °C,35 min.
(2) fragment B in Buffer B, rt, 3−8 h. 33-53%
iii) Acm-removal: fragment C in Buffer E, $PdCl_2$, 37 °C, 30 min. 82-98%
iv) Folding: fragment D, 10, 500 mM Gn·HCl, 20 mM Tris, 15% Glycerol, 1 MArginine, 5 mM Cysteine, 1 mM Cystamine, 4 °C, 36 h.
(2) ultracentrifugation, 4 °C, 3-27%

Scheme 6.35 Convergent chemical synthesis of N-glycosylated interleukin IL-17A

Regarding the sialylglycopeptide having a triantennary glycan the strategy relied on oligosaccharyl asparagine protocol with protected peptides (Scheme 6.36) [106].

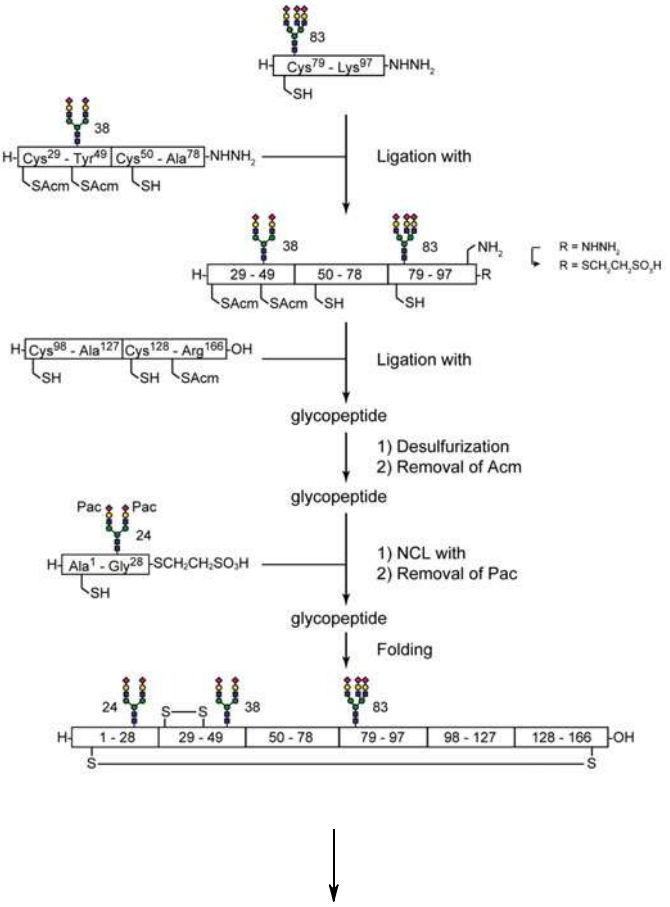


Scheme 6.36 Chemical Synthesis of an Erythropoietin Glycoform Having a Triantennary N-Glycan



Scheme 6.36 (continued)

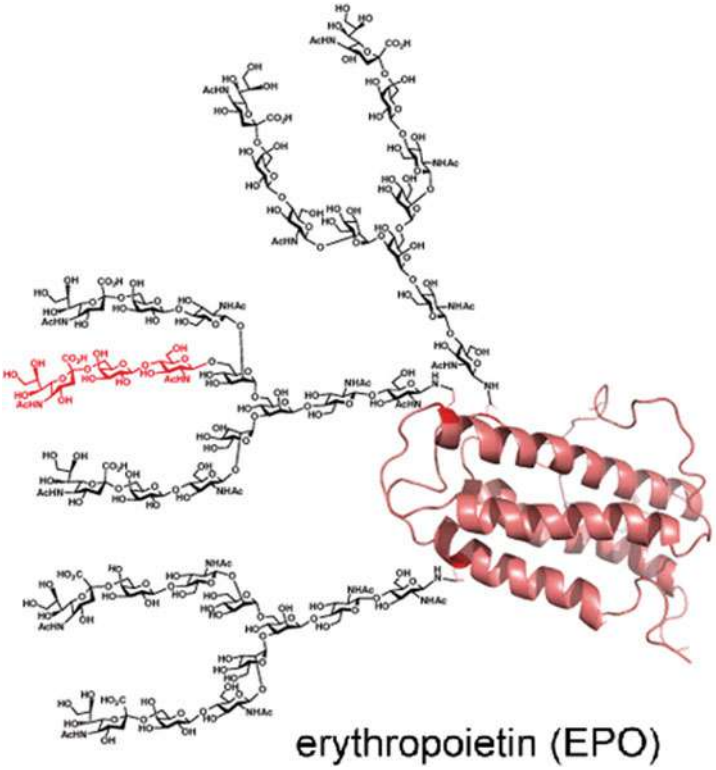
i) tert-Butyl Carbazate, PyBOP, iPr_2NEt, DMF, −20 °C, 6 h, 91%
ii) 20% Piperidine, DMF, rt, 20 min, 70%
iii) PyBOP, $i\text{-}Pr_2NEt$, DMF/DMSO, rt, 5 h.
iv) 20% Piperidine, DMF, rt, 20 min.
v) PyBOP, i-Pr2NEt, DMF/DMSO, −20 °C, 7 h.
vi) TFA/TIPS/H2O (95:2.5:2.5), rt, 2 h, 44% (4 Steps)
vii) CMP-Neu5Ac, α-2,6-Sialyltransferase, HEPES Buffer, rt, 4 Days
viii) O-Methylhydroxylamine Hydrochloride, pH 4.2, rt, 5 h, 55% (2 steps)



Scheme 6.36 (continued)

6.8 Synthetic Vaccines

Recent developments on carbohydrate chemistry made possible the design and escalation of new immunogenic carbohydrates. A newly developed synthetic carbohydrate attached to a protein carrier was reported by Verez-Bencomo and Fernández-Santana, and currently administrated against *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease.



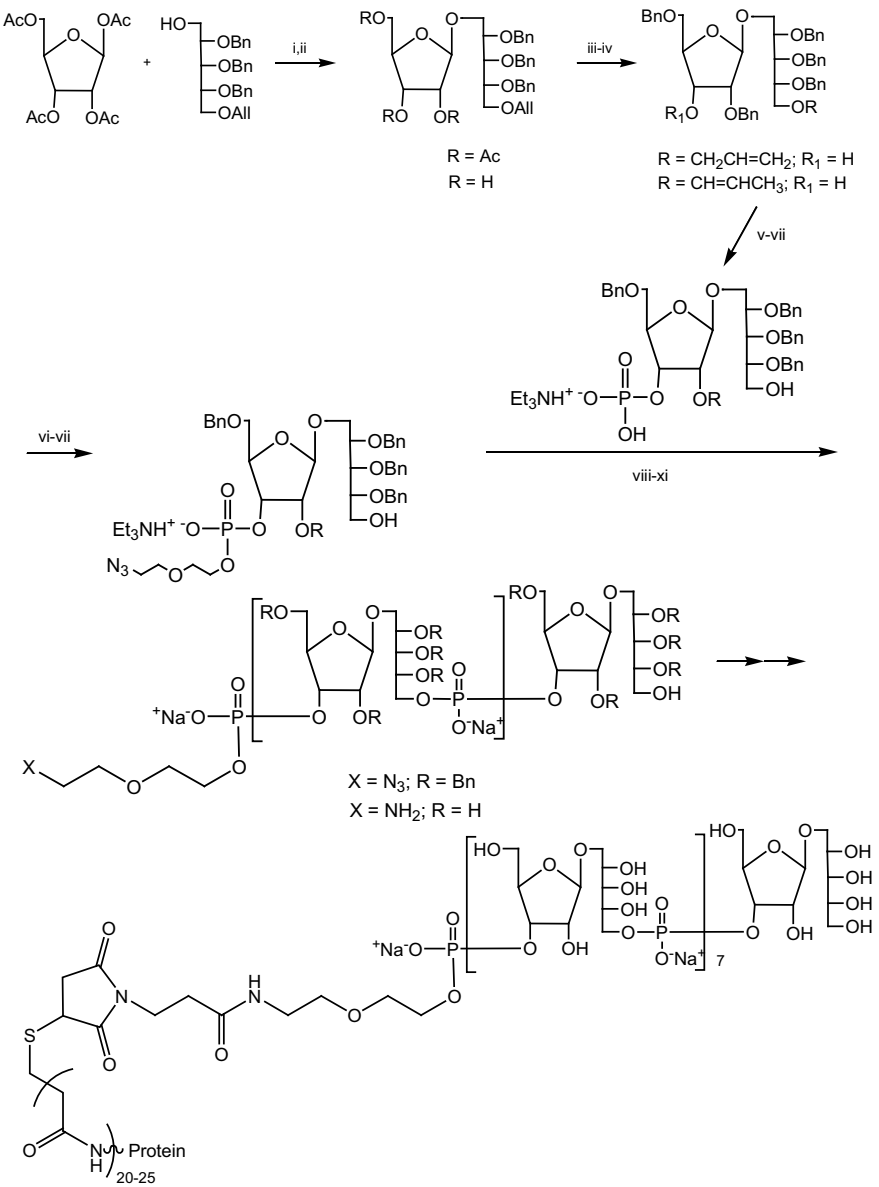
Scheme 6.36 (continued)

The chemical synthesis leading to the oligomeric polyribosylribitol phosphate is described in Scheme 6.37 [107].

Another alternative therapeutic strategy for inducing immune response through the use of synthetic carbohydrate vaccines has been proposed by Danishefsky et al., involving the attachment of different tumor antigenic agents (Globo H, STn, Tn, Lewis^y,) coupled to a linker and this to a protein carrier (Scheme 6.38) [108].

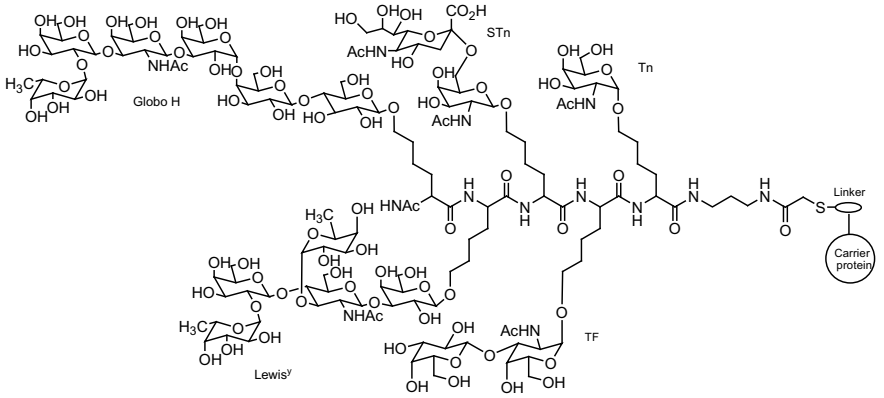
It has been mentioned that carbohydrate based agents such as glycoproteins and polysaccharides obtained from synthetic routes is an emerging and promising strategy for the preparation of vaccines [109–111]. This possibility has become available due the remarkable progress for the chemical and enzymatic preparation of oligosaccharides.

Other synthetic glycoproteins described are mucin MUC1 which strongly induce immune response against breast tumor tissues [112], glycosylated erythropoietin (EPO) [113], entero pathogenic *Escherichia coli* (EPEC) type III [114], and Human Interleukin-2 [115] among others. The methods employed for the attachment between the glycosyl and the peptide fragments were done by using solid phase synthesis,



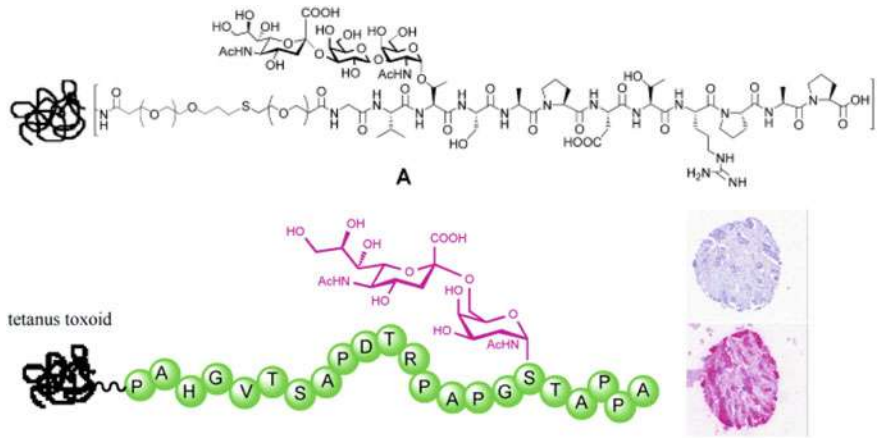
i) BF_3Et_2O, CH_2Cl_2. ii) CH_3ONa, CH_3OH. iii) BnCl, BuSnO, NaH, Bu_4NI. iv) tBuOK, DMSO, 100°C.
v) PCl_3, imidazole, CH_3CN. vi) $N_3(CH_2)_2O(CH_2)_2OH$, I_2. vii) AcOH-H_2O, 80°C. viii) PivCl, Py.
ix) Py-H_2O. x) H_2, Pd-C, EtOH-H_2O-EtOAc-AcOH, 1.5 atm. xi) cation exchange resin on Sephadex SP-C25.

Scheme 6.37 Synthetic carbohydrate conjugate vaccine Quimi-Hib

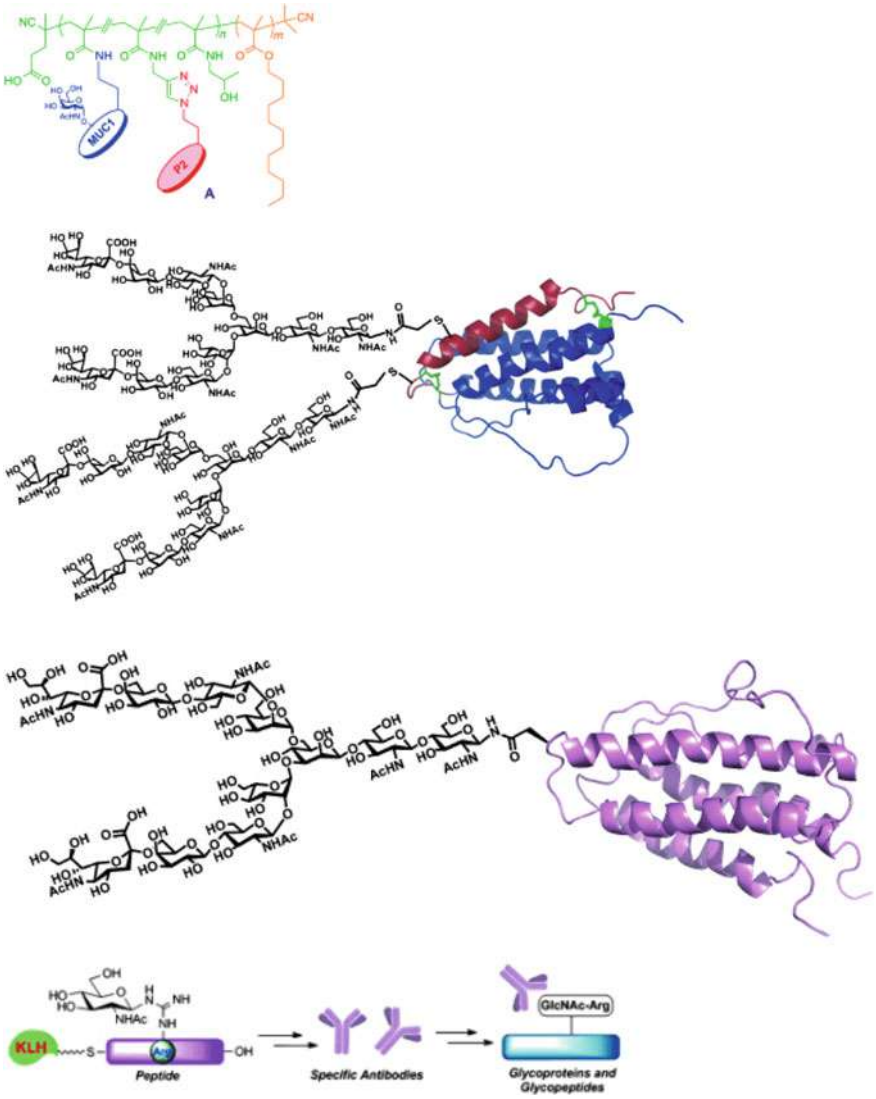


Scheme 6.38 Various tumor antigenic agents coupled to a linker developed as potential synthetic vaccine

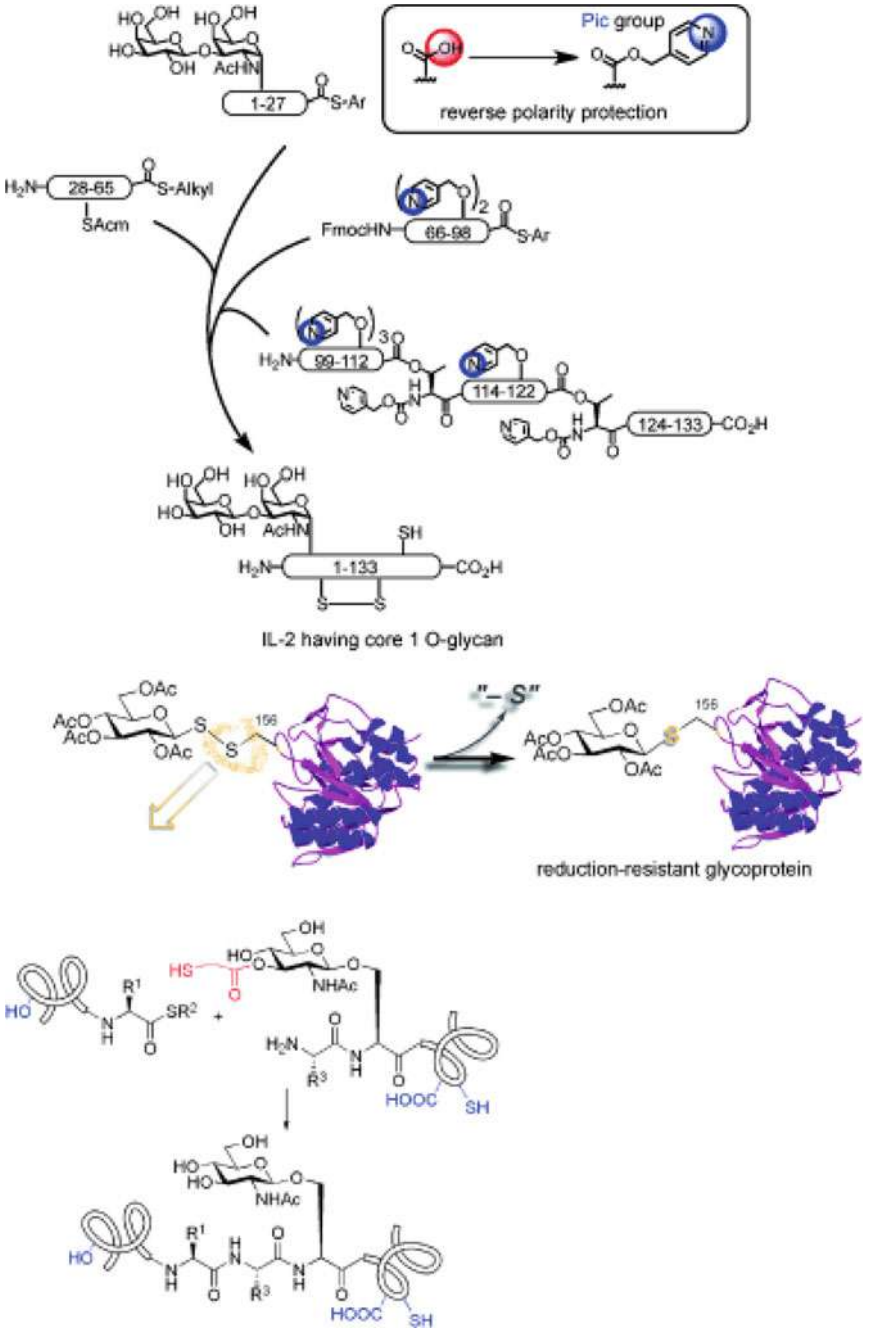
native chemical ligation (NCL) [64], disulfide-linked precursors through a desulfurization process [116], Fmoc-modified amino acids, thiazolidine protection of the N-terminal, and reverse polarity protection strategy (Scheme 6.39) [69, 117–122].



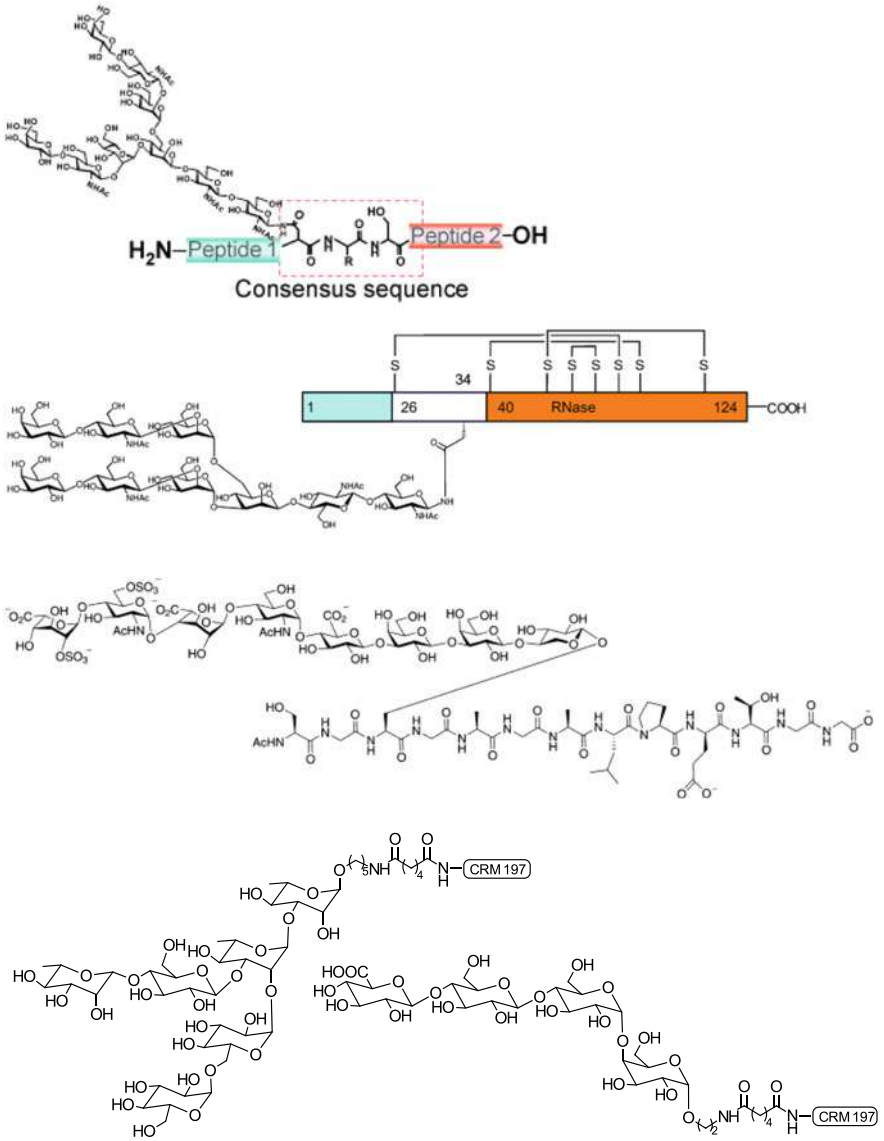
Scheme 6.39 Examples of synthetic immunogenic glycoproteins [123, 124]



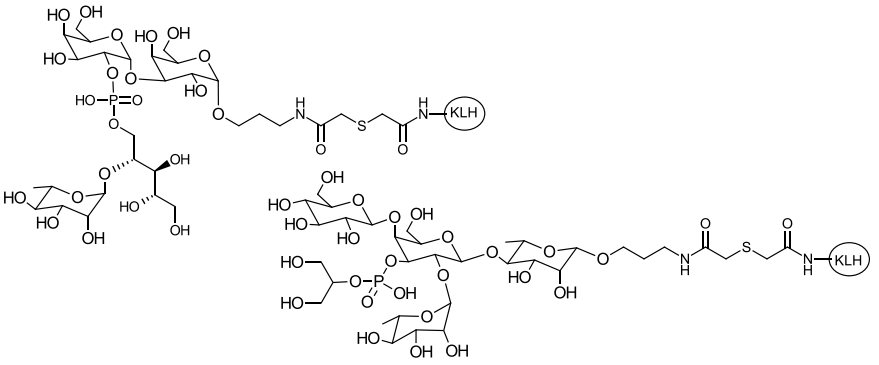
Scheme 6.39 (continued)



Scheme 6.39 (continued)

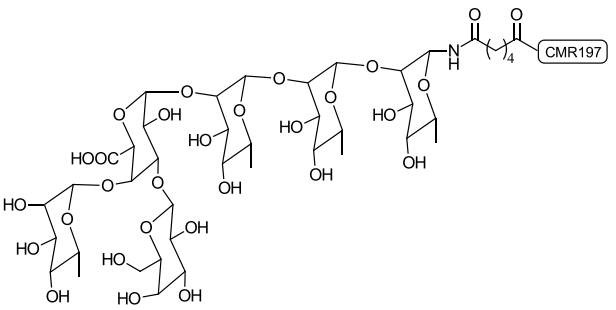


Scheme 6.39 (continued)



Minimal synthetic oligosaccharide-protein conjugates of *S. pneumoniae* serotypes

Ref [125]



Semi-synthetic glycoconjugate vaccine candidate for carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae*

Ref [126]

Scheme 6.39 (continued)

References

1. Robyt JF (1998) Essentials of carbohydrate chemistry, ed. Springer
2. Morell A, Irvine RA, Sternliev I, Scheinberg IH, Ashwell G (1968) Physical and chemical studies on ceruloplasmin: V. Metabolic studies on sialic acid-free ceruloplasmin in vivo. J Biol Chem 243:155–159
3. Fischer HD, Gonzalez-Noriega A, Sly WS, Morre DJ (1980) Phosphomannosyl-enzyme receptors in rat liver. J Biol Chem 255:9608–9615
4. Stahl P, Schlesinger PH, Sigardson E, Rodman J, Lee YC (1980) Receptor-mediated pinocytosis of mannose glycoconjugates by macrophages: characterization and evidence for receptor recycling. Cell 19:207–215
5. Rudd PM, Elliot T, Cresswell P, Wilson IA, Dwek RA (2001) Glycosylation and the immune system. Science 291:370–376
6. Reitter IN, Means RE, Desrosiers RC (1998) A role for carbohydrates in immune evasion in AIDS. Nature Med 4:679–684
7. Springer GF (1984) T and Tn, general carcinoma autoantigens. Science 224:1198–1206
8. Samuel J, Noujaim AA, MacLean GD, Sureshand MR, Longenecker BM (1990) Analysis of human tumor associated Thomsen-Friedenreich antigen. Cancer Res 50:4801–4808
9. Fukada M (1985) Cell surface glycoconjugates as onco-differentiation markers in hematopoietic cells. Biochim Biophys Acta 780:119–150
10. Kornfeld R, Kornfeld S (1985) Assembly of asparagine-linked oligosaccharides. Annu Rev Biochem 54:631–664
11. Lee YC (1992) Biochemistry of carbohydrate—protein interaction. FASEB J 6:3193–3200
12. Dwek R (1996) Glycobiology: toward understanding the function of sugars. Chem Rev 96:683–720
13. Lis H, Sharon N (1998) Lectins: carbohydrate-specific proteins that mediate cellular recognition. Chem Rev 98:637–674
14. Gaastra W, Svennerholm A-M (1996) Colonization factors of human enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli (ETEC). Trends Microbiol 4:444–452
15. - Goldstein IJ, Winter HC, Poretz RD (1997) Plant lectins: tools for the study of complex carbohydrates. Plant lectins: tools for the study of complex carbohydrates. Glycoproteins. Elsevier, pp. 403–474
16. Weis WI, Drickamer K (1996) Structural basis of lectin-carbohydrate recognition. Annu Rev Biochem 65:441–473
17. Ravishankar R, Ravindran N, Suguna A, Surolia A, Vijayan M (1997) Crystal structure of the peanut lectin-T-antigen complex. Carbohydrate specificity generated by water bridges. Curr Sci 72:855–861
18. Sharon N (1993) Lectin-carbohydrate complexes of plants and animals: an atomic view. Trends Biochem Sci 18:221–226
19. Weis WI, Drickamer K (1996) Structural basis of lectin-carbohydrate recognition. Annu Rev Biochem 65:441–473
20. Sharon N, Lis H (1995) Lectins-proteins with a sweet tooth: functions in cell recognition. Essays Biochem 30:59–75
21. Naismith JH, Field RA (1996) Structural basis of trimannoside recognition by concanavalin A. J Biol Chem 271:972–976
22. Drickamer K (1988) Two distinct classes of carbohydrate-recognition domains in animal lectins. J Biol Chem 263:9560–9575
23. Fukumori F, Takeuchi N, Hagiwara T, Ohbayashi H, Endo T, Kochibe N, Nagata Y, Kobata A (1990) Primary structure of a fucose-specific lectin obtained from a mushroom, Aleuria aurantia. J Biochem 107:190–196
24. Lasky LA (1995) Selectin-carbohydrate interactions and the initiation of the inflammatory response. Annu Rev Biochem 64:113–139
25. Hemmerich S, Leffler H, Rosen SD (1995) Structure of the O-glycans in GlyCAM-1, an endothelial-derived ligand for L-selectin. J Biol Chem 270:12035–12047

26. Kunz H (1987) Synthesis of glycopeptides. Partial structures of biological recognition components. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 26:294–308
27. Garg H, Jeanloz RW (1985) Synthetic N- and O-glycosyl derivatives of L-asparagine, L-serine and L-threonine. Adv Carbohydr Chem Biochem 43:135–201
28. Kunz H (1993) Glycopeptides of biological interest: a challenge for chemical synthesis. Pure Appl Chem 65:1223–1232
29. Kunz H, Unverzagt C (1984) The allyloxycarbonyl (Aloc) moiety-conversion of an unsuitable into a valuable protecting group for peptide synthesis. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 23:436–437
30. März J, Kunz H (1992) Synthesis of selectively deprotectable asparagine glycoconjugates with a Lewis A antigen side chain. Synlett 589–590
31. Wong CH, Schuster M, Wang P, Sears P (1993) Enzymatic synthesis of. N- and O-linked glycopeptides. J Am Chem Soc 115:5101–5893
32. Mizuno M, Haneda K, Iguchi R, Muramoto I, Kawakami T, Aimoto S, Yamamoto K, Inazu T (1999) Synthesis of a glycopeptide containing oligosaccharides: chemoenzymatic synthesis of eel calcitonin analogues having natural N-linked oligosaccharides. J Am Chem Soc 121:284–290
33. Sears P, Wong C-H (2001) Toward automated synthesis of oligosaccharides and glycoproteins. Science 291:2344–2350
34. Deshpande PP, Kim HM, Zatorski A, Park TK, Raguphathi G, Livingston PO, Live D, Danishefsky SJ (1998) Strategy in oligosaccharide synthesis: an application to a concise total synthesis of the KH-1(adenocarcinoma) antigen. J Am Chem Soc 120:1600–1614
35. Bertozzi CR, Cook DG, Kobertz WR, Gonzalez-Scarano F, Bednarski MD (1992) Carbon-linked galactosphingolipid analogs bind specifically to HIV-1 gp120. J Am Chem Soc 114:10639–10641
36. Obei LM, Linardic CM, Karolak LA, Hannun YA (1993) Sphingomyelin turnover induced by vitamin D3 in HL-60 cells. Role in cell differentiation. Science 259:1769–1780
37. Xue J, Shao N, Guo Z (2003) First total synthesis of a GPI-anchored peptide. J Org Chem 68:4020–4029
38. Kempin U, Henning L, Knoll D, Welzel P, Müller D, Markus van Heijenoort J (1997) Moenomycin A: New chemistry that allows to attach the antibiotic to reporter groups, solid supports, and proteins. Tetrahedron 53:17669–17690
39. Loya S, Reshef V, Mizrachi E, Silbertein C, Rachamim Y, Carmeli S, Hizi A (1998) The inhibition of the reverse transcriptase of HIV-1 by the natural sulfoglycolipids from cyanobacteria: contribution of different moieties to their high potency. J Nat Prod 61:891–895
40. Persidis A (1997) The carbohydrate-based drug industry. Nat Biotechnol 15:479–480
41. Buskas T, Li Y, Boons G-J (2004) The immunogenicity of the tumor-associated antigen Lewis(y) may be suppressed by a bifunctional cross-linker required for coupling to a carrier protein. Chem Eur J 10:3517–3524
42. Duus JØ, St HPM, Meldal M, Bock K (1999) Pure and applied chemistry. Pure Appl Chem 71:755–756
43. (a) Davis BG (2002) Synthesis of glycoproteins. Chem Rev 102:579–602. (b) Bertozzi CR, Kiessling L (2001) Chemical glycobiology. Science 23:2357–2364
44. Lee YC, Stowell CP, Krantz MJ (1976) 2-Imino-2- methoxyethyl 1- thioglycosides: new reagents for attaching sugars to proteins. Biochemistry 15:3956–3963
45. Gray GR (1974) The direct coupling of oligosaccharides to proteins and derivatized gels. Arch Biochem Biophys 163:426–428
46. McBroom CR, Samanen CH, Goldstein I J (1972) Carbohydrate antigens: coupling of carbohydrates to proteins by diazonium and phenyl-isothiocyanate reactions. Methods Enzymol 28:212–219
47. Buss DH, Goldstein IJ (1968) Protein–carbohydrate interaction. Part XIV. Carbohydrates containing groups for the alkylation of proteins. J Chem Soc C 1457–1461
48. Quétard C, Bourgerie S, Normand-Sdiqui N, Mayer R, Strecker G, Midoux P, Roche AC, Monsigny M (1998) Novel glycosynthons for glycoconjugate preparation: oligosaccharylpyroglutamylanilide derivatives. Bioconjugate Chem 9:268–276

49. Lemieux RU, Bindle DR, Baker DA (1975) The properties of a "synthetic" antigen related to the human blood-group Lewis a. J Am Chem Soc 97:4076–4083
50. Baek WO, Vijayalaksmi MA (1997) Effect of chemical glycosylation of RNase A on the protein stability and surface histidines accessibility in immobilized metal ion affinity electrophoresis (IMAGE) system. Biochim Biophys Acta 1336:394–402
51. Jiang KY, Pitiot O, Anissimova M, Adenier H, Vijayalakshmi MA (1999) Structure-function relationship in glycosylated alpha-chymotrypsin as probed by IMAC and IMACE. Biochim Biophys Acta 1433:198–209
52. Kamath VP, Diedrich P, Hindsgaul (1996) Use of diethyl squarate for the coupling of oligosaccharide amines to carrier proteins and characterization of the resulting neoglycoproteins by MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry. O. Glycoconjugate J 13:315–319
53. Lemieux GA, Bertozzi CR (1998) Chemoselective ligation reactions with proteins, oligosaccharides and cells. TIBTECH 16:506–513
54. Cervigni SE, Dumy P, Mutter M (1996) Synthesis of glycopeptides and Hpopeptides by chemoselective ligation. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 35:1230–1232
55. Zhao Y, Kent SBH, Chait BT (1997) Rapid, sensitive structure analysis of oligosaccharidcs. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 94:1629–1633
56. Durieux P, Fernandez-Carneado J, Tuchscherer G (2001) Synthesis of biotinylated glycosulfopeptides by chemoselective ligation. Tetrahedron Lett 42:2297–2299
57. Davis NJ, Flitsch SL (1991) A novel method for the specific glycosylation of proteins. Tetrahedron Lett 32:6793–6796
58. Marcaurelle LA, Bertozzi CR (2001) Chemoselective elaboration of O-linked glycopeptide mimetics by alkylation of 3thioGalNAc. J Am Chem Soc 123:1587–1595
59. Macindoe WM, van Oijen AH (1998) A unique and highly facile method for synthesising disulfide linked neoglycoconjugates: a new approach for remodelling of peptides and proteins Boons. G-J Chem Commun 847–848
60. Shin I, Jung H-J, Lee MR (2001) Chemoselective ligation of maleimidosugars to peptides/protein for the preparation of neoglycopeptides/neoglycoprotein. Tetrahedron Lett 42:1325–1328
61. Davis BJ, Lloyd RC, Jones JB (1998) Controlled site-selective glycosylation of proteins by a combined site-directed mutagenesis and chemical modification approach. J Org Chem 63:9614–9615
62. Davis BG, Maughan MAT, Green MP, Ullman A (2000) Glycomethanethiosulfonates: powerful reagents for protein glycosylation. Tetrahedron Asymmetry 11:245–262
63. Davis BG, Lloyd RC, Jones JB (2000) Controlled site-selective protein glycosylation for precise glycan structure-catalytic activity relationships. Bioorg Med Chem 8:1527–1535
64. Dawson PE, Muir TW, Clark-Lewis I (1994) Kent SB synthesis of proteins by native chemical ligation. Science 266(5186):776–778
65. Bennett CS, Dean SM, Payne RJ, Ficht S, Brik A, Wong C-H (2008) Sugar-assisted glycopeptide ligation with complex oligosaccharides: scope and limitations the approach B. J Am Chem Soc 130:11945–11952
66. Agouridas V, El Mahdi O, Diemer V, Cargoet M, Monbaliu J-CM, Melnyk O (2019) Native chemical ligation and extended methods: mechanism, catalysis, scope, and limitations. Chem Rev 119:7328–7443
67. Chrisholm TS, Kulkarni SS, Hossain KR, Cornelius F, Clarke RJ, Payne RJ (2019) Peptide ligation at high dilution via reductive diselenide-selenoester ligation. J Am Chem Soc 142(2):1090–1100
68. Wang P, Aussedat B, Vohra Y, Danishefsky SJ (2012) An advance in the chemical synthesis of homogeneous N-linked glycopolypeptides by convergent aspartylation. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 51(46):11571–11575
69. Ullmann V, Rädisch M, Boos I, Freund J, Pöhner C, Schwarzinger S, Unverzagt C (2012) Convergent solid-phase synthesis of n-glycopeptides facilitated by pseudoprolines at consensus-sequence Ser/Thr residues. Angew Chem Int Ed 51:11566–11570

70. Pan M, Li S, Li X, Shao F, Liu L, Hu H-G (2014) Synthesis of and specific antibody generation for glycopeptides with arginine N-GlcNAcylation. Angew Chem Int Ed 53:1–6
71. Paulson JC, Hill RL, Tanabe T, Ashwell G (1977) Reactivation of asialo-rabbit liver binding protein by resialylation with beta-D-galactoside alpha2 leads to 6 sialyltransferase. J Biol Chem 252:8624–8628
72. Tsuboi S, Isogai Y, Hada N, King JK, Hindsgaul O, Fukuda M (1996) 6'-Sulfo sialyl Lex but not 6-sulfo sialyl Lex expressed on the cell surface supports L-selectin-mediated adhesion. J Biol Chem 271:2721327216
73. Unversagt C (1997) Building blocks for glycoproteins: synthesis of the ribonuclease B fragment 21–25 containing an undecasaccharide N-glycan. Tetrahedron Lett 32:5627–5630
74. Geremia RA, Petroni .A, Ielpi L, Herissat B (1996) Towards a classification of glycosyltransferases based on amino acid sequence similarities: prokaryotic α-mannosyltransferases. Biochem J 318:133–138
75. Friedman B, Hubbard SC, Rasmussen JR (1993) Development of a recombinant form of ceredase (Glucocerebrosidase) for the treatment of Gaucher's disease. Glycoconjugate J 10:257–257
76. Witte K, Sears P, Martin R, Wong CH (1997) Enzymatic glycoprotein synthesis: preparation of ribonuclease glycoforms via enzymatic glycopeptide condensation and glycosylation. J Am Chem Soc 119:2114–2118
77. Kochendoerfer GG, Kent SBH (1999) Chemical protein synthesis. Curr Opin Chem Biol 3:665–671
78. Wong CH (2005) Protein glycosylation: new challenges and opportunities. J Org Chem 70:4219–4225
79. Bertozzi CR, Cook DG, Kobertz W, Gonzalez-Scarano F, Bednarski MD (1992) Carbon-linked galactosphingolipid analogs bind specifically to HIV-1 gp120. J Am Chem Soc 114(10639):10641
80. Obeid LM, Linardic CM, Karolak LA, Hannun YA (1993) Programmed cell death induced by ceramide. Science 259:1769–1771
81. Kempin U, Henning L, Knoll D, Welzel P, Müller D, Van Heijenoort MJ (1997) Moenomycin a: new chemistry that allows to attach the antibiotic to reporter groups, solid supports, and proteins. Tetrahedron 53: 17669–17690
82. Loya S, Reshef V, Mizrachi E, Silbertein C, Rachamim Y, Carmeli S, Hizi A (1998) The inhibition of the reverse transcriptase of hiv-1 by the natural sulfoglycolipids from cyanobacteria: contribution of different moieties to their high potency. J Nat Prod 61:891–895
83. Stallforth P, Adibekian A, Seeberger PH (2008) De novo synthesis of a d-galacturonic acid thioglycoside as key to the total synthesis of a glycosphingolipid from sphingomonas yanoikuyae. Org Lett 10:1573–1576
84. Altiti AS, Mootoo DR (2014) Intramolecular nitrogen delivery for the synthesis of C-glycosphingolipids. Application to the C-Glycoside of the immunostimulant KRN7000. Org Lett 16:1466–1469
85. Sarpe VA, Kulkarni S (2014) Expeditious synthesis of mycobacterium tuberculosis sulfolipids SL-1 and Ac2SGL analogues. Org Lett 16:5732–5735
86. Tamai H, Ando H, Ishida H, Kiso M (2012) First synthesis of a pentasaccharide moiety of ganglioside GAA-7 containing unusually modified sialic acids through the use of N-Troc-sialic acid derivative as a key unit. Org Lett 14:6342–6345
87. Liu Y, Ruan X, Li X, Li Y (2008) Efficient synthesis of a sialic acid α(2→3)galactose building block and its application to the synthesis of ganglioside GM3. J Org Chem 73:4287–4290
88. -Miller N, Williams GM, Brimble MA (2009) Synthesis of fish antifreeze neoglycopeptides using microwave-assisted "Click Chemistry". Org Lett 2409–2412
89. Singhamahapatra A, Sahoo L, Loganathan D (2013) Clickable glycopeptoids for synthesis of glycopeptide mimic. J Org Chem 78:10329–10336
90. Seo J, Michaelian N, Owens SC, Dashner ST, Wong AJ, Barron AE, Carrasco MR (2009) Chemoselective and microwave-assisted synthesis of glycopeptoids. Org Lett 11:5210–5213

91. -Wu Z, Guo X, Gu G, Guo Z (2013) Chemoenzymatic synthesis of the human CD52 and CD24 antigen analogues. Org Lett 15:5906–5908
92. Lee DJ, Mandal K, Harris PW, Brimble MA, Kent SBH (2009) A one-pot approach to neoglycopeptides using orthogonal native chemical ligation and click chemistry. Org Lett 11:5270–5273
93. Joseph R, Brock Dyer FB, Garner P (2013) Rapid formation of N-glycopeptides via Cu(II)-promoted glycosylative ligation. Org Lett 15:732–735
94. Corcilius L, Payne RJ (2013) Stereoselective synthesis of sialylated tumor-associated glycosylamino acids. Org Lett 15:5794–5797
95. Foster AJ, Nagata M, Lu X, Lynch AT, Omahdi Z, Ishikawa E, Yamasaki S, Timmer MSM, Stocker BL (2018) Lipidated brartemicin analogues are potent Th1-stimulating vaccine adjuvants. J Med Chem 61(3):1045–1060
96. Wang P, Škalamera Đ, Sui X, Zhang P, Michalek M (2019) Synthesis and evaluation of a QS-17/18-based vaccine adjuvant. J Med Chem 62(3):1669–1676
97. Reintjens NRM, Tondini E, de Jong AR, Meeuwenoord NJ, Chiodo F, Peterse E, Overkleeft HS, Filippov DV, van der Marel GA, Ossendorp F, Codée JDC (2020) Self-adjuvanting cancer vaccines from conjugation-ready lipid A analogues and synthetic long peptides. J Med Chem 63(20):11691–11706
98. Troudi A, Pagès JM, Brunel JM (2021) Chemical highlights supporting the role of lipid A in efficient biological adaptation of gram-negative bacteria to external stresses. J Med Chem 64(4):1816–1834
99. Yin X-G, Lu J, Wang J, Zhang R-Y, Wang X-F, Liao C-M, Liu X-P, Liu Z, Guo J (2021) Synthesis and evaluation of liposomal Anti-gm3 cancer vaccine candidates covalently and noncovalently adjuvanted by αGalCer. J Med Chem 64:1951−1965
100. Yin X-G, Chen X-Z, Sun W-M, Geng X-S, Zhang X-K, Wang J, Ji P-P, Zhou Z-Y, Baek DJ, Yang G-F, Liu Z, Guo J (2017) IgG antibody response elicited by a fully synthetic two-component carbohydrate-based cancer vaccine candidate with α-galactosylceramide as built-in adjuvant. Org Lett 19(3):456–459
101. Khan SN, Kim A, Grubbs RH, Kwon Y-U (2012) Cross metathesis assisted solid-phase synthesis of glycopeptoids. Org Lett 14:2952–2955
102. Tau G, Rothman P (1999) Biologic functions of the IFN-γ receptors. Allergy 54(12):1233–1251
103. Wang X, Ashhurst AS, Dowman LJ, Watson EE, Li HY, Fairbanks AJ, Larance M, Kwan A, Payne RJ (2020) Total synthesis of glycosylated human interferon-γ. Org Lett 22:6863–6867
104. Kaneko N, Kurata M, Yamamoto T, Morikawa S, Masumoto J (2019) The role of interleukin-1 in general pathology. Inflammation and Regeneration, 39(12):1–16
105. Li H, Zhang J, An C, and Dong S Probing (2021) N-glycan functions in human interleukin-17A based on chemically synthesized homogeneous glycoforms. J Am Chem Soc 143(7):2846–2856
106. Maki Y, Okamoto R, Izumi M, and Kajihara Y (2020) Chemical synthesis of an erythropoietin glycoform having a triantennary N-glycan: significant change of biological activity of glycoprotein by addition of a small molecular weight trisaccharide. J Am Chem Soc 142(49):20671–20679
107. Verez-Bencomo V et al (2004) A synthetic conjugate polysaccharide vaccine against haemophilus influenzae Type b. Science 305:522–525
108. Danishefsky SJ, Allen JR (2000) You have full text access to this content from the laboratory to the clinic: a retrospective on fully synthetic carbohydrate-based anticancer vaccines. Angew Chem Int Ed 39:836–863
109. (a) Persidis A (1997) The carbohydrate-based drug industry. Nat Biotechnol 15:479–480. (b) Buskas T, Li Y, Boons GJ (2004) The immunogenicity of the tumor-associated antigen lewisy may be suppressed by a bifunctional cross-linker required for coupling to a carrier protein. Chem Eur J 10:3517–3524
110. - Seeberger PH, Soucy RL, Kwon YU, Snyder DA, Konemitsu T (2004) A convergent, versatile route to two synthetic conjugate anti-toxin malaria vaccines. Chem Commun 1706–1707

111. Bay S, Huteau V, Zarantonelli M-L, Pires R, Ughetto-Monfrin J, Taha M-K, England P, Lafaye P (2004) Phosphorylcholine−carbohydrate− protein conjugates efficiently induce hapten-specific antibodies which recognize both streptococcus pneumoniae and neisseria meningitidis: a potential multitarget vaccine against respiratory infections. J Med Chem 47:3916–3919
112. Gaidzik N, Kaiser A, Kowalczyk D, Westerlind U, Gerlitzki B, Sinn HP, Schmitt KH (2011) Synthetic antitumor vaccines containing MUC1 glycopeptides with two immunodominant domains—induction of a strong immune response against breast tumor tissues. Angew Int Ed 50:9977–9981
113. (a) Hirano K, Macmillan D, Tezuka K, Tsuji T Kajihara Y (2009) Design and synthesis of a homogeneous erythropoietin analogue with two human complex-type sialyloligosaccharides: combined use of chemical and bacterial protein expression methods. Angew Chem Int Ed 48: 9557–9560. (b) Murakami M, Okamoto R, Izumi M, Kajihara Y (2012) Chemical synthesis of an erythropoietin glycoform containing a complex-type disialyloligosaccharide. Angew Chem Int Ed 51:3567–3572
114. (a) Li S, Zhang L, Yao Q, Li L, Dong N, Rong J, Gao W, Ding X, Sun L, Chen X, Shao F (2013) Nature 501:242–246. (b) Pearson JS, Giogha C, Ong S.Y, Kennedy CL, Kelly M, Robinson KS, Lung TW, Mansell A, Riedmaier P, Oates CV, Zaid A, Mühlen S, Crepin VF, Marches O, Ang CS, Williamson NA, O'Reilly LA, Bankovacki A, Nachbur U, Infusini G, Webb AI, Silke J, Strasser A, Frankel G, Hartland EL (2013) Nature 501:247–25
115. Asahina Y, Komiya S, Ohagi A, Fujimoto R, Tamagaki H, Nakagawa K, Sato T, Akira S, Takao T, Ishii A, Nakahara Y, Hojo H (2015) Chemical synthesis of O-glycosylated human interleukin-2 by the reverse polarity protection strategy. Angew Chem Int Ed 54:8226–8230
116. Bernardes GJL, Grayson EJ, Thompson S, Chalker JM, Errey J, Oualid FE, Claridge TDW, Davis BG (2008) From disulfide- to thioether-linked glycoproteins. Angew Chem Int Ed 47:2244–2247
117. Wittrock S, Becker T, Kunz H (2007) Synthetic vaccines of tumor-associated glycopeptide antigens by immune-compatible thioether linkage to bovine serum albumin. Angew Chem Int Ed 46:5226–5230
118. Ficht S, Payne RJ, Brik A, Wong Ch-H (2007) Second-generation sugar-assisted ligation: a method for the synthesis of cysteine-containing glycopeptides. Angew Chem Int Ed 46:5975–5979
119. Okamoto R, Kajihara Y (2008) Uncovering a latent ligation site for glycopeptide synthesis. Angew Chem Int Ed 47:5402–5406
120. (a) Piontek Ch, Varón Silva D, Heinlein Ch, Pöhner C, Mezzato S, Ring P, Martin A, Schmid FX, Unverzagt C (2009) Semisynthesis of a homogeneous glycoprotein enzyme: ribonuclease C: Part 2. Angew Chem Int Ed 48:1941–1945. (b) Ullmann V, Rädisch M, Boos I, Freund J, Pöhner C, Schwarzinger S Unverzagt C (2012) Convergent solid-phase synthesis of N-glycopeptides facilitated by pseudoprolines at consensus-sequence Ser/Thr residues. Angew Chem Int Ed 51:11566–11570
121. Yang B, Dr. Yoshida K, Yin Z, Dai H, Kavunja H, El-Dakdouki MH, Sungsuwan S, Dulaney SB, Huang X (2012) Chemical synthesis of a heparan sulfate glycopeptide: syndecan-1. Angew Chem Int Ed 51:10185–10189
122. Nuhn L, Hartmann S, Palitzsch B, Gerlitzki B, Edgar Schmitt E, Rudolf Zentel R, Kunz H (2013) Water-soluble polymers coupled with glycopeptide antigens and T-cell epitopes as potential antitumor vaccines. Angew Chem Int Ed 52:10652–10656
123. Javed, Mandal PK (2021) Bacterial surface capsular polysaccharides from Streptococcus pneumoniae: a systematic review on structures, syntheses, and glycoconjugate vaccines. Carbohydr Res 502:108277, 1–32
124. Seeberger PH, Pereira CL, Khan N, Xiao G, Diago-Navarro E, Reppe K, Opitz B, Fries BC, Witzenrath M (2017) A Semi-synthetic glycoconjugate vaccine candidate for carbapenem-resistant Klebsiella pneumonia. Angew Chem Int Ed 56(45):13973–13978

Chapter 7
Hydrolysis of Glycosides

The glycosidic bond might be degraded by chemical and or enzymatic agents. Comparative studies revealed that chemical hydrolysis is nonspecific and on the other hand the enzymatic is regio and stereospecific. The glycosides are chemically susceptible to acid conditions and only in some cases to basic conditions. In general the acid sensitivity is attributed to the sugar moiety and the basic non stability to the aglycon nature.

7.1 Acidic Hydrolysis

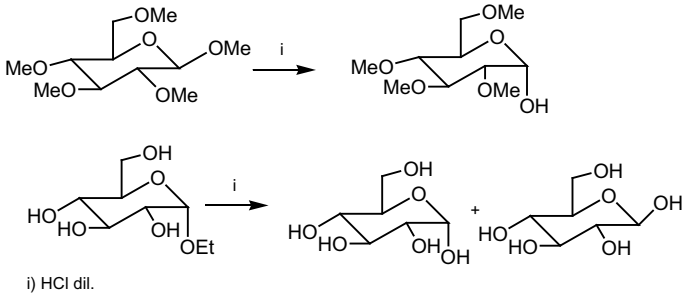
When a glycoside is subjected to acid conditions a process called acetolysis takes place. This phenomenon is more clearly seen on *O*-glycosides where even weak acid conditions can be sufficient for *O*-glycoside breakage. Some simple glycosides such as β methyl-2,3,4,6-tetra-*O*-methyl-D-glucopyranose are hydrolyzed under diluted HCl conditions to yieldF a hydroxy-2,3,4,6-tetra-*O*-methyl-D-glucopyranose. Likewise β ethyl-glucopyranose is hydrolyzed to a mixture of anomers (Scheme 7.1).

In general *S*-glycosides, are more resistant than their counterparts *O*-glycosides to acidic medium, however the former can be hydrolyzed under the conditions described in Scheme 7.2.

Disaccharides can be readily hydrolyzed under weak acidic conditions, producing their constitutive monomers in equivalent quantities (Table 7.1).

Depending on the strength of the hydrolytic conditions, polysaccharides undergo fragmentation, producing oligosaccharides, disaccharides, and monomers. The degradation degree relies on acid concentration, branching, and solubility. Thus, cellulose, being the most abundant natural polisaccharide in nature requires high acidic concentrations in order to be fully degraded to glucose. On the contrary some other polisaccharides at lower concentrations produce dimers and monomers (Table 7.2).

M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_7



Scheme 7.1 Acid hydrolysis of simple *O*-glucosides

Scheme 7.2 Hydrolysis of thioglycosides

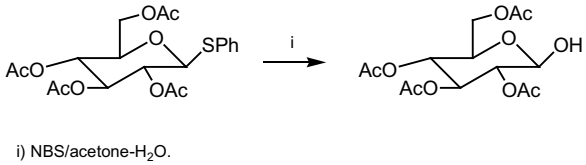


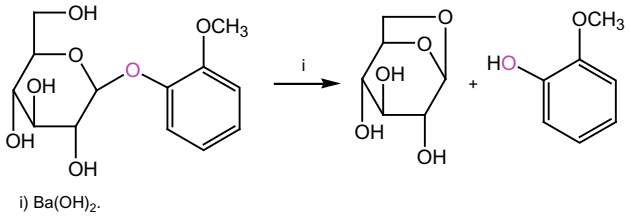
Table 7.1 Acid hydrolysis of disaccharides

Disaccharide	Hydrolysis product
(+)-sucrose	D-(+)-glucose D-(-)-fructose
(+)-lactose	D-(+)-glucose D-(+)-galactose
(+)-cellobiose	D-(+)-glucose D-(+)-glucose

Table 7.2 Acid hydrolysis of polysaccharides

Polysaccharide	Partial hydrolysis	Total hydrolysis
Cellulose	1,4-cellobiose	D-glucose
Laminarin	1,3-laminaribiose	D-glucose
Curdlan	1,3-laminaribiose	D-glucose
Quitine	1,4-N-acetyl glucosamine	2-amino-2-deoxy-D-glucose
Manan	1,4-mannobiose	D-glucose
Pululan	1,4-maltotriose	D-glucose

Partial hydrolysis is important in certain cases in which disaccharides are not either affordable materials or easily obtained ones through synthetic means. Such is the case of 1,3-laminaribiose synthetically obtained in poor yields (9.5%) [1], but readily available from polysaccharide curdlan [2].



Scheme 7.3 Basic hydrolysis of phenolic glycosides

Lewis acid hydrolysis of cellulose and methyl glycosides has been exprored usually accompanied by heating. Thus, the conditions founded for achieving this goal were magnesium chloride in water with heating at 105 °C in either selaed or open vial [3].

7.2 Basic Hydrolysis

Some glycosides have been shown to be partially sensitive against basic conditions, besides their naturally high acid sensitivity. It is been experimentally founded that three classes of *O*-glycosides might be subject to basic hydrolysis [4].

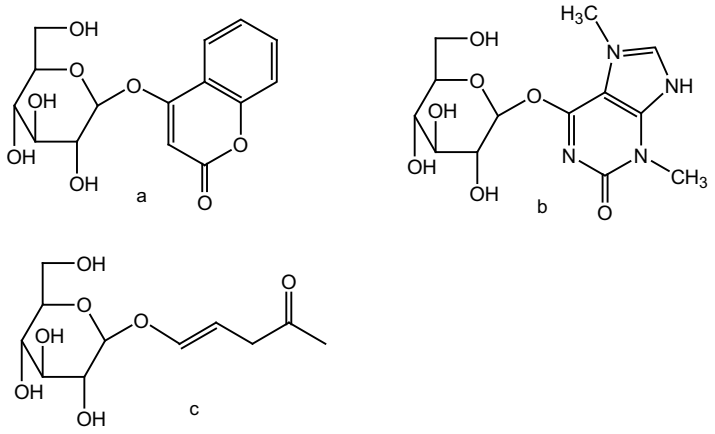
(a) phenolic glycosides
(b) enolic glycosides
(c) β-substituted alcohol glycosides.

7.2.1 Phenolic Glycosides

A typical example of phenolic glycoside decomposition under basic conditions is observed in the treatment of salicin with barium hydroxide giving as result a cyclic acetal and the release of the aglycon (Scheme 7.3).

7.2.2 Enolic Glycosides

Within this type of glycosides, there are three varieties to be considered, which are: (a) 4-hydroxycoumarins. (b) purine and pirimidin glycosides. (c) simple enols (Scheme 7.4).

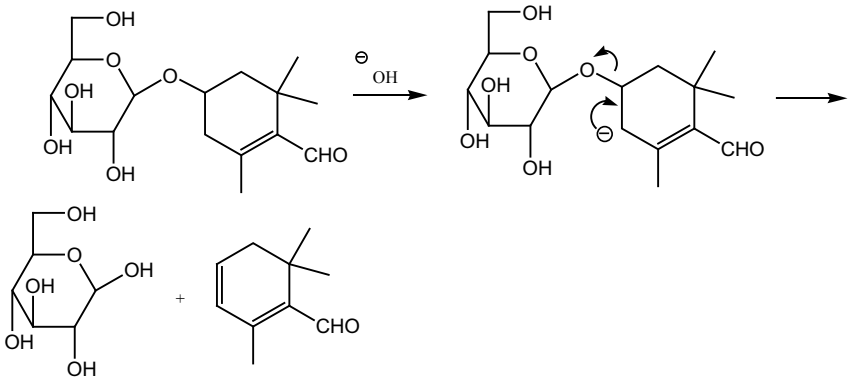


Scheme 7.4 Basic hydrolysis of enolic glycosides

7.2.3 β-Susbstituted Alcohol Glycosides

Glycoside Picrocine is hydrolyzed in diluted potassium hydroxide solution, through a mechanism that involves a intermediate carbanion formation to give a conjugated unsaturated product and glucose as breakage product (Scheme 7.5).

Contrary to acid hydrolysis of disaccharides were degradation products are their constitutive units, in most of the cases for basic conditions, non sugar derivatives are produced as result (Table 7.3).



Scheme 7.5 Basic hydrolysis of β-substituted alcohol glycosides

Table 7.3 Degradation products of disaccharides under basic conditions

Disaccharide	Hydrolysis conditions (KOH) (N)	Temperature (°C)	Product
Cellobiose	1.5	50	Lactic acid
Gentobiose	2	50	Lactic acid
Lactose	0.2	100	D-galactose
Maltose	0.15	25	Fenilhydrazone of D-mannose

7.3 Enzymatic Hydrolysis

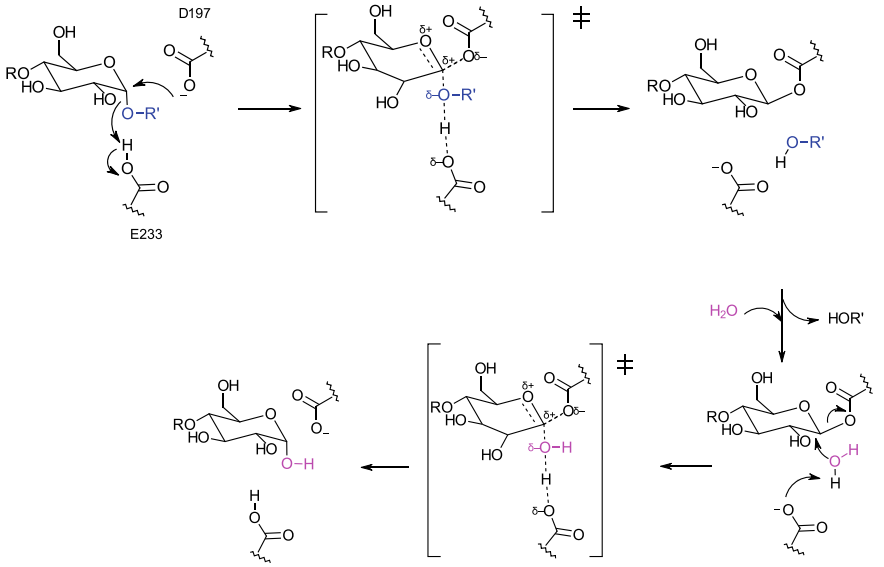
7.3.1 α-Glucosidases

The *O*-glycosidic bond is known to be cleaved by glycosidases which are classified as 1,4-glucan-4-glucanohydrolase GH13 in the CAZy classification system [5]. They are divided in alpha and beta depending on the anomer involved at the linkage, and in the case of α-glycosidase they are present in numerous species from microbes to mammals, with a little homology on the primarly structure although in the folded structure highly conserved [6]. The proposed mechanism for α-glucosidases comprises a rate-determining glycosylation step, a covalent transition state and a glycosylation step [7], as it can be visualized in α-amylases establishing a classical double displacement mechanism with net retention of anomeric configuration, involving aspartic acid D197, glutamic acid E233, and aspartic acid D300 for human pancreatic α-amylase as shown in Scheme 7.6 [8].

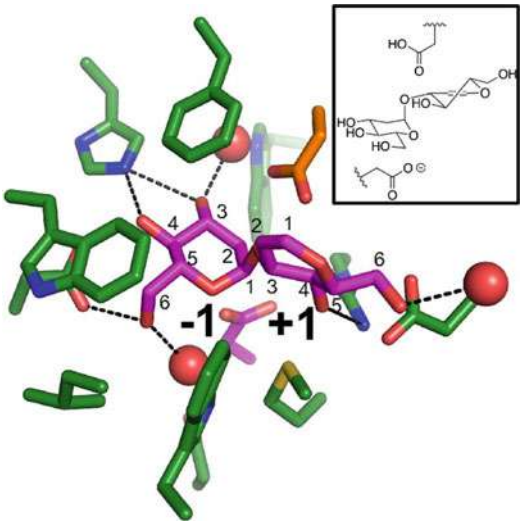
The structure of mammalian ER α-glucosidase II was capture in the binding mode showing in agreement with the proposed double displacement mechanism the half-chair $^{4}H_{3}$ for the terminal six-membered ring in proximity with carboxilate residues (Scheme 7.7) [9].

The transition state reveals that glycosylation and deglycosylation possess pyranosylium ion-like character, and the six-membered ring adopts one of several allowed conformations. The accepted conformations assumed during catalysis are two half-chair $^{4}H_{3}/^{3}H_{4}$ (or related ^{4}E and ^{3}E envelopes) or boat $^{2,5}B/B_{2,5}$ conformations (Scheme 7.8) [10].

However, a closer look on the transition state regarding GH13 α-glucosidase proposes an initial skew boat conformation $^{1}S_{3}$ at the Michaelis complex, passing through a $^{4}H_{3}$ glucosylation transition state, and finally adopting a $^{4}C_{1}$ chair state when attached to the enzyme (Scheme 7.9) [11].

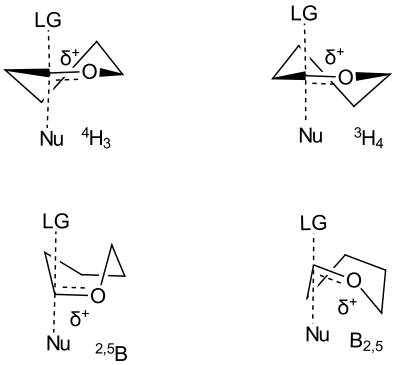


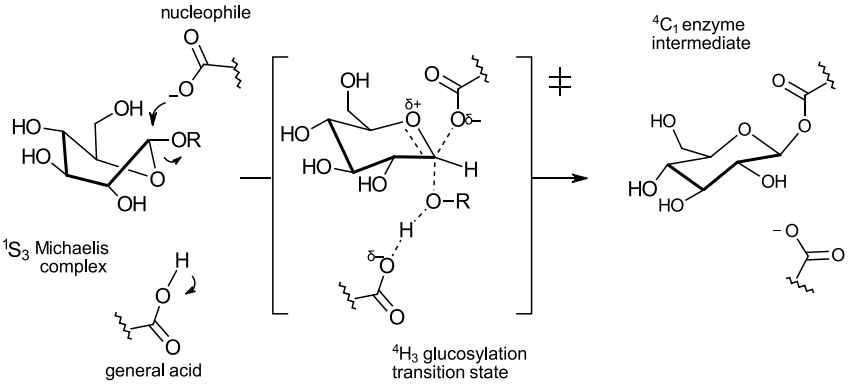
Scheme 7.6 Human α-amylase hydrolysis of glycosidic bond following a double displacement mechanism with net retention of anomeric configuration



Scheme 7.7 Details of enzyme-substrate complex of ER α-glucosidase II with an α(1,3)-disaccharide substrate

Scheme 7.8 Mechanism of hydrolysis according to possible conformations





Scheme 7.9 Proposed conformations for retaining configuration in α-glucosidase

7.3.2 β-Glucosidases

β-Glucosidases are enzymes defined as (β-D-glucopyranoside glucohydrolases, E.C. 3.2.1.21) responsible for the cleavage of β-*O*-linked glycosidic linkages of glycosides and oligosaccharides releasing nonreducing terminal D-glucosyl residues. Similarly to the alpha counterparts, β-glucosidases hydrolysis follows a two-step retaining mechanism via a $^{1}S_{3}$ to $^{4}H_{3}/^{4}E$ to $^{4}C_{1}$ substrate conformations [12].

β-Glycosides are the natural substrates for hydrolytic enzymes known as β-glycosidases. So far, at biochemical level, the rule of most of glycosidases is not totally well understood, however some of them have been related to feeding, detoxification processes or even as a defense mechanism against herbivorous pathogens through releasig of tiocyanates, cianides, and phytohormones. It is been established that there is an specific glycosidases for each aldopyranose, being the sugar composition responsible for the recognition pattern. Some of the best studied hydrolyses are the β-glycosidases and among them β-glucosidases, β-glucuronidases, β-glucanasas, β-quitinases, all of them with important biological and economical implications [13].

As it was said, there is strong evidence indicating that their action is mainly directed toward the defense mechanism and growth regulation. For instance cyanogenic glycosides are hydrolyzed, for the releasing of cyanide ions as a defense mechanism against animals. In humans the equivalent of β-glucosidase is called glucocerebrosidase (with low genomic homology to the plant counterpart) and catalyses the degradation of glucosylceramide inside lysosome. The lack or deficiency of this enzyme produces the Gaucher disease characterized by accumulation of esphyngosylglucosides and glucosylceramides.

7.3.3 β-Glucanasas, β-Quitinases

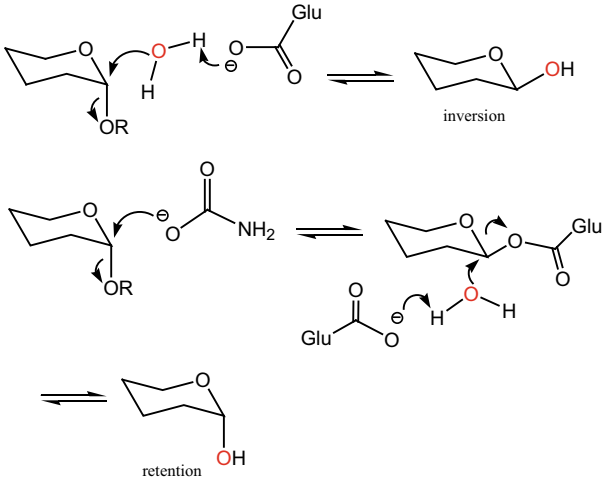
The natural substrates for these oligosaccharide hydrolytic enzymes are laminarin and quitine respectively, being present in fungi, yeast and insects. Some of the processes related to the activity of these enzymes are: seed degradation, cellular elongation control, growth regulation, pollen growth regulation, digestion and fertilization. Moreover within the context of the defense mechanisms, these enzymes can be able to digest the fungi cellular wall, and also to release oligosaccharides that induce the production of antimycotic substances called phytolexines.

7.3.4 β-Cellulase

Cellulose is the most abundant natural polisaccharide on earth. Cellulitic enzymes, particularily cellobiohydrolases CBHI, CBHII, EGI and EG II found in fungi *Trichoderma reesei* have been thoroughly studied for determing the three-dimensional structure, the genomic sequence, receptors, and substrate specificity.

7.3.5 β-Glucuronidase

In animals this enzyme is responsible for the detoxification processes, coupling mainly aromatic compounds and eliminating them as glucuronides. In plants there is not detectable β-glucuronidase activity, however the development of the GUS gene fusion containing E coli β-glucuronidase has been widely used as a gene marker [14]. Transgenic plants containing exogenic information fused to the β-glucuronidase gene marker can be conveniently monitored by using fluorogenic o histochemical glucuronides.



Scheme 7.10 Schematic representation of retention and inversion hydrolysis mechanism

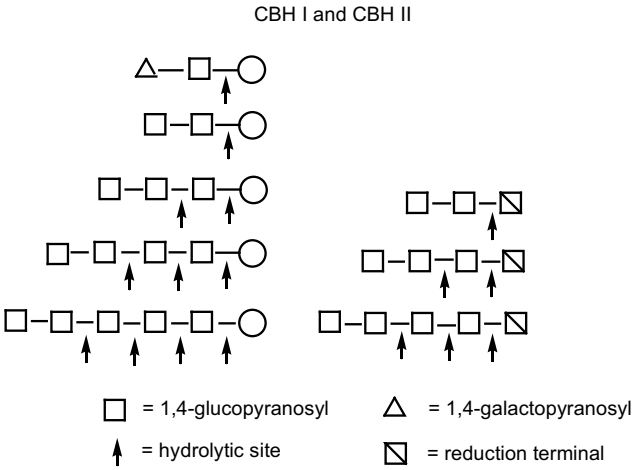
7.3.6 Retaining Versus Inverting Glucosidases

The mechanism and stereochemistry of enzymatic hydrolysis may occur with either inversion or retention of the configuration at the anomeric center. The first type of hydrolysis is carried out by the called inverting glycosidase, and the second by retaining glycosidase, being the vast majority of β-glucosidases of the later type. For instance in *Arabidopsis thaliana* which encodes for 400 glycosidases, 260 are retaining enzymes while 140 are inverting enzymes [15].

This has been proved through NMR studies, by measuring the chemical shift and magnitude of the coupling constant of the anomeric carbon. The most accepted mechanism involves, protonation of substrate, carboxylate participation attached to enzyme, intermediate formation glycoside-enzyme, and displacement as shown in Scheme 7.10 [10, 16].

7.3.7 Glycosidase Enzymatic Activity Detection

Detection can be achieved not only qualitatively, but also quantitatively, for doing so high and low molecular weight substrates have been designed. Claeyssens [17] demonstrated hydrolytic specificity of cellulases CBH I and CBH II through the use of synthetic fruorogenic substrates containing the highly fluoroescent coumarin umbelliferone or *p*-nitrophenol, in the form of *O*-glucosides. The cleavage of the glycoside releases the chromophore which can be easily measured in a fluorometer or spectrophotometer. The synthetic design of mono, di, tri and tetrasaccharides



Scheme 7.11 Enzymatic specificity on low molecular weight substrates

attached to the mentioned chromophores have been of great advantage to determine the specificity during enzymatic cleavage (Scheme 7.11).

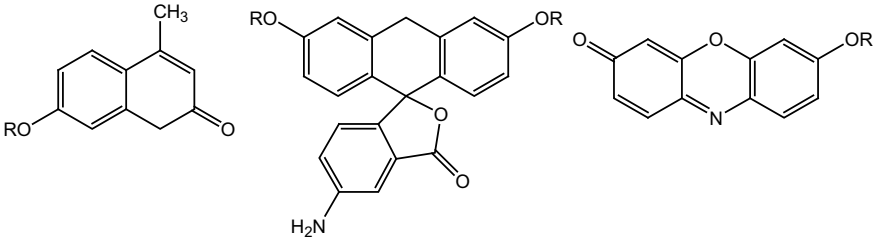
7.3.8 B-1,4-Glucanases

The utilization of polisaccharides covalently attached to dyes has been reported. The complex Ostatin Brilliant Redhydroxyethylcellulose (OBR-HEC) is applied as a specific substrate for EG, Remazol Brilliant Blue-xylan (RBB-X) the specific substrate for β-1,4-xylanases.

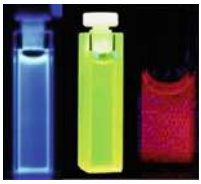
Likewise β-1,3-glucanases are detected by using an electrophoresis technique on poliacrilamide gels utilizing laminarin as substrate. The generated fragments are reacted further with azoic stain 2,3,5-triphenyltetrazolium to produce a color complex [18]. Despite their high sensitivity, this method cannot distinguish between endo and exo glucanase.

7.3.9 Fluorescent O*-Glycosides*

As mentioned before, fluorogenic aglycons are very useful molecules to monitor enzymatic activity. In principle the fluorescent compound does not exhibit fluorescence in the glycoside form, and exerts its fluorescence when released as a result of the enzymatic activity (Scheme 7.12). Some of the fluorescent compound widely used for enzymatic detections are: umbelliferone, fluoresceine, and resorufin, having been coupled to most of the biologically important sugars as *O*-glycosides.



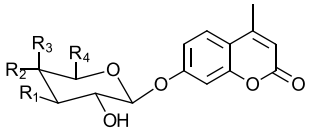
R = glucose, galactose, glucucronic acid, N-acetylglucosamine.



Scheme 7.12 Fluorescent *O*-glycosides and fluorescence emision after hydrolysis for a) umbelliferone b) fluoresceine c) resorufin

The synthesis of azido-deoxy and amino-deoxy glycosides attached to 4-methylumbelliferyl group has been achieved as an strategy for preparing glycosidase libraries from the corresponding glycosyl acetate donors with 4-methyl-7-hydroxy coumarin obtaining the corresponding β-D-*O*-glycosides (Scheme 7.13) [19].

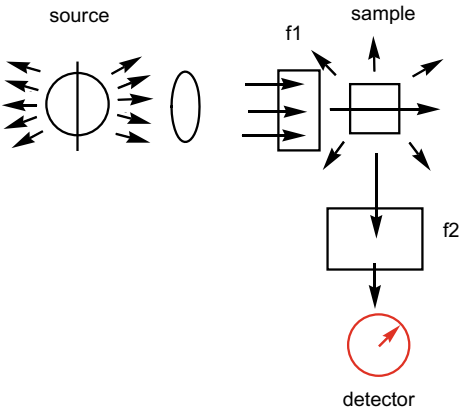
The generated fluorescence is quantified in fluorometers constituted basically by a radiation source, and two monocromatic mirrors (f1 and f2). The first one selects the light for producing fluorescence activation, and the second transmits selectively

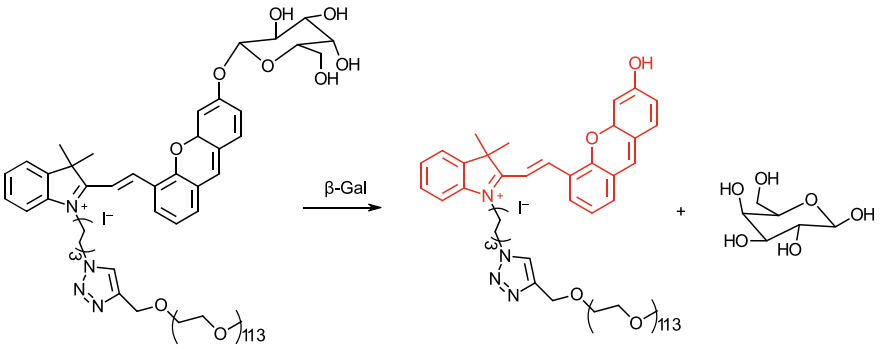


$R_1 = OH, R_2 = N_3, R_3 = H, R_4 = CH_2OH$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = NH_2, R_3 = H, R_4 = CH_2OH$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = OH, R_3 = H, R_4 = CH_2N_3$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = OH, R_3 = H, R_4 = CH_2NH_2$
$R_1 = N_3, R_2 = OH, R_3 = H, R_4 = CH_2OH$
$R_1 = NH_2, R_2 = OH, R_3 = H, R_4 = CH_2OH$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = H, R_3 = N_3, R_4 = CH_2OH$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = H, R_3 = NH_2, R_4 = CH_2OH$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = H, R_3 = OH, R_4 = CH_2N_3$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = H, R_3 = OH, R_4 = CH_2NH_2$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = N_3, R_3 = H, R_4 = H$
$R_1 = OH, R_2 = NH_2, R_3 = H, R_4 = H$

Scheme 7.13 Synthesis of 4-methylumbelliferyl β-D-glycopyranosides

Scheme 7.14 Basic diagram of fluorometer





Scheme 7.15 Glycosylated fluorescent O-glycoside for determination of galactosidase activity

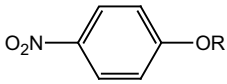
fluorescence emission. A detector will measure the intensity of the fluorescence generated (Scheme 7.14).

The chemical preparation of β-Gal substrate composed by hemi-cyanine dye (CyOH) linked with a long poly(ethylene glycol)(PEG) chain that specifically turns on its near-infrared fluorescence (NIRF), photoacoustic (PA), and photothermal signals after enzyme release has been applied as a probe for detecting ovarian cancer cells, which overexpress β-galactosidase activity (Scheme 7.15) [20, 21].

7.3.10 O-*Glycosides Measured by Absorption*

Quantification of enzymatic activity following absorption detection is based in the use of synthetic *p*-nitrophenol in the form of *O*-glycosides as substrate (Scheme 7.16). The releasing of the aglycon from the sugar moiety produces slight yellow color measured as absorbance.

Scheme 7.16 Absorption glycosides

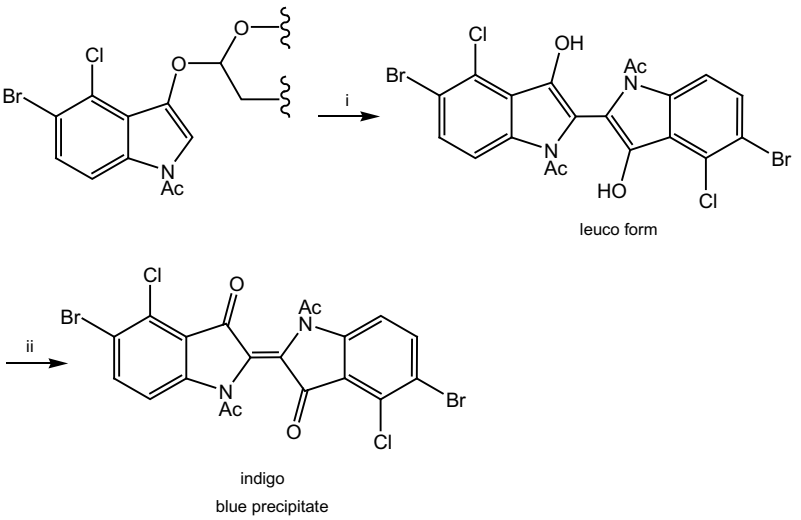


R = glucose, galactose, glucuronic acid, N-acetylglucosamine.

7.3.11 Histochemical O*-Glycosides*

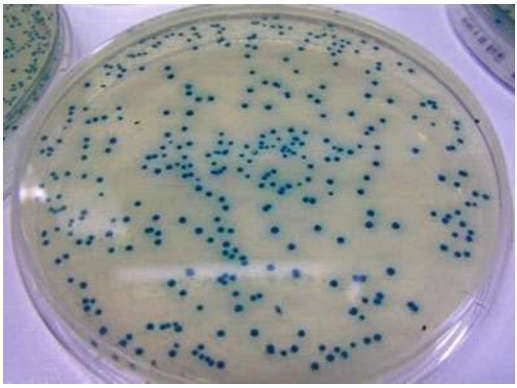
Generally a histochemical substrate to be consider as a good candidate, should be such that in the form of *O*-glycosides it is water soluble and when the enzyme hydrolyzes the glycosidic bond releases the aglycon, which precipitates immediately. A compound that closely fulfills these requirements is 5-bromo-4-chloro-N-acetyl-3-indoxyl (X-gal, X-gluc, etc.) which has been attached to most of the biologically important monosaccharides, coommonly identified as X-gal, X-gluc, etc. (Scheme 7.17).

These cromophoric O-glycosides has been extensively used for detection of hydrolase activity and in molecular biology as screenable gene markers used to determine if a sequence has been successfully inserted in a cell known as the lacZ gene wich encodes for β-glucuronidase (Scheme 7.18). Although this is commercially available it is highly sensitive producing and easily detectable blue precipitate, it shows some diffusion before the monomers undergo dimerization in the presence of oxygen, to produce the blue indigo precipitate. Scheme 7.18 genetically transformed bacteria cells containing lacZ gene expressing for β-galactosidase activity



i) glycosidase. ii) O_2.

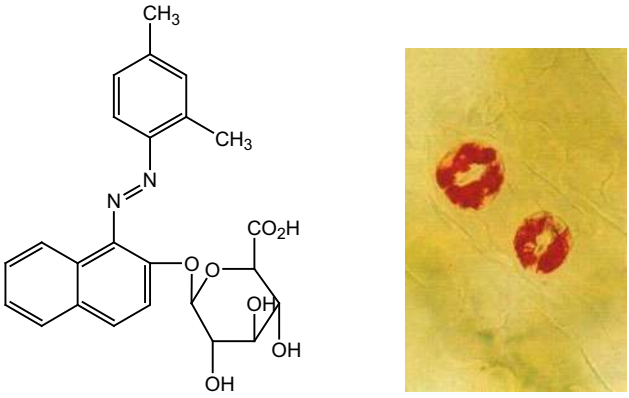
Scheme 7.17 5-Bromo-4-chloro-indoxyl aldopyranose hydrolysis



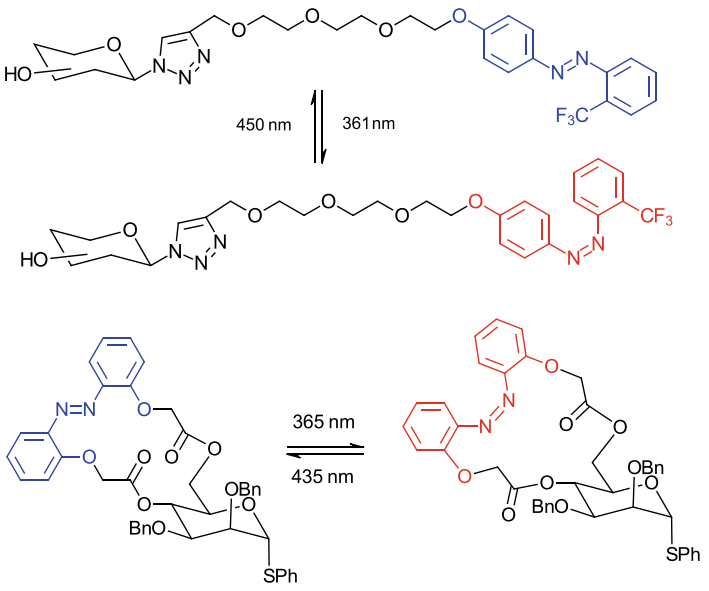
Scheme 7.18 Genetically transformed bacteria cells containing lacZ gene expressing for β-galactosidase activity detected with X-Gal)

detected with X-Gal [22, 23]. Alternatively, phenylazonaphtols *O*-glycosidesknown as Sudan glucuronide has been tested as histochemical substrate for enzymatic detection of gene marker β-glucuronidasein transgenic plants. The water soluble Sudan glucuronide, releases the fenilazo naphtol stain after enzymatic hydrolysis which can be seen in the sites of enzymatic activity as red crystals (Scheme 7.19).

Azoic phenols have been also intensively studied as photoswitchers due their unique properties as photochromic molecules capable to isomerize from Z to E and viceversa when a wavelength usually in the range of 365–435 nm is applied. A number of different applicability's have been explored such as surfactants, [24], and receptor photosensitizers [25, 26].



Scheme 7.19 Phenylazonaphtol glucuronides as histochemical substrates



Scheme 7.20 Photoswitchable carbohydrate-based surfactants and gel plasticizers macrocyclic azobenzenes

Likewise, Azoic phenols have been attached to carbohydrate moieties, transferring interesting properties as cryogenic systems [27], and carbohydrate-based macrocyclic azobenzene, which were synthesized and their photo, thermo, and mechano photoresponsive properties evaluated as gel plasticizers (Scheme 7.20) [28].

References

1. Bächli P, Percival EG (1952) The synthesis of laminaribiose (3-β-D-glucosyl D-glucose) and proof of its identity with laminaribiose isolated from laminarin. J Chem Soc 1243–1246
2. Wang LX, Sakairi N, Kuzuhara H (1991) Laminaribiose as the starting material: facile synthesis of β-(1→3)-Linked gal-gal disaccharide derivatives and related compounds. J Carbohydr Chem 10:349–361
3. Shimada N, Kawamoto H, Saka S (2007) Solid-state hydrolysis of cellulose and methyl α- and β-D-glucopyranosides in presence of magnesium chloride. Carbohyd Res 342:1373–1377
4. Ballou CE (1952) Alkali-sensitive glycosides. Adv Carbohydr Chem 9:59–95
5. Qian M, Ajandouz EH, Payan F, Nahoum V (2005) Molecular basis of the effects of chloride ion on the acid-base catalyst in the mechanism of pancreatic R-amylase. Biochemistry 44:3194–3201
6. Maurus R, Begum A, Williams LK, Fredriksen JR, Zhang R, Withers SG, Brayer GD (2008) Alternative catalytic anions differentially modulate human r-amylase activity and specificity. Biochemistry 47:3332–3344

7. Kötzler MP, Robinson K, Chen H-M, Okon M, McIntosh LP, Withers SG (2018) Modulating the nucleophile of a glycoside hydrolase through site-specific incorporation of fluoroglutamic acids. J Am Chem Soc 140:8268−8276
8. Zhang R, Li C, Williams LK, Rempel BP, Brayer GD, Withers SG (2009) Directed "in Situ" inhibitor elongation as a strategy to structurally characterize the covalent glycosyl-enzyme intermediate of human pancreatic R-amylase. Biochemistry 48:10752–10764
9. Caputoa AT, Alonzia DS, Martib L, Recab I-B, Kiappesa JL, Struwea WB, Crossa A, Basua S, Lowea ED, Darlota B, Santinob S, Roversia P, Zitzmanna N (2016) Structures of mammalian ER α-glucosidase II capture the binding modes of broad-spectrum iminosugar antivirals. PNAS 113(32):E4630–E4638
10. (a) Sinnott ML (1990) Catalytic mechanisms of enzymic glycosyl transfer. Chem Rev 90:1171–1202. (b) Davies GJ, Planas A, and Rovira C (2012) Conformational analyses of the reaction coordinate of glycosidases. Acc Chem Res 45(2):308–316
11. Kazem Abadi SS, Tran M, Yadav AK, Adabala PJP, Chakladar S, Bennet AJ (2017) New class of glycoside hydrolase mechanism-based covalent inhibitors: glycosylation transition state conformations. J Am Chem Soc 139:10625−10628
12. Nutho B, Pengthaisong S, Tankrathok A, Lee VS, Cairns JRK, Rungrotmongkol T, Hannongbua S (2020) Structural basis of specific glucoimidazole and mannoimidazole binding by Os3BGlu7. Biomolecules 10(907):1–19
13. Esen A (1993) β-Glucuronidase. Biochemistry and molecular biology, ACS
14. Jefferson RA, Burges SM, Hirsh D (1986) beta-Glucuronidase from Escherichia coli as a gene-fusion marker. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 83:8447–8451
15. Chandrasekar B, Colby T, Emon AEK, Jiang J, Hong TN, Villamor J, Harzen A, Overkleeft HS, van der Hoorn RAL (2014) Broad-range glycosidase activity profiling. Mol Cell Proteomics 13(10):2787–2800
16. Cerqueira N, Brás N, Ramos MJ and Fernandes PA (2012) Glycosidases—a mechanistic overview. Carbohydrates—Comprehensive studies on glycobiology and glycotechnology, Chuan-Fa Chang. IntechOpen. https://doi.org/10.5772/52019. Available from: https://www.intechopen.com/chapters/41125
17. Clayssens M, Van Tildeburgh H, Tomme P, Wood T, McRae S (1989) Fungal cellulase systems. Comparison of the specificities of the cellobiohydrolases isolated from Penicillium pinophilum and Trichoderma reesei Biochem J 261:819–825
18. Pan SQ, Ye X, Kuc J (1989) Direct detection of β-1,3-glucanase isozymes on polyacrylamide electrophoresis and isoelectrofocusing gels. Anal Biochem 182:136–140
19. Chen H-M (2018) Withers SG Synthesis of azido-deoxy and amino-deoxy glycosides and glycosyl fluorides for screening of glycosidase libraries and assembly of substituted glycosides. Carbohydr Res 467:33–44
20. Zhen X, Zhang J, Huang, Xie C, Miao Q, Pu K (2018) Macrotheranostic probe with disease-activated near-infrared fluorescence, photoacoustic, and photothermal signals for imaging-guided therapy. Angewandte Chemie Int Ed 57(26):7804–7808
21. Hyun JY, Kang NR, Shin I (2018) Carbohydrate microarrays containing glycosylated fluorescent probes for assessment of glycosidase activities. Org Lett 20:1240−1243
22. Terryn N, Brito-Arias M, Engler G, Tiré C, Villarroel R, Van Montagu M, Inzé D (1993) rha1, a gene encoding a small GTP binding protein from arabidopsis, is expressed primarily in developing guard cells. Plant Cell 5:1761–1769
23. Van der Eycken E, Terryn N, Goemans JL, Carlens G, Nerinckx W, Claeyssens M, Van der Eycken J, Van Montagu M, Brito-Arias M, Engler G (2000) Sudan-β-d-glucuronides and their use for the histochemical localization of β-glucuronidase activity in transgenic plants Sudan-β-d-glucuronides and their use for the histochemical localization of β-glucuronidase activity in transgenic plants. Plant Cell Rep 19:966–970
24. Schnurbus M, Campbell RA, Droste J, Honnigfort C, Glikman D, Gutfreund P, Hansen MR, Braunschweig B (2020) Photo-switchable surfactants for responsive air–water interfaces: Azo versus Arylazopyrazole amphiphiles. J Phys Chem B 124(31):6913–6923

25. Fehrentz T, Schçnberger M, Trauner D (2011) Angew Chem Int Ed 50:12156–12182, and electrocatalyst
26. Goulet-Hanssens A, Utecht M, Mutruc D, Titov E, Schwarz J, Grubert L, Bleger D, Saalfrank P, Hecht S (2017) Electrocatalytic Z → E Isomerization of Azobenzenes. J Am Chem Soc 139:335−341
27. Adam MK, Hu Y, Poisson JS, Pottage MJ, Ben RN, Wilkinson BL (2017) Photoswitchable carbohydrate-based fluorosurfactants as tuneable ice recrystallization inhibitors. Carbohydre Res 439:1–8
28. Lin C, Maisonneuve S, Métivier R, Xie J (2017) Photoswitchable carbohydrate-based macrocyclic azobenzene: synthesis, chiroptical switching, and multistimuli-responsive self-assembly. Chem Eur J 23:14996–15001

Chapter 8
Nuclear Magnetic Resonance of Glycosides

8.1 NMR of Glycosides

Nuclear magnetic resonance (^{1}H, ^{13}CNMR), X-ray diffraction and mass spectrometry are considered among the most important analytical methods for structural elucidation. Characterization by means of ^{1}H, ^{13}CNMR, mono a bidimensional spectroscopy is a powerful tool for structural assignment of simple and complex glycosides. Pioneering studies [1–4] on simple monosaccharides were essential for understanding through the chemical shifts and coupling constants the conformational behavior of sugars.

Some basic considerations derived from the referred studies mentioned above that apply to simple saccharides are:

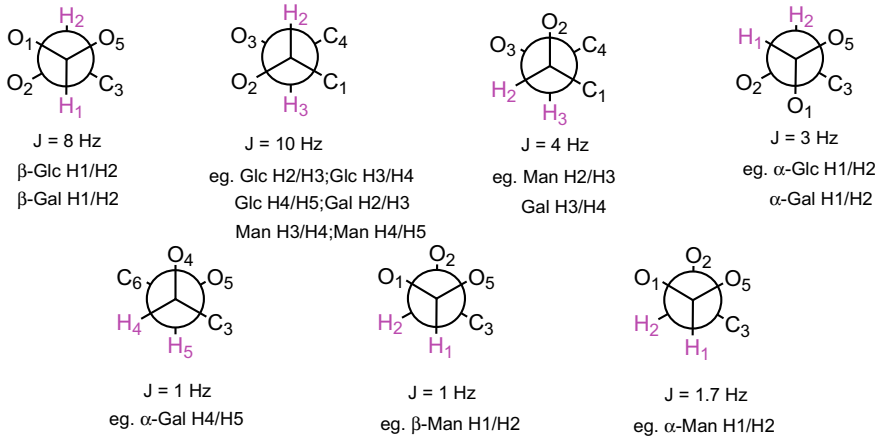
Pyranoside rings of the D-series generally prefer to assume conformation $^{4}C_{1}$ and those of the L-series the conformation $_{1}C^{4}$. The anomeric proton usually resonate at lower field than methine protons, whereas methylene protons resonate at somewhat higher fields.

In D-pyranoses with $^{4}C_{1}$ conformation, the α-anomer resonance is downfield compared to the β-anomer, and the value of the coupling constant between H-1 and H-2 at three bond distance $^{3}J_{1-2}$ determine if the anomeric proton is equatorial or axial, and therefore if the glycoside is α or β. Usually for axial-axial interactions the observed values are 8–10 Hz and for axial-equatorial or equatorial-equatorial 2–3 Hz. Thus for β-glucose, $^{3}J_{1,2} = 8$ Hz, $^{3}J_{2,3} = {}^{3}J_{3,4} = {}^{3}J_{4,5} = 10$ Hz, H-1 appears as doublet, and H-2, H-3, H-4 appears as 10 Hz triplets, and H-5 as double double doublet as it is coupled to the two H6s.

The α-galactose presents $^{3}J_{1,2} = 3$ Hz, $^{3}J_{2,3} = 10$ Hz, $^{3}J_{3,4} = 4$ Hz, $^{3}J_{4,5} < 1$ Hz. H-1 appears as 3 Hz doublet, H-2 and H-3 as double of doublets, H-4 as doublet, and H-5 as triplet for coupling with two H6s. The different possible arrangements are for better understanding represented in Newman projection (Scheme 8.1).

Equatorial protons are positioned at lower field than chemically equivalent axial protons except in those cases were there is a carbonyl group adjacent to H-equatorial,

M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_8



Scheme 8.1 Newman projections showing the arrangements of hydrogens in $^{4}C_{1}$ and $_{4}C^{1}$ chair conformations and the expected coupling constants

or when there is a synaxial interaction with H-axial, in which a deshielding effect is observed [1]c.

The magnitude of coupling constant $^{3}J_{H-H}$ besides torsion angle dependence, may be affected by other factors such as substituent electronegativity, bond length, and bond distance. Solvent effects on $^{3}J_{(HH)}$ appear to be relatively minor, except in cases where solvent-induced conformational changes occur [5].

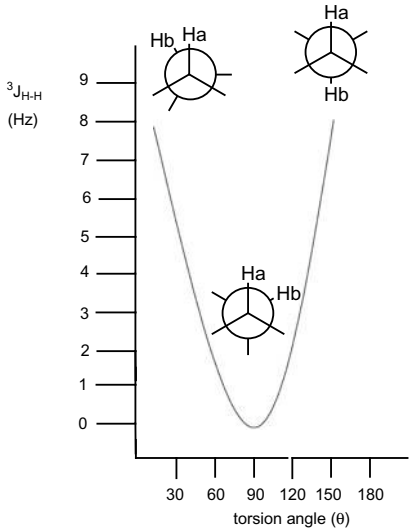
The ^{13}C chemical shift may also reveals along with de ^{1}H NMR the anomeric configuration, but the one bond ^{13}C–^{1}H coupling constants can be remarkably useful to determine the anomeric configuration in pyranoses. For instance, the $^{1}J_{CH}$ for the α-anomer is 170 Hz and for the β-anomer 160 Hz, being for the L-isomer the reverse [6].

The chemical shift values of the ring protons are dependent of the groups attached to the hydroxyl groups. For instance a characteristic shift of ring-proton resonances to lower field occurs when the hydroxyl group is esterified with acetyl, sulfate, or phosphate where normally downfield shifts ~0.2–0.5 ppm are observed. If the protecting group is acetate, for non-aromatic solvents C-6 resonates at lower field, followed by C-2, C-4 and at highest field the 3-acetoxyl signal [4]. The proton magnetic resonance of 4,6-O-benzylidene pyranosides have been measured and the values of the coupling constants $J_{1,2}$, $J_{1,3}$, $J_{2,3}$, and $J_{3,4}$ support the assignment of the chair conformation to the pyranoid ring [2].

The coupling constants $^{3}J_{H-H}$ values on saturated systems can be predicted by applying the Karplus equation, [7] which correlate the dihedral angle θ values with the magnitude of the coupling constant $^{3}J_{H-H}$.

$$^{3}J_{H-H} = A + B\cos\theta + C\cos 2\theta$$

Scheme 8.2 Relationship between coupling constant and torsion angle



where θ is the dihedral angle between H1–C1–C2–H2, A = 4.22, B = −0.5, and C = 4.5 Hz for C–C bond distance 1.543 Å.

Coupling constants for vicinal protons at three bond distances are two or three times bigger when they are eclipsed or antieclipsed (0° or 180°) to each other than when they are synclinal or gauche (60°) (Scheme 8.2).

Karplus analysis is more accurate when comparative studies are performed between structurally similar compounds. For the study of conformational differences between structurally similar molecules the Karplus equation adopts the form of:

$$^3J_{H-H} = K \cos 2\theta$$

where K is dependent on H1–C1–C2–H2 fragment, when θ is having values between 50 and 70°, or 110 and 130°, slight variations are observed, while for values close to 0, 90 and 180°, no observable changes are detected.

The effect of the relative orientation and electronegativity of substituents on the magnitude of ^{3J}(aa), ^{3J}(ae) and ^{3J}(ee) has been predicted by a simple set of additivity constants. The step followed in the derivation of the additivity constants considers that antiperiplanar substituents exert a negative and gauche substituents a positive effect on J. The resulting data were fitted equation $^3J = {}^3J^0 + \Sigma\ \Delta J\ (x)$ where $^3J^0$ represents the reference value. Some of the additivity constants ΔJ (x) for a given substituent are given in Table 8.1 [5].

A computer program known as ALTONA was developed for the calculation of dihedral angles from ^{1}H NMR. This program calculates plots of H–C–C–H diedral angles from proton-proton NMR vicinal coupling constants using an empirically

Table 8.1 Additivity constants ΔJ (x) for a substituent X

X	Σ ΔJ (ae)(x) or Σ ΔJ (ee)(x)		Σ ΔJ (aa)(x)
	X anti	X gauche	X gauche
H, C	0.0	0.0	0.0
I, S	−0.3	+0.1	−0.3
Br	−0.9	+0.3	−0.7
N	−1.1	+0.3	−0.6
N_3	−1.4	+0.4	−1.1
Cl	−1.2	+0.4	−1.0
O	−1.8	+0.5	−1.4
F	−2.5	+0.7	−2.0

Table 8.2 ^{1}H chemical shifts and couplings ($^{3}J_{H–H}$) of peracetylated α- and β-D-glucopyranoses measured in $CDCl_3$ at 30 °C

Compound	H-1	H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	H-6a	H-6b
α-glucopyranosyl pentaacetate	6.33 3.71	5.10 10.29	5.47 9.49	5.14 10.35	4.11 2.32, 4.14	4.09	4.26
β-glucopyranosyl pentaacetate	5.71 8.33	5.13 9.58	5.25 9.39	5.12 10.11	3.83 2.25, 4.57	4.11	4.28
	C-1	C-2	C-3	C-4	C-5	C-6	
α-glucopyranosyl pentaacetate	92.77	72.15	73.43	70.32	72.10	61.27	
β-glucopyranosyl pentaacetate	96.59	74.81	76.43	70.27	76.61	61.42	

generalized Karplus-type equation, which takes into account the electronegativity and the orientation of the substituents attached to the considered fragment [8].

The Complete assignment of the ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra of fully acetylated α and β glucopyranosides was determined and the ^{1}H chemical shifts and proton–proton coupling constants were refined by computational spectral analyses (Table 8.2) [9].

Also 1-thioaldopyranosides having the configurations β-D-xylo, α-L-arabino, β-D-ribo, β-D-gluco, and β-D-galacto were determined in different solvents, observing that the H-1 signal in these derivatives appears ~0.35 ppm to higher field than its position in the 1-oxygenated analogs [10].

Peracetylated α and β glucopyranosides were:

Also detailed studies of ^{1}H nmr spectra of a series of hexopyranosyl halides have been accomplished. The first order assignments revealed several stereospecific dependencies, mainly upon the orientation of the halogen substituent with respect to the pyranose ring and the relative orientation of other substituents attached to the ring [3, 11, 12].

^{1}H and ^{13}C chemical shifts and J-coupling patterns for common D-aldohexoses, D-aldopentoses and some methyl monosaccharides are described in Tables 8.3, 8.4 and 8.5 [13, 14].

Table 8.3 ^{1}H chemical shifts and couplings ($^{3}J_{H-H}$) of D-aldohexoses and aldopentoses measured at 400 MHz in D_2O

Compound	H-1	H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	H-6a	H-6b
α-glucose	5.09 3.6	3.41 9.5	3.61 9.5	3.29 9.5	3.72	3.72 2.8	3.63 5.7, 12.8
Reference [8]	5.21 3.8	3.51 9.8	3.69 9.1	3.93 9.9	3.81 2.3, 5.4	3.82	3.74
β-glucose	4.51 7.8	3.13 9.5	3.37 9.5	3.30 9.5	3.35	3.75 2.8	3.60 5.7, 12.8
Reference [8]	4.62 7.9	3.22 9.4	3.46 9.1	3.38 9.9	3.44 2.2, 5.9	3.87	3.70
α-galactose	5.16 3.8	3.72 10.0	3.77 3.8	3.90 1.0	4.00	3.70 6.4	3.62 6.4
β-galactose	4.48 8.0	3.41 10.0	3.56 3.8	3.84 1.0	3.61	3.70 3.8	3.62 7.8
α-mannose	5.05 1.8	3.79 3.8	3.72 10.0	3.52 9.8	3.70	3.74 2.8	3.63 6.8, 12.2
β-mannose	4.77 1.5	3.85 3.8	3.53 10.0	3.44 9.8	3.25	3.74 2.8	3.60 6.8, 12.2

Table 8.4 ^{1}H chemical shifts and couplings ($^{3}J_{H-H}$) of D-aldopentoses measured at 400 $_{MHz}$ in D_2O

Compound	H-1	H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5a	H-5b
α-xylose	5.09 3.6	3.42 9.0	3.48 9.0	3.52	3.58 7.5	3.57 7.5
β-xylose	4.47 7.8	3.14 9.2	3.33 9.0	3.51	3.82 5.6	3.22 10.5, 11.4
α-arabinose	4.40 7.8	3.40 9.8	3.55 3.6	3.83	3.78 1.8	3.57 1.3, 13.0
β-arabinose	5.12 3.6	3.70 9.3	3.77 9.8	3.89	3.54 2.5	3.91 1.7, 13.5
α-ribose	4.75 2.1	3.71 3.0	3.83 3.0	3.77	3.82 5.3	3.50 2.6, 12.4
β-ribose	4.81 6.5	3.41 3.3	3.98 3.2	3.77	3.72 4.4	3.57 8.8, 11.4
α-lyxose	4.89 4.9	3.69 3.6	3.78 7.8	3.73	3.71 3.8	3.58 7.2, 12.1
β-lyxose	4.74 1.1	3.81 2.7	3.53 8.5	3.73	3.84 5.1	3.15 9.1, 11.7

Table 8.5 ^{13}C chemical shifts of some aldoses

Compound	C-1	C-2	C-3	C-4	C-5	C-6
α-glucose	92.9	72.5	73.8	70.6	72.3	61.6
Reference [8]	92.77	72.15	73.43	70.32	72.10	61.27
β-glucose	96.7	75.1	76.7	70.6	76.8	61.7
Reference [8]	96.59	74.81	76.43	70.27	76.61	61.42
α-galactose	93.2	69.4	70.2	70.3	71.4	62.2
β-galactose	97.3	72.9	73.8	69.7	76.0	62.0
α-mannose	95.0	71.7	71.3	68.0	73.4	62.1
β-mannose	94.6	72.3	74.1	67.8	77.2	62.1
α-arabinose	101.9	82.3	76.5	83.8	62.0	
β-arabinose	96.0	77.1	75.1	82.2	62.0	
α-ribose	97.1	71.7	70.8	83.8	62.1	
β-ribose	101.7	76.0	71.2	83.3	63.3	

A wide number and variety of O- and in less extent C-glycosides islolated from natural sources have been reported and their NMR analysis described. The chemical shifts and coupling constants of some of them are described just as representative examples in Table 8.6.

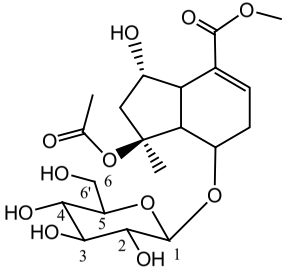
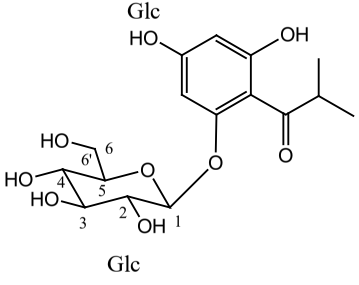
Nuclear Overhauser effects (NOE) is a dipole–dipole relaxation experiment and has been one of the most useful experiments for the structural assignments of glycosides on the basis of shielding and deshielding effects [20]. Glycosylation sites can be identified by comparison of ^{1}H NMR spectral data of the peracetylated and the non protected sugar, since free OH groups causes significant downfield shift (in the range of 1–0.5 ppm) The approach known as "structural-reporter-group" has been introduced to identify individual sugars or sequences of residues and can be used to identify structural motifs or specific sugars and linkage compositions found in relevant databases [14].

For complex molecules the interpretation is often problematic, especially due the presence of internal motion. Some of the difficulties encountered for NMR structural assignment for oligosaccharides are [21]:

The limited number of C, H dipolar couplings measured across a single bond.
The distribution of C, H bond vectors is not isotropic due to the geometry of the pyranose ring.
Due the flexibility of the glycosidic bond that connects the different sugars moieties, different alignment tensors can be observed.

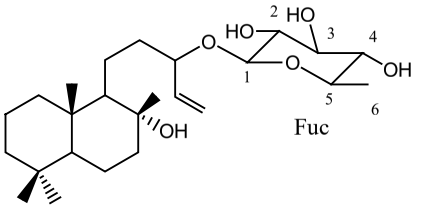
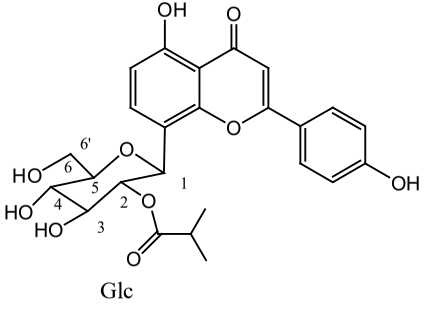
More recently the use of a novel procedure known as "residual dipolar coupling" has been introduced by Tian & Prestegard as an alternative approach for studing the conformational and the motional properties of oligosaccharides [22]. The approach is based on the solution for each ring of an order matrix that combines different types of couplings, $^{1}D_{CH}$, $^{2}D_{CH}$, and D_{HH}.

Table 8.6 ^{1}H chemical shifts and couplings ($^{3}J_{H-H}$) of natural O- and C-glycosides

Natural glycoside	H-1	H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	H-6, H-6′	References
	4.63 d(8.0)	3.17 dd (8.0, 9.0)	3.36 t (9.0)	3.26 t (9.0)	3.30 m	3.66 dd (6.0, 12.0); 3.89 dd (2.0, 12.0)	[15]
	5.04 d (7.5)	3.50 dd (9.0, 7.5)	3.44 m	3.38 t (9.0)	3.44 m	3.71 dd (5.5, 12.3), 3.91 dd (2.0, 12.3)	[16]

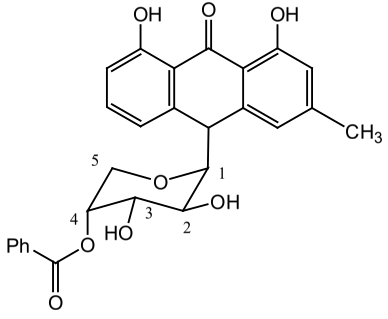
(continued)

Table 8.6 (continued)

Natural glycoside	H-1	H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	H-6, H-6′	References
 Fuc	4.32 d (8.0)	3.59 dd (8.0, 10.0)	3.54 br dd (3.0, 10.0)	3.63 br d (3.0)	3.58 dq (1.0, 6.0)	1.21 d	[17]
 Glc	4.88 d (10.0)	5.35 t (10.0)	3.49 m	3.49 m	3.33 m	3.58 dd (5.5, 12.5), 3.78 m	[18]

(continued)

Table 8.6 (continued)

Natural glycoside	H-1	H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	H-6, H-6′	References
	3.47 dd (1.9, 9.2)	3.66, t (9.2)	3.76 dd (2.8, 9.2)	5.21 br s	3.37 d (13.1), 3.88 dd (1.8, 13.1)		[19]

Dipolar coupling arise from through space spin–spin interactions and is dependent of both internucear distance (r) and an angle between the magnetic field and the internuclear vector (θ) as described by the equation

$$D_{ij} = \xi_{ij}\left(\frac{(3\cos^2\theta - 1)}{2}\right)(1/r^3)$$

where ξ_{ij} is a constant that depends on the properties of nuclei *i* and *j*.

Direct measurements of dipolar interactions can be achieved by dissolving molecules in oriented media such as crystals composed of bicelles or phage. Despite the fact that molecular tumbling remains fast in these media, the sampling of orientations is no longer isotropic, and consequently the dipolar coupling do not average to zero and splittings are observed between the dipolar coupled spin pairs.

The knowledge of the molecular geometry of a fragment and the measurement of five or more interdependent residual couplings from the fragment allows the determination of the Saupe order matrix elements (Sij) from a set of linear equations relating dipolar couplings to the known geometry factors and the unknown order tensor elements.

$$D_{\text{resid}}\alpha \sum_{ij} S_{ij}\cos\theta_i \cos\theta_j$$

where θ_{ij} are the angles between the internuclear vectors.

Determination of the Saupe order matrices for individual rigid fragments of a molecule allow both structural characterization and assestments of internal motions between fragments [11].

NMR studies carried out by De Bruyn [23], using as models series of disaccharides provided valuable information about conformational behavior from the chemical shifts and the torsion angles present around the glycosidic bond (Scheme 8.3). Also it has been reported that the ^{13}C chemical shifts for the glycoside and the aglycone carbon can be directly correlated with one of the torsion angles psi (ψ) defined by the bonds C(1)–O(1)–C(4)–H(4) [20].

The sign of θ and ψ has been previously calculated through the method known as hard sphere exoanomeric effect [24] which predicted the relative stability of the different conformers around the torsion angles, considering the bond length, bond angle and atomic size. It has been observed that for a number of disaccharides there is a variation of the chemical shifts as a function of ψ, compared with the values of their corresponding monosaccharides (Table 8.7).

Scheme 8.3 Torsion angles around the glycosidic bond

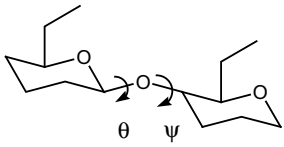


Table 8.7 Chemical shifts and $J^{H,H}$ coupling constants (Hz) of disaccharides and anomers of glucopyranose in D_2O at 30 °C

	H1′	H2′	H3′	H4′	H5′	H6a	H6b	H1	H2	H3	H4	H5	H6a	H6b
α-1	5.10	3.56	3.80	3.47	3.86	3.85	3.78	5.45	3.64	3.83	3.47	4.03	3.85	3.76
Reference [8]	5.08 3.8	3.54 9.9	3.77 8.9	3.44 10.0	3.93 2.34, 5.3	3.82	3.75	5.42 3.5	3.62 9.7	3.80 9.0	3.44 10.1	3.84 2.35, 4.4	3.83	3.78
β-1	5.41	3.55	3.80	3.47	3.86	3.78	3.78	4.81	3.39	3.59	–	–	3.90	3.56
Reference [8]	5.37 3.8	3.53 9.9	3.73 9.1	3.45 10.1	4.01 2.54, 4.6	3.80	3.77	4.78 7.9	3.37 9.4	3.56 9.1	3.40 9.9	3.44 2.22, 5.9	3.88	3.70
α-2	5.38	3.56	3.77	3.47	4.02	3.82	3.82	5.24	3.63	3.86	3.67	–	–	–
Reference [8]	5.35 3.9	3.55 9.9	3.74 9.1	3.43 10.1	3.99 2.39, 4.78	3.82	3.76	5.21 3.8	3.61 9.7	3.83 8.9	3.63 10.3	3.84 2.33, 5.2	3.81	3.70
β-2	5.36	3.57	3.76	3.45	4.02	3.82	3.82	4.67	3.36	3.64	3.64	3.48	–	–
Reference [8]	5.34 3.9	3.54 9.9	3.73 9.1	3.44 10.1	4.00 2.31, 4.3	3.80	3.78	4.65 8.0	3.31 9.3	3.62 8.7	3.62 9.8	3.45 2.27, 5.8	3.87	3.70
α-3	5.41	3.59	3.68	3.42	3.72	3.74	3.74	5.23	3.58	3.97	3.64	3.93	3.82	3.82
*	5.39 3.9	3.56 9.9	3.68 9.1	3.40 10.0	3.71 2.3, 5.2	3.84	3.75	5.21 3.8	3.55 9.9	3.95 8.9	3.63 10.0	3.92 2.2, 4.8	3.83	3.79
β-3	5.41	3.58	3.69	3.42	3.74	3.77	3.77	4.66	3.28	3.77	3.62	3.60	3.92	3.77
Reference [8]	5.39 3.9	3.56 9.9	3.66 9.2	3.40 10.0	3.70 2.2, 5.2	3.84	3.75	4.63	3.26	3.75	3.62	3.58	3.89	3.75
α-4	4.63	3.37	3.52	3.42	3.46	3.75	3.75	5.45	3.65	3.87	3.47	3.87	3.84	3.77
Reference [8]	4.61 7.9	3.35 9.4	3.49 9.1	3.40 9.9	3.43 2.26, 5.6	3.88	3.72	5.42 3.6	3.62 9.7	3.84 9.2	3.44 10.0	3.82 2.3, 5.2	3.82	3.75
β-4	4.77	3.32	3.50	3.37	3.44	3.91	3.70	4.70	3.50	3.68	3.42	3.45	3.87	3.71
Reference [8]	7.9	9.4	9.1	9.8	2.22, 6.3			7.9	9.3	9.3	9.9	2.1, 5.7		
α-5	4.73	3.37	3.54	3.42	3.49	3.73	3.73	5.23	3.73	3.92	3.52	3.88	3.85	3.79

(continued)

Table 8.7 (continued)

	H1′	H2′	H3′	H4′	H5′	H6a	H6b	H1	H2	H3	H4	H5	H6a	H6b
Reference [8]	4.70 7.9	3.35 9.5	3.51 9.1	3.40 9.9	3.48 2.26, 6.2	3.90	3.71	5.22 3.7	3.70 9.7	3.89 8.9	3.50 9.9	3.85 2.26, 4.92	3.82	3.76
β-5	4.63	3.37	3.54	3.42	3.49	3.73	3.73	4.74	3.44	3.74	3.49	3.49	3.90	3.74
Reference [8]	4.72 7.9	3.34 9.5	3.50 9.1	3.39 9.9	3.47 2.29, 6.22	3.90	3.70	4.66 8.0	3.42 9.3	3.72 8.9	3.50 10.0	3.47 2.07, 5.56	3.88	3.72
α-6	4.50	3.31	3.49	3.41	3.47	3.90	3.72	5.21	3.56	3.81	3.62	3.93	3.87	3.84
Reference [8]	7.9	9.5	9.1	9.9	2.25, 5.8			3.7	9.8	9.1	9.6	2.24, 4.61		
β-6	4.51	3.32	3.52	3.42	3.50	3.75	3.75	4.67	3.29	3.60	3.65	3.58	3.97	3.82
Reference [8]	4.49 7.9	3.30 9.4	3.49 9.1	3.40 9.9	3.47 2.27, 5.9	3.90	3.72	4.64 7.9	3.27 9.3	3.61 9.0	3.63 9.8	3.58 2.19, 5.14	3.94	3.79
α-7	5.17	3.63	3.83	3.43	3.80	3.84	3.74							
Reference [8]	3.8	9.9	9.1	10.0	2.33, 5.43									
β-7	4.63	3.40	3.51	3.39	3.46	3.86	3.70							
Reference [8]	7.9	9.5	9.1	9.9	2.3, 5.7									

1 kojibiose; *2* nigerose; *3* maltose; *4* sophorose; *5* laminaribiose; *6* cellobiose; *7* trehalose

The development of Karplus relationship for three-bond C–O–C–C spin-coupling constants by Bose et al. [25], suggest that $^{3}J_{COCC}$ obeys a Karplus relationship similar to that observed for $^{3}J_{HH}$,$^{3}J_{HC}$, and other vicinal spin-coupling constants. However the precise form of this relationship that is the shape and amplitude of the Karplus curve is unknown. Also in this work, $^{3}J_{COCH}$ values have been measured to asses the phi (ϕ) and the psi (ψ) torsion angles (Scheme 8.4) and Karplus relationships have been reported for this vicinal coupling [26].

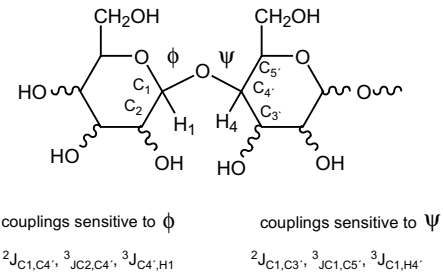
Another report describes the calculation of $^{2}J_{HH}$, $^{3}J_{HH}$, $^{1}J_{CH,}$ $^{2}J_{CH}$, $^{3}J_{CH}$, $^{1}J_{CH}$, for the exocyclic CH_2OH group and the ^{3}JCXCH for the X-glycosidic linkage, as a function of ω, θ and glycosidic torsion angle φ (Scheme 8.5). The glycosidic torsion angles φ and ψ are usually determined from NOE measurements between protons near to the linkage (H1 and H3′).

The ^{1}H–^{13}C coupling constants of methyl α- and β-pyranosides of D-glucose and D-galactose were measured by onedimensional and two-dimensional ^{1}H–^{13}C heteronuclear zero and double quantum, phase sensitive J-HMBC spectra, in order to assign the complete set of coupling constants (^{1}JCH, ^{2}JCH, $^{3}J_{CH}$, $^{2}J_{HH}$, and $^{3}J_{HH}$) within the exocyclic hydroxymethyl group. As a result of this spin–spin couplings constants of α- and β-pyranosides of D-glucose and D-galactose were generated as shown in Table 8.8 [27].

Comparative conformational studies using a combination of NMR spectroscopy and molecular mecanics of lactose disaccharide (βGal[1–4]Glc) and its *C*-analog showed that for the former the population in solution is about 90% *syn* and 10% *anti*, while for the later the conformation is more flexible in the forms 55%, 40% and 5% *syn*, *anti*, *gauche-gauche* respectively [28].

^{1}H NMR spectra of oligosaccharides follows in many cases complex patterns due extensive overlap within the region δ 3.0–4.2, however the use of pyridine-d_5

Scheme 8.4 Couplings sensitive to ϕ and ψ torsion angles



Scheme 8.5 The glycosidic torsion angles φ and ψ in disaccharides

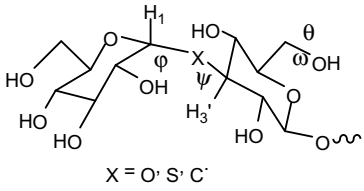


Table 8.8 Experimental $^{1}H–^{1}H$ and $^{13}C–^{1}H$ spin–spin couplings constants

Coupling	β-D-methyl glucose	α-D-methyl glucose	β-D- methyl galactose	α-D-methyl galactose
$^{3}J_{H1,H2}$	8.0	3.8	7.9	3.9
$^{3}J_{H2,H3}$	9.4	9.8	9.9	10.3
$^{3}J_{H3,H4}$	9.2	9.1	3.5	3.5
$^{3}J_{H4,H5}$	9.7	10.0	1.1	1.2
$^{3}J_{H5,H6R}$	6.0	5.4	7.9	8.2
$^{3}J_{H5,H6S}$	2.3	2.3	4.4	4.2
$^{3}J_{H6R,H6S}$	−12.3	−12.3	−11.8	−11.7
$^{1}J_{C4,H4}$	144.8	144.4	146.2	146.5
$^{1}J_{C5,H5}$	141.7	144.3	140.8	143.5
$^{1}J_{C6,H6R}$	143.2	143.2	145.5	145.1
$^{1}J_{C6,H6S}$	144.5	144.2	142.9	142.5
$^{2}J_{C4,H3}$	−4.7	−4.7	1.6	1.6
$^{2}J_{C4,H5}$	−2.8	−2.9	3.3	3.0
$^{2}J_{C5,H4}$	−4.0	−3.8	1.0	1.1
$^{2}J_{C5,H6R}$	−2.5	−1.9	−5.0	5.1
$^{2}J_{C5,H6S}$	−1.1	−1.4	0.4	1.0
$^{2}J_{C6,H5}$	−2.3	−1.4	−5.5	−5.2
$^{3}J_{C4,H2}$	1.1	1.0	0.7	0.9
$^{3}J_{C4,H6R}$	1.0	1.1	1.9	1.0
$^{3}J_{C4,H6S}$	2.4	2.9	4.0	3.7
$^{3}J_{C5,H3}$	1.1	1.0	–	0.5
$^{3}J_{C6,H4}$	3.6	3.6	1.0	1.0

improves the signal dispersion, increasing the resolution especially in overcrowded regions. The localization of anomeric protons is a valuable tool for recognizing the number of monosaccharide residues.

A number of one and two dimensional methods provides thorough information to assert the complete assignment unambigiously. One dimensional NMR analysis provides useful information about the chemical shifts and scalar couplings of well resolved signals such as anomeric protons (δ 4.4–5.6) and methyl groups for 6-deoxy monosaccharides (fucose, quinovose, ramnose) at (δ 1.1–1.3). The effect on the proton chemical shift of glycosylation is a typical deshielding of the proton across the glycosidic bond and the two neighboring positions of the aglycone. This behaviour is due to repulsion between hydrogens and to the effect of the lone pair of the oxygen to the hydrogens [29].

Conformational analysis on more complex glycosides is based mainly on the inter-residue $^{1}H–^{1}H$ Nuclear Overhauser effects (NOE) [30] and also $^{13}C–^{1}H$ long-range coupling constants across the glycosidic linkage for studing the preferred conformation of oligosaccharides in solution. Selective irradiation of the anomeric proton

reveals inter-residual contacts with aglycone protons. In this way 1 → 2, 1 → 3, 1 → 4, and 1 → 6 combinations as well as −α and −β linkages may be determined [31] Long-range ^{1}H-^{1}H couplings involving four bonds between anomeric and aglycone protons ($^{4}J_{HCOCH}$) are usually very small that could be detected but not measured [32].

Two dimensional NMR is a reliable method for determing inter-ring connectivity. Through space dipolar interactions between the anomeric and the trans glycosidic proton can be detected in the form NOE signals and represent the basis for linkage and sequence analysis [33], also the interglycosidic connectivities are established on the basis of long-range ($^{3}J_{CH}$) by HMBC studies [27]. The usefulness of this method has been later demonstrated in a number of structural elucidations [34].

Bidimensional homonuclear techniques such as TOCSY experiment have been useful for the NMR characterization of the naturally occurring complex glycosides such as glycoresin tricolorin E [35], allowing the total assignment of the sugar region, including the anomeric protons for each of the 4 monosaccharides established (Scheme 8.6).

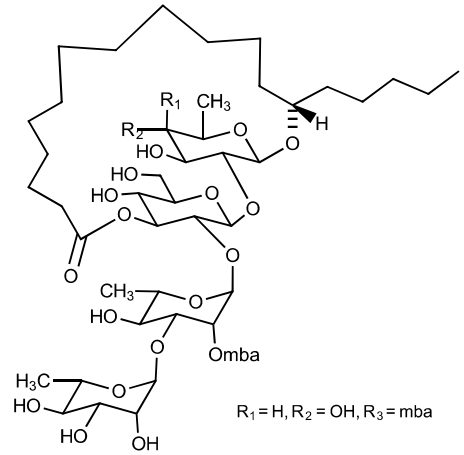
Likewise, the complete ^{1}H and ^{13}C assignments of a synthetic octasaccharide fragment of the *O*-specific polysaccharide of *Shigella dysenteriae* type 1 by using 2D TOCSY at 600 MHz was described. In the contour plot it is possible to observe the connectivity between the sugar units and the detailed assignment of the protons [36]. Moreover, a 2D selective TOCSY-DQFCOSY experiment for identification of individual sugar components in oligosaccharides is described, assuming that unambiguos sequential assignment of the proton signals for individual components is reached [37].

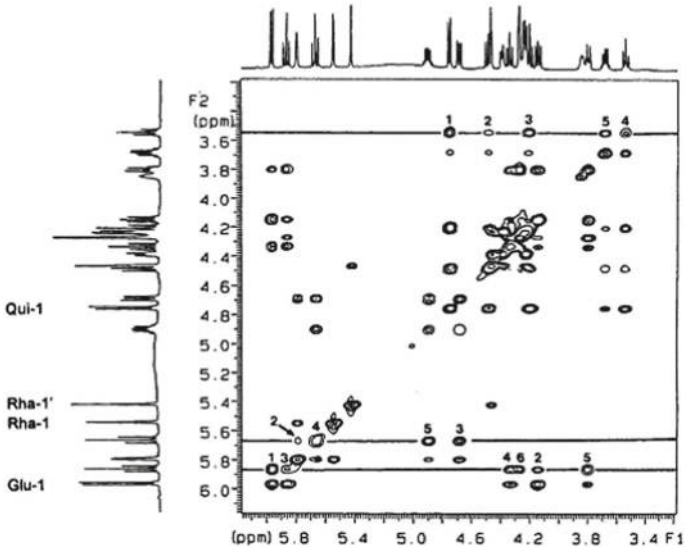
High resolution ^{1}H nmr spectroscopy has been applied in the structural analysis of glycoproteins. The initial efforts to assign all the anomeric and non anomeric protons were done by using spin decoupling and nuclear Overhauser spectroscopy [38].

Nuclear magnetic resonance of carbohydrate related to glycoconjugates have been analyzed. One of the first high resolution studies was reported back in 1973 on intact glycolipids in a 220-MHz magnet [39]. Subsequent studies on underivatized and permethylated glycosphingolipids in dimethylsulfoxide-d_6 and chloroform respectively allowed to assign all the anomeric protons and a number of nonanomeric proton resonances [40].

Early studies on high resolution n.m.r. spectra of glycans chain in D_2O allowed to assign the anomeric and non anomeric protons as well as the coupling constants of sugar residues found in glycoproteins [38, 41]. More recently the complete resolution of acetyl protected sialic acid glycopeptides was achieved by using NOESY and DQF-COSY technique [6].

For the NMR-analysis of carbohydrate-protein complexes the transfer nuclear overhauser effect (trNOE) experiment seems to be a promissing alternative [42]. Recent advances on conformational analysis of oligosaccharides allows to determine the interresidue interactions based on the dihedral angles ϕ and ψ along the interglycosidic linkage [43]. In this connection, recent conformational advances on E-selectin-sialyl Lewis^{x} complex has led to the determination of the bioactive conformation of the silayl Lewis^{x} tetrasaccharide [44].





Scheme 8.6 Expanded region of TOCSY spectrum for characterization of tricolorin E

NMR spectroscopy of glycoproteins has been achieved by using a combination of homo- and heteronuclear experiments at natural abundance [45]. Increased refinement is possible when a ^{15}N-labeled sample was used and the mobility of the glycan chain could be assesed by the measurements of ^{13}C line widths obtained fro the high resolution HSQC spectra [43].

8.2 NMR of N-glycosides

The conformational analysis of N-glycosides has been extensively studied on the basis of chemical shifts and coupling constant determinations mainly around the C-N linkage. Torsion angles symbolized as χ for furanosides rings, are also dependent on the Karplus equation, and similarly plays an important rule for the conformational analysis of 5 member rings [46]. For purines the angle χ is formed between O4′–C1–N9–C4 atoms, and O4′–C1–N1–C2 for pyrimidines. When torsion angles O4′–C1 N9–C4 for purines, and O4′–C1–N1–C2 for pyrimidines are eclipsed, then $\chi = 0°$. Positive angles of χ occurs for rotation clockwise for N9–C4 for purines and N1–C2 for pyrimidines. The conformation *syn* in nucleosides, correspond to the angle $\chi = 0 \pm 90°$, and *anti* to $180 \pm 90°$ (Scheme 8.7).

Regarding furanoside rings, there are different non planar conformation possibly assumed in terms of five endocyclic torsion angles symbolized as ν_o, ν_1, ν_2, ν_3, ν_4, corresponding to the bonds O4′–C1′, C1′–C2′, C2′–C3′, C3′–C4′, and C4′–O4′. The two most common conformations founded are the envelope (E), referring to 4 atoms on the plane, and twist (T) for 3 atoms on the plane. The puckering of the furanoside rings of nucleosides is explained by Sorenssen et al. [47]. Unmodified nucleosides are present as an equilibrium between the C-3′-endo conformation, located around $P = 18°$, and the C-2′-endo conformation centered around $P = 162°$ (Scheme 8.8).

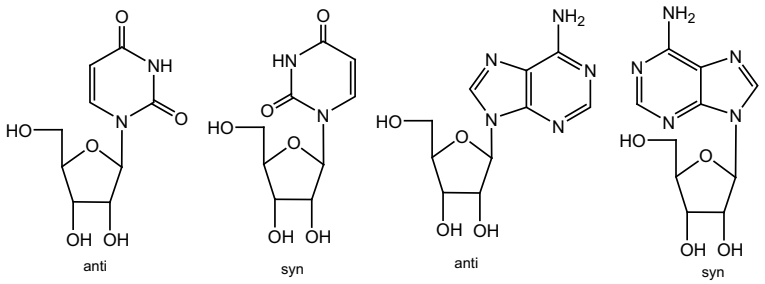
Besides the torsion angle described for the N-glycosidic bond, there are for the case of oligosaccharides, additional torsion angles symbolized as ω, ω′, ϕ, ϕ′, ψ, and ψ′ corresponding to the bonds P–O5, P–O3′, O5′–C5′, O3′–C3′, C5′–C4′, C4′–O3′ respectively (Scheme 8.9).

The vicinal coupling constants at 3 bond distance are dependent of the dihedral angle θ, and the relationship determined by the Karplus equation.

$$^3J_{HH} = A\cos 2\theta - B\cos\theta + C$$

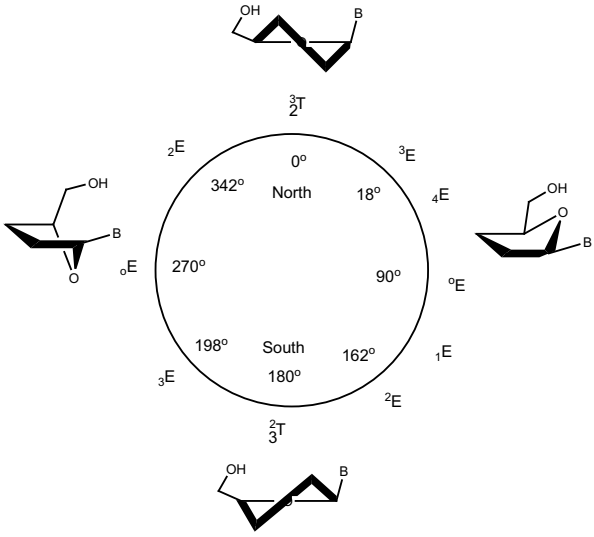
where A, B and C are constants and their values are given in Table 8.9.

The exchange of –OH for $–OPO_3$, does not affect sensibly the Karplus relationship, therefore the values are valid for both nucleosides or oligonucleosides, however, as



Scheme 8.7 *Syn-anti* conformations for purines and pyrimidines

Scheme 8.8
Pseudorotacional cycle of the furanoside ring in nucleosides



Scheme 8.9 Torsion angles for oligosaccharides

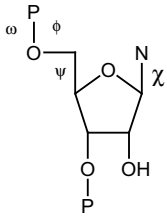


Table 8.9 Karplus A, B, C constant values for nucleotide molecular fragments

	Torsion angle	J (Hz)	A	B	C
HO–CH–CH–OH	Sugar ring	J1′2′, J2′3′, J3′4′	10.2	0.8	0
H–C–C–H	ψ	J4′5′, J4′5″	9.7	1.8	0
H–C–O–H	ϕ′ ϕ	J2′OH2′ J3′OH3′ J5′OH5′	10.4	1.5	0.2
H–C–O–P	ϕ′ ϕ	J3′P J5′, J5″	18.1	4.8	0

mentioned, ^{3}J there is a dependence of other factors such as bond length, bond angle, electronegativity and substituent orientation. Some of the values reported for ribose and deoxyribose are reported in Table 8.10.

The analysis of the *C*-Nucleosides β-pseudouridine (β − ψ) and α-pseurouridine (α − ψ) in aqueous solution have been described and the observed coupling constants given in Table 8.11 [1]b.

Table 8.10 $^{3}J_{2'3'}$ (Hz) values for furanoside ring in nucleosides

Nucleoside	$^{3}J_{1'2'} + {}^{3}J_{3'4'}$ (Hz)	$^{3}J_{2'3'}$ (Hz)
β-D-ribonucleosides		
Pyrimidine (anti)	9.9 (±0.2)	5.3 (±0.2)
Pyrimidine (syn)	10.3 (±0.2)	6.2 (±0.2)
Purine (anti)	9.7 (±0.3)	5.2 (±0.1)
Purine (syn)	9.6 (±0.3)	5.5 (±0.2)
β-D-deoxyribonucleosides		
Pyrimidine (anti)	10.6 (±0.2)	6.7 (±0.2)
Pyrimidine (syn)	11.0 (±0.1)	8.0 (±0.1)
Purine (anti-syn)	6.3 (±0.1)	6.3 (±0.1)
C-nucleoside pyrimidic	10.6 (±0.3)	5.2 (±0.2)
C-nucleoside puric	10.1 (±0.3)	5.0 (±0.2)

Table 8.11 Coupling constant (Hz) for β- and α-pseudouridine at 30°

Coupling constant	$\beta - \psi$	$\alpha - \psi$
$J_{61'}$	0.8	1.3
$J_{1'2'}$	5.0	3.3
$J_{2'3'}$	5.0	4.2
$J_{3'4'}$	5.2	7.9
$J_{4'5'B}$	3.2	2.4
$J_{4'5'C}$	4.6	5.7
$J_{5'B5'C}$	−12.7	−12.7

References

1. (a) Lemieux RU, Morgan AR (1965) The preparation and configurations of tri-o-acetyl-α-D-glucopyranose 1,2-(orthoesters). Can J Chem 43:2198–2204. (b) Lemieux RU, Stevens JD (1965) Substitutional and configurational effects on chemical shift in pyranoid carbohydrate derivatives. Can J Chem 43:2059–2070. (c) Kotowycz G, Lemieux RU (1973) Nuclear magnetic resonance in carbohydrate chemistry. Chem Rev 73:669–698
2. Coxon B (1965) Conformations and proton coupling constants in some methyl 4,6-O-benzylidene-α-D-hexopyranosides. Tetrahedron 21:3481–3503
3. (a) Hall LD (1964) Nuclear magnetic resonance. Adv Carbohydr Chem 19:51–59. (b) Hall LD, Manville JF, Bhacca NS (1969) Specifically fluorinated carbohydrates. I. Nuclear magnetic resonance studies of hexopyranosyl fluoride derivatives. Can J Chem 47:1–8
4. Horton D, Lauterbach JH (1975) Specific spectral assignments for acetoxyl-group resonances in proton magnetic resonance spectra of methyl β-D-glucopyranoside tetraacetate. Carbohydr Res 43:9–33
5. Altona C, Haasnoot CAG (1980) Prediction of anti and gauche vicinal proton–proton coupling constants in carbohydrates: a simple additivity rule for pyranose rings. Org Magn Reson 13:417–429
6. Breitmaier E (2002) Structure elucidation by NMR I organic chemistry, 3th edn. Wiley
7. Karplus M (1959) Contact electron-spin coupling of nuclear magnetic moments. J Chem Phys 30:11–15

8. Cerda-García-Rojas CM, Zepeda LG, Joseph-Nathan P (1990) A PC program for calculation of dihedral angles from ^{1}H NMR data. Tetrahedron Comput Methodol 3:113–118
9. Roslund MU, Tahtinen P, Niemitz M, Sjöholm RC (2008) Complete assignments of the H-1 and C-13 chemical shifts and J(H,H) coupling constants in NMR spectra of D-glucopyranose and all D-glucopyranosyl-D-glucopyranosides. Carbohyd Res 343:101–112
10. Holland CV, Horton D, Miller MJ, Bhacca NS (1967) Nuclear magnetic resonance studies on acetylated 1-thioaldopyranose derivatives. J Org Chem 32:3077–3086
11. Hajdukovic G, Martin ML, Sinaÿ P, Pougny JR (1975) Etudes configurationnelles et conformationnelles de quelques chlorures de désoxy-6 β-L-héxopyrannosyle chlorosulfonyles et de leurs glycosides de méthyle. Org Magn Reson 7:366–371
12. Horton D, Turner WN (1965) Conformational and configurational studies on some acetylated aldopyranosyl halides. J Org Chem 30:3387–3394
13. Bock K, Thøgerson H (1983) Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy in the study of mono- and oligosaccharides. Annu Rep NMR Spectrosc 13:1–57
14. Duus JØ, Gotffredsen CH, Bock K (2000) Carbohydrate structural determination by NMR spectroscopy: modern methods and limitations. Chem Rev 100:4589–4614
15. Delazar A, Byres M, Gibbons S, Kumarasamy Y, Modarresi M, Nahar L, Shoeb M, Sarker SD (2004) Iridoid glycosides from *Eremostachys glabra*. J Nat Prod 67:1584–1587
16. Bohr G, Gerhäuser C, Knauft J, Zapp J, Becker H (2005) Anti-inflammatory acylphloroglucinol derivatives from Hops (*Humulus lupulus*). J Nat Prod 68:1545–1548
17. Lee SO, Choi SZ, Choi SU, Lee KC, Chin YW, Kim J, Kim YC, Lee KR (2005) Labdane diterpenes from Aster spathulifolius and their cytotoxic effects on human cancer cell lines. J Nat Prod 68:1471–1474
18. Zou J-H, Yang JS, Zhou L (2004) Acylated flavone C-glycosides from Trollius Ledebouri. J Nat Prod 67:664–666
19. Diaz F, Chai HB, Mi Q,.Su BN, Vigo JS, Graham JG, Cabieses F, Farnsworth NR, Cordell GA, Pezzuto JM, Swanson SM, Kinghorn AD (2004) Anthrone and oxanthrone C-glycosides from picramnia latifolia collected in peru. J Nat Prod 67:352–356
20. Manitto P, Monti D, Speranza G (1990) Studies on aloe. Part 6. Conformation and absolute configuration of aloins A and B and related 10-C-glucosyl-9-anthrones. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:1297–1300
21. Neubauer H, Meiler J, Peti W, Griesinger C (2001) NMR structure determination of saccharose and raffinose by means of homo- and heteronuclear dipolar couplings. Helv Chim Acta 84:243–258
22. Tian F, Al-Hashimi HM, Craighead JL, Prestegard JH (2001) Conformational analysis of a flexible oligosaccharide using residual dipolar couplings. J Am Chem Soc 123:485–492
23. De Bruyn A (1991) HNMR chemical shift information on the conformation of the glycosidic bond in disaccharides. J Carbohydr Chem 10:159–180
24. Lemieux RU, Koto S (1974) The conformational properties of glycosidic linkages. Tetrahedron 30:1933–1944
25. Bose B, Zhao S, Stenutz R, Cloran F, Bondo PB, Bondo G, Hertz B, Carmichael I, Serianni AS (1998) Three-Bond C–O–C–C spin-coupling constants in carbohydrates: development of a karplus relationship. J Am Chem Soc 120:11158–11173
26. Bock K, Brignole A, Sigurskjold BW (1986) Conformational dependence of 13C nuclear magnetic resonance chemical shifts in oligosaccharides. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans II:1711–1713
27. Tafazzoli M, Ghiasi M (2007) New Karplus equations for $^{2}J_{HH}$, $^{3}J_{HH}$, $^{2}J_{CH}$, $^{3}J_{CH}$, $^{3}J_{COCH}$, $^{3}J_{CSCH}$, and $^{3}J_{CCCH}$ in some aldohexopyranoside derivatives as determined using NMR spectroscopy and density functional theory calculations. Carbohyd Res 342:2086–2096
28. Imberty A (1997) Oligosaccharide structures: theory versus experiment. Curr Opin Struct Biol 7:617–623
29. Agrawal PK, Pathak AK (1996) Nuclear-magnetic-resonance spectroscopic approaches for the determination of interglycosidic linkage and sequence in oligosaccharides. Phytochem Anal 7:113–130

30. Tvaroska I, Hricovini M, Petrakova E (1989) An attempt to derive a new karplus-type equation of vicinal proton-carbon coupling constants for C–O–C–H segments of bonded atoms. Carbohydr Res 189:359–362
31. (a) Bae YS, Burger JFW, Steynberg JP, Ferreira D, Heminway RW (1994) Flavan and procyanidin glycosides from the bark of blackjack oak. Phytochemistry 35:473–478. (b) Matsumoto K, Kasai R, Ohtani K, Tanaka O (1990) Minor cucurbitane-glycosides from fruits of *Siraitia grosvenori* (Cucurbitaceae). Chem Pharm Bull 38:2030–2032. (c) Sakai S, Katsumata M, Saitoh Y, Nagasao M, Miyakoshi M, Ida Y, Shoji J (1994) Oleanolic acid saponins from root bark of Aralia elata. Phytochemistry 35:1319–1324. (d) Satoh Y, Sakai S, Katsumata M, Nagasao M, Miyakoshi M, Ida Y, Shoji J (1994) Oleanolic acid saponins from root-bark of Aralia elata. Phytochemistry 36:147–152
32. (a) Batta G, Liptak A (1984) Long-range ^{1}H–^{1}H spin–spin couplings through the interglycosidic oxygen and the primary structure of oligosaccharides as studied by 2D-NMR. J Am Chem Soc 106:248–250. (b) Masiiot G, Lavaud C, Delaude C, Binst GV, Miller SPF, Fales HM (1990) Saponins from *Tridesmostemon claessenssi*. Phytochemistry 29:3291–3298
33. Prestegard JH, Koerner TAW, Demou PC, Yu RK (1982) Complete analysis of oligosaccharide primary structure using two-dimensional high-field proton NMR. J Am Chem Soc 104:4993–4995
34. (a) Duc NM, Kasai R, Ohtani K, Ito A, Nham NT, Yamasaki K, Tanaka O (1994) Saponins from Vietnamese ginseng, Panax vietnamensis Ha et Grushv. collected in central Vietnam. III. Chem Pharm Bull 42:634–640. (b) Nakamura T, Takeda T, Ogihara Y (1994) Studies on the constituents of *Calliandra anomala* (kunth) macbr. II. Structure elucidation of four acylated *Triterpenoidal saponins*. Chem Pharm Bull 42:1111–1115. (c) Razanamahefa B, Demetzos C, Skaltsounis AL, Andriantisiferana M, Tillequin F (1994) Structure and synthesis of a quercetin glucoxyloside from *Kalanchoe prolifera* (Raym.-Hamet). Heterocycles 38:357–373. (d) Nakanishi T, Tanaka K, Murata H, Somekawa M, Inada A (1994) Phytochemical studies of seeds of medicinal plants. III. Ursolic acid and oleanolic acid glycosides from seeds of *Patrinia scabiosaefolia* Fischer. Chem Pharm Bull 41:183–186. (e) Thulborg ST, Christensen SB, Cornett C, Olsen CE, Lemmich E (1994) Molluscicidal saponins from a zimbabwean strain of *Phytolacca dodecandra*. Phytochemistry 36:753–759
35. (a) Bah M, Pereda-Miranda R (1996) Detailed fab mass-spectrometry and high-resolution nmr investigationsof tricolorins a–e, individual oligosaccharides from the resins of ipomoea tricolor (convolvulaceae). Tetrahedron 41:13063–13080. (b) Pereda-Miranda R, Bah M (2003) Biodynamic constituents in the Mexican morning glories: purgative remedies transcending boundaries. Curr Top Med Chem 3:111–131
36. Coxon B, Sari N, Batta G, Pozsgay G (2000) NMR spectroscopy, molecular dynamics, and conformation of a synthetic octasaccharide fragment of the O-specific polysaccharide of Shigella dysenteriae type 1. Carbohydr Res 324:53–65
37. Sato H, Kajihara Y (2003) Experiment for identification of individual sugar components in oligosaccharides. J Carbohydr Chem 22:339–345
38. Vliegenthart FGJ, Dorland L, van Halbeek H (1983) High-resolution, ^{1}H-nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy as a tool in the structural analysis of carbohydrates related to glycoproteins. Adv Carbohydr Chem Biochem 41:209–374
39. Martin-Lomas M, Chapman D (1973) Structural studies on glycolipids, part I: 220 MHz PMR spectra of acetylated galactocerebroside. Chem Phys Lipids 10:152–164
40. (a) Dabrowski J, Handfland P, Egge H (1980) Structural analysis of glycosphinoglipids by high-resolution ^{1}H nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Biochemistry 19:5652–5658. (b) Falk KE, Karlsson K-A, Samuelson BE (1997) Proton nuclear magnetic resonance analysis of anomeric structure of glycosphingolipids. The globo-series (one to five sugars). Arch Biochem Biophys 192:164–176
41. Wolfe LS, Senior RG, Ng Yin Kin NMK (1974) The structure of oligosaccharides accumulating in the liver of GMi-gangliosidosis, type-I. J Biol Chem 249:1828–1838
42. (a) Ni F (1994) Recent developments in transferred NOE methods. Prog Nucl Magn Reson Spectros 26:517–606. (b) Casset F, Peters T, Etzler M, Korchagina E, Nifantev N, Imberty A

(1996) Conformational-analysis of blood-group-a trisaccharide in solution and in the binding-site of dolichos-biflorus lectin using transient and transferred nuclear overhauser enhancement (NOE) and rotating-frame NOE experiments. Eur J Biochem 239:710–719

43. (a) Peters T, Pinto BM (1996) Structure and dynamics of oligosaccharides: NMR and modeling studies. Curr Opin Struct Biol 6:710–720. (b) Weimar T, Harris SL, Pitnar JB, Bock K, Pinto BM (1995) Transferred nuclear overhauser enhancement experiments show that the monoclonal antibody strep 9 selects a local minimum conformation of a streptococcus group A trisaccharide-hapten. Biochemistry 34:13672–13681
44. Scheffler K, Ernst B, Katopodis A, Magnani JL, Wang WT, Weisemann R, Peters T (1995) Determination of the bioactive conformation of the carbohydrate ligand in the E-selectin/sialyl LewisX complex. Angew Chem Int Ed 34:1841–1844
45. (a) Wyss DF, Choi JS, Wagner G (1995) Composition and sequence specific resonance assignments of the heterogeneous N-linked glycan in the 13.6 kDa adhesion domain of human CD2 as determined by NMR on the intact glycoprotein. Biochemistry 34:1622–1634. (b) Wyss DF, Choi JS, Li J, Knoppers MH, Willis KJ, Arulandaman ARN, Smolyar A, Reinherz EL, Wagner G (1995) Conformation and function of the N-linked glycan in the adhesion domain of human CD2. Science 269:1273–1278. (c) Liang R, Androtti AH, Kahne D (1995) Sensitivity of glycopeptide conformation to carbohydrate chain length. J Am Chem Soc 117:10395–10396
46. Davies D (1978) Conformations of nucleosides and nucleotides Progress in NMR. Spectroscopy 12:135–225
47. Sorenssen MH, Nielsen C, Nielsen P (2001) Synthesis of a bicyclic analogue of AZT restricted in an unusual O 4′-endo conformation. J Org Chem 66:4878–4886

Chapter 9
X-Ray Diffraction of Glycosides

X-ray crystallography is a powerful tool for obtaining molecular information regarding bond lengths, bond angles, hydrogen bond interactions, and torsion angles, which are necessary elements for understanding the conformation of glycosides. Improved diffractometers, faster computational processors and mathematical programs have made possible the structural resolution of simple and complex substances of glycosidic nature particularly those with noncentrosymmetric space groups.

Early studies on simple glycosides allowed to confirm that the sugar residue is pyranoid (and not acyclic), assuming two possible chair conformations ($^4C_1$ and $_4C^1$), usually orienting the substituent to the equatorial position [1, 2].

In hydrogen bond interactions on pyranoids some fact that almost occurs invariably are: (a) the ring-oxigen atom is always a hydrogen bond acceptor. (b) each hydroxyl group is associated with two hydrogen bonds, one as donor and one as acceptor. (c) in disaccharides there might be intramolecular hydrogen bonding between two residues. d) the hydrogen bond O–O distance has values around 2.68–3.04 Å.

Crystallographic observations on the anomeric effect demonstrated that the bond shortening and preferred *gauche* conformation of the glycosidic bonds in pyranoses was a consequence of an electronic distribution in the hemiacetal and acetal moiety of these molecules [3].

On the other hand, the primarily alcohols can be present in three staggered orientations, defined as gg, gt, and tg refering to torsion angles O5-C5-C6-O6 and the second to C4-C5-C6-O6 [g » ± 60°, t » 180°]. An alternative nomenclature refers O5-C5-C6-O6 as + g = gt, − g = gg, t = tg.

The general standard molecular dimensions for pyranosides are described in Table 9.1, being the C–C bond length in the rang of 1.523–1.526, C–C–C angles 110.4–110.5°, and usually shorter glycosidic bond 1.398 for axial and 1.385 for equatorial disposition (Table 9.1) [4].

M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_9

Table 9.1 Standard molecular dimensions for $^4C_1$ chair conformations in pyranosides

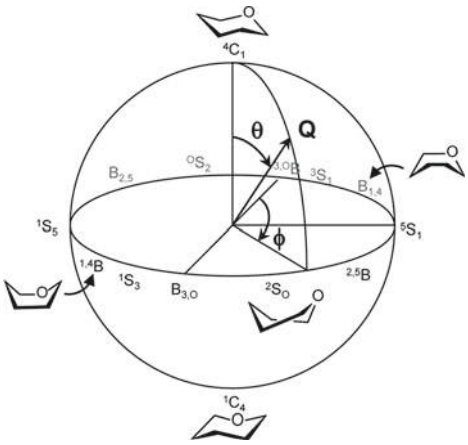
Bond type	Bond lengths (Å)	Bond lengths (Å)	Angle type	Bond angle (°)	Bond angle (°)	4 atoms ring	Torsion angles (°)
C–C ring	1.526	1.523	C–C–C ring	110.4	110.5		
C–C exo	1.516	1.514	C–C–C exo	112.5	112.7		
C–O exo	1.420	1.426	C–C–O ring	110.0	110.0		
			C–C–O exo	109.7	109.6		
C5–O5 axial	1.434	1.436	C5–O5–C1	114.0	114.0	C–C–C–C	53
C1–O5 axial	1.419	1.419	O5–C1–O1	112.1	111.6	C–C–C–O	56
C1–O1 axial	1.398	1.415	C5–O5–C1	112.0	112.0	C–C–O–C	60
C5–O5 eq	1.426	1.436	O5–C1–O1	108.0	107.3	C–C–C–C	53
C1–O5 eq	1.428	1.429				C–C–C–O	57

The distortion degree from the ideal chair conformation has been studied by Cremer and Pople [5], which by following a mathematical approximation were able to propose three puckering parameters described as spherical polar set Q (total puckering amplitude), and the angles θ and ϕ, describing the distortion suffered by six member rings from the ideally chair conformation. The chair correspond to $\theta = 0°$, $\phi = 0°$; boat for $\theta = 90°$, $\phi = 0°$; and twist boat for $\theta = 90°$, $\phi = 90°$ (Scheme 9.1). The pyranoside ring varies slightly and in terms of Cremer and Pople puckering parameters, the range of values is Q = 0.55–0.58 Å with θ within 5° of 0 or 180° [4, 6].

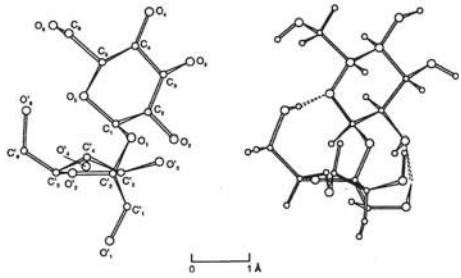
9.1 X-Ray Diffraction of O-Glycosides

One of the pioneering studies about sugar X-ray analysis was presented by Levy and Brown [7] reporting the structure of sucrose, and sucrose NaBr.H_2O. Through these studies it was observed that although they were energetically equivalent, the chair conformation was different, due slight hydrogen bridge interactions on the furanoside moiety (Scheme 9.2).

Another disaccharide characterized by X-ray crystallography was octa-*O*-acetyl-β-D-cellobiose which presents space group $P2_1,2_1,2_1$, with both pyranoside residues in $^4C_1$ chair conformation slightly more distorted in comparison with cellobiose.

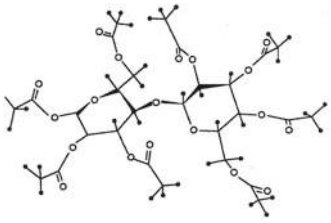


Scheme 9.1 One octant of the sphere on which the conformations of six membered rings can be mapped for a constant Q



Scheme 9.2 X-ray diffraction of sucrose and sucrose NaBr.H_2O

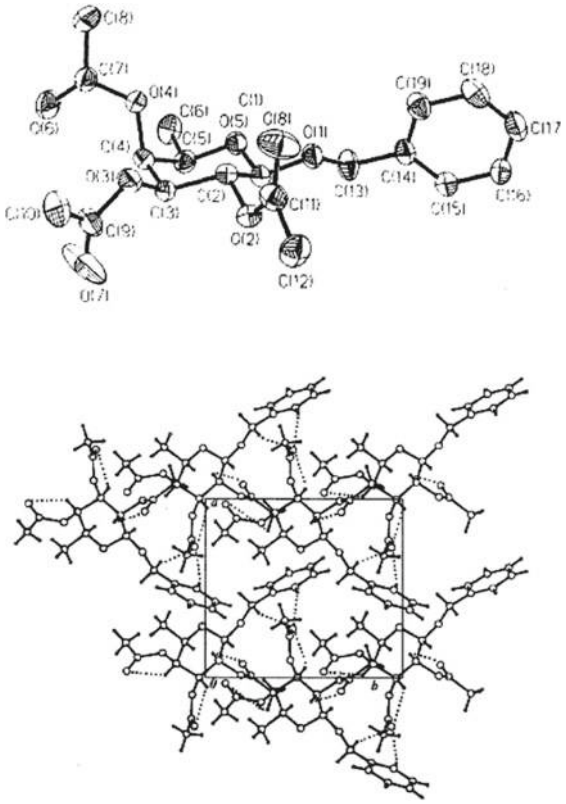
Moreover, the torsion angles determined were for O5–C1–C4′ − 77°, and for C1–O1–C4–C5 104° (Scheme 9.3). The sign value indicates according with the Klyne & Prelog notation to the right if positive and to the left if negative [8].



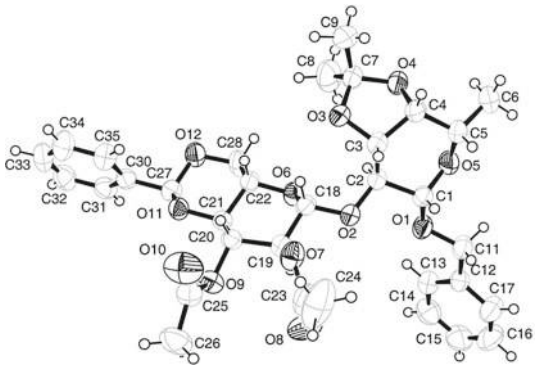
Scheme 9.3 Chair conformation for octa-*O*-acetyl-β-D-cellobiose

The crystal structure of benzyl 2,3,4-tri-*O*-acetyl-β-D-fucopyranoside is described [9], presenting a monoclinic system, space group $P2_1$, with bond distances C–O 1.423 Å, C–C 1.513 Å, and shorter C–O 1.380 Å for equatorially anomeric bond. The angle disposition for the endocyclic bond C1–O5–C5 is of 112.4 (3)°, being this value typical for chair conformation $^4C_1$ in pyranoside with substituents positioned at equatorial positions. The perspective view of the molecule shows equatorial disposition for all substituents except position 4 that remains axial (Scheme 9.4).

Disaccharide phenylmethyl-*O*-(2,3-di-*O*-acetyl-4,6-*O*-benzylidene-β-D-glucopyranosyl)-(1 → 2)-3,4-O-isopropylidene-β-D-fucopyranoside shows for fucopyranoside moiety a distorted chair due the five member ring acetonide at O3 and O4 positions, with Cremer and Pople puckering parameters of Q = 0.556 (3), θ = 159.9 (3)°, and ϕ = 220.8 (8)°. In contrast for the glucopyranosyl moiety with a six member ring benzylidene ring attached at positions O4 and O6, the chair conformation is less distorted with Cremer and Pople puckering parameters of Q = 0.597 (3), θ = 170.5 (3)°, and ϕ = 156.0 (16)° (Scheme 9.5) [10].



Scheme 9.4 Thermal ellipsoid drawing and packing diagram showing the hydrogen bonding along [001] of phenyl methyl 2,3,4,-tri-*O*-acetyl-b-D-fucopyranoside



Scheme 9.5 Perspective Ortep view of phenylmethyl glucosyl fucopyranosyl derivative showing the distortion degree between 5 and 6 member fused rings on chair conformation

The solid state crystal structure of glycoresin tricolorin A was solved by using an intense syncroton radiation to collect data. The cystals belongs as usual to the $P2_1$ having cell dimensions $a = 14.025(1)$, $b = 33.337(1)$, $c = 25.512(1)$ Å, $\beta = 91.07(1)°$. The energy maps were calculated as a function of two glycosidic linkage torsion angles defined as $\phi = \Theta$ (O5–C1–O1–Cx) and $\psi = \Theta$ (C1–O1–Cx–C(x + 1), indicating a higher level of conformational freedom along ψ axis.

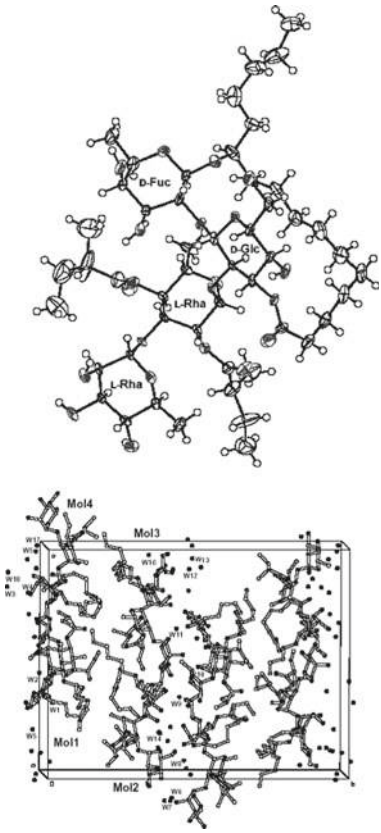
The size of the crystal unit cell demonstrate the presence of four independent tricolorin A molecules per asymmetric unit and the refined structure showed the presence of 18 water molecules forming a channel along the hydrophilic region (Scheme 9.6) [11].

Other selected pyranosides analyzed by X-ray diffraction and their parameters determined are shown in Table 9.2.

9.2 X-Ray Diffraction of Nucleosides

A number of *N*-glycosides and *C*-glycosides has been solved by X-ray analysis, presenting as common features space group $P2_12_12_1$ or $P2_1$, the furanoside ring in the twist conformation, and symmetric system monoclinic or orthorhombic.

For instance the hypermodified nucleoside queuosine presents a space group $P2_12_12_1$, cell dimensions a = 26.895, b = 7.0707, c = 23.883 Å, and symmetric system orthorhombic (Scheme 9.7). The three-dimensional structure determined by X-ray has been also helpful to understand the recognition process at the tRNA level. Thus, base on this information it was possible to determine that the bulky group cyclopentenediol due the trans disposition assumed, is not involved in any interaction codon-anticodon, therefore suggesting that another type of interaction was taken place [20].



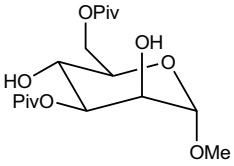
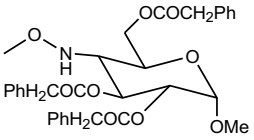
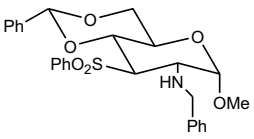
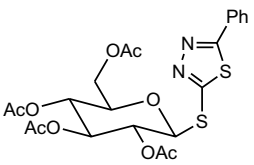
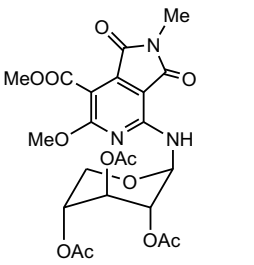
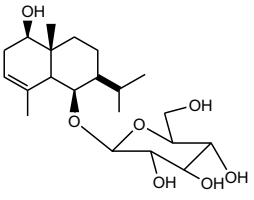
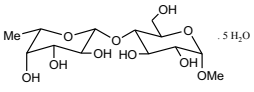
Scheme 9.6 ORTEP representation of tricolorin A and graphical representation of the unit cell

The unusual conformation of α-D anomer of 5-aza-7-deaza-2′-deoxyguanosine has been reported by Seela et al. [21]. In this work it is described that the title compound adopts a high-anti conformation with the C1′–C2′ and N9-C8 bonds nearly eclipsed with torsion angle C1′–C2′–N9–C8 = 30.3 (4)°. It can be also observed that for 2′-deoxy-α-D-ribonucleosides the C2′ endo sugar puckering with either a half chair or envelope conformation is preferred (Scheme 9.8).

The solid-state conformation of constrained carbocyclic nucleosides (N)-methano-carba-AZT and N-(S)-methano-carba-AZT was determined by X-ray diffraction. As expected with the prediction, their thermal ellipsoid presented a rigid pseudoboat conformation for the bicycle [3.1.0] hexane system, which makes them assume in nearly perfect $_2$E and $_3$E envelope conformations in the pseudorotational cycle (Scheme 9.9) [22].

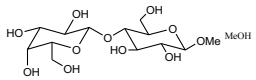
Other selected N-nucleosides that have been analyzed by X-ray diffraction and their parameters determined are shown in Table 9.3.

Table 9.2 X-ray diffraction parameters of some selected pyranosides

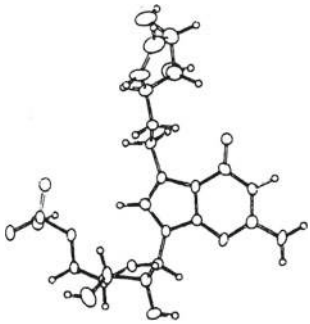
Structure	Symmetry cell	Symmetry space	Conformation	References
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	$^4C_1$	[12]
	Monoclinic	$P2_1$	$^4C_1$	[13]
	Monoclinic	$P2_1$	Chair for α-anomer and boat β-anomer	[14]
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	$^4C_1$	[15]
	Monoclinic	C2	$_4C^1$	[16]
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	$^4C_1$	[17]
	Monoclinic	C2	$_4C^1\ ^4C_1$	[18]

(continued)

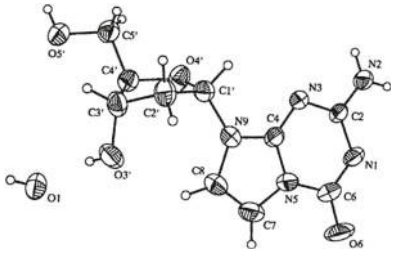
Table 9.2 (continued)

Structure	Symmetry cell	Symmetry space	Conformation	References
	Monoclinic	$P2_1$	${}_4C^1\,{}^4C_1$	[19]

Scheme 9.7 Perspective view of hypermodified nucleoside queuosine



Scheme 9.8 Perspective view of α-D anomer of 5-aza-7-deaza-2′-deoxyguanosine



Scheme 9.9 X-ray structure of (N)-*methano*-carba-AZT

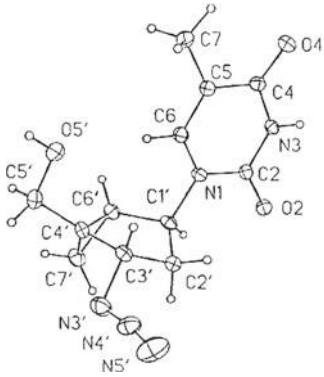
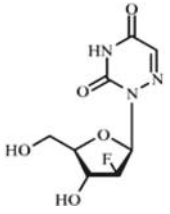
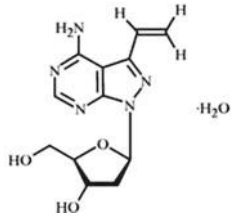
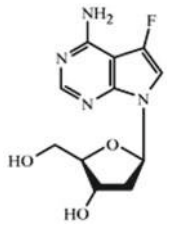
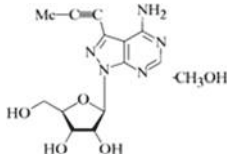
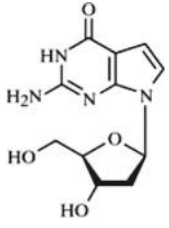
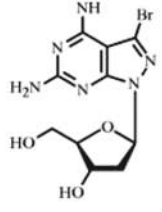


Table 9.3 N-glycosides and their X-ray diffraction parameters

Structure	Symmetry cell	Symmetry space	Sugar puckering	Conformation	References
	Monoclinic	$P2_1$	$^3T_2$	*Anti* [$\chi = -125.37\ (13)°$]	[23]
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	Unsymmetrical twist	*Anti*	[24]
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	$^2T_3$	*Anti* and high *anti* [$\chi = -101.1\ (3)°$]	[25]

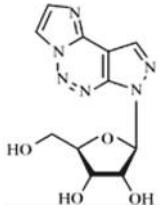
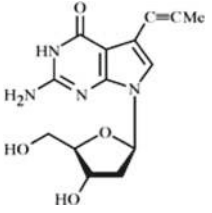
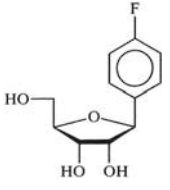
(continued)

Table 9.3 (continued)

Structure	Symmetry cell	Symmetry space	Sugar puckering	Conformation	References
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	$^3T_2$	*Anti* and high-*anti* [$\chi = -101.8\ (5)°$]	[26]
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	$^3T_4$	*Anti* [$\chi = -106.5\ (3)°$]	[27]
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	$^3T_2$	*Anti*	[28]

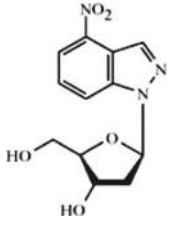
(continued)

Table 9.3 (continued)

Structure	Symmetry cell	Symmetry space	Sugar puckering	Conformation	References
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	${}_3T^2$	*Anti* and high *anti* [$\chi = -103.5\ (3)°$]	[29]
	Monoclinic	$P2_1$	${}^2T_3$	*Anti* [$\chi = -117.1\ (5)°$]	[30]
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	C1′-*exo*,C2′-*endo* twist and C2′-*endo* envelope	*Anti*	[31]

(continued)

Table 9.3 (continued)

Structure	Symmetry cell	Symmetry space	Sugar puckering	Conformation	References
	Orthorhombic	$P2_1\ 2_1\ 2_1$	S-type	*Anti* [torsion angle = − 105.3 (2)°]	[32]

References

1. Furberg S, Petersen CS (1962) Crystal and molecular structure of the p-Bromophenylhydrazone of Arabinose. Acta Chem Scan 16:1539–1548
2. Reeves RE (1950) The shape of pyranoside rings. J Am Chem Soc 72:1499–1506
3. Jeffrey GA, Pople JA, Binkley JS, Vishveshwara S (1978) Application of ab initio molecular orbital calculations to the structural moieties of carbohydrates. J Am Chem Soc 100:373–379
4. Jeffrey GA (1990) Crystallographic studies of carbohydrates. Acta Cryst B46:89–103
5. Cremer D, Pople JA (1975) General definition of ring puckering coordinates. J Am Chem Soc 97:1354–1358
6. Davies GJ, Planas A, Rovira C (2012) Conformational analyses of the reaction coordinate of glycosidases. Acc Chem Res 45(2):308–316
7. Brown GM, Levy HA (1963) Sucrose: precise determination of crystal and molecular structure by neutron diffraction. Science 141:921–923
8. Leung F, Chanzy HD, Pérez S, Marchessault H (1976) Crystal structure of β-D-acetyl cellobiose, $C_{28}H_{38}O_{19}$. Can J Chem 54:1365–1371
9. Brito-Arias MA, García-Baez EV, Durán-Páramo E, Rojas-Lima S (2002) Phenylmethyl 2,3,4-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-fucopyranoside. J Chem Crystallogr 32:237–241
10. Brito-Arias MA, Duran-Paramo E, Mata I, Molins E (2002) A comparative analysis of mono- and disaccharide benzyl fucopyranosides. Acta Cryst C58:o537–o539
11. Rencurosi A, Mitchell EP, Cioci G, Péres S, Pereda-Miranda R, Imberty A (2004) Crystal structure of tricolorin A: molecular rationale for the biological properties of resin glycosides found in some Mexican herbal remedies. Angew Chem Int Ed 43:5918–5922
12. Matijasic I, Pavlovic G, Trojko Jr R (2003) Methyl 3,6-di-O-pivaloyl-α-D-mannopyranoside. Acta Cryst C59:o184–o186
13. Renaudet O, Dumy P, Philouze C (2001) Methyl 2,3,6-tri-O-benzoyl-4-deoxy-4-methoxy-amino-α-D-glucopyranoside Acta Cryst C57:309–310
14. Suresh CG, Ravindran B, Rao KN, Pathak T (2000) Comparison of the two anomers of methyl 2-(N-benzylamino)-2,3-dideoxy-4,6-O-phenylmethylene-3-C-phenylsulfonyl-D-glucopyranoside Acta Cryst C56:1030–1032
15. Qiu ZZ, Hui XP, Xu PF (2005) 5-Phenyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-1-thio-β-D-glucopyranoside. Acta Cryst C61:o475–o476
16. Low N, Garcia C, Melguizo M, Cobo J, Nogueras M, Sánchez A, López MD, Light ME (2001) A unique axially triacetylated xylopyranose structure, methyl 6-methoxy-2-methyl-1,3-dioxo-4- (2,3,4-tri-O-acetyl-β-D-xylopyranosyl)amino-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo 3,4-c pyridine-7-carboxylate. Acta Cryst C57:222–224
17. Cheng ZH, Wu T, Bligh SWA, Bashall A, Yu BY (2004) *cis*-Eudesmane Sesquiterpene Glycosides from *Liriope muscari* and *Ophiopogon japonicus*. J Nat Prod 67:1761–1763
18. Eriksson L, Stenutz R, Widmalm G (2000) Methyl 4-O-β-L-fucopyranosyl α-D-gluco-pyranoside hemihydrate. Acta Cryst C56:702–704
19. Stenutz R, Shang M, Serianni S (1999) Methyl β-lactoside (methyl 4-O-β-D-galactopyranosyl-β-D-glucopyranoside) methanol solvate. Acta Cryst C55:1719–1721
20. Yokohama S, Miyazawa T, Litaka Y, Yamaizumi Z, Kasai H, Nishimura S (1979) Three-dimensional structure of hyper-modified nucleoside Q located in the wobbling position of tRNA. Nature 282:107–109
21. Seela F, Rosemeyer H, Melenewski A, Heithoff EM, Eickmeier H Reuter H (2002) The α-D anomer of 5-aza-7-deaza-2′-deoxyguanosine. Acta Cryst C58:o142–o144
22. Marquez VE, Ezzitouni A, Russ P, Siddiqui MA, Ford H Jr, Feldman RJ, Mitsuya H, Goerge C, Barchi JJ Jr (1998) HIV-1 reverse transcriptase can discriminate between two conformationally locked carbocyclic AZT triphosphate analogues. J Am Chem Soc 120:2780–2789
23. Seela F, Chittepu P, He J (2004) Eickmeier H 6-Aza-2′-deoxy-2′-arabinofluorouridine, a 2′-deoxyribonucleoside with an N-sugar conformation in the solid state and in solution. Acta Cryst C60:o884–o886

24. Seela F, Zhang Y, Xu K, Eickmeier H (2005) 7-Vinyl-8-aza-7-deaza-2′-deoxyadenosine monohydrate. Acta Cryst C61:o60–o062
25. Seela F, Xu K, Eickmeier H (2005) 2′-Deoxy-5-fluorotubercidin. Acta Cryst C61:o408–o410
26. Lin W, Xu K, Eickmeier H, Seela F (2005) 8-Aza-7-deaza-7-propynyladenosine methanol solvate. Acta Cryst C61:o195–o197
27. Seela F, Shaikh KI, Eickmeier H (2005) 7-Deaza-2′-deoxyguanosine. Acta Cryst C61:o151–o153
28. Seela F, Sirivolu VR, He J, Eickmeier H (2005) 3-Bromo-1-(2-deoxy-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine-4,6-diamine: a nucleoside which strongly enhances DNA duplex stability. Acta Cryst C61:o67–o69
29. Lin W, Seela F, Eickmeier H, Reuter H (2004) N6-Etheno derivative of 7-deaza-2,8-diaza-adenosine. Acta Cryst C60:o566–o568
30. Seela F, Shaikh KI, Eickmeier H (2004) 7-Deaza-2′-deoxy-7-propynylguanosine. Acta Cryst C60:o489–o491
31. Bats JW, Parsch J Engels JW (2000) 1-Deoxy-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-β-D-ribofuranose, its hemihydrate, and 1-deoxy-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-β-D-ribofuranose: structural evidence for intermolecular C—H· · · F—C interactions. Acta Cryst C56:201–205
32. Seela F, Jawalekar AM (2004) Eickmeier H 1-(2-Deoxy-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-4-nitro-1H-indazole. Acta Cryst C60:o387–o389

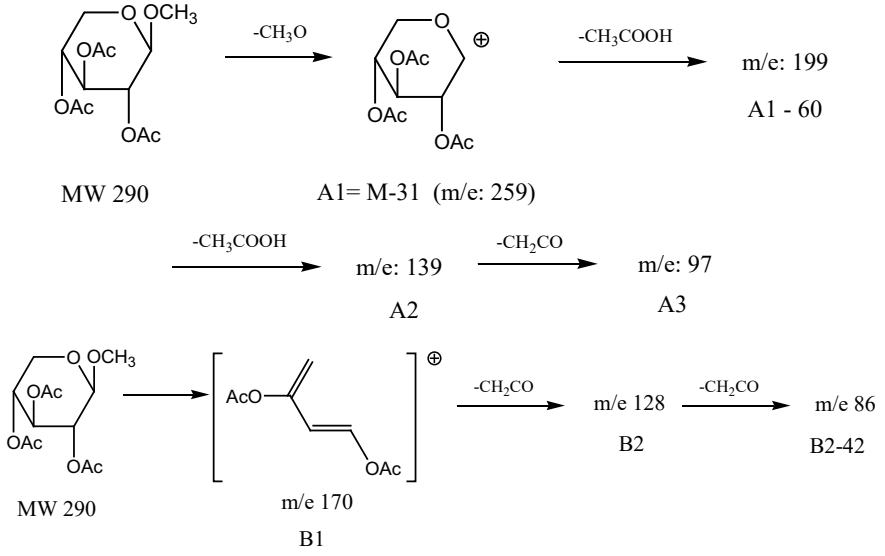
Chapter 10
Mass Spectrometry of Glycosides

High resolution mass spectrometry has become another valuable tool for characterization of simple and complex glycosides. The method is based on the collision of a high-energy electron against a sample under study producing as result a cation radical fragment known as the molecular ion, which should match with the molecular weight of the molecule. The mass spectrum also register a number of fragments being the most intense the base peak assigned a relative intensity of 100. Mass spectrometry can be applied as high and low ionization experiments, being for the former the most suitable for glycosides electron impact and for the later fast atom bombardment (FAB) and electrospray ionization the routine experiments for characterization of glycosides. In terms of sensitivity of the measurement this instrumental method requires small amount of sample, even in the order of nanogram quantities.

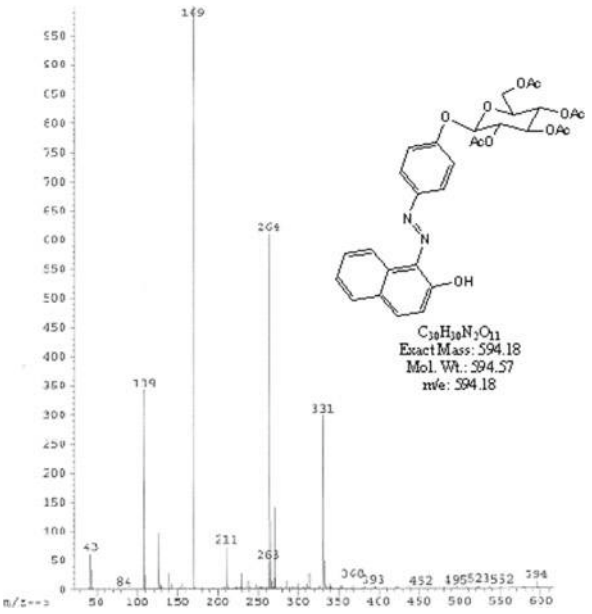
The fragmentation patterns of acetyl protected pentoses and hexoses was studied and their main m/z fragment established. For instance for methyl-β-D-xylopyranoside triacetate the main fragment follows the two alternative routes shown in Scheme 10.1 [1].

High ionization experiments such as electron impact has been found to be a suitable approach for the determination of the molecular weight trough their corresponding molecular ion of protected glycosides such as peracetylated *O*-glycosides of low molecular weight. For instance, by using electron impact it was possible to determine the the molecular weight, and the common fragmentation patterns of m/e 331 and 169 (100) of the phenylazonaphtol-β-D-glucopyranoside pentaacetate (Scheme 10.2) [2].

M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9_10



Scheme 10.1 Fragmentation pattern of methyl-β-D-xylopyranoside



Scheme 10.2 Mass spectrum of Phenylazonaphtol glucoside

However, for most of non protected glycosides high ionization do not provide reliable information and commonly decomposition is observed due thermal unstability. The introduction of shoft ionization techniques such as fast atom bombardment (FAB) and electrospray ionization has produced great progress for the structural characterization of simple and complex glycosides. This important analytical procedure is specially useful for determine the molecular weight through detection of the molecular ion, as well as sugar sequence. The choice of the matrix and the solubility of the sample are essential aspects to consider for obtaining the best resolution. Glycerol is the matrix most commonly used and it is the best choice for underivatized carbohydrates and glycopeptides. Some other matrices used alternatively for hydrophobic samples are thioglycerol, tetraethyleneglycol and triethanolamine [3].

The use of derivatives also plays an important rule and may improve the spectral interpretation and the sensitivity. The most commonly used derivatives are the per-*O*-acetyl and the per-*O*-methyl. Usually for the former the fragmentation pathways are less specific and furnish more information, although the spectrum is more difficult to interpret.

For the assignment of the molecular ion it is important to recognize the pseudomolecular ions produced during a FAB experiment, which can be positive-ion and negative-ion mode. In the positive-ion mode the usually present signals are $[M + H]^+$, $[M + NH_4]^+$, $[M + Na]^+$, and $[M + K]^+$, and for the negative $[M\text{-}H]^-$, and for those molecules that cannot lose a proton $[M + Cl]^-$, or $[M + SCN]^-$.

Some of the most common fragmentation pathway produced by polysaccharides and glycoconjugates are represented in Scheme 10.3 [4].

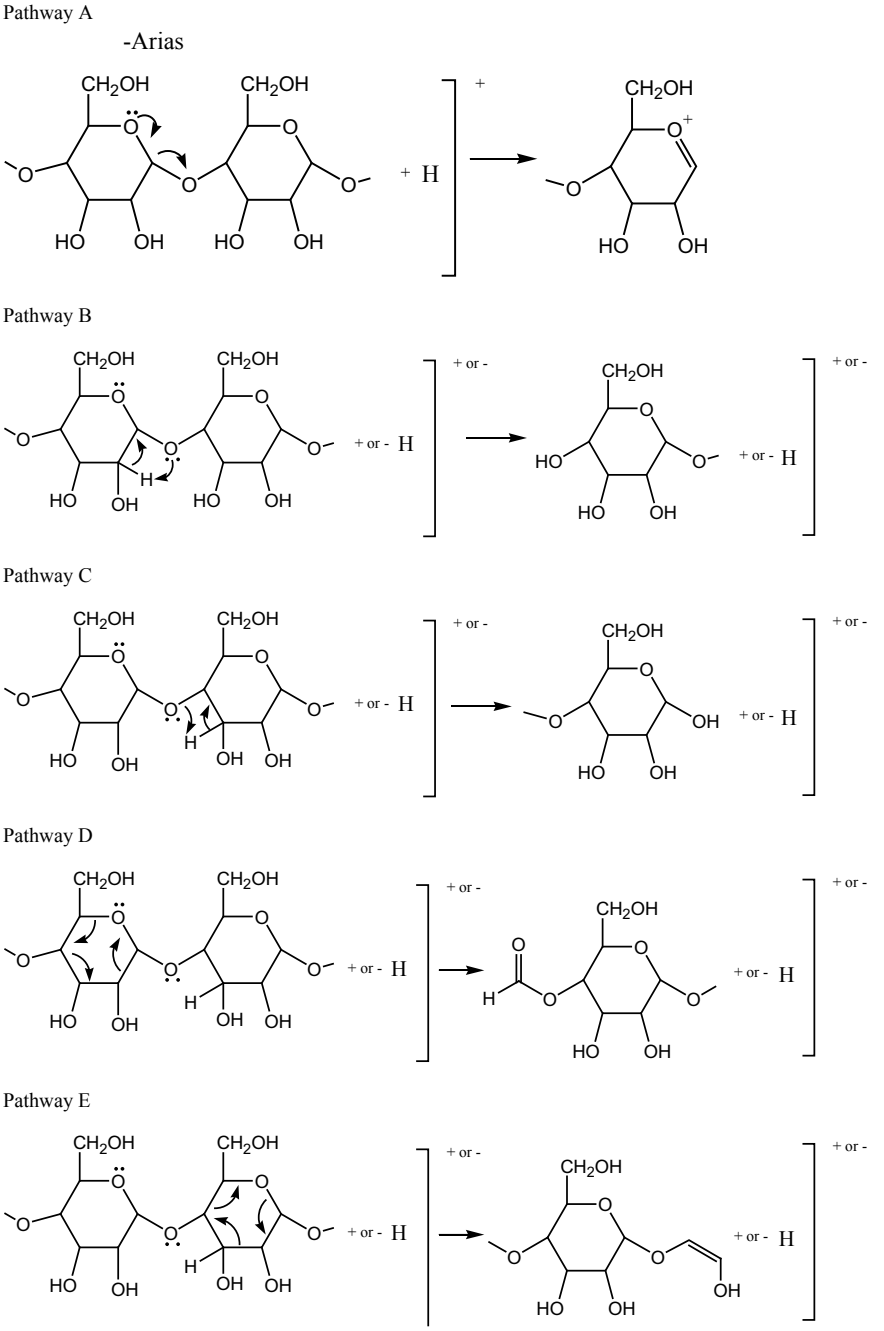
10.1 FAB Fragmentation Patters

Likewise, application of different ionization techniques in the study of natural glycosides have been performed and derived from this it has been possible to assign the main potential fragmentation sites in *O*- and *C*-glycosides (Scheme 10.4) [5].

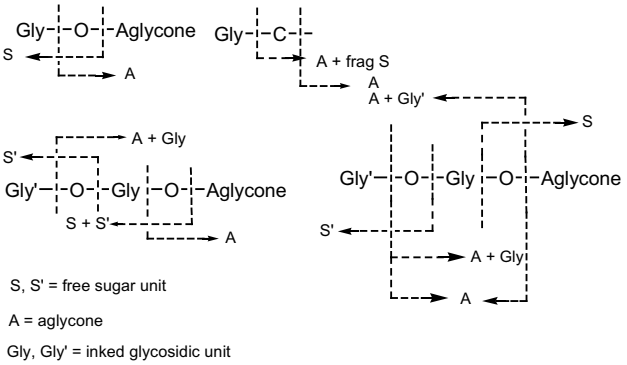
Negative ion FAB-MS in triethanolamine of synthetically prepared glycoresin composed by fucose, glucose and quinovose attached to jalapinolic acid (Scheme 10.5), shows $[M\text{-}H]^-$ peak (m/z 1216) in agreement with the expected molecular weight [2].

Mass spectrometry has been also applied successfully for glycoprotein structural determination of primary structure. The first glycoprotein primary structure was determined through electron impact and chemical ionization [6] however soft ionization methods of fast atom bombardment (FAB), electrospray (ES), or matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI) are conducting most of the glycoprotein structural determinations.

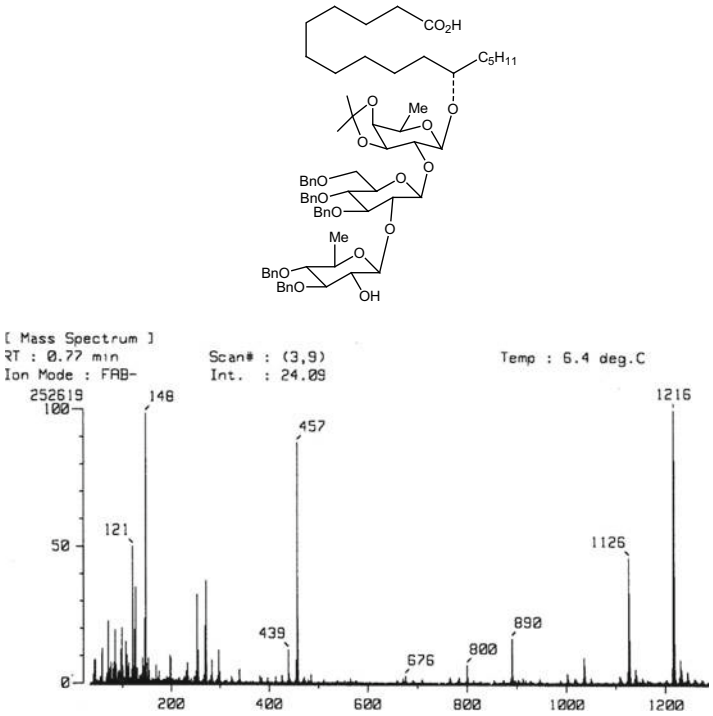
FAB is particularly useful for analyzing the permethyl derivatives of oligosaccharides released from glycoproteins by chemical or enzymatic methods. When the atom or ion beam collides with the matrix, a substantial number of sample molecules



Scheme 10.3 The most common fragmentation pathways



Scheme 10.4 The main potential fragmentation sites in *O*- and *C*-glycosides



Scheme 10.5 FAB-MS negative mode of synthetically prepared protected glycoresin

are ionized producing positively charged species called quasimolecular ions $[M + H]^+$ and $[M + Na]^+$ [7].

In order to optimize fragment ion information of glycoproteins, three approaches are currently being used: inducing fragmentation by collisional activation, monitoring natural ionization-induced fragmentation, and selecting derivatives that enhance and direct fragmentation.

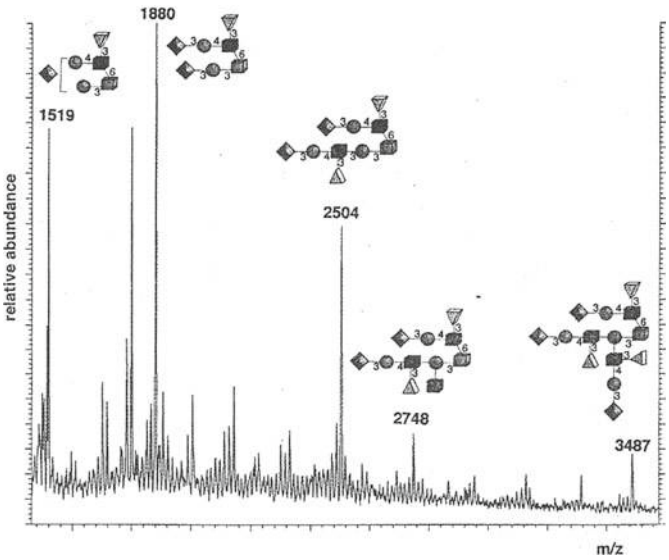
During collisional activation of collected fractions from an enzymatic digest, the first step is to identify in the MS mode the fractions containing sugar fragment-ions. Then switching to the MS/MS mode of a doubly or triply charged ion a composite spectrum containing fragmentation of saccharide and peptide is obtained. Since glycosidic bonds are weaker than peptide bonds, the basic oligosaccharide sequence is determined [8].

The natural fragmentation approach relies on the fragmentation created by internal energy transfer to the ion during the ionization process, and now is becoming most limited in use that he previous one [4].

Derivatization methods are likewise divided into tagging of reducing ends and protection of most of all of the functional groups. The first type facilitates chromatographic purifications and enhances the formation of reducing end fragment ions. The second type involves primarily the permethylation, which form abundant fragment ions arising from cleavage on the reducing side of each HexNAc residue.

The permethylation of Tamm-Horsfall glycoprotein was effected and the FAB mass spectrum obtained, showing molecular ions for core 2-type structures carrying up to three sialyl Lex moieties (Scheme 10.6) [9].

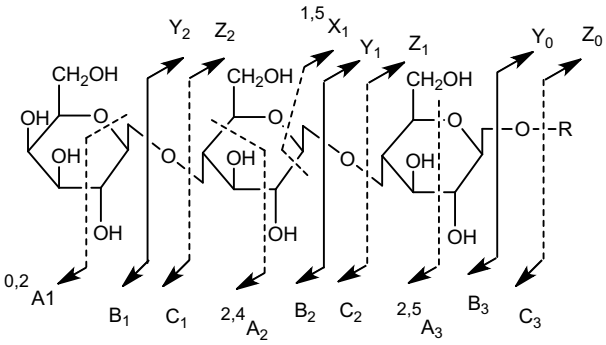
A summary of the ion types observed in hingolipids, glycopeptides, glycosides and carbohydrates) is presentedssdfA mass spectra pattern known as Domon-Costello



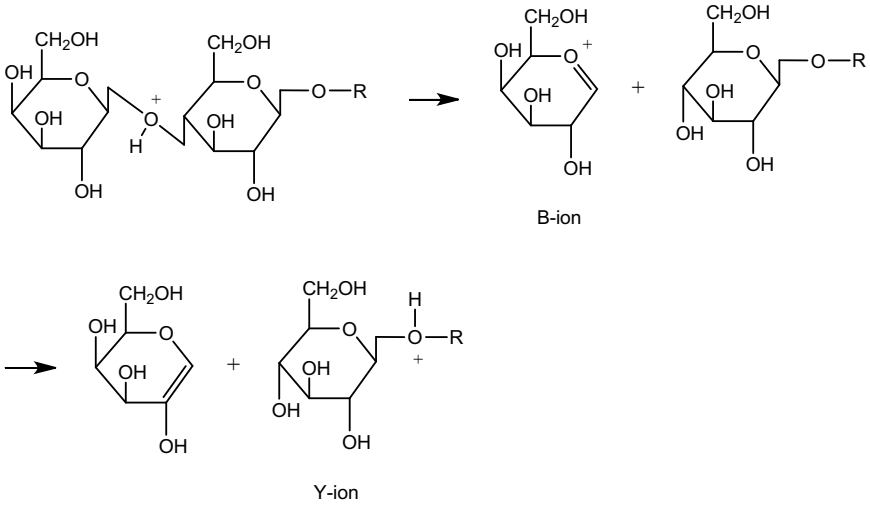
Scheme 10.6 Partial FAB mass spectrum of permethylated *O*-oligosaccharides from glycoprotein uromodulin

was introduced to describe the ion fragments observed in glycoconjugates (glycosphingolipids, glycopeptides, glycosides and carbohydrates). Thus, Ai, Bi and Ci labels were used to designate fragments containing a terminal (nonreducing end) sugar unit, whereas Xj, Yj and Zj represent ions still containing the aglycone (or the reducing sugar unit). In addition, subscripts indicate the position relative to the termini analogous to the system used in peptides, and superscripts indicate cleavages within carbohydrate rings [10].

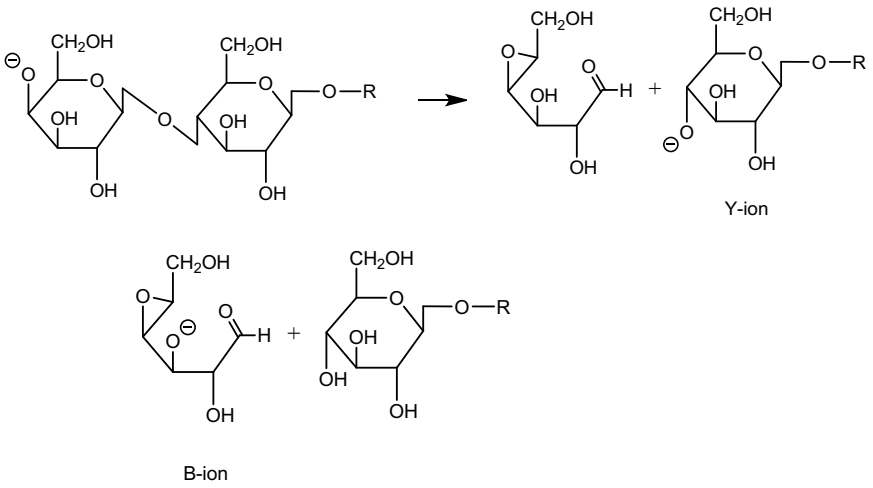
10.2 The Domon-Costello Fragmentation

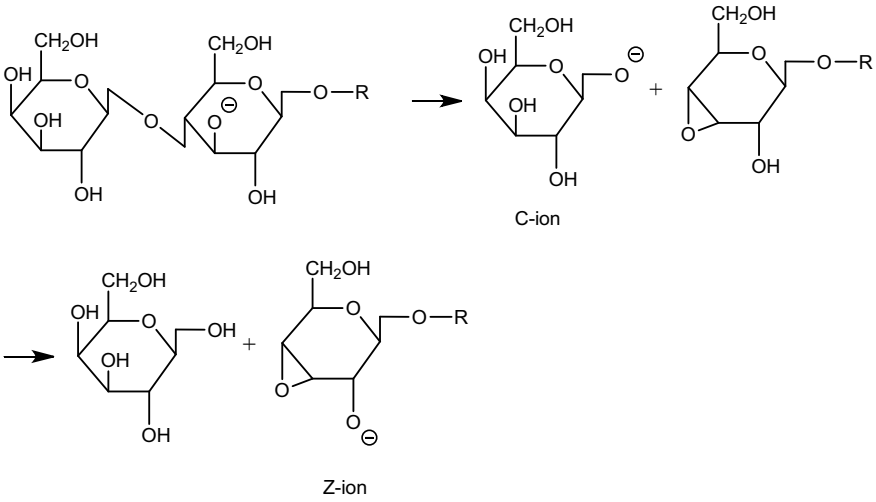


The Domon-Costello types of carbohydrate fragmentation.



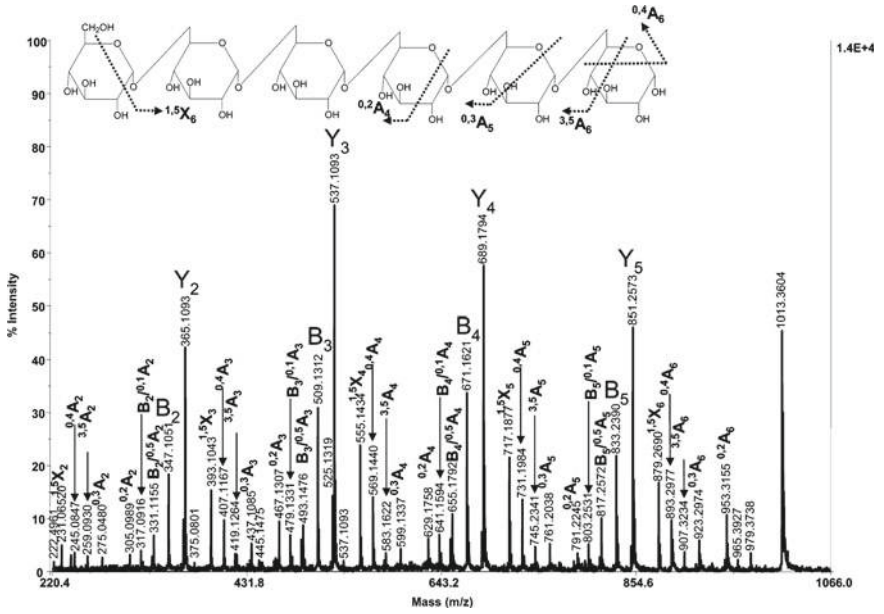
Genesis of Bi and Yj ions in the positive ion mode.





Negative ion geneses of (A) Bi and Yj, and (B) Ci and Zj.

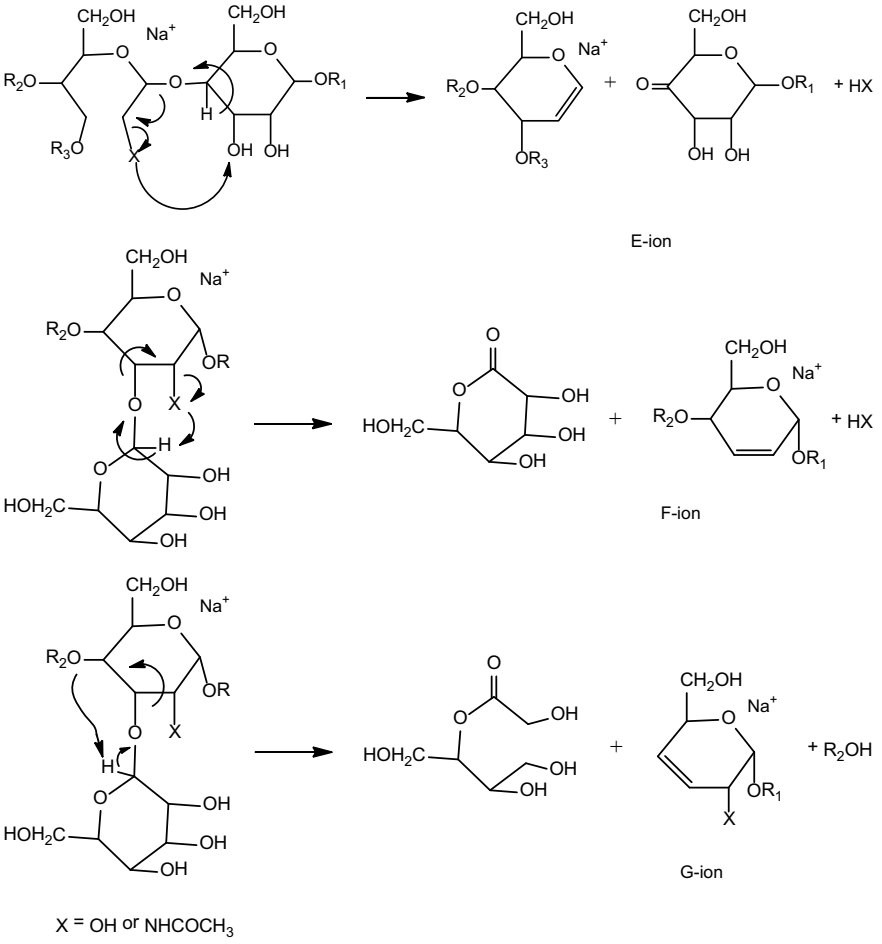
The Domon-Costello nomenclature was succesfully applied to determine the ion fragments generated after a single collition of a dextran sample formed by six glucose molecules. The MALDI/TOF singly charged showed besides the $[M + Na]^+$ ion, the most intense Y-ions, less intense B-ions and several other fragments [10] (Scheme 10.7).



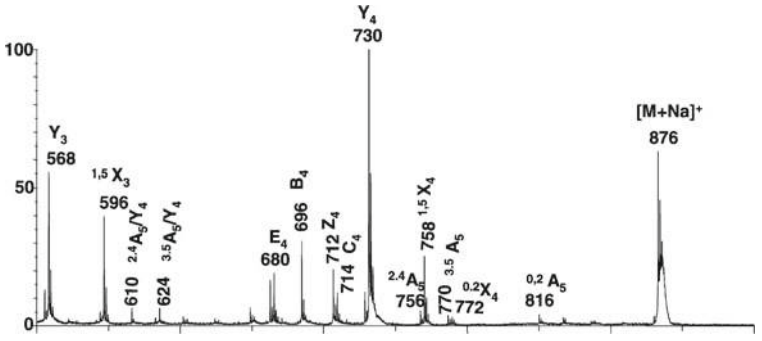
Scheme 10.7 The MALDI/TOF mass spectra of maltohexaose

Other ion fragments found in FAB, ESI, and in MALDI-TOF mass spectra of the $[M + Na]^+$ mode not described previously were described by Spina et al., derived from six-atom ring rearrangements named as E, F and G ions [11] (Scheme 10.8).

An applicability of this nomenclature is seen in the determination of oligosaccharides present in human milk LNFP I-IV, one of them having a sequence fucα1-2Galβ1-3GlcNAcβ1-3Galβ1-4Glc by using MALDI-TOF/TOF–MS/MS, and arabinoxylans, being the main polysaccharides found in the cereal cell wall observing besides ions from glycosidic cleavage and sugar ring fragmentations, the ions resulting from six atom rearrangements [12] (Scheme 10.9) (Table 10.1).



Scheme 10.8 Disaccharide rearrangements to generate E, F, G ions



Scheme 10.9 MALDI-MS/MS spectrum of $[M + Na]^+$ ion of LNFP I

Table 10.1 Selected mass spectrometry analysis of oligosaccharides and glycoconjugates

Crabohydrate	MS analysis	BiolSource	References
Sulfated polysaccharide	ESI	Ascophyllum nodosum	[13]
Oligosaccharides	electrospray	Milk	[14]
Rhamnolipids	MALDI-TOF	Pseudomonas spp	[15]
Acidic N-linked glycans	MALDI-TOFMS	Prepuberal pigs	[16]
Permethylated serum N-glycans	MALDI–LIT	Serum proteins	[17]
Arabino-oligosaccharides	ESI	Sugar beet arabinan	[18]
Neutral and sialylated glycans	MALDI-TOF	IgG and Fc-fusion protein	[19]
β-chain of human choriogonadotropin	ESI	Human serum IgG	[20]
N-glycans	MALDI-TOF	Bovine fetuin	[21]

References

1. Bieman K (1963) Application of mass spectrometry to structure problems. XIV.1 acetates of partially methylated pentoses and hexoses. J Am Chem Soc 85:2289–2294
2. Brito-Arias M, Pereda-Miranda R, Heathcock CH (2004) Synthesis of Tricolorin F 69:4567–4570
3. Harada KI, Suzuki M, Takeda N, Tatematsu A, Kambara H (1982) Molecular secondary ion mass spectra of kanamycins. Org Mass Spectrom 17:247–252
4. Dell M (1987) F.A.B.-Mass spectrometry of carbohydrates advances in carbohydrate chemistry and biochemistry 45:19–72
5. Wolfender JL, Maillard M, Marston A, Hostettman K (1992) Mass spectrometry of underivatized naturally occurring glycosides. Pytochemical Analysis 3:193–214
6. Morris HR, Thompson MR, Osuga DT, Ahmed AI, Chan SM, Vandenheede JR, Feeney RE (1978) Antifreeze glycoproteins from the blood of an antarctic fish. The structure of the proline-containing glycopeptides. J Biol Chem 253:5155–5162
7. Dell A, Morris HR (2001) Glycoprotein structure determination by mass spectrometry. Science 291:2351–2356
8. Teng-umnuay P, Morris HR, Dell A, Panico M, Paxton T, West CM (1998) The cytoplasmic F-box binding protein SKP1 contains a novel pentasaccharide linked to hydroxyproline indictyostelium. J Biol Chem 273:18242–18249
9. Easton RL, Patankar MS, Clark GF, Morris HR, Dell A (2000) Pregnancy-associated changes in the glycosylation of tamm-horsfall glycoprotein: expression of sialyl lewisx sequences on core 2 typeo-glycans derived from uromodulin. J Biol Chem 275:21928–21938
10. Domon B, Costello CE (1988) A systematic nomenclature for carbohydrate fragmentations in FAB-MS/MS Spectra of glycoconjugates. Glycoconj J 5:397–409
11. Spina E, Sturiale L, Romeo D, Impallomeni G, Garozzo D, Waidelich D, Glueckmann M (2004) New fragmentation mechanisms in matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight/time-of-flight tandem mass spectrometry of carbohydrates Rapid Commun. Mass Spectrom 18:392–398
12. Maslen SL, Goubet F, Adam A, Dupreeb P, Stephens E (2007) Structure elucidation of arabinoxylan isomers by normal phase HPLC–MALDI-TOF/TOF-MS/MS. Carbohydr Res 342:724–735

13. Daniel R, Chevolot L, Carrascal M, Tissot B, Paulo AS, Moura PAS, Abian J (2007) Electrospray ionization mass spectrometry of oligosaccharides derived from fucoidan of Ascophyllum nodosum. Carbohydr Res 342:826–834
14. Broberg A(2007) High-performance liquid chromatography/electrospray ionization ion-trap mass spectrometry for analysis of oligosaccharides derivatized by reductive amination and N,N-dimethylation. Carbohydr Res 342:1462–1469
15. Price NPJ, Ray KJ, Vermillion K, Kuo T-M (2009) MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry of naturally occurring mixtures of monorhamnolipids and dirhamnolipids. Carbohydr Res 344:204–209
16. von Witzendorff D Maass K, Pich A, Ebeling S, Kölle S, Kochel Ch, Ekhlasi-Hundrieser M, Geyer H, Geyer R, Töpfer-Petersen E (2009) Characterization of the acidic N-linked glycans of the zona pellucida of prepuberal pigs by a mass spectrometric approach. Carbohydr Res 344:1541–1549
17. Guillard M, Gloerich J, Wessels HJCT, Morava E, Wevers RA, Lefeber DJ (2009) Automated measurement of permethylated serum N-glycans by MALDI–linear ion trap mass spectrometry. Carbohydr Res 344:1550–1557
18. Westphal Y, Kühnel S, Schols HA, Voragen AGJ, Gruppen H (2010) LC/CE–MS tools for the analysis of complex arabino-oligosaccharides. Carbohydr Res 345:2239–2251
19. Tep S, Hincapie M, Hancock WS (2012) A MALDI-TOF MS method for the simultaneous and quantitative analysis of neutral and sialylated glycans of CHO-expressed glycoproteins. Carbohydr Res 347:121–129
20. Wuhrer M, de Boer AR, Deelder AM (2009) Structural glycomics using hydrophilic interaction chromatography (hilic) with mass spectrometry. Mass Spectrom Rev 28:192–206
21. Harvey DJ (2015) Analysis of carbohydrates and glycoconjugates by matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization mass spectrome try: an update for 2009–2010. Mass Spectrom Rev 34: 268–422

Index

M. Brito-Arias, *Synthesis and Characterization of Glycosides*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-97854-9